



Krishna's

Educational Publishers

Since 1942

MODERN ALGEBRA

A.R. Vasishtha

A.K. Vasishtha



Krishna's

MODERN ALGEBRA

[Abstract Algebra]

*(For Degree, Honours & Post-Graduate students of All Indian Universities and
for P.C.S., I.A.S. and other Competitive Examinations)*

By

A. R. Vasishtha

Ex. Head, Dep't of Mathematics

Meerut College, Meerut (U.P.)

A. K. Vasishtha

M.Sc. Ph.D.

C.C.S. University, Meerut



KRISHNA Prakashan Media (P) Ltd.

KRISHNA HOUSE, 11, Shivaji Road, Meerut-250 001 (U.P.), India

Krishna's

Modern Algebra

First Edition : 1969

Sixty Ninth Edition : 2016

Seventieth Edition : 2017

Name, style or any part of this book thereof may not be reproduced in any form or by any means without the written permission from the publishers and the authors. Every effort has been made to avoid errors or omissions in this publication. In spite of this, some errors might have crept in. Any mistake, error or discrepancy noted may be brought to our notice which shall be taken care of in the next edition. It is notified that neither the publisher nor the author or seller will be responsible for any damage or loss of action to anyone, of any kind, in any manner, therefrom. For binding mistakes, misprints or for missing pages, etc. the publisher's liability is limited to replacement within one month of purchase by similar edition. All expenses in this connection are to be borne by the purchaser.

Book Code : 235-70

Price : ₹ 425.00 Only

Published by : Satyendra Rastogi "Mitra"
for **KRISHNA** Prakashan Media (P) Ltd.
11, Shivaji Road, Meerut - 250 001 (U.P.) India.
Phones : 91.121.2644766, 2642946 Fax : 91.121.2645855
Website : www.krishnaprakashan.com
E-mail : info@krishnaprakashan.com

Chief Editor : Sugam Rastogi

Typesetting by : Natraj Computers, Meerut.

Printed at : Raj Printers, Meerut.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

This book on Modern Abstract Algebra has been written for the use of the students of Honours and Post-Graduate classes of Indian Universities.

The subject matter has been discussed in such a simple way that the students will find no difficulty to understand it. The book contains a large number of fully worked out examples. The students should first try to understand the theorems and then they should try to solve the problems independently. Definitions should be read again and again.

Suggestions for the improvement of the book will be gratefully received.

-The Authors

PREFACE TO THE LATEST EDITION

In this edition the book has been thoroughly revised. Suggestions for further improvement of the book will be gratefully received.

-The Authors

SYMBOLS AND THEIR MEANINGS

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
\exists	"there exists"
\forall	"for every"
\Rightarrow	"implies"
\Leftrightarrow	"implies and is implied by" or "if and only if" or "iff"
\wedge	"and"
\vee	"or"
\in	"belongs to"
\notin	"does not belong to"
\subseteq	"is a subset of"
\supseteq	"is a super-set of"
\subset	"is a proper subset of"
: or |	"such that"
\cup	"union"
\cap	"intersection"
\emptyset	"the null set"
\mathbb{N}	"the set of all natural numbers"
\mathbb{I}	"set of integers"
\mathbb{Q}	"set of all rational numbers"
\mathbb{R}	"set of real numbers"
\mathbb{I}_+	"set of positive integers"
\mathbb{R}_+	"set of positive real numbers"
\mathbb{Q}_+	"set of positive rational numbers"
\mathbb{I}_0	"set of non-zero integers"
\mathbb{Q}_0	"set of non-zero rational numbers"
\mathbb{R}_0	"set of non-zero real numbers"
\mathbb{C}_0	"set of non-zero complex numbers"

CONTENTS

<i>Chapters</i>	<i>Pages</i>
1. Some Basic Set Theoretic Concepts	1—47
Mathematical logic	1
Tautologies	2
Set	3
Subsets of a set	6
Union of Sets	9
Intersection of sets	10
Cartesian product of two sets	15
Functions or mappings	19
Binary operation	33
Relations	36
Equivalence relations	40
Equivalence classes	41
Partitions	43
Partial order relations	46
2. Groups	48—187
Binary operation on a set	48
Algebraic structure	49
Group. Definition	49
Abelian group	49
Finite and infinite groups	50
Order of a finite group	50
General properties of groups	55
Definition of a group based upon left axioms	58
Composition tables for finite sets	69
Addition modulo m	77
Multiplication modulo p	77
Residue classes of the set of integers	82
An alternative set of postulates for a group	88
Permutations	93
Groups of permutations	96
Cyclic permutations	98
Even and odd permutations	102
Integral powers of an element of a group	111
Order of an element of a group	113
Isomorphism of groups	126
The relation of isomorphism in the set of all groups	133
Complexes and subgroups of a group	137
Intersection of subgroups	145
Cosets	152
Relation of congruence modulo	158
Lagrange's theorem	159
Euler's theorem	161
Fermat's theorem	162
Order of the product of two subgroups of finite order	162
Cayley's theorem	167
Cyclic groups	170

Chapters	Pages
Subgroup generated by a subset of a group	184
Generating system of a group	185
3. Groups (Continued)	188—253
Normal subgroups	188
Conjugate elements	197
Normalizer of an element of a group	198
Class equation of a group	200
Centre of a group	200
Conjugate subgroups	203
Invariant subgroups	204
Quotient Groups	204
Homomorphism of Groups	211
Kernel of a homomorphism	213
Fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups	216
Automorphisms of a group	221
Inner automorphisms	224
More results on group homomorphism	223
Maximal subgroups	233
Composition series of a group and the Jordan-Holder theorem	234
Solvable groups	236
Commutator subgroup of a group	239
Direct products	244
External direct products	244
Internal direct products	246
Cauchy's theorem on abelian groups	249
Cauchy's theorem	250
Sylow's theorem	251
4. Rings	254—353
Ring. Definition	254
Elementary properties of a ring	255
Rings with or without zero divisors	259
Integral domain	261
Field	262
Division ring or skew field	262
Isomorphism of rings	282
Subrings	286
Subfields	290
Characteristic of a ring	291
Ordered integral domains	294
Imbedding of a ring into another ring	296
The field of quotients	299
Ideals	306
Principal ideal	319
Principal ideal ring	320
Divisibility in an integral domain	321
Units	322
Associates	323
Prime elements	325
Greatest Common divisor	325

Chapters	Pages
Polynomial rings	325
Polynomials over an integral domain	332
Division algorithm for polynomials over a field	336
Euclidean algorithm for polynomials over a field	339
Unique factorization domain	340
Unique factorization theorem for polynomials over a field	342
Remainder theorem	344
Prime fields	345
Rings of endomorphisms of an abelian group	348
5. Rings (Continued)	354—394
Quotient rings or residue class rings	354
Homomorphism of rings	356
Kernel of a ring homomorphism	357
Maximal ideals	361
Prime ideals	365
Euclidean rings or Euclidean domains	370
Polynomial rings over unique factorization domains	380
6. Vector Spaces	395—448
Vector space. Definition	395
General properties of vector spaces	402
Vector subspaces	403
Linear combination of vectors	410
Linear span	410
Linear sum of two subspaces	412
Linear dependence and linear independence of vectors	413
Basis of a vector space	423
Finite dimensional vector spaces	424
Dimension of a finitely generated vector space	426
Homomorphism of vector spaces or Linear transformations	433
Isomorphism of vector spaces	435
Quotient space	440
Direct sum of spaces	443
Complementary subspaces	446
Co-ordinates	447
7. Vector Spaces (Continued)	449—467
Linear transformations as vectors	449
Dual space	453
Dual basis	456
Reflexivity	459
Annihilators	463
8. Modules	468—480
Modules. Definition	468
Submodules	471
Direct sum of submodules	473
Homomorphism of modules or linear transformations	474
Quotient modules	475
Cyclic modules	476
Fundamental theorem on finitely generated modules over Euclidean rings	476

9. Extension Fields and Galois theory	481—564
Field extensions	481
Finite field extension	481
Field adjunctions	484
Simple field extension	485
Algebraic field extension	485
Transcendental element	486
Roots of polynomials	498
Multiple root	499
Splitting field or decomposition field	503
Uniqueness of the splitting field	512
Derivative of a polynomial	516
Separable extension	523
Perfect field	523
The elements of galois theory	523
Fixed field	525
Normal extension	529
Galois group	537
Fundamental theorem of Galois theory	539
Construction with ruler and compass	547
Solvability by radicals	552
Finite fields	556
10. Number Theory	1—72
Two basic binary operations on the set of integers	1
Order relation	3
Well ordering principle	3
Absolute value or modulus of an interer	4
Divisibility in the set of integers	4
The Division Algorithm	5
Greatest Common Divisor	7
Euclidean Algorithm	10
Relatively prime integers	13
Least commond multiple	15
Primes and composite integers	21
Euclid's lemma	21
The Fundamental theorem of Arithmetic	23
The number of divisors of a positive integer	25
Mersenne Numbers	29
Congruence of integers	33
Residue classes	37
Complete set of residues modulo m	41
Linear congruences	41
Euler's ϕ -function	51
Fermat's theorem	57
Euler's theorem	59
Wilson's theorem	60
Lagrange's theorem	61
Index	(i—v)

Some Basic Set Theoretic Concepts

§ 1. **Mathematical Logic.** We express our ideas by means of sentences. In mathematics we are concerned only with those sentences which can be judged to be either true or false but not both. Such sentences are called statements.

The following are statements :

- (i) New Delhi is the capital of India (being true).
- (ii) 8 is greater than 12 (being false).

The following are not statements :

- (i) How are you ?
- (ii) The liar says, "I always tell a lie".

We shall use the letters p, q, r, s etc. to denote arbitrary statements. We assign to the statement p the letter T when p is true and the letter F when it is false. Both F and T are called the *truth values of p* .

Some symbols and notations. The following symbols are very helpful to express our ideas in a compact form :

(i) The symbol \forall . It is used to stand for "For all" or "For every". It is called the universal quantifier.

For example, \forall real number x , we have $x^2 \geq 0$.

(ii) The symbol \exists . It is used to stand for "There exists". It is called the existential quantifier.

(iii) The symbol $|$. It is used to stand for "such that". Sometimes such that is also denoted by : or by s.t.

(iv) The symbol \vee . When two or more statements are joined by the word "or", the compound statement so formed is called a **disjunction**. The symbol \vee represents the connective "or". Thus the statement $p \vee q$ is read as ' p or q '. The statement $p \vee q$ is true if either p or q or both p and q are true. If both p and q are false, the statement $p \vee q$ is false.

(v) The symbol \wedge . When two or more statements are joined by the word "and", the compound statement so formed is called a **conjunction**. The symbol used for conjunction is \wedge . Thus the

statement $p \wedge q$ is read as ' p and q '. The statement $p \wedge q$ is true if and only if both p and q are true. In other words $p \wedge q$ is false if p is false or q is false or both are false.

(vi) The symbol \Rightarrow . If p and q are two statements such that the truth of p implies that of q , we write

$p \Rightarrow q$ (one way implication).

It is read as ' p implies q '. For example, $x=4 \Rightarrow x^2=16$.

We shall assume that the statement $p \Rightarrow q$ is false only when p is true and q is false. In other words a true statement can imply only a true statement while a false statement can imply a true statement or a false statement.

(vii) The symbol \Leftrightarrow . It is used to stand for '*implies and is implied by*' or *if and only if*. Sometimes *iff* is also used to stand for '*if and only if*'. If the truth of the statement p implies that of q and also the truth of q implies that of p we write

$p \Leftrightarrow q$ (both way implication).

For example, $x+2=9 \Leftrightarrow x=7$.

The statement $p \Leftrightarrow q$ is true only when p and q are either both true or both false. It is false when one of the statements is true and the other is false.

(viii) Negation of a Statement. Associated with each statement is another statement called its negation. The negation of a statement p is denoted by ' $\neg p$ ' or ' $\sim p$ '. For example, if p is the statement " x is 3", then $\sim p$ is the statement " x is not 3"

The negation of a true statement is false and the negation of a false statement is true.

Tautologies. A statement is called a *tautology* if it is always true. We shall give below some examples of tautologies.

Example 1. The statement $(p \wedge q) \Rightarrow p$ is a tautology.

We shall prepare the truth table for the statement $(p \wedge q) \Rightarrow p$.

p	q	$p \wedge q$	$p \wedge q \Rightarrow p$
T	T	T	T
T	F	F	T
F	T	F	T
F	F	F	T

We observe that the statement $(p \wedge q) \Rightarrow p$ has its truth value T for all its entries in the truth table. Thus it is always true. Hence it is a tautology.

Example 2. The statement $\sim(p \wedge q) \Leftrightarrow (\sim p \vee \sim q)$ is a tautology.

Truth table for $\sim(p \wedge q) \Leftrightarrow (\sim p \vee \sim q)$

p	q	$p \wedge q$	$\sim(p \wedge q)$	$\sim p$	$\sim q$	$\sim p \vee \sim q$
T	T	T	F	F	F	F
T	F	F	T	F	T	T
F	T	F	T	T	F	T
F	F	F	T	T	T	T

Since the corresponding entries under the columns $\sim(p \wedge q)$ and $\sim p \vee \sim q$ are identical, therefore the statements $\sim(p \wedge q) \Rightarrow (\sim p \vee \sim q)$ and $(\sim p \vee \sim q) \Rightarrow \sim(p \wedge q)$ are both tautologies. Hence the statement $\sim(p \wedge q) \Leftrightarrow (\sim p \vee \sim q)$ is a tautology.

Tautologies are very helpful to us whenever we are to deduce some new statement from some given statements. If the statement $p \Rightarrow q$ is a tautology we can safely conclude the truth of q from the truth of p . We shall now give a list of some important tautologies.

- (i) $p \vee p \Rightarrow p; p \wedge p \Rightarrow p$. (Idempotent laws)
- (ii) $p \wedge q \Rightarrow p; (p \wedge q) \Rightarrow q$. (Laws of simplification)
- (iii) $p \Rightarrow (p \vee q); q \Rightarrow (p \vee q)$. (Laws of addition)
- (iv) $(p \vee q) \Leftrightarrow (q \vee p); (p \wedge q) \Leftrightarrow (q \wedge p)$ (Commutative laws)
- (v) $\sim(p \wedge q) \Leftrightarrow (\sim p \vee \sim q);$
 $\sim(p \vee q) \Leftrightarrow (\sim p \wedge \sim q)$ } (De-Morgan's laws)
- (vi) $p \wedge (q \wedge r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \wedge r;$ }
 $p \vee (q \vee r) \Leftrightarrow (p \vee q) \vee r$ } (Associative laws)
- (vii) $p \wedge (q \vee r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r);$ }
 $p \vee (q \wedge r) \Leftrightarrow (p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r)$ } (Distributive laws)
- (viii) $p \Leftrightarrow \sim(\sim p)$. (Law of double negation)
- (ix) $p \vee \sim p$. (Law of the exclusive middle)
- (x) $(p \Rightarrow q) \Leftrightarrow (\sim q \Rightarrow \sim p)$. (Law of the contrapositive)
- (xi) $p \wedge (q \wedge r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \wedge (p \wedge r)$.

§ 2. A set. Members of a set.

(Meerut 1977)

The concept of set is fundamental in all branches of mathematics. A set is any well-defined class or collection of objects. By a well-defined collection we mean that there exists a rule with the help of which it is possible to tell whether a given

object belongs or does not belong to the given collection. The objects in sets may be anything, numbers, people, mountains, rivers etc. The objects constituting the set are called elements or members of the set.

The following are some of the examples of sets :

- (i) The numbers 2, 4, 6 and 1.
- (ii) The countries India, Burma and Afghanistan.
- (iii) The rivers in India.
- (iv) The set of all triangles in a plane.
- (v) The numbers 1, 3, 5, 7,...

We shall denote the sets by capital letters A, B, C, X, Y, Z , etc., and their elements by small letters a, b, c, d, x, y, z etc.

If an object x is a member of a set A , then we write

$$x \in A,$$

which may be read as " x belongs to A " or " x is an element of the set A ". If, on the other hand, an object x is not a member of a set A , then we write

$$x \notin A,$$

which can also be read as " x is not an element of the set A ".

It is a common practice in mathematics to put a vertical line "|" or "/" through a symbol to indicate the opposite or negative of that symbol.

A set may be described by actually listing the objects belonging to it. For example, let the elements of the set A be a, e, i, o, u ; then we write $A = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$. Here the elements are separated by commas and are enclosed in brackets $\{ \}$. We shall always use these brackets only. This is called the *tabular form* of the set.

A set may also be specified by stating properties which its elements must satisfy. We use some letter, say x , to represent an arbitrary element of the set. The set is then described as follows :

$A = \{x : P(x)\}$ and we say that A is the set consisting of the elements x such that x satisfies the property $P(x)$. The symbol ":" is read "such that". Thus the set A consisting of the elements a, e, i, o, u may be written in this notation as follows :

$A = \{x : x \text{ is a vowel in the English alphabet}\}$. This way of describing a set is called the *set builder form* of a set.

Finite and Infinite Sets. A set is said to be *finite* if it consists of a specific number of different elements, i.e., if in counting the

different members of the set the counting process can come to an end. Otherwise a set is infinite.

Example 1. Let A be the set of the days of the week. Then A is finite.

Example 2. Let $B = \{1, 3, 5, 7, \dots\}$. Then B is infinite.

§ 3. Some Sets of Numbers. Although in much of our study of sets we shall not be concerned with the type of elements, sets of numbers will naturally appear in most of the examples and problems. We shall now give a list of important sets of numbers along with the symbols we shall often use to denote them.

(i) The set $N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, \dots\}$ of all natural numbers. The natural numbers are also called counting numbers. The number 0 is not an element of the set of natural numbers.

(ii) The set $I = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ of all integers. The integers are also called whole numbers.

(iii) The set $I_+ = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$ of all positive integers. The number 0 is neither positive nor negative.

(iv) The set $Q = \{x : x = p/q, \text{ where } p \text{ and } q \text{ are integers and } q \neq 0\}$ of all rational numbers.

(v) The set Q_0 of all non-zero rational numbers.

(vi) The set R of all real numbers i.e.,

$$R = \{x : x = a.b_1b_2b_3\dots b_n\dots\},$$

where $a \in I$ and b 's are any of $0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 9$; n can be as large as we please and can go upto infinity. Here every real number has been expressed in the form of decimals with ten as base.

(vii) The set C of all complex numbers, i.e., $C = \{x : x = a + ib, \text{ where } a \text{ and } b \text{ are real numbers and } i = \sqrt{-1}\}$.

§ 4. Equality of Sets. Definition. Two sets A and B are said to be equal iff every element of A is an element of B and also every element of B is an element of A . We write " $A=B$ " if the sets A and B are equal and " $A \neq B$ " if the sets A and B are not equal.

Symbolically, $A=B$ if $x \in A \Leftrightarrow x \in B$.

The statement given in the definition of the equality of two sets is also known as the axiom of extension.

Example 1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{2, 1, 3, 4\}$.

The by the axiom of extension, $A=B$ since each element of A belongs to B and each element of B belongs to A . Here we see that a change in the order in which the elements of a set are tabulated is immaterial.

Example 2. Let $A = \{2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{3, 2, 2, 3, 4\}$.

Then $A = B$ since each element of A is in B and each element of B is in A . Here we see that a set does not change if one or more of its elements are repeated. It is for this reason that while describing a set we do not repeat any element. Sometimes we even define a set as "*A well-defined class or collection of distinct objects*".

Example 3. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{1, 2, 4, 3, 5\}$.

Then $A \neq B$, since $4 \in B$ but $4 \notin A$.

Example 4. Let $A = \{a\}$. Then $a \neq \{a\}$. Here a is an element of the set A . There is a basic difference between an element a and the set $\{a\}$.

§ 5. Null Set. The set which contains no element at all is called the null set. This set is sometimes also called the empty set or the void set. It is denoted by the symbol \emptyset .

A set which has at least one element is called a non-empty set.

Singleton. A set consisting of a single element is called a singleton. Thus $\{a\}$ is a singleton.

Example 1. Let $A = \{x : x^2 + 1 = 0 \text{ and } x \text{ is real}\}$.

Since there is no real number which satisfies the equation $x^2 + 1 = 0$, therefore the set A is empty.

Example 2. Let $A = \{x : x \text{ is a straight line passing through three distinct points on a circle}\}$. Then A is the null set.

Example 3. Let $A = \{0\}$. Then the set A is not null as it contains one element, i.e., 0. Here A is a singleton. Similarly $\{\emptyset\}$ is not a null set. It is also a singleton.

The null set \emptyset is unique i.e., there exists only one set containing no elements. Therefore the word 'the' is used before an empty set.

§ 6. Subsets of a set.

[Meerut 1976]

If A, B are sets such that every element of A is also an element of B , then A is said to be a subset of B . In other words, A is a subset of B if $x \in A \Rightarrow x \in B$. For example, if $B = \{x, y, z, t\}$ and $A = \{x, y\}$, then A is a subset of B . Similarly $C = \{x\}$ and $D = \{x, y, t\}$, are also subsets of B . In particular, B itself is also a subset of B .

When A is a subset of B , we denote this relationship by writing $A \subseteq B$,

which is read as ' A is a subset of B ' or ' A is contained in B '.

If $A \subseteq B$, then B is called a *super set* of A and we write

$$B \supseteq A,$$

which is read as ' B is a *superset* of A ' or ' B contains A '.

If A is not a subset of B , we write

$$A \not\subseteq B,$$

which is read as ' A is not a subset of B '.

Similarly $B \not\supseteq A$ is read as ' B is not a super-set of A '.

Proper subsets of a set. From the definition of a subset, it is obvious that *every set is a subset of itself*, i.e., $A \subseteq A$. If A is any set then A is called an *improper subset* of A . We call B a *proper subset* of A if first, B is a subset of A and, secondly, if B is not equal to A . Briefly, B is a proper subset of A , if $B \subseteq A$ and $B \neq A$.

If B is a proper subset of A , we shall write $B \subset A$.

When we write $B \subseteq A$, then both the possibilities that B is a proper subset of A and $B = A$, are included in it. Some authors, however, denote ' B is a subset of A ' by $B \subset A$. Thus in our notation $B \subseteq A$ and in their notation $B \subset A$ will have the same meaning.

If we are to prove that $A \not\subseteq B$, then we should prove that there exists at least one element x such that $x \in A$ but $x \notin B$. Thus the set $A = \{1, 2, 6\}$ is not a subset of $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ since $6 \in A$ but $6 \notin B$.

Disjoint sets. If two sets A and B have no elements in common, i.e., if no element of A is in B and no element of B is in A , then we say that A and B are *disjoint*, or *mutually exclusive*. The sets $A = \{1, 3, 7, 8\}$ and $B = \{2, 4, 7, 11\}$ are not disjoint, since the element 7 is common to both A and B . On the other hand, the sets $C = \{a, b, c\}$ and $D = \{x, y, z\}$ are disjoint, since they have no elements in common.

We shall now give some theorems on subsets.

Theorem 1. If A is any set, then $\emptyset \subseteq A$, i.e., the empty set is a subset of every set.

Proof. Let us assume that $\emptyset \not\subseteq A$. Then, by our definition of a subset \exists at least one element x such that $x \in \emptyset$ but $x \notin A$. But $\forall x, x \notin \emptyset$ since \emptyset is the null set. Therefore \exists no element x such that $x \in \emptyset$ and $x \notin A$. Thus our assumption that $\emptyset \not\subseteq A$ is wrong. Hence we must have $\emptyset \subseteq A$.

Theorem 2. If A and B are sets, then $A = B$ iff $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$.

Proof. If $A = B$, then by the Axiom of Extension every ele-

ment of A is an element of B and every element of B is an element of A . Hence $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$.

Conversely, if $A \subseteq B$ and $B \subseteq A$, then every element of A is an element of B and every element of B is an element of A . Hence, by the axiom of extension, $A=B$.

Theorem 3. *If A is a subset of B and B is a subset of C , then A is a subset of C , that is $[A \subseteq B, B \subseteq C] \Rightarrow A \subseteq C$.*

Proof. Let x be an arbitrary element of the set A . Since $A \subseteq B$, therefore $x \in A \Rightarrow x \in B$. But $B \subseteq C$ (by the hypothesis). Therefore $x \in B \Rightarrow x \in C$. Thus $x \in A \Rightarrow x \in C$. Hence by our definition of a subset $A \subseteq C$.

§ 7. Class of sets or family of sets. If the elements of a set are sets themselves, then such a set is said to be a 'class of sets' or a 'family of sets'. In order to avoid confusion we will sometimes use script letters $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}$ etc. to denote families of sets since capital letters denote their elements.

Example. The set $A = \{\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a, b\}\}$ is a class of sets. Its members are $\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a, b\}$ which are sets themselves.

Important. It should be noted that \in connects an element and a set, while \subseteq connects two sets. Thus if $A = \{r, s, t\}$, then $r \in A, \{r\} \subseteq A$ are correct statements, while $r \subseteq A$ and $\{r\} \in A$ are incorrect statements.

§ 8. Power set. *If S is any set, then the family of all the subsets of S is called the power set of S .*

The power set of S is denoted by $P(S)$. Symbolically, $P(S) = \{T : T \subseteq S\}$. Obviously \emptyset and S are both elements of $P(S)$.

Example. Let $S = \{a, b, c\}$, then

$$P(S) = \{\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}\}.$$

Theorem. *If a finite set S has n elements, then the power set of S has 2^n elements.*

Proof. Let us form all the subsets of the set S . There are nC_r sub-sets consisting of r elements where $r=0, 1, 2, \dots, n$.

Since the set S has n elements, therefore no sub-set of S can have more than n elements. Hence the total number of sub-sets of S i.e., the total number of elements in $P(S)$

$$= 1 + {}^nC_1 + {}^nC_2 + \dots + {}^nC_r + \dots + 1 = (1+1)^n = 2^n.$$

Thus the power set of S has 2^n elements. This is perhaps the motivation for the name power set.

§ 9. Universal Set. In any application of set theory, all the sets under consideration will likely be sub-sets of a fixed set. We call this set the *universal set* or *universe of discourse* and denote it by the capital letter U . Thus a non-empty set of which all the sets under consideration are subsets is called the universal set.

Example 1. All people in the world constitute the universal set in any study of human population.

Example 2. In plane geometry, the universal set consists of all the points in the plane.

§ 10. Venn-Euler Diagrams. We often use pictures in mathematics to help in our thinking. We consider a pictorial representation of sets also. These pictures consist of rectangles and closed curves usually circles. These combinations of rectangles and circles are called *Venn-Euler diagrams* or simply, Venn-diagrams.

In Venn-diagrams a universal set U is represented by a large rectangle and its sub-sets are represented by circular areas drawn within the rectangle. If a set B is a subset of A , the circle representing B is drawn inside the circle representing A . If the sets A and B are equal, then the same circle represents both A and B . If the sets A and B are disjoint, then the circles representing A and B are drawn, in such a way that they have no common area. If the sets A and B are not disjoint, the circles representing A and B are drawn in such a way that they have some area common to both.

When we represent a universal set U by a rectangle, we write ' U ' in one corner of that rectangle. Similarly we write ' A ' within the circle representing the set A .

§ 11. Union of Sets. Definition. (Meerut 1976)

Let A and B be two sets. The union of A and B is the set of all elements which are in set A or in B . We denote the union of A and B by

$$A \cup B$$

which is usually read as " A union B ".

Symbolically, $A \cup B = \{x : x \in A \text{ or } x \in B\}$.

It should be noted here that we take standard mathematical usage of "or". When we say that $x \in A$ or $x \in B$ we do not exclude the possibility that x is a member of both A and B .

Example 1. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $B = \{f, b, d, g\}$.

Then $A \cup B = \{a, b, c, d, f, g\}$.

Example 2. If $A = \{1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 8\}$ and $B = \{0, 2, 4, 7, 9\}$,

then $A \cup B = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$.

Example 3. If $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $B = \{a, b\}$, i.e., $B \subseteq A$

then $A \cup B = \{a, b, c, d\} = A$.

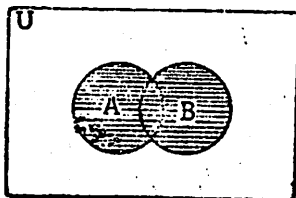
Example 4. If A is the set of all male students in a college and B is the set of all the students in that college, then

$$A \cup B = B.$$

Example 5. If $A = \{1, 3, 5, \dots\}$ and $B = \{2, 4, 6, \dots\}$, then

$$A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, \dots\}.$$

In the adjoining Venn diagram the union of two sets A and B is shown with shaded area.



§ 12. Intersection of Sets.

Definition. (Meerut 1976)

Let A and B be two sets. The intersection of A and B is the set of all elements which are both in A and B . We denote the intersection of A and B by

$$A \cap B$$

which is usually read as " A intersection B ". Symbolically,

$$A \cap B = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$$

or

$$A \cap B = \{x : x \in A, x \in B\}.$$

It should be noted here that the comma has the same meaning as "and".

Example 1. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $B = \{f, b, d, g\}$.

Then $A \cap B = \{b, d\}$.

Example 2. Let $A = \{1, 3, 7, 8\}$ and $B = \{2, 4, 9, 11\}$.

Then $A \cap B = \emptyset$, since the sets A and B are disjoint.

Important It can be easily seen that two sets A and B are disjoint if and only if $A \cap B = \emptyset$.

Example 3. If $A = \{1, 2, 4, 6, 8\}$ and $B = \{2, 4, 8\}$ i.e., $B \subseteq A$, then $A \cap B = \{2, 4, 8\} = B$.

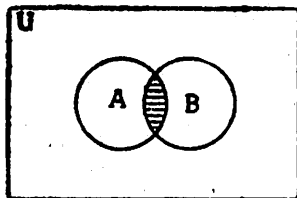
Example 4. If A is the set of the students of a college reading chemistry and B is the set of the students of the same college reading mathematics, then $A \cap B$ is the set of the students reading mathematics and chemistry both.

Example 5. If $A = \{x : 0 < x < 3\}$ and $B = \{x : 1 \leq x \leq 5\}$ then

$$A \cap B = \{x : 1 \leq x < 3\}.$$

In the following Venn diagram, the intersection of two sets A and B is shown with shaded area :

$A \cap B$ shaded.



§ 13. Difference of two Sets. (Meerut 1977). *The difference of two sets A and B in that order is the set of elements which belong to A but which do not belong to B .*

We denote the difference of A and B by

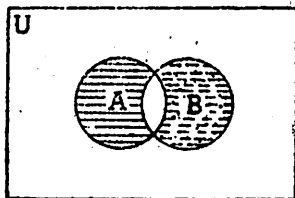
$$A \sim B \text{ or } A - B$$

which is read as " A difference B " or " A minus B ". Symbolically, $A - B = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B\}$. $A - B$ is also called the complement of B with respect to A .

Example. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $B = \{f, b, d, g\}$. Then

$A - B = \{a, c\}$ and $B - A = \{f, g\}$. Obviously $A - B \neq B - A$.

In the adjoining Venn diagram, area corresponding to $A - B$ has been shaded by horizontal lines and the dotted area represents $B - A$.



Complement of a set relative to the universal set. (Meerut 77)

The complement of a set A with respect to the universal set U is the difference of the universal set U and A . We denote the complement of A with respect to U by A' or by A^c .

Thus $A' = U - A = \{x : x \in U \text{ and } x \notin A\}$

or simply, $A' = \{x : x \notin A\}$ if the universal set is understood.

Obviously $(A')' = A$, $\emptyset' = U$, $U' = \emptyset$.

Example. Let the set of natural numbers $N = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$, be the universal set and let $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, \dots\}$. Then

$$A' = \{2, 4, 6, 8, \dots\}.$$

Symmetric difference of two sets.

Definition. Suppose A and B are two sets. Then the set $(A-B) \cup (B-A)$ is called the symmetric difference of the sets A and B and is denoted by $A \Delta B$.

§ 14. **Index Set.** Often a non-empty set, say T , has the property, that to each $t \in T$ there corresponds a set C_t . For example, if $T = \{a, b, c, d\}$, then the four corresponding sets are C_a, C_b, C_c, C_d . If $T = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$, then the n corresponding sets are C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n . We say that each $t \in T$ indexes the sets C_t and when T is used in this sense we call T an *index set*.

Let A be the collection of sets such that to each member t of T there corresponds a member A_t of A . Then A is called an indexed family of sets and T is called an index set. Symbolically, we write

$$A = \{A_t : t \in T\}.$$

§ 15. **Arbitrary Union of Sets.** Let T be an index set and suppose that $\forall t \in T, C_t$, is a set. The union of the sets C_t , to be denoted by

$$\bigcup_{t \in T} C_t$$

is the set of all elements that are in C_t for some $t \in T$. Symbolically

$$\bigcup_{t \in T} C_t = \{x : x \in C_t \text{ for some } t \in T\}.$$

Example. Let the index set $T = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and let $C_a = \{1, 2\}$, $C_b = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $C_c = \{3, 4, 5\}$, $C_d = \{1, 3, 5, 7\}$.

Then

$$\bigcup_{t \in T} C_t = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7\}.$$

If $T = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$, we may write the union of the sets C_t as follows :

$$\bigcup_{i=1}^n C_i = \{x : x \in C_i \text{ for at least one } i\}.$$

In case the index set T is a singleton, say $T = \{a\}$, then we agree that

$$\bigcup_{t \in T} C_t = C_a.$$

§ 16. **Arbitrary intersection of sets.** Let T be an index set and suppose that $\forall t \in T, C_t$ is a set. The intersection of the sets C_t , to be denoted by

$$\bigcap_{t \in T} C_t$$

is the set of all elements which are in C_t for each $t \in T$.

Symbolically $\bigcap_{i \in T} C_i = \{x : x \in C_i \text{ for each } i \in T\}$.

Example. If $T = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $C_a = \{1, 2, 3\}$, $C_b = \{2, 3, 4, 5\}$, $C_c = \{2, 3, 5, 7\}$, $C_d = \{1, 2, 3, 5\}$, then $\bigcap_{i \in T} C_i = \{2, 3\}$.

If $T = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$, we may write the intersection of the sets C_i as follows :

$$\bigcap_{i=1}^n C_i = \{x : x \in C_i \text{ for all } i\text{'s}\}.$$

In case the index set T is a singleton, say $T = \{a\}$, then we agree that $\bigcap_{i \in T} C_i = C_a$.

§ 17. Laws of Algebra of Sets. If A , B and C are any sets, then

- (i) $A \cup B = B \cup A$ and $A \cap B = B \cap A$ } Commutative laws.
- (ii) $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap C$ and $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup C$ } Associative laws.
- (iii) $A \cup A = A$ and $A \cap A = A$ } Idempotent laws.
- (iv) $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ and $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$ } Distributive laws.
- (v) $A - (B \cup C) = (A - B) \cap (A - C)$ and $A - (B \cap C) = (A - B) \cup (A - C)$ } De-Morgan's laws.
- (vi) If A and B are subsets of a universal set U , then $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$ and $(A \cap B)' = A' \cup B'$ } Another form of De-Morgan's laws.

We shall prove some of these laws. The others may be proved similarly.

1. To prove that $A \cup B = B \cup A$.

Proof. We have $x \in A \cup B \Leftrightarrow x \in A$ or $x \in B$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in B \text{ or } x \in A.$$

[Refer that $p \vee q \Leftrightarrow q \vee p$ is a tautology]

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in B \cup A.$$

Consequently, $A \cup B \subseteq B \cup A$ and $B \cup A \subseteq A \cup B$.

Hence $A \cup B = B \cup A$.

2. To prove that $A \cap (B \cap C) = (A \cap B) \cap C$.

Proof. We have $x \in A \cap (B \cap C)$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \in (B \cap C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (x \in B \text{ and } x \in C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B) \text{ and } x \in C$$

[Refer that $p \wedge (q \wedge r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \wedge r$ is a tautology]

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \cap B \text{ and } x \in C$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in (A \cap B) \cap C.$$

Consequently, $A \cap (B \cap C) \subseteq (A \cap B) \cap C$ and

$$(A \cap B) \cap C \subseteq A \cap (B \cap C)$$

Hence

$$A \cap (B \cap C) = (A \cap B) \cap C.$$

3. To prove that $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ i.e., the intersection of sets distributes over the union of sets.

[Dibrugarh 1967; Madras 74]

Proof. We have $x \in A \cap (B \cup C)$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \in (B \cup C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (x \in B \text{ or } x \in C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B) \text{ or } (x \in A \text{ and } x \in C)$$

[Refer that $p \wedge (q \vee r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$ is a tautology]

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \cap B \text{ or } x \in A \cap C$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C).$$

Consequently $A \cap (B \cup C) \subseteq (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$ and also $(A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C) \subseteq A \cap (B \cup C)$.

Hence $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$.

4. To prove that $A - (B \cup C) = (A - B) \cap (A - C)$.

[Punjab 1976]

Proof. We have $x \in A - (B \cup C)$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B \cup C$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } \sim(x \in B \text{ or } x \in C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (x \notin B \text{ and } x \notin C)$$

[Refer that $\sim(p \vee q) \Leftrightarrow \sim p \wedge \sim q$ is a tautology]

$$\Leftrightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ and } (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin C)$$

[Refer that $p \wedge (q \wedge r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \wedge (p \wedge r)$ is a tautology]

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in (A - B) \text{ and } x \in (A - C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in (A - B) \cap (A - C).$$

Hence $A - (B \cup C) = (A - B) \cap (A - C)$.

5. To prove that if A and B are subsets of a universal set U , then $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$. [Kolhapur 1973]

Proof. We have

$$x \in (A \cup B)' \Leftrightarrow x \notin A \cup B \Leftrightarrow x \notin A \text{ and } x \notin B$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A' \text{ and } x \in B' \Leftrightarrow x \in A' \cap B'.$$

Hence $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$.

§ 18. Cartesian Product of two Sets. Let A and B be two given sets. Let $a \in A$ and $b \in B$. Then (a, b) denotes what we may call an ordered pair. The object a is called first co-ordinate of the ordered pair (a, b) and the object b is called its second co-ordinate.

If (a, b) and (c, d) are two ordered pairs, then $(a, b) = (c, d)$ iff $a = c$ and $b = d$. Thus the ordered pairs $(2, 5)$ and $(2, 5)$ are equal while the ordered pairs $(2, 5)$ and $(5, 2)$ are different. Here we must note the distinction between the set $\{2, 5\}$ and the ordered pair $(2, 5)$. We have $\{5, 2\} = \{2, 5\}$, but $(2, 5) \neq (5, 2)$.

Definition. If A and B are sets, the set of all distinct ordered pairs whose first coordinate is an element of A and whose second coordinate is an element of B is called the cartesian product of A and B (in that order) and is denoted by $A \times B$. Symbolically,

$$A \times B = \{(a, b) : a \in A \text{ and } b \in B\}.$$

Example. Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{p, q\}$.

Then $A \times B = \{(a, p), (a, q), (b, p), (b, q), (c, p), (c, q)\}$.

Also $B \times A = \{(p, a), (p, b), (p, c), (q, a), (q, b), (q, c)\}$.

We observe that the sets $A \times B$ and $B \times A$ are not equal. Hence in general, $A \times B \neq B \times A$.

If set A has n elements and B has m elements, then the product set $A \times B$ has nm elements.

If either A or B is a null-set, then we agree that $A \times B = \emptyset$. If either A or B is infinite and the other is not empty, then $A \times B$ is infinite.

Product set in General. We may generalise the definition of the product of sets. Let A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n be n given sets. The set of ordered n -tuples (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) where $a_1 \in A_1, a_2 \in A_2, \dots, a_n \in A_n$ is called the cartesian product of A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n and is denoted by

$$A_1 \times A_2 \times A_3 \times A_4 \times \dots \times A_n.$$

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If A and B are any sets, then prove that

(i) $A \subseteq A \cup B$ and $B \subseteq A \cup B$.

(ii) $A \subseteq B \Rightarrow A \cup B = B$. (iii) $A - B \subseteq A$.

(iv) $(A - B) \cup A = A$. (v) $(A - B) \cap B = \emptyset$.

Solution. (i) Let x be any arbitrary element of the set A .

Then $x \in A \Rightarrow x \in A$ or $x \in B$

[Refer that $p \Rightarrow p \vee q$ is a tautology]

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \cup B.$$

Therefore $A \subseteq A \cup B$.

Similarly, we can prove that $B \subseteq A \cup B$.

(ii) Suppose $A \subseteq B$, then to prove that $A \cup B = B$.

We have $x \in A \cup B \Rightarrow x \in A$ or $x \in B$

$$\Rightarrow x \in B \text{ or } x \in B$$

$$[\because A \subseteq B, \text{ therefore } x \in A \Rightarrow x \in B]$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in B.$$

$$[\because p \text{ or } p \Rightarrow p]$$

Consequently $A \cup B \subseteq B$.

But $B \subseteq A \cup B$. [see part (i) of this Ex.]

Hence $A \subseteq B \Rightarrow A \cup B = B$.

(iii) Let x be an arbitrary element of the set $A - B$. Then

$$x \in A - B \Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A.$$

[Refer that $p \wedge q \Rightarrow p$ is a tautology]

Consequently $A - B \subseteq A$.

(iv) By part (iii) of this Ex. we have $A - B \subseteq A$.

Therefore by part (ii) of this Ex., we have $(A - B) \cup A = A$.

(v) We have $x \in (A - B) \cap B$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A - B \text{ and } x \in B$$

$$\Rightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ and } x \in B$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (x \notin B \text{ and } x \in B)$$

$$\Rightarrow x \notin B \text{ and } x \in B$$

[$\because p \wedge q \Rightarrow q$ is a tautology]

But there is no element x which satisfies both $x \notin B$ and $x \in B$.

Therefore there is no element in $(A - B) \cap B$.

$$\text{i.e., } (A - B) \cap B = \emptyset.$$

Ex. 2. If A and B are sets, then prove that $A - B$, $A \cap B$ and $B - A$ are pairwise disjoint.

[Gorakhpur 1970]

Solution. First we shall prove that $A - B$ and $A \cap B$ are disjoint i.e., $(A - B) \cap (A \cap B) = \emptyset$. We have

$$x \in (A - B) \cap (A \cap B) \Rightarrow x \in (A - B) \text{ and } x \in (A \cap B)$$

$$\Rightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ and } (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B).$$

But there is no element x which satisfies both $x \notin B$ and $x \in B$.

Therefore there is no element in the set $(A - B) \cap (A \cap B)$ i.e.,

$$(A - B) \cap (A \cap B) = \emptyset.$$

Now we shall prove that $B - A$ and $A \cap B$ are disjoint

$$\text{i.e., } (B - A) \cap (A \cap B) = \emptyset.$$

We have $x \in (B - A) \cap (A \cap B)$

$$\Rightarrow x \in (B - A) \text{ and } x \in (A \cap B)$$

$$\Rightarrow (x \in B \text{ and } x \notin A) \text{ and } (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B).$$

But there is no element x such that $x \notin A$ and $x \in A$.
Therefore there is no element in the set

$$(B-A) \cap (A \cap B) \text{ i.e., } (B-A) \cap (A \cap B) = \emptyset.$$

Finally we shall prove that

$$(A-B) \cap (B-A) = \emptyset.$$

We have $x \in (A-B) \cap (B-A)$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A-B \text{ and } x \in B-A$$

$$\Rightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ and } (x \in B \text{ and } x \notin A).$$

But there is no element x which satisfies both $x \notin B$ and $x \in B$ or which satisfies both $x \in A$ and $x \notin A$. Therefore $(A-B) \cap (B-A)$ has no element i.e., $(A-B) \cap (B-A) = \emptyset$.

Ex. 3. Prove that $(A-B) \cup (B-A) = (A \cup B) - (A \cap B)$.

Solution. We have $x \in (A-B) \cup (B-A)$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in (A-B) \text{ or } x \in (B-A)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ or } (x \in B \text{ and } x \notin A)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow [(x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ or } x \in B] \text{ and } [(x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B) \text{ or } x \notin A]$$

$$\Leftrightarrow [x \in B \text{ or } (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B)] \text{ and } [x \notin A \text{ or } (x \in A \text{ and } x \notin B)]$$

$$\Leftrightarrow [(x \in B \text{ or } x \in A) \text{ and } (x \in B \text{ or } x \notin B)] \text{ and}$$

$$[(x \notin A \text{ or } x \in A) \text{ and } (x \notin A \text{ or } x \in B)]$$

$$\Leftrightarrow [(x \in A \text{ or } x \in B) \text{ and } (x \in B \text{ or } x \notin B)]$$

$$\text{and } [(x \notin A \text{ or } x \in A) \text{ and } (x \notin A \text{ or } x \in B)]$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \cup B \text{ and } x \notin A \cap B \Leftrightarrow x \in (A \cup B) - (A \cap B).$$

$$\text{Hence } (A-B) \cup (B-A) = (A \cup B) - (A \cap B).$$

Ex. 4. Prove that $A \cap (B-C) = (A \cap B) - (A \cap C)$.

Solution. We have $x \in A \cap (B-C)$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } x \in B-C$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (x \in B \text{ and } x \notin C)$$

$$\Rightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } x \in B) \text{ and } x \notin C$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \cap B \text{ and } x \notin C$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in A \cap B \text{ and } x \notin A \cap C$$

$$\Rightarrow x \in (A \cap B) - (A \cap C) \quad [\because x \notin C \Rightarrow x \notin A \cap C]$$

$$\therefore A \cap (B-C) \subseteq (A \cap B) - (A \cap C) \quad \dots (1)$$

Again $y \in (A \cap B) - (A \cap C)$

$$\Rightarrow y \in A \cap B \text{ and } y \notin A \cap C$$

$$\Rightarrow (y \in A \text{ and } y \in B) \text{ and } y \notin A \cap C$$

$$\Rightarrow (y \in A \text{ and } y \in B) \text{ and } y \notin C$$

$$[\because y \in A \text{ and } y \notin A \cap C \Rightarrow y \notin C]$$

$$\Rightarrow y \in A \text{ and } (y \in B \text{ and } y \notin C)$$

$$\Rightarrow y \in A \text{ and } y \in (B - C)$$

$$\Rightarrow y \in A \cap (B - C).$$

$$\therefore (A \cap B) - (A \cap C) \subseteq A \cap (B - C). \quad \dots (2)$$

From (1) and (2), we get $(A \cap B) - (A \cap C) = A \cap (B - C)$.

Ex. 5. If $A \Delta B = (A - B) \cup (B - A)$, show that

$$A \cap (B \Delta C) = (A \cap B) \Delta (A \cap C). \quad (\text{Banaras 1968})$$

Solution. We have $A \cap (B \Delta C)$

$$= A \cap [(B - C) \cup (C - B)]$$

$$= [A \cap (B - C)] \cup [A \cap (C - B)] \quad (\text{Distributive Law})$$

$$= [(A \cap B) - (A \cap C)] \cup [(A \cap C) - (A \cap B)] \quad (\text{See Ex. 4})$$

$$= (A \cap B) \Delta (A \cap C). \quad [\text{by def. of } \Delta]$$

Ex. 6. If A , B and C are sets, prove that

$$A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C).$$

Solution. Let (x, y) be an arbitrary element of the set

$$A \times (B \cap C).$$

Then $(x, y) \in A \times (B \cap C)$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } y \in B \cap C$$

$$\Leftrightarrow x \in A \text{ and } (y \in B \text{ and } y \in C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (x \in A \text{ and } y \in B) \text{ and } (x \in A \text{ and } y \in C)$$

[Refer that $p \wedge (q \wedge r) \Leftrightarrow (p \wedge q) \wedge (p \wedge r)$ is a tautology]

$$\Leftrightarrow (x, y) \in (A \times B) \text{ and } (x, y) \in (A \times C)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (x, y) \in (A \times B) \cap (A \times C).$$

$$\text{Hence } A \times (B \cap C) = (A \times B) \cap (A \times C).$$

Exercises

- If A and B are any sets, prove that
 - $A \cap B \subseteq A$ and $A \cap B \subseteq B$. (ii) $A \subseteq B \Rightarrow A \cap B = A$.
 - $A \cap (A \cup B) = A \cup (A \cap B) = A$.
- If A and B are subsets of a set X , then prove that

$$A \subseteq B \Leftrightarrow X - B \subseteq X - A. \quad (\text{Meerut 1973})$$
- If A , B and C are any sets, prove that
 - $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$. (Madras 1974)
 - $A \cap (B - C) = (A \cap B) - C$.
- Prove that
 - $A \Delta B = (A \cup B) - (A \cap B)$, (ii) $A - B = A \Delta (A \cap B)$,
 where Δ stands for symmetric difference.
- Prove that $A \subseteq B$ and $C \subseteq D \Rightarrow (A \times C) \subseteq (B \times D)$.
- Prove that $A \times (B \cup C) = (A \times B) \cup (A \times C)$.
- If $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$, $B = \{2, 3, 4, 5\}$,
 $C = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$ and $D = \{4, 5, 6, 7\}$,

find (i) $B \cup C$, (ii) $B \cap D$, (iii) verify that $(B \cup C) \cup (A \cap D) = A$.
(Kolhapur 1973)

8. Which of the following statements are true? Give reasons to support your answer.
- (i) $\{0\} = \emptyset$, where \emptyset denotes the null set.
 - (ii) $\{s, r, t, r\} = \{r, t, s\}$.
 - (iii) If $A \subseteq B$, then $B \cup A = A$.
 - (iv) If $A \subseteq B$, then $A \cap (A - B) = \emptyset$.
 - (v) $A \cap B = \emptyset$ implies either $A = \emptyset$ or $B = \emptyset$.

Answers

7. (i) $B \cup C = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8\}$, (ii) $B \cap D = \{4, 5\}$.
8. (i) false, (ii) true, (iii) not true, (iv) true, (v) not true.

§ 19. **Functions or Mappings.** Let A and B be any two non-empty sets. Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{x, y, z, t\}$. Suppose by some rule or other, we assign to each element of A a unique element of B . Let a be associated to x , b be associated to y and c be associated to x . The set $\{(a, x), (b, y), (c, x)\}$ of such assignments is called a function from A to B . If we denote this set by f , then we write

$$f: A \rightarrow B$$

which is read as " f is a function of A to B " or " f is a mapping from A to B ".

Function. Definition.

(Kolhapur 1973)

Let A and B be two given sets. Suppose there exists a correspondence, denoted by f , which associates to each member of A a unique member of B . Then f is called a function or a mapping from A to B . The mapping f of A to B is denoted by

$$f: A \rightarrow B \text{ or by } A \xrightarrow{f} B.$$

Range and Domain of a function. Suppose f is a function from A to B . The set A is called the domain of the function f , and B is called the co-domain of f . The element $y \in B$ which the mapping f associates to an element $x \in A$ is denoted by $f(x)$ and is called the f -image of x or the value of the function f for x . The element x may be referred to as the pre-image of $f(x)$. Each element of A has a unique image and each element of B need not appear as the image of an element in A . There can be more than one elements of A which have the same image in B . We define the range of f to consist of those elements in B which appear as the image of at least one element in A . Hence, we often speak of

the range of a function as the *image of its domain*. We denote the range of $f: A \rightarrow B$ by $f(A)$. Thus $f(A) = \{f(x) : x \in A\}$. Obviously $f(A) \subseteq B$.

Image of a subset. Definition. Let f be a function of A to B . Let X be any subset of A . Then the set $Y = \{y : y \in B \text{ and } y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in X\}$ is called the *image of X under f* and we write

$$f(X) = Y. \quad (\text{Meerut 1970})$$

Functions as sets of ordered pairs. If A and B are any two non-empty sets, then a function f from A to B is a subset f of $A \times B$ satisfying the following conditions :

- (i) $\forall a \in A, (a, b) \in f \text{ for some } b \in B$;
- (ii) $(a, b) \in f \text{ and } (a, b') \in f \Rightarrow b = b'$.

The first condition ensures that we have a rule which assigns to each element $a \in A$ some element $b \in B$. Thus each element in A will have image. The second condition guarantees that the image is unique. Accordingly f is a function from A to B .

Example 1. Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$ and $B = \{x, y, z\}$. Then $f = \{(a, x), (b, y), (a, z), (c, z)\}$

is not a function from A to B . The reason is that two elements, x and $z \in B$ are assigned to the same element $a \in A$.

Example 2. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. Let f assign to each member in A its square. Then f is not a function from A to B since no member of B is assigned to the element $3 \in A$.

Example 3. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c\}$. Then $f = \{(a, b), (b, c), (c, c), (d, b)\}$ is a function from A to B , since to each element $\in A$ we have assigned a unique element of B . Here $f(a) = b, f(b) = c, f(c) = c$, and $f(d) = b$. The domain of f is the set A and the range of f i.e., $f(A) = \{b, c\}$.

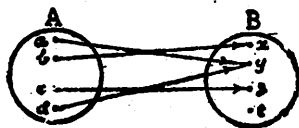
Transformations or operators. If the domain and co-domain of a function f are both the same set, say $f: A \rightarrow A$, then f is often called an operator or transformation on A .

Equality of two functions. Definitions. Two functions f and g of $A \rightarrow B$ are said to be equal iff $f(x) = g(x) \forall x \in A$ and we write $f = g$. For two unequal mappings from A to B , there must exist at least one element $x \in A$ such that $f(x) \neq g(x)$.

Diagrammatic representation of a function. Sometimes a function may be represented by a diagram as will be obvious from the following example :

Let $A = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and $B = \{t, x, y, z\}$. Let $f : A \rightarrow B$ be defined by the correspondence $f(a) = y$, $f(b) = x$, $f(c) = z$ and $f(d) = y$.

We represent the two sets A and B by the interiors of two circles. The function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is represented by means of a collection of arrows joining the points which represent the elements of A to points representing the corresponding elements of B . By the definition of function, it is obvious that



(i) every point in A is joined to some point in B by an arrow;
 (ii) a point in A cannot be joined to two or more distinct points in B ;

(iii) two or more points in A may be joined to the same point in B ;

(iv) there may be some points in B which are not joined to any point in A .

§ 20. Types of Functions.

'Into' or 'Onto' Mappings.

(Indore 1970; Meerut 77)

If the mapping $f : A \rightarrow B$ is such that there is at least one element in B which is not the f -image of any element in A , then we say that f is a mapping of A 'into' B . In this case the range of f is a proper subset of the co-domain of f i.e. $f(A) \subset B$. Thus in 'into' mappings at least one element of the co-domain B is left uncovered by the f -images of the domain A .

If the mapping $f : A \rightarrow B$ is such that each element in B is the f -image of at least one element in A , then we say that f is a mapping of A 'onto' B . In this case the range of f is equal to the co-domain of f i.e., $f(A) = B$. Thus in 'onto' mappings the co-domain B is completely covered by the f -images of the domain A . If f is a mapping of A onto B , we write

$$f : A \xrightarrow{\text{onto}} B.$$

Remark. It should be noted that in common use whenever we say that f is a mapping of A into B , we usually include in it the possibility that the mapping f may be onto B also.

'One-one' or 'Many-one' mappings. A mapping $f : A \rightarrow B$ is said to be one-one or one-to-one (abbreviated 1-1) if different elements in A have different f -images in B i.e., if

$$f(x) = f(x') \Rightarrow x = x' \quad (x \text{ and } x' \in A).$$

In one-one mappings an element in B has only one pre-image in A . If f is a one-one mapping of A to B , write

$$f : A \xrightarrow{1-1} B.$$

A mapping $f: A \rightarrow B$ is said to be many-one if two (or more than two) distinct elements in A have the same f -image in B i.e.

$$f(x) = f(x'), x \neq x'.$$

In many-one mappings some elements in B have more than one pre-image in A .

One-one onto mappings. If $f: A \rightarrow B$ is 1-1 and onto B , then f is called a one-to-one correspondence between A and B .

One-one onto mapping is sometimes also known as bijection. If $f: A \rightarrow B$ is 1-1 and onto B , we write

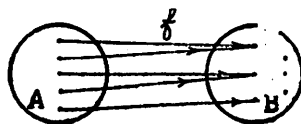
$$f: A \xrightarrow[\text{1-1}]{\text{onto}} B.$$

Two sets A and B are said to have the same number of elements iff a one-to-one mapping of A onto B exists. Such sets are said to be cardinally equivalent. Cardinally equivalent sets are to have the same cardinal number or the same cardinality.

Diagrammatic representation of different types of mappings.

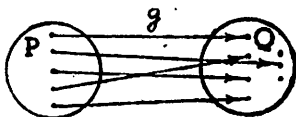
(Meerut 1970)

1. The mapping $f: A \rightarrow B$ in the adjoining diagram is many-one into. Two or more points in A are joined to the same point in B and there are some points in B which are not joined to any point in A .



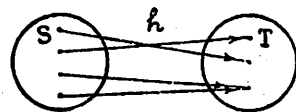
Many-one into

2. The mapping $g: P \rightarrow Q$ in the adjoining diagram is one-one into. Different points in P are joined to different points in Q and there are some points in Q which are not joined to any point in P .



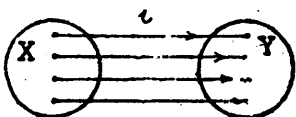
One-one into

3. The mapping $h: S \rightarrow T$ in the adjoining diagram is many-one onto. Each point in T is joined to at least one point in S and two or more points in S are joined to the same point in T .



Many-one onto

4. The mapping $i: X \rightarrow Y$ in the adjoining diagram is one-one onto. Different points in X are joined to different points in Y and no point in Y is left vacant.



One-one onto

How to prove that a given function f is one-one ?

If we are given a function f and we are to prove that it is one-one, we can do so by showing that if $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$ then $x_1 = x_2$, where x_1 and x_2 are arbitrary elements of the domain of f . We can also prove it by showing that if $x_1 \neq x_2$, then $f(x_1) \neq f(x_2)$.

How to prove that a given function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is onto ?

To prove that f is onto, we show that if $y \in B$, $\exists x \in A$ such that $y = f(x)$. Then $y \in B \Rightarrow y \in f(A)$. Having chosen y arbitrarily, every element of B is an element of $f(A)$ and hence $B \subseteq f(A)$. But $f(A) \subseteq B$. Therefore $B = f(A)$ and the function f is onto B .

Identity Mapping. Let A be any set. Let the function $f : A \rightarrow A$ be defined by the formula $f(x) = x \ \forall x \in A$, that is, let each element of A be mapped on itself. Then f is called the identity function, or the identity transformation on A . We denote this function by I_A . Thus if I_A denotes the identity mapping of a set A , we have $I_A(x) = x \ \forall x \in A$.

Example. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$. Then $f = \{(1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5)\}$ is an identity mapping of A .

Identity mapping is always one-one and onto.

Constant function. A function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is called a constant function if the same element $b \in B$ is assigned to every element in A . In other words, $f : A \rightarrow B$ is a constant function if the range of f consists of only one element.

Example. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by the formula $f(x) = 5$. Then f is a constant function since 5 is assigned to every element.

Restriction and extension of a function.

If $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $A \subseteq X$, then the mapping $g : A \rightarrow Y$ defined by

$$g(x) = f(x) \ \forall x \in A$$

is called the restriction of f to A and is often denoted by $f|_A$.

Also f is called an extension of g .

§ 21. Inverse image of an element. Let f be a function of A to B and let $b \in B$. Then the inverse image of the element b under f denoted by $f^{-1}(b)$

consists of those elements in A which have b as their f -image. Symbolically, if $f : A \rightarrow B$, then $f^{-1}(b) = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } f(x) = b\}$.

f^{-1} is read as " f inverse". $f^{-1}(b)$ is always a subset of A .

Example 1. Let $A = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$, and $B = \{x, y, z\}$.

Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be defined by

$$f = \{(a, x), (b, x), (c, y), (d, x), (e, y)\}.$$

Then $f^{-1}(z)$ is the null set \emptyset , since no element of A has z as its f -image.

$f^{-1}(y) = \{c, e\}$ since both c and e have y as their f -image.

Also $f^{-1}(x) = \{a, b, d\}$.

Example 2. Let R be the set of real numbers and let $f: R \rightarrow R$ be defined by the formula $f(x) = x^2$. Then $f^{-1}(9) = \{3, -3\}$, since 9 is the f -image of both 3 and -3 and there is no other real number whose square is 9. Also we observe that $f^{-1}(-5) = \emptyset$, since there is no real number whose square is -5 .

Inverse image of a subset. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ and let C be a subset of B i.e. $C \subseteq B$. Then the inverse image of C under f , denoted by $f^{-1}(C)$, consists of those elements in A which are mapped into some element in C . Symbolically,

$$f^{-1}(C) = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } f(x) \in C\}.$$

$f^{-1}(C)$ is always a subset of A . In particular $f^{-1}[f(A)] = A$, where $f(A)$ is the range of the function $f: A \rightarrow B$. Also $f^{-1}(B) = A$.

§ 22. Inverse function. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a one-one onto mapping. Let b be any arbitrary element of B . Since the mapping f is onto B , therefore there will be at least one element in A , say a , such that

$$b = f(a), b \in B, a \in A.$$

Since the mapping f is also one-one, therefore there will be only one element a in A such that $b = f(a)$. Let us denote a by $f^{-1}(b)$. Thus we see that if $f: A \rightarrow B$ is one-one onto we can define a new correspondence, denoted by f^{-1} , which associates to each element in B a unique element in A . Accordingly f^{-1} is a function of B to A .

Hence, if $f: A \rightarrow B$ is one-one onto, then $f^{-1}: B \rightarrow A$. The mapping f^{-1} is called the inverse mapping of the mapping f .

Definition. Let $f: A \rightarrow B$ be a one-one onto mapping. Then the mapping, $f^{-1}: B \rightarrow A$, which associates to each element $b \in B$ the element $a \in A$, such that $f(a) = b$, is called the inverse mapping of the mapping $f: A \rightarrow B$.

Only one-one and onto mappings possess inverse mappings. If the mapping $f: A \rightarrow B$ is not onto, the correspondence f^{-1} will not be a mapping from B to A . The reason is that in this case there will be some elements in B which will have no f^{-1} -image in A . Again if $f: A \rightarrow B$ is not one-one, even then the correspon-

dence f^{-1} will not be a mapping from B to A . The reason is that in this case some elements in B will be associated to more than one element in A . Thus in this case some elements in B will not have a unique f^{-1} -image in A .

Theorem 1. Let A and B be two sets. If $f : A \rightarrow B$ is one-one onto, then $f^{-1} : B \rightarrow A$ is also one-one onto.

Proof. First, let us prove that the mapping f^{-1} is one-one. Let y_1 and y_2 be any two elements of B :

Suppose $f^{-1}(y_1) = x_1$, and $f^{-1}(y_2) = x_2$ where $x_1, x_2 \in A$. Then by the definition of the mapping f^{-1} , $f(x_1) = y_1$, and $f(x_2) = y_2$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } f^{-1}(y_1) = f^{-1}(y_2) &\Rightarrow x_1 = x_2 \\ &\Rightarrow f(x_1) = f(x_2) \quad [\because f \text{ is a mapping from } A \text{ to } B] \\ &\Rightarrow y_1 = y_2. \end{aligned}$$

\therefore The mapping f^{-1} is one-one.

Now to prove that the mapping f^{-1} is onto A . Let x be any arbitrary element of A . Since f is a mapping from A to B , therefore there exists an element $y \in B$ such that $y = f(x)$ or $x = f^{-1}(y)$. Thus x is the f^{-1} -image of the element $y \in B$. Hence the mapping f^{-1} is also onto.

Theorem 2. If $f : A \rightarrow B$ be one-one and onto, then the inverse mapping of f is unique.

Proof. Let $f : A \rightarrow B$ be one-one and onto. Let $g : B \rightarrow A$ and $h : B \rightarrow A$ be two inverse mappings of A . To prove that $g = h$.

Let b be any arbitrary element $\in B$. Let $g(b) = a_1$ and $h(b) = a_2$. Since g is an inverse mapping of f , therefore, $g(b) = a_1 \Rightarrow f(a_1) = b$. Also since h is an inverse mapping of f , therefore $h(b) = a_2 \Rightarrow f(a_2) = b$. But f is a one-one mapping. $\therefore f(a_1) = b$ and $f(a_2) = b \Rightarrow a_1 = a_2 \Rightarrow g(b) = h(b)$. Hence $g = h$.

§ 23. Intervals defined as Sets of Real Numbers. Some sets of real numbers occur very frequently. Consider the following sets of real numbers :

$$A = \{x : x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } 2 \leq x \leq 7\}$$

$$B = \{x : x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } 2 < x < 7\}$$

$$C = \{x : x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } 2 < x \leq 7\}$$

$$D = \{x : x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } 2 \leq x < 7\}.$$

Such sets are called intervals.

The set A is a closed interval and is denoted by $A = [2, 7]$. The set B is an open interval and is denoted by $B = (2, 7)$. The set C is an open closed interval and is denoted by $C = (2, 7]$. The set D is a closed open interval and is denoted by $D = [2, 7)$.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Decide whether or not the following are functions from A to B where $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$.

If they are functions, give the range of each. If they are not, tell, why?

(i) $f = \{(1, a), (2, b), (3, b), (5, e)\}$.

(ii) $g = \{(1, e), (5, d), (3, a), (2, b), (1, d), (4, a)\}$.

(iii) $h = \{(5, a), (1, e), (4, b), (3, c), (2, d)\}$.

Solution. (i) Since the element $4 \in A$ is not associated to any element $\in B$, therefore f is not a function from A to B .

(ii) The element $1 \in A$ is associated to two different elements e and $d \in B$. Therefore g is not a function from A to B .

(iii) Each element of A is associated to a unique element of B . Therefore h is a function from $A \rightarrow B$. The range of h is the set of the h -images of all elements of A . So range of $h = h(A) = \{a, e, b, c, d\} = B$.

Ex. 2. Let $A = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$. Let the function $f: A \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by the formula $f(x) = x^2 + 1$. Find the range of f .

Solution. The range of f consists of those elements of \mathbb{R} which appear as f -images of different elements of A . So we calculate the f -image of each element of A .

$$f(-2) = (-2)^2 + 1 = 5, f(-1) = (-1)^2 + 1 = 2,$$

$$f(0) = (0)^2 + 1 = 1, f(1) = (1)^2 + 1 = 1 + 1 = 2,$$

$$f(2) = (2)^2 + 1 = 4 + 1 = 5.$$

Thus the range of f is the set $\{5, 2, 1, 2, 5\}$, i.e., the set $\{5, 2, 1\}$.

Ex. 3. Each of the following formulas defines a function from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R} . Find the range of each function.

(i) $f(x) = x^3$, (ii) $g(x) = \sin x$, (iii) $h(x) = x^2 + 1$.

Solution. (i) We know that every real number a has a real cube root $\sqrt[3]{a}$. Therefore if a be any arbitrary element $\in \mathbb{R}$, then $f(\sqrt[3]{a}) = (\sqrt[3]{a})^3 = a$ i.e., $\sqrt[3]{a} \in \mathbb{R}$ is the pre-image of $a \in \mathbb{R}$. Since a is any arbitrary element $\in \mathbb{R}$, therefore the range of f is \mathbb{R} . This function will be an onto function.

(ii) The sine of any real number lies in the closed interval $[-1, 1]$. Also, all the numbers in this interval will be the sine of some real numbers. Hence the range of g is the closed interval $[-1, 1]$. This function will be an into function.

(iii) If we add 1 to the square of each real number, we get the set of numbers which are greater than or equal to 1. Let y be

any real number greater than or equal to 1 and let $y=h(x)=x^2+1$. Then $x=\pm\sqrt{(y-1)}$ are also real numbers.

Thus every real number which is greater than or equal to 1 is the h -image of some or other real number. Hence the range of h is the infinite interval $[1, \infty)$.

Ex. 4. Let Q be the set of rational numbers. Let $f: Q \rightarrow Q$ be defined by $f(x)=2x+3$, ($x \in Q$). Show that f is one-one. Also find a formula that defines the inverse function f^{-1} .

Solution. Let m and n be any two different elements in Q . Then $m \neq n \Rightarrow 2m \neq 2n \Rightarrow 2m+3 \neq 2n+3 \Rightarrow f(m) \neq f(n)$.

Thus different elements in Q have different f -images in Q . Hence f is one-one.

Let y be any arbitrary element in Q . If $y=f(x)=2x+3$, we have $x=(y-3)/2$ which is also a rational number.

Thus $f\left(\frac{y-3}{2}\right)=y$ i.e. any arbitrary element y in Q is the f -image of the element $(y-3)/2 \in Q$. Hence f is onto.

Since $f: Q \rightarrow Q$ is one-one onto, therefore f has an inverse function $f^{-1}: Q \rightarrow Q$.

Let y be the image of x under the function f . Then $y=f(x)=2x+3$. Consequently, x will be the image of y under the inverse function f^{-1} i.e., $x=f^{-1}(y)$. Solving for x in terms of y in the equation $y=2x+3$, we get $x=(y-3)/2$.

Thus $f^{-1}(y)=\frac{y-3}{2}$, ($y \in Q$) is the formula defining the inverse function $f^{-1}: Q \rightarrow Q$.

Note. In order to prove that the mapping f is one-one, we can also argue like this. Let m and n be any two elements in Q . Then $f(m)=f(n) \Rightarrow 2m+3=2n+3 \Rightarrow 2m=2n \Rightarrow m=n$. Therefore f is one-one.

Ex. 5. Let $X=\{x: x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } -\pi/2 \leq x \leq \pi/2\}$ i.e., let

$$X=[-\pi/2, \pi/2] \text{ and}$$

$$Y=\{y: Y \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } -1 \leq y \leq 1\} \text{ i.e., let } Y=[-1, 1].$$

Show that the function $f: X \rightarrow Y$ defined by

$$f(x)=\sin x, (x \in X), \text{ is one-one onto.}$$

Also give the inverse map $f^{-1}: Y \rightarrow X$.

Solution. Let m and n be any two different real numbers lying in the closed interval $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$. We know that any two different real numbers lying in the closed interval $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ have not the same sine.

$\therefore m \neq n \Rightarrow \sin m \neq \sin n \Rightarrow f(m) \neq f(n)$. Hence f is one-one.

Again if y is any arbitrary real number lying in the closed interval $[-1, 1]$, \exists a real number x lying in the closed interval $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ such that $\sin x = y$.

Thus every element y in Y is the f -image of some element x in X . Hence f is onto.

Thus $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is one-one onto, therefore f has an inverse function $f^{-1}: Y \rightarrow X$.

Let y be the image of x under the function f . Then $y = f(x) = \sin x$. Consequently, x will be the image of y under the inverse function f^{-1} i.e., $x = f^{-1}(y)$. Solving for x in terms of y , in the equation $y = \sin x$, we get $x = \sin^{-1} y$. Thus $f^{-1}(y) = \sin^{-1} y$, ($y \in Y$) is the formula defining the inverse function $f^{-1}: Y \rightarrow X$.

Ex. 6. Let C be the set of complex numbers. Prove that the map $f: C \rightarrow R$ given by $f(z) = |z|$, $z \in C$ is neither one-one nor onto.

Solution. Let $z = x + iy$ be any complex number, where $x, y \in R$ and $i = \sqrt{-1}$. Then $|z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$. Also $|z|$ is always a non-negative real number i.e., $|z| \geq 0$.

If m be any negative real number $\in R$, then there exists no complex number $z \in C$ such that $|z| = m$. Thus m is not the f -image of any complex number $\in C$. Hence f is not onto but is into.

Also $z_1 = 2 + i3 \in C$ and $z_2 = 2 - i3 \in C$. Then $|2 + i3| = \sqrt{13}$ and $|2 - i3| = \sqrt{13}$. Thus $z_1 \neq z_2$, although $|z_1| = |z_2|$ i.e., $f(z_1) = f(z_2)$. Thus we see that two different complex numbers z_1 and $z_2 \in C$ have the same f -image in R . Hence f is not one-one.

Ex. 7. If S and T are non-empty sets, prove that there exists a one-to-one correspondence between $S \times T$ and $T \times S$.

Solution. If $a \in S$ and $b \in T$, then the ordered pair $(a, b) \in S \times T$ and the ordered pair $(b, a) \in T \times S$. Let f be a mapping from $S \times T$ to $T \times S$ defined by the formula

$$f(a, b) = (b, a) \quad \forall (a, b) \in S \times T.$$

Here $f(a, b)$ denotes the image under the mapping f of the element $(a, b) \in S \times T$.

Obviously the mapping f is well-defined.

f is one-one. Let $(a, b), (c, d) \in S \times T$. Then $f(a, b) = f(c, d)$
 $\Rightarrow (b, a) = (d, c)$ [by def. of f]
 $\Rightarrow b = d, a = c \Rightarrow (a, b) = (c, d) \Rightarrow f$ is one-one.

f is onto. Let (y, z) be any element of $T \times S$. Then $y \in T, z \in S$. Therefore $(z, y) \in S \times T$. We have $f(z, y) = (y, z)$.

Thus $(y, z) \in T \times S \Rightarrow \exists (z, y) \in S \times T$ such that $f(z, y) = (y, z)$. Therefore f is onto.

Thus f is a one-one function from $S \times T$ onto $T \times S$. Therefore f gives a one-to-one correspondence between $S \times T$ and $T \times S$.

Ex. 8. Let R be the set of all real numbers. Using the fact that every cubic equation with real coefficients has a real root, show that $x \rightarrow x^3 - x$ defines a mapping of R onto R . Is this a one-one mapping?

Solution. If $x \in R$, then $x^3 - x \in R$ and is unique. Therefore $x \rightarrow x^3 - x$ defines a mapping of R to R .

Let y be any arbitrary element $\in R$ i.e., let y be any real number. Then $x^3 - x = y$ is a cubic equation with real coefficients. It will have at least one real root. Thus for any $y \in R$ there exists $x \in R$ such that $x^3 - x = y$. Therefore $x \rightarrow x^3 - x$ defines a mapping of R onto R .

Again $1 \rightarrow 1^3 - 1$ i.e., $1 \rightarrow 0$ and $-1 \rightarrow (-1)^3 - (-1)$ i.e., $-1 \rightarrow 0$. Thus the two elements 1 and $-1 \in R$ map onto the same element $0 \in R$. Hence the mapping is not one-one.

§ 24. Product or Composite of mappings.

Let f be a function of X to Y and let g be a function of Y to Z . Here the domain of the function g is the co-domain of the function f . Let x be any arbitrary element in X i.e., let $x \in X$. Then the image of x under f i.e., $f(x)$ is in Y . Since $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ and $f(x) \in Y$, therefore we can find the image of $f(x)$ under g i.e., we can find $g[f(x)]$ which will be in Z . Also $f(x)$ is unique and consequently $g[f(x)]$ is also unique. Thus we have a rule which assigns to each element $x \in X$ a unique element $g[f(x)] \in Z$. In this way we have a function of X to Z . This new function is called the *product function* or *composite function* of f and g and it is denoted by $(g \circ f)$ or (gf) .

Definition. Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $g : Y \rightarrow Z$.

Then the composite of the functions f and g denoted by $(g \circ f)$, is a mapping of $X \rightarrow Z$ given by

$(g \circ f) : X \rightarrow Z$ such that

$(g \circ f)(x) = g[f(x)], \forall x \in X$.

[Jabalpur 1970]

Example 1. Let $X = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $Y = \{a, b, c, d\}$ and

$Z = \{l, m, n\}$. Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ be defined by $f = \{(1, a), (2, c), (3, b), (4, a)\}$ and $g = \{(a, l), (b, l), (c, m), (d, m)\}$. Then the composite mapping $(g \circ f) : X \rightarrow Z$ may be computed in the following manner:

$(g \circ f)(1) = g[f(1)] = g(a) = l$, $(g \circ f)(2) = g[f(2)] = g(c) = m$,

$$(g \circ f)(3) = g[f(3)] = g(b) = l, (g \circ f)(4) = g[f(4)] = g(a) = l.$$

Thus $(g \circ f) : X \rightarrow Z$ is given by

$$g \circ f = \{(1, l), (2, m), (3, l), (4, l)\}.$$

Example 2. Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by the formula

$$f(x) = \sin x, (x \in \mathbb{R})$$

and the map $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by the formula

$$g(x) = x^2, (x \in \mathbb{R}).$$

The composite map $(g \circ f) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is given by the formula
 $(g \circ f)(x) = g[f(x)] = g(\sin x) = (\sin x)^2 = \sin^2 x, (x \in \mathbb{R}).$

Note. If $f : A \rightarrow A$ and $g : A \rightarrow A$, then we can find both the composite mappings $g \circ f$ and $f \circ g$. But in general $(g \circ f) \neq (f \circ g)$. As in example 2, the composite map $(f \circ g) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is given by the formula $(f \circ g)(x) = f[g(x)] = f(x^2) = \sin x^2, (x \in \mathbb{R}).$

We see that $(f \circ g) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $(g \circ f) : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ are defined by different formulas.

§ 25. Some Properties of Composites of Mappings.

Theorem 1. If $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a one-one and onto mapping, then

$$f \circ f^{-1} = I_Y \text{ and } f^{-1} \circ f = I_X,$$

where I_X and I_Y are the identity mappings of the sets X and Y respectively. (Allahabad 1980)

Proof. We shall first prove that $f^{-1} \circ f = I_X$.

Since $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$, therefore $(f^{-1} \circ f) : X \rightarrow X$.

Let x be any arbitrary element $\in X$ and let $f(x) = y$, where $y \in Y$. Then by the definition of the mapping f^{-1} , $f^{-1}(y) = x$.

We have $(f^{-1} \circ f)(x) = f^{-1}[f(x)] = f^{-1}(y) = x$. Thus the function $f^{-1} \circ f$ maps every element $x \in X$ onto itself. Therefore $f^{-1} \circ f = I_X$.

Now we shall prove that $f \circ f^{-1} = I_Y$. Since $f^{-1} : Y \rightarrow X$ and $f : X \rightarrow Y$, therefore $(f \circ f^{-1}) : Y \rightarrow Y$.

Let y be any arbitrary element $\in Y$ and let $f^{-1}(y) = x$, where $x \in X$. Then $f(x) = y$.

We have $(f \circ f^{-1})(y) = f[f^{-1}(y)] = f(x) = y$. Thus the function $f \circ f^{-1}$ maps every element $y \in Y$ onto itself. Therefore $f \circ f^{-1} = I_Y$.

Theorem 2. If $f : X \rightarrow Y$, then $I_Y \circ f = f$ and $f \circ I_X = f$ i.e., the product of any function with the identity function is the function itself.

Proof. Let x be any arbitrary element $\in X$ and let

$$f(x) = y, (x \in X, y \in Y).$$

Since $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $I_Y : Y \rightarrow Y$, therefore $(I_Y \circ f) : X \rightarrow Y$.

We have $(I_Y \circ f)(x) = I_Y[f(x)] = I_Y(y) = y$.

[$\therefore I_Y$ is the identity mapping of Y]

Also $f(x)=y$.

Thus $\forall x \in X, (I_Y \circ f)(x) = f(x)$. Therefore $I_Y \circ f = f$.

Again since $I_X : X \rightarrow X$ and $f : X \rightarrow Y$, therefore $f \circ I_X : X \rightarrow Y$.

We have $(f \circ I_X)(x) = f[I_X(x)] = f(x)$

$[\because I_X$ is the identity mapping of $X]$

Thus $\forall x \in X, (f \circ I_X)(x) = f(x)$. Therefore $f \circ I_X = f$.

Theorem 3. If $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ be two one-one onto maps, then $g \circ f : X \rightarrow Z$ is also one-one onto and

$$(g \circ f)^{-1} : Z \rightarrow X = (f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}) : Z \rightarrow X. \quad (\text{Punjab 1970})$$

Proof. We shall prove that

(i) $g \circ f$ is one-one, (ii) $g \circ f$ is onto, (iii) $(g \circ f)^{-1} = f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$.

(i) Let x_1 and x_2 be any two elements in X . The mapping $g \circ f$ will be one-one if we show that the images of x_1 and x_2 under this mapping are equal only if $x_1 = x_2$. We have

$$(g \circ f)(x_1) = (g \circ f)(x_2) \Rightarrow g[f(x_1)] = g[f(x_2)]$$

[by the definition of the composite mapping $g \circ f$]

$$\Rightarrow f(x_1) = f(x_2) \quad [\because f(x_1), f(x_2) \in Y \text{ and the mapping } g : Y \rightarrow Z \text{ is one-one}]$$

$$\Rightarrow x_1 = x_2 \quad [\because f \text{ is one-one}]$$

\therefore the mapping $g \circ f$ is one-one.

(ii) Let z be any arbitrary element of Z . Since g is an onto mapping of Y to Z , therefore $\exists y \in Y$, such that $g(y) = z$. Again, since f is an onto mapping of X to Y , therefore $\exists x \in X$, such that $f(x) = y$. Thus for every $z \in Z$, $\exists x \in X$, such that $z = g(y) = g[f(x)] = (g \circ f)(x)$. Therefore $g \circ f$ is a mapping of X onto Z .

Thus $g \circ f$ is one-one onto and hence is invertible.

(iii) Let z be any arbitrary element $\in Z$, such that $z = g(y)$, ($y \in Y, z \in Z$). Then $y = g^{-1}(z)$.

Also let $y = f(x)$, ($y \in Y, x \in X$). Then $x = f^{-1}(y)$.

We have $(g \circ f)(x) = g[f(x)] = g(y) = z$.

Since $g \circ f$ is one-one onto,

$$\therefore (g \circ f)(x) = z \Rightarrow (g \circ f)^{-1}(z) = x.$$

$$\text{Also } (f^{-1} \circ g^{-1})(z) = f^{-1}[g^{-1}(z)] = f^{-1}(y) = x.$$

$$\text{Thus } \forall z \in Z, (g \circ f)^{-1}(z) = (f^{-1} \circ g^{-1})(z).$$

Hence the mappings $(g \circ f)^{-1}$ and $f^{-1} \circ g^{-1}$ are equal.

Theorem 4. Associativity of Composites of Functions.

Let $f : A \rightarrow B, g : B \rightarrow C$ and $h : C \rightarrow D$, then

$$(h \circ g) \circ f = h \circ (g \circ f). \quad (\text{Jaipur 1970})$$

Proof. It can be easily seen that both $(h \circ g) \circ f$ and $h \circ (g \circ f)$ are mappings of A to D . These two mappings will be equal if they

assign the same image to each element x in the domain A , i.e., if

$$[(h \circ g) \circ f](x) = [h \circ (g \circ f)](x).$$

We have, by definition of composites of mappings,

$$\begin{aligned} [(h \circ g) \circ f](x) &= (h \circ g)[f(x)] = h[g\{f(x)\}] = h[(g \circ f)(x)] \\ &= [h \circ (g \circ f)](x). \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Hence } (h \circ g) \circ f = h \circ (g \circ f).$$

Theorem 5. Let $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow X$. Then g is the inverse function of f i.e., $g = f^{-1}$, if the product function $(g \circ f): X \rightarrow X$ is identity function on X and $(f \circ g): Y \rightarrow Y$ is the identity function on Y . (Punjab 1970)

Proof. In order to show that f is invertible, we are to show that f is one-one and onto.

(i) f is one-one. Let $x_1, x_2 \in X$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_1) = f(x_2) &\Rightarrow g[f(x_1)] = g[f(x_2)] \\ &\Rightarrow (g \circ f)(x_1) = (g \circ f)(x_2) \\ &\Rightarrow I(x_1) = I(x_2) \quad [\because g \circ f = I] \\ &\Rightarrow x_1 = x_2. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$ is one-one.

(ii) f is onto. Let y be any element of Y . Since g is a function from Y to X , therefore $g(y) \in X$.

Let $g(y) = x$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} g(y) = x &\Rightarrow f[g(y)] = f(x) \\ &\Rightarrow (f \circ g)(y) = f(x) \\ &\Rightarrow I(y) = f(x) \quad [\because f \circ g = I] \\ &\Rightarrow y = f(x). \end{aligned}$$

Thus $y \in Y \Rightarrow \exists x \in X$ such that $f(x) = y$. Therefore f is onto. Since f is 1-1 onto, therefore f is invertible i.e., f^{-1} exists.

(iii) Now we shall prove that $f^{-1} = g$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f \circ g = I &\Rightarrow f^{-1} \circ (f \circ g) = f^{-1} \circ I \\ &\Rightarrow (f^{-1} \circ f) \circ g = f^{-1} \Rightarrow I \circ g = f^{-1} \Rightarrow g = f^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Note. In a similar manner we can show that g is also invertible and $g^{-1} = f$.

Exercises

1. Define a 'function' giving examples, and distinguish between 'onto' and 'into' mappings. Give an example of a 'one-to-one correspondence' after defining it.

Let R_0 denote the set of all non-zero real numbers. Prove that the map $f: R_0 \rightarrow R_0$ given by $f(x) = 1/x$, $x \in R_0$ is both one-one and onto. (Meerut 1977)

2. Explain what do you understand by the domain and the range of a mapping. Obtain the domain and the range of the mapping

$$f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R} : f(x) = \sin x$$

where \mathbb{R} is the set of real numbers.

[Meerut 1976]

3. If \mathbb{R} is the set of all real numbers, show that $\phi: x \rightarrow x^3 + x^3$ defines a mapping of \mathbb{R} onto \mathbb{R} . Is ϕ one-one? Justify your answer.

4. Show that the mapping $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ defined by

$$f(x) = \cos x, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}$$

is neither one-one nor onto. Modify the domain and co-domain of this mapping so that it may be both one-one and onto.

5. Prove the following two results for a finite set S :

(i) If f maps S onto S then f is one-to-one.

(ii) If f is a one-one mapping of S into itself, then f is onto.

Prove, by example, that both (i) and (ii) are false if S is a set not having a finite number of elements.

6. Prove that the mapping $f: A \rightarrow B$ is one-one onto if and only if there exists a mapping $g: B \rightarrow A$ such that $g \circ f$ and $f \circ g$ are the identity mappings on A and B respectively.

7. If the mapping $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by $f(x) = 4x - 1$, and the mapping $g: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be given by $g(x) = x^3 + 2$, then find formulae defining $g \circ f$ and $f \circ g$.

[Kolhapur 1973]

8. If f and g are two mappings from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R} given by

$$f(x) = x^2 + 3x + 1, g(x) = 2x - 3,$$

then obtain formulae defining $f \circ g$ and $g \circ f$.

[Meerut 1973]

9. Give an example to show that composition of two functions is not in general commutative.

[Meerut 1974]

Answers

2. Domain $f = \mathbb{R}$, range $f =$ the closed interval $[-1, 1]$.

3. ϕ is not one-one. We have $\phi(0) = 0$, $\phi(-1) = 0$.

4. Take $X = \{x : x \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } -\pi/2 \leq x \leq \pi/2\}$ as the domain of f and $Y = \{y : y \in \mathbb{R} \text{ and } -1 \leq y \leq 1\}$ as the co-domain of f .

7. $(g \circ f)(x) = 64x^3 - 48x^2 + 12x + 1$, $(f \circ g)(x) = 4x^3 + 7$.

8. $(f \circ g)(x) = 4x^2 - 6x + 1$, $(g \circ f)(x) = 4x - 9$.

§ 26. **Binary Operation.** A binary operation " \circ " on a non-empty set A is a mapping which associates with each ordered pair (a, b) of elements of A , a uniquely defined element $c \in A$. Thus " \circ " is a mapping of the product set $A \times A$ to A . Symbolically, a map $\circ: A \times A \rightarrow A$, is called a binary operation on the set A .

The \circ -image of the element $(a, b) \in A \times A$ is denoted by $a \circ b$.

If a set A is closed with respect to the composition \circ , then we say that \circ is a binary operation on the set A .

Example 1. The composition of addition is a binary operation on the set of even natural numbers. The sum of two even natural numbers is also an even natural number. Thus the set of even natural numbers is closed under the composition of addition. On the other hand, addition is not a binary operation on the set of odd natural numbers. The sum of two odd natural numbers is an even natural number. Thus the sum of two odd natural numbers does not belong to the set of odd natural numbers. In this way the set of odd natural numbers is not closed under addition.

Example 2. The set of natural numbers N is not closed under subtraction. For example, $4 \in N$ and $3 \in N$, but $3 - 4 \notin N$. Thus subtraction is not a binary operation on N . On the other hand, the students may verify that subtraction is a binary operation on I .

§ 27. Types of Binary Operations.

Commutative Operations. A binary operation \circ on a set A is called commutative if $a \circ b = b \circ a$, for every $a, b \in A$.

Example. Addition and multiplication are commutative binary operations on the set of real numbers since

$$a + b = b + a \text{ and } ab = ba, \text{ (for all } a, b \in \mathbb{R}).$$

Associative Operations. A binary operation \circ on a set A is called associative if $(a \circ b) \circ c = a \circ (b \circ c)$, (for every $a, b, c \in A$).

Example 1. Addition and multiplication are associative binary operations on N , since

$$a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c \text{ and } a(bc) = (ab)c, \text{ (for every } a, b, c \in N).$$

Example 2. Let \circ be a binary operation on \mathbb{R} defined by

$$a \circ b = a + 2b \text{ for all } a, b \in \mathbb{R}.$$

$$\text{Then } (a \circ b) \circ c = (a + 2b) \circ c = a + 2b + 2c,$$

$$\text{and } a \circ (b \circ c) = a \circ (b + 2c) = a + 2(b + 2c) = a + 2b + 4c.$$

$$\text{Thus } (a \circ b) \circ c \neq a \circ (b \circ c), \text{ for every } a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Hence \circ is not an associative binary operation on \mathbb{R} .

Distributive Operations. Let A be a set on which two binary operations denoted by \circ and $*$ are defined. The operation $*$ is said to be left distributive with respect to \circ if

$$a * (b \circ c) = (a * b) \circ (a * c), \text{ for all } a, b, c \in A \quad \dots(1)$$

and is said to be right distributive with respect to \circ if

$$(b \circ c) * a = (b * a) \circ (c * a), \text{ for all } a, b, c \in A. \quad \dots(2)$$

When both (1) and (2) hold, we say simply that $*$ is distributive with respect to \circ .

If \circ is commutative, then (2) will hold if (1) holds and vice-versa.

Example. For the set R of all real numbers, multiplication (\cdot) is distributive with respect to addition ($+$), since

$$a \cdot (b+c) = a \cdot b + a \cdot c \text{ and } (b+c) \cdot a = b \cdot a + c \cdot a \quad \forall a, b, c \in R.$$

But addition is not distributive with respect to multiplication, since $a + (b \cdot c) \neq (a+b) \cdot (a+c)$, for every $a, b, c \in R$.

Identity Element. Let $\circ : A \times A \rightarrow A$ be a binary operation on A . An element $e \in A$ is called an identity element for the operation \circ if

$$e \circ a = a \circ e = a, \text{ for every } a \in A.$$

Example 1. Let Q be the set of all rational numbers. Then 0 is an identity element for the binary operation of addition on Q since $0 + a = a + 0 = a$ for every $a \in Q$.

Example 2. For the binary operation of addition on N , there is no identity element, but 1 is an identity element with respect to multiplication. We have $1 \cdot a = a \cdot 1 = a$, for every $a \in N$.

Inversible elements for a binary operation with identity.

An element a of a set A is said to be invertible for a binary operation \circ with identity e if $\exists b \in A$ such that

$$a \circ b = e = b \circ a.$$

Also then b is said to be an inverse of a and is denoted by a^{-1} .

The invertible elements in A are also called the units in A .

The identity element is always invertible and is its own inverse, since $e \circ e = e \circ e = e$. Thus $e^{-1} = e$.

Example 1. The inverse with respect to addition, or additive inverse of $x \in R$ is $-x$, since $x + (-x) = (-x) + x = 0$, where 0 is the additive identity element of R .

Example 2. For the operation of multiplication on Q , 1 is the identity and every element other than 0 is invertible.

Example 3. For the operation of multiplication on N , 1 is the identity and no element except 1 is invertible.

Exercises

1. Define a binary operation. Show that the relation \circ given by $a \circ b = a^b$ is a binary operation on the set of natural numbers. Is this binary operation associative? (Kumayon 1979)

2. Let S be a non-empty set and \circ be a binary operation on S defined by $x \circ y = x$, $x, y \in S$.

Determine whether \circ is commutative and associative.

(Sambalpur 1977)

§ 28. Relation. Definition. Let A and B be two sets. A relation from A to B is a subset of $A \times B$. Symbolically, R is a relation from A to B iff $R \subseteq A \times B$.

Example 1. Let P be a well-defined set of persons, say, P be the set of all persons living in a certain locality of Meerut. Then the statement " x is a son of y where $x, y \in P$ " determines a relation in P . If we denote this relation by R , then R will be the set of all ordered pairs of people belonging to P in which the first co-ordinate is a son of the second co-ordinate. Obviously R will be a subset of $P \times P$. It must be noted that the relation R is the set R and not the verbal phrase, 'is a son of'.

Several other relations may be defined in the above set P . For example, the statements " x is a daughter of y ", " x is the father of y ", " x is the mother of y ", " x is the husband of y " all determine relations in P .

Example 2. Let I be the set of all integers. The statement " x is less than y where $x, y \in I$ " determines a relation in I . If we denote this relation by R , then we may describe the set R in the set builder notation as $R = \{(x, y) : x \in I, y \in I, x < y\}$.

Suppose R is a relation and (x, y) is an element of the relation R . If $(x, y) \in R$, then sometimes we write xRy which is read as " x is R -related to y ". If $(x, y) \notin R$, then sometimes we write $x \not R y$ which is read as " x is not R -related to y ". Let I be the set of all integers and let $R = \{(x, y) : x \in I, y \in I, x < y\}$. Since 2 is less than 3, therefore the ordered pair $(2, 3) \in R$ and we write $2R3$. On the other hand 4 is not less than 3. Therefore the ordered pair $(4, 3) \notin R$ and we write $4 \not R 3$.

§ 29. Domain and Range of a relation. Let R be a relation from A to B , i.e. let R be a subset of $A \times B$. The domain D of the relation R is the set of all first elements of the ordered pairs which belong to R . Symbolically,

$$D = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } (x, y) \in R \text{ for some } y \in B\}.$$

The range E of the relation R is the set of all second elements of the ordered pairs which belong to R . Symbolically,

$$E = \{y : y \in B \text{ and } (x, y) \in R \text{ for some } x \in A\}.$$

Obviously $D \subseteq A$ and $E \subseteq B$.

Example. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $B = \{a, b, c\}$.

Every subset of $A \times B$ is a relation from A to B . So if $R = \{(2, a), (4, a), (4, c)\}$, then the domain of R is the set $\{2, 4\}$ and the range of R is the set $\{a, c\}$.

§ 30. Total number of distinct relations from a set A to a set B . Suppose the set A has m elements and the set B has n elements. Then the product set $A \times B$ will have mn elements. Therefore the power set of $A \times B$ i.e., $P(A \times B)$ will have 2^{mn} elements. Thus $A \times B$ has 2^{mn} different subsets. Now every subset of $A \times B$ is a relation from A to B . Hence we shall have 2^{mn} different relations from A to B .

§ 31. Inverse Relation. Definition. Let R be a relation from A to B . The inverse relation of R , denoted by R^{-1} is a relation from B to A defined by

$$R^{-1} = \{(y, x) : y \in B, x \in A, (x, y) \in R\}.$$

In other words, the inverse relation R^{-1} consists of those ordered pairs which when reversed belong to R . Obviously xRy iff $yR^{-1}x$. Thus $(x, y) \in R \Leftrightarrow (y, x) \in R^{-1}$.

Example. Let $A = \{a, b, c\}$, $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and

$$R = \{(a, 1), (a, 3), (b, 3), (c, 3)\}.$$
 Then

$$R^{-1} = \{(1, a), (3, a), (3, b), (3, c)\}.$$

Theorem. If R is a relation from A to B , then the domain of R is identical with the range of R^{-1} and the range of R is identical with the domain of R^{-1} .

Proof. Let $y \in \text{domain of } R^{-1}$. Then $y \in B$, and $\exists x \in A$ such that $(y, x) \in R^{-1}$.

Now $(y, x) \in R^{-1} \Rightarrow (x, y) \in R \Rightarrow y \in \text{Range of } R$.

Thus $y \in \text{domain of } R^{-1} \Rightarrow y \in \text{Range of } R$.

$\therefore \text{domain of } R^{-1} \subseteq \text{range of } R$.

Similarly $\text{range of } R \subseteq \text{domain of } R^{-1}$.

Hence $\text{Domain of } R^{-1} = \text{Range of } R$.

Similarly we can prove that $\text{Domain of } R = \text{Range of } R^{-1}$.

Note. If R be a relation from A to B , then it can be easily proved that $(R^{-1})^{-1} = R$.

§ 32. Difference between Relations and Functions.

Suppose A and B are two sets. Let f be a function from A to B . Then from our definition of function, f is a subset of $A \times B$ in which each $a \in A$ appears in one and only one ordered pair belonging to f . In other words f is a subset of $A \times B$ satisfying the following two conditions :

- (i) for each $a \in A$, $(a, b) \in f$ for some $b \in B$,
- (ii) if $(a, b) \in f$ and $(a, b') \in f$ then $b = b'$.

On the other hand every subset of $A \times B$ is a relation from A to B . Thus every function is a relation but every relation is not a

function. If R is a relation from A to B then domain of R may be a subset of A . But if f is a function from A to B , then domain of f is equal to A . In a relation from A to B an element of A may be related to more than one element in B . Also there may be some elements of A which may not be related to any element in B . But in a function from A to B each element of A must be associated to one and only one element of B .

Example. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, $B = \{a, b, c\}$.

Let $R = \{(1, a), (2, a), (3, b), (4, b)\}$.

Then R is a function from A to B . Obviously R is also a relation from A to B . But consider the subset S of $A \times B$ given by

$$S = \{(1, a), (2, b), (1, c), (3, a), (4, b)\}.$$

Here S is a relation from A to B . But S is not a function from A to B . The obvious reason is that the element $1 \in A$ is associated to two different elements a and $c \in B$.

§ 33. Relations in a set. Let R be a relation from A to B . If $B = A$, then we do not speak that R is a relation from A to A , but we say that R is a relation in A . Thus a relation in a set A is a subset of the Cartesian product $A \times A$.

Identity relation in a set.

(Gorakhpur 1970)

Definition. Let A be a set. The relation I_A defined by $I_A = \{(x, y) : x \in A, y \in A, x = y\}$ is called the identity relation in A . Thus the identity relation in a set A is the set of the ordered pairs (x, y) of $A \times A$ for which $x = y$. If $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$, then

$$I_A = \{(1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5)\}.$$

Universal relation in a set. Let A be any set and R be the set $A \times A$. Then R is called the universal relation in A .

Void relation in a set. Every subset of $A \times A$ is a relation in A . Since \emptyset is also a subset of $A \times A$, therefore the null set \emptyset is also a relation in A . This relation is called the void relation in A .

§ 34. Properties of Relations in a Set. We often come across the following special types of relations in a set :

1. Reflexive relations. Let R be a relation in a set A i.e., let R be a subset of $A \times A$. Then R is called a reflexive relation if

$$(a, a) \in R, \forall a \in A.$$

Thus R is reflexive if we have $aRa, \forall a \in A$.

A relation R in a set A is not reflexive if there is at least one element $a \in A$, such that $(a, a) \notin R$.

Example 1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. Then

(i) The relation $R_1 = \{(1, 1), (2, 4), (3, 3), (4, 1), (4, 4)\}$ in A is not reflexive since $2 \in A$ and $(2, 2) \notin R_1$.

(ii) The relation $R_2 = \{(1, 1), (1, 3), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (3, 4)\}$ in A is reflexive since $(a, a) \in R_2$ for every $a \in A$.

Example 2. Let N be the set of all natural numbers. The relation R in N defined by " x is a divisor of y " is reflexive since each natural number is a divisor of itself. It should be noted that it is usual to write $a \mid b$, $a \in N$, $b \in N$ to denote that a is a divisor of b .

The relation in N defined by " $x < y$ " is not reflexive, since a is not less than a for any natural number a .

But the relation in N defined by " $x \leq y$ " is reflexive since $a \leq a$ for every $a \in N$.

2. Symmetric Relations. Let R be a relation in a set A , i.e., let R be a subset of $A \times A$. Then R is said to be a symmetric relation if $(a, b) \in R \Rightarrow (b, a) \in R$.

Thus R is symmetric if we have bRa whenever we have aRb .

A relation R in a set A is not symmetric if there exist two distinct elements $a, b \in A$, such that aRb , but $b \not R a$.

Example 1. Let L be the set of all straight lines in a plane. The relation R in L defined by " x is perpendicular to y " is symmetric, since if straight line a is perpendicular to straight line b , then b is also perpendicular to a . Thus $aRb \Rightarrow bRa$. The relation in L defined by " x is parallel to y " is also symmetric.

Example 2. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and $R = \{(1, 2), (3, 4), (2, 1), (3, 3)\}$. Here we see that $(3, 4) \in R$ but $(4, 3) \notin R$. Therefore R is not symmetric. On the other hand, the relation $R_1 = \{(1, 1), (4, 1), (1, 4)\}$ defined in A is symmetric.

3. Anti-Symmetric relations. Let R be a relation in a set A i.e. let R be a subset of $A \times A$. Then R is said to be an anti-symmetric relation if $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, a) \in R \Rightarrow a = b$.

Thus R is anti-symmetric if we have never both aRb and bRa except when $a = b$.

A relation R in a set A is not anti-symmetric if there exist elements $a \in A$, $b \in A$, $a \neq b$, such that aRb and bRa .

Example. Let N be the set of all natural numbers. Let R be the relation in N defined by " x is a divisor of y ". Then R is anti-symmetric since $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a \Rightarrow a = b$. If $a \neq b$, we cannot have both $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$.

4. Transitive Relations. Let R be a relation in a set A , i.e., let R be a subset of $A \times A$. Then R is said to be a transitive relation if $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, c) \in R \Rightarrow (a, c) \in R$.

A relation R in a set A is not transitive if there exist elements a, b and $c \in A$, not necessarily distinct, such that

$$(a, b) \in R, (b, c) \in R \text{ but } (a, c) \notin R.$$

Example 1. Let L be the set of all straight lines in a plane and R be the relation in L defined by " x is perpendicular to y ". If straight line a is perpendicular to b and b is perpendicular to c , then a is parallel to c , i.e., a is not perpendicular to c . Thus aRb and $bRc \Rightarrow \neg aRc$. Hence R is not transitive.

Example 2. Let N be the set of all natural numbers and let R be the relation in N defined by " x is less than y ". Since $a < b$ and $b < c \Rightarrow a < c$, therefore R is transitive.

§ 35. Equivalence Relations. Definition.

Let R be a relation in a set A . Then R is an equivalence relation in A iff

- (i) R is reflexive, i.e., $\forall a \in A, aRa$.
- (ii) R is symmetric, i.e., $aRb \Rightarrow bRa$.
- (iii) R is transitive, i.e., aRb and $bRc \Rightarrow aRc$.

The equivalence relation is usually denoted by the symbol \sim .

Example 1. Let A be the set of all triangles in a plane. Let R be the relation in A defined as xRy iff x is congruent to $y, x \in A, y \in A$. Here we observe that

(i) xRx , for every $x \in A$, since every triangle is congruent to itself. Thus R is reflexive.

(ii) $xRy \Rightarrow yRx$, since if triangle x is congruent to triangle y , then y is congruent to x . Thus R is symmetric.

(iii) xRy and $yRz \Rightarrow xRz$, since if triangle x is congruent to y , and triangle y is congruent to z , then triangle x is congruent to z . Thus R is transitive.

Since R is reflexive, symmetric and transitive, therefore R is an equivalence relation.

Example 2. Let I be the set of all integers. Let us define a relation R in I , such that xRy holds iff $x - y$ is divisible by 5, $x \in I, y \in I$, i.e. let $R = \{(x, y) : x \in I, y \in I, x - y \text{ is divisible by } 5\}$.

Here we have

(i) For each $x \in I, x - x = 0$ and 0 is divisible by 5. Thus $\forall x \in I$, we have xRx . Therefore R is reflexive.

(ii) Suppose xRy ; then $x-y$ is divisible by 5 and hence $(y-x) = -(x-y)$ is also divisible by 5. Thus $xRy \Rightarrow yRx$. Therefore R is symmetric.

(iii) Suppose xRy and yRz ; then $(x-y)$ and $(y-z)$ are both divisible by 5. Hence 5 is also a divisor of $(x-y) + (y-z)$, i.e., 5 is also a divisor of $(x-z)$. Thus xRy and $yRz \Rightarrow xRz$. Therefore R is transitive.

Since R is reflexive, symmetric and transitive, therefore R is an equivalence relation.

Note. An integer a is said to be congruent to another integer b modulo a fixed positive integer m if $a-b$ is divisible by m i.e., if \exists an integer k such that $a-b = mk$. Symbolically, we write
$$a \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

Thus in the above example, we have proved that congruence modulo 5 is an equivalence relation in the set of all integers.

§ 36. Equivalence Classes or Equivalence Sets.

Let A be a non-empty set and let R be an equivalence relation in A . Further let a be an arbitrary element of A . The elements $x \in A$ satisfying xRa constitute a subset A_a of A , called an equivalence class of a with respect to R . We shall denote this equivalence class by A_a or by $[a]$ or by \bar{a} . Thus symbolically,

$$A_a \text{ or } [a] \text{ or } \bar{a} = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } (x, a) \in R \text{ i.e., } xRa\}$$

Example 1. Let A be the set of all triangles in a plane and let R be an equivalence relation in A defined by " x is congruent to y ", $x \in A$, $y \in A$. When $a \in A$ we shall mean by the equivalence class $[a]$ the set of all triangles of A congruent to the triangle a . Similarly when $b \in A$ we shall mean by the equivalence class $[b]$ the set of all triangles of A congruent to the triangle b .

Example 2. Let us determine the equivalence classes in the set I of all integers with respect to the equivalence relation 'congruence modulo 5'. The integers congruent to 0 modulo 5 form an equivalence class I_0 . The elements of this class are the multiples of 5 i.e., integers expressible as $5k$ for some integer k . The integers congruent to 1 modulo 5 form another equivalence class I_1 . The elements of this class are those integers which leave remainder 1 when divided by 5 i.e., the integers expressible as $5k+1$ for some integer k . The integers congruent to 2 modulo 5 form a third equivalence class I_2 . This class consists of all integers expressible as $5k+2$ for some integer k . The integers congruent to 3 modulo

5 form a fourth equivalence class I_3 . This class consists of all integers expressible as $5k+3$ for some integer k . The integers congruent to 4 modulo 5 form a fifth equivalence class I_4 . This class consists of all integers which leave remainder 4 when divided by 5 i.e., which are expressible as $5k+4$ for some integer k . But every integer is expressible as $5k, 5k+1, 5k+2, 5k+3$ or $5k+4$ for some integer k . Thus we see that the set of all integers can be divided into the following five equivalence classes with respect to the relation congruence modulo 5 :

(i) $I_0 = \{ \dots, -10, -5, 0, 5, 10, \dots \}$

(ii) $I_1 = \{ \dots, -9, -4, 1, 6, 11, \dots \}$

(iii) $I_2 = \{ \dots, -8, -3, 2, 7, 12, \dots \}$

(iv) $I_3 = \{ \dots, -7, -2, 3, 8, 13, \dots \}$

(v) $I_4 = \{ \dots, -6, -1, 4, 9, 14, \dots \}$.

These classes have the following properties :—

(i) The set I is the union of these five non-empty classes.

(ii) Integers in each class have a relation of congruence modulo 5 with one another.

(iii) Integers in different classes do not have a relation of congruence modulo 5 with one another.

(iv) The classes are mutually disjoint i.e., no two of them have any elements in common.

§ 37. Properties of Equivalence classes.

Let A be a non-empty set and let R be an equivalence relation in

A. Let a and b be arbitrary elements in A . Then

(i) $a \in [a]$.

(ii) If $b \in [a]$, then $[b] = [a]$.

(iii) $[a] = [b]$ iff $(a, b) \in R$ i.e., iff aRb .

(iv) Either $[a] = [b]$ or $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$ i.e., two equivalence classes are either disjoint or identical. [Allahabad 1980]

Proof.

(i) Since R is reflexive, we have aRa . But $[a] = \{x : x \in A \text{ and } xRa\}$. Hence $aRa \Rightarrow a \in [a]$.

(ii) We have $b \in [a] \Rightarrow bRa$.

Let x be any arbitrary element of $[b]$. Then $x \in [b] \Rightarrow xRb$. But R is transitive, therefore xRb and $bRa \Rightarrow xRa \Rightarrow x \in [a]$. Thus $x \in [b] \Rightarrow x \in [a]$. Therefore $[b] \subseteq [a]$.

Again let y be any arbitrary element of $[a]$. Then $y \in [a] \Rightarrow yRa$. Since R is symmetric, therefore $bRa \Rightarrow aRb$.

Now yRa and $aRb \Rightarrow yRb$ [$\because R$ is transitive]
 $\Rightarrow y \in [b]$.

Thus $y \in [a] \Rightarrow y \in [b]$. Therefore $[a] \subseteq [b]$.

Finally $[a] \subseteq [b]$ and $[b] \subseteq [a] \Rightarrow [a] = [b]$.

(iii) Suppose $[a] = [b]$. Then to prove that aRb .

Since R is reflexive, therefore we have aRa .

Now $aRa \Rightarrow a \in [a]$
 $\Rightarrow a \in [b] \quad [\because [a] = [b]]$
 $\Rightarrow aRb$.

Thus $[a] = [b] \Rightarrow aRb$.

Converse. Suppose that aRb . Then to prove that $[a] = [b]$.

Let x be any arbitrary element of $[a]$. Then xRa . But it is given that aRb . Therefore

xRa and $aRb \Rightarrow xRb \quad [\because R \text{ is transitive}]$
 $\Rightarrow x \in [b]$.

Thus $x \in [a] \Rightarrow x \in [b]$. Therefore $[a] \subseteq [b]$.

Again let y be any arbitrary element of $[b]$. Then

$y \in [b] \Rightarrow yRb$.

Now we are given that aRb . From this we have bRa , since R is symmetric. Now

yRb and $bRa \Rightarrow yRa \quad [\because R \text{ is transitive}]$
 $\Rightarrow y \in [a]$.

Thus $y \in [b] \Rightarrow y \in [a]$. Therefore $[b] \subseteq [a]$.

Hence $[a] \subseteq [b]$ and $[b] \subseteq [a] \Rightarrow [a] = [b]$.

Finally, since $[a] = [b] \Rightarrow aRb$ and $aRb \Rightarrow [a] = [b]$, therefore $[a] = [b]$ if and only if aRb .

(iv) If $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$, then we are nothing to prove. So let us suppose that $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$. Then to prove that $[a] = [b]$.

Since $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$, therefore there exists an element $x \in A$ such that $x \in [a] \cap [b]$.

Now $x \in [a] \cap [b] \Rightarrow x \in [a]$ and $x \in [b]$

$\Rightarrow xRa$ and xRb

$\Rightarrow aRx$ and xRb

$[\text{Since } R \text{ is symmetric, therefore } xRa \Rightarrow aRx]$

$\Rightarrow aRb$

$[\because R \text{ is transitive}]$

$\Rightarrow [a] = [b]$

$[\text{by part (iii)}]$

Thus $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset \Rightarrow [a] = [b]$.

In other words if $[a] \neq [b]$, then $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$.

§ 38. Partitions. Definition.

Let S be a non-empty set. A set $P = \{A, B, C, \dots\}$ of non-empty subsets of S will be called a partition of S if

(i) $A \cup B \cup C \dots = S$ i.e., the set S is the union of the sets in \mathcal{P} and

(ii) the intersection of every pair of distinct subsets of $S \in \mathcal{P}$ is the null set i.e., if A and $B \in \mathcal{P}$ then either $A=B$ or $A \cap B = \emptyset$.

Example 1. Consider the set $S = \{1, 2, \dots, 9, 10\}$ and its subsets $B_1 = \{1, 3\}$, $B_2 = \{7, 8, 10\}$, $B_3 = \{2, 5, 6\}$, $B_4 = \{4, 9\}$.

The set $\mathcal{P} = \{B_1, B_2, B_3, B_4\}$ is such that

(i) B_1, B_2, B_3, B_4 are all non-empty subsets of S .

(ii) $B_1 \cup B_2 \cup B_3 \cup B_4 = S$, and

(iii) For any sets B_i , either $B_i = B_j$ or $B_i \cap B_j = \emptyset$.

Hence the set $\{B_1, B_2, B_3, B_4\}$ is a partition of S .

Example 2. Let I be the set of all integers.

We know that $x \equiv y \pmod{5}$ is an equivalence relation in I . Consider the set of five equivalence classes I_0, I_1, I_2, I_3, I_4 , where

$$I_0 = \{\dots, -10, -5, 0, 5, 10, \dots\}$$

$$I_1 = \{\dots, -9, -4, 1, 6, 11, \dots\}$$

$$I_2 = \{\dots, -8, -3, 2, 7, 12, \dots\}$$

$$I_3 = \{\dots, -7, -2, 3, 8, 13, \dots\}$$

$$I_4 = \{\dots, -6, -1, 4, 9, 14, \dots\}$$

We observe that

(i) the sets I_0, I_1, I_2, I_3 and I_4 are non-empty,

(ii) the sets I_0, I_1, I_2, I_3 and I_4 are pairwise disjoint,

(iii) $I = I_0 \cup I_1 \cup I_2 \cup I_3 \cup I_4$.

Hence $\{I_0, I_1, I_2, I_3, I_4\}$ is a partition of I .

§ 39. Relation induced by a partition of a set. Corresponding to any partition of a set S , we can define a relation R in S by the requirement that xRy iff x and y belong to the same subset of S belonging to the partition. The relation R is then said to be induced by the partition.

Example. Consider the subsets

$$A = \{3, 6, 9, \dots, 24\}, B = \{1, 4, 7, \dots, 25\},$$

$$C = \{2, 5, 8, \dots, 23\} \text{ of } S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots, 25\}.$$

Obviously $A \cup B \cup C = S$ and $A \cap B = A \cap C = B \cap C = \emptyset$, so that $\{A, B, C\}$ is a partition of S . If R be the relation induced by this partition, then we have xRy iff x and y belong to the same subset A, B, C .

§ 40. Fundamental Theorem on Equivalence Relations. *An equivalence relation R in a non-empty set S determines a partition of S and conversely, a partition of S defines an equivalence relation in S .* (Kolhapur 1973)

Proof. Let R be an equivalence relation in S . Let A be the set of equivalence classes of S with respect to R i.e., let

$$A = \{[a] : a \in S\}$$

where $[a] = \{x : x \in S \text{ and } xRa\}$.

Now R is an equivalence relation. Therefore $\forall a \in S$, we have aRa . Hence $a \in [a]$ and thus $[a] \neq \emptyset$.

Further every element a of S is an element of the equivalence class $[a]$ in A . From this we conclude that $S = \bigcup_{a \in S} [a]$.

Finally, if $[a]$ and $[b]$ are two equivalence classes then either $[a] = [b]$ or $[a] \cap [b] = \emptyset$. [For proof see § 37 part iv].

Hence A is a partition of S . Thus we see that an equivalence relation R in S decomposes the set S into equivalence classes any two of which are either equal or mutually disjoint.

Converse. Let $P = \{T_a, T_b, T_c, \dots\}$ be any partition of S . If $p, q \in S$, let us define a relation R in S by pRq iff there is a T_i in the partition such that $p, q \in T_i$.

Now $S = T_a \cup T_b \cup T_c \dots$. Therefore $\forall x \in S$, there exists $T_i \in P$ such that $x \in T_i$.

Hence $x \in T_i$ and $x \in T_i$ means xRx . Thus $\forall x \in S$, we have xRx and thus R is reflexive.

Again if we have xRy , then there exists $T_i \in P$ such that $x \in T_i$ and $y \in T_i$.

But $x \in T_i$ and $y \in T_i \Rightarrow y \in T_i$ and $x \in T_i \Rightarrow yRx$.

Therefore R is symmetric.

Finally suppose xRy and yRz . Then by the definition of R there exist subsets T_j and T_k (not necessarily distinct) such that $x, y \in T_j$ and $y, z \in T_k$. Since $y \in T_j$ and also $y \in T_k$, therefore $T_j \cap T_k \neq \emptyset$. But T_j and T_k belong to a partition of S . Therefore $T_j \cap T_k \neq \emptyset$ implies $T_j = T_k$. Now $T_j = T_k$ implies $x, z \in T_j$ and consequently we have xRz . Thus R is transitive.

Since R is reflexive, symmetric and transitive, therefore R is an equivalence relation.

§ 41. Quotient Set. Definition.

Let S be any non-empty set and let R be an equivalence relation defined in S . The set of mutually disjoint equivalence classes in

which S is partitioned relatively to the equivalence relation R , is said to be the Quotient set S for the equivalence relation R , and is denoted by S/R or by \bar{S} .

The quotient set of I for the equivalence relation congruence modulo 5 is the set

$$I/R = \{I_0, I_1, I_2, I_3, I_4\}$$

or

$$I/R = \{[0], [1], [2], [3], [4]\}.$$

§ 42. Partial Order Relations. Definition. A relation R in a set S is called a partial order relation iff it satisfies the following three conditions :

- (i) $aRa, \forall a \in S$; (reflexivity),
- (ii) aRb and $bRa \Rightarrow a=b$, (anti-symmetry),
- (iii) aRb and $bRc \Rightarrow aRc$, (transitivity).

Example. In the set N of all natural numbers, the relation R defined by aRb iff a divides b is a partial order relation.

We have, $\forall a \in N$, a is a divisor of a i.e., aRa . Therefore R is reflexive.

Again, if a is a divisor of b then b cannot be a divisor of a unless $a=b$. Thus aRb and $bRa \Rightarrow a=b$. Therefore R is anti-symmetric.

Finally a is a divisor of b and b is a divisor of c implies a is a divisor of c . Therefore R is transitive.

Since R is reflexive, anti-symmetric and transitive, therefore R is a partial order relation.

Exercises

1. Give an example of a relation which is reflexive but is neither symmetric nor transitive. (Meerut 1977)

2. Give an example of a relation which is,

(i) reflexive, symmetric but not transitive. (Kolhapur 1973)

(ii) symmetric and transitive but not reflexive.

3. Is the relation 'is brother of' an equivalence relation on a set of human beings? Why?

4. Let I be the set of all integers. Let m be any fixed positive integer. Then an integer a is said to be congruent to another integer b modulo m if $a-b$ is divisible by m i.e., if there exists an integer k such that $a-b=km$. Symbolically, we write

$$a \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

Show that the relation 'congruent modulo m ' is an equivalence relation in the set of integers.

5. Define the terms '*inverse, reflexive, symmetric and transitive relations*' and illustrate them by examples. Is function a relation? When is a relation in a set an equivalence relation? Prove that any two equivalence classes are either identical or they have null intersection. Hence define a quotient set.

6. Explain fully what you mean by partitions of a set and equivalence relation in a set by means of examples. Find all the partitions of $\{1, 2, 3\}$.

7. Prove that the relation of similarity in the set of all triangles in a plane is an equivalence relation.

8. Consider the set $N \times N$ the set of ordered pairs of natural numbers. Let R be the relation in $N \times N$ which is defined by

$$(a, b) R (c, d)$$

if and only if $ad = bc$.

Prove that R is an equivalence relation and therefore induces a partition of $N \times N$.

9. Show that if R and R' are symmetric relations in a set A , then $R \cap R'$ and $R \cup R'$ are also symmetric relations in A .

10. If R and S are two equivalence relations, then check $R \cup S$ for

(i) reflexivity, (ii) transitivity and (iii) symmetry.

11. If R and S are equivalence relations in a set X , prove that $R \cap S$ is an equivalence relation in X .

12. Define a relation and a function and give examples to illustrate the difference between the two. Give an example of a relation which is reflexive and transitive but is not symmetric.

Answers

1. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$. Then the relation $R = \{(1, 1), (2, 3), (2, 2), (3, 3), (1, 2)\}$ is reflexive but is neither symmetric nor transitive.

3. No. Suppose x is a female human being. Then x is not a brother of x and so $x \not R x$. Thus the relation is not reflexive. Note that this relation is also not symmetric.

6. Partitions of $\{1, 2, 3\}$ are

(i) $\{\{1, 2, 3\}\}$, (ii) $\{\{1\}, \{2\}, \{3\}\}$, (iii) $\{\{1, 2\}, \{3\}\}$,
(iv) $\{\{2, 3\}, \{1\}\}$, (v) $\{\{3, 1\}, \{2\}\}$.

10. $R \cup S$ is reflexive and symmetric but is not necessarily transitive.

§ 1. Binary operation on a set. Let G be a non-empty set. Then $G \times G = \{(a, b) : a \in G, b \in G\}$. If $f : G \times G \rightarrow G$, then f is said to be a binary operation on the set G . The image of the ordered pair (a, b) under the function f is denoted by $a f b$. Often we use symbols $+$, \times , \cdot , \circ etc. to denote binary operations on a set. Thus ' $+$ ' will be a binary operation on G iff

$$a + b \in G \quad \forall \quad a, b \in G \text{ and } a + b \text{ is unique.}$$

Similarly ' $*$ ' will be a binary operation on G iff

$$a * b \in G \quad \forall \quad a, b \in G \text{ and } a * b \text{ is unique.}$$

A binary operation on a set G is sometimes also called binary composition in the set G . If ' $*$ ' is a binary composition in G , then $a * b \in G \quad \forall \quad a, b \in G$. Therefore G is closed with respect to the composition denoted by $*$.

If there is a binary composition in a set G , the most convenient notation to denote this composition is the multiplicative notation. In this notation if $a, b \in G$, then $a \cdot b$ represents the element obtained on multiplying a and b . We shall often omit the dot \cdot placed between a and b . In other words in multiplicative notation we shall simply write ab in place of $a \cdot b$. Thus $ab \in G \quad \forall \quad a, b \in G$ if the binary composition in G has been denoted multiplicatively.

Example. Addition is a binary operation on the set N of natural numbers. The sum of two natural numbers is also a natural number. Therefore N is closed with respect to addition i.e.,

$$a + b \in N \quad \forall \quad a, b \in N.$$

Subtraction is not a binary operation on N . We have $4 - 7 = -3 \notin N$ whereas $4 \in N, 7 \in N$. Thus N is not closed with respect to subtraction. But subtraction is a binary operation on the set of integers I . We have $a - b \in I \quad \forall \quad a, b \in I$.

Note. In the theory of groups we shall be concerned only with binary operations. Therefore we shall often omit the word binary and we shall simply use the word 'operation'.

§ 2. Algebraic structure. Definition. A non-empty set G equipped with one or more binary operations is called an algebraic structure. Suppose $*$ is a binary operation on G . Then $(G, *)$ is an algebraic structure. $(\mathbb{N}, +)$, $(\mathbb{I}, +)$, $(\mathbb{I}, -)$, $(\mathbb{R}, +, \cdot)$ are all algebraic structures. Obviously addition and multiplication are both binary operations on the set \mathbb{R} of real numbers. Therefore $(\mathbb{R}, +, \cdot)$ is an algebraic structure equipped with two operations.

Semi-Group. Definition. An algebraic structure $(G, *)$ is called a semi-group if the binary operation $*$ is associative in G i.e., if $(a * b) * c = a * (b * c) \forall a, b, c \in G$. (Rajasthan 1976)

For example, the set \mathbb{N} of all natural numbers is a semi-group with respect to the operation of addition of natural numbers. Obviously addition is an associative operation on \mathbb{N} .

Similarly the algebraic structures (\mathbb{N}, \cdot) , $(\mathbb{I}, +)$ and $(\mathbb{R}, +)$ are also semi-groups.

§ 3. Group. Definition.

(I.A.S. 1969; Vikram 76; Garhwal 76; Poona 73; Kolhapur 73; Sagar 77; Guru Nanak 82; Meerut 87)

Let G be a non-empty set equipped with a binary operation denoted by \cdot i.e., $a \cdot b$ or more conveniently ab represents the element of G obtained by applying the said binary operation between the elements a and b of G taken in that order. Then this algebraic structure (G, \cdot) is a group, if the binary operation \cdot satisfies the following postulates:

1. Closure property i.e., $ab \in G \forall a, b \in G$.
2. Associativity i.e., $(ab)c = a(bc) \forall a, b, c \in G$.
3. Existence of Identity. There exists an element $e \in G$ such that $ea = a = ae \forall a \in G$. The element e is called the Identity.
4. Existence of inverse. Each element of G possesses inverse. In other words $a \in G \Rightarrow$ there exists an element $b \in G$ such that $ba = e = ab$. The element b is then called the inverse of a and we write $b = a^{-1}$. Thus a^{-1} is an element of G such that $a^{-1}a = e = aa^{-1}$.

Abelian Group or Commutative Group. Definition.

(Madras 1977)

A group G is said to be abelian or commutative if in addition to the above four postulates the following postulate is also satisfied.

5. Commutativity i.e., $ab = ba \forall a, b \in G$.

Note 1. According to our definition of a binary operation if \cdot is a binary operation on G , we must have $a \cdot b \in G, \forall a,$

$b \in G$. Therefore in our definition of a group there is no necessity of mentioning the closure axiom. It is superfluous there. We have mentioned it there to simply lay emphasis upon the fact that while showing the group postulates in a problem the students should not forget to show the closure axiom.

Note 2. A group is not simply a set but it is an algebraic structure i.e., a set equipped with a binary composition provided the composition satisfies certain postulates. If a group consists of a non-empty set G and a binary composition in G , then we shall often use the same symbol G to denote the group and the underlined set.

Note 3. In our definition of a group we have denoted the composition in G by multiplicative notation. However we can use any symbol like $*$, \circ , $+$ etc. to denote the composition. If we use the additive notation $+$ to denote the composition in G , then the inverse of an element $a \in G$ is denoted by the symbol $-a$ i.e., we have $(-a) + a = e = a + (-a)$.

Note 4. If we use multiplicative notation to denote the composition in G , then often we denote the identity by the symbol '1'. Thus 1 is an element of G such that

$$1a = a = a1 \quad \forall \quad a \in G.$$

Also in multiplicative notation we often denote the inverse of a by $1/a$. Thus $1/a$ is an element of G such that $\frac{1}{a}a = 1 = a\frac{1}{a}$.

In additive notation, we often denote the identity by the symbol '0'. Then 0 is an element of G such that $0 + a = a = a + 0$.

Note 5. In additive notation the element $a + (-b) \in G$ is denoted by $a - b$. In multiplicative notation the element $ab^{-1} \in G$ is denoted by a/b .

§ 4. Finite and infinite groups. Order of a finite group.

(Rajasthan 1977; Kanpur 80; Meerut 86)

If in a group G the underlying set G consists of a finite number of distinct elements then the group is called a finite group, otherwise an infinite group. The number of elements in a finite group is called the order of the group. An infinite group is said to be of infinite order.

We shall denote the order of a group G by the symbol $o(G)$.

It should be noted that the smallest group for a given composition is the set $\{e\}$ consisting of the identity element e alone.

Some Illustrative Examples.

Example 1. Show that the set I of all integers

..., -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4,...

is a group with respect to the operation of addition of integers.

(Lucknow 1980)

Solution. Closure property. We know that the sum of two integers is also an integer i.e., $a+b \in I \forall a, b \in I$. Thus I is closed with respect to addition.

Associativity. We know that addition of integers is an associative composition. Therefore,

$$a+(b+c)=(a+b)+c \forall a, b, c \in I.$$

Existence of Identity. The number $0 \in I$. Also we have $0+a=a=a+0 \forall a \in I$. Therefore the integer 0 is the identity.

Existence of Inverse. If $a \in I$, then $-a \in I$. Also we have $(-a)+a=0=a+(-a)$. Thus every integer possesses additive inverse.

Therefore I is a group with respect to addition. Since addition of integers is a commutative composition, therefore $(I, +)$ is an abelian group. Also I contains an infinite number of elements. Therefore $(I, +)$ is an abelian group of infinite order.

Example 2. Show that the set N of all natural numbers

1, 2, 3, 4, 5,...

is not a group with respect to addition.

Solution. Addition is obviously a binary composition in N i.e., N is closed with respect to addition. Also addition of natural numbers is an associative composition. But there exists no natural number $e \in N$ such that $e+a=a=a+e \forall a \in N$. For the addition of numbers, the number 0 is the identity and $0 \notin N$. Therefore $(N, +)$ is not a group.

Example 3. Show that the set

$$G=\{\dots, -4m, -3m, -2m, -m, 0, m, 2m, 3m, 4m, \dots\}$$

of multiples of integers by a fixed integer m is a group with respect to addition.

Solution. Closure property. Let a, b be any two elements of G . Then $a=rm$ and $b=sm$ where r and s are some integers.

Now $a+b=rm+sm=(r+s)m$. Since $r+s$ is also an integer, therefore $(r+s)m$ i.e., $a+b \in G$. Thus $a+b \in G \forall a, b \in G$. Therefore G is closed with respect to addition.

Associativity. The elements of G are all integers and we know that the addition of integers is an associative composition.

Existence of Identity. $0 \in G$ and we have $0+a=a=a+0 \forall a \in G$. Therefore 0 is the identity.

Existence of Inverse. Let rm be an arbitrary element of G where r is some integer.

Then $(-r)m \in G$. [$\because -r$ is also an integer]

Also $(-r)m + rm = (-r+r)m = 0m = 0$
and $rm + (-r)m = (r-r)m = 0$.

$\therefore (-r)m$ is the additive inverse of rm .

Thus every element of G possesses additive inverse.

Hence G is a group with respect to addition.

Example 4. Prove that the set Q_0 of all non-zero rational numbers forms a group under the operation of multiplication of rational numbers. (Bhagalpur 1971 ; Meerut 74)

Solution. Closure property. We know that the product of two non-zero rational numbers is also a non-zero rational number. Therefore Q_0 is closed with respect to multiplication.

Associativity. We know that multiplication of rational numbers is an associative composition.

Existence of Identity. The rational number $1 \in Q_0$. Also we have $1a = a = a1 \quad \forall a \in Q_0$.

\therefore The rational number 1 is the multiplicative identity.

Existence of Inverse. If $a \in Q_0$, then obviously $1/a \in Q_0$. Also $(1/a)a = 1 = a(1/a)$. Therefore $1/a$ is the multiplicative inverse of a .

Hence Q_0 is a group with respect to multiplication.

Since $ab = ba \quad \forall a, b \in Q_0$, therefore the group is abelian.

Note. The set Q of all rational numbers is not a group with respect to multiplication. The rational number $0 \in Q$, but \exists no rational number $a \in Q$ such that $0a = 1$. We know that $0a = 0 \quad \forall a \in Q$. Thus the rational number 0 does not possess multiplicative inverse.

Example 5. Is the set of all rational numbers x such that $0 < x \leq 1$, a group with respect to ordinary multiplication ?

(Madras 1975)

Solution. Let $G = \{x : x \text{ is a rational number and } 0 < x \leq 1\}$. Then G is not a group with respect to multiplication. If $a \in G$ and $0 < a < 1$, then a does not possess a multiplicative inverse which is an element of G .

Example 6. Show that the set of all positive rational numbers forms an abelian group under the composition defined by

$$a * b = (ab)/2. \quad (\text{Delhi 1970 ; Meerut 71})$$

Solution. Let Q_+ denote the set of all positive rational numbers. We define an operation $*$ on Q_+ as follows :

$$a * b = (ab)/2 \quad \forall a, b \in Q_+.$$

To show that $(Q, *)$ is a group.

Closure Property. Since for every $a, b \in Q_+$, $(ab)/2$ is also in Q_+ , therefore Q_+ is closed with respect to the operation $*$.

Associativity. Let $a, b, c \in Q_+$. Then

$$(a * b) * c = \left(\frac{ab}{2}\right) * c = \left(\frac{ab}{2}\right) \frac{c}{2} = \frac{a}{2} \left(\frac{bc}{2}\right) = a * \left(\frac{bc}{2}\right) = a * (b * c).$$

Commutativity. Let $a, b \in Q_+$. Then

$$a * b = (ab)/2 = (ba)/2 = b * a.$$

Existence of Identity. The number e will be the identity element if $e \in Q_+$ and if $e * a = a = a * e \quad \forall a \in Q_+$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } e * a = a &\Rightarrow (ea)/2 = a \Rightarrow (a/2)(e-2) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow e = 2, \text{ since } a \in Q_+ \Rightarrow a \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Now $2 \in Q_+$ and we have $2 * a = (2a)/2 = a = a * 2 \quad \forall a \in Q_+$.

$\therefore 2$ is the identity element.

Existence of Inverse. Let a be any element of Q_+ . If the number b is to be the inverse of a , then we must have

$$b * a = e = 2 \Rightarrow (ba)/2 = 2 \Rightarrow b = 4/a.$$

Now $a \in Q_+ \Rightarrow 4/a \in Q_+$.

$$\text{We have } (4/a) * a = 4a/2a = 2 = a * (4/a).$$

Therefore $4/a$ is the inverse of a . Thus each element of Q_+ is invertible.

Hence $(Q_+, *)$ is an abelian group.

Important Note. In the few examples of groups we have just given, the elements of the underlying sets were all numbers. But it should not be confused that we can have groups of numbers only. In our definition of a group, we have not imposed any restriction on the elements of the set G . The elements of G can be numbers, chairs, students, countries or anything. The set G will be a group if it is equipped with a binary composition satisfying certain postulates.

Exercises

- (i) State the axioms which a set must obey so that it may form a group. (Meerut 1979)
 - (ii) Show that every group of order 1 is abelian and every group of order 2 is also abelian.
- Does the set of all odd integers form a group with respect to addition? (Meerut 1979)

Ans. No.

3. Show that the following are groups :

- (i) the set C of all complex numbers with respect to the operation of addition of complex numbers. (Rajasthan 1974)
- (ii) the set of all rational numbers with respect to addition. (Bhagalpur 1971, Meerut 79)
- (iii) the set of all real numbers with respect to addition.
- (iv) the set R_0 of all non-zero real numbers with respect to multiplication.
- (v) the set C_0 of all non-zero complex numbers with respect to multiplication. (Meerut 1979)

4. Define the order of a group. Show that the set of all even integers with zero is an abelian group with respect to addition.

5. Show that the set of natural numbers does not form a group with addition or multiplication but it forms a semi-group with respect to addition as well as multiplication.

6. Is the set I of integers

..., $-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$

a group (i) with respect to subtraction (ii) with respect to multiplication ? Ans. (i) No. (ii) No.

7. Show that the set M of complex numbers z with the condition $|z|=1$ forms a group with respect to the operation of multiplication of complex numbers.

8. Show that the set V of all vectors (defined as directed line segments) forms an infinite abelian group with vector addition as composition.

9. Show that the set of vectors defined as directed line segments does not form a group (i) with respect to scalar (dot) product, (ii) with respect to vector (cross) product.

10. Is the set of all even natural numbers a group (i) under addition (ii) under multiplication ?

Ans. (i) No; (ii) No.

11. Let Q_+ be the set of all positive rational numbers and $*$ a binary operation on Q_+ defined by $a*b = \frac{ab}{3\lambda}$. Determine the identity element in Q_+ and determine the inverse of a .

(Meerut 1982)

Ans. Identity element is 3, and the inverse of a is $9/a$.

12. Show that the set of all positive rational numbers forms an abelian group under the composition defined by
 $a * b = (ab)/4$. (Meerut 1986)
13. Let R be the set of all real numbers and $*$ a binary operation on R defined by $a * b = a + b + ab$. Determine the identity element in R and determine the inverse of a . (Meerut 1976)
- Ans. Identity element is 0; if $a \neq -1$, then $a^{-1} = -\frac{a}{a+1}$.
14. Show that the set of all rational numbers of the form $2^a 3^b$ (a, b integers) is a group with respect to multiplication of rationals.
15. Do the positive irrationals form a group with respect to multiplication? Ans. No.
16. Prove that the set $G = \{(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) : \theta \text{ runs over all rational numbers}\}$ forms an infinite abelian group with respect to ordinary multiplication.

§ 5. Some General Properties of Groups.

Suppose our group consists of a non-empty set G equipped with a binary operation denoted multiplicatively.

Theorem 1. Uniqueness of identity. *The identity element in a group is unique.* (Madras 1974; Andhra 77, Lucknow 80, Sagar 77)

Proof. Suppose e and e' are two identity elements of a group G . We have

$$ee' = e \text{ if } e' \text{ is identity}$$

$$\text{and } ee' = e' \text{ if } e \text{ is identity.}$$

But ee' is a unique element of G .

Therefore $ee' = e$ and $ee' = e' \Rightarrow e = e'$.

Hence the identity element is unique.

Theorem 2. Uniqueness of inverse. *The inverse of each element of a group is unique.*

(Madras 1974, Lucknow 80, Meerut 80, Andhra 77, Sagar 77)

Proof. Let a be any element of a group G and let e be the identity element. Suppose b and c are two inverses of a i.e.,

$$ba = e = ab \text{ and } ca = e = ac.$$

$$\text{We have } b(ac) = be$$

$$= b.$$

$$\text{Also } (ba)c = ec$$

$$= c.$$

$$[\because ac = e]$$

$$[\because e \text{ is identity}]$$

$$[\because ba = e]$$

$$[\because e \text{ is identity}]$$

But in a group composition is associative. Therefore $b(ac) = (ba)c$. Hence $b = c$.

Note. The identity element is its own inverse. Since $ee=e$, therefore $e^{-1}=e$.

Theorem 3. If the inverse of a is a^{-1} , then the inverse of a^{-1} is a i.e., $(a^{-1})^{-1}=a$. (Lucknow 1967)

Proof. If e is the identity element, we have

$$a^{-1}a=e \quad [\text{by definition of inverse}]$$

$$\Rightarrow (a^{-1})^{-1} [a^{-1}a] = (a^{-1})^{-1} e \quad [\text{multiplying both sides on the left by } (a^{-1})^{-1} \text{ which is necessarily an element of } G \text{ because } a^{-1} \text{ is an element of } G]$$

$$\Rightarrow [(a^{-1})^{-1} a^{-1}] a = (a^{-1})^{-1} [\because \text{composition in } G \text{ is associative and } e \text{ is identity element}]$$

$$\Rightarrow ea = (a^{-1})^{-1} \quad [\because (a^{-1})^{-1} \text{ is inverse of } a^{-1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow a = (a^{-1})^{-1} \Rightarrow (a^{-1})^{-1} = a.$$

Note. If we had used additive notation to denote the composition in G , the statement of this result would have been

$$-(-a)=a$$

Theorem 4. To prove that $(ab)^{-1}=b^{-1}a^{-1}$ $\forall a, b \in G$ i.e., the inverse of the product of two elements of a group G is the product of the inverses taken in the reverse order.

(Meerut 1975, Vikram 78, Garhwal 76; Kolhapur 73)

Proof. Suppose a and b are elements of G . If a^{-1} and b^{-1} are inverses of a and b respectively, then

$$a^{-1}a=e=aa^{-1} \quad \text{where } e \text{ is the identity element}$$

$$\text{and} \quad b^{-1}b=e=bb^{-1}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (ab)(b^{-1}a^{-1}) &= [(ab)b^{-1}]a^{-1} \quad [\because \text{composition is associative}] \\ &= [a(bb^{-1})]a^{-1} \quad [\text{by associativity}] \\ &= (ae)a^{-1} \quad [\because bb^{-1}=e] \\ &= aa^{-1} \quad [\because ae=a] \\ &= e \quad [\because aa^{-1}=e] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } (b^{-1}a^{-1})(ab) &= b^{-1}[a^{-1}(ab)] \quad [\text{by associativity}] \\ &= b^{-1}[(a^{-1}a)b] = b^{-1}(eb) = b^{-1}b = e. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Thus we have } (b^{-1}a^{-1})(ab) = e = (ab)(b^{-1}a^{-1}).$$

$$\therefore \text{ by definition of inverse, we have } (ab)^{-1} = b^{-1}a^{-1}.$$

If the group is commutative, then we shall have

$$(ab)^{-1} = a^{-1}b^{-1}, \text{ since } b^{-1}a^{-1} = a^{-1}b^{-1}.$$

Note 1. In additive notation the statement of this theorem will be $-(a+b) = (-b) + (-a)$.

Note 2. The rule given in this theorem is known as the *reversal rule*. It can be generalised by induction as follows :

If a, b, c, \dots, k are in G , then

$$(abc\dots jk)^{-1} = k^{-1} j^{-1} \dots c^{-1} b^{-1} a^{-1}.$$

Theorem 5. Cancellation laws hold good in a group. If a, b, c are any elements of G , then

$$ab = ac \Rightarrow b = c \quad \text{(Left cancellation law)}$$

$$\text{and} \quad ba = ca \Rightarrow b = c. \quad \text{(Right cancellation law)}$$

(Allahabad 1970; Berhampur 77)

Proof. $a \in G \Rightarrow \exists a^{-1} \in G$ such that $a^{-1}a = e = aa^{-1}$ where e is the identity element.

Now $ab = ac \Rightarrow a^{-1}(ab) = a^{-1}(ac)$ [multiplying both sides on the left by a^{-1}]

$$\Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)b = (a^{-1}a)c \quad \text{[by associativity]}$$

$$\Rightarrow eb = ec \quad [\because a^{-1}a = e]$$

$$\Rightarrow b = c \quad [\because e \text{ is identity}]$$

$$\text{Also } ba = ca \Rightarrow (ba)a^{-1} = (ca)a^{-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow b(aa^{-1}) = c(aa^{-1}) \Rightarrow be = ce \Rightarrow b = c.$$

Note. In additive notation these results can be written as $a+b = a+c \Rightarrow b=c$ and $b+a = c+a \Rightarrow b=c$.

Theorem 6. If a, b are any two elements of a group G , then the equations $ax=b$ and $ya=b$ have unique solutions in G .

(Nagpur 1975; Madras 77)

Proof. $a \in G \Rightarrow \exists a^{-1} \in G$ such that $a^{-1}a = e = aa^{-1}$ where e is the identity element.

$$\therefore a \in G, b \in G \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in G, b \in G$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{-1}b \in G. \quad \text{[by closure property]}$$

Now substituting $a^{-1}b$ for x in the left hand side of the equation $ax=b$, we have

$$a(a^{-1}b) = (aa^{-1})b = eb = b.$$

Thus $x = a^{-1}b$ is a solution in G of the equation $ax=b$.

To show that the solution is unique, let us suppose that $x = x_1$ and $x = x_2$ are two solutions of the equation $ax=b$. Then $ax_1=b$ and $ax_2=b$. Therefore $ax_1=ax_2$. By left cancellation law this gives $x_1=x_2$. Therefore the solution is unique.

Now to prove the equation $ya=b$ has a unique solution in G . We have $a \in G, b \in G \Rightarrow ba^{-1} \in G$.

$$\text{Now } (ba^{-1})a = b(a^{-1}a) = be = b.$$

$$\therefore y = ba^{-1} \text{ is a solution in } G \text{ of the equation } ya=b.$$

Suppose y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of this equation. Then

$y_1a=b$ and $y_2a=b$. Therefore $y_1a=y_2a$. By right cancellation law this gives $y_1=y_2$. Therefore the solution is unique.

§ 6. Definition of a group based upon Left Axioms. Let G be a non-empty set equipped with a binary operation denoted by \cdot i.e., $a \cdot b$ or more conveniently ab represents the element of G obtained by applying the said binary operation between the elements a and b of G taken in that order. Then this algebraic structure (G, \cdot) is a group if the binary operation \cdot satisfies the following postulates.

1. Closure property i.e., $ab \in G \forall a, b \in G$.
2. Associativity i.e., $(ab)c = a(bc) \forall a, b, c \in G$.
3. Existence of Left Identity. There exists an element $e \in G$ such that $ea = a \forall a \in G$. The element e is called the left identity.
4. Existence of Left Inverse. Each element of G possesses left inverse. In other words $a \in G \Rightarrow$ there exists an element $a^{-1} \in G$ such that $a^{-1}a = e$. The element a^{-1} is the left inverse of a .

We shall now prove that this definition of a group and the classical definition of a group given in § 3 are equivalent. Obviously if the postulates of a group given in § 3 hold good, the postulates of a group given in this definition will also hold good.

If the postulates of a group given in this definition hold good, then the postulates given in § 3 will also hold good if starting with left axioms we prove that the left identity is also the right identity and the left inverse of an element is also the right inverse. First we shall prove the existence of left cancellation law and then we shall prove the other two results.

Theorem 1. (Left Cancellation Law). If a, b, c are in G , then

$$ab=ac \Rightarrow b=c.$$

Proof. Since $a \in G$, therefore $\exists a^{-1} \in G$ such that $a^{-1}a = e$ where e is the left identity.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } ab=ac &\Rightarrow a^{-1}(ab) = a^{-1}(ac) \\ &\Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)b = (a^{-1}a)c \quad [\text{by associativity}] \\ &\Rightarrow eb = ec \quad [\because a^{-1} \text{ is left inverse of } a] \\ &\Rightarrow b = c \quad [\because e \text{ is left identity}] \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 2. The left identity is also the right identity i.e., if e is the left identity, then also $ae = a \forall a \in G$. (Meerut 1968)

Proof. Let $a \in G$ and e be the left identity. Since a possesses left inverse, therefore there exists $a^{-1} \in G$ such that $a^{-1}a = e$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } a^{-1}(ae) &= (a^{-1}a)e \quad [\text{by associativity}] \\ &= ee \quad [\because a^{-1}a = e] \\ &= e \quad [\because e \text{ is left identity}] \end{aligned}$$

$$= a^{-1} a. \quad [\because a^{-1} a = e]$$

Now $a^{-1} (ae) = a^{-1} a \Rightarrow ae = a$, by left cancellation law.

$\therefore e$ is also the right identity.

$\therefore e$ is also the identity i.e., $ea = a = ae \quad \forall a \in G$.

Theorem 3. *The left inverse of an element is also its right inverse i.e., if a^{-1} is the left inverse of a , then also $aa^{-1} = e$.*

(Kanpur 1980)

Proof. Let $a \in G$ and e be the identity element. Let a^{-1} be the left inverse of a i.e., $a^{-1} a = e$. To prove that $aa^{-1} = e$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } a^{-1} (aa^{-1}) &= (a^{-1} a) a^{-1} && [\text{by associativity}] \\ &= ea^{-1} && [\because a^{-1} a = e] \\ &= a^{-1} && [\because e \text{ is left identity}] \\ &= a^{-1} e. && [\because e \text{ is also right identity}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } a^{-1} (aa^{-1}) &= a^{-1} e \\ &\Rightarrow aa^{-1} = e. && [\text{by left cancellation law}] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore a^{-1}$ is also the right inverse of a . Hence a^{-1} is the inverse of a , i.e., $a^{-1} a = e = aa^{-1}$.

Note 1. In order to prove that a non-empty set G equipped with a binary operation is a group it is sufficient to prove that the operation is associative, the left identity exists and the left inverse of each element of G exists.

Note 2. We can also define a group with the help of right axioms only. However we cannot assume the existence of left identity and the existence of right inverse or we cannot assume the existence of right identity and the existence of left inverse.

Some More Examples on Groups

Example 1. Show that the set $G = \{a + b\sqrt{2} : a, b \in \mathbb{Q}\}$ is a group with respect to addition. (Meerut 1979)

Solution. **Closure Property.** Let x, y be any two elements of G . Then $x = a + b\sqrt{2}$, $y = c + d\sqrt{2}$ where $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Q}$.

Now $x + y = (a + b\sqrt{2}) + (c + d\sqrt{2}) = (a + c) + (b + d)\sqrt{2}$. Since $a + c$ and $b + d$ are elements of \mathbb{Q} , therefore $(a + c) + (b + d)\sqrt{2} \in G$. Thus $x + y \in G \quad \forall x, y \in G$. Therefore G is closed with respect to addition.

Associativity. The elements of G are all real numbers and the addition of real numbers is associative.

Existence of left identity. We have $0 + 0\sqrt{2} \in G$ since $0 \in \mathbb{Q}$. If $a + b\sqrt{2}$ is any element of G , then

$$(0 + 0\sqrt{2}) + (a + b\sqrt{2}) = (0 + a) + (0 + b)\sqrt{2} = a + b\sqrt{2}.$$

$\therefore 0 + 0\sqrt{2}$ is the left identity.

Existence of left Inverse. We have

$a+b\sqrt{2} \in G \Rightarrow (-a)+(-b)\sqrt{2} \in G$ since $a, b \in \mathbb{Q} \Rightarrow -a, -b \in \mathbb{Q}$.

Now $[(-a)+(-b)\sqrt{2}]+[a+b\sqrt{2}]$
 $= [(-a)+a]+[(-b)+b]\sqrt{2}=0+0\sqrt{2}=\text{the left identity.}$

$\therefore (-a)+(-b)\sqrt{2}$ is the left inverse of $a+b\sqrt{2}$.

Hence G is a group with respect to addition.

Example 2. Do the following sets form groups with respect to the binary operation $*$ defined on them as follows :

(i) the set I of all integers with operation defined by

$$a * b = a + b + 1. \quad (\text{Madras 1975})$$

(ii) the set Q_1 of all rational numbers other than 1, with the operation defined by $a * b = a + b - ab$. (Meerut 1987)

(iii) the set Q' of all rational numbers other than -1 with the operation defined by $a * b = a + b + ab$. (I. A. S. 71; Poona 73)

Solution.

(i) **Closure Property.** We have $a \in I, b \in I \Rightarrow a + b + 1$ i.e., $a * b \in I$. Therefore I is closed with respect to the operation $*$.

Associativity. If $a, b, c \in I$, then

$$(a * b) * c = (a + b + 1) * c = (a + b + 1) + c + 1 = a + b + c + 2.$$

$$\text{Also } a * (b * c) = a * (b + c + 1) = a + (b + c + 1) + 1 = a + b + c + 2.$$

$$\therefore (a * b) * c = a * (b * c) \quad \forall a, b, c \in I.$$

Existence of left identity. $e \in I$ will be the left identity if $e * a = a \quad \forall a \in I$.

$$\text{Now } e * a = e + a + 1.$$

$$\therefore e + a + 1 = a \Rightarrow e = -1.$$

Since $-1 \in I$ and we have for any $a \in I$

$$(-1) * a = -1 + a + 1 = a,$$

therefore -1 is the left identity element.

Existence of left Inverse. If $a \in I$, then $b \in I$ will be left inverse of a if $b * a = -1$ (the left identity).

$$\text{Now } b * a = -1 \Rightarrow b + a + 1 = -1 \Rightarrow b = -2 - a.$$

$$\text{Now } a \in I \Rightarrow -2 - a \in I.$$

$$\text{Also } (-2 - a) * a = (-2 - a) + a + 1 = -1.$$

$$\therefore -2 - a \text{ is the left inverse of } a.$$

Also $a * b = a + b + 1 = b + a + 1 = b * a$. Therefore the composition is also commutative.

Hence I is an infinite abelian group for the given composition.

(ii) **Closure Property.** Let $a, b \in Q_1$. Then a and b are rational numbers such that $a \neq 1, b \neq 1$.

Now $a * b = a + b - ab$ which is also a rational number and it cannot be equal to 1,

because $a + b - ab = 1 \Rightarrow a + b - ab - 1 = 0 \Rightarrow (a-1)(1-b) = 0$
 $\Rightarrow a=1$ or $b=1$ which is not so.

$\therefore a * b \in Q_1 \forall a, b \in Q_1$. Hence Q_1 is closed with respect to the given composition.

Associativity. If $a, b, c \in Q_1$, then

$$(a * b) * c = (a + b - ab) * c = (a + b - ab) + c - (a + b - ab)c \\ = a + b + c - ab - ac - bc + abc.$$

$$\text{Also } a * (b * c) = a * (b + c - bc) = a + (b + c - bc) - a(b + c - bc) \\ = a + b + c - ab - ac - bc + abc.$$

$$\therefore a * (b * c) = (a * b) * c \forall a, b, c \in Q_1.$$

Existence of left Identity. Let $e \in Q_1$ i.e., let e be a rational number and $e \neq 1$. Then e will be the left identity iff $\forall a \in Q_1$ we have $e * a = a \Leftrightarrow e + a - ea = a \Leftrightarrow e - ea = 0 \Leftrightarrow e(1-a) = 0 \Leftrightarrow e = 0$. [Note that $a \in Q_1 \Rightarrow a \neq 1$. Now $0 \in Q_1$; so 0 is the left identity.

Existence of left Inverse. Let $a \in Q_1$ i.e., let a be a rational number and $a \neq 1$. Now $b \in Q_1$ will be the left inverse of a iff $b * a = 0 \Leftrightarrow b + a - ba = 0 \Leftrightarrow b(a-1) = a \Leftrightarrow b = \frac{a}{a-1}$, since $a \neq 1$.

Now $\frac{a}{a-1}$ is definitely a rational number. Also $\frac{a}{a-1}$ cannot be equal to 1. Therefore $\frac{a}{a-1} \in Q_1$ and so it is the left inverse of a .

$$\text{Also } a * b = a + b - ab = b + a - ba = b * a.$$

\therefore the set Q_1 of all rational numbers except 1 is an infinite abelian group with respect to the given composition.

(iii) Proceed as in part (ii). Here 0 is the identity element and the inverse of a is $-\frac{a}{a+1}$ which exists since $a+1 \neq 0$ and $-\frac{a}{a+1} \neq -1$.

Example 3. Prove that the set of all $m \times n$ matrices having their elements as integers (rational or real or complex numbers) is an infinite abelian group with respect to addition of matrices.

Solution. Let M be the set of all $m \times n$ matrices with their elements as real numbers.

Closure Property. If $A \in M, B \in M$, then $A+B \in M$. The

reason is that $A+B$ is also a matrix of the type $m \times n$ and the elements of the matrix $A+B$ are also real numbers since the sum of two real numbers is also a real number. Therefore M is closed with respect to addition of matrices.

Associativity. We know that addition of matrices is associative.

Existence of left Identity. If O be the null matrix of the type $m \times n$ then $O \in M$. Also if $A \in M$, we have $O+A=A$.

\therefore The null matrix O is the left identity.

Existence of left Inverse. If $A \in M$, then $-A \in M$ where $-A$ is the matrix whose elements are the negative of the corresponding elements of A . Also $-A+A=O$ = the left identity.

$\therefore -A$ is the left inverse of A .

Also the addition of matrices is commutative and the set M is an infinite set.

$\therefore (M, +)$ is an infinite abelian group.

Example 4. Show that the set of all $n \times n$ non-singular matrices having their elements as rational (real or complex) numbers is an infinite non-abelian group with respect to matrix multiplication.

(Berhampur 1977; Meerut 77)

Solution. A matrix A is said to be non-singular if $|A|$, i.e., the determinant of the matrix A is not equal to zero.

Let M be the set of all $n \times n$ non-singular matrices with their elements as rational numbers.

Closure Property. We have $A \in M \Rightarrow A$ is of the type $n \times n$, the elements of A are all rational numbers and $|A| \neq 0$. Similarly let $B \in M$. Now AB will be a matrix of the type $n \times n$, the elements of AB will all be rational numbers. Also $|AB| = |A| |B|$. Since $|A| \neq 0$ and $|B| \neq 0$, therefore $|AB| \neq 0$. Thus $AB \in M$. Therefore M is closed with respect to multiplication of matrices.

Associativity. Multiplication of matrices is associative.

Existence of left Identity. If I be the unit matrix of the type $n \times n$, then the elements of I are all rational numbers. Also $|I| = 1$ i.e., $\neq 0$. Therefore $I \in M$. If $A \in M$, we have $IA=A$. Therefore I is the left identity.

Existence of left Inverse. We know that every non-singular matrix is invertible. Therefore if $A \in M$, there exists a non-singular

matrix $A^{-1} = \frac{1}{|A|} (\text{Adj. } A)$ with elements as rational numbers such that $A^{-1}A = I = \text{the left identity}$.

We know that multiplication of matrices is not in general commutative.

$\therefore M$ is an infinite non-abelian group with respect to multiplication of matrices.

Note. If M is the set of all $n \times n$ non-singular matrices with their elements as integers, then M is not a group with respect to matrix multiplication. The reason is that all such matrices are not invertible. For example the non-singular matrix $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is not invertible.

We have $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{3}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \text{the identity element}$

Since the elements of the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{3}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} \end{bmatrix}$ are not all integers, therefore this matrix does not belong to the set M .

Example 5. Show that the set of matrices

$$A_\alpha = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix}$$

where α is a real number, forms a group under matrix multiplication.
(Kanpur 1969 ; Allahabad 66)

Solution. Let G denote the set of matrices

$$A_\alpha = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix}, \text{ where } \alpha \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Here \mathbb{R} is the set of real numbers.

To prove that G is a group with respect to matrix multiplication.

Closure Property. Let A_α, A_β be any two elements of G while $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} A_\alpha A_\beta &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos \beta & -\sin \beta \\ \sin \beta & \cos \beta \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha + \beta) & -\sin(\alpha + \beta) \\ \sin(\alpha + \beta) & \cos(\alpha + \beta) \end{bmatrix} = A_{\alpha + \beta} \in G, \text{ since } \alpha + \beta \in \mathbb{R}. \end{aligned}$$

Associativity. Matrix multiplication is associative.

Existence of left Identity. Since $0 \in \mathbb{R}$, therefore

$$A_0 = \begin{bmatrix} \cos 0 & -\sin 0 \\ \sin 0 & \cos 0 \end{bmatrix} \in G. \text{ If } A_\alpha \text{ be any member of } G, \text{ then}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 A_\alpha &= A_{0 + \alpha} \\ &= A_\alpha. \end{aligned} \quad [\because A_\alpha A_\beta = A_{\alpha + \beta}]$$

$\therefore A_0$ is the left identity.

Existence of left inverse. Let $A_x \in G$. Then $A_{(-x)} \in G$ because $\alpha \in R \Rightarrow -\alpha \in R$. Now

$$A_{(-x)} A_x = A_{(-x)+x} \quad [\because A_\alpha A_\beta = A_{\alpha+\beta}]$$

$$= A_0 = \text{the left identity.}$$

$\therefore A_{(-x)}$ is the left inverse of A_x .

Thus each element of G possesses left inverse. Hence G is a group under matrix multiplication.

Example 6. Let S be any non-empty set and let $A(S)$ be the set of all one-to-one mappings of the set S onto itself. Then show that $A(S)$ is a group with respect to composite of mappings as the composition. (Banaras 1962)

Is it an abelian group?

Solution. Let f, g be any two elements of $A(S)$. Then f and g are both one-to-one mappings of S onto itself. By the definition of composite of two functions f and g denoted by fg , fg is a mapping from S to S given by

$$(fg)(x) = f[g(x)] \quad \forall x \in S.$$

Closure Property. We know that if f, g are two one-to-one mappings of S onto itself, then the composite mapping fg is also a one-to-one mapping of S onto itself. Consequently $fg \in A(S)$, $\forall f, g \in A(S)$. Therefore $A(S)$ is closed with respect to composite composition.

Associativity. Let f, g, h be any three elements of $A(S)$. Then $(fg)h$ and $f(gh)$ are both mappings from S to S . For every $x \in S$, we have

$$[(fg)h](x) = (fg)[h(x)] = f[g(h(x))] = f[(gh)(x)] = [f(gh)](x).$$

$\therefore (fg)h = f(gh)$, by def. of equality of two mappings.

Existence of left Identity. Let e be the identity function on S , i.e., $e(x) = x \quad \forall x \in S$. Then the mapping e is obviously one-one onto. Therefore $e \in A(S)$. If f is any element of $A(S)$, then $\forall x \in S$, we have

$$(ef)(x) = e[f(x)]$$

$$= f(x), \text{ since } e \text{ is identity mapping on } S.$$

Therefore $ef = f$. Thus $e \in A(S)$ is the left identity.

Existence of left Inverse. Let $f \in A(S)$. Then f is a one-to-one mapping of S onto itself. Let y be any element of S . Since f is onto S , therefore $y \in S \Rightarrow \exists x \in S$ such that $f(x) = y$. Also x determined in this way is a unique element of S because f is one-one.

Now let us define a mapping $f^{-1} : S \rightarrow S$ such that

$$f^{-1}(y) = x \text{ if and only if } f(x) = y.$$

Then f^{-1} is also a one-to-one mapping of S onto itself. Therefore $f^{-1} \in A(S)$. Let us compute $f^{-1}f$ which is a mapping from S to S . Given $x \in S$, let $y = f(x)$. Then by definition of f^{-1} , we have $f^{-1}(y) = x$.

$$\therefore (f^{-1}f)(x) = f^{-1}[f(x)] = f^{-1}(y) = x.$$

Thus $f^{-1}f$ is the identity mapping of S i.e., $f^{-1}f = e$. Therefore f^{-1} is the left inverse of f .

Hence $A(S)$ is a group with respect to composite composition.

If the set S has only one element, then the set $A(S)$ has only one element, and every group of order 1 is abelian. If the set S has two elements, then the set $A(S)$ has also two elements and every group of order 2 is abelian. But if the set S has more than two elements, then we shall show that the group $A(S)$ is non-abelian. Let x_1, x_2, x_3 be three distinct elements in S . Define the mapping $f : S \rightarrow S$ by $f(x_1) = x_2, f(x_2) = x_3, f(x_3) = x_1, f(y) = y$ for any $y \in S$ different from x_1, x_2, x_3 . Also define the mapping $g : S \rightarrow S$ by

$$g(x_2) = x_3, g(x_3) = x_2 \text{ and } g(y) = y$$

for any $y \in S$ different from x_2, x_3 . Obviously both f and g are one-to-one mappings of S onto itself. Thus both f and g are in $A(S)$. We have

$$(gf)(x_1) = g[f(x_1)] = g(x_2) = x_3.$$

$$\text{Also } (fg)(x_1) = f[g(x_1)] = f(x_1) = x_2.$$

Thus $(gf)(x_1) \neq (fg)(x_1)$. Therefore $gf \neq fg$.

Hence in this case $A(S)$ is a non-abelian group.

Example 7. Determine as to whether the following sets together with the indicated composition constitute groups :

(i) The set S of all ordered pairs (a, b) of real numbers for which $a \neq 0$ with respect to the operation \times defined by

$$(a, b) \times (c, d) = (ac, bc + d).$$

(I.A.S. 1969; Madras 74; Kerala 70)

(ii) The set $P(X)$ of all subsets of a non-empty set X , under the composition $*$ defined by the relation

$$A * B = A \cup B \quad A \subseteq X, B \subseteq X. \quad (\text{Rajasthan 1966})$$

Solution (i).

Closure Property. Let (a, b) and (c, d) be any two members of S . Then $a \neq 0$ and $c \neq 0$. Therefore $ac \neq 0$. Consequently $(a, b) \times (c, d) = (ac, bc + d)$ is also a member of S . Hence S is closed with respect to the given composition.

Associativity. Let (a, b) , (c, d) and (e, f) be any three members of S . Then

$$\begin{aligned} [(a, b) \times (c, d)] \times (e, f) &= (ac, bc+d) \times (e, f) \\ &= ([ac] e, [bc+d] e+f) \\ &= (ace, bce+de+f). \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } (a, b) \times [(c, d) \times (e, f)] &= (a, b) \times (ce, de+f) \\ &= (a [ce], b [ce]+de+f) \\ &= (ace, bce+de+f). \end{aligned}$$

Hence the given composition \times is associative.

Existence of Left Identity. Suppose (x, y) is an element of S such that $(x, y) \times (a, b) = (a, b) \forall (a, b) \in S$.

$$\text{Then } (xa, ya+b) = (a, b).$$

$$\text{Hence } xa = a \text{ and } ya+b = b.$$

$$\text{These give } x=1 \text{ and } y=0. \text{ [Note that } a \neq 0]$$

Therefore $(1, 0)$ is the left identity.

Existence of Left Inverse. Let (a, b) be any member of S . Let (x, y) be a member of S such that $(x, y) \times (a, b) = (1, 0)$.

$$\text{Then } (xa, ya+b) = (1, 0). \text{ Hence } xa=1, ya+b=0.$$

$$\text{These give } x=1/a, y=-b/a.$$

Since $a \neq 0$, therefore x and y are real numbers.

$$\text{Also } x = \frac{1}{a} \neq 0. \text{ Thus } \left(\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a}\right) \text{ is the left inverse of } (a, b).$$

Hence S is a group.

Note. In the above group, we have

$$(a, b) \times (c, d) = (ac, bc+d)$$

and

$$(c, d) \times (a, b) = (ca, da+b).$$

Thus, in general, $(a, b) \times (c, d) \neq (c, d) \times (a, b)$ i.e., the composition is not commutative and hence the group is not abelian.

(ii) Closure property. Let A and B be any two members of $P(X)$. Then $A \subseteq X, B \subseteq X$. We have $A * B = A \cup B$ which is also a subset of X . Thus $A * B$ is also a member of $P(X)$. Therefore $P(X)$ is closed with respect to the given operation.

Associativity. We know that the union of sets is an associative operation.

Existence of Left Identity. The empty set \emptyset is a subset of X . Therefore \emptyset is a member of $P(X)$. If A is any member of $P(X)$, we have $\emptyset * A = \emptyset \cup A = A$. Therefore \emptyset is the left identity.

Existence of left inverse. Let A be any non-empty member of $P(X)$ i.e., let $A \subseteq X$ and $A \neq \emptyset$. Now for every member S of $P(X)$, we have $S * A = S \cup A \neq \emptyset$. Therefore no member S of $P(X)$ can be the left inverse of A . Hence $P(X)$ is not a group under the composition of union.

Example 8. Let G be a set of elements on which an algebraic operation \times is defined such that $a \times b \in G$ for all $a, b \in G$. Prove that G is an abelian group for this operation if the following postulates are satisfied :

(i) $(a \times b) \times c = a \times (c \times b)$ for all $a, b, c \in G$;

(ii) There exists a left identity $e \in G$ such that $e \times a = a$ for all $a \in G$; and

(iii) Corresponding to every element $a \in G$, there exists a left inverse $a^{-1} \in G$ such that $a^{-1} \times a = e$. (Kerala 1970)

Solution. Let a, b be any two elements of G . By given postulate (ii) left identity e is an element of G . Applying given postulate (i) for the elements e, a and b of G , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (e \times a) \times b &= e \times (b \times a) \\ \Rightarrow a \times b &= b \times a \quad [\because e \text{ is the left identity means } e \times a = a \\ &\quad \text{and } e \times (b \times a) = b \times a] \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have $a \times b = b \times a$ for all $a, b \in G$. Hence the operation \times is commutative.

Now let $a, b, c \in G$. Then by (i), we have

$$\begin{aligned} (a \times b) \times c &= a \times (c \times b) \\ &= a \times (b \times c). \quad [\because b \times c = c \times b \text{ as just proved}] \end{aligned}$$

Hence the operation \times is associative. Thus G is an abelian group for the operation \times .

Example 9. Prove that in a matrix group under multiplication, either all the matrices are non-singular or all are singular.

Show that the set of all matrices of the form $\begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix}$, where x is a non-zero real number, is a group of singular matrices for multiplication. Find the identity and inverse of an element. (Madurai 1988)

Solution. Let M be a matrix group under multiplication. Let E be the identity element. Then

$$AE = A \neq A \in M. \quad \dots(1)$$

If E is a singular matrix, then the equation (1) is not satisfied by an element $A \in M$ if A is a non-singular matrix. The reason is that if A is non-singular and E is singular, then AE is singular and so it cannot be equal to a non-singular matrix A . Therefore if E

is a singular matrix, then every matrix $A \in M$ must also be singular.

Now suppose E is a non-singular matrix. Let $A \in M$ and let A be singular. Then there exists no matrix $B \in M$ such that $AB = E$. [Note that E is non-singular while AB is singular]. Thus A does not possess inverse. This contradicts the hypothesis that M is a group. Therefore if E is a non-singular matrix, then every matrix $A \in M$ must also be non-singular. Hence M cannot be a group if it contains both singular as well as non-singular matrices.

Second Part. Let $M = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix} : x \text{ is a non-zero real number} \right\}$

We have $\begin{vmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{vmatrix} = 0$. So $\begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix}$ is a singular matrix.

Now we shall show that M is a group under multiplication.

Closure Property. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} y & y \\ y & y \end{bmatrix}$ be any two elements of M . Then x, y are non-zero real numbers. We have

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 2xy & 2xy \\ 2xy & 2xy \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since $2xy$ is also a non-zero real number, therefore $AB \in M$.

Associativity. Matrix multiplication is associative.

Existence of left identity. Let $E = \begin{bmatrix} e & e \\ e & e \end{bmatrix} \in M$ be such that

$EA = A \forall A \in M$. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix} \in M$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} EA = A &\Rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} e & e \\ e & e \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix} \\ &\Rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 2ex & 2ex \\ 2ex & 2ex \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix} \\ &\Rightarrow 2ex = x \\ &\Rightarrow e = \frac{1}{2}, \text{ since } x \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $E = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} \in M$ and is such that $EA = A \forall A \in M$.

Therefore E is the left identity.

Existence of left inverse. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix}$ be an arbitrary element of M . Suppose $B = \begin{bmatrix} y & y \\ y & y \end{bmatrix} \in M$ is such that $BA = E$.

Then we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2xy & 2xy \\ 2xy & 2xy \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}.$$

This gives $2xy = \frac{1}{4}$ or $y = 1/4x$. Thus $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1/4x & 1/4x \\ 1/4x & 1/4x \end{bmatrix} \in M$ is such that $BA = E$. Therefore B is the left inverse of A .

Hence M is a group.

$$\text{Identity} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} x & x \\ x & x \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/4x & 1/4x \\ 1/4x & 1/4x \end{bmatrix}.$$

Example 10. If $G = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} : a \text{ is any non-zero real number} \right\}$, show that G is a commutative group under matrix multiplication. (Madras 1983)

Solution. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ be any two elements of G . Then a, b are non-zero real numbers. We have

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} ab & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{Also } BA = \begin{bmatrix} ba & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since ab is also a non-zero real number, therefore $AB \in G$. Thus G is closed for matrix multiplication. Also $AB = BA$ because $ab = ba$. Therefore multiplication on G is commutative. Also we know that matrix multiplication is associative.

Existence of left identity. Let $E = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Then $E \in G$ and we have

$$EA = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = A, \quad \forall A \in G.$$

Therefore E is the left identity.

Existence of left inverse. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ be an arbitrary element of G . Then a is a non-zero real number and so $1/a$ is also a non-zero real number. Therefore $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1/a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is also an element of G . We have

$$BA = \begin{bmatrix} 1/a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = E.$$

$\therefore B$ is the left inverse of A .

Hence G is a commutative group for matrix multiplication.

§ 7. Composition table for finite sets.

A binary composition in a finite set can be shown in a tabular form known as Composition table.

Suppose $S = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n\}$ is a finite set having n elements. Suppose there is a composition in S denoted multiplicatively. We write the elements of the set S in a horizontal row as well as in a vertical column. The element $a_i a_j$ associated to the ordered pair (a_i, a_j) is placed at the intersection of the row headed by a_i and the column headed by a_j .

An Important Remark. The composition table for a finite group contains each element exactly once in each of its rows and columns. For example, let $a_i a_j$ and $a_i a_k$ be any two elements of the i th row. Then $a_i a_j = a_i a_k \Rightarrow a_j = a_k$ (by left cancellation law). But this is a contradiction since a_j, a_k are different. Hence the result.

Some Examples On Finite Groups

Example 1. Show that the four fourth roots of unity namely $1, -1, i, -i$ form a group with respect to multiplication. (Meerut 1976)

Solution. Let $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$. To show that multiplication is a composition in G , we form the composition table.

multiplication	1	-1	i	$-i$
1	1	-1	i	$-i$
-1	-1	1	$-i$	i
i	i	$-i$	-1	1
$-i$	$-i$	i	1	-1

Now we make the following conclusions :

1. **Closure property.** Since all the entries in the composition table are elements of the set G , G is closed with respect to multiplication. Therefore multiplication is a binary operation on G .

2. **Associativity.** The elements of G are all complex numbers and the multiplication of complex numbers is associative.

3. **Existence of left identity.** From the composition table we see that the row headed by the element 1 just coincides with the top row of the composition table. Thus we have

$$1(1) = 1, 1(-1) = -1, 1(i) = i, 1(-i) = -i.$$

In other words we have $1 \in G$ and $1a = a \forall a \in G$.

$\therefore 1$ is the left identity.

4. **Existence of left inverse.** We know that the identity element is its own inverse. Therefore the left inverse of 1 is 1. From the composition table we see that in the column headed by -1 , the left identity 1 occurs in the row headed by -1 i.e., $(-1)(-1) = 1$. Therefore -1 is the left inverse of -1 . Also we see that in the column headed by i the left identity 1 occurs in the row headed by $-i$. Thus $(-i)i = 1$. Therefore $-i$ is the left inverse of i . Finally in the column headed by $-i$ the left identity 1 occurs in the row headed by i . Thus $i(-i) = 1$. Therefore i is the left inverse of $-i$. Thus each element of G possesses left inverse.

Hence G is a group with respect to multiplication. The number of elements in the set G is 4. Also the multiplication of complex numbers is commutative. Therefore G is an abelian group of order 4 with respect to multiplication.

Note. To see that the composition is commutative we observe from the composition table that the entries in the first, second, third and fourth rows of the table just coincide with the corresponding entries in the first, second, third and fourth columns. Therefore we have $ab = ba \forall a, b \in G$ and the composition is commutative.

Example 2. Show that the set $G = \{1, \omega, \omega^2\}$, where ω is an imaginary cube root of unity is a group with respect to multiplication. (Agra 1971; Madurai 78; Meerut 84; Kumayun 77; Rohilkhand 80)

Solution. We form the composition table :

Multiplication	1	ω	ω^2	Note that $\omega\omega^2 = \omega^3 = 1$ and $\omega^2\omega^3 = \omega^4 = \omega^3\omega$ $= 1\omega$ $= \omega$
1	1	ω	ω^2	
ω	ω	ω^2	1	
ω^2	ω^2	1	ω	

1. Since all the entries in the composition table are elements of the set G , therefore G is closed with respect to multiplication.

2. The elements of G are all complex numbers and we know that multiplication of complex numbers is associative.

3. From the composition table we see that

$$1(1) = 1, 1(\omega) = \omega = \omega(1), 1(\omega^2) = \omega^2 = \omega^2(1).$$

Therefore 1 is the identity element.

4. The inverses of 1, ω , ω^2 are 1, ω^2 , ω respectively.
 5. The multiplication of complex numbers is commutative.
- The number of elements in the set G is 3.

Hence G is a finite abelian group of order 3.

Example 3. Show that the set of six transformations $f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4, f_5, f_6$ on the set of complex numbers defined by

$$f_1(z) = z, f_2(z) = \frac{1}{z}, f_3(z) = 1 - z, f_4(z) = \frac{z}{z-1},$$

$$f_5(z) = \frac{1}{1-z}, f_6(z) = \frac{z-1}{z}.$$

forms a finite non-abelian group of order six with respect to the composition known as composite of two functions or product of two functions. (Sambalpur 1977)

Solution. Let $G = \{f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4, f_5, f_6\}$.

Suppose we denote multiplicatively the composition known as the composite or product of two functions. If $f: A \rightarrow B$ and $g: B \rightarrow C$ then by definition $(gf): A \rightarrow C$ such that $(gf)(x) = g[f(x)] \forall x \in A$. The function gf is called the composite of the functions g and f . We prepare the composition table as follows:

Since the function f_1 is the identity function, therefore

$$f_1 f_1 = f_1, f_1 f_2 = f_2 = f_2 f_1, f_1 f_3 = f_3 = f_3 f_1,$$

$$f_1 f_4 = f_4 = f_4 f_1, f_1 f_5 = f_5 = f_5 f_1, f_1 f_6 = f_6 = f_6 f_1.$$

$$\text{Now } (f_2 f_2)(z) = f_2[f_2(z)] = f_2\left(\frac{1}{z}\right) = \frac{1}{(1/z)} = z = f_1(z).$$

$$\therefore f_2 f_2 = f_1 \quad [\because \text{ if } f: A \rightarrow B \text{ and } g: A \rightarrow B, \text{ then } f = g \text{ iff } f(x) = g(x) \forall x \in A]$$

$$(f_2 f_3)(z) = f_2[f_3(z)] = f_2(1-z) = \frac{1}{1-z} = f_5(z). \text{ Therefore } f_2 f_3 = f_5.$$

$$(f_2 f_4)(z) = f_2[f_4(z)] = f_2\left(\frac{z}{z-1}\right) = \frac{z-1}{z} = f_6(z). \text{ Therefore } f_2 f_4 = f_6.$$

$$(f_2 f_5)(z) = f_2[f_5(z)] = f_2\left(\frac{1}{1-z}\right) = 1-z = f_3(z). \text{ Therefore } f_2 f_5 = f_3.$$

Similarly calculating the other products we get the composition table as given below:

Composition of two functions	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4	f_5	f_6
f_1	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4	f_5	f_6
f_2	f_2	f_1	f_5	f_6	f_3	f_4
f_3	f_3	f_6	f_1	f_5	f_4	f_2
f_4	f_4	f_5	f_6	f_1	f_2	f_3
f_5	f_5	f_4	f_2	f_3	f_6	f_1
f_6	f_6	f_3	f_4	f_2	f_1	f_5

We make the following observations :

1. All the entries in the composition table are elements of the set G , therefore G is closed with respect to the given composition.

We know that the composite of functions is an associative composition i.e., if $f: A \rightarrow B$, $g: B \rightarrow C$, $h: C \rightarrow D$, then

$$h(gf) = (hg)f.$$

3. The identity function f_1 is the identity element.

4. Each function possesses inverse. Thus

$$f_1^{-1} = f_1, f_2^{-1} = f_2, f_3^{-1} = f_3, f_4^{-1} = f_4, f_5^{-1} = f_5, f_6^{-1} = f_6.$$

5. The composition is not commutative since

$$f_2 f_3 = f_5 \text{ and } f_3 f_2 = f_6. \text{ Thus } f_2 f_3 \neq f_3 f_2.$$

The set G contains 6 elements.

Hence G is a finite non-abelian group of order six with respect to the composite composition.

Note. Here we see in the composition table that the entries in the second row do not coincide with the corresponding entries in the second column. Thus $f_2 f_3 \neq f_3 f_2$. Therefore the composition is not commutative.

Example 4. Prove that the set of all n th roots of unity forms a finite abelian group of order n with respect to multiplication.

(Banaras 1969; Meerut 81; Allahabad 82)

Solution. We have $(1)^{1/n} = (1 + 0i)^{1/n} = (\cos 0 + i \sin 0)^{1/n}$
 $= (\cos 2r\pi + i \sin 2r\pi)^{1/n}$, where r is any integer
 $= \cos \frac{2r\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{2r\pi}{n}$ [by De Moivre's theorem]
 $= e^{(i2r\pi)/n}.$

Putting $r=0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1$ we get the n th roots of unity.

\therefore If G is the set of the n th roots of unity, then

$$G = \{1, e^{2\pi i/n}, e^{4\pi i/n}, e^{6\pi i/n}, \dots, e^{[2(n-1)\pi i/n]}\},$$

or $G = \{1, \omega, \omega^2, \omega^3, \dots, \omega^{n-1}\}$, where $\omega = e^{2\pi i/n}$.

Closure property. Let $a, b \in G$. Then both a and b are n th roots of unity. Therefore $a^n = 1$ and $b^n = 1$.

$$\text{Now } (ab)^n = a^n b^n = 1 \times 1 = 1.$$

$\therefore ab$ is also an n th root of unity and so $ab \in G$.

Thus $a, b \in G \Rightarrow ab \in G$. Therefore G is closed with respect to multiplication.

Associativity. The elements of G are all complex numbers and the multiplication of complex numbers is associative.

Existence of left identity. We have $1 \in G$ and $1a = a \forall a \in G$.

Therefore 1 is the left identity.

Existence of left inverse. The left inverse of 1 is 1 .

If $\omega^r, 1 \leq r \leq n-1$, is any other element of G , then ω^{n-r} is also an element of G . We have

$$\omega^{n-r} \omega^r = \omega^n = 1 \quad [\because \omega \text{ is an } n\text{th root of unity}]$$

$\therefore \omega^{n-r}$ is the left inverse of ω^r .

Further the multiplication of complex numbers is commutative.

\therefore the set of n th roots of unity is a finite abelian group of order n with respect to the operation of multiplication.

Example 5. Quaternion Group. Let $T = \{\pm 1, \pm i, \pm j, \pm k\}$. Define a multiplicative binary operation on T by setting $i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1$ and $ij = -ji = k, jk = -kj = i$ and $ki = -ik = j$. It can be easily shown that for this binary operation T is a non-abelian group. T is called a *Quaternion Group* and its order is 8. It can be easily verified that the set G consisting of the following eight matrices

$$\pm \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \pm \begin{bmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{bmatrix}, \pm \begin{bmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \pm \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

forms a quaternion group under the operation of matrix multiplication.

Exercises

1. Show that the set $G = \{1, -1\}$ is a finite abelian group of order 2 under multiplication as composition.

2. (i) Distinguish between an abelian and a non-abelian group. Give an example of each. (I.A.S. 1970; Kumayon 78)

(ii) In group theory, prove that the left axioms imply the right axioms. (Sambalpur 1977)

3. Show that the set

$$G = \{\dots, 3^{-4}, 3^{-3}, 3^{-2}, 3^{-1}, 1, 3, 3^2, 3^3, 3^4, \dots\}$$

forms an infinite abelian group with respect to multiplication.

4. Show that the set of all positive rational numbers (real numbers) forms an abelian group with respect to multiplication of numbers. (Meerut 1972)

5. Show that the set I of all integers is an abelian group with operation $*$ defined by $a*b = a+b+2$.

6. Prove that the set of rational numbers of the form $\frac{m}{2^n}$ (m, n integers) is a group under addition.

7. Show that the set G of all square matrices $[a_{ij}]_{n \times n}$ such that $\det [a_{ij}] = \pm 1$ is a group under matrix multiplication. Show also that those matrices in G for which $\det [a_{ij}] = 1$ form a group.

8. Show that the set of all matrices $\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{bmatrix}$, a and b being non-zero reals, is a group under matrix multiplication.

9. Show that the set of all matrices $\begin{bmatrix} c^a & b \\ 0 & c^{-a} \end{bmatrix}$, a and b real, is a group under matrix multiplication, c being a positive constant.

10. Show that the set of all matrices $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{bmatrix}$, where a and b are real numbers not both equal to zero, is a group under matrix multiplication. (Madras 1962)

11. Show that the set of matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & \sin \alpha & 0 \\ -\sin \alpha & \cos \alpha & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where α is a real number, forms a group under matrix multiplication. (I.A.S. 1975)

12. Show that the set of four transformations f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4 on the set of complex numbers defined by

$$f_1(z) = z, f_2(z) = -z, f_3(z) = 1/z, f_4(z) = -1/z,$$

forms a finite abelian group with respect to the composite composition. (Banaras 1963)

13. Show that the set of complex numbers z with $|z| = 1$ is not a group under the operation $*$ denoted by

$$z_1 * z_2 = |z_1| \cdot z_2.$$

14. Show that the four matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

form a multiplicative group. (Rajasthan 1975)

15. If z denotes any complex number, then show that the set of all bilinear transformations

$$f(z) = \frac{az+b}{cz+d}, \quad ad-bc \neq 0, \quad a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{C}$$

is an infinite non-abelian group.

16. Prove that the set of all transformations $f(z) = \frac{az+b}{cz+d}$ with $ad-bc=1$ is a group (a, b, c and d are complex numbers).

17. If G is a group and $a \in G$ is such that $aa=a$, prove that $a=e$.

18. If every element of a group is its own inverse, show that the group must be abelian.

19. Show that the composition table for a finite group contains each group element once and only once in each of its rows and columns.

20. Forming the composition table for the multiplicative group $\{e, a, b\}$ of order 3, show that every group of order 3 must be abelian.

21. Let G be a non-empty set closed under an associative product, which in addition satisfies :

(i) Existence of right identity i.e., there exists an element $e \in G$ such that $ae=a \quad \forall a \in G$.

(ii) Existence of right inverse i.e., $a \in G \Rightarrow$ there exists an element $a^{-1} \in G$ such that $aa^{-1}=e$.

Prove that G must be a group under this product.

(Nagarjuna 1979)

[Hint. First prove that with the given postulates the right cancellation law must hold. Then show that the right identity is also the left identity and the right inverse of an element is also its left inverse].

22. Let M be the set of all 2×2 matrices of the form $\begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ x & y \end{bmatrix}$, where $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ with $x+y \neq 0$. Show that M is a semi-group under matrix multiplication. Further show that M has a left identity and each element of M has a right inverse. Is M a group? (Ans. No.)

23. Let \mathbb{R}_0 be the set of all real numbers except zero. Define a binary operation $*$ on \mathbb{R}_0 by $a * b = |a|b$ where $|a|$ denotes the absolute value of a . Show that

(i) $*$ is associative on \mathbb{R}_0 .

(ii) There exists a left identity for $*$, and a right inverse for each element in \mathbb{R}_0 .

Is $(\mathbb{R}_0, *)$ a group?

(Ans. No.)

[Hint. Note that 1 and -1 are both left identities].

§ 8. **Addition Modulo m .** We shall now define a new type of addition known as "addition modulo m " and written as $a+_mb$ where a and b are any integers and m is a fixed positive integer.

By definition, we have

$$a+_mb=r, 0 \leq r < m$$

where r is the least non-negative remainder when $a+b$ (i.e., the ordinary sum of a and b) is divided by m .

For example $15+_57=2$, since $15+7=22=4(5)+2$ i.e., 2 is the least non-negative remainder when $15+7$ is divided by 5. Similarly $5+_53=2$; $5+_72=0$; $9+_123=0$; $4+_32=0$; $3+_31=1$. Also $-23+_33=1$, since $-23+3=-20=(-3)7+1$.

Thus to find $a+_mb$, we add a and b in the ordinary way and then from the sum, we remove integral multiples of m in such a way that the remainder r is either 0 or a positive integer less than m .

When a and b are two integers such that $a-b$ is divisible by a fixed positive integer m , then we write

$$a \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

which is read as " a is congruent to b modulo m ."

Thus $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ iff $a-b$ is divisible by m . For example $9 \equiv 4 \pmod{5}$ since $9-4$ is divisible by 5. $13 \equiv 3 \pmod{5}$; $5 \equiv 5 \pmod{5}$; $9 \equiv 3 \pmod{6}$; $16 \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$; $-20 \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$.

It can be easily seen that if $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then $a+_mc = b+_mc$.

For $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow a-b$ is divisible by m

$$\Rightarrow a-b = km \text{ for some integer } k$$

$$\Rightarrow a = b + km.$$

$$\text{Now } a+_mc = (b+km)+_mc$$

= least non-negative remainder when $(b+km)+c$ is divided by m

= least non-negative remainder when $b+c$ is divided by m

$$= b+_mc.$$

For example $5 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ and we have $5+_42 = 1+_42 = 3$.

Also it is obvious that $a+_mb \equiv a+b \pmod{m}$.

For example $9+_45 = 2$ and $9+5=14$. Now $14 \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$.

Finally $a+_mb = b+_ma$.

§ 9. **Multiplication modulo p .** We shall now define a new type of multiplication known as "multiplication modulo p " and written as $a \times_p b$ where a and b are any integers and p is a fixed positive integer. By definition, we have

$$a \times_p b = r, 0 \leq r < p,$$

where r is the least non-negative remainder when ab (i.e., the ordinary product of a and b) is divided by p . For example $8 \times_3 3 = 4$ since $8 \times 3 = 24 = 4(5) + 4$.

Also $4 \times_7 2 = 1$ since $4 \times 2 = 8 = 1(7) + 1$.

It can be easily seen that if $a \equiv b \pmod{p}$, then $a \times_p c = b \times_p c$.

Also it is obvious that $a \times_p b \equiv ab \pmod{p}$. For example $5 \times_3 4 = 2$ and $5 \times 4 = 20$. Now we see that $2 \equiv 20 \pmod{3}$ since $2 - 20$ is divisible by 3.

Theorem 1. Additive group of integers modulo m . The set $G = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, m-1\}$ of first m non-negative integers is a group, the composition being addition reduced modulo m .

Proof. We have by definition of addition modulo m ,

$$a +_m b = r$$

where r is the least non-negative remainder when the ordinary sum $a + b$ is divided by m . Obviously $0 \leq r \leq (m-1)$. Therefore for all $a, b \in G$, we have $a +_m b \in G$ and thus G is closed with respect to the composition addition modulo m .

Associativity. Let a, b, c be any arbitrary elements of G . Then $a +_m (b +_m c) = a +_m (b + c)$ [$\because b +_m c \equiv b + c \pmod{m}$]
 $=$ least non-negative remainder when $a + (b + c)$ is divided by m
 $=$ least non-negative remainder when $(a + b) + c$ is divided by m ,
since $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$
 $= (a + b) +_m c$ [by def. of $+_m$]
 $= (a +_m b) +_m c$ [$\because a + b \equiv a +_m b \pmod{m}$]

$\therefore '+_m'$ is an associative composition.

Existence of Identity Element. We have $0 \in G$. Also if a is any element of G , then $0 +_m a = a = a +_m 0$. Therefore 0 is the identity element.

Existence of inverse. The inverse of 0 is 0 itself. If $r \in G$ and $r \neq 0$, then $m - r \in G$. Also $(m - r) +_m r = 0 = r +_m (m - r)$. Therefore $m - r$ is the inverse of r .

Also, the composition $'+_m'$ is commutative, since
 $a +_m b =$ least non-negative remainder when $a + b$ is divided by m
 $=$ least non-negative remainder when $b + a$ is divided by m
 $= b +_m a$.

The set G contains m elements.

$\therefore (G, +_m)$ is a finite abelian group of order m .

Note. If we exclude zero from the above set, it will not form a group.

Theorem 2. Multiplicative group of integers modulo p where p is prime. The set G of $(p-1)$ integers $1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1, p$ being prime, is a finite abelian group of order $p-1$, the composition being multiplication modulo p .

Proof. Let $G = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1\}$ where p is prime.

[A non-zero integer p is called a prime integer if it is neither 1 nor -1 and if its only divisors are $1, -1, p, -p$. The first 10 positive primes are 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29].

Let a and b be any elements of G . Then $1 \leq a \leq p-1, 1 \leq b \leq p-1$. Now by definition, $a \times_p b = r$ where r is the least non-negative remainder when the ordinary product ab is divided by p . Since p is prime, therefore ab is not exactly divisible by p . Therefore r cannot be zero and we shall have $1 \leq r \leq p-1$. Thus $a \times_p b \in G \forall a, b \in G$. Hence the closure axiom is satisfied.

Associativity. Let a, b, c be any arbitrary elements of G .

Then $a \times_p (b \times_p c) = a \times_p (bc)$ [$\because b \times_p c \equiv bc \pmod{p}$]

= least non-negative remainder when $a(bc)$ is divided by p

= least non-negative remainder when $(ab)c$ is divided by p

$= (ab) \times_p c$

$= (a \times_p b) \times_p c$

[$\because ab \equiv a \times_p b \pmod{p}$]

$\therefore \times_p$ is an associative composition.

Existence of left identity. We have $1 \in G$. Also if a is any element of G , then $1 \times_p a = a$. Therefore 1 is the left identity.

Existence of left inverse. Let s be any member of G . Then $1 \leq s \leq p-1$. Consider the following $p-1$ products:

$$1 \times_p s, 2 \times_p s, 3 \times_p s, \dots, (p-1) \times_p s.$$

All these are elements of G . Also no two of these can be equal as shown below:

Let i and j be two unequal integers such that

$$1 \leq i \leq p-1, 1 \leq j \leq p-1 \text{ and } i > j.$$

Then

$$i \times_p s = j \times_p s$$

$\Rightarrow is$ and js leave the same least non-negative remainder when divided by p

$\Rightarrow is - js$ is divisible by $p \Rightarrow (i-j)s$ is divisible by p .

Since $1 \leq (i-j) < p-1, 1 \leq s \leq p-1$ and p is prime therefore $(i-j)s$ cannot be divisible by p .

$$\therefore i \times_p s \neq j \times_p s.$$

Thus $1 \times_p s, 2 \times_p s, \dots, (p-1) \times_p s$ are $p-1$ distinct elements

of the set G . Therefore one of these elements must be equal to 1.

Let $s' \times_p s = 1$. Then s' is the left inverse of s .

Finally the composition ' \times_p ' is commutative, since

$$\begin{aligned} a \times_p b &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } ab \text{ is divided by } p \\ &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } ba \text{ is divided by } p \\ &= b \times_p a. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore (G, \times_p)$ is a finite abelian group of order $p-1$.

Note 1. Suppose in the set G , p is not prime but p is composite. Then \exists two integers a and b such that $1 < a \leq p-1$, $1 < b \leq p-1$ and $ab = p$. Therefore $a \times_p b = 0$ and $0 \notin G$. Therefore G will not be closed with respect to the composition multiplication modulo p . Then (G, \times_p) will not be a group.

Note 2. If we include 0 in the set G , then also for this composition G will not be a group. The reason is that the inverse of 0 will not exist.

Example 1. Prove that the set $G = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ is a finite abelian group of order 6 with respect to addition modulo 6.

Solution. Let us form the composition table.

$+_6$	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	0	1	2	3	4	5
1	1	2	3	4	5	0
2	2	3	4	5	0	1
3	3	4	5	0	1	2
4	4	5	0	1	2	3
5	5	0	1	2	3	4

We see that all the entries in the composition table are elements of the set G . Therefore G is closed with respect to addition modulo 6 i.e., $+_6$.

The composition ' $+_6$ ' is associative. If a, b, c are any three elements of G , then

$$\begin{aligned} a +_6 (b +_6 c) &= a +_6 (b + c) & [\because b +_6 c \equiv b + c \pmod{6}] \\ &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } a + (b + c) \text{ is divided by } 6 \\ &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } (a + b) + c \text{ is divided by } 6 \\ &= (a + b) +_6 c = (a +_6 b) +_6 c & [\because a + b \equiv a +_6 b \pmod{6}] \end{aligned}$$

Existence of Identity. We have $0 \in G$. If a is any element of G , then from the composition table we see that

$$0 +_6 a = a = a +_6 0.$$

Therefore 0 is the identity element.

Existence of Inverse. From the table we see that the inverses of 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 are 0, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 respectively. For example $4 +_6 2 = 0 = 2 +_6 4$ implies 4 is the inverse of 2.

The composition is commutative as the corresponding rows and columns in the composition table are identical. The number of elements in the set G is 6.

$\therefore (G, +_6)$ is a finite abelian group of order 6.

Example 2. Prove that the set $G = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ is a finite abelian group of order 6 with respect to multiplication modulo 7.

Solution. Let us form the composition table :

\times_7	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	1	2	3	4	5	6
2	2	4	6	1	3	5
3	3	6	2	5	1	4
4	4	1	5	2	6	3
5	5	3	1	6	4	2
6	6	5	4	3	2	1

We see that all the entries in the composition table are elements of the set G . Therefore G is closed with respect to multiplication modulo 7 i.e., \times_7 .

The composition ' \times_7 ' is associative. If a, b, c are any three elements of G , then

$$\begin{aligned}
 a \times_7 (b \times_7 c) &= a \times_7 (bc) & [\because b \times_7 c \equiv bc \pmod{7}] \\
 &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } a(bc) \text{ is divided by } 7 \\
 &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } (ab)c \text{ is divided by } 7 \\
 &= (ab) \times_7 c = (a \times_7 b) \times_7 c & [\because a \times_7 b \equiv ab \pmod{7}]
 \end{aligned}$$

Existence of Identity. We have $1 \in G$. If a is any element of G , then from the composition table we see that $1 \times_7 a = a = a \times_7 1$.

$\therefore 1$ is the identity element.

Existence of inverse. From the table we see that the inverses of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 are 1, 4, 5, 2, 3, 6 respectively. For example $3 \times_7 5 = 1 = 5 \times_7 3$ implies 3 is the inverse of 5.

The composition is commutative as the corresponding rows and columns in the composition table are identical. The set G has 6 elements. Hence (G, \times_7) is a finite abelian group of order 6.

§ 10. Residue classes of the set of integers.

Some properties of integers. Let $I = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ be the set of integers.

Division algorithm. Let $a, b \in I$ with $b \neq 0$. Then we can divide a by b to get a non-negative remainder r which is smaller in size than b . In other words if $a, 0 \neq b \in I$, then there exist integers q and r such that $a = qb + r$ where $0 \leq r < |b|$.

For example let $-15, -9$ be two integers. Then we can write $-15 = 2(-9) + 3$. Here $0 \leq 3 < |-9|$.

Divisibility in the set of integers.

Definition. Let $a, 0 \neq b \in I$. We say that a is divisible by b if $a = bm$ where m is some integer.

If a is divisible by b , then we also say that b is a divisor of a . In symbols we shall write it as $b | a$. It will be read as ' b is a divisor of a '. If $a | b, b | c$, then $a | c$. Also if $a | b, a | d$, then $a | (b + d)$. Further if $a | b$, then $a | (bk)$ where k is any integer.

Associates. Definition. Two non-zero integers a and b are said to be associates if $a | b$ and $b | a$. If a and b are associates, then we must have $a = \pm b$.

Greatest common divisor. Definition. Let a and b be any two integers. Then the positive integer c is said to be the greatest common divisor of a and b if

(i) $c | a$ and $c | b$.

(ii) whenever $d | a$ and $d | b$, then $d | c$.

The greatest common divisor of the integers a and b will be symbolically denoted by (a, b) .

Existence and uniqueness of greatest common divisor. If a and b are integers, not both 0, then they have a unique greatest common divisor, say, c . Also we can find integers x and y such that $c = xa + yb$.

Relatively prime integers. Definition. Two integers a and b are said to be relatively prime if $(a, b) = 1$ i.e., if their greatest common divisor is 1. For example -3 and 5 are relatively prime integers, 1 and 8 are relatively prime integers. If a and b are

relatively prime integers then $(a, b) = 1$. Therefore we can find integers x and y such that $1 = xa + yb$.

Prime Integers. Definition. An integer p is said to be a prime integer if $p \neq 0$, $p \neq \pm 1$, and the only divisors of p are $\pm 1, \pm p$. For example $\pm 2, \pm 3, \pm 5, \pm 7, \pm 11, \dots$ are prime integers.

Three very important results.

(i) Let a, b, c be three integers such that a and b are relatively prime and $a \mid bc$. Then we must have $a \mid c$.

(ii) Let p be a prime integer and a, b be any two integers such that $p \mid ab$. Then we must have $p \mid a$ or $p \mid b$.

(iii) Let a be any integer greater than 1. Then a can be uniquely expressed (except for order) as the product of a finite number of positive primes. For example $18 = 2 \times 3 \times 3 = 3 \times 2 \times 3$.

Relation of 'congruence modulo m ' in the set of integers.

Definition. Let m be any fixed positive integer. Then an integer a is said to be congruent to another integer b modulo m if $m \mid (a - b)$ i.e., if $(a - b)$ is divisible by m . Symbolically we write $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. It will be read as " a is congruent to b modulo m ".

For example $13 \equiv 3 \pmod{5}$ because $13 - 3 = 10$ which is divisible by 5. Further $17 \equiv -3 \pmod{5}$ because $17 - (-3) = 20$ which is divisible by 5.

Theorem 1. Show that "congruence modulo m " is an equivalence relation in the set of integers. Further show that this equivalence relation has m distinct equivalence classes. (Allahabad 1979)

Proof. Let I be the set of integers. If m is any positive integer then we say that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if $m \mid (a - b)$. We shall prove that this defines an equivalence relation in the set I .

Reflexivity. Let a be any integer. Then $a - a = 0$ and $m \mid 0$. Thus $a \equiv a \pmod{m} \forall a \in I$. Therefore the relation is reflexive.

Symmetry. Let $a, b \in I$ be such that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. Then we have $m \mid (a - b) \Rightarrow m \mid -(a - b) \Rightarrow m \mid (b - a) \Rightarrow b \equiv a \pmod{m}$. Thus $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow b \equiv a \pmod{m}$. Therefore the relation is symmetric.

Transitivity. Let $a, b, c \in I$ be such that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, $b \equiv c \pmod{m}$. Then we have $m \mid (a - b)$ and $m \mid (b - c) \Rightarrow m \mid \{(a - b) + (b - c)\} \Rightarrow m \mid (a - c) \Rightarrow a \equiv c \pmod{m}$. Thus $a \equiv b \pmod{m}, b \equiv c \pmod{m} \Rightarrow a \equiv c \pmod{m}$. Therefore the relation is transitive.

Hence this is an equivalence relation.

Consequently it will partition I into disjoint equivalence classes

called *residue classes modulo m* or *congruence classes modulo m* .

If $a \in I$, then the residue class \bar{a} or $\{a\}$ or $[a]$
 $= \{x : x \in I \text{ and } x - a \text{ is divisible by } m\}$.

If $b \in I$, then the residue class $[b]$
 $= \{y : y \in I \text{ and } y - b \text{ is divisible by } m\}$.

Obviously $[a] = [b]$ if and only if $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ i.e., if and only if $m \mid (a - b)$. Thus $[a] = [a + m] = [a + 2m]$ and so on. Similarly $[1] = [1 + m] = [1 + 2m]$ and so on. Also $[0] = [m] = [2m] = [-m]$ and so on.

Now let I_m be the set of all residue classes of integers modulo m . This set is also called the set of integers mod m . [Some authors denote this set by I_m]. We shall prove that the set I_m has m distinct elements. We claim that

$$I_m = \{[0], [1], [2], \dots, [m-1]\}.$$

First we shall show that the m residue classes $[0], [1], \dots, [m-1]$ are all distinct. Let $0 \leq i < m$, $0 \leq j < m$ and $j > i$.

Then $[i] = [j] \Rightarrow i \equiv j \pmod{m}$

$\Rightarrow i - j$ is divisible by $m \Rightarrow j - i$ is divisible by m .

But according to our assumption $j - i$ is a positive integer less than m . So it cannot be divisible by m . Therefore $[i] \neq [j]$ and thus $[0], [1], \dots, [m-1]$ are all distinct.

Now we shall show that if a is any integer, then the residue class $[a]$ is equal to one of the residue classes $[0], [1], \dots, [m-1]$. By division algorithm, we have

$$a = km + r, \text{ where } k, r \in I \text{ and } 0 \leq r < m$$

$$\Rightarrow a - r = km \Rightarrow a - r \text{ is divisible by } m \Rightarrow a \equiv r \pmod{m} \Rightarrow [a] = [r].$$

Since $0 \leq r < m$, therefore the residue class $[a] = [r]$ is one of the residue classes $[0], [1], \dots, [m-1]$.

Hence the set I_m has m distinct elements.

Note. The residue class $[0]$ is called the *zero residue class*. We have $[a] = [0]$ if and only if $m \mid a$. The set of integers mod m will have $m-1$ distinct non-zero residue classes.

Addition of residue classes. Definition. If $[a], [b] \in I_m$, then we define $[a] + [b] = [a + b]$. Here '+' on the L.H.S. stands for addition of residue classes and '+' on the R.H.S. stands for addition of integers.

Since $a, b \in I \Rightarrow a + b \in I$, therefore $[a + b]$ is also a residue class i.e., $[a + b] \in I_m$. Now we know that $[a] = [a + m] = [a + 2m]$, and so on. Thus a residue class can be represented in several ways. Therefore we must show that our addition of residue classes

is well defined *i.e.*, it is independent of the representation of any residue class. For this we are to show that if $[a]=[c]$ and $[b]=[d]$, then $[a]+[b]=[c]+[d]$.

We have $[a]=[c] \Rightarrow m \mid (a-c)$. Also $[b]=[d] \Rightarrow m \mid (b-d)$.

Now $m \mid (a-c)$ and $m \mid (b-d)$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid \{(a-c) + (b-d)\} \Rightarrow m \mid \{(a+b) - (c+d)\}$$

$$\Rightarrow a+b \equiv c+d \pmod{m} \Rightarrow [a+b] = [c+d] \Rightarrow [a]+[b] = [c]+[d].$$

Thus $[a]=[c]$ and $[b]=[d] \Rightarrow [a]+[b]=[c]+[d]$.

Hence our addition of residue classes is well-defined.

Multiplication of residue classes. Definition. If $[a], [b] \in I_m$, then we define $[a][b]=[ab]$.

Since $a, b \in I \Rightarrow ab \in I$, therefore $[ab]$ is also a residue class *i.e.*, $[ab] \in I_m$. But we must show that our multiplication of residue classes is well-defined. For this we are to show that if $[a]=[c]$ and $[b]=[d]$, then $[a][b]=[c][d]$.

We have $[a]=[c] \Rightarrow a \equiv c \pmod{m}$

$$\Rightarrow a-c \text{ is divisible by } m \Rightarrow b(a-c) \text{ is divisible by } m$$

Also $[b]=[d] \Rightarrow b-d \text{ is divisible by } m \Rightarrow c(b-d) \text{ is divisible by } m$.

$\therefore [a]=[c]$ and $[b]=[d] \Rightarrow \{b(a-c) + c(b-d)\}$ is divisible by m

$$\Rightarrow ab - cd \text{ is divisible by } m$$

$$\Rightarrow ab \equiv cd \pmod{m} \Rightarrow [ab] = [cd]$$

$$\Rightarrow [a][b] = [c][d].$$

Hence our multiplication of residue classes is well-defined.

Theorem 2. The set of residue classes modulo m is an abelian group of order m with respect to addition of residue classes.

(Rajasthan 1974 ; Meerut 79)

Proof. Let $I = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ be the set of integers. If $a \in I$, then $[a]$ is a residue class modulo m of I if

$$[a] = \{x : x \in I, \text{ and } x-a \text{ is divisible by } m\}.$$

Let I_m be the set of all residue classes of $I \pmod{m}$

i.e., $I_m = \{[a] : a \in I\}$. We have $[a]=[b] \Leftrightarrow a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. The set I_m has m distinct elements $[0], [1], [2], \dots, [m-1]$. Thus we have

$$I_m = \{[0], [1], [2], \dots, [m-1]\}.$$

If a and b are any two integers, then we define the addition of residue classes $[a]$ and $[b]$ as follows :

$$[a] + [b] = [a+b].$$

If $[a]=[c]$ and $[b]=[d]$, then it can be easily seen that

$$[a] + [b] = [c] + [d].$$

Therefore our addition of residue classes is well-defined.

Now we shall show that I_m is a group with respect to addition of residue classes.

Closure property. If $[a], [b] \in I_m$, then by definition $[a] + [b] = [a+b]$. Since $a+b$ is an integer, therefore $[a+b] \in I_m$. Thus I_m is closed with respect to addition of residue classes.

Associativity. Let $[a], [b], [c]$ be any three elements of I_m . Then $[a] + ([b] + [c])$

$$\begin{aligned} &= [a] + [b+c] && \text{[by def. of addition of residue classes]} \\ &= [a+(b+c)] && \text{[by def. of addition of residue classes]} \\ &= [(a+b)+c] && \text{[}\because \text{ addition of integers is associative]} \\ &= [a+b] + [c] = ([a] + [b]) + [c]. \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity. Let $[a], [b] \in I_m$. Then

$$[a] + [b] = [a+b] = [b+a] = [b] + [a].$$

Existence of identity. We have $[0] \in I_m$. If $[a] \in I_m$, then we have $[0] + [a] = [0+a] = [a] = [a] + [0]$. Therefore the residue class $[0]$ is the identity element.

Existence of inverse. Let $[a] \in I_m$ be arbitrary. Since $a \in I \Rightarrow -a \in I$, therefore $[-a]$ is also an element of I_m . We have $[-a] + [a] = [-a+a] = [0] = [a] + [-a]$. Thus $[-a]$ is the inverse of $[a]$.

Thus I_m is an abelian group with respect to addition of residue classes. Since the number of distinct elements in I_m is m , therefore the order of this group is m .

Note. If $[r] \in I_m$ and $0 \leq r < m$, then the inverse of $[r]$ is $[m-r]$. We have $[r] + [m-r] = [r+(m-r)] = [m] = [0]$. Note that $m \mid m \Rightarrow [m] = [0]$.

Theorem 3. *The set of non-zero residue classes modulo a prime integer p forms an abelian group of order $p-1$ with respect to multiplication of residue classes.* (Meerut 1981; Jiawaji 78)

Proof. Let $I = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ be the set of integers. If $a \in I$, then $[a]$ is a residue class modulo p of I if

$$[a] = \{x : x \in I \text{ and } x-a \text{ is divisible by } p\}.$$

We have $[a] = [b]$ if and only if $a-b$ is divisible by p .

The residue class $[0]$ is called the zero residue class. We have $[a] = [0]$ if and only if a is divisible by p .

Let I_p be the set of residue classes of $I \bmod p$. Then I_p has p distinct elements i.e., $[0], [1], [2], \dots, [p-1]$. The residue class $[0]$ is the zero residue class. Therefore if G is the set of all non-zero

residue classes modulo p , then G has $p-1$ distinct elements and we have $G = \{[1], [2], \dots, [p-1]\}$

or $G = \{[a] : a \in \mathbb{I} \text{ and } a \text{ is not divisible by } p\}$.

If a and b are any two integers, then we define the multiplication of residue classes $[a]$ and $[b]$ as follows :

$$[a][b] = [ab].$$

If $[a] = [c]$ and $[b] = [d]$, then it can be easily seen that $[a][b] = [c][d]$. Therefore our multiplication of residue classes is well defined.

Now we shall show that G is a group with respect to multiplication of residue classes.

Closure property. Let $[a], [b]$ be any two elements of G . Then a and b are integers each not divisible by p . By definition, we have $[a][b] = [ab]$.

Since $ab \in \mathbb{I}$, therefore $[ab]$ is also a residue class mod p . But we must show that $[ab]$ is a non-zero residue class i.e., p is not a divisor of ab .

We have $p \mid ab \Rightarrow p \mid a$ or $p \mid b$, since p is a prime integer.

But neither a nor b is divisible by p . Hence ab is not divisible by p . Thus $[ab] \neq [0]$. Consequently $[ab] \in G$ and G is closed with respect to multiplication of residue classes.

Associativity. If $[a], [b], [c]$ be any three residue classes, then

$$\begin{aligned} [a]([b][c]) &= [a][bc] && \text{(by def.)} \\ &= [a(bc)] && \text{(by def.)} \\ &= [(ab)c] && (\because \text{multiplication of integers is associative}) \\ &= [ab][c] = ([a][b])[c]. \end{aligned}$$

\therefore multiplication of residue classes is associative.

Commutativity. If $[a], [b]$ be any two residue classes, then

$$[a][b] = [ab] = [ba] = [b][a].$$

\therefore multiplication of residue classes is commutative.

Existence of identity. Since the integer 1 is not divisible by the prime integer p , therefore $[1] \neq [0]$. Thus $[1] \in G$. If $[a]$ be any element of G , we have

$$[1][a] = [1a] = [a] = [a][1].$$

Thus the residue class $[1]$ is the identity element.

Existence of inverse. Let $[a] \in G$ i.e., let a be any non-zero residue class. Then a is not divisible by p . Consider the $p-1$ products

$$[1][a], [2][a], \dots, [p-1][a].$$

By closure property all these products are elements of G . We claim that all these are distinct elements of G .

Let i and j be two unequal integers, such that

$$1 \leq i \leq p-1, 1 \leq j \leq p-1 \text{ and } i > j.$$

Then $[i][a] = [j][a] \Rightarrow [ia] = [ja]$

$$\Rightarrow ia - ja \text{ is divisible by } p \Rightarrow p \mid (i-j)a$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid a \text{ or } p \mid (i-j), \text{ since } p \text{ is a prime integer}$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid (i-j), \text{ since } p \text{ is not a divisor of } a.$$

But according to our assumption $i-j$ is a positive integer less than p . So it cannot be divisible by p . Therefore $[i][a] \neq [j][a]$. Thus $[1][a], [2][a], \dots, [p-1][a]$ are the $p-1$ distinct elements of G placed in some order. Therefore one of these elements must be equal to $[1]$. Let $[b][a] = [1] = [a][b]$. Then $[b]$ is the inverse of $[a]$.

Thus G is an abelian group with respect to multiplication of residue classes. Since the number of distinct elements in G is $p-1$, therefore the order of this group is $p-1$.

Theorem 4. *The set of non-zero residue classes modulo a composite positive integer m is not a group with respect to multiplication of residue classes.* (Banaras 1976)

Proof. Let G be the set of non-zero residue classes modulo a composite positive integer m . Since m is a composite integer, therefore let $m=ab$ where $1 < a < m, 1 < b < m$. Now $1 < a < m \Rightarrow m$ is not a divisor of $a \Rightarrow [a] \neq [0] \Rightarrow [a] \in G$. Similarly $[b] \neq [0]$ and therefore $[b] \in G$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } ab=m &\Rightarrow [ab]=[m] \\ &\Rightarrow [a][b]=[0], \text{ since } [m]=[0] \\ &\Rightarrow [a][b] \notin G. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $[a], [b] \in G \Rightarrow [a][b] \notin G$. Therefore G is not closed with respect to multiplication of residue classes. Hence G is not a group with respect to multiplication of residue classes.

§ 11. An alternative set of postulates for a group. Theorem. *A set G with a binary composition denoted multiplicatively is a group if*

(i) *the composition is associative.*

(ii) *for every pair of elements $a, b \in G$, the equations*

$$ax=b \text{ and } ya=b$$

have solutions in G .

(G.N.D.U. 1986; Rajasthan 76; Jiwaji 78; Meerut 87; Andhra 77; Allahabad 83)

Proof. In order to prove that a set G equipped with a composition satisfying conditions (i) and (ii) is a group, we should show

that the left identity exists and each element of G possesses left inverse.

It is given that for every pair of elements $a, b \in G$ the equation $ya=b$ has a solution in G . Therefore if $a \in G$, then taking $b=a$, we see that there exists an element, $e \in G$ such that

$$ea=a. \quad \dots (1)$$

Suppose now b is any arbitrary element of G . Since $a \in G$, therefore from (ii) there exists $x \in G$ such that

$$ax=b. \quad \dots (2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now} \quad eb &= e(ax) && [\because b=ax] \\ &= (ea)x && [\text{by associativity}] \\ &= ax && [\text{from (1)}] \\ &= b. && [\text{from (2)}] \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\exists e \in G$ such that $eb=b \forall b \in G$. Therefore e is the left identity.

Suppose now a is any arbitrary element of G . Since $e \in G$, therefore taking $b=e$ in the given condition (ii), we see that the equation $ya=e$ has a solution in G . Let $c \in G$ be such that $ca=e$. Then c is the left inverse of a . Therefore each element of G possesses left inverse.

Since left identity exists and each element possesses left inverse, therefore the left identity will also be the right identity and the left inverse of any element will also be its right inverse.

Hence G is a group for the given composition if the postulates (i) and (ii) are satisfied.

Example 1. Prove that a finite set G with a composition denoted multiplicatively is a group if the composition is associative and the right and left cancellation laws hold in G i.e.,

$$ax=bx \Rightarrow a=b, \quad xa=xb \Rightarrow a=b.$$

Show further that the validity of the cancellation laws does not characterise infinite groups but characterises finite groups only.

(Nagarjuna 1980 ; Allahabad 79 ; Meerut 70)

Solution. Suppose the set G has n distinct elements

$$a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n.$$

Let a be any one of these elements. Then the n products

$$a_1a, a_2a, a_3a, \dots, a_na$$

are all elements of G . Also these n elements are all distinct. For $a_ia=a_ja$ where $a_i, a_j \in G \Rightarrow a_i=a_j$ (by right cancellation law.)

\therefore if $a_i \neq a_j$, then $a_ia \neq a_ja$.

Thus $a_1a, a_2a, a_3a, \dots, a_na$ are nothing but the n elements of G placed in some order.

Therefore if b is any element of G , then one of these n elements will be equal to b .

Therefore if a, b are any two elements of G , there exists an element, say $c \in G$ such that $ca=b$. In other words, the equation

$$ya=b$$

has a solution in G for every pair of elements $a, b \in G$.

Similarly by forming the products

$$aa_1, aa_2, aa_3, \dots, aa_n$$

and by using the left cancellation law, we can show that the equation

$$ax=b$$

has a solution in G for every pair of elements $a, b \in G$.

Hence the postulates (i) and (ii) of § 11 are satisfied. Therefore G is a finite group of order n .

However, an infinite set will not necessarily form a group even if the composition in the set is associative and both the cancellation laws hold. For example, the set N of all natural numbers

$$1, 2, 3, 4, \dots$$

is not a group for multiplication even though

- (i) N is closed with respect to multiplication.
- (ii) Multiplication in N is associative.
- (iii) Both the cancellation laws hold good for multiplication in N .

Euler's ϕ -function. Definition. The Euler ϕ -function, $\phi(n)$, is defined for all positive integers n by :

$\phi(1)=1$; for $n > 1$, $\phi(n)$ =the number of positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n .

Thus $\phi(6)=2$ because the positive integers less than 6 and relatively prime to 6 are 5, 1 and their number is 2. Similarly $\phi(8)=4$ because the positive integers less than 8 and relatively prime to 8 are 7, 5, 3, 1 and their number is 4. If p is a positive prime integer, then obviously $\phi(p)=p-1$.

Example 2. Let n be any positive integer. For any integer a , let $[a]$ denote the residue class of the set of integers mod n . Let $G=\{[a] : a \text{ is an integer relatively prime to } n\}$. Prove that, with respect to multiplication of residue classes G is a group of order $\phi(n)$, where ϕ is the Euler ϕ -function.

Solution. Let $I=\{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ be the set of integers and let n be any positive integer. For any integer a , let

$$[a] = \{x : x \in I \text{ and } x \equiv a \pmod{n}\}.$$

Let $G = \{[a] : a \text{ is an integer relatively prime to } n \text{ i.e., } (a, n) = 1\}$.

First we shall show that the number of distinct elements in G is equal to $\phi(n)$.

Case 1. $n=1$. In this case if a is any integer, then $a-1$ is divisible by 1 $\Rightarrow a \equiv 1 \pmod{1} \Rightarrow [a] = [1]$.

Thus in this case each residue class $[a]$ is equal to the residue class $[1]$. Also, 1 is relatively prime to 1.

Therefore in this case the set G has only one distinct element. Thus the number of distinct elements in $G = 1 = \phi(1)$.

Case 2. $n > 1$.

In this case the number of positive integers less than n and relatively prime to $n = \phi(n) = k$, say. Let a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k be the positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n . We shall show that $[a_1], [a_2], \dots, [a_k]$ are the only distinct elements of G .

First we shall show that the residue classes $[a_1], \dots, [a_k]$ are all distinct. Let i, j be two positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n and let $i > j$. We have

$$[i] = [j] \Rightarrow i \equiv j \pmod{n} \Rightarrow i - j \text{ is divisible by } n.$$

But according to our assumption $i - j$ is a positive integer less than n . Therefore $i - j$ cannot be divisible by n . Thus $[i] \neq [j]$. Hence the residue classes $[a_1], \dots, [a_k]$ are all distinct.

Now we shall show that if a is any integer relatively prime to n , then the residue class $[a]$ is equal to one of the residue classes $[a_1], \dots, [a_k]$. Since a is any integer and n is a positive integer, therefore by division algorithm there exist integers q and r such that

$$a = nq + r \text{ where } 0 \leq r < n.$$

We have $a - r = nq \Rightarrow a - r$ is divisible by $n \Rightarrow a \equiv r \pmod{n} \Rightarrow [a] = [r]$.

Now it remains to show that r is relatively prime to n . Suppose r is not relatively prime to n . Let $(r, n) = s$ where $s > 1$. Then $s | n$ and $s | r$. Therefore $s | (nq + r)$ i.e., $s | a$. Now $s | a$ and $s | n$ implies that a and n are not relatively prime to each other which is a contradiction. Hence r must be relatively prime to n . Since $n > 1$, therefore r cannot be 0. Hence r is a positive integer less than n and relatively prime to n . Thus $[a]$ is one of the residue classes $[a_1], \dots, [a_k]$.

Thus the number of distinct elements in $G = k = \phi(n)$. Thus G is a finite set whether $n=1$ or $n>1$. Now we shall show that G is a group with respect to multiplication of residue classes.

Closure property. Let $[a], [b]$ be any two elements of G . Then a and b are integers relatively prime to n . By definition of multiplication of residue classes, we have

$$[a][b] = [ab].$$

Now $a, b \in I \Rightarrow ab \in I$. We shall show that ab is relatively prime to n . Suppose ab is not relatively prime to n . Let $(n, ab) = t$ where $t > 1$. The integer t can be expressed as the product of a finite number of prime integers. Let the prime integer p be a factor of t . Then $p | t$. Also $t | ab$. Therefore $p | ab$. Since p is prime, therefore $p | ab \Rightarrow p | a$ or $p | b$.

Let $p | a$. Now $p | t$ and $t | n$. Therefore $p | n$. Thus $p | a$ and $p | n$. Therefore a is not relatively prime to n . This is a contradiction. Hence ab must be relatively prime to n .

$\therefore [ab] \in G$ and G is closed with respect to multiplication of residue classes.

Associativity. If $[a], [b], [c]$ are any three residue classes, then $[a]([b][c]) = [a][bc] = [a(bc)] = [(ab)c] = [ab][c] = ([a][b])[c]$.

Thus multiplication of residue classes is associative.

Existence of cancellation laws. Let $[a], [b], [c]$ be any three elements of G . Then a, b, c are integers relatively prime to n .

We have $[a][b] = [a][c] \Rightarrow [ab] = [ac]$

$$\Rightarrow ab - ac \text{ is divisible by } n \Rightarrow n | a(b - c)$$

$$\Rightarrow n | b - c, \text{ since } n \text{ is relatively prime to } a$$

$$\Rightarrow b \equiv c \pmod{n} \Rightarrow [b] = [c].$$

Thus the left cancellation law holds good in G .

Since the multiplication of residue classes is commutative, therefore the right cancellation law will also hold good in G .

Now G is a finite set closed with respect to multiplication of residue classes. Also this composition is associative and both the cancellation laws hold in G for this composition. Hence G is a group for this composition. The order of G is equal to $\phi(n)$, the number of distinct elements in G .

Since 1 is an integer relatively prime to n , therefore $[1] \in G$. If $[a]$ is any element of G , we have $[1][a] = [1a] = [a] = [a][1]$. Therefore $[1]$ is the identity element of this group.

Exercises

1. Show that the relation 'congruence modulo m ' is an equivalence relation in the set of integers and has m distinct equivalence classes.

(Jabalpur, 1970)

2. Is the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ a group under (i) addition modulo 6 (ii) multiplication modulo 6 ? Ans. (i) No. (ii) No.

3. Is the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ a group under addition modulo 7 ? Ans. No. (Kolhapur 1973)

4. Does the set of residue classes modulo 5 form a group with respect to addition ? Ans. Yes. (Meerut 1973)

5. Prove that the set $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$ is a finite abelian group of order 5 under addition modulo 5 as composition.

(Meerut 1988)

6. Prove that the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ is a finite abelian group of order 4 under multiplication modulo 5 as composition.

7. Show that the set $\{1, 3, 4, 5, 9\}$ is an abelian group under multiplication modulo 11 as composition. What is the order of this group ? Ans. 5.

8. Prove that $G = \{1, 5, 7, 11\}$ is a group under multiplication modulo 12.

9. Which of the following sets are groups under multiplication modulo 11 ?

(i) $\{1, 3, 5, 7, 8\}$, (ii) $\{1, 8\}$, (iii) $\{1, 10\}$. Ans. Only $\{1, 10\}$.

10. Show that the non-zero residue classes modulo a positive prime integer p form a commutative group with respect to multiplication of residue classes.

(Gorakhpur 1970)

11. Define a semigroup and a group, and prove that a semigroup G is a group if and only if the equations $ax=b$ and $ya=b$ have solutions in G for arbitrary $a, b \in G$.

(Sagar 1965)

12. Let $S = \{x \in I : 1 \leq x \leq n, \text{ and } (x, n) = 1 \text{ i.e., } x \text{ and } n \text{ are relatively prime integers}\}$. Prove that S is a group with respect to multiplication modulo n as composition.

§ 12. Permutations.

Definition. Suppose S is a finite set having n distinct elements. Then a one-one mapping of S onto itself is called a permutation of degree n .

(Rajasthan 1977; Meerut 73)

The number of elements in the finite set S is known as the degree of permutation.

Symbol for a permutation. Let $S = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n\}$ be a finite set having n distinct elements. If $f: S \rightarrow S$ and f is one-one onto, then f is a permutation of degree n . Let $f(a_1) = b_1, f(a_2) = b_2, f(a_3) = b_3, \dots, f(a_n) = b_n$, where $\{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n\} = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ i.e., b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n is nothing but some arrangement of the n elements of

S. We find it convenient to introduce a two line notation to write this permutation. In this notation, we write

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ i.e.,}$$

each element in the second row is the f -image of the element of the first row lying directly above it.

If $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ is a finite set having four elements, then

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ etc.,}$$

are all permutations of degree 4. Here in the permutation f the elements 1, 2, 3, 4 have been replaced respectively by the elements 2, 4, 1, 3. Thus $f(1)=2, f(2)=4, f(3)=1, f(4)=3$. In other words each element in the first row is to be replaced by the element directly below it in the second row.

Equality of two permutations. Two permutations f and g of degree n are said to be equal if we have $f(a) = g(a) \forall a \in S$.

For example, if $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $g = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

are two permutations of degree 4, then we have $f=g$. Here we see that both f and g replace 1 by 2, 2 by 3, 3 by 4 and 4 by 1.

If $f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$ is a permutation of degree n , we can write it in several ways. The interchange of columns will not change the permutation. Thus we can write

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} a_2 & a_1 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ b_2 & b_1 & b_3 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_n & a_1 \dots a_2 \\ b_n & b_1 \dots b_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_n & a_{n-1} \dots a_2 & a_1 \\ b_n & b_{n-1} \dots b_2 & b_1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ etc.}$$

Therefore if f and g are two permutations of degree n , then we can always write g in such a way that the first row of g coincides with the second row of f .

For example if $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ are two permutations of degree 4, then by interchanging columns we can write $g = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Total number of distinct permutations of degree n . If S is a finite set having n distinct elements, then we shall have $n!$ distinct arrangements of the elements of S . Therefore there will be $n!$ distinct permutations of degree n . If P_n be the set consisting of all permutations of degree n , then the set P_n will have $n!$ distinct

elements. This set P_n is called the symmetric set of permutations of degree n . Sometimes it is also denoted by S_n . Thus

$$P_n = \{ f : f \text{ is a permutation of degree } n \}.$$

The set P_3 of all permutations of degree 3 will have $3!$ i.e., 6 elements. Obviously

$$P_3 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\}.$$

Identity Permutation. If I is a permutation of degree n such that I replaces each element by the element itself, I is called the identity permutation of degree n .

Thus $I = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n \end{pmatrix}$ or $\begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix}$ or $\begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$ is the identity permutation of degree n .

Product or Composite of two permutations. The product or composite of two permutations f and g of degree n denoted by fg , is obtained by first carrying out the operation defined by f and then by g .

Suppose P_n is the set of all permutations of degree n . Let

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } g = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix}$$

be any two elements of P_n .

Here the permutation g has been written in such a way that the first row of g coincides with the second row of f . If the product of the permutations f and g is denoted multiplicatively i.e., by fg , then by definition

$$fg = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

For, f replaces a_1 by b_1 and then g replaces b_1 by c_1 so that fg replaces a_1 by c_1 . Similarly fg replaces a_2 by c_2 , a_3 by c_3 , ..., a_n by c_n .

Obviously fg is also a permutation of degree n . Thus the product of two permutations of degree n is also a permutation of degree n . Therefore $fg \in P_n \forall f, g \in P_n$.

Example 1. Let $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ be two permutations of degree 3. Then

$$fg = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \\
 \text{and } gf &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Obviously $fg \neq gf$. The reason is that fg replaces 1 by 2 while gf replaces 1 by 3. So fg cannot be equal to gf .

Thus we see that multiplication of permutations is not in general commutative.

Example 2. Let $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
 and $g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 & 5 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ be two permutations of degree 5.

To obtain fg there is no necessity that we should write g in such a way that the first row of g coincides with the second row of f .

We see that f replaces 1 by 2 and g replaces 2 by 2. Therefore fg replaces 1 by 2. Again f replaces 2 by 3 and g replaces 3 by 4 therefore fg replaces 2 by 4. Further f replaces 3 by 4 and g replaces 4 by 5, therefore fg replaces 3 by 5. Proceeding in this way we get

$$fg = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

§ 13. Groups of Permutations.

Theorem. The set P_n of all permutations on n symbols is a finite group of order $n!$ with respect to composite of mappings as the operation. For $n \leq 2$, this group is abelian and for $n > 2$ it is always non-abelian. (Rajasthan 1976; Meerut 80; Allahabad 69)

Proof. Let $S = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ be a finite set having n distinct elements. Let $f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & \dots & a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 & \dots & b_n \end{pmatrix}$ be a permutation of degree n .

Here elements b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n of the second row are simply an arrangement of the n elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n of the set S .

The elements of the set S can be arranged in $n!$ different ways. Therefore we shall have $n!$ distinct permutations of degree n . If P_n be the set of all permutations of degree n then P_n has $n!$ distinct elements.

Let $f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$ and $g = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix}$ be any two permutations of degree n . Then by definition of product or composite of two permutations, denoted multiplicatively, we have

$$fg = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix}$$

Obviously fg is also a permutation of degree n , since c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n is nothing but an arrangement of the same n elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n of the set S . Thus $fg \in P_n$ if $f, g \in P_n$. Therefore P_n is closed with respect to the composition known as product of two permutations.

Associativity. Permutation multiplication is associative. Let

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad g = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix}, \quad h = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \\ d_1 & d_2 \dots d_n \end{pmatrix}$$

be any three permutations of degree n where $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n; c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n; d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n$ are simply different arrangements of the same n elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n .

$$\text{Then } (fg) = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

$$\therefore (fg)h = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} c_1 & c_2 \dots c_n \\ d_1 & d_2 \dots d_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ d_1 & d_2 \dots d_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Also } (gh) = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ d_1 & d_2 \dots d_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

$$\therefore f(gh) = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ d_1 & d_2 \dots d_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ d_1 & d_2 \dots d_n \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus $(fg)h = f(gh)$.

Existence of Identity. Let

$$I = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$$

be the identity permutation of degree n . Then $I \in P_n$.

If $f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$ is any element of P_n , we have

$$fI = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = f.$$

$$\text{Also } If = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = f.$$

\therefore Identity permutation I is the identity element.

Existence of Inverse. Let $f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$ be any element of

P_n . Then $f^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix}$ is also an element of P_n since f^{-1} is

also a permutation of degree n . We have

$$f^{-1}f = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} = I.$$

$$\text{Also } ff^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \dots b_n \\ a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \\ a_1 & a_2 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix} = I.$$

$\therefore f^{-1}$ is the inverse of f .

Hence P_n is a group of order $n!$ with respect to product of permutations as composition.

If $n=1$, the set P_n has only one element and every group of order 1 is abelian. If $n=2$, the set P_n has $2!$ i.e., 2 elements and every group of order 2 is again abelian. Now we shall show that if $n > 2$, P_n is non-abelian. Let

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n-1 & n \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \dots n & 1 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \dots n-1 & n \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 4 \dots n-1 & n \end{pmatrix}$$

be the two permutations of degree n , when $n > 2$. Then

$$fg = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n-1 & n \\ 1 & 3 & 4 \dots n & 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } gf = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \dots n-1 & n \\ 3 & 2 & 4 & 5 \dots n & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Obviously $fg \neq gf$. Therefore P_n is non-abelian if $n > 2$.

Note 1. If $f = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \end{pmatrix}$ be a permutation of degree n , then the inverse of f i.e., f^{-1} is obtained by interchanging the rows of f . Thus $f^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \dots b_n \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \dots a_n \end{pmatrix}$.

Note 2. If we are to write the set of all permutations of degree n , it is immaterial whatever symbols we use to denote the elements of the set S . We can use the numbers $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$ or we can use the letters a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n or any symbols.

Note 3. The group P_n of all permutations of degree n is called the symmetric group of degree n or the symmetric group of order $n!$.

§ 14. Cyclic Permutations. Definition. Suppose f is a permutation of degree n on a set S having n distinct elements. Let it be possible to arrange m elements of the set S in a row in such a way that the f -image of each element in the row is the element which follows it, the f -image of the last element is the first element and the remaining $n-m$ elements of the set S are left unchanged by f . Then f is called a cyclic permutation or a cycle of length m or an m -cycle.

(Rajasthan 1976)

By the length of a cycle we mean the number of objects permuted by the cycle.

For example the permutation $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 5 & 3 & 6 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 1 & 6 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

is cyclic. It can be represented by the cycle $(1 \ 2 \ 4 \ 3)$ which means that each element in the bracket is replaced by the element following it, the last element is replaced by the first element and the missing elements 5 and 6 are left unchanged. Thus 1 is replaced by 2, 2 by 4, 4 by 3, 3 by 1, 5 by 5 and 6 by 6. The length of this cycle is 4.

Similarly the permutation $g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & 4 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 6 & 5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

is cyclic. We can write it in the form of the cycle $(1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \ 6)$ which is of length 6.

However the permutation $h = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$

is not cyclic.

Permutations represented by a cycle. $(1 \ 3 \ 4 \ 2 \ 6)$ is a cycle of length 5. Suppose it represents a permutation of degree 9 on a set S consisting of the elements 1, 2, ..., 9. Then the permutation represented will be

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 & 6 & 5 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 3 & 4 & 2 & 6 & 1 & 5 & 7 & 8 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e., the image of each element in the cycle $(1 \ 3 \ 4 \ 2 \ 6)$ is the element which follows it, the image of the last element 6 is the first element 1 and the missing elements 5, 7, 8, 9 are their images themselves.

However if the cycle $(1 \ 3 \ 4 \ 2 \ 6)$ represents a permutation of degree 6 on six symbols 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 then the corresponding permutation will be

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 & 6 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 & 2 & 6 & 1 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

Important Note. A cycle does not change by changing the places of its elements provided their cyclic order is not changed.

Thus $(1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4) = (2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 1) = (3 \ 4 \ 1 \ 2) = (4 \ 1 \ 2 \ 3)$.

Also $(1 \ 2) = (2 \ 1)$, $(2 \ 3) = (3 \ 2)$.

Transpositions. Definition.

(Raj. 1978)

A cycle of length two is called a transposition. Thus the cycle $(1 \ 3)$ is a transposition. It will represent a permutation in which the image of 1 is 3, the image of 3 is 1 and the remaining missing elements are left unchanged.

If the transposition $(2, 3)$ is a permutation of degree 3 on three symbols 1, 2, 3 then the corresponding permutation will be

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

A cycle of length one means that the image of the element involved is the element itself and the missing elements are left unchanged. Thus all the elements are left unchanged. Therefore every cycle of length one will represent the identity permutation.

Multiplication of Cycles. We multiply cycles by multiplying the permutations represented by them. For example if the cycles $(1\ 2\ 3)$ and $(5\ 6\ 4\ 1)$ represent permutations of degree 6 on six symbols $1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$, then

$$\begin{aligned} (1\ 2\ 3)(5\ 6\ 4\ 1) &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 6 & 4 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 6 & 4 & 1 & 5 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 & 5 & 1 & 6 & 4 \end{pmatrix} = (1\ 2\ 3\ 5\ 6\ 4). \end{aligned}$$

Since a cycle of length one represents the identity permutation, therefore $(1)(2\ 3\ 4)(6) = (2\ 3\ 4)$.

Disjoint Cycles. Two cycles are said to be disjoint if they have no symbols in common. For example $(1\ 3\ 5)$ and $(2\ 6\ 8\ 9)$ are disjoint cycles while $(1\ 3\ 4)$ and $(2\ 3\ 5\ 6)$ are not disjoint.

Theorem. If f and g are two disjoint cycles, then $fg = gf$ i.e., the product of disjoint cycles is commutative.

Proof. The cycles f and g have no symbols common. Therefore the elements permuted by f are left unchanged by g and also the elements permuted by g remain the same under f . Therefore we shall have $fg = gf$.

Now we shall give an example to illustrate this theorem. Let $f = (1\ 2\ 3)$ and $g = (4\ 5)$ represent two permutations on 5 symbols $1, 2, \dots, 5$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } fg &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 4 & 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 5 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 4 & 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (4\ 5)(1\ 2\ 3) = gf. \end{aligned}$$

Inverse of a cyclic permutation. To prove that $(1\ 2\ 3 \dots n)^{-1} = (n\ n-1 \dots 3\ 2\ 1)$ i.e., to write the inverse of a cycle we should write its elements in the reverse order.

Proof. We have $(1\ 2\ 3 \dots n)(n \dots 3\ 2\ 1)$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n-1 & n \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \dots n & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} n & \dots 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ n-1 & \dots 3 & 2 & 1 & n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n-1 & n \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \dots n-1 & n \end{pmatrix} = I.$$

Also $(n \dots 3 \ 2 \ 1) (1 \ 2 \ 3 \dots n) = I.$

$$\therefore (1 \ 2 \ 3 \dots n)^{-1} = (n \dots 3 \ 2 \ 1).$$

In particular *every transposition is its own inverse*. If $(1 \ 2)$ is a transposition, then $(1 \ 2)^{-1} = (2 \ 1) = (1 \ 2).$

Inverse of a product of cyclic permutations. If f and g are any two cycles, then we have

$$(fg)^{-1} = g^{-1} f^{-1}. \text{ Also } (fgh)^{-1} = h^{-1} g^{-1} f^{-1}.$$

If f and g are disjoint cycles then $(fg)^{-1} = (gf)^{-1} = f^{-1} g^{-1}.$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } [(1 \ 2 \ 3) (4 \ 5) (2 \ 6)]^{-1} &= (2 \ 6)^{-1} (4 \ 5)^{-1} (1 \ 2 \ 3)^{-1} \\ &= (6 \ 2) (5 \ 4) (3 \ 2 \ 1). \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Also } [(1 \ 3 \ 5) (2 \ 4)]^{-1} = (1 \ 3 \ 5)^{-1} (2 \ 4)^{-1} = (5 \ 3 \ 1) (4 \ 2).$$

We shall now give some important results on the product of permutations.

Theorem 1. *Every permutation can be expressed as a product of disjoint cycles.* (Madras 1974; Kanpur 87)

Verification. Let $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 & 8 & 6 & 9 & 7 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$ be a permutation of degree 9 on the set $\{1, 2, \dots, 9\}.$

We have $f = (4) (6) (1 \ 2 \ 3) (5 \ 8 \ 7 \ 9).$

Explanation. First we put down cycles of length one with the help of elements which remain unchanged under $f.$

Then we start with an element which is not left unchanged. Thus we start with 1. After 1 we write the image of 1 which is 2. After 2 we write the image of 2 which is 3. After 3 we do not write any element but we close the bracket since the image of the last element 3 is the first element 1 of the bracket.

Now we start a new bracket. In this bracket we write an element which has not yet been written. Thus we write 5. After 5 we write the image of 5 which is 8. After 8 we write the image of 8 which is 7. After 7 we write the image of 7 which is 9. After 9 we close the bracket since the image of 9 is the first element 5.

Now our work is finished since each element has been included in one or the other bracket.

Since cycles of length one represent identity permutation, therefore we can omit them. Thus we can write

$$f = (1 \ 2 \ 3) (5 \ 8 \ 7 \ 9).$$

Also we can write $f = (5\ 8\ 7\ 9)(1\ 2\ 3)$ because product of disjoint cycles is commutative.

Theorem 2. Every cycle can be expressed as a product of transpositions in infinitely many ways.

Verification. Consider the cycle $(1\ 2\ 3\ \dots\ n)$ of length n . By actual calculation we see that

$$(1\ 2\ 3\ \dots\ n) = (1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 4)\dots(1\ n-1)(1\ n).$$

More generally the n -cycle

$$(a_1\ a_2\ a_3\ \dots\ a_n) = (a_1\ a_2)(a_1\ a_3)\dots(a_1\ a_n).$$

The 4-cycle $(2\ 3\ 5\ 4) = (2\ 3)(2\ 5)(2\ 4)$.

Since $(2\ 3\ 5\ 4) = (3\ 5\ 4\ 2)$, therefore we can write
 $(2\ 3\ 5\ 4) = (3\ 5)(3\ 4)(3\ 2)$.

Also $(1\ 2)(2\ 1) = \text{Identity permutation}$.

\therefore We can write $(2\ 3\ 5\ 4) = (2\ 3)(1\ 2)(2\ 1)(2\ 5)(2\ 4)$.

Again $(2\ 5\ 3)(3\ 5\ 2)$ is also identity permutation.

\therefore We can write $(2\ 3\ 5\ 4) = (2\ 3\ 5\ 4)(2\ 5\ 3)(3\ 5\ 2)$
 $= (2\ 3)(2\ 5)(2\ 4)(2\ 5)(2\ 3)(3\ 5)(3\ 2)$.

Now consider the 5-cycle $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4\ 5)$.

We have $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4\ 5) = (1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 4)(1\ 5)$
 $= (1\ 2)(2\ 4)(4\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 2)(2\ 1)(1\ 4)(1\ 5)$.

Thus every cycle can be expressed as a product of transpositions in infinitely many ways. But we see that in the case of any cycle the number of transpositions is either always odd or always even.

Theorem 3. Every permutation can be expressed as a product of transpositions in infinite many ways.

Combining together the results of Theorem 1 and Theorem 2, we immediately get the result of this theorem.

§ 15. Even and Odd Permutations. Definition. A permutation is said to be an even permutation if it can be expressed as a product of an even number of transpositions; otherwise it is said to be an odd permutation. (Patna 1987; Rajasthan 78)

This definition will be meaningless if a permutation can be expressed sometimes as a product of an odd number of transpositions and sometimes as a product of an even number of transpositions. So we have the following theorem.

Theorem. A permutation cannot be both even and odd i.e., if a permutation f is expressed as a product of transpositions then the number of transpositions is either always even or always odd.

(G.N.D.U Amritsar 1986; Kanpur 87)

Proof. Consider the polynomial P in n distinct symbols x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n defined as the product of all factors of the type $x_i - x_j$ where $i < j$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } P &= \prod_{i < j=1}^n (x_i - x_j) \\ &= (x_1 - x_2) (x_1 - x_3) (x_1 - x_4) \dots (x_1 - x_n) \\ &\quad (x_2 - x_3) (x_2 - x_4) \dots (x_2 - x_n) \\ &\quad \dots \dots \dots \\ &\quad (x_{n-2} - x_{n-1}) (x_{n-2} - x_n) (x_{n-1} - x_n). \end{aligned}$$

Suppose now f is any permutation on n symbols $1, 2, 3, \dots, n$.

By fP we mean the polynomial obtained by changing in P the subscripts $1, 2, \dots, n$ of x 's as prescribed by f .

[For example, taking $n=4$, we have

$$P = (x_1 - x_2) (x_1 - x_3) (x_1 - x_4) (x_2 - x_3) (x_2 - x_4) (x_3 - x_4).$$

If $f = (1\ 2\ 3)$, then we have

$$fP = (x_2 - x_3) (x_2 - x_1) (x_2 - x_4) (x_3 - x_1) (x_3 - x_4) (x_1 - x_4).$$

In particular if f = the transposition $(2\ 3)$, we have

$$fP = (x_1 - x_3) (x_1 - x_2) (x_1 - x_4) (x_3 - x_2) (x_3 - x_4) (x_2 - x_4)$$

$= -P$ i.e., the effect of a transposition on P is to change the sign of P].

Now the operation by a transposition (r, s) , where $r < s$ has the following effect on P .

(i) Any factor of P which contains neither the suffix r nor s remains unchanged.

(ii) The single factor $(x_r - x_s)$ changes its sign on replacing r by s and s by r .

(iii) The remaining factors which contain either the suffix r or s but not both can be grouped into the following three types of products :

- (a) $[(x_1 - x_r) (x_1 - x_s)] [(x_2 - x_r) (x_2 - x_s)] \dots [(x_{r-1} - x_r) (x_{r-1} - x_s)]$
- (b) $[(x_r - x_{r+1}) (x_{r+1} - x_s)] [(x_r - x_{r+2}) (x_{r+2} - x_s)] \dots [(x_r - x_{s-1}) (x_{s-1} - x_s)]$
- (c) $[(x_r - x_{s+1}) (x_s - x_{s+1})] [(x_r - x_{s+2}) (x_s - x_{s+2})] \dots [(x_r - x_n) (x_s - x_n)].$

On replacing r by s and s by r , the signs of all these types of products do not change.

Hence the net effect of the transposition (r, s) on P is to

change the sign of P i.e., P operated upon by a transposition becomes $-P$.

Therefore if the permutation f can be expressed as the product of p transpositions then $fP = (-1)^p P$ and if f can be expressed as the product of q transpositions then

$$fP = (-1)^q P.$$

This gives $(-1)^p P = (-1)^q P$

$$\Rightarrow (-1)^p = (-1)^q$$

\Rightarrow either p and q are both even or both odd.

Hence the theorem.

Cor. 1. *A cycle of length n can be expressed as the product of $n-1$ transpositions. Therefore a cycle of length n will be an even permutation if n is odd and it will be an odd permutation if n is even.*

In particular every transposition is an odd permutation.

Cor. 2. *Identity permutation is always an even permutation.*

If I is the identity permutation then I can be expressed as the product of two transpositions. For example we can write

$$I = (1\ 2)(2\ 1).$$

$\therefore I$ is an even permutation.

Cor. 3. *The product of two even permutations is an even permutation.* Suppose f and g are two even permutations. Further suppose that f can be expressed as the product of r transpositions and g can be expressed as the product of s transpositions. Then r and s are both even. Now fg can be expressed as the product of $r+s$ transpositions. Since $r+s$ is even, therefore fg is an even permutation.

Cor. 4. *The product of two odd permutations is an even permutation.* Proceed as in Cor. 3. If r and s are both odd then also $r+s$ is even.

Cor. 5. *The product of an even permutation and an odd permutation is an odd permutation. Similarly the product of an odd permutation and an even permutation is an odd permutation.*

Cor. 6. *The inverse of an even permutation is an even permutation and the inverse of an odd permutation is an odd permutation.*

Suppose f is an even permutation. If f^{-1} is the inverse of f , then $f^{-1}f = I$ (identity permutation).

Now I is an even permutation and f is also an even permutation. Therefore f^{-1} cannot be an odd permutation otherwise

$f^{-1}f$ will be an odd permutation. Hence f^{-1} is an even permutation.

Similarly if f is an odd permutation, then f^{-1} must also be an odd permutation.

Total number of even permutations of degree n .

Theorem. *Of the $n!$ permutations on n symbols, $\frac{1}{2}n!$ are even permutations and $\frac{1}{2}n!$ are odd permutations.*

(Meerut 1978; Madurai 78; Banaras 71; I.C.S. 88)

Proof. Out of the $n!$ permutations on n symbols let the even permutations be e_1, e_2, \dots, e_m and the odd permutations be o_1, o_2, \dots, o_k .

Since a permutation is either an even permutation or an odd permutation but not both, therefore $m+k=n!$.

If P_n be the set of all permutations of degree n , then

$$P_n = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_m, o_1, o_2, \dots, o_k\}.$$

Let $t \in P_n$ and suppose t is a transposition.

Since P_n is a group with respect to permutation multiplication, therefore $te_1, te_2, \dots, te_m, to_1, to_2, \dots, to_k$ are all elements of P_n . Obviously te_1, te_2, \dots, te_m are all odd permutations and to_1, to_2, \dots, to_k are all even permutations.

Now no two of the permutations te_1, te_2, \dots, te_m are equal because

$$te_i = te_j \Rightarrow e_i = e_j \text{ (by left cancellation law in the group } P_n).$$

Therefore if $e_i \neq e_j$, then $te_i \neq te_j$.

Thus the m odd permutations te_1, \dots, te_m are distinct elements of P_n . But we have supposed that P_n contains exactly k odd permutations. Therefore m cannot be greater than k . Thus

$$m \leq k. \quad \dots(1)$$

Similarly, we can show that the k even permutations to_1, to_2, \dots, to_k are distinct elements of P_n . Therefore, we must have

$$k \leq m. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), it follows that $m=k=\frac{n!}{2}$.

Note. If A_n is the set of all even permutations of degree n then $A_n \subset P_n$ and A_n contains $\frac{n!}{2}$ elements. The set A_n is called an *Alternating set of permutations of degree n* .

Group of all even permutations of degree n .

Theorem. *The set A_n of all even permutations of degree n*

forms a finite group of order $\frac{n!}{2}$ with respect to permutation, multiplication. (Gorakhpur 1970; Patna 87; Lucknow 69)

Proof. The product of two even permutations is also an even permutation. Therefore the set A_n is closed with respect to multiplication of permutations as composition.

We know that multiplication of permutations is an associative composition.

If I is the identity permutation of degree n then I is an even permutation. Therefore $I \in A_n$. Now we have

$$If = f = f I \quad \forall f \in A_n.$$

$\therefore I$ is the identity element.

Let f be any even permutation of degree n . If f^{-1} is the inverse of f in the group of all permutations of degree n , then f^{-1} is also an even permutation because $f^{-1}f = I$ (an even permutation).

Thus $f \in A_n \Rightarrow$ that there exists $f^{-1} \in A_n$ such that
 $f^{-1}f = I = ff^{-1}$.

\therefore every element of A_n possesses inverse.

The total number of all even permutations of degree n is $\frac{n!}{2}$. Thus there are $\frac{n!}{2}$ elements in the set A_n .

$\therefore A_n$ forms a finite group of order $\frac{n!}{2}$ with respect to multiplication of permutations.

Note. The product of two odd permutations is an even permutation. Therefore the set of all odd permutations is not closed with respect to multiplication. Therefore it will not be a group.

Ex. 1. Write the following permutations as the product of disjoint cycles.

$$(a) \quad f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 1 & 6 & 7 & 9 & 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(a) \quad g = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Solution. (a) We have

$$f = (6)(7)(1\ 2\ 3\ 4\ 5)(8\ 9)$$

or $f = (1\ 2\ 3\ 4\ 5)(8\ 9)$, omitting cycles of length 1 as they represent identity permutation.

(b) We have $g = (1\ 6\ 2\ 5)(3\ 4)$.

Ex. 2. Express the following permutations as the product of disjoint cycles :

(a) $f = (1\ 2\ 3)(4\ 5)(1\ 6\ 7\ 8\ 9)(1\ 5),$

(b) $g = (1\ 2)(1\ 2\ 3)(1\ 2),$

(c) $h = (1\ 3\ 2\ 5)(1\ 4\ 3)(2\ 5\ 1).$

Solution. (a) We shall start with the element 1. Under the first cycle 1 goes to 2, under the second cycle 2 goes to 1, under the third cycle 2 goes to 2 and under the fourth cycle 2 goes to 2. Therefore under the permutation f , 1 goes to 2. Now we are to find the image of 2 under f . In the first cycle 2 goes to 3, in each of the other three cycles 3 is left unchanged. Therefore under f , 2 goes to 3. Now we are to find the image of 3 under f . In the first cycle 3 goes to 1, in the second 1 goes to 1, in the third 1 goes to 6 and in the fourth 6 goes to 6. Thus 3 goes to 6 under f . Now the image of 6 under f is 7. The image of 7 under f is 8, the image of 8 under f is 9. Now in the first two cycles 9 is left unchanged. In the third cycle 9 goes to 1 and in the fourth 1 goes to 5. Therefore 9 goes to 5 under f .

Now under f the element 5 goes to 4 and 4 goes to 1.

Since we started with the element 1, therefore we stop at this stage and thus we have obtained the first cycle as

$$(1\ 2\ 3\ 6\ 7\ 8\ 9\ 5\ 4).$$

Since this single cycle contains all the symbols, therefore f is a cyclic permutation and we have

$$f = (1\ 2\ 3\ 6\ 7\ 8\ 9\ 5\ 4).$$

(b) We have $g = (1\ 3\ 2).$

(c) We have $h = (1\ 2)(3\ 5\ 4).$

Ex. 3. Determine which of the following are even permutations :

(a) $f = (1\ 2\ 3)(1\ 2).$

(b) $g = (1\ 2\ 3\ 4\ 5)(1\ 2\ 3)(4\ 5)$

(c) $h = (1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 4)(2\ 5).$

Solution. (a) We can write $f = (1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 2)$. The number of transpositions is 3 i.e., odd. Therefore f is an odd permutation.

(b) We can write $g = (1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 4)(1\ 5)(1\ 2)(1\ 3)(4\ 5).$

The number of transpositions is 7 i.e., odd.

Therefore g is an odd permutation.

(c) $h = (1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 4)(2\ 5)$. The number of transpositions is 4 i.e., even. Therefore h is an even permutation.

Ex. 4. Show that the set P_3 of all permutations on three symbols 1, 2, 3 is a finite non-abelian group of order 6 with respect to permutation multiplication as composition.

(Rajasthan 1977; Meerut 86)

Solution. We have $P_3 = \{I, (1\ 2), (2\ 3), (3\ 1), (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\}$ where I is the identity permutation. There are 6 elements in the set P_3 . Let $I = f_1, (1\ 2) = f_2, (2\ 3) = f_3, (3\ 1) = f_4, (1\ 2\ 3) = f_5, (1\ 3\ 2) = f_6$. We now prepare a composition table for P_3 .

Product of permutations	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4	f_5	f_6
f_1	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4	f_5	f_6
f_2	f_2	f_1	f_6	f_5	f_4	f_3
f_3	f_3	f_5	f_1	f_6	f_2	f_4
f_4	f_4	f_6	f_5	f_1	f_3	f_2
f_5	f_5	f_3	f_4	f_2	f_6	f_1
f_6	f_6	f_4	f_2	f_3	f_1	f_5

For preparing this composition table we have actually multiplied the permutations. Thus

$$f_2 f_3 = (1\ 2)(2\ 3) = (1\ 3\ 2) = f_6,$$

$$f_2 f_4 = (1\ 2)(3\ 1) = (1\ 2\ 3) = f_5,$$

$$f_3 f_3 = (2\ 3)(2\ 3) = \text{identity permutation} = f_1,$$

$$f_5 f_5 = (1\ 2\ 3)(1\ 2\ 3) = (1\ 3\ 2) = f_6, \text{ and so on.}$$

Since all the entries in the table are elements of P_3 , therefore P_3 is closed with respect to multiplication of permutations.

Multiplication of permutations is an associative composition.

The identity permutation f_1 is the identity element since $f_1 f_1 = f_1, f_1 f_2 = f_2 = f_2 f_1, f_1 f_3 = f_3 = f_3 f_1$ and so on.

Every element possesses inverse. The inverse of f_1 is f_1 , the inverse of f_2 is f_2 , the inverse of f_3 is f_3 , the inverse of f_4 is f_4 , the inverse of f_5 is f_6 and the inverse of f_6 is f_5 . [Note that $f_5 f_6 = f_1 = f_6 f_5$, therefore $f_5^{-1} = f_6$ and $f_6^{-1} = f_5$].

The composition is not commutative since $f_2 f_3 = f_6$ and $f_3 f_2 = f_5$. Thus $f_2 f_3 \neq f_3 f_2$.

$\therefore P_3$ is a finite non-abelian group of order 6 with respect to permutation multiplication.

Ex. 5. Write down all the permutations on four symbols 1, 2, 3, 4. Which of these permutations are even?

Solution. There will be $4!$ i.e., 24 permutations of degree 4. If P_4 is the set of all these permutations, then

$P_4 = \{(1), (12), (13), (14), (23), (24), (34), (123), (132), (124), (142), (134), (143), (234), (243), (12)(34), (23)(14), (31)(24), (1234), (1243), (1324), (1342), (1423), (1432)\}$.

If A_4 is the set of all even permutations of degree 4, then A_4 will have $\frac{1}{2} \times 4!$ i.e., 12 elements.

Thus $A_4 = \{(1), (123), (132), (124), (142), (134), (143), (234), (243), (12)(34), (23)(14), (31)(24)\}$.

Ex. 6. Show that the four permutations $I, (ab), (cd), (ab)(cd)$ on four symbols a, b, c, d form a finite abelian group with respect to the permutation multiplication. (Meerut 1985)

Solution. Let $I = f_1, (ab) = f_2, (cd) = f_3, (ab)(cd) = f_4$. To prepare the composition table, we observe that f_2 and f_3 are transpositions. Therefore $f_2 f_2 = f_1, f_3 f_3 = f_1$. Also f_2 and f_3 are disjoint cycles. Therefore $f_2 f_3 = f_3 f_2 = f_4$.

Further $f_2 f_4 = (ab)(ab)(cd) = I(cd) = (cd) = f_3$.

Similarly $f_3 f_4 = (cd)(ab)(cd) = (cd)(cd)(ab) = I(ab) = (ab) = f_2$
 $[\because (ab)(cd) = (cd)(ab)]$.

Also $f_4 f_4 = (ab)(cd)(ab)(cd) = (ab)(ab)(cd)(cd) = (I)(I) = I = f_1$.

Similarly making all other calculations, the composition table is

Product of permutations	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4
f_1	f_1	f_2	f_3	f_4
f_2	f_2	f_1	f_4	f_3
f_3	f_3	f_4	f_1	f_2
f_4	f_4	f_3	f_2	f_1

From the table it is clear that

(i) All the entries in the composition table are elements of the given set. Therefore the closure axiom is satisfied.

(ii) f_1 is the identity element.

(iii) Each element possesses inverse. In fact $f_1^{-1} = f_1, f_2^{-1} = f_2, f_3^{-1} = f_3, f_4^{-1} = f_4$.

(iv) The composition is commutative.

Further the multiplication of permutations is an associative composition.

\therefore the given set is a finite abelian group of order 4 with respect to the permutation multiplication.

Ex. 7. Show that the eight permutations (a) , $(abcd)$, $(ac)(bd)$, $(adcb)$, $(ab)(cd)$, $(bc)(ad)$, $(bd)(ac)$ on four symbols a, b, c, d form a finite non-abelian group with respect to permutation multiplication.

Solution. Proceed as in Ex. 6.

Exercises.

1. Write down all the permutations on three symbols a, b, c . Which of these permutations are even? (Rajasthan 1977)

Ans. I (identity permutation), (ab) , (bc) , (ca) , (abc) , (acb) ; even permutations are I , (abc) , (acb) .

2. Find the orders of the groups :

(i) the group S_4 (symmetric group), (ii) the group A_4 (alternating group). (Meerut 1976)

Ans. (i) 24, (ii) 12.

3. Define a permutation. If $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and

$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, find AB and BA . (Meerut 1975)

Ans. Both AB and BA are identity permutations.

4. Find the inverse of each of the following permutations :

(i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, (Luck. 1980) (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$,

(iii) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$.

(Meerut 1976)

Ans. (i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, (ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$,

(iii) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$.

5. Decompose the following permutations into transpositions :—

(i) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 6 & 5 & 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$

(Meerut 1976)

(ii) $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 & 7 & 2 & 5 & 8 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$.

(Meerut 1980)

Ans. (i) $(1\ 6)(2\ 5)(2\ 3)$;

(ii) $(1\ 3)(1\ 4)(1\ 7)(1\ 8)(1\ 6)(1\ 5)(1\ 2)$.

6. Examine whether the following permutation is even or odd :

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 2 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 6 & 1 & 7 & 9 & 8 \end{pmatrix}.$$

(Madras 1974)

Ans. Odd.

7. Given that $f = (1\ 3\ 2\ 5)(1\ 4\ 3)(2\ 5\ 1)$ is a permutation on five symbols. Express it as a product of disjoint cycles. Also find the inverse of f and express it as a product of disjoint cycles.

Ans. $f = (1\ 2)(3\ 5\ 4); f^{-1} = (1\ 2)(3\ 4\ 5)$.

8. Prove that a cycle containing an odd number of symbols is an even permutation whereas a cycle containing an even number of symbols is an odd permutation.

9. Show that the set G of four permutations $I, (1\ 2)(3\ 4), (1\ 3)(2\ 4)$ and $(1\ 4)(2\ 3)$ on four symbols $1, 2, 3, 4$ is an abelian group with respect to the permutation multiplication.

(This group is known as the four group V_4 of Klein).

10. Show that the $n!$ permutations of n objects form a group with respect to permutation multiplication. Verify this theorem by taking the set of all permutations of elements $1, 2, 3$.

(Meerut 1973)

11. Prove that the set A_3 of three permutations

$$(a), (a\ b\ c), (a\ c\ b)$$

on three symbols a, b, c forms a finite abelian group with respect to the permutation multiplication.

12. Show that if S has more than two elements, then the symmetric group S_n is not abelian.

[Hint. Refer Example 6 page 64].

13. Show that the group S_3 is non-abelian. (Meerut 1977)

14. Give an example of a finite non-abelian group.

(Meerut 1978; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 82)

15. G is a group and a is a fixed element of G . Show that the mapping $f_a : G \rightarrow G$ defined by $f_a(x) = ax \forall x \in G$ is a permutation of G i.e., is a one-to-one mapping of G onto G . (Marathwada 1972)

§ 16. Integral powers of an element of a group (composition denoted multiplicatively).

Suppose G is a group and the composition has been denoted multiplicatively. Let $a \in G$. Then by closure property $a, aa, aaa, aaaa$, etc. are all elements of G . Since the composition in G obeys general associative law, therefore $aaa.. a$ to n factors is independent of the manner in which the factors may be grouped.

If n is a positive integer, we define $a^n = aaa \dots a$ to n factors. Obviously $a^n \in G$. In particular $a^1 = a$, $a^2 = aa$, $a^3 = aaa = a^2a$ and so on.

If e is the identity element of the group G , then we define

$$a^0 = e.$$

If n is a positive integer then $-n$ is a negative integer. Now we define $a^{-n} = (a^n)^{-1}$ where $(a^n)^{-1}$ is the inverse of a^n in G . Thus $a^{-n} \in G$.

Thus we have defined a^n for all integral values of n positive, zero or negative.

However, if n is a positive integer, then according to our definition

$$\begin{aligned} a^{-n} &= (a^n)^{-1} = (aaa \dots a \text{ upto } n \text{ factors})^{-1} \\ &= (a^{-1}) (a^{-1}) (a^{-1}) \dots (a^{-1}) \text{ upto } n \text{ factors} = (a^{-1})^n. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we are free to write $(a^{-1})^n$ or $(a^n)^{-1}$ in place of a^{-n} .

In particular $a^{-4} = (a^4)^{-1} = (a^{-1})^4$.

Integral multiples of an element of a group. Composition denoted additively.

If in a group G the composition has been denoted additively, then in place of using the word integral powers of an element of a group we use the word integral multiples of an element of a group. The difference is only of notation otherwise the meaning is the same. Thus in this case if n is a positive integer we write na in place of a^n and we define $na = a + a + \dots + a$ upto n terms.

In place of a^0 we write $0a$. Thus we define $0a = e$ where e is the identity of G .

If n is a positive integer, then in place of a^{-n} we write $(-n)a$.

Thus we define $(-n)a = -(na)$, where $-(na)$ denotes the inverse of na in G . Also we can prove that $-(na) = n(-a)$.

Thus we can write $-(na)$ or $n(-a)$ in place of $(-n)a$.

In particular $6a = a + a + \dots + a$ upto 6 terms

$$(-6)a = -(6a) \text{ i.e., } -(a + a + \dots \text{ upto 6 terms})$$

or $(-6)a = 6(-a)$ i.e., $(-a) + (-a) + \dots$ upto 6 terms.

In multiplicative notation the following laws of indices can be easily proved :

$$a^m a^n = a^{m+n},$$

$$\text{and } (a^m)^n = a^{mn},$$

$\forall a \in G$ and $\forall m, n \in I$ where I is the set of integers.

In additive notation the following laws of multiples can be easily proved :

$$ma + na = (m+n) a,$$

$$n(ma) = (nm) a,$$

$$\forall a \in G \text{ and } \forall m, n \in \mathbb{I}.$$

§ 17. Order of an element of a group. Definition.

(Guru Nanak 1982; Rajasthan 77; Meerut 79; Lucknow 80; Gorakhpur 70)

Suppose G is a group and the composition has been denoted multiplicatively. By the order of an element $a \in G$ is meant the least positive integer n , if one exists, such that

$$a^n = e \text{ (the identity of } G).$$

If there exists no positive integer n such that $a^n = e$, then we say that a is of infinite order or of zero order.

We shall use the symbol $o(a)$ to denote the order of a .

In additive notation we use the words $na = e$ in place of $a^n = e$.

Important. If there exists a positive integer m such that $a^m = e$, then the order of a is definitely finite. Also we must have $o(a) \leq m$. When $a^m = e$, then the question of order of a being greater than m does not arise. At the most it can be equal to m . If m itself is the least positive integer such that $a^m = e$, then we will have

$$o(a) = m.$$

In any group the identity element e is always of order one and it is the only element of order one.

We have $e^1 = e \Rightarrow o(e) = 1$. Also if $o(a) = 1$, then $a^1 = a = e$.

Example 1. Let us find the order of each element of the multiplicative group $\{1, -1, i, -i\}$. (Lucknow 1980)

Since 1 is the identity element, therefore $o(1) = 1$.

Now $(-1)^1 = -1$, $(-1)^2 = (-1)(-1) = 1$ (i.e., identity element).

$$\therefore o(-1) = 2.$$

Again $(i)^1 = i$, $(i)^2 = -1$, $i^3 = -i$, $i^4 = 1$ (i.e., identity element).

$$\therefore o(i) = 4.$$

Finally $(-i)^1 = -i$, $(-i)^2 = -1$, $(-i)^3 = i$, $(-i)^4 = 1$.

$$\therefore o(-i) = 4.$$

Example 2. Let us find the orders of some elements of the group $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$, the composition being addition modulo 6.

Since 0 is the identity element, therefore $o(0) = 1$.

Now $(1)^1 = 1$, $1^2 = 1 +_6 1 = 2$, $1^3 = 1 +_6 1 +_6 1 = 1 +_6 2 = 3$, $1^4 = 1 +_6 1 +_6 1 +_6 1 = 1 +_6 3 = 4$; $1^5 = 1 +_6 1^4 = 1 +_6 4 = 5$, $1^6 = 1 +_6 1^5 = 1 +_6 5 = 0$ (i.e., identity element).

$$\therefore o(1) = 6.$$

Again $2^1=2$, $2^2=2+_6 2=4$, $2^3=2+_6 2^2=2+_6 4=0$
(identity element).

$$\therefore o(2)=3.$$

Further $3^1=3$, $3^2=3+_6 3=0$ (i.e., identity element) ;

$$\therefore o(3)=2.$$

Similarly we can find orders of other elements. We have

$$o(4)=3, o(5)=6.$$

Example 3. *In the infinite multiplicative group of non-zero rational numbers, the order of every element except the elements 1 and -1 is infinite.*

We have $(-1)^1=-1$, $(-1)^2=1$ (identity element).

$$\therefore o(-1)=2.$$

Now $2^1=2$, $2^2=4$, $2^3=8$ and so on. Thus there exists no positive integer n such that $2^n=1$ (identity element). Therefore $o(2)$ is infinite.

Example 4. *In the additive group of integers the order of every element except 0 is infinite.*

0 is the identity element. Therefore $o(0)=1$.

Now $1 \in I$. We have $1(1)=1$, $2(1)=1+1=2$,

$3(1)=1+1+1=3$ and so on. Thus there exists no positive integer n such that $n(1)=0$ (identity element). Therefore $o(1)$ is infinite.

Note. In an infinite group elements may be of finite as well as of infinite order. We shall now prove some important results on the order of an element of a group.

Theorem 1. *The order of every element of a finite group is finite and is less than or equal to the order of the group.*

(Meerut 1971; Rajasthan 77)

Proof. Let G be a finite group, the composition being denoted multiplicatively. Let $a \in G$. Consider all positive integral powers of a i.e. a, a^2, a^3, a^4, \dots . All these are elements of G , by closure axiom. Since G has a finite number of elements, therefore all these integral powers of a cannot be distinct elements of G . Let us suppose that $a^r = a^s$ ($r > s$).

$$\text{Now } a^r = a^s \Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = a^s a^{-s} \quad [\because a^{-s} \in G]$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{r-s} = a^0 \Rightarrow a^{r-s} = e$$

$$\Rightarrow a^m = e \text{ where } m = r - s.$$

Since $r > s$, therefore m is a positive integer. Thus there exists a positive integer m such that $a^m = e$.

Now we know that every set of positive integers has a least member. Therefore the set of all those positive integers m such that $a^m = e$ has least member, say n . Thus there exists a least positive integer n such that $a^n = e$. Therefore $o(a)$ is finite.

Now to prove that $o(a) \leq o(G)$.

Let $o(a) = n$ where $n > o(G)$. Since $a \in G$, therefore by closure property a, a^2, \dots, a^n are elements of G . No two of these are equal. For if possible, let $a^r = a^s$, $1 \leq s < r \leq n$. Then $a^{r-s} = e$. Since $0 < r-s < n$, therefore $a^{r-s} = e$ implies that the order of a is less than n . This is a contradiction. Hence a, a^2, \dots, a^n are n distinct elements of G . Since $n > o(G)$, therefore this is not possible. Hence we must have $o(a) \leq o(G)$.

Theorem 2. *The order of an element of a group is the same as that of its inverse a^{-1} .*

(Meerut 1968; Sagar 77)

Proof. Let n and m be the orders of a and a^{-1} respectively.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } o(a) = n &\Rightarrow a^n = e \text{ (identity element)} \\ &\Rightarrow (a^n)^{-1} = e^{-1} \Rightarrow (a^{-1})^n = e \\ &\Rightarrow o(a^{-1}) \leq n \Rightarrow m \leq n. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } o(a^{-1}) = m &\Rightarrow (a^{-1})^m = e \\ &\Rightarrow (a^m)^{-1} = e \Rightarrow a^m = e \quad [\because b^{-1} = e \Rightarrow b = e] \\ &\Rightarrow o(a) \leq m \Rightarrow n \leq m. \end{aligned}$$

Now $m \leq n$ and $n \leq m \Rightarrow m = n$.

If the order of a is infinite, then the order of a^{-1} cannot be finite. Because $o(a^{-1}) = m \Rightarrow o(a) \leq m \Rightarrow o(a)$ is finite. Therefore if the order of a is infinite, then the order of a^{-1} must also be infinite.

Theorem 3. *The order of any integral power of an element a cannot exceed the order of a .*

(Lucknow 1969; Garhwal 76)

Proof. Let a^k be any integral power of a . Let $o(a) = n$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } o(a) = n &\Rightarrow a^n = e \text{ (identity element)} \\ &\Rightarrow (a^n)^k = e^k \Rightarrow a^{nk} = e \\ &\Rightarrow (a^k)^n = e \Rightarrow o(a^k) \leq n. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 4. *If the element a of a group G is of order n , then $a^m = e$ iff n is a divisor of m .*

(Lucknow 1980)

Proof. Let n be a divisor of m . Then there exists an integer q such that $nq = m$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } a^m &= a^{nq} = (a^n)^q = e^q \\ &= e. \end{aligned} \quad [\because o(a) = n \Rightarrow a^n = e]$$

Conversely let $a^m = e$.

Since m is an integer and n is a positive integer, therefore by division algorithm there exist integers q and r such that

$$m = nq + r \quad \text{where } 0 \leq r < n.$$

$$\text{Now } a^m = a^{nq+r} = a^{nq} a^r = (a^n)^q a^r$$

$$= e^q a^r$$

$$[\because a^n = e]$$

$$= e a^r = a^r.$$

$$\therefore a^m = e \Rightarrow a^r = e.$$

Since $0 \leq r < n$, therefore $a^r = e \Rightarrow r$ must be equal to zero because otherwise $o(a)$ will not be equal to n . If $o(a) = n$, then there will exist no positive integer $r < n$ such that $a^r = e$.

$$\therefore m = nq \Rightarrow n \text{ is a divisor of } m.$$

Theorem 5. The orders of the elements a and $x^{-1}ax$ are the same where a, x are any two elements of a group. (Gorakhpur 1970)

Proof. Let n and m be the orders of a and $x^{-1}ax$ respectively.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (x^{-1}ax)^2 &= (x^{-1}ax)(x^{-1}ax) = x^{-1}a(xx^{-1})ax \\ &= x^{-1}(ae)ax = x^{-1}aax = x^{-1}a^2x. \end{aligned}$$

In general, we get

$$(x^{-1}ax)^n = x^{-1}a^n x$$

$$= x^{-1}ex$$

$$[\because o(a) = n \Rightarrow a^n = e]$$

$$= x^{-1}x = e.$$

$$\therefore o(x^{-1}ax) \leq n \Rightarrow m \leq n.$$

$$\text{Again } o(x^{-1}ax) = m \Rightarrow (x^{-1}ax)^m = e$$

$$\Rightarrow x^{-1}a^m x = e \Rightarrow x^{-1}a^m x = x^{-1}x$$

$$\Rightarrow a^m x = x \quad (\text{by left cancellation law})$$

$$\Rightarrow a^m x = ex$$

$$\Rightarrow a^m = e \quad (\text{by right cancellation law})$$

$$\Rightarrow o(a) \leq m \Rightarrow n \leq m.$$

$$\text{Finally } m \leq n, n \leq m \Rightarrow m = n.$$

Cor. Order of ab is the same as that of ba where a and b are any elements of a group.

$$\text{Proof. We have } a^{-1}(ab)a = (a^{-1}a)(ba) = e(ba) = ba.$$

$$\text{Thus } ba = a^{-1}(ab)a$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{order of } ba = \text{order of } a^{-1}(ab)a$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{order of } ba = \text{order of } ab \quad [\because o(x^{-1}ax) = o(a)]$$

Theorem 6. If a is an element of order n and p is prime to n , then a^p is also of order n .

Proof. Let m be the order of a^p .

Now $o(a) = n \Rightarrow a^n = e \Rightarrow (a^n)^p = e^p = e$

$$\Rightarrow (a^p)^n = e \Rightarrow o(a^p) \leq n \Rightarrow m \leq n.$$

Since p, n are relative primes, there exist integers x and y such that $px + ny = 1$. [Note]

$$\therefore a = a^1 = a^{px+ny} = a^{px} a^{ny} = a^{px} (a^n)^y = a^{px} e^y = a^{px} e = a^{px} = (a^p)^x.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } a^m &= [(a^p)^x]^m = (a^p)^{mx} = [(a^p)^m]^x \\ &= e^x \quad [\because o(a^p) = m \Rightarrow (a^p)^m = e] \\ &= e. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore o(a) \leq m \Rightarrow n \leq m.$$

Finally $m \leq n$ and $n \leq m \Rightarrow m = n$.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Prove that if $a^2 = a$, $a \in G$, then $a = e$.

(Kolhapur 1973)

Solution. We have $a^2 = a \Rightarrow aa = a$

$$\Rightarrow aa = ae \quad [\because ae = a]$$

$$\Rightarrow a = e$$

[by left cancellation law in G]

Ex. 2. Given $axa = b$ in G , find x .

Solution. We have $axa = b \Rightarrow a^{-1}(axa) = a^{-1}b$

$$\Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)(xa) = a^{-1}b \Rightarrow e(xa) = a^{-1}b \Rightarrow xa = a^{-1}b$$

$$\Rightarrow (xa)a^{-1} = a^{-1}ba^{-1} \Rightarrow x(aa^{-1}) = a^{-1}ba^{-1} \Rightarrow xe = a^{-1}ba^{-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = a^{-1}ba^{-1}.$$

Ex. 3. If a and b are any elements of a group G , then $(bab^{-1})^n = ba^n b^{-1}$ for any integer n .

Solution. (i) $n = 0$. We have $(ba b^{-1})^0 = e$. [by definition]

$$\text{Also } ba^0 b^{-1} = be b^{-1} = bb^{-1} = e.$$

$$\therefore (bab^{-1})^0 = ba^0 b^{-1}.$$

(ii) $n > 0$. We have $(bab^{-1})^1 = ba b^{-1} = ba^1 b^{-1}$. [$\because a^1 = a$]

Thus the result is true for $n = 1$.

Let us suppose that the result is true for $n = k$ i.e., suppose

$$(ba b^{-1})^k = ba^k b^{-1}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } (ba b^{-1})^{k+1} &= (ba b^{-1})^k (ba b^{-1})^1 = ba^k b^{-1} ba b^{-1} \\ &= ba^k eab^{-1} = ba^k ab^{-1} = ba^{k+1} b^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the result is true for $n = k + 1$ if it was true for $n = k$.

But we have seen that the result is true for $n = 1$. Hence by mathematical induction it is true for all $n \geq 0$.

(iii) $n < 0$. Let $n = -m$ where $m > 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } (ba b^{-1})^n &= (ba b^{-1})^{-m} = [(ba b^{-1})^m]^{-1} = (ba^m b^{-1})^{-1} \\ &= (b^{-1})^{-1} (a^m)^{-1} b^{-1} = ba^{-m} b^{-1} = ba^n b^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 4. Prove that if G is an abelian group, then for all $a, b \in G$ and all integers n , $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$. (Allahabad 1983)

Solution. (i) $n=0$. We have $(ab)^0 = e$. [By definition]

Also $a^0 b^0 = ee = e$.

$\therefore (ab)^0 = a^0 b^0$.

(ii) $n > 0$. If $n=1$, then $(ab)^1 = ab = a^1 b^1$.

Now suppose for $n=k$, $(ab)^k = a^k b^k$.

Then $(ab)^{k+1} = (ab)^k (ab) = a^k b^k ab$
 $= a^k ab^k b$ [$\because G$ is abelian $\Rightarrow b^k a = ab^k$]
 $= a^{k+1} b^{k+1}$.

Thus the result is true for $n=k+1$ if it was true for $n=k$. But it is true for $n=1$. Hence by mathematical induction for all $n > 0$, $(ab)^n = a^n b^n$.

(ii) $n < 0$. Let $n = -m$ where m is a positive integer.

Then $(ab)^n = (ab)^{-m} = [(ab)^m]^{-1} = (a^m b^m)^{-1}$
 $= (b^m a^m)^{-1}$ [$\because G$ is abelian $\Rightarrow a^m b^m = b^m a^m$]
 $= (a^m)^{-1} (b^m)^{-1}$ [$\because (ab)^{-1} = b^{-1} a^{-1}$]
 $= a^{-m} b^{-m} = a^n b^n$.

Note. Since $a, b \in G$, therefore $a^m, b^m \in G$.

Also G is abelian. Therefore $a^m b^m = b^m a^m$.

Ex. 5. Prove that if for every element a in a group G , $a^2 = e$, then G is an abelian group.

(G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1982; Nagarjuna 79; Madras 78; Gujrat 78)

Solution. Let a and b be any two elements of the group G . Then ab is also an element of G . Therefore $(ab)^2 = e$.

Now $(ab)^2 = e \Rightarrow (ab)(ab) = e \Rightarrow (ab)^{-1} = ab$
 $\Rightarrow b^{-1} a^{-1} = ab$ (1)

But $a^2 = e \Rightarrow aa = e \Rightarrow a^{-1} = a$.

Similarly $b^2 = e \Rightarrow b^{-1} = b$.

Therefore from (1), we get $ba = ab$. Thus we have $ab = ba \forall a, b \in G$. Therefore G is an abelian group.

Ex. 6. Prove that a group G is abelian if every element of G except the identity element is of order two.

(Punjab 1970; Meerut 79; Osmania 72)

Solution. Identity element e is of order 1. But $e^2 = e$. Since every other element is of order two, therefore we have

$$a^2 = e \quad \forall a \in G.$$

Now proceed as in Ex. 5.

Ex. 7. Show that if every element of a group G is its own inverse, then G is abelian. (Banaras 1970; Vikram 76; Raj. 78)

Solution. Let a and b be any two elements of G . Then ab is also an element of G . Therefore $(ab)^{-1}=ab$ as it is given that every element is its own inverse.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Now } (ab)^{-1}=ab &\Rightarrow b^{-1}a^{-1}=ab \\ &\Rightarrow ba=ab. \quad [\because a^{-1}=a, b^{-1}=b]\end{aligned}$$

Thus we have $ab=ba \forall a, b \in G$. Therefore G is an abelian group.

Ex. 8. Show that if a, b are any two elements of a group G , then $(ab)^2=a^2b^2$ if and only if G is abelian.

(Meerut 1981, 82, 87, 90; Nagpur 75; Kanpur 80; Madras 83; Sagar 77)

Solution. Suppose G is abelian.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } (ab)^2 &= (ab)(ab) = a(ba)b \\ &= a(ab)b \quad [\because G \text{ is abelian} \Rightarrow ab=ba] \\ &= (aa)(bb) = a^2b^2.\end{aligned}$$

Conversely, let a, b be any two elements of G .

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } (ab)^2 &= a^2b^2 \Rightarrow (ab)(ab) = (aa)(bb) \Rightarrow a(ba)b = a(ab)b \\ &\Rightarrow (ba)b = (ab)b \quad [\text{by-left cancellation law}] \\ &\Rightarrow ba=ab \quad [\text{by right cancellation law}] \\ &\Rightarrow G \text{ is abelian.}\end{aligned}$$

Ex. 9. Prove that a group G is abelian if $b^{-1}a^{-1}ba=e \forall a, b \in G$.

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned}b^{-1}a^{-1}ba &= e \Rightarrow (b^{-1}a^{-1})(ba) = e \\ &\Rightarrow (b^{-1}a^{-1})^{-1} = ba \quad [\because ab=e \Rightarrow a^{-1}=b] \\ &\Rightarrow (a^{-1})^{-1}(b^{-1})^{-1} = ba \quad [\because (ab)^{-1}=b^{-1}a^{-1}] \\ &\Rightarrow ab=ba \quad [\because (a^{-1})^{-1}=a] \\ &\Rightarrow G \text{ is abelian.}\end{aligned}$$

Ex. 10. If G is a group of even order, prove that it has an element $a \neq e$ satisfying $a^2=e$. (Meerut 1983 P)

Solution. Let G be a group of even order $2n$, where n is a positive integer. We shall prove that G must have an element $a \neq e$ such that $a^{-1}=a$. We shall prove it by contradiction.

Suppose G has no element, other than the identity element e , which is its own inverse. Now in a group every element possesses a unique inverse. The identity element e is its own inverse. Further if b is the inverse of c , then c is the inverse of b . So excluding the identity element e , the remaining $2n-1$ elements of G must

be divided into pairs of two such that each pair consists of an element and its inverse. But we cannot do so because the odd integer $2n-1$ is not divisible by 2. Hence our initial assumption is wrong.

So in G there is an element $a \neq e$ such that

$$a = a^{-1} \Rightarrow aa = a^{-1}a \Rightarrow a^2 = e.$$

Ex. 11. (a) What is the order of an n -cycle?

(b) What is the order of the product of the disjoint cycles of lengths m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k ?

(c) How do you find the order of a given permutation?

Solution. (a) Let $f = (1\ 2\ 3 \dots n)$ be a cycle of length n .

Then f^2 moves every symbol two places along. Similarly f^3 will move every symbol three places along and f^n will move every symbol n places along. Thus $f^n = (1)(2)(3) \dots (n)$ i.e., identity permutation. Therefore order of f is n .

In particular if $f = (1\ 2\ 3\ 4\ 5)$, then $f^2 = (1\ 3\ 5\ 2\ 4)$, $f^3 = (1\ 4\ 2\ 5\ 3)$, $f^4 = (1\ 5\ 4\ 3\ 2)$, $f^5 = (1)(2)(3)(4)(5) =$ identity permutation.

\therefore Order of f is 5.

(b) Suppose a permutation f is the product of disjoint cycles of lengths m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k . As can be easily seen the order of f will be the L.C.M. (least common multiple) of the integers m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k .

(c) To find the order of a permutation we should first express it as the product of disjoint cycles and then we should apply the rule given in part (b) of this question.

Ex. 12. If a group G has four elements, show that it must be abelian. (Allahabad 1980; Kanpur 69)

Solution. Let $G = \{e, a, b, c\}$ be a group of order four. Here e is the identity element. The identity element e is its own inverse. There must be at least one more element in G which is its own inverse.

Let $a^{-1} = a$. If $b^{-1} = b$ and $c^{-1} = c$, then definitely G is abelian.

[See Ex. 7].

If $b^{-1} = c$, then $c^{-1} = b$ and we have

$$bc = e = cb. \text{ Also } a^{-1} = a \Rightarrow aa = e,$$

In this case the composition table for G will be as follows :

	e	a	b	c
e	e	a	b	c
a	a	e	c	b
b	b	c	a	e
c	c	b	e	a

Note that ab would have been either equal to b or equal to c . Since $ab = b \Rightarrow a = e$, therefore ab must be equal to c . Then ac will be equal to b .

Now we can easily complete the table since in each column each element must be distinct and in each row each element must be distinct. From the table we see that composition in G is commutative. Therefore G is abelian.

Ex. 13. If G is a group such that $(ab)^m = a^m b^m$ for three consecutive integers m for all $a, b \in G$, show that G is abelian.

(I.A.S. 1970; Kurukshetra 69; Meerut 80)

Solution. Let a, b be any two elements of G . Suppose $m, m+1, m+2$ are three consecutive integers such that $(ab)^m = a^m b^m$, $(ab)^{m+1} = a^{m+1} b^{m+1}$ and $(ab)^{m+2} = a^{m+2} b^{m+2}$.

We have $(ab)^{m+2} = (ab)^{m+1} (ab)$

$$\Rightarrow a^{m+2} b^{m+2} = a^{m+1} b^{m+1} (ab) \quad (\text{Given})$$

$$\Rightarrow a a^{m+1} b^{m+1} b = a a^m b^m b a b$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{m+1} b^{m+1} = a^m b^m b a \quad [\text{by left and right cancellation laws}]$$

$$\Rightarrow (ab)^{m+1} = (ab)^m b a$$

$$\Rightarrow (ab)^m (ab) = (ab)^m (b a)$$

$$\Rightarrow ab = ba \quad [\text{by left cancellation law}]$$

$$\Rightarrow G \text{ is abelian.}$$

Ex. 14. In a group, if $ba = a^m b^n$, prove that the elements $a^m b^{n-2}$, $a^{m-2} b^n$, ab^{-1} have the same order. (Raj. 1978)

Solution. We have $a^m b^{n-2} = a^m b^n b^{-2}$

$$= b a b^{-2} \quad [\because ba = a^m b^n]$$

$$= b a b^{-1} b^{-1} = (b^{-1})^{-1} (ab^{-1}) b^{-1}$$

Now we know that in a group $o(a) = o(x^{-1} a x)$, where a, x are any two elements of the group.

$$\therefore o(a^m b^{n-2}) = o[(b^{-1})^{-1} (ab^{-1}) b^{-1}] = o(ab^{-1}). \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\text{Further } a^{m-2} b^n = a^{-2} a^m b^n = a^{-2} b a = a^{-2} b a^{n-1} = a^{-2} b a^{n-1} a^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (a^3)^{-1} (ba^{-1}) a^3. \\
 \therefore o(a^{m-2} b^n) &= o[(a^3)^{-1} (ba^{-1}) a^3] = o(ba^{-1}) \\
 &= o[(ba^{-1})^{-1}], \text{ since } o(a^{-1}) = o(a) \\
 &= o[(a^{-1})^{-1} b^{-1}] = o(ab^{-1}). \quad \dots (2)
 \end{aligned}$$

From (1) and (2), we get $o(a^m b^{n-2}) = o(ab^{-1}) = o(a^{m-2} b^n)$.

Ex. 15. If in the group G , $a^5 = e$, $aba^{-1} = b^3$ for $a, b \in G$ find $o(b)$. (Meerut 1976)

Solution. We have $(ab a^{-1})^2 = ab a^{-1} ab a^{-1} = ab^2 a^{-1}$
 $= aab a^{-1} a^{-1} \quad [\because ab a^{-1} = b^3]$
 $= a^2 ba^{-2}.$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore (ab a^{-1})^4 &= \{(ab a^{-1})^2\}^2 = (a^2 ba^{-2})^2 = a^2 ba^{-2} a^2 ba^{-2} \\
 &= a^2 b^2 a^{-2} = a^2 ab a^{-1} a^{-2} = a^3 ba^{-3}.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore (a ba^{-1})^8 &= \{(ab a^{-1})^4\}^2 = (a^3 ba^{-3})^2 = a^3 ba^{-3} a^3 ba^{-3} = a^3 b^2 a^{-3} \\
 &= a^3 ab a^{-1} a^{-3} = a^4 ba^{-4}.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore (aba^{-1})^{16} &= \{(ab a^{-1})^8\}^2 = (a^4 ba^{-4})^2 = a^4 ba^{-4} a^4 ba^{-4} = a^4 b^2 a^{-4} \\
 &= a^4 a ba^{-1} a^{-4} = a^5 ba^{-5} \\
 &= eb e \quad [\because a^5 = e \text{ and so } a^{-5} = e] \\
 &= b.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $(aba^{-1})^{16} = b$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore (b^2)^{16} &= b \quad [\because ab a^{-1} = b^3] \\
 \Rightarrow b^{32} &= b \\
 \Rightarrow b^{31} &= e.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since $b^m = e \Rightarrow o(b) \mid m$, therefore $o(b) \mid 31$.

But 31 is a prime integer. Therefore $o(b) = 1$ or 31.

So if $b = e$, then $o(b) = 1$ and if $b \neq e$, then $o(b) = 31$.

Ex. 16. If G is a finite abelian group with elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n , prove that $a_1 a_2 \dots a_n$ is an element whose square is the identity.

Solution. We have $(a_1 a_2 \dots a_n)^2 = (a_1 a_2 \dots a_n) (a_1 a_2 \dots a_n)$. $\dots (1)$

Now each element in a group has a unique inverse. Therefore each of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n is the inverse of exactly one of them. So associating each of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n with its inverse, the relation (1) becomes

$$(a_1 a_2 \dots a_n)^2 = (a_1 a_1^{-1}) (a_2 a_2^{-1}) \dots (a_n a_n^{-1}) = eee \dots \text{upto } n \text{ times} = e.$$

Ex. 17. Show that the equation $x^2 ax = a^{-1}$ is solvable for x in a group G if and only if a is the cube of some element in G .

Solution. Suppose $x^2 ax = a^{-1}$ is solvable in G . Then there exists an element $c \in G$ such that $c^2 ac = a^{-1}$.

Now $c^3ac=a^{-1} \Rightarrow ccac=a^{-1} \Rightarrow c(ca)ca=a^{-1}a \Rightarrow c(ca)(ca)=e \Rightarrow (ca)(ca)=c^{-1} \Rightarrow (ca)(ca)c=c^{-1}c \Rightarrow (ca)(ca)c=e \Rightarrow (ca)(ca)ca=ea \Rightarrow (ca)^3=a \Rightarrow a$ is the cube of some element $ca \in G$.

Conversely, let $a=b^3$ for some $b \in G$. Then $x=b^{-2}$ is a solution of $x^2ax=a^{-1}$. For if $x=b^{-2}$ and $a=b^3$, then $x^2ax=b^{-4}b^3b^{-2}=b^{-3}=(b^3)^{-1}=a^{-1}$. Thus $x=b^{-2}$ is a solution of $x^2ax=a^{-1}$.

Ex. 18. If in a group G , $xy^2=y^3x$ and $yx^2=x^3y$, then show that $x=y=e$ where e is the identity of G . (Nagarjuna 1980)

Solution. We have $xy^2=y^3x \Rightarrow x^2y^2=xy^3x$
 $\Rightarrow x^3y=xy^3xy^{-1}=xy^3yx^{-1}=y^3xyxy^{-1}$... (1)

Again $yx^2=x^3y \Rightarrow yx^2=xx^2y$
 $\Rightarrow yx^2=xy^3xyxy^{-1}$, substituting for x^2y from (1)
 $\Rightarrow x^2=y^{-1}xy^3xyxy^{-1}$
 $\Rightarrow x^2y=y^{-1}xy^3xyx$ (2)

From (1) and (2), we get
 $y^3xyxy^{-1}=y^{-1}xy^3xyx$
 $\Rightarrow y^4yx=xy^3xyxy=xy^2yxxy=y^3xyxyxy$.

Cancelling y^3 from both sides, we get

$$yxyx=xyxyxy \\ \Rightarrow (yx)^2=(xy)^3. \quad \dots (3)$$

Since the given relations are symmetrical in x and y , therefore interchanging x and y in (3), we get

$$(xy)^2=(yx)^3. \quad \dots (4)$$

Now from (3) and (4), we have

$$(xy)^2=(yx)^3=(yx)^2(yx)=(xy)^2(yx).$$

Cancelling $(xy)^2$ from both sides, we get

$$e=(xy)(yx)=xy^2x \\ \Rightarrow x^{-2}=y^3.$$

Now $xy^2=y^3x \Rightarrow xx^{-2}=yx^{-2}x$
 $\Rightarrow x^{-1}=yx^{-1} \Rightarrow y=e$.

Again $yx^2=x^3y \Rightarrow ex^2=x^3e \Rightarrow x^2=x^3 \Rightarrow x=e$.

Ex. 19. Let G be a group and let $a \in G$ be of finite order n .

Then for any integer k , we have $o(a^k)=\frac{n}{(n,k)}$ where (n,k) denotes the H.C.F. of n and k .

Solution. Let $(n, k) = m$. Then we have $n = pm$, $k = qm$ for some integers p and q such that $(p, q) = 1$. Let $o(a^k) = l$.

We have $o(a^k) = l \Rightarrow (a^k)^l = e \Rightarrow a^{kl} = e$

$\Rightarrow n \mid kl$ [$\because o(a) = n; \therefore a^{kl} = e \Rightarrow n \mid kl$]

$\Rightarrow pm \mid qml \Rightarrow p \mid ql$

$\Rightarrow p \mid l$ [$\because p$ and q are relatively prime]

Again $(a^k)^p = (a^{qm})^p = a^{qmp} = a^{qn} = (a^n)^q = e^q = e$.

Therefore $o(a^k) \mid p$ i.e., $l \mid p$.

Now $l \mid p$ and $p \mid l \Rightarrow l = p$.

$$\therefore o(a^k) = p = \frac{n}{m} = \frac{n}{(n, k)}.$$

Ex. 20. General law of commutativity of the elements of a group. If in a group G , a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n is any system of n elements, commutative in pairs, and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \dots n \\ i_1 & i_2 \dots i_n \end{pmatrix}$$

is any permutation of the set of n objects $1, 2, \dots, n$, then

$$a_1 a_2 \dots a_n = a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_n}.$$

(Punjab 1970; Meerut 70)

Solution. We shall prove the result by induction method. Suppose the result is true for products of $n-1$ or less elements. Then we shall show that it is also true for products of n elements. Two cases arise :

Case I. Let $i_n = n$. In this case we have
 $a_1 a_2 \dots a_n = (a_1 a_2 \dots a_{n-1}) a_n$ [\because composition in G is associative]
 $= (a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_{n-1}}) a_n$ [\because according to supposition the result is true for $n-1$ elements]

$$= (a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_{n-1}}) a_{i_n} \quad [\because n = i_n]$$

$$= a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_{n-1}} a_{i_n} \quad [\text{by associativity}]$$

Case II. Let $i_n = k$ where $k < n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} & a_1 a_2 \dots a_{k-1} a_k a_{k+1} \dots a_n \\ &= (a_1 a_2 \dots a_{k-1}) (a_k a_{k+1} \dots a_n) \quad [\text{by associativity}] \\ &= (a_1 a_2 \dots a_{k-1}) (a_{k+1} \dots a_n a_k) \quad [\text{by supposition}] \\ &= (a_1 a_2 \dots a_{k-1}) [(a_{k+1} \dots a_n) a_k] = [(a_1 a_2 \dots a_{k-1}) (a_{k+1} \dots a_n)] a_k \\ &= (a_1 a_2 \dots a_{k-1} a_{k+1} \dots a_n) a_k \\ &= (a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_{n-1}}) a_{i_n} = a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_{n-1}} a_{i_n}. \end{aligned}$$

Now obviously the result is true for products of 2 elements. Hence the proof is complete by induction.

Exercises

1. Define the order of an element in (i) an additive group, (ii) a multiplicative group. What is the order of the residue class [3] in the multiplicative group of non-zero residue classes modulo 5? Ans. 4. (Gorakhpur 1970)

2. Distinguish between the order of a group and the order of an element in a group. Prove that if $a, x \in G$ then a and xax^{-1} have the same order in G . (Gorakhpur 1970, Meerut 70)

3. Show that in a group G , we have

$$ab = e \Rightarrow a = b^{-1} \text{ and } b = a^{-1}.$$

4. Show that in a group G , we have

$$ab = a \text{ or } ba = a \Rightarrow b = e,$$

where e is the identity element of G . (Kanpur 1969)

5. If in a group G , the elements a and b commute, then prove that (i) a^{-1} and b^{-1} also commute, (ii) a^{-1} and b also commute, (iii) a and b^{-1} also commute.

6. In a group G , prove that $e^n = e$ for any integer n .

7. Find the solution of the equation $abxax = cbx$ in a group G , where a, b and c are given elements of G .

$$\text{Ans. } x = b^{-1} a^{-1} c b a^{-1}.$$

8. Prove that, if a group has an even number of elements, then at least one element, apart from the identity element must equal its inverse.

9. Prove that in any group, e is the only element of order 1.

10. Find the order of each element of the group

$$(\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}, +_5). \quad (\text{Gorakhpur 1970})$$

Ans. $o(0) = 1$ and each other element is of order 5.

11. Find the order of the permutation $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$.

Ans. 3.

12. Let G be a group and let $a \neq e \in G$ be such that $a^p = e$, where p is a prime number. Prove that $o(a) = p$.

13. Show by means of an example that it is possible for the quadratic equation $x^2 = e$ to have more than two solutions in some group G with identity e . (Marathawada 1972, Meerut 81)

14. If the elements a , b and ab of a group are each of order 2, prove that $ab=ba$. (Meerut 1973)

15. Let $a, b \in G$ be non-identity elements with $o(a)=5$ and $a^{-1}ba=b^2$. Find $o(b)$. Ans. 31.

16. Give an example of an infinite group each element of which has a finite order.

(Poona 1970; I.C.S. 89; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 85)

Hint. Let $G=\{z : z \in \mathbb{C} \text{ and } z^n=1 \text{ for some positive integer } n\}$ i.e., let G be the union of all n th roots of unity where $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then for multiplication of complex numbers G is the desired group].

17. Let $x \in G$, $x \neq e$. Show that $x \neq x^{-1}$ if and only if the order of x is greater than two, where G is any group.

(Poona 1973)

18. If a is an element of a group, prove that the integral powers of a form a multiplicative group. (Meerut 1975)

19. In S_3 give an example of two elements x, y such that $(xy)^2 \neq x^2y^2$. Here S_3 is the symmetric group of permutations of degree 3.

20. In S_3 show that there are four elements satisfying $x^2=e$ and three elements satisfying $y^3=e$.

21. In a group G let a be an element of finite order n . If a positive integer k is a divisor of n , prove that $o(a^k)=n/k$.

22. Show that the equation $xax=b$ is solvable for x in a group G if and only if ab is the square of some element in G .

23. Show that in an abelian group the product of two elements of finite order is again an element of finite order.

24. Prove that a group G is abelian if and only if $(ab)^{-1}=a^{-1}b^{-1} \forall a, b \in G$. (Rohilkhand 1981)

§ 18. Isomorphism of groups.

Now we shall discuss the very important concept of isomorphism of groups.

Isomorphic mapping. Definition.

(Agra 1977; Osmania 72; Rohilkhand 80; Poona 73)

Suppose G and G' are two groups, the composition in each being denoted multiplicatively. A mapping f of G into G' is said to be an isomorphic mapping of G into G' if

(i) f is one-to-one i.e., distinct elements in G have distinct f -images in G' ,

(ii) $f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \forall a, b \in G$ i.e., the image of the product is the product of the images.

It should be noted that when we say that f is a mapping of G into G' , we usually include in it the possibility that the mapping f may be onto G' . If an isomorphic mapping f of G into G' is onto G' , then it is called an isomorphic mapping of G onto G' .

If $f: G \rightarrow G'$ be such that $f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \forall a, b \in G$, then we say that the mapping f preserves the compositions in G and G' . Hence $f(ab)$ is an element of G' and it is the f -image of ab which is an element of G obtained on multiplying a and b . Further $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ are elements of G' . Also $f(a)f(b)$ is an element of G' obtained on multiplying $f(a)$ and $f(b)$.

Thus we can say that, a mapping f is said to be an isomorphic mapping of G into G' if it is one-to-one and if it preserves the compositions in G and G' .

If f is an isomorphic mapping of a group G into a group G' , then f is also called an isomorphism of G into G' . If f is an isomorphism of G onto G' , the group G' is called an isomorphic image of the group G . Also then we say that the group G is isomorphic to the group G' . Thus we can give the complete definition of isomorphic groups like this :

Isomorphic groups. Definition.

(Meerut 1982; I.A.S. 70; B.H.U. 88)

Suppose G and G' are two groups. Further suppose that the compositions in both G and G' have been denoted multiplicatively. Then we say that the group G is isomorphic to the group G' if there exists a one-to-one mapping f of G onto G' such that

$$f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \forall a, b \in G$$

i.e., the mapping f preserves the compositions in G and G' .

If the group G is isomorphic to the group G' , symbolically we write $G \cong G'$. Another notation for isomorphism is \approx .

Note 1. In our definition of isomorphism of two groups G and G' we have denoted the compositions in G and G' both multiplicatively. The students can use different symbols to denote the compositions in G and G' . But there should be no confusion.

Note 2. If G is isomorphic to G' , there may exist more than one isomorphisms of G onto G' . There may be many one-one onto functions from G to G' . But if there exists at least one function f which is one-one, onto and also preserves compositions, then G will be isomorphic to G' .

Note 3. If the group G is finite, then G can be isomorphic to G' only if G' is also finite and the number of elements in G is equal to the number of elements in G' . Otherwise there will exist no mapping f from G to G' which is one-one as well as onto.

Note 4. If the group G is isomorphic to the group G' , then we say that the groups G and G' are abstractly identical. From the point of view of abstract algebra we shall regard them as one group and not as two different groups.

Example 1. If R is the additive group of real numbers and R_+ the multiplicative group of positive real numbers, prove that the mapping $f: R \rightarrow R_+$ defined by $f(x) = e^x \forall x \in R$ is an isomorphism of R onto R_+ . (Gujrat 1970, Meerut 86; Delhi 70; Kolhapur 73; Gorakhpur 70; Madurai 78)

Solution. If x is any real number, positive, zero or negative, then e^x is always a positive real number. Also e^x is unique. Therefore if $f(x) = e^x$, then $f: R \rightarrow R_+$.

f is one-to-one.

Let $x_1, x_2 \in R$. Then $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$

$$\Rightarrow e^{x_1} = e^{x_2} \quad [\because \text{by the def. of } f, f(x) = e^x]$$

$$\Rightarrow \log e^{x_1} = \log e^{x_2} \Rightarrow x_1 \log e = x_2 \log e \Rightarrow x_1 = x_2.$$

Thus two elements in R have the same f -image in R_+ only if they are equal. Consequently distinct elements in R have distinct f -images in R_+ . Therefore f is one-to-one.

f is onto. Suppose y is any element of R_+ i.e., y is any positive real number. Then $\log y$ is a real number i.e., $\log y \in R$.

Now $f(\log y) = e^{\log y} = y$. Thus $y \in R_+ \Rightarrow$ that $\exists \log y \in R$ such that $f(\log y) = y$. Therefore each element of R_+ is the f -image of some element of R . Thus f is onto.

f preserves compositions in R and R_+ . Suppose x_1 and x_2 are any two elements of R . Then

$$f(x_1 + x_2) = e^{x_1 + x_2} \quad [\text{by definition of } f]$$

$$= e^{x_1} \cdot e^{x_2}$$

$$= f(x_1) f(x_2) [\because f(x_1) = e^{x_1} \text{ and } f(x_2) = e^{x_2}].$$

Thus f preserves compositions in R and R_+ . Here the composition in R is addition and the composition in R_+ is multiplication. Therefore f is an isomorphism of R onto R_+ . Hence $R \cong R_+$.

Example 2. Let R_+ be the multiplicative group of all positive real numbers and R be the additive group of all real numbers. Show that the mapping $g : R_+ \rightarrow R$ defined by

$g(x) = \log x \quad \forall x \in R_+$ is an isomorphism. (Meerut 1976)

Solution. If x is any positive real number, then $\log x$ is definitely a real number. Also $\log x$ is unique. Therefore if $g(x) = \log x$, then $g : R_+ \rightarrow R$.

g is one-to-one. Let $x_1, x_2 \in R_+$. Then $g(x_1) = g(x_2)$

$$\Rightarrow \log x_1 = \log x_2 \Rightarrow e^{\log x_1} = e^{\log x_2} \Rightarrow x_1 = x_2.$$

Therefore g is one-to-one.

g is onto. Suppose y is any element of R i.e., y is any real number. Then e^y is definitely a positive real number i.e., $e^y \in R_+$.

Now $g(e^y) = \log e^y = y$. Thus $y \in R \Rightarrow$ that there exists $e^y \in R_+$ such that $g(e^y) = y$. Therefore each element of R is the g -image of some element of R_+ . Thus g is onto.

g preserves compositions in R_+ and R . Suppose x_1 and x_2 are any two elements of R_+ . Then

$$g(x_1 x_2) = \log(x_1 x_2) \quad [\text{by def. of } g]$$

$$= \log x_1 + \log x_2$$

$$= g(x_1) + g(x_2) \quad [\text{by def. of } g]$$

Thus g preserves compositions in R_+ and R . Here the composition in R_+ is multiplication and the composition in R is addition. Therefore g is an isomorphism of R_+ onto R . Hence $R_+ \cong R$.

Ex. 3. Show that the additive group of integers

$$G = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$$

is isomorphic to the additive group

$$G' = \{\dots, -3m, -2m, -1m, 0, 1m, 2m, 3m, \dots\}$$

where m is any fixed integer not equal to zero. (Agra 1986)

Solution. If $x \in G$, then obviously $mx \in G'$. Let $f : G \rightarrow G'$ be defined by $f(x) = mx \quad \forall x \in G$.

f is one-to-one. Let $x_1, x_2 \in G$. Then $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$

$$\Rightarrow mx_1 = mx_2 \quad [\text{by def. of } f]$$

$$\Rightarrow x_1 = x_2. \quad [\because m \neq 0]$$

Therefore f is one-to-one.

f is onto. Suppose y is any element of G' . Then obviously $y/m \in G$. Also $f(y/m) = m(y/m) = y$. Thus $y \in G' \Rightarrow$ that there exists $y/m \in G$ such that $f(y/m) = y$. Therefore each element of G' is the f -image of some element of G . Hence f is onto.

Again if x_1 and x_2 are any two elements of G , then

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x_1 + x_2) &= m(x_1 + x_2) && [\text{by def. of } f] \\
 &= mx_1 + mx_2 && [\text{by distributive law for integers}] \\
 &= f(x_1) + f(x_2). && [\text{by definition of } f]
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus f preserves compositions in G and G' . Therefore f is an isomorphic mapping of G onto G' . Hence G is isomorphic to G' .

Ex. 4. Show that the set C of all complex numbers under addition is a group which is isomorphic to itself under the identity mapping as well as under the mapping which takes every complex number into its conjugate complex.

Solution. The identity mapping f defined by $f: C \rightarrow C$ such that $f(z) = z \forall z \in C$ is obviously one-one onto.

$$\text{Also } f(z_1 + z_2) = z_1 + z_2 = f(z_1) + f(z_2) \quad \forall z_1, z_2 \in C.$$

\therefore the identity mapping f is an isomorphism of C onto C .

If $z = x + iy$ is any complex number, then $\bar{z} = x - iy$ is called the conjugate complex of z .

$$\text{Let } g: C \rightarrow C \text{ be such that } g(z) = \bar{z} \quad \forall z \in C.$$

$$\text{Let } z_1, z_2 \in C. \text{ Then } g(z_1) = g(z_2) \Rightarrow \bar{z}_1 = \bar{z}_2$$

$$\Rightarrow (\bar{z}_1) = (\bar{z}_2) \Rightarrow z_1 = z_2.$$

Therefore g is one-to-one.

If $x + iy$ is any element of C , then $x - iy$ is also an element of C . Also $g[(x - iy)] = x + iy$. Therefore g is onto.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Further if } z_1, z_2 \in C, \text{ then } g(z_1 + z_2) &= \overline{(z_1 + z_2)} = \bar{z}_1 + \bar{z}_2 \\
 &= g(z_1) + g(z_2).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence g is also an isomorphism of C onto C .

§ 19 Some Important Properties of Isomorphic Mappings.

Let f be an isomorphic mapping of a group G into a group G' .

Then we have the following important properties.

(i) The f -image of the identity e of G is the identity of G' i.e., $f(e)$ is the identity of G' . (Kanpur 1970; Allahabad 70; Raj. 78 Berhampur 77; Meerut 68; Rohilkhand 80; Lucknow 66)

Proof. Let e be the identity of G and e' be the identity of G' .

Let a be any element of G . Then $f(a) \in G'$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Now } e' f(a) &= f(a) && [\because e' \text{ is the identity of } G'] \\
 &= f(ea) && [\because e \text{ is the identity of } G] \\
 &= f(e) f(a) && [\because f \text{ is an isomorphic mapping}]
 \end{aligned}$$

Now in the group G' , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 e' f(a) &= f(e) f(a) \\
 \Rightarrow e' &= f(e) && [\text{by right cancellation law in } G']
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f(e)$ is the identity of G' .

(ii) The f -image of the inverse of an element a of G is the inverse of the f -image of a i.e., $f(a^{-1}) = [f(a)]^{-1}$.

(Kanpur 1970; Garhwal 76; Berhampur 77; Rohilkhand 80; Meerut 76)

Proof. Suppose e is the identity of G and e' is the identity of G' . Then $f(e) = e'$. Now let a be any element of G . Then $a^{-1} \in G$ and $aa^{-1} = e$. We have

$$e' = f(e) = f(aa^{-1}) = f(a)f(a^{-1}) \quad [\because f \text{ is composition preserving}]$$

Therefore $f(a^{-1})$ is the inverse of $f(a)$ in the group G' . Thus $f(a^{-1}) = [f(a)]^{-1}$.

(iii) The order of an element a of G is equal to the order of its image $f(a)$. (Poona 73)

Proof. Suppose e is the identity of G . Then $f(e)$ is the identity of G' . Let the order of a be finite and let it be equal to n .

$$\text{Then } a^n = e \Rightarrow f(a^n) = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(aaa...n \text{ times}) = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)f(a)...n \text{ times} = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow [f(a)]^n = f(e) \Rightarrow \text{order of } f(a) \leq n.$$

If now the order of $f(a)$ is m , then

$$[f(a)]^m = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)f(a)f(a)...m \text{ times} = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(aaa...m \text{ times}) = f(e) \Rightarrow f(a^m) = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow a^m = e \quad [\because f \text{ is one-one}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{order of } a \leq m.$$

Thus $m \leq n$ and $n \leq m \Rightarrow m = n$.

If the order of a is infinite, then the order of $f(a)$ cannot be finite. Because if the order of $f(a)$ is finite and is equal to m , then we have $a^m = e$. Therefore the order of a is finite. Thus we get a contradiction.

Hence in all cases order of $a = \text{order of } f(a)$.

Important Note. Suppose we are to prove that a group G is isomorphic to another group G' . Then we should try to find a one-one mapping from G onto G' which also preserves compositions in G and G' . While forming such a mapping we should keep in mind the above three facts that an isomorphic mapping must preserve identities, inverses and orders.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that the multiplicative group $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$ is isomorphic to the permutation group

$$G' = \{I, (abcd), (ac)(bd), (adcb)\}$$

on four symbols a, b, c, d .

(Banaras 70)

Solution. We note that 1 is the identity of G and I is the identity of G' . Therefore if f is to be an isomorphism of G onto G' , then we must have $f(1) = I$ i.e., identity must go to identity.

In the group G the orders of $-1, i$ and $-i$ are 2, 4 and 4 respectively. While in the group G' the orders of $(abcd), (ac)(bd), (adcb)$ are 4, 2 and 4 respectively. In an isomorphic mapping only elements of equal order can be mapped on each other. Therefore we must have $f(-1) = (ac)(bd)$. Now the f -image of i can be taken either $(abcd)$ or $(adcb)$. Let us take $f(i) = (abcd)$ and $f(-i) = (adcb)$. It should be noted that the inverse of i in G is $-i$ while the inverse of $(abcd)$ in G' is $(adcb)$.

The mapping $f: G \rightarrow G'$ as defined above is obviously one-one onto. Now to show that f preserves compositions in G and G' we proceed as follows :

Let us write $A_1 = 1, A_2 = -1, A_3 = i$ and $A_4 = -i$. We shall denote the corresponding f -images by writing B in place of A . So let us write $B_1 = f(A_1) = I, B_2 = f(A_2) = (ac)(bd), B_3 = f(A_3) = (abcd)$ and $B_4 = f(A_4) = (adcb)$.

Now we shall form the composition tables for the two groups :

	A_1	A_2	A_3	A_4		B_1	B_2	B_3	B_4
A_1	A_1	A_2	A_3	A_4	B_1	B_1	B_2	B_3	B_4
A_2	A_2	A_1	A_4	A_3	B_2	B_2	B_1	B_4	B_3
A_3	A_3	A_4	A_2	A_1	B_3	B_3	B_4	B_2	B_1
A_4	A_4	A_3	A_1	A_2	B_4	B_4	B_3	B_1	B_2

We see that the composition tables for G and G' are identical i.e., if we replace A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4 by B_1, B_2, B_3, B_4 in the composition table for G , we reproduce the complete composition table for G' . Therefore the mapping f preserves compositions in G and G' . Obviously $f(A_i A_j) = B_i B_j = f(A_i) f(A_j) \forall A_i, A_j \in G$.

For example, $f(A_3 A_4) = f(A_1) = B_1 = B_3 B_4 = f(A_3) f(A_4)$.

$\therefore f$ is an isomorphism of G onto G' . Hence G is isomorphic to G' .

Note. The mapping $\phi : G \rightarrow G'$ defined by $\phi(1) = I$, $\phi(-1) = (ac)(bd)$, $\phi(i) = (adcb)$, $\phi(-i) = (abcd)$ is also an isomorphism of G onto G' as can be easily seen. Also it is obvious that in this case we can have only two isomorphisms of G onto G' .

Ex. 2. Show that the multiplicative group $G = \{1, \omega, \omega^2\}$ is isomorphic to the permutation group $G' = \{I, (abc), (acb)\}$ on three symbols a, b, c .

Solution. Proceed as in Ex. 1. Take the mapping $f : G \rightarrow G'$ defined as $f(1) = I$, $f(\omega) = (abc)$, $f(\omega^2) = (acb)$.

Ex. 3. Show that the group $G = (\{0, 1, 2, 3\}, +_4)$ is isomorphic to the group $G' = (\{1, 2, 3, 4\}, \times_5)$.

Solution. Here 0 is the identity of G and 1 is the identity of G' . Therefore if $f : G \rightarrow G'$ is to be an isomorphism of G onto G' , we must have $f(0) = 1$.

In the group G the orders of 1, 2, 3 are 4, 2 and 4 respectively. In the group G' the orders of 2, 3, 4 are 4, 4 and 2 respectively. Therefore we must take $f(2) = 4$. Further let us take $f(1) = 2$, $f(3) = 3$.

The mapping f is obviously one-one onto. To show that f preserves compositions in G and G' , we should proceed as in Ex. 1.

§ 20. The relation of Isomorphism in the set of all groups.

Theorem. The relation of isomorphism in the set of all groups is an equivalence relation.

(Punjab 1970; Gorakhpur 70; Kanpur 87; I.C.S. 83; Meerut 81, 84, 90)

Proof. We shall prove that the relation of isomorphism denoted by \cong in the set of all groups is reflexive, symmetric and transitive.

Reflexive. If G is any group, then $G \cong G$. Let f be the identity mapping on G i.e., let $f : G \rightarrow G$ such that $f(x) = x \forall x \in G$. Obviously f is one-one onto. Also if x, y are any elements of G , then $f(x) = x$ and $f(y) = y$.

Also $f(xy) = xy$ [$\because f$ is identity mapping]
 $= f(x)f(y).$

$\therefore f$ is composition preserving also. Thus f is an isomorphism of G onto G .

Hence $G \cong G$.

Symmetric [i.e., $G \cong G' \Rightarrow G' \cong G$]. Suppose a group G is isomorphic to another group G' . Let f be an isomorphism of G onto G' . Then f is one-one onto and preserves compositions in G

and G' . Since f is one-one onto, therefore it is invertible i.e., f^{-1} exists. Also we know that the mapping f^{-1} is also one-one onto.

Now we shall show that $f^{-1} : G' \rightarrow G$ is also composition preserving. Let x', y' be any elements of G' . Then there exist elements $x, y \in G$ such that

$$f^{-1}(x') = x, f^{-1}(y') = y \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{and} \quad f(x) = x', f(y) = y' \quad \dots(2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now} \quad f^{-1}(x' y') &= f^{-1}[f(x) f(y)] && [\text{From (2)}] \\ &= f^{-1}[f(xy)], \text{ since } f(xy) = f(x) f(y) \\ &= xy && [\text{by def. of } f^{-1}] \\ &= f^{-1}(x') f^{-1}(y') && [\text{From (1)}] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f^{-1}$ preserves compositions in G' and G .

Hence $G' \cong G$.

Transitive i.e., $G \cong G', G' \cong G'' \Rightarrow G \cong G''$. Suppose G is isomorphic to G' and G' is isomorphic to G'' . Further suppose that $f : G \rightarrow G'$ and $g : G' \rightarrow G''$ are the respective isomorphic mappings. We know that the composite mapping $g \circ f : G \rightarrow G''$ defined by

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g[f(x)] \quad \forall x \in G$$

is also one-one onto if both f and g are one-one onto.

Further if x, y are any elements of G , then

$$\begin{aligned} (g \circ f)(xy) &= g[f(xy)] && [\text{by definition of } g \circ f] \\ &= g[f(x) f(y)] && [\because f \text{ is composition preserving}] \\ &= g[f(x)] g[f(y)] && [\because g \text{ is also an isomorphism}] \\ &= [(g \circ f)(x)] [(g \circ f)(y)]. \end{aligned}$$

Hence $g \circ f$ preserves compositions in G and G'' .

$\therefore g \circ f$ is an isomorphism of G onto G'' and $G \cong G''$.

Hence the relation of isomorphism in the set of all groups is an equivalence relation.

Note. The relation of isomorphism in the set of all groups will partition the set of all groups into disjoint equivalence classes. If G_1 is any group, then all the groups isomorphic to G_1 will form one equivalence class. If G_2 is another group not isomorphic to G_1 , then all the groups isomorphic to G_2 will form another equivalence class, and so on.

§ 21. Transference of group structures.

Theorem. If G is a group and G' is a set equipped with a composition (supposed denoted multiplicatively) and if there exists a one-one mapping f of G onto G' such that

$$f(ab) = f(a) f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in G,$$

then G' is also a group isomorphic to G for the composition in question.

Proof. To show that G' is a group we are to show that the composition in G' satisfies the group postulates.

Associativity. Suppose a', b', c' are any three elements of G' . Since f is an onto function, there exist three elements a, b, c of G such that $f(a)=a', f(b)=b', f(c)=c'$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (a'b')c' &= [f(a)f(b)]f(c) \\ &= [f(ab)]f(c) \quad [\because f \text{ preserves compositions}] \\ &= f[(ab)c] \quad [\because f \text{ is composition perserving}] \\ &= f[a(bc)] \quad [\text{by associativity in the group } G] \\ &= f(a)[f(bc)] = f(a)[f(b)f(c)] = a'(b'c'). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the composition in G' is associative.

Existence of Identity. Suppose e is the identity of G . Then $f(e)$ is an element of G' . If a' is any element of G' , there exists an element $a \in G$ such that $f(a)=a'$.

$$\text{Now } [f(e)]a' = [f(e)][f(a)] = f(ea) = f(a) = a'.$$

$$\text{Also } a'[f(e)] = [f(a)][f(e)] = f(ae) = f(a) = a'.$$

$\therefore f(e)$ which is the f -image of the identity e in G is the identity in G' .

Existence of Inverse. If a' is any element of G' , there exists an element $a \in G$ such that $f(a)=a'$.

$$\text{Now } a \in G \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in G \text{ where } a^{-1}a = e = aa^{-1}.$$

Also $f(a^{-1})$ is an element of G' .

$$\text{Now } [f(a^{-1})]a' = [f(a^{-1})][f(a)] = f(a^{-1}a) = f(e).$$

$$\text{Also } a'[f(a^{-1})] = [f(a)][f(a^{-1})] = f(aa^{-1}) = f(e).$$

$\therefore f(a^{-1})$ is the inverse of a' in G' . Thus every element of G' possesses inverse.

Exercises

1. Show that the mapping

$$f: G \rightarrow G' \text{ defined by } f(x) = 2x \quad \forall x \in G$$

is an isomorphism of G onto G' where G is the additive group of integers and G' is the additive group of even integers including zero.

2. Show that the additive group G of all integers is isomorphic to the multiplicative group

$$G' = \{\dots, 3^{-3}, 3^{-2}, 3^{-1}, 3^0, 3^1, 3^2, 3^3, \dots\}.$$

3. Show that the multiplicative group $G = \{1, -1\}$ is isomorphic to the permutation group $G' = \{I, (ab)\}$.

4. (i) What do you understand by the statement :

“When two groups are isomorphic, then in some sense they are equal”.

(Allahabad 80)

(ii) Are any two finite groups with the same number of elements isomorphic ?

(Meerut 1981; B.H.U. 88) Ans. No.

5. Show that the multiplicative group $G = \{1, \omega, \omega^2\}$ is isomorphic to the group G' of residue classes (mod 3) under addition of residue classes.

6. Show that the multiplicative group $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$ is isomorphic to the group $G' = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ with addition modulo 4 as composition.

(Meerut 1980)

7. If f is an isomorphism of a group G onto a group G' , show that f^{-1} is an isomorphism of G' onto G .

(Lucknow 68)

8. Show that the product of two isomorphisms is also an isomorphism.

(Lucknow 68)

9. Let G be any group and a be any fixed element in G . Define a mapping $f: G \rightarrow G$ by the formula

$$f(x) = axa^{-1}, \quad \forall x \in G.$$

Prove that f is an isomorphism of G onto itself.

(I.A.S. 1970; Poona 73)

10. Prove that the order of an element of a group is unaltered by an isomorphism.

11. Show that the mapping $x \rightarrow x^{-1}$ of G onto G is an isomorphism if and only if G is abelian, x being any element of the group G .

(Poona 73)

12. Prove that the additive group of complex numbers $a + ib$ (a, b integers) is isomorphic to the multiplicative group of rational numbers of the form $2^a 3^b$ (a, b integers).

13. Let n be an integer greater than 1. Prove that

$$G = \left\{ z_k : z_k = \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{2k\pi}{n}; 0 \leq k \leq n-1 \right\}$$

is a group with respect to the multiplication of complex numbers. Show that G is isomorphic to $Z/(n)$ — the additive group of integers modulo n .

(Meerut 73)

14. Show that the multiplicative group G of n n^{th} roots of unity is isomorphic to the group

$$G' = (\{0, 1, 2, \dots, n-1\}, +_n).$$

15. Show that the group G of four transformations f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4 defined by $f_1(z)=z$, $f_2(z)=-z$, $f_3(z)=1/z$, $f_4(z)=-1/z$, with composite composition is isomorphic to the permutation group G' of degree four consisting of the four permutations

$$, (ab), (cd), (ab)(cd).$$

16. Show that real matrices of the type $\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, where $a \neq 0$ form a multiplicative group which is isomorphic to the group of real non-zero numbers under multiplication.

17. Show that the multiplicative group of all matrices $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{bmatrix}$, where a and b are real numbers (not both equal to zero), is isomorphic to the group of non-zero complex numbers for multiplication. (Meerut 72)

§ 22. Complexes and subgroups of a group.

Suppose G is a group and the group composition has been denoted multiplicatively.

Any non-empty subset H of a group G is called a complex of the group G . (Nagarjuna 1978)

Let, now, H be any non-empty subset of a group G . Suppose H is closed with respect to the composition in G i.e.,

$$a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H.$$

Then we say that the complex H is stable for the composition in G and that the composition in G has induced a composition in H . This composition in H is called the induced composition. If for this induced composition H itself is a group, then H is called a subgroup of the group G .

Subgroup. Definition. (Madras 1974; Osmania 72; Meerut 82; Kanpur 87; Rajasthan 77; Allahabad 85)

A non-empty subset H of a group G is said to be a subgroup of G if the composition in G is also a composition in H and for this composition H itself is a group.

Every subgroup of G is a complex of G but every complex is not always a subgroup.

Now every set is a subset of itself. Therefore if G is a group, then G itself is a subgroup of G . Also if e is the identity of G , then the subset of G containing only one element i.e., e is also a subgroup of G . These two are subgroups of any group. They are

called trivial or improper subgroups. A subgroup other than these two is called a proper subgroup.

Theorem. *Prove that*

- (i) *The identity of a subgroup is the same as that of the group.*
- (ii) *The inverse of any element of a subgroup is the same as the inverse of the same regarded as an element of the group.*
- (iii) *The order of any element of a subgroup is the same as the order of the element regarded as a member of the group.*

Proof. Let H be a subgroup of the group G .

- (i) Let e and e' be the identities of G and H respectively.

Now $a \in H \Rightarrow e' a = a$.

[$\because e'$ is identity of H]

Also $a \in H \Rightarrow a \in G \Rightarrow ea = a$

[$\because e$ is identity of G]

\therefore in G we have $e'a = ea$

$$\Rightarrow e' = e$$

[by right cancellation law in G]

- (ii) Let e be the identity of G as well as of H .

Let $a \in H$. Suppose b is the inverse of a in H and c is the inverse of a in G . Then we have $ba = e$ and $ca = e$.

\therefore in G we have $ba = ca \Rightarrow b = c$.

- (iii) It can also be easily proved.

Some Examples of Subgroups.

Example 1. The multiplicative group $\{1, -1\}$ is a subgroup of the multiplicative group $\{1, -1, i, -i\}$.

Example 2. The additive group of even integers is a subgroup of the additive group of all integers.

Example 3. The multiplicative group of positive rational numbers is a subgroup of the multiplicative group of all non-zero rational numbers.

Example 4. The additive group of integers is a subgroup of the additive group of all rational numbers.

Example 5. The alternating group A_n of all even permutations of degree n is a subgroup of the symmetric group P_n of all permutations of degree n .

Example 6. The subset $\{I, (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\}$ is a subgroup of the symmetric group P_3 . Other proper subgroups of P_3 are $\{I, (1\ 2)\}$, $\{I, (2\ 3)\}$, $\{I, (3\ 1)\}$.

§ 23. Algebra of complexes of a group. Multiplication of complexes. If H and K are two complexes of a group G , then

$$HK = \{x \in G \mid x = hk, h \in H, k \in K\}.$$

Obviously $HK \subseteq G$. Thus HK is a complex of G consisting of the elements of G obtained on multiplying each member of H with each member of K .

Multiplication of complexes is associative i.e., If H, K, L are any three complexes of G , then $(HK)L = H(KL)$. (Nagarjuna 1978)

Proof. Let h, k, l be any arbitrary elements of H, K, L respectively so that $(hk)l \in (HK)L$.

But $(hk)l = h(kl) \in H(KL)$.

$$\therefore (HK)L \subseteq H(KL).$$

Similarly we can show that $H(KL) \subseteq (HK)L$.

Hence $(HK)L = H(KL)$.

Note. If we say that $HK = KH$, then it does not mean that we should have $hk = kh$ for all $h \in H$ and for all $k \in K$. What we require is that each element of the set HK should be present in KH and each element of KH should be present in HK .

Inverse of a complex. Let H be any complex of G . Then we define $H^{-1} = \{h^{-1} : h \in H\}$ i.e., H^{-1} is the complex of G consisting of the inverses of the elements of H .

Theorem 1. If H and K are any two complexes of a group G , then $(HK)^{-1} = K^{-1}H^{-1}$. (Nagarjuna 1978)

Proof. Let x be any arbitrary element of $(HK)^{-1}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x &= (hk)^{-1}, h \in H, k \in K \\ &= k^{-1}h^{-1} \in K^{-1}H^{-1} \quad [\because k^{-1} \in K^{-1}, h^{-1} \in H^{-1}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (HK)^{-1} \subseteq K^{-1}H^{-1}.$$

Again let y be any arbitrary element of $K^{-1}H^{-1}$.

Then $y = k^{-1}h^{-1}, k \in K, h \in H$

$$= (hk)^{-1} \in (HK)^{-1}. \quad [\because hk \in HK]$$

$$\therefore K^{-1}H^{-1} \subseteq (HK)^{-1}.$$

Hence $(HK)^{-1} = K^{-1}H^{-1}$.

Theorem 2. If H is any subgroup of G then $H^{-1} = H$. Also show that the converse is not true.

Proof. Let h^{-1} be any arbitrary element of H^{-1} . Then $h \in H$. Now H is a subgroup of G . Therefore $h \in H \Rightarrow h^{-1} \in H$. Thus $h^{-1} \in H^{-1} \Rightarrow h^{-1} \in H$. Therefore $H^{-1} \subseteq H$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Again } h \in H &\Rightarrow h^{-1} \in H \quad [\because H \text{ is itself a group}] \\ &\Rightarrow (h^{-1})^{-1} \in H^{-1} \quad [\text{by def. of } H^{-1}] \\ &\Rightarrow h \in H^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore H \subseteq H^{-1}.$$

Hence $H^{-1} = H$.

If H is a complex of a group G and $H^{-1} = H$, then it is not necessary that H is a subgroup of G . For example $H = \{-1\}$ is a complex of the multiplicative group $G = \{-1, 1\}$. Also $H^{-1} = \{-1\}$

since -1 is the inverse of -1 in G . But $H = \{-1\}$ is not a subgroup of G . We have $(-1)(-1) = 1 \notin H$. Thus H is not closed with respect to multiplication.

Theorem 3. *If H is any subgroup of a group G , then $HH = H$.*

Proof. Let $h_1 h_2$ be any element of HH where $h_1 \in H, h_2 \in H$. Since H is a subgroup of G , therefore

$$h_1, h_2 \in H \Rightarrow h_1 h_2 \in H.$$

$$\therefore HH \subseteq H.$$

Now let h be any element of H . Then we can write $h = he$ where e is the identity of G . Now $he \in HH$, since $h \in H, e \in H$.

Thus $H \subseteq HH$.

Hence $HH = H$.

§ 24. Criterion for a complex to be a subgroup.

Theorem 1. *A non-empty subset H of a group G is a subgroup of G if and only if*

(i) $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$.

(ii) $a \in H \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in H$ where a^{-1} is the inverse of a in G .

(Lucknow 1970; Allahabad 69)

Proof. The conditions are necessary. Suppose H is a subgroup of G . Then H must be closed with respect to multiplication i.e., the composition in G . Therefore $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$.

Let $a \in H$ and let a^{-1} be the inverse of a in G . Then the inverse of a in H is also a^{-1} . Since H itself is a group, therefore each element of H must possess inverse. Therefore

$$a \in H \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in H.$$

The conditions are sufficient.

Since $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$, therefore H is closed with respect to multiplication.

Associativity. The elements of H are also the elements of G . The composition in G is associative. Therefore the same composition must also be associative in H .

Existence of Identity. The identity of the subgroup is the same as the identity of the group.

Now $a \in H \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in H$. [From the given condition (ii)]

Further $a \in H, a^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow aa^{-1} \in H$

[From the given condition (i)]

$$\Rightarrow e \in H.$$

\therefore The identity e is an element of H .

Existence of inverse. Since $a \in H \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in H$, therefore each element of H possesses inverse. Hence H itself is a group for the composition in G . So H is a subgroup of G .

Theorem 3. (An important characteristic property of a subgroup). *A necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty subset H of a group G to be a subgroup is that*

$a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$ where b^{-1} is the inverse of b in G .

(I.A.S. 1972; Nagarjuna 80; Lucknow 80; Marathwada 70;

Osmania 72; Meerut 84, 88, 90; Allahabad 79;

Rohilkhand 80; Garhwal 76; Kumayon 78)

Proof. The condition is necessary. Suppose H is a subgroup of G . Let $a \in H, b \in H$. Now each element of H must possess inverse because H itself is a group.

$$\therefore b \in H \Rightarrow b^{-1} \in H.$$

Further H must be closed with respect to multiplication i.e., the composition in G . Therefore $a \in H, b^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$.

The condition is sufficient. Now it is given that

$$a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H.$$

We are to prove that H is a subgroup of G .

Existence of Identity. We have

$$\begin{aligned} a \in H, a \in H &\Rightarrow aa^{-1} \in H && [\text{by the given condition}] \\ &\Rightarrow e \in H. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the identity e is an element of H .

Existence of Inverse. Let a be any element of H . Then by the given condition, we have $e \in H, a \in H \Rightarrow ea^{-1} \in H$
 $\rightarrow a^{-1} \in H.$

Thus each element of H possesses inverse.

Closure Property. Let $a, b \in H$. Then as shown above $b \in H \Rightarrow b^{-1} \in H$. Therefore applying the given condition, we have $a \in H, b^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow a(b^{-1})^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$.

Associativity. The elements of H are also the elements of G . The composition in G is associative. Therefore it must also be associative in H .

Hence H itself is a group for the composition in G . Therefore H is a subgroup of G .

Note. Had we denoted the composition in G additively, the statement of the above theorem would have been

$$a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow a - b \in H.$$

An Important Remark. The above theorem gives us a very important characterization of a subgroup. Whenever we are required to show that a non-empty subset H of a group G is a subgroup of G , we should make use of this theorem. Thus we should take any two arbitrary elements $a, b \in H$ and we should try to show that $ab^{-1} \in H$. If we are able to show that $a, b \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$, it is sufficient to conclude that H is a subgroup of G .

Cor. 1. A necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty subset H of a group G to be a subgroup is that $HH^{-1} \subseteq H$.

Proof. The condition is necessary. It is given that H is a subgroup of G . Let a, b^{-1} be any arbitrary element of HH^{-1} . Then $a \in H, b \in H$.

Since H itself is a group, therefore $b \in H \Rightarrow b^{-1} \in H$.

Thus $a \in H, b^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$, by closure property.

$\therefore ab^{-1} \in HH^{-1} \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$.

Hence $HH^{-1} \subseteq H$.

The condition is sufficient. It is given that $HH^{-1} \subseteq H$.

Let $a, b \in H$. Then $ab^{-1} \in HH^{-1}$. Since $HH^{-1} \subseteq H$, therefore $ab^{-1} \in HH^{-1} \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$. Thus $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$. Hence H is a subgroup of G .

Cor. 2. A necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty subset H of a group G to be a subgroup is that $HH^{-1} = H$.

Proof. The condition is necessary. Suppose H is a sub-group of G . Then by Cor. 1, $HH^{-1} \subseteq H$.

Now H is a sub-group of G . Therefore $e \in H$. If h is any arbitrary element of H , then

$$h = he = he^{-1} \in HH^{-1} \quad [\because h \in H, e^{-1} \in H^{-1}]$$

$$\therefore H \subseteq HH^{-1}.$$

Hence $HH^{-1} = H$.

The condition is sufficient. It is given that $HH^{-1} = H$.

$$\therefore HH^{-1} \subseteq H.$$

Hence by Cor. 1, H is a subgroup of G .

Theorem 3. (Criterion in the case of finite complexes).

A necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty finite subset H of a group G (the composition in G being denoted multiplicatively) to be a sub-group is that H must be closed with respect to multiplication i.e., $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$.

(Kerala 1970; Madurai 78; Meerut 82; Rajasthan 77; Sagar 77; Kanpur 87; Banaras 70)

Proof. The condition is necessary. Suppose H is a sub-group

of G . Then H must be closed with respect to multiplication i.e., the composition in G . Therefore $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$. Hence the condition is necessary.

The condition is sufficient. It is given that H is closed with respect to multiplication i.e., $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H$.

Let a be any element of H . Then by the given condition $a^2 = aa \in H, a^3 = aa^2 \in H, a^4 = aa^3 \in H$. Proceeding in this way we get $a^m \in H$ where m is any positive integer. Thus the infinite collection of elements $a, a^2, a^3, \dots, a^n, \dots$ all belong to H . But H is a finite subset of G . Therefore there must be repetitions in this collection of elements. If they are all distinct, then H will not be a finite set. Therefore for some positive integers r and s with $r > s$, we must have

$$a^r = a^s$$

$$\Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = a^s a^{-s} \quad [\because a^s \in G \Rightarrow (a^s)^{-1} \text{ i.e., } a^{-s} \in G]$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{r-s} = a^0 = e, \text{ where } e \text{ is the identity of } G.$$

$$\because r-s \text{ is a positive integer, therefore } a^{r-s} = e \in H.$$

Therefore the identity e i.e., a^0 is also an element of H .

$$\text{Now } r-s \geq 1. \text{ Therefore } r-s-1 \geq 0.$$

$$\text{We have } a^{r-s-1} a = a^{r-s} = e = aa^{r-s-1}.$$

\therefore by the definition of inverse, $a^{-1} = a^{r-s-1} \in H$. Thus each element of H possesses inverse.

Finally the elements of H are also the elements of G . Therefore the composition in H must be associative.

Hence H is a subgroup of G .

Corollary. A finite non-empty subset H of a group G is a subgroup of G iff $HH = H$.

An Important Remark. The criterion given in the above theorem 3 is valid only for finite subsets of a group G . It is not valid for infinite subsets of an infinite group G as is clear from the following examples :

Example 1. Let G be the additive group of all integers and H be the subset of G consisting of all positive integers. Obviously H is closed with respect to addition i.e., the composition in G . But H is not a subgroup of G since the identity $0 \notin H$.

Example 2. Let $G = \{\dots, 2^{-3}, 2^{-2}, 2^{-1}, 1, 2, 2^2, 2^3, \dots\}$ be the multiplicative group consisting of all integral powers of 2. Let $H = \{1, 2, 2^2, 2^3, \dots\}$. Then $H \subseteq G$ and H is closed with respect to multiplication. But H is not a subgroup of G since the inverse of 2 i.e., 2^{-1} does not belong to H .

Example 3. Let G be the multiplicative group of all non-zero rational numbers. Then $H = \{1, -1\}$ is a finite subset of G . Also H is closed with respect to multiplication. Therefore H is a subgroup of G .

Example 4. Let P_n be the symmetric group of degree n i.e., the elements of P_n are permutations of degree n . If A_n is the set of all even permutations of degree n , then $A_n \subseteq P_n$ and A_n is closed with respect to multiplication of permutations. We remember that the product of two even permutations is also an even permutation. Therefore A_n is a subgroup of P_n . Hence A_n is itself a group with respect to multiplication of permutations. A_n is called alternating group of degree n or order $\frac{n!}{2}$.

§ 25. Criterion for the product of two subgroups to be a subgroup.

Theorem 1. If H, K are two subgroups of a group G , then HK is a subgroup of G , iff $HK = KH$. (Vikram 1976; Madras 83; G.N.D.U. 90; Nagarjuna 78; Meerut 89; I.C.S. 86, 87)

Proof. Let H and K be any two subgroups of a group G . Let $HK = KH$. In order to prove that HK is a subgroup of G it is sufficient to prove that $(HK)(HK)^{-1} = HK$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } (HK)(HK)^{-1} &= (HK)(K^{-1}H^{-1}) = H(KK^{-1})H^{-1} \\ &= (HK)H^{-1} \quad [\because K \text{ is a subgroup} \Rightarrow KK^{-1} = K] \\ &= (KH)H^{-1} \quad [\because HK = KH] \\ &= K(HH^{-1}) \\ &= KH \quad [\because H \text{ is a subgroup} \Rightarrow HH^{-1} = H] \\ &= HK. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore HK = KH \Rightarrow HK$ is a subgroup of G .

Conversely suppose that HK is a subgroup.

Then $(HK)^{-1} = HK$

$$\Rightarrow K^{-1}H^{-1} = HK$$

$$\Rightarrow KH = HK$$

$[\because K \text{ is subgroup} \Rightarrow K^{-1} = K \text{ and similarly } H^{-1} = H]$

Hence the result.

Corollary. If H, K are subgroups of an abelian group G , then HK is a subgroup of G .

Proof. We know that if H, K are two subgroups of a group G then HK is a subgroup of G if and only if $HK = KH$.

Since the given group G is here abelian, therefore we have $HK = KH$. Hence HK is a subgroup of G .

§ 26. Intersection of Subgroups.

Theorem 1. *If H_1 and H_2 are two subgroups of a group G , then $H_1 \cap H_2$ is also a subgroup of G .*

(Meerut 1974; Rajasthan 75; Kumayon 77; Poona 73; Allahabad 82; Kanpur 86)

Proof. Let H_1 and H_2 be any two subgroups of G . Then $H_1 \cap H_2 \neq \emptyset$, since at least the identity element e is common to both H_1 and H_2 .

In order to prove that $H_1 \cap H_2$ is a subgroup it is sufficient to prove that $a \in H_1 \cap H_2, b \in H_1 \cap H_2 \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H_1 \cap H_2$.

Now $a \in H_1 \cap H_2 \Rightarrow a \in H_1$ and $a \in H_2$.

$b \in H_1 \cap H_2 \Rightarrow b \in H_1$ and $b \in H_2$.

But H_1, H_2 are subgroups. Therefore

$a \in H_1, b \in H_1 \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H_1$,

$a \in H_2, b \in H_2 \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H_2$.

Finally, $ab^{-1} \in H_1, ab^{-1} \in H_2 \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H_1 \cap H_2$.

Thus we have shown that

$a \in H_1 \cap H_2, b \in H_1 \cap H_2 \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H_1 \cap H_2$.

Hence $H_1 \cap H_2$ is a subgroup of G .

Theorem 2. *Arbitrary intersection of subgroups i.e., the intersection of any family of subgroups of a group is a subgroup.*

(Kerala 1970; Nagarjuna 78)

Proof. Let G be a group and let $\{H_i : i \in T\}$ be any family of subgroups of G . Here T is an index set and is such that $\forall i \in T, H_i$ is a subgroup of G .

Let $H = \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i = \{x \in G : x \in H_i, \forall i \in T\}$

$i \in T$

be the intersection of this family of subgroups of G . Then to prove that H is also a subgroup of G .

Obviously $H \neq \emptyset$, since at least the identity element e is in $H_i, \forall i \in T$.

Now let a, b be any two elements of H . Then

$a \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i \Rightarrow a \in H_i, \forall i \in T$,

$i \in T$

and $b \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i \Rightarrow b \in H_i, \forall i \in T$.

$i \in T$

But $\forall i \in T, H_i$ is a subgroup of G . Therefore

$a \in H_i, b \in H_i \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H_i, \forall i \in T$.

Consequently $ab^{-1} \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i$.

$i \in T$

Thus we have shown that $a, b \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i$.

Therefore $\bigcap_{i \in T} H_i$ is a subgroup of G .

Note 1. $H_1 \cap H_2$ is the largest subset of G which is contained in H_1 as well as in H_2 . Therefore $H_1 \cap H_2$ is the largest subgroup of G contained in H_1 and H_2 . By largest we mean that it is contained in H_1 and H_2 and contains every subgroup of G contained in both H_1 and H_2 .

Note 2. The union of two subgroups is not necessarily a subgroup. (Allahabad 1982)

For example, let G be the additive group of integers.

Then $H_1 = \{\dots, -6, -4, -2, 0, 2, 4, 6, \dots\}$ and

$H_2 = \{\dots, -12, -9, -6, -3, 0, 3, 6, 9, 12, \dots\}$

are both subgroups of G .

We have $H_1 \cup H_2 = \{\dots, -4, -3, -2, 0, 2, 3, 4, 6, \dots\}$.

Obviously $H_1 \cup H_2$ is not closed with respect to addition as $2 \in H_1 \cup H_2$, $3 \in H_1 \cup H_2$ but $2+3$ i.e., $5 \notin H_1 \cup H_2$. Therefore $H_1 \cup H_2$ is not a subgroup of G .

However $H_1 \cap H_2 = \{\dots, -18, -12, -6, 0, 6, 12, 18, \dots\}$ is a subgroup of G .

If we take the subgroup $H_3 = \{\dots, -8, -4, 0, 4, 8, \dots\}$ of G , then $H_1 \cup H_3 = H_1$ and H_1 is a subgroup of G . We shall prove in one of the following examples that the union of two subgroups is a subgroup iff one is contained in the other.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let G be the additive group of integers. Then prove that the set of all multiples of integers by a fixed integer m is a subgroup of G .

Solution. We have $G = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ is the additive group of integers. Let m be any fixed integer. Let $H = \{\dots, -3m, -2m, -m, 0, m, 2m, 3m, \dots\}$. Then $H \subseteq G$. To prove that H is a subgroup of G . Let $a = rm$ and $b = sm$ be any two elements of H where r and s are some integers. The inverse of sm in G is $(-s)m$ i.e., $-b = (-s)m$.

We have $a - b = rm + (-s)m = (r-s)m \in H$ since $r-s$ is also some integer. Thus $a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow a - b \in H$. Hence H is a subgroup of G .

Ex. 2. Let a be an element of a group G . The set $H = \{a^n : n \in \mathbb{I}\}$ of all integral powers of a is a subgroup of G .

Solution. We have $a \in G$. To prove that

$H = \{\dots, a^{-2}, a^{-1}, a^0, a^1, a^2, a^3, \dots\}$ is a subgroup of G .

Let a^r, a^s be any two elements of H , where r and s are some integers. The inverse of a^r in G is a^{-r} . Now

$a^r (a^s)^{-1} = a^r a^{-s} = a^{r-s} \in H$ since $r-s$ is also some integer.

Therefore H is a subgroup of G .

Note. If G is a group and $a \in G$, then the subgroup $H = \{a^n : n \in \mathbb{I}\}$ of G is called the subgroup of G generated by a .

Illustration. Let G be the multiplicative group of positive rational numbers. We have $3 \in G$. Obviously

$H = \{\dots, 3^{-2}, 3^{-1}, 3^0, 3^1, 3^2, 3^3, \dots\}$ is a subgroup of G .

Ex. 3. Let G be the set of all ordered pairs (a, b) of real numbers for which $a \neq 0$. Let a binary operation \times on G be defined by the formula

$$(a, b) \times (c, d) = (ac, bc + d).$$

Show that (G, \times) is a non-abelian group.

Does the subset H of all those elements of G which are of the form $(1, b)$ form a subgroup of G ? (Madras 1974; Rajasthan 69)

Solution. For the first part of the question see example 7 on page 65. The inverse of the element (a, b) of G has been found to be $(\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a})$. Thus $(a, b)^{-1} = (\frac{1}{a}, -\frac{b}{a})$.

Now we are to see whether H is a subgroup of G or not. Obviously H is a non-empty subset of G . Let $(1, b)$ and $(1, c)$ be any two elements of H . Then

$$(1, b) \times (1, c)^{-1} = (1, b) \times \left(\frac{1}{1}, -\frac{c}{1}\right) = (1, b) \times (1, -c) = (1, b-c)$$

[by def. of the operation \times on G]

But $(1, b-c)$ is definitely an element of H . Thus

$$(1, b), (1, c) \in H \Rightarrow (1, b) \times (1, c)^{-1} \in H.$$

Hence H is a subgroup of G .

Ex. 4. Let H be a subgroup of a group G and define

$$T = \{x \in G : xH = Hx\}.$$

Prove that T is a subgroup of G .

(Meerut 1986)

Solution Let $x_1, x_2 \in T$. Then $x_1H = Hx_1, x_2H = Hx_2$.

First we show that $x_2^{-1} \in T$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } x_2H &= Hx_2 \Rightarrow x_2^{-1}(x_2H)x_2^{-1} = x_2^{-1}(Hx_2)x_2^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow Hx_2^{-1} = x_2^{-1}H \Rightarrow x_2^{-1} \in T. \end{aligned}$$

Now we shall show that $x_1 x_2^{-1} \in T$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } (x_1 x_2^{-1}) H &= x_1 (x_2^{-1} H) = x_1 (H x_2^{-1}) \\ &= (x_1 H) x_2^{-1} = (H x_1) x_2^{-1} = H (x_1 x_2^{-1}).\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x_1 x_2^{-1} \in T.$$

Thus $x_1, x_2 \in T \Rightarrow x_1 x_2^{-1} \in T$. Hence T is a subgroup of G .

Ex. 5. Prove that those elements of a group G which commute with the square of a given element b of G form a subgroup H of G and those which commute with b itself form a subgroup of H .

(Poona 1973)

Solution. Let $H = \{x \in G : x b^2 = b^2 x\}$. Then to prove that H is a subgroup of G . We see that H is not empty because $e b^2 = b^2 e = e \in H$.

Now let $x_1, x_2 \in H$. Then $x_1 b^2 = b^2 x_1$ and $x_2 b^2 = b^2 x_2$.

First we shall show that $x_2^{-1} \in H$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}x_2 b^2 &= b^2 x_2 \Rightarrow x_2^{-1} (x_2 b^2) x_2^{-1} = x_2^{-1} (b^2 x_2) x_2^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow b^2 x_2^{-1} = x_2^{-1} b^2 \Rightarrow x_2^{-1} \in H.\end{aligned}$$

Now we shall show that $x_1 x_2^{-1} \in H$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } x_1 x_2^{-1} b^2 &= x_1 b^2 x_2^{-1} & [\because b^2 x_2^{-1} = x_2^{-1} b^2] \\ &= b^2 x_1 x_2^{-1} & [\because x_1 b^2 = b^2 x_1]\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x_1 x_2^{-1} \in H.$$

Thus $x_1, x_2 \in H \Rightarrow x_1 x_2^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow H$ is a subgroup of G .

Let $N = \{y \in G : y b = b y\}$. We have $y b = b y \Rightarrow (y b) b = (b y) b$
 $\Rightarrow y b^2 = b (y b) \Rightarrow y b^2 = b (b y) \Rightarrow y b^2 = b^2 y$.

Thus $y \in N \Rightarrow y \in H$. Therefore $N \subseteq H$.

Now to prove that N is a subgroup of H . Obviously N is not empty since at least $e \in N$.

Let $y_1, y_2 \in N$. Then $y_1 b = b y_1$ and $y_2 b = b y_2$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } y_2 b &= b y_2 \Rightarrow y_2^{-1} (y_2 b) y_2^{-1} = y_2^{-1} (b y_2) y_2^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow b y_2^{-1} = y_2^{-1} b.\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Now } y_1 y_2^{-1} b = y_1 b y_2^{-1} = b y_1 y_2^{-1}.$$

$$\therefore y_1 y_2^{-1} \in N.$$

Thus $y_1, y_2 \in N \Rightarrow y_1 y_2^{-1} \in N$. Hence N is a subgroup of H .

Ex. 6. Show that the union of two subgroups is a subgroup if and only if one is contained in the other.

(Rajasthan 1976; Allahabad 82; Madras 83)

Solution. Suppose H_1 and H_2 are two subgroups of a group G . Let $H_1 \subseteq H_2$ or $H_2 \subseteq H_1$. Then $H_1 \cup H_2 = H_2$ or H_1 . But H_1, H_2 are subgroups and therefore $H_1 \cup H_2$ is also a subgroup.

Conversely suppose $H_1 \cup H_2$ is a subgroup. To prove that $H_1 \subseteq H_2$ or $H_2 \subseteq H_1$.

Let us assume that H_1 is not a subset of H_2 and H_2 is also not a subset of H_1 .

Now H_1 is not a subset of $H_2 \Rightarrow \exists a \in H_1$ and $a \notin H_2$... (1)

and H_2 is not a subset of $H_1 \Rightarrow \exists b \in H_2$ and $b \notin H_1$ (2)

From (1) and (2), we have $a \in H_1 \cup H_2$ and $b \in H_1 \cup H_2$.

Since $H_1 \cup H_2$ is a subgroup, therefore $ab=c$ (say) is also an element of $H_1 \cup H_2$.

But $ab=c \in H_1 \cup H_2 \Rightarrow ab=c \in H_1$ or H_2 .

Suppose $ab=c \in H_1$.

Then $b=a^{-1}c \in H_1$

[$\because H_1$ is a subgroup,
therefore $a \in H_1 \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in H_1$]

But from (2), we have $b \notin H_1$. Thus we get a contradiction.

Again suppose $ab=c \in H_2$.

Then $a=cb^{-1} \in H_2$

[$\because H_2$ is a subgroup,
therefore $b \in H_2 \Rightarrow b^{-1} \in H_2$]

But from (1), we have $a \notin H_2$. Thus here also we get a contradiction.

Hence either $H_1 \subseteq H_2$ or $H_2 \subseteq H_1$.

Ex. 7. Let G be the multiplicative group of all positive real numbers and R the additive group of all real numbers. Is G a sub-group of R ?
(Gujrat 1970)

Solution. There is no doubt that the set G of all positive real numbers is a subset of the set R of all real numbers. But the group G is not a subgroup of the group R . The reason is that the composition in G is different from the composition in R .

Ex. 8. (i) Can an abelian group have a non-abelian sub-group ?

(Nagarjuna 1979, 80)

(ii) Can a non-abelian group have an abelian sub-group ?

(Nagarjuna 1979)

(iii) Can a non-abelian group have a non-abelian sub-group ?

(Nagarjuna 1980)

Solution. (i) Every sub-group of an abelian group is abelian. If G is an abelian group and H is a sub-group of G , then the operation on H is commutative because it is already commutative in G and H is a subset of G . Hence an abelian group cannot have a non-abelian sub-group.

(ii) A non-abelian group can have an abelian sub-group. For example the symmetric group P_3 of permutations of degree 3 is non-abelian while its sub-group A_3 is abelian.

(iii) A non-abelian group can have a non-abelian sub-group. For example P_4 is a non-abelian group and its sub-group A_4 is also non-abelian.

Exercises

1. (i) Define a subgroup. Give examples. (Meerut 1975)
- (ii) What is the difference between a complex and a sub-group of a group? (Meerut 1986)

2. Show that a necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty subset H of a finite group G to be a sub-group is that

$$a \in H, b \in H \Rightarrow ab \in H. \quad (\text{Banaras 1971})$$

3. (i) Define alternating group. Show that the alternating group A_n is a subgroup of the symmetric group S_n of the permutations over n objects. Write down all the proper subgroups of S_3 . (Gorakhpur 1970)

Ans. $\{I, (ab)\}, \{I, (bc)\}, \{I, (ca)\}, \{I, (abc), (acb)\}$.

- (ii) Give an example of a non-abelian group G which has the property that every proper subgroup of G is abelian. (Meerut 1980)

4. H is a finite non-empty subset of a group G and is closed with respect to the group operation. Prove that H is a subgroup of G . Show also, by means of an example, that the above statement is not necessarily true when H is an infinite subset of G . (Kerala 1972; Marathwada 72)

5. Verify the following statements for being true or false. In case a statement is false, write the corresponding correct statement.

(i) A non-empty subset H of a group G , which is closed under the binary composition in G is a subgroup of G .

(ii) If G is a group and H is a non-empty subset of G , then H will be a subgroup of G if $H^2 = H$. (Meerut 1976)

Ans. (i) False; (ii) False.

6. If G is a group, the centre of G , Z is defined by

$$Z = \{z \in G : zx = xz \ \forall \ x \in G\}.$$

Prove that Z is a subgroup of G .

Or

Show that the elements in a group G which commute with every element of G form a sub-group of G . (Meerut 1981)

7. If $a \in G$ we define $N(a) = \{x \in G : xa = ax\}$.

Show that $N(a)$ is a subgroup of G .

(Punjab 1970; Meerut 81; Delhi 70)

8. Let G be a group, H a subgroup of G . Let for $x \in G$,

$$xHx^{-1} = \{xhx^{-1} : h \in H\}.$$

Prove that xHx^{-1} is a subgroup of G .

(Meerut 1979)

9. Show that the elements of finite order in any commutative group G form a subgroup of G .

(Allahabad 1983)

10. Show by means of examples that the union of two subgroups may or may not be a subgroup.

(Rajasthan 1976)

11. Show that the integral multiples of 5 form a subgroup of the additive group of integers.

(Meerut 1973)

12. Let A and B be subgroups of a group G and let AB be the subset of G consisting of all elements of the form ab , where a is in A and b is in B . Then

(i) Show by considering the subgroups of the group of permutations of three elements, or otherwise, that AB need not be a subgroup of G .

(ii) Show that AB is a subgroup of G if and only if $AB = BA$.

(Gujrat 1971)

13. Show that the 24 permutations on 4 symbols form a group with respect to permutation multiplication. Write down three proper subgroups of this group.

(Kanpur 1970)

14. Show that all those elements of an abelian group G which satisfy the relation $a^2 = e$ constitute a subgroup of G .

15. Show that a group can never be expressed as the union of two of its proper subgroups.

(Poona 1973)

16. Let the mapping π_{ab} , for a, b real numbers, map the reals into the reals by the rule, $\pi_{ab}(x) = ax + b$.

Let $G = \{\pi_{ab} : a \neq 0\}$. Prove that G is a group under the composition of product of mappings. Find the formula for $\pi_{ab} \pi_{cd}$.

Let $H = \{\pi_{ab} \in G : a \text{ is rational}\}$. Show that H is a subgroup of G .

(I.A.S. 1973)

17. Consider the set

$$S = \left\{ \frac{a}{2^n} : a \text{ is any integer, } n \text{ is a fixed integer } \geq 0 \right\}$$

Show that S is a subgroup of the additive group of rational numbers and that S contains the additive group of integers.

18. Let A be any non-empty set and $x \in A$ be a fixed element. Let $T_x = \{\sigma \mid \sigma : A \rightarrow A \text{ is a permutation and } \sigma(x) = x\}$. Show that T_x is a subgroup of the group of all permutations of A . (Meerut 80)

§ 27. Cosets. We shall now introduce the very important concept of right and left cosets of any subgroup. These are also known as residue classes modulo the subgroup. Cosets of a subgroup are only special types of complexes.

Definition. Suppose G is a group and H is any subgroup of G . Let a be any element of G . Then the set $Ha = \{ha : h \in H\}$ is called a right coset of H in G generated by a . Similarly the set $aH = \{ah : h \in H\}$ is called a left coset of H in G generated by a .

(Meerut 1972; Kumayon 77)

Obviously Ha and aH are both subsets of G .

If e is the identity element of G , then $He = H = eH$. Therefore H itself is a right as well as a left coset.

Since H is a subgroup of G , therefore $e \in H$. So if Ha is a right coset of H in G , then ea is an element of Ha . Thus we see that $a \in Ha$. Therefore if Ha is any right coset, then at least the element $a \in Ha$. Consequently no right coset can be empty. Similarly a is an element of the left coset aH . Therefore no left coset can be empty.

If the group G is abelian, then we have $ah = ha \forall h \in H$. Therefore the right coset Ha will be equal to the corresponding left coset aH . However if the group G is not abelian, then we may have $aH = Ha$ or $aH \neq Ha$.

Note. If the composition in the group G has been denoted additively, then the right coset of H in G generated by a is defined as

$$H + a = \{h + a : h \in H\}.$$

Similarly the left coset $a + H = \{a + h : h \in H\}$.

Example 1. (Rajasthan 1978) Let G be the additive group of integers i.e., $G = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$.

Let H be the subgroup of G obtained on multiplying each element of G by 3. Then $H = \{\dots, -9, -6, -3, 0, 3, 6, 9, \dots\}$.

Since the group G is abelian any right coset will be equal to the corresponding left coset. Let us form the right cosets of H in G . We have $0 \in G$ and

$$H = H + 0 = \{\dots, -9, -6, -3, 0, 3, 6, 9, \dots\}.$$

Again $1 \in G$ and $H + 1 = \{\dots, -8, -5, -2, 1, 4, 7, 10, \dots\}$.

Then $2 \in G$ and $H + 2 = \{\dots, -7, -4, -1, 2, 5, 8, 11, \dots\}$.

We see that the right cosets H , $H + 1$ and $H + 2$ are all distinct and moreover these are disjoint *i.e.*, have no element common.

Now $3 \in G$ and $H + 3 = \{\dots, -6, -3, 0, 3, 6, 9, 12, \dots\}$.

We see that $H + 3 = H$. Also we observe that $3 \in H$.

Again $4 \in G$ and $H + 4 = \{\dots, -5, -2, 1, 4, 7, 10, 13, \dots\}$.

We see that $H + 4 = H + 1$. Also we observe that $4 \in H + 1$.

Similarly the right coset $H + 5$ coincides with $H + 2$, $H + 6$ with H , $H + (-1)$ with $H + 2$, $H + (-2)$ with $H + 1$ and so on.

Thus we get only three distinct right cosets *i.e.*, H , $H + 1$, $H + 2$. Obviously $G = H \cup (H + 1) \cup (H + 2)$.

Example 2. Let G be the group of all permutations of degree 3 on three symbols 1, 2, 3. Then the elements of G are the permutations $f_1 = (1)$, $f_2 = (12)$, $f_3 = (23)$, $f_4 = (31)$, $f_5 = (123)$, $f_6 = (132)$.

Let H be the subgroup of G consisting of the permutations f_1 and f_3 . Then $H = \{f_1, f_3\}$. Let us form the right cosets of H in G .

$Hf_1 = H$, since f_1 is the identity element of G .

$$Hf_2 = \{f_1f_2, f_3f_2\} = \{f_2, f_1\} = H.$$

$$Hf_5 = \{f_1f_5, f_3f_5\} = \{f_5, f_6\}. \quad [\text{Note that } f_2f_3 = f_5]$$

$$Hf_4 = \{f_1f_4, f_3f_4\} = \{f_4, f_6\}.$$

$$Hf_5 = \{f_1f_5, f_3f_5\} = \{f_5, f_6\}. \quad [\text{Note that } Hf_4 = Hf_5]$$

$$Hf_6 = \{f_1f_6, f_3f_6\} = \{f_6, f_2\} = Hf_2.$$

Thus we get only three distinct right cosets *i.e.*, H , Hf_2 , Hf_4 . Obviously $G = H \cup (Hf_2) \cup (Hf_4)$.

Also note that the number of elements in each right coset is the same as in H .

$$\text{The left coset } f_2H = \{f_2f_1, f_2f_3\} = \{f_2, f_5\}.$$

$$\text{We see that } Hf_2 \neq f_2H.$$

Forming all the left cosets of H in G , we can see that we shall get only three distinct left cosets.

Note. Suppose in example 2, we take $H = \{f_1, f_5, f_6\}$ which is obviously a subgroup of G . Of course H is nothing but the

alternating group A_3 . There will be only two distinct right cosets of H in G and each of them will contain three elements. It will be interesting to check that in the case of this subgroup of G each right coset is equal to the corresponding left coset.

Theorem 1. If H is any subgroup of G and $h \in H$, then $Hh = H = hH$. [Kanpur 1987]

Proof. Let $h \in H$. Then to prove that $Hh = H$. Suppose h' is any arbitrary element of H . Then $h'h$ is an arbitrary element of Hh .

Since H is a subgroup, we have

$$h' \in H, h \in H \Rightarrow h'h \in H.$$

Thus every element of Hh is also an element of H . Hence

$$Hh \subseteq H.$$

$$\text{Again } h' = h'(h^{-1}h)$$

$$= (h'h^{-1})h$$

$$[\because h^{-1}h = e]$$

$$\in Hh [\because h \in H \Rightarrow h^{-1} \in H \text{ and}$$

$$h' \in H, h^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow h'h^{-1} \in H].$$

Thus every element h' of H is also an element of Hh . Hence $H \subseteq Hh$.

$$\text{Finally } Hh \subseteq H \text{ and } H \subseteq Hh \Rightarrow Hh = H.$$

Similarly we can prove that $hH = H$.

Note. If H is any subgroup of G and $a \in G$, then $a \in Ha$. Now suppose $Ha = H$. Then each element of Ha belongs to H . Therefore $a \in H$. Hence $Ha = H \Rightarrow a \in H$.

$$\text{Similarly } aH = H \Rightarrow a \in H.$$

Theorem 2. If a, b are any two elements of a group G and H any subgroup of G , then

$$Ha = Hb \Leftrightarrow ab^{-1} \in H \text{ and } aH = bH \Leftrightarrow a^{-1}b \in H.$$

(Kanpur 1987; Patna 87)

Proof. Since a is an element of Ha , therefore

$$Ha = Hb \Rightarrow a \in Hb \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in (Hb)b^{-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H(bb^{-1}) \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in He \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H.$$

$$\text{Conversely, } ab^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow Hab^{-1} = H [\because h \in H \Rightarrow Hh = H]$$

$$\Rightarrow Hab^{-1}b = Hb$$

$$\Rightarrow Hae = Hb \Rightarrow Ha = Hb.$$

$$\text{Similarly we can prove that } aH = bH \Leftrightarrow a^{-1}b \in H.$$

Note. H is a subgroup. Therefore if $ab^{-1} \in H$, then $(ab^{-1})^{-1}$ i.e., $(b^{-1})^{-1}a^{-1}$ i.e., $ba^{-1} \in H$. Similarly if $a^{-1}b \in H$, then also $b^{-1}a \in H$.

Theorem 3. If a, b are any two elements of a group G and H any subgroup of G , then

$$a \in Hb \Leftrightarrow Ha = Hb \text{ and } a \in bH \Leftrightarrow aH = bH.$$

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned} a \in Hb &\Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in Hbb^{-1} \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in He \\ &\Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow Hab^{-1} = H \\ &\Rightarrow Hab^{-1}b = Hb \Rightarrow Hae = Hb \Rightarrow Ha = Hb. \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, let $Ha = Hb$. Since $a \in Ha$, therefore $a \in Hb$.

Similarly we can prove that $a \in bH \Leftrightarrow aH = bH$.

Theorem 4. Any two right (left) cosets of a subgroup are either disjoint or identical. (Patna 1987)

Proof. Suppose H is a subgroup of a group G and let Ha and Hb be two right cosets of H in G . Suppose Ha and Hb are not disjoint. Then there exists at least one element, say, c such that $c \in Ha$ and $c \in Hb$. Let $c = h_1a$ and $c = h_2b$, where $h_1, h_2 \in H$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then} \quad & h_1a = h_2b \\ \text{or} \quad & h_1^{-1}h_1a = h_1^{-1}h_2b \\ \text{or} \quad & ea = (h_1^{-1}h_2)b \\ \text{or} \quad & a = (h_1^{-1}h_2)b. \end{aligned}$$

Since H is a subgroup, therefore $h_1^{-1}h_2 \in H$. Let $h_1^{-1}h_2 = h_3$. Then $a = h_3b$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now} \quad Ha &= Hh_3b = (Hh_3)b \\ &= Hb. \end{aligned} \quad [\because h_3 \in H \Rightarrow Hh_3 = H]$$

Therefore the two right cosets are identical if they are not disjoint. Thus either $Ha \cap Hb = \emptyset$ or $Ha = Hb$.

Similarly we can prove that either $aH \cap bH = \emptyset$ or $aH = bH$.

Theorem 5. If H is a subgroup of a group G , then G is equal to the union of all right cosets of H in G i.e.,

$G = H \cup Ha \cup Hb \cup Hc \dots$, where a, b, c, \dots are elements of G .

Proof. G is a group. Therefore each element of any right coset of H in G is an element of G . Hence the union of all right cosets of H in G is a subset of G .

Also if x is any element of G , then $x \in Hx$. Therefore x belongs to the union of all right cosets of H in G . Hence G is a subset of the union of all right cosets of H in G .

Therefore G is equal to the union of all right cosets of H in G . Symbolically, we have $G = \bigcup_{x \in G} Hx$.

$$x \in G$$

Similarly we can prove that G is also equal to the union of all left cosets of H in G .

Right coset Decomposition of a group. Suppose H is a subgroup of a group G . No right coset of H in G is empty. Any two right cosets of H in G are either disjoint or identical. The union

of all right cosets of H in G is equal to G . Therefore the set of all right cosets of H in G gives us a partition of G .

This partition is called the right coset decomposition of G with respect to the subgroup H . To obtain distinct members of this partition we should proceed as follows :

First of all H itself is a right coset. If there is an element $a \in G$ such that $a \notin H$, then Ha will be another distinct right coset. Again if there is an element $b \in G$ such that $b \notin H$ and also $b \notin Ha$, then Hb will be another distinct right coset. Proceeding in this way we can get all distinct right cosets of H in G . Then we shall have $G = H \cup Ha \cup Hb \cup Hc \dots$, where a, b, c, \dots are elements of G so chosen that all right cosets are distinct.

Similarly we can also obtain left coset decomposition of G .

Theorem 6. *If H is a subgroup of G , there is a one-to-one correspondence between any two right cosets of H in G .*

(Patna 1986)

Proof. Let $a, b \in G$. Then Ha and Hb are any two right cosets of H in G . Let $f: Ha \rightarrow Hb$ be defined by

$$f(ha) = hb \quad \forall h \in H.$$

The function f is one-one. If $h_1, h_2 \in H$, then $h_1a, h_2a \in Ha$. Also by def. of f , we have $f(h_1a) = h_1b$ and $f(h_2a) = h_2b$.

Now

$$f(h_1a) = f(h_2a)$$

$$\Rightarrow h_1b = h_2b$$

$$\Rightarrow h_1 = h_2 \quad [\text{by right cancellation law in } G]$$

$$\Rightarrow h_1a = h_2a.$$

$\therefore f$ is one-one since only equal elements of Ha can have the same image in Hb .

The function f is onto. Let $h'b$ be any arbitrary element of Hb . Then $h'b \in Hb \Rightarrow h' \in H \Rightarrow h'a \in Ha$. Now $f(h'a) = h'b$, by definition of f . Thus $h'b \in Hb \Rightarrow$ that there exists $h'a \in Ha$ such that $f(h'a) = h'b$. Therefore f is onto Hb .

Hence the result.

Similarly it can be proved that there is a 1-1 correspondence between any two left cosets of H in G .

(Kerala 1970)

Note. H itself is a right as well as a left coset. Therefore if H is a finite subgroup of G , then the number of elements in H i.e., $o(H)$ is equal to the number of elements in any coset of H in G (right or left).

If H is an infinite subgroup of G , then we say that any two cosets of H in G have the same Cardinal number.

Theorem 7. *If H is a subgroup of G , then there is a one-to-one correspondence between the set of left cosets of H in G and the set of right cosets of H in G . (Kumayon 1977; Kanpur 80; Meerut 80)*

Proof. Let us define a function f from the set of left cosets of H in G to the set of right cosets of H in G by the formula

$$f(aH) = Ha^{-1} \quad \forall a \in G.$$

First we shall show that this function f is well-defined. If aH is a left coset, then obviously Ha^{-1} is a right coset. Further if aH and bH represent the same left coset, then we are to show that $f(aH) = f(bH)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } aH = bH &\Rightarrow a^{-1}b \in H && [\text{see theorem 2, page 154}] \\ &\Rightarrow Ha^{-1}b = H && [\because h \in H \Rightarrow Hh = H] \\ &\Rightarrow Ha^{-1}bb^{-1} = Hb^{-1} \Rightarrow Ha^{-1} = Hb^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow f(aH) = f(bH). && [\because f(aH) = Ha^{-1} \text{ etc.}] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$ is well-defined.

Now to show that f is one-one. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(aH) &= f(bH) \\ &\Rightarrow Ha^{-1} = Hb^{-1} && [\text{by def. of } f] \\ &\Rightarrow a^{-1}(b^{-1})^{-1} \in H && [\text{See theorem 2, page 154}] \\ &\Rightarrow a^{-1}b \in H \\ &\Rightarrow a^{-1}bH = H && [\because h \in H \Rightarrow hH = H] \\ &\Rightarrow aa^{-1}bH = aH \Rightarrow bH = aH \Rightarrow aH = bH. \end{aligned}$$

Hence f is one-one.

Now to show that f is onto the set of right cosets. Let Ha be any right coset. Then $a^{-1}H$ is a left coset. Also

$$\begin{aligned} f(a^{-1}H) &= H(a^{-1})^{-1} && [\text{by def. of } f] \\ &= Ha. \end{aligned}$$

Thus each right coset Ha is the f -image of the left coset $a^{-1}H$. Hence f is onto.

Note. From this theorem we conclude that if the number of distinct right cosets of H in G is finite, then it will also be equal to the number of distinct left cosets of H in G . It should be noted that in an infinite group G , it is possible that the number of distinct right cosets is finite.

Index of a subgroup in a group. Definition. *If H is a subgroup of a group G , the number of distinct right (left) cosets of H in G is called the index of H in G and is denoted by $[G : H]$ or by $i_G(H)$.*

[Punjab 1966; Banaras 63; Meerut 83]

§ 28. Relation of congruence modulo a subgroup H in a group G .

Suppose H is a subgroup of a group G . If the element a of G belongs to the right coset Hb i.e., if $a \in Hb$ i.e., if $ab^{-1} \in H$, then we say that a is congruent to b modulo H .

Definition. Let H be a subgroup of a group G . For $a, b \in G$ we say that a is congruent to b mod H if and only if $ab^{-1} \in H$. Symbolically, we write

$$a \equiv b \pmod{H} \text{ if and only if } ab^{-1} \in H.$$

Theorem. The relation of congruency in a group G defined by $a \equiv b \pmod{H}$ iff $ab^{-1} \in H$ is an equivalence relation.

(I.A.S. 1970; Agra 70; Lucknow 69; Utkal 70)

Proof. Reflexivity. Let a be any element of G . Then $aa^{-1} = e \in H$ since H is a subgroup of G . Therefore $a \equiv a \pmod{H}$ for all $a \in G$. Hence the relation is reflexive.

Symmetry. We have $a \equiv b \pmod{H} \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$
 $\Rightarrow (ab^{-1})^{-1} \in H \quad [\because H \text{ is a subgroup of } G]$
 $\Rightarrow ba^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow b \equiv a \pmod{H}.$

Therefore the relation is symmetric.

Transitivity. Let $a \equiv b \pmod{H}$ and $b \equiv c \pmod{H}$. Then $ab^{-1} \in H$ and $bc^{-1} \in H$. But H is a subgroup of G and thus H must be closed with respect to the composition in G . Therefore

$$(ab^{-1})(bc^{-1}) \in H \Rightarrow a(b^{-1}b)c^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow aec^{-1} \in H \\ \Rightarrow ac^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow a \equiv c \pmod{H}.$$

Hence the relation is transitive.

Therefore the relation congruence mod H is an equivalence relation in G . Therefore it will partition G into disjoint equivalence classes. If \bar{a} or $[a]$ is the equivalence class corresponding to $a \in G$, then we shall show that $[a] = Ha$.

By the definition of equivalence classes, we have

$$[a] = \{x \in G : x \equiv a \pmod{H}\}.$$

Let z be any arbitrary element of Ha .

$$\text{Then } z \in Ha \Rightarrow za^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow za^{-1} \in He \Rightarrow za^{-1} \in H \\ \Rightarrow z \equiv a \pmod{H} \Rightarrow z \in [a].$$

$$\therefore Ha \subseteq [a].$$

Now let y be any arbitrary element of $[a]$.

$$\text{Then } y \in [a] \Rightarrow y \equiv a \pmod{H} \\ \Rightarrow ya^{-1} \in H \\ \Rightarrow ya^{-1}a \in Ha \Rightarrow y \in Ha.$$

$$\therefore [a] \subseteq Ha.$$

$$\text{Hence } [a] = Ha.$$

Therefore the partition of G induced by this equivalence relation is nothing but the right coset decomposition of G with respect to H . No right coset of H in G will be empty. Two right cosets of H in G will be either disjoint or identical. The union of all right cosets of H in G will be equal to G .

Note. We can show that the relation in G defined by

$$a \equiv b \pmod{H} \text{ iff } a^{-1}b \in H$$

is an equivalence relation and gives us the left coset decomposition of G with respect to H .

Illustration 1. If G is the additive group of integers and H is the subgroup of G obtained on multiplying the elements of G by 5, then we have

$$G = H \cup (H+1) \cup (H+2) \cup (H+3) \cup (H+4).$$

The index of H in G is 5.

2. Let G be the group of all permutations of degree 3 on three symbols 1, 2, 3 and H be the subgroup $\{(1), (1\ 2)\}$. The number of elements in each right coset of H in G will be 2 and the number of elements in G is 6. So we shall have three distinct right cosets. It can be seen that $G = H \cup H(23) \cup H(31)$.

The left coset decomposition of G with respect to H is

$$G = H \cup (23)H \cup (31)H.$$

§ 29. Lagrange's theorem.

(I A.S. 1973, 85, 87; Allahabad 85; Kumayun 78; Poona 73; Kanpur 87; Rajasthan 77; Nagarjuna 79; Luck. 80; Madras 83; Meerut 84, 87, 88, 90; Patna 86; Garhwal 88)

The order of each subgroup of a finite group is a divisor of the order of the group.

Proof. Let G be a group of finite order n . Let H be a subgroup of G and let $o(H) = m$. Suppose h_1, h_2, \dots, h_m are the m members of H .

Let $a \in G$. Then Ha is a right coset of H in G and we have

$$Ha = \{h_1a, h_2a, \dots, h_ma\}.$$

Ha has m distinct members, since $h_ia = h_ja \Rightarrow h_i = h_j$.

Therefore each right coset of H in G has m distinct members. Any two distinct right cosets of H in G are disjoint i.e., they have no element in common. Since G is a finite group, the number of distinct right cosets of H in G will be finite, say, equal to k . The union of these k distinct right cosets of H in G is equal to G . Thus if

$$Ha_1, Ha_2, \dots, Ha_k$$

are the k distinct right cosets of H in G , then

$$G = Ha_1 \cup Ha_2 \cup \dots \cup Ha_k$$

\Rightarrow the number of elements in G = the number of elements in Ha_1 + the number of elements in Ha_2 + ... + the number of elements in Ha_k [\because two distinct right cosets are mutually disjoint]

$$\Rightarrow o(G) = km \Rightarrow n = km$$

$$\Rightarrow k = \frac{n}{m} \Rightarrow m \text{ is a divisor of } n$$

$$\Rightarrow o(H) \text{ is a divisor of } o(G).$$

Hence the theorem.

Note 1. k is the index of H in G . We have

$$m = n/k. \text{ Thus } k \text{ is a divisor of } n.$$

Therefore the index of every subgroup of a finite group is a divisor of the order of the group.

Note 2. Very Important. If H is a subgroup of a finite group G , then the index of H in G = the number of distinct right (or left) cosets of H in $G = \frac{o(G)}{o(H)}$.

Cor. 1. The order of every element of a finite group is a divisor of the order of the group.

(G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1985; Patna 87; Allahabad 82; Meerut 76)

Proof. Suppose G is a finite group of order n . Let $a \in G$ and let $o(a) = m$. To prove that m is a divisor of n .

Let $H = \{\dots, a^{-3}, a^{-2}, a^{-1}, a^0, a^1, a^2, a^3, \dots\}$ be the subset of G consisting of all integral powers of a . Then we know that H is a subgroup of G . We shall show that H contains only m distinct elements and that they are $a, a^2, a^3, \dots, a^m = e = a^0$.

Let $1 \leq r \leq m, 1 \leq s \leq m$ and $r > s$.

$$\text{Then } a^r = a^s \Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = a^s a^{-s} \Rightarrow a^{r-s} = a^0 \Rightarrow a^{r-s} = e.$$

Thus there exists a positive integer $r-s$ less than m such that $a^{r-s} = e$. But m is the least positive integer such that $a^m = e$. Therefore $a^r \neq a^s$. Therefore $a, a^2, a^3, \dots, a^m = a^0 = e$ are all distinct elements of H .

Now suppose a^t is any element of H , where t is any integer. By division algorithm, we have

$$t = mp + q \text{ where } p \text{ and } q \text{ are some integers and } 0 \leq q < m.$$

[Note. We can write $t/m = p + q/m$].

We have $a^t = a^{mp+q} = a^{mp} a^q = (a^m)^p a^q = e a^q = a^q$. Since $0 \leq q < m$, therefore a^q is one of the m elements $a, a^2, \dots, a^m = a^0$. Hence H has only m distinct elements.

Thus order of H is m . By Lagrange's theorem m is a divisor of n .

Cor. 2. If G is a finite group of order n and $a \in G$, then $a^n = e$.
(Madras 1970; Meerut 70; Allahabad 82)

Proof. In a finite group, the order of each element is finite. Let $o(a) = m$. The subset H of G consisting of all integral powers of a is a subgroup of G and the order of H is m . By Lagrange's theorem m is a divisor of n . Let $k = \frac{n}{m}$. Then $n = mk$.

Now $a^n = a^{mk} = (a^m)^k = e^k = e$ [$\because o(a) = m \Rightarrow a^m = e$]
 $= e$.

Note. Lagrange's theorem has very important applications. Suppose G is a finite group of order n . If m is not a divisor of n , then there can be no subgroup of G of order m . Thus if G is a group of order 6, then there can be no subgroup of G of order 5 or 4. Similarly if G is a group of prime order p , then G can have no proper subgroups. For suppose H is a proper subgroup of G and $o(H) = m$. Then $1 < m < p$. By Lagrange's theorem, m must be a divisor of p . But if $1 < m < p$ and p is prime, then m cannot divide p . So a group of prime order can have no proper subgroups.

However the converse of Lagrange's theorem is not true.

(Kanpur 1969)

If m is a divisor of n , then it is not necessary that G must have a subgroup of order m . For example the alternating group A_4 of degree 4 is of order 12. It can be seen that there is no subgroup of A_4 of order 6, though 6 is a divisor of 12.

Cor. 3. Euler's Theorem. If n is a positive integer and a is any integer relatively prime to n , then

$$a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \pmod{n},$$

where ϕ is the Euler ϕ -function.

Proof. For any integer x let $[x]$ denote the residue class of the set of integers mod n . Let $G = \{[a] : a \text{ is an integer relatively prime to } n\}$.

Then we know that with respect to multiplication of residue classes G is a group of order $\phi(n)$. The identity element of this group is the residue class $[1]$. We have

$$[a] \in G \Rightarrow [a]^{o(G)} = [1] \Rightarrow [a]^{\phi(n)} = [1]$$

$$\Rightarrow [a][a][a]\dots \text{upto } \phi(n) \text{ times} = [1]$$

$$\Rightarrow [aa\dots \text{upto } \phi(n) \text{ times}] = [1] \quad [\text{Note that } [a][b] = [ab]]$$

$$\Rightarrow [a^{\phi(n)}] = [1] \Rightarrow a^{\phi(n)} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}.$$

Cor. 4. Fermat's Theorem. *If p is a prime number and a is any integer, then $a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}$. (Allahabad 1980; Kanpur 88)*

Proof. Let G be the set of non-zero residue classes of integers modulo p . If p is a prime number, then with respect to multiplication of residue classes G is a group of order $p-1$. The identity element of this group is $[1]$.

Now suppose a is any integer.

Case 1. p is a divisor of a . In this case $[a] = [0]$ and so $[a]$ is not an element of G . But

$$p \mid a \Rightarrow p \mid a^p \Rightarrow p \mid (a^p - a) \Rightarrow a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}.$$

Case 2. p is not a divisor of a . In this case $[a] \neq [0]$ and so $[a]$ is an element of G . Therefore we have

$$[a]^{o(G)} = [1] \Rightarrow [a]^{p-1} = [1] \Rightarrow [a^{p-1}] = [1] \Rightarrow a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{p-1} - 1 \text{ is divisible by } p \Rightarrow a(a^{p-1} - 1) \text{ is divisible by } p$$

$$\Rightarrow a^p - a \text{ is divisible by } p \Rightarrow a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}.$$

§ 30. Order of the product of two subgroups of finite order.

Theorem. *Let H and K be finite subgroups of a group G .*

$$\text{Then } o(HK) = \frac{o(H)o(K)}{o(H \cap K)}.$$

(Jabalpur 1986; Meerut 82 P, 83; Guru Nanak 89; Kanpur 80)

Proof. HK is a subset of G . It is not necessary that it will be a subgroup of G . By $o(HK)$ we mean the number of distinct elements in HK .

Let $D = H \cap K$. Then D is a subgroup of G and $D \subseteq K$. Therefore D is a subgroup of K . Since K is finite, therefore the number of distinct right cosets in the right coset decomposition of K with respect to D is finite. Let it be m . By Lagrange's theorem, we have $m = \frac{o(K)}{o(D)}$.

If Dk_1, Dk_2, \dots, Dk_m are the distinct right cosets of D in K ,

$$\text{then } K = Dk_1 \cup Dk_2 \cup \dots \cup Dk_m = \bigcup_{i=1}^m Dk_i.$$

Observe that k_1, k_2, \dots, k_m are some distinct elements in K .

$$\text{Now } HK = H \left(\bigcup_{i=1}^m Dk_i \right) = \bigcup_{i=1}^m HDk_i$$

$$= \bigcup_{i=1}^m Hk_i \quad [\because D \subseteq H \Rightarrow HD = H]$$

$$= Hk_1 \cup Hk_2 \cup \dots \cup Hk_m. \quad \dots(1)$$

We shall show that the cosets Hk_1, Hk_2, \dots, Hk_m are pairwise distinct. We have

$$\begin{aligned} Hk_i = Hk_j &\Rightarrow k_i k_j^{-1} \in H \\ &\Rightarrow k_i k_j^{-1} \in H \cap K \quad [\because k_i, k_j \in K \Rightarrow k_i k_j^{-1} \in K] \\ &\Rightarrow k_i k_j^{-1} \in D \Rightarrow Dk_i = Dk_j \\ &\Rightarrow k_i = k_j \quad [\because Dk_1, \dots, Dk_m \text{ are distinct cosets}]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus Hk_1, Hk_2, \dots, Hk_m are distinct right cosets and so they are pairwise disjoint also. The number of elements in each of them is equal to $o(H)$ i.e., the number of elements in H . Therefore from (1) we conclude that the number of elements in HK is equal to $m \times o(H)$.

$$\therefore o(HK) = m \times o(H) = \frac{o(K)}{o(D)} \cdot o(H) = \frac{o(H) o(K)}{o(H \cap K)}.$$

Corollary. Let H and K be subgroups of a finite group G and let $o(H) > \sqrt{[o(G)]}$, $o(K) > \sqrt{[o(G)]}$. Then $H \cap K \neq \{e\}$.

(Meerut 1980)

Proof. Since $HK \subseteq G$, therefore $o(HK) \leq o(G)$ (1)

$$\text{But } o(HK) = \frac{o(H) o(K)}{o(H \cap K)}. \quad \dots(2)$$

$$\text{From (1) and (2), we get } o(G) \geq \frac{o(H) o(K)}{o(H \cap K)}. \quad \dots(3)$$

$$\text{But } \frac{o(H) o(K)}{o(H \cap K)} > \frac{\sqrt{[o(G)]} \sqrt{[o(G)]}}{o(H \cap K)} \quad [\text{by hypothesis}]$$

$$\text{i.e., } \frac{o(H) o(K)}{o(H \cap K)} > \frac{o(G)}{o(H \cap K)}. \quad \dots(4)$$

$$\text{From (3) and (4), we get } o(G) > \frac{o(G)}{o(H \cap K)}.$$

Therefore $o(H \cap K) > 1$ and this implies that $H \cap K \neq \{e\}$ because order of $\{e\} = 1$.

We apply this corollary to a very special group.

Example. Let G be a finite group of order pq where p and q are prime numbers with $p > q$. Then G has at most one subgroup of order p . In particular a group of order 6 has at most one subgroup of order 3. (Meerut 1976)

Solution. If possible, let H and K be the two subgroups of G of the same order p . Since $p > q$ and $o(G) = pq$, therefore

$$o(H) > \sqrt{o(G)} \text{ and } o(K) > \sqrt{o(G)}.$$

So by the above corollary $H \cap K \neq \{e\}$.

Now $H \cap K$ is a subgroup of H . Since H is of prime order p , therefore either $H \cap K = H$ or $H \cap K = \{e\}$. But $H \cap K \neq \{e\}$. Therefore $H \cap K = H$ and this implies that $H \subseteq K$. Similarly we can prove that $K \subseteq H$. Hence $H = K$. Therefore there can be at most one subgroup of G of order p .

As a special case a group of order six has at most one subgroup of order 3 since $6 = 3 \times 2$ where $3 > 2$ and both 3 and 2 are primes.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that two right cosets Ha, Hb are distinct if and only if the two left cosets $a^{-1}H, b^{-1}H$ are distinct.

Solution. In order to prove the given statement we shall prove that two right cosets Ha, Hb are equal if and only if the two left cosets $a^{-1}H, b^{-1}H$ are equal. We have

$$Ha = Hb \Leftrightarrow ab^{-1} \in H \quad [\text{See theorem 2, page 154}]$$

$$\Leftrightarrow ab^{-1}H = H \quad [\because h \in H \Leftrightarrow hH = H]$$

$$\Leftrightarrow a^{-1}ab^{-1}H = a^{-1}H$$

$$\Leftrightarrow b^{-1}H = a^{-1}H \Leftrightarrow a^{-1}H = b^{-1}H.$$

Hence the required result follows.

Ex. 2. Show that the set of the inverses of the elements of a right coset is a left coset; or more precisely show that $(Ha)^{-1} = a^{-1}H$.

Solution. Suppose Ha is a right coset of H in G where $a \in G$.

Let ha be any element of Ha , where $h \in H$.

We have $(ha)^{-1} = a^{-1}h^{-1}$.

Since H is a subgroup, therefore $h \in H \Rightarrow h^{-1} \in H$.

$$\therefore a^{-1}h^{-1} \in a^{-1}H.$$

Thus the inverses of all the elements of Ha belong to the left coset $a^{-1}H$. Hence $(Ha)^{-1} \subseteq a^{-1}H$.

Conversely, let $a^{-1}h$ be any element of $a^{-1}H$.

Then $a^{-1}h = a^{-1}(h^{-1})^{-1} = (h^{-1}a)^{-1} \in (Ha)^{-1}$,

since $h^{-1} \in H$ and therefore $h^{-1}a \in Ha$.

Therefore every element of $a^{-1}H$ belongs to the set of the inverses of the elements of Ha .

$$\therefore a^{-1}H \subseteq (Ha)^{-1}.$$

Hence $(Ha)^{-1} = a^{-1}H$.

Ex. 3. Given that $G = H \cup Ha_2 \cup Ha_3 \cup \dots \cup Ha_k$ is the right coset decomposition of G relative to the subgroup H , show that $G = H \cup a_2^{-1}H \cup a_3^{-1}H \cup \dots \cup a_k^{-1}H$ is a left coset decomposition of G relative to the subgroup H .

Solution. We know that two right cosets of H in G are either disjoint or identical. Therefore if there are two equal right cosets in the given right coset decomposition of G , then one of them can be omitted. So let us assume that all the right cosets in the given right coset decomposition of G relative to H are distinct. Then there are k distinct right cosets of H in G . But the number of distinct right cosets of H in G is equal to the number of distinct left cosets of H in G . Therefore there are k distinct left cosets in the left coset decomposition of G relative to H .

Now we know that two right cosets Ha and Hb are distinct if and only if the two left cosets $a^{-1}H$ and $b^{-1}H$ are distinct. Since the right cosets H, Ha_2, \dots, Ha_k are all distinct, therefore the left cosets $H, a_2^{-1}H, \dots, a_k^{-1}H$ are all distinct. Since they are k in number, therefore they are the only distinct left cosets of H in G . Now the union of all the distinct left cosets of H in G is equal to G . Hence

$$G = H \cup a_2^{-1}H \cup a_3^{-1}H \cup \dots \cup a_k^{-1}H$$

is a left coset decomposition of G relative to the subgroup H

Ex. 4. Prove that the only right (or left) coset of a subgroup H in a group G which is also a subgroup of G is H itself.

Solution. Suppose Ha is a right coset of H in G . Let Ha be a subgroup of G . Then $e \in Ha$. But $e \in H$. Since H is itself a right coset and two right cosets are either disjoint or identical, therefore $H = Ha$.

Similarly aH is a subgroup of $G \Rightarrow aH = H$.

Ex. 5. If $H \subseteq K$ are two subgroups of a finite group G , then show that $[G : H] = [G : K][K : H]$.

Solution. Since $H \subseteq K$ are two subgroups of a group G , therefore H is also a subgroup of K .

Now H is a subgroup of a finite group G . Therefore by Lagrange's theorem

$$[G : H] = \frac{o(G)}{o(H)} = \frac{o(G)}{o(K)} \cdot \frac{o(K)}{o(H)} = [G : K][K : H].$$

Ex. 6. Let H and K be two subgroups of a group G . Show that any coset relative to $H \cap K$ is the intersection of a coset relative to H with a coset relative to K .

(Jabalpur 1970)

Solution. Let a be any element of G . Then $(H \cap K)a$ is any right coset of G relative to the subgroup $H \cap K$. We shall prove that

$$(H \cap K)a = (Ha) \cap (Ka).$$

We have $(H \cap K) \subseteq H \Rightarrow (H \cap K)a \subseteq Ha$.

and $(H \cap K) \subseteq K \Rightarrow (H \cap K)a \subseteq Ka$.

$$\therefore (H \cap K)a \subseteq Ha \cap Ka. \quad \dots(1)$$

Again let x be any element of $Ha \cap Ka$. Then $x \in Ha$ and $x \in Ka$.

$$\therefore x = ha = ka \text{ for some } h \in H, k \in K.$$

$$\therefore xa^{-1} = h = k.$$

$$\therefore xa^{-1} \in H \cap K \Rightarrow (xa^{-1})a \in (H \cap K)a \Rightarrow x \in (H \cap K)a.$$

$$\text{Consequently } Ha \cap Ka \subseteq (H \cap K)a. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we conclude that $(H \cap K)a = Ha \cap Ka$.

A similar proof can be given in the case of a left coset.

Ex. 7. Prove that the intersection of two subgroups, each of finite index, is again of finite index.

(Meerut 1990; Madras 83; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 85)

Solution. Let H and K be two subgroups of a group G . Let $[G : H] = m$ and $[G : K] = n$. Let Ha_1, \dots, Ha_m and Kb_1, \dots, Kb_n be the distinct right cosets of H and K respectively. We are to show that the number of distinct right cosets of $H \cap K$ in G is finite. Let $(H \cap K)a$ be any right coset of $H \cap K$ in G . Then it can be easily shown that $(H \cap K)a = Ha \cap Ka$. Thus each right coset of $H \cap K$ is given by the intersection of a right coset of H and a right coset of K . Since the number of distinct right cosets of H is m and the number of distinct right cosets of K is n , therefore the number of distinct right cosets of $H \cap K$ can be at most equal to mn . Hence $H \cap K$ is of finite index in G .

Ex. 8. Use Lagrange's theorem to prove that a finite group cannot be expressed as the union of two of its proper subgroups.

(Madurai 1988; Poona 73)

Solution. Let G be a finite group of order n . Suppose G is the union of two of its proper subgroups H and K .

Since $e \in$ both H and K and $G = H \cup K$, therefore at least one of H and K (say, H) must contain more than half the elements of G . Let $o(H) = p$. Then $n/2 < p < n$. (Note that H is a proper subgroup of G).

Since $n/2 < p < n$, therefore p cannot be a divisor of n . This contradicts Lagrange's theorem which states that the order of each subgroup of a finite group is a divisor of the order of the group.

Hence our initial assumption is wrong and so a finite group cannot be expressed as the union of two of its proper subgroups.

§ 31. Cayley's Theorem. *Every finite group G is isomorphic to a permutation group.* (Agra 1986; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 82; Patna 86; Allahabad 82; Kanpur 86; Madras 83; Meerut 81, 83P, 85, 87, 89)

Proof. Let G be a finite group. If $a \in G$, then for every x in G the product ax is also an element of G . Now consider the function f_a from G into G defined by

$$f_a(x) = ax \quad \forall x \in G.$$

The function f_a is one-one because if $x, y \in G$, then

$$\begin{aligned} f_a(x) = f_a(y) &\Rightarrow ax = ay \\ &\Rightarrow x = y. \quad [\text{by left cancellation law in } G] \end{aligned}$$

The function f_a is also onto because if x is any element of G , then \exists an element $a^{-1}x$ in G such that

$$f_a(a^{-1}x) = a(a^{-1}x) = (aa^{-1})x = ex = x.$$

Thus f_a is a one-one function from G onto G . Therefore f_a is a permutation on G . Let G' denote the set of all such one-one onto functions defined on G corresponding to every element of G i.e.,
 $G' = \{f_a : a \in G\}.$

First we shall show that G' is a group with respect to the operation known as composite or product of two functions.

Closure property. Let $f_a, f_b \in G'$ where $a, b \in G$. From our definition of product of two functions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f_a f_b)(x) &= f_a[f_b(x)] = f_a(bx) = a(bx) = (ab)x \\ &= f_{ab}(x) \text{ for all } x \in G. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore by the definition of equality of two functions, we have
 $f_a f_b = f_{ab}. \quad \dots (1)$

Since $ab \in G$, therefore $f_{ab} \in G'$ and thus G' is closed with respect to the product of functions.

Associativity. Let $f_a, f_b, f_c \in G'$ where $a, b, c \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f_a(f_b f_c) &= f_a f_{bc} && [\because \text{from (1), } f_b f_c = f_{bc}] \\ &= f_{a(bc)} && [\text{from (1)}] \\ &= f_{(ab)c} && [\text{by associativity in } G] \\ &= f_{ab} f_c && [\text{from (1)}] \\ &= (f_a f_b) f_c. && [\text{from (1)}] \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the operation in G' is associative.

Existence of Identity. If e is the identity of G , then f_e is the

identity of G' because for every f_a in G' , we have

$$f_e f_a = f_{ea} = f_a \text{ and } f_a f_e = f_{ae} = f_a.$$

Existence of Inverse. If a^{-1} is the inverse of a in G , then $f_{a^{-1}}$ is the inverse of f_a in G' because

$$f_{a^{-1}} f_a = f_{a^{-1}a} = f_e \text{ and } f_a f_{a^{-1}} = f_{aa^{-1}} = f_e.$$

Thus G' is a group.

Now we shall show that $G \cong G'$. Consider the function ϕ from G into G' defined by $\phi(a) = f_a \ \forall \ a \in G$.

ϕ is one-one. If $a, b \in G$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(a) = \phi(b) &\Rightarrow f_a = f_b \Rightarrow f_a(x) = f_b(x) \ \forall \ x \in G \\ &\Rightarrow ax = bx \ \forall \ x \in G \Rightarrow a = b. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ is one-one.

ϕ is onto. Let f_a be any element of G' .

Then $a \in G$ and we have $\phi(a) = f_a$. Therefore ϕ is onto.

ϕ preserves compositions in G and G' . If $a, b \in G$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(ab) &= f_{ab} && \text{[by def. of } \phi] \\ &= f_a f_b && \text{[from (1)]} \\ &= \phi(a) \phi(b). && \text{[by def. of } \phi] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ preserves compositions in G and G' .

$$\therefore G \cong G'.$$

Definition. The permutation group to which G is isomorphic is called a regular permutation group.

Note 1. While forming the function f_a we have multiplied the elements of G on the left hand side by a and not on the right hand side. Thus we have taken $f_a(x) = ax$ and not $f_a(x) = xa$. If we take $f_a(x) = xa$, we shall get $f_a f_b = f_{ba}$. Then while defining the mapping $\phi : G \rightarrow G'$ we should set $\phi(a) = f_{a^{-1}}$ and not $\phi(a) = f_a$.

Note 2. Important. Cayley's theorem is true even if the group G is not finite. The same proof can be given in that case because while proving the theorem we have not assumed that G is finite.

But if G is not finite, then the word permutation should be omitted from the statement of the theorem. In that case we should state the theorem like this :

Every group is isomorphic to a group of one-one onto functions.

(Sagar 1966, 68; Dibrugarh 67; Jabalpur 69)

Example. Find the regular permutation group isomorphic to the multiplicative group $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$. (Raj. 1978)

Solution. By Cayley's theorem the regular permutation group G' isomorphic to G consists of the following four permutations f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4 :

$$f_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ 1 \cdot 1 & (1) \cdot (-1) & (1) \cdot (i) & (1) \cdot (-i) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ 1 & -1 & i & -i \end{pmatrix} = I$$

$$f_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ (-1) \cdot 1 & (-1) \cdot (-1) & (-1) \cdot i & (-1) \cdot (-i) \end{pmatrix} \\ = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ -1 & 1 & -i & i \end{pmatrix} = (1, -1)(i, -i).$$

$$f_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ (i) \cdot 1 & (i) \cdot (-1) & (i) \cdot i & (i) \cdot (-i) \end{pmatrix} \\ = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ i & -i & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1, i, -1, -i).$$

$$f_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ (-i) \cdot 1 & (-i) \cdot (-1) & (-i) \cdot i & (-i) \cdot (-i) \end{pmatrix} \\ = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & i & -i \\ -i & i & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = (1, -i, -1, i).$$

Exercises

1. What is a coset? Give an example. (Meerut 1972)
2. What are the left cosets and right cosets of a subgroup H of a group G ? Prove that any two left cosets of H in G are identical or have no elements in common. Show that there is a 1-1 correspondence between any two left cosets of H in G . (Kerala 1970)
3. Correct the following statement :
If G is a group and H is a subgroup of G , then $o(H)$ is a divisor of $o(G)$. (Meerut 1976)
4. Answer the following questions :
(i) What is the order of the group P_4 ?
(ii) What is the order of the group A_4 ?
(iii) Is A_4 a subgroup of P_4 ? If yes, what is the index of A_4 in P_4 ?
Ans. (i) 24, (ii) 12, (iii) 2.
5. Use Fermat's theorem to determine the remainder, if 8^{103} is divided by 103. Ans. 8. (Meerut 1977)
6. Prove that any group is isomorphic to a transformation group. (Kumayun 1977; Allahabad 80)
7. (i) Show that every group is isomorphic to a subgroup of $A(S)$ for some appropriate S . Here $A(S)$ is the group of all one-one functions of S onto itself. (Meerut 1973; Vikram 76)
(ii) Let G be a finite group. Prove that G is isomorphic to a subgroup of S_n , the symmetric group of degree n , for some n . (G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1982)
8. Let G be the group of integers under addition and let N be the set of all integral multiples of 3. Prove that H is a sub-

group of G and determine all the cosets of N in G . (I.A.S. 1973)

9. Let G be a finite group, $a \in G$; show that the order of a equals the order of the subgroup H of G generated by a . Hence or otherwise deduce that $o(a)$ divides $o(G)$. (Meerut 1975)

10. Consider two subgroups $H = \{I, (1\ 2)\}$ and $K = \{I, (1\ 3)\}$ of S_3 . Determine HK . Using Lagrange's theorem or otherwise prove that HK is not a subgroup of S_3 . (Meerut 1976)

11. If H and K are subgroups of a finite group G , give an example to show that $o(HK)$ need not divide $o(G)$. (Meerut 1973)

12. If a finite group G contains an element of even order, show that G must also be of even order. (Allahabad 1983)

13. If a finite group possesses an element of order 2, prove that it possesses an odd number of such elements.

14. S is a subset of a given group G and one defines a relation $a \sim b$ in G if and only if $ab^{-1} \in S$. Show that the necessary and sufficient condition that this is an equivalence relation is that S is a subgroup of G . (I.A.S. 1975)

15. Use Lagrange's theorem to show that any group of prime order can have no proper subgroups.

§ 32. Cyclic groups.

Definition. A group G is called cyclic if, for some $a \in G$, every element $x \in G$ is of the form a^n , where n is some integer. The element a is then called a generator of G .

(I.A.S. 1974; Meerut 81; Garhwal 76; Madras 74;

Kumayun 78; Madras 77; Bombay 70; Rajasthan 77)

There may be more than one generators of a cyclic group. If G is a cyclic group generated by a , then we shall write $G = \{a\}$ or $G = (a)$. The elements of G will be of the form

$$\dots, a^{-3}, a^{-2}, a^{-1}, a^0 = e, a, a^2, a^3, \dots$$

Of course they are not necessarily all distinct.

Example 1. (Vikram 1978). The multiplicative group $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$ is cyclic. We can write $G = \{i, i^2, i^3, i^4\}$. Thus G is a cyclic group and i is a generator. Also we can write

$$G = \{-i, (-i)^2, (-i)^3, (-i)^4\}.$$

Thus $-i$ is also a generator of G .

Example 2. The multiplicative group $\{1, \omega, \omega^2\}$ is cyclic. The generators are ω and ω^2 .

Example 3. Suppose G is any group and $a \in G$. Let H be the subgroup of G consisting of all integral powers of a i.e.,

$H = \{a^n : n \in \mathbb{I} \text{ (the set of integers)}\}$. Then H is a cyclic subgroup of G generated by a .

Example 4. The group $A = (\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}, +_6)$ is cyclic. This group is generated by 1. Another generator is 5.

We see that $1^1 = 1, 1^2 = 1 +_6 1 = 2, 1^3 = 1 +_6 1^2 = 3,$

$$1^4 = 1 +_6 1^3 = 4, 1^5 = 1 +_6 1^4 = 5, 1^6 = 0.$$

Thus $G = \{1, 1^2, 1^3, 1^4, 1^5, 1^6 = 0\}$.

Example 5. The multiplicative group of n th roots of unity is cyclic, a generator being $e^{2\pi i/n}$. (Allahabad 70; Raj. 78)

Example 6. The additive group G of all integers is cyclic, a generator being 1. We have $1^0 = 0, 1^1 = 1, 1^2 = 1 + 1 = 2, 1^3 = 1 + 1 + 1 = 3$ and so on. Similarly $1^{-1} = \text{inverse of } 1 = -1, 1^{-2} = (1^2)^{-1} = -2, 1^{-3} = (1^3)^{-1} = (3)^{-1} = -3$ and so on.

Thus each element of G can be expressed as some integral power of 1. Also -1 is a generator.

§ 33. Some Properties of Cyclic Groups.

Theorem 1. Every cyclic group is an abelian group.

(Meerut 1976; Allahabad 80; Vikram 78)

Proof. Let $G = \{a\}$ be a cyclic group generated by a . Let x, y be any two elements of G . Then there exist integers r and s such that $x = a^r, y = a^s$. Now $xy = a^r a^s = a^{r+s} = a^{s+r} = a^s a^r = yx$. Thus we have $xy = yx \forall x, y \in G$. Therefore G is abelian.

Theorem 2. If a is a generator of a cyclic group G , then a^{-1} is also a generator of G .

Proof. Let $G = \{a\}$ be a cyclic group generated by a . Let a^r be any element of G , where r is some integer. We can write $a^r = (a^{-1})^{-r}$. Since $-r$ is also some integer, therefore each element of G , is generated by a^{-1} . Thus a^{-1} is also a generator of G .

Theorem 3. A cyclic group G with generator of finite order n , is isomorphic to the multiplicative group of n th roots of unity.

(Meerut 1971; Poona 70; Madurai 78)

Proof. Let a be a generator of the cyclic group G . Since the order of a is n , therefore n is the least positive integer such that

$$a^n = e.$$

We shall show that the group G has exactly n distinct elements

$$a, a^2, a^3, \dots, a^n = e = a^0. \quad \dots (1)$$

No two elements of (1) can be equal. For if possible, let

$$a^r = a^s, 1 \leq s < r \leq n. \text{ Then } a^{r-s} = a^0 = e.$$

Since $0 < r-s < n$, therefore $a^{r-s} = e$ implies that the order of a is less than n . Hence $a^r \neq a^s$.

Therefore all the n elements in (1) are distinct.

Again let a^t be any element of G . By division algorithm, there exist two integers p and q such that

$$t = np + q, 0 \leq q < n. \quad [\text{Note. We can write } t/n = p + q/n]$$

$$\therefore a^t = a^{np+q} = a^{np} a^q = (a^n)^p a^q = e^p a^q = e a^q = a^q.$$

Since $0 \leq q < n$, therefore a^q is one of the n elements in (1). Thus each element of G is equal to some member of (1). Therefore G has exactly n elements given in (1). Then $o(a) = o(G)$.

We shall now show that G is isomorphic to the multiplicative group G' of the n th roots of unity, namely

$$1 = e^{2\pi i 0/n}, e^{2\pi i 1/n}, e^{2\pi i 2/n}, \dots, e^{2\pi i (n-1)/n}.$$

Consider the mapping $f: G \rightarrow G'$ defined by

$$f(a^r) = e^{2\pi i r/n}, \text{ where } 0 \leq r \leq n-1.$$

The mapping f is one-one. Since

$$f(a^r) = f(a^s), \text{ where } 0 \leq r \leq n-1, 0 \leq s \leq n-1$$

$$\Rightarrow e^{2\pi i r/n} = e^{2\pi i s/n} \Rightarrow r = s \Rightarrow a^r = a^s.$$

Again the number of elements in G is equal to the number of elements in G' . Therefore f is one-one implies f must be onto G' .

Finally $f(a^r a^s) = f(a^{r+s}) = f(a^{nu+k})$, where u is some integer and $0 \leq k < n$

[Note. We can write $(r+s)/n = u + k/n$]

$$= f(a^{nu} a^k) = f[(a^n)^u a^k]$$

$$= f(a^k)$$

$$= e^{2\pi i k/n}$$

$$[\because a^n = e]$$

[by def. of f]

$$= e^{2\pi i nu/n} e^{2\pi i k/n}$$

$$[\because e^{2\pi i u} = 1]$$

$$= e^{2\pi i (nu+k)/n} = e^{2\pi i (r+s)/n} = e^{2\pi i r/n} e^{2\pi i s/n} = f(a^r) f(a^s).$$

Therefore f preserves compositions in G and G' . Hence G is isomorphic to G' .

Since every finite cyclic group of order n is isomorphic to the multiplicative group of n th roots of unity, therefore we can say that *there is one and only one cyclic group of order n .*

Cor. If a is a generator of an infinite cyclic group G , then the order of a must be infinite. If the order of a is finite, then the cyclic group generated by a will be of finite order. Therefore *the order of a cyclic group is equal to the order of its generating element.*

(Rohilkhand 1980)

Theorem 4. *A cyclic group G with a generator of finite order n , is isomorphic to the additive group of residue classes modulo n .*

(Patna 1986; Jiwaji 78; Meerut 87)

Proof. First to prove that the group G has exactly n distinct elements, give the same proof as in theorem 3. The group G' is here the group of residue classes modulo n .

For any integer a let $[a]$ denote the residue class of the set of integers modulo n . Then $G' = \{[a] : a \in \mathbb{I} \text{ where } \mathbb{I} \text{ is the set of integers}\}$. The group G' has only n distinct elements and we have $G' = \{[0], [1], [2], \dots, [n-1]\}$. Also $G = \{a^r : r \in \mathbb{I}\}$.

Consider the mapping $f : G \rightarrow G'$ defined by

$$f(a^r) = [r] \quad \forall r \in \mathbb{I}.$$

First we must show that the mapping f is well-defined.

Let $r, s \in \mathbb{I}$ be such that $a^r = a^s$.

Then we must show that $f(a^r) = f(a^s)$.

We have $a^r = a^s \Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = a^s a^{-s} \Rightarrow a^{r-s} = e$

$$\Rightarrow n \text{ is a divisor of } r-s \quad [\because o(a) = n]$$

$$\Rightarrow r \equiv s \pmod{n} \Rightarrow [r] = [s] \Rightarrow f(a^r) = f(a^s).$$

\therefore the mapping f is well-defined.

f is one-one. Let a^r, a^s be any two elements of G where $r, s \in \mathbb{I}$.

We have $f(a^r) = f(a^s) \Rightarrow [r] = [s] \Rightarrow r-s$ is divisible by n

$$\Rightarrow r-s = kn \text{ where } k \in \mathbb{I}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{r-s} = a^{kn} \Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = (a^n)^k$$

$$\Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = e^k \Rightarrow a^r a^{-s} = e \Rightarrow a^r = a^s \Rightarrow f \text{ is one-one.}$$

f is onto. Let $[r]$ be any element of G' . Then r is an integer.

We have $a^r \in G$ and $f(a^r) = [r]$. Therefore f is onto G' .

f preserves compositions.

$$\text{We have } f(a^r a^s) = f(a^{r+s}) = [r+s] = [r] + [s] = f(a^r) + f(a^s).$$

$$\therefore G \cong G'.$$

Theorem 5. *If a finite group of order n contains an element of order n , the group must be cyclic.*

(Banaras 1970)

Proof. Suppose G is a finite group of order n . Let $a \in G$ and let n be the order of a . If H is the cyclic subgroup of G generated by a i.e., if $H = \{a^r : r \in \mathbb{I}\}$, then the order of H is n because the order of the generator a of H is n . Thus H is a cyclic subgroup of G and the order of H is equal to the order of G . Hence $H = G$ and therefore G itself is a cyclic group and a is a generator of G .

Note. Suppose G is a finite group of order n and we are to find whether G is cyclic or not. We should find the orders of the elements of G . If we are able to find an element $a \in G$ such that $o(a) = n$, then G will be a cyclic group and a will be a generator of G .

Theorem 6. *Every group of prime order is cyclic.*

(I.A.S. 1972; Kanpur 80; Guru Nanak 75; Madurai 78; Rajasthan 76; Meerut 80, 81; Patna 87)

Proof. Suppose G is a finite group whose order is a prime number p , then to prove that G is a cyclic group. Note that an integer p is said to be a prime number if $p \neq 0$, $p \neq \pm 1$, and if the only divisors of p are $\pm 1, \pm p$.

Since G is a group of prime order, therefore G must contain at least 2 elements. Note that 2 is the least positive prime integer. Therefore there must exist an element $a \in G$ such that $a \neq$ the identity element e .

Since a is not the identity element, therefore $o(a)$ is definitely ≥ 2 . Let $o(a) = m$. If H is the cyclic subgroup of G generated by a , then $o(H) = o(a) = m$. By Lagrange's theorem m must be a divisor of p . But p is prime and $m \geq 2$. Hence $m = p$.

$\therefore H = G$. Since H is cyclic therefore G is cyclic and a is a generator of G .

Note. Every group of prime order p is cyclic. Also every cyclic group of order p is isomorphic to the additive group of residue classes modulo p . Therefore we can say that if p is prime then there is one and only one group of order p .

Theorem 7. *Every finite group of composite order possesses proper subgroups.* (Delhi Hons. 1970; Allahabad 80; Meerut 70)

Proof. Let G be a finite group of composite order mn where neither m nor n is 1. Note that a non-zero integer α is said to be a composite number if there exist two integers β, γ such that $\alpha = \beta\gamma$ while $|\beta| > 1, |\gamma| > 1$.

Suppose G is cyclic and a is a generator of G . Then $o(a) = o(G) = mn$.

$$\therefore a^{mn} = e$$

$$\Rightarrow (a^n)^m = e \Rightarrow o(a^n) \text{ is finite and is } \leq m.$$

Let $o(a^n) = r$ where $r < m$. Then $(a^n)^r = e \Rightarrow a^{nr} = e$.

But $r < m \Rightarrow r$.

Thus $a^{nr}=e$ where $nr < mn$ while $o(a)=mn$. This is not possible because mn is the least positive integer such that $a^{mn}=e$.

\therefore We must have $r=m$. Thus $o(a^n)=m$.

$\therefore H=\{a^n\}$ is a cyclic subgroup of G and the order of H is equal to the order of its generator a^n . Thus $o(H)=m$. Since $2 \leq m < mn$, therefore H is a proper subgroup of G .

Suppose G is not cyclic. Then the order of each element of G must be less than mn . So G will contain at least one element, say b , of order p where $2 \leq p < mn$. Then $H=\{b\}$ is a subgroup of G and $o(H)=p$. Therefore H is a proper subgroup of G .

Theorem 8. *If a cyclic group G is generated by an element a of order n , then a^m is a generator of G if and only if the greatest common divisor of m and n is 1 i.e., iff m and n are relative primes.*

(Jabalpur 1986; Calicut 75; Kumayon 78; Meerut 79; Nagarjuna 79; Rajasthan 77)

Proof. Suppose m is relatively prime to n . Consider the cyclic subgroup $H=\{a^m\}$ of G generated by a^m . Obviously $H \subseteq G$ since each integral power of a^m will also be an integral power of a .

Since m is relatively prime to n , therefore there exist two integers u, v such that $um+vn=1$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a^{um+vn} &= a^1 \\ \Rightarrow a^{um} a^{vn} &= a \\ \Rightarrow (a^m)^u &= a; \text{ since } a^{vn} = (a^n)^v = e^v = e. \end{aligned}$$

\therefore each integral power of a will also be some integral power of a^m . Therefore $G \subseteq H$. Hence $H=G$ and a^m is a generator of G .

Converse. Suppose a^m is a generator of G . Let the greatest common divisor of m and n be d and $d \neq 1$ i.e., $d > 1$. Then m/d and n/d must be integers.

Now $(a^m)^{n/d} = (a^n)^{m/d} = e^{m/d} = e$. Obviously n/d is a positive integer less than n itself. Thus $o(a^m) < n$. Therefore a^m cannot be a generator of G because the order of a^m is not equal to the order of G . Hence d must be equal to 1. Thus m is prime to n .

Note. If G is a cyclic group of order n , then the total number of generators of G will be equal to the number of integers less than n and prime to n . For example if a is a generator of a cyclic group G of order 8, then a^3, a^5, a^7 will be the only other generators of G . Since 4 is not prime to 8, therefore a^4 cannot be a generator of G . Similarly a^2, a^6, a^8 cannot be generators of G .

If G is a cyclic group of prime order p generated by a , then a, a^2, \dots, a^{p-1} are all generators of G and thus G has $p-1$ generators.

Theorem 9. *If G is an infinite cyclic group, then G has exactly two generators and G is isomorphic to the additive group of integers.*
(I.A.S. 1974; Punjab 76; Sagar 77; Madras 74; Meerut 75)

Proof. Let $G = \{a\}$ be an infinite cyclic group generated by a . The elements of G will be integral powers of a . We claim that no two distinct integral powers of a can be equal.

For, if possible, let $a^r = a^s$, $r > s$.

Then $a^r a^{-s} = a^s a^{-s} = a^0 = e$.

$$\therefore a^{r-s} = e.$$

Since $r-s$ is a positive integer, therefore $a^{r-s} = e$ implies that $o(a)$ is finite. So a cannot be a generator of an infinite cyclic group G . Hence $a^r \neq a^s$, unless $r = s$.

Therefore we can write $G = \{\dots, a^{-3}, a^{-2}, a^{-1}, a^0 = e, a, a^2, a^3, \dots\}$.

If a^r is any element of G , we can write $a^r = (a^{-1})^{-r}$. Thus a^{-1} is also a generator of G . Also as proved above a and a^{-1} are distinct elements of G .

Now if $m \neq 1$ or -1 , then a^m cannot be a generator of G . If a^m is to be a generator of G , there must exist an integer k such that $(a^m)^k = a$, i.e., $a^{mk} = a$. Now $m \neq 1$ or -1 , $\Rightarrow mk \neq 1$. Therefore two distinct integral powers of a are equal and this contradicts the statement we have just proved. Hence a^m cannot be a generator of G if $m \neq 1$ or -1 . Thus G has exactly two generators i.e., a and a^{-1} . Let I be the additive group of integers i.e.,

$$I = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}.$$

To prove that $G \cong I$.

Consider the mapping $\phi : G \rightarrow I$ defined by

$$\phi(a^m) = m \quad \forall m \in I.$$

The mapping ϕ is one-one because

$$\phi(a^m) = \phi(a^n) \Rightarrow m = n \Rightarrow a^m = a^n.$$

Obviously ϕ is onto I .

$$\text{Also } \phi(a^m a^n) = \phi(a^{m+n}) = m+n = \phi(a^m) + \phi(a^n).$$

Hence ϕ is an isomorphism of G onto I .

Note. Since every infinite cyclic group is isomorphic to the additive group of integers, therefore we can say that there is one and only one infinite cyclic group.

Theorem 10. *Every subgroup of a cyclic group is cyclic.*

(Punjab 1970; Osmania 72; Allahabad 79; Bombay 70; Indore 70; Madurai 75; Madras 74; Meerut 78)

Proof. Suppose $G = \{a\}$ is a cyclic group generated by a . If $H = G$ or $\{e\}$, then obviously H is cyclic. So let H be a proper subgroup of G . The elements of H are integral powers of a . If $a^t \in H$, then the inverse of a^t i.e., $a^{-t} \in H$. Therefore H contains elements which are positive as well as negative integral powers of a . Let m be the least positive integer such that $a^m \in H$. Then we shall prove that $H = \{a^m\}$ i.e., H is cyclic and is generated by a^m .

Let a^t be any arbitrary element of H . By division algorithm, there exist integers q and r such that $t = mq + r$, $0 \leq r < m$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } a^m \in H &\Rightarrow (a^m)^q \in H && [\text{by closure property}] \\ &\Rightarrow a^{mq} \in H \Rightarrow (a^{mq})^{-1} \in H \\ &\Rightarrow a^{-mq} \in H. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } a^t \in H, a^{-mq} \in H &\Rightarrow a^t a^{-mq} \in H \Rightarrow a^{t-mq} \in H \\ &\Rightarrow a^r \in H. && [\because r = t - mq] \end{aligned}$$

Now m is the least positive integer such that $a^m \in H$ and $0 \leq r < m$. Therefore r must be equal to 0. Hence $t = mq$.

$$\therefore a^t = a^{mq} = (a^m)^q.$$

Thus every element $a^t \in H$ is of the form $(a^m)^q$. Therefore H is cyclic and a^m is a generator of H .

Theorem 11. *Every proper subgroup of an infinite cyclic group is infinite.*

Proof. Let $G = \{a\}$ be an infinite cyclic group. Let H be a proper subgroup of G . Then H is cyclic and if m is the least positive integer such that $a^m \in H$, then $H = \{a^m\}$.

Suppose H is a finite group of order p . Since a^m is a generator of H , therefore $(a^m)^p = e$ i.e., $a^{mp} = e$ where $mp > 0$.

\therefore Order of a is finite and consequently G is finite, contrary to the hypothesis. Hence H must be an infinite cyclic subgroup of G .

Note. Since every infinite cyclic group is isomorphic to the group of integers, therefore any two proper subgroups of an infinite cyclic group are isomorphic, even isomorphic to the group itself.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that the group $(\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}, \times_7)$ is cyclic. How many generators are there?

Solution. Let us denote the given group by G . If there exists an element $a \in G$ such that $o(a)=6$ i.e., equal to the order of the group G then the group G will be a cyclic group and a will be a generator of G .

We see that $o(3)=6$ because $3^1=3, 3^2=3 \times 3=2, 3^3=3^2 \times 3=2 \times 3=6, 3^4=6 \times 3=4, 3^5=4 \times 3=5, 3^6=5 \times 3=1$ i.e., the identity element.

$\therefore G$ is cyclic and 3 is a generator of G . We can write

$$G=\{3, 3^2, 3^3, 3^4, 3^5, 3^6\}.$$

Now 5 is prime to 6. Therefore 3^5 i.e., 5 is also a generator of G .

Ex. 2. How many generators are there of the cyclic group G of order 8?

Solution. Let a be a generator of G . Then $o(a)=8$. We can write $G=\{a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6, a^7, a^8\}$.

7 is prime to 8, therefore a^7 is also a generator of G .

5 is prime to 8, therefore a^5 is also a generator of G .

3 is prime to 8, therefore a^3 is also a generator of G .

Thus there are only four generators of G i.e., a, a^3, a^5, a^7 .

Ex. 3. Show that every isomorphic image of a cyclic group is again cyclic. (Punjab 1970; Vikram 78)

Solution. Let $G=\{a\}$ be a cyclic group generated by a . Let G' be an isomorphic image of G under the isomorphism f . The elements of G' are the images of the elements of G under the function f . Let $f(a^n)$ be any element of G' . We have $f(a^n)=f(\underbrace{aaa \dots}_{\text{to } n \text{ factors}})=f(a)f(a)f(a) \dots \text{to } n \text{ factors}=[f(a)]^n$.

Thus we see that every element of G' can be expressed as an integral power of $f(a)$. Thus G' is cyclic and $f(a)$ is a generator of G' .

Ex. 4. If $G=\{a\}$ be a finite cyclic group of order n , then for any divisor d of n , there exists a unique subgroup of G of order d . (Allahabad 1985; Meerut 76)

Solution. Existence. Since d is a divisor of n , therefore we have $n=dm$ for some integer m .

Since $G=\{a\}$ is of order n , therefore

$$o(a)=n$$

$$\Rightarrow a^n=e$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{dm}=e$$

$$\Rightarrow (a^m)^d=e \Rightarrow o(a^m) \leq d.$$

$$[\because n=dm]$$

Let $o(a^m) = s$ where $s < d$. Then

$$(a^m)^s = e \Rightarrow a^{ms} = e \text{ where } ms < md \text{ i.e., } ms < n.$$

Now $o(a) = n$. Therefore if $ms < n$, then we cannot have $a^{ms} = e$.

$\therefore o(a^m)$ cannot be less than d and it must be equal to d .

Now $a^m \in G$ and $o(a^m) = d$. Therefore $\{a^m\}$ is a cyclic subgroup of G of order d .

Uniqueness. We know that every subgroup of a cyclic group is cyclic.

If possible suppose there is another subgroup $\{a^k\}$ of G of order a where $n = dm$.

We shall show that $\{a^k\} = \{a^m\}$. By division algorithm, there exist integers q and r such that

$$k = mq + r \text{ where } 0 \leq r < m. \quad \dots(1)$$

Therefore $kd = mqd + rd$ where $0 \leq rd < md$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{So } a^{kd} &= a^{mqd+rd} = a^{mqd} a^{rd} = (a^{md})^q a^{rd} = (a^n)^q a^{rd} \\ &= e^q a^{rd} = a^{rd}. \end{aligned} \quad \dots(2)$$

Since the subgroup $\{a^k\}$ is of order d , therefore its generator a^k is also of order d . Therefore $a^{kd} = e$.

So from (2), we get

$$a^{rd} = e,$$

which is impossible unless $r = 0$ because $rd < md$ i.e., $rd < n$ and $o(a) = n$. Putting $r = 0$ in (1), we get

$$k = mq.$$

$$\therefore a^k = a^{mq} = (a^m)^q.$$

$$\therefore a^k \in \{a^m\}.$$

$$\therefore \{a^k\} \subseteq \{a^m\}. \quad \dots(3)$$

But number of elements of $\{a^k\} = \text{number of elements of } \{a^m\}$.

\therefore (3) implies $\{a^k\} = \{a^m\}$.

Ex. 5. Let G be a group, $G \neq \{e\}$. Then G has no proper subgroups if, and only if, G is a finite cyclic group of prime order.

(Punjab 1970; I.C.S. 90)

Solution. 'If' part. Let G be a finite group of prime order p . Then G is cyclic. By Lagrange's theorem the order of every subgroup H of G must be a divisor of the order of G . So if H is any subgroup of G , we must have either $o(H) = 1$ or $o(H) = p$. Note that p is prime. Thus G can have no proper subgroups.

'Only If' part. Suppose G has no proper subgroups. Then to prove that G must be a finite cyclic group of prime order. Let $x \in G$ be such that $x \neq e$. Then the cyclic subgroup $\{x\}$ of G generated by x is all of G because it is given that G has no proper subgroups. Note that $x \neq e \Rightarrow \{x\} \neq \{e\}$. Thus G is a cyclic group generated by x . Now if x is of infinite order, then x^2 generates a proper subgroup of the cyclic group G and this again contradicts the hypothesis that G has no proper subgroups. So $o(x)$ must be finite, say n . Since $x \neq e$, therefore $n > 1$. Suppose n is not prime. Then we must have $n = rs$ where r and s are some positive integers such that $1 < r < n$, $1 < s < n$. Now $o(x) = n$ and r is a positive integer which divides n . So we must have $o(x^r) = \frac{n}{r} = s$.

Then x^r generates a proper subgroup of G of order s which again contradicts our hypothesis. So n must be prime. Thus G is a cyclic group whose generator x is of prime order n . But the order of a cyclic group is equal to the order of its generator. Hence G must be a finite cyclic group of prime order.

Ex. 6. Show that every finite group of order less than six must be abelian. (Meerut 1971; Madurai 88)

Solution. We know that every group of prime order is cyclic and every cyclic group is abelian. Since 2, 3 and 5 are prime numbers, therefore all groups of order 2, 3 and 5 must be abelian.

Now let G be a finite group of order 4. If every element of G is its own inverse, surely G is abelian. [See Ex. 7, page 119]. So let G contain an element, say a , such that $a \neq a^{-1}$. But then $a \neq a^{-1} \Rightarrow aa \neq aa^{-1} \Rightarrow a^2 \neq e$, so that $o(a) > 2$. Since in a finite group the order of an element must be a divisor of the order of the group, therefore $o(a)$ cannot be 3 and so we must have $o(a) = 4 =$ the order of the group G . But then G is cyclic and so abelian. Thus every group of order four is always abelian. Hence every group of order less than six must be abelian.

Ex. 7. Taking a group $\{e, a, b, c\}$ of order 4, construct two composition tables which are not isomorphic. (Meerut 1980, 82)

Solution. Every group of order 4 is abelian. But a group of order 4 may be cyclic or it may not be cyclic. Suppose $\{e, a, b, c\}$ is a group of order 4. It must contain an element, other than e , which is its own inverse. Let $a^{-1} = a$. Then $a^2 = e$ and $o(a) = 2$.

Now two cases arise. If $b^{-1} = b$, we must have $c^{-1} = c$. In this case the group contains no element of order 4 and so it is not cyclic.

But if $b^{-1}=c$, then we must have $c^{-1}=b$. Also in this case $o(b)$ cannot be 2 and so it must be 4. Thus in this case the group is cyclic.

The composition tables for the two groups of the order four are as given below :

Cyclic group of order 4					Non-cyclic group of order 4				
	e	a	b	c		e	a	b	c
e	e	a	b	c	e	e	a	b	c
a	a	e	c	b	a	a	e	c	b
b	b	c	a	e	b	b	c	e	a
c	c	b	e	a	c	c	b	a	e

The two types of groups given above are not isomorphic. We see that one group is cyclic while the other is not cyclic.

Ex. 8. Give an example of a finite abelian group which is not cyclic.
(Meerut 1979, 83P)

Solution. Let G be the set of the four real matrices

$$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, C = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

It can be easily seen that G is an abelian group with respect to multiplication of matrices. The identity element of this group is the identity matrix I . Let us find the order of each element of G . We have $o(I)=1$. Also

$$A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I; \quad \therefore o(A)=2;$$

$$B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I; \quad \therefore o(B)=2;$$

$$C^2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I; \quad \therefore o(C)=2.$$

Now G is a group of order 4 and G contains no element of order 4. Therefore G is not a cyclic group. Hence G is a finite abelian group which is not cyclic.

Ex. 9. Let a and b be two elements of finite order, of a group G . If $o(a)$ and $o(b)$ are co-prime and $ab=ba$, prove that
 $o(ab)=o(a)o(b)$.

Solution. Suppose $o(a)=m$ and $o(b)=n$, where m and n are relatively prime. Consider the cyclic subgroup H of G generated by ab . We have

$$\begin{aligned} (ab)^{mn} &= a^{mn}b^{mn} & [\because ab=ba] \\ &= (a^m)^n (b^n)^m = e^n e^m & [\because o(a)=m \Rightarrow a^m=e \text{ and similarly } b^n=e] \\ &= e. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore o(ab) \mid mn.$$

But $o(ab)=o(H)$, ab being a generator of the cyclic group H .

$$\therefore o(H) \mid mn. \quad \dots(1)$$

Again ab is a generator of the cyclic group $H \Rightarrow (ab)^m \in H \Rightarrow a^m b^m \in H \Rightarrow eb^m \in H \Rightarrow b^m \in H$. Since b is of order n and m is relatively prime to n , therefore $o(b^m)=n$. But we have just shown that $b^m \in H$. Therefore by a corollary to Lagrange's theorem, $o(b^m) \mid o(H)$ i.e., $n \mid o(H)$. Similarly we can show that $m \mid o(H)$. But m and n are relatively prime. Therefore $m \mid o(H)$ and $n \mid o(H) \Rightarrow mn \mid o(H)$. $\dots(2)$

From (1) and (2), we conclude that $o(H)=mn$. Consequently $o(ab)=mn$.

Ex. 10. If an abelian group of order six contains an element of order 3, show that it must be a cyclic group.

Solution. Let G be an abelian group of order 6. Let $a \in G$ be such that $o(a)=3$. To prove that G is cyclic. Since G is of order six (even), therefore G must contain an element b other than e such that $b^{-1}=b$ i.e., $b^2=e$ i.e., $o(b)=2$. We shall show that $o(ab)=6$ and consequently G will be a cyclic group generated by ab .

We have $b^{-1} \neq a$, since $o(b^{-1})=o(b)=2$ while $o(a)=3$. Thus $ab \neq e$. Now $(ab)^2 = a^2 b^2 = a^2 e = a^2 \neq e$, since $o(a)=3$. Again $(ab)^3 = a^3 b^3 = eb^3 = eeb = b \neq e$. Therefore we must have $o(ab) > 3$. But $o(ab)$ must be a divisor of $o(G)$ i.e., 6. So $o(ab)$ can neither be 4 nor it can be 5. Hence we must have $o(ab)=6$ and consequently G is cyclic.

Exercises

1. Show that any two cyclic groups of the same order are isomorphic. (Jabalpur 1970; Marathwada 70; Mysore 70)
2. Show that all finite cyclic groups of order n are isomorphic to the additive group of integers modulo n . (Kerala 1970)
3. Find the order of each element in the multiplicative group of residues 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 prime to 7. Show that the group is cyclic

of order 6 and that it can be generated by 3 and 5 and not by any of the other elements. (Kerala 1970)

4. "A group may be isomorphic to one of its proper sub-groups". Either disprove this statement or give an example to prove it.

(Nagpur 1970)

5. Explain the statement, "every element of a group generates a subgroup". (Nagpur 1970)

6. Define a cyclic group.

Let a be a generator of a cyclic group G . Let $\phi: \mathbb{I} \rightarrow G$ be a mapping of the additive group of all integers \mathbb{I} onto G . (i) If ϕ is one-one, prove that G is isomorphic to \mathbb{I} . (ii) If ϕ is not one-one, prove that G is a finite cyclic group. (Kerala 1970)

7. Give an example to show that a group of order 4 is not necessarily cyclic.

8. Give an example of an infinite non-abelian group and one example of an abelian group which is not cyclic. (Mysore 1970)

9. If ω be the cube root of unity, show that the set $\{1, \omega, \omega^2\}$ is a cyclic group of order 3 with respect to multiplication. (Meerut 1975)

10. Show that the set U_n of n^{th} complex roots of unity forms a cyclic group with respect to multiplication. (Allahabad 1970)

11. Prove that a non-commutative group has at least six elements. (Banaras 1971)

12. What is the least order of a non-abelian group? Show that all proper sub-groups of a group of order 8 must be abelian. (Meerut 1976, 80)

13. Show that the group $(\{1, 2, 3, 4\} \times_5)$ is cyclic.

14. Show that the residue classes $\{1\}, \{3\}, \{5\}, \{7\}$ modulo 8 form a multiplicative group. Is this a cyclic group? Ans. No. (Kanpur 1970)

15. (i) How many generators are there of the cyclic group of order 10? Ans. Four i.e., a, a^3, a^7, a^9 .

(ii) How many generators can a cyclic group of order 12 have? (Ans. 4) (Meerut 1980, 82; Rajasthan 77)

16. How many elements of the cyclic group of order 6 can be used as generators of the group? Ans. Two i.e., a and a^5 .

17. Prove that each element $b \neq e$ in an infinite cyclic group $\{a\}$ is of infinite order.

18. Verify that the six matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

form a group for multiplication of matrices. Show that this group is cyclic and that it may be generated by either of the last two matrices.

19. Define a cyclic group. Let $G = \langle a \rangle$ be a finite cyclic group of order n . Show that the number of subgroups of G equals the number of divisors of n . (Meerut 1976)

20. Show that if G is a group of prime order p , then G is cyclic and has $(p-1)$ generators. (I.A.S. 1972)

21. Explain the notion of isomorphism of groups. Prove or disprove the following statements :

(i) Any infinite cyclic group is isomorphic to the group \mathbb{I} of integers under addition.

(ii) Any two finite groups with the same number of elements are isomorphic. (I.A.S. 1972)

22. Let G be a group having no proper subgroups. Show that G must be a finite group of order n where n is either 1 or a prime number. (Punjab 1970)

23. Prove that the order of a cyclic group is equal to the order of its generator.

24. Show that the number of generators of a finite cyclic group of order m is $\phi(m)$ where ϕ is the Euler's ϕ -function. (Meerut 1979)

25. Prove that a cyclic group with only one generator can have at most two elements. (Meerut 1980)

26. If the generator of a cyclic group G is of infinite order (or of order zero), prove that G is isomorphic to the additive group of integers.

§ 34. Subgroup generated by a subset of a group.

Definition. Let M be any arbitrary subset of a group G . Then a subgroup H of G is called the *smallest subgroup of G containing M* if H contains M and if H is contained in every subgroup of G containing M . (Osmania 1972)

The smallest subgroup of G containing M is called the subgroup generated by M and will be denoted by $\{M\}$ or by (M) .

Theorem 1. *Let M be any subset of a group G . Prove that the smallest subgroup of G containing M exists and is unique.*

Proof. Let $\{M\}$ be the smallest subgroup of G containing M . Let F be the family of all subgroups of G which contain M . The family F is not empty because at least G belongs to this family. It should be noted that G itself is a subgroup of G and G definitely contains M . Let H be the intersection of the family F . Then H is a subgroup of G . Also obviously $M \subseteq H$.

Let K be any subgroup of G containing M . Then K is a member of the family F . Since H is the intersection of the family F , therefore $H \subseteq K$.

$\therefore H = \{M\}$ i.e., H is the smallest subgroup of G containing M .

Uniqueness. Let H_1, H_2 be two smallest subgroups of G containing M . Then we have $H_1 \subseteq H_2$ and $H_2 \subseteq H_1$.

$\therefore H_1 = H_2$.

Theorem 2. *Let M be a subset of a group G . Then the set of elements of G expressible as products of positive and negative integral powers of finite numbers of elements of M is the smallest subgroup of G containing M .*

Proof. The proof is easy. Let H be the set of those elements of G which can be expressed as products of positive and negative integral powers of finite numbers of elements of M . Let $a, b \in H$. Then obviously $ab^{-1} \in H$. Therefore, H is a subgroup of G . Obviously $M \subseteq H$. Also if K is any subgroup of G containing M , then definitely H must be contained in K . Therefore,

$$H = \{M\}.$$

§ 35. Generating system of a group.

Definition. A set M of a group G is said to be a generating system of G , if the subgroup generated by M coincides with G i.e.,

$$G = \{M\}.$$

Every arbitrary group possesses at least one generating system namely, the group itself.

Independent generating system. A generating system is said to be irreducible or independent if no proper subset of it can generate G . Thus if $G = \{M\}$ and if no member of M belongs to the subgroup of G generated by the set of remaining members of M , then M is an independent generating system of G .]

It can be easily seen that every finite group possesses an independent generating system. As infinite group may or may not possess an independent generating system. *A finite group may possess several distinct independent generating systems containing different numbers of elements.* It will be clear from the following example.

Example. Let G be the cyclic group of order 6.

Let $G = \{a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6 = e\}$.

The elements a and a^5 are both generators of G . We have

$$G = \{a\}, G = \{a^5\}.$$

Both these are independent generating systems of G . Also

$$G = \{a^2, a^3\}.$$

The two elements a^2, a^3 also form an independent generating system because any of these elements does not lie in the subgroup generated by the other. The subgroup generated by a^2 is $\{a^2, a^4, a^6 = e\}$ and a^3 is not in it. The subgroup generated by a^3 is $\{a^3, a^6 = e\}$ and a^2 is not in it.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that the set of permutations

$$(1\ 2), (1\ 3), \dots, (1\ n)$$

is an independent generating set for the symmetric group P_n of permutations of degree n .

Solution. We know that every permutation in P_n can be expressed as the product of disjoint cycles.

Now we shall show that every cycle can be expressed as product of members of the given set. Then the given set will generate P_n .

For a cycle containing the symbol 1, we have

$$(1\ a_1\ a_2 \dots a_k) = (1\ a_1)(1\ a_2) \dots (1\ a_k).$$

For a cycle not containing the symbol 1, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (b_1\ b_2 \dots b_l) &= (1\ b_1)(1\ b_2 \dots b_l\ b_1) \\ &= (1\ b_1)(1\ b_2)(1\ b_3) \dots (1\ b_l)(1\ b_1). \end{aligned}$$

Thus every permutation in P_n can be expressed as a product of members of the given set.

Also we see that each member of the given set of permutations contains an element not contained in any of the others. Therefore P_n cannot be generated by a proper subset of the given set of permutations. Hence the given set of permutations is an independent generating system of P_n .

Ex. 2. Show that the $(n-1)$ permutations
 $(1\ 2), (2\ 3), \dots, (n-1\ n)$
 constitute a set of independent generators of P_n .

Solution. We have

$$(2\ 3)(1\ 2)(2\ 3) = (1\ 3),$$

$$(3\ 4)(1\ 3)(3\ 4) = (1\ 4),$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$(n-1\ n)(1\ n-1)(n-1\ n) = (1\ n).$$

Therefore each member of the set of permutations

$$(1\ 2), (1\ 3), \dots, (1\ n)$$

is generated by the given set of permutations.

Now as shown in exercise 1, the set of permutations

$$(1\ 2), (1\ 3), \dots, (1\ n)$$

generates P_n .

Therefore the set of permutations

$$(1\ 2), (2\ 3), \dots, (n-1\ n)$$

also generates P_n .

Also we see that each member of the given set of permutations contains an element not contained in any of the others. Therefore P_n cannot be generated by a proper subset of the given set of permutations. Hence the given set of permutations is an independent generating system of P_n .

Ex. 3. Let S_3 be the group of permutations of the set $\{1, 2, 3\}$.
 Prove that $\{(1\ 2), (1\ 2\ 3)\}$ generates S_3 . (Meerut 1973)

Groups (Continued)

§ 1. Normal subgroups. Let G be an abelian group the composition in G being denoted multiplicatively. Let H be any subgroup of G . If x is any element of G , then Hx is a right coset of H in G and xH is a left coset of H in G . Also G is abelian, therefore we must have $Hx = xH \forall x \in G$. However it is possible that G is not abelian, yet it possesses a subgroup H such that $Hx = xH \forall x \in G$. Such subgroups of a group G come under the category of normal subgroups and these are very important.

Normal subgroup. Definition.

(I. A. S. 1970; Guru Nanak 82; Nagarjuna 80; B.H.U. 87; Patna 86; Meerut 81, 82, 83, 84, 86, 87, 90, 91; Kanpur 87, 88; Allahabad 80)

A subgroup H of a group G is said to be a normal subgroup of G if for every $x \in G$ and for every $h \in H$, $xhx^{-1} \in H$.

From this definition we can immediately conclude that H is a normal subgroup of G if and only if $xHx^{-1} \subseteq H \forall x \in G$.

Remark. We have $x \in G \Rightarrow x^{-1} \in G$. Therefore H is a normal subgroup of G iff $x^{-1} h (x^{-1})^{-1}$ i.e., $x^{-1} hx \in H \forall x \in G$ and $\forall h \in H$.

Every group G possesses at least two normal subgroups namely G itself and the subgroup consisting of the identity element e alone. These are called improper normal subgroups. There exist groups for which these are the only normal subgroups. Such groups are known as simple groups.

Simple Group. Definition. *A group having no proper normal subgroups is called a simple group.*

Every group of prime order is simple. By Lagrange's theorem such a group has no proper subgroups.

Theorem 1. *A subgroup H of a group G is normal if and only if $xHx^{-1} = H \forall x \in G$.*

(Rajasthan 1978; Meerut 84, 87, 91; Kanpur 87; I.C.S. 82)

Proof. Let $xHx^{-1} = H \forall x \in G$. Then $xHx^{-1} \subseteq H \forall x \in G$. Therefore H is a normal subgroup of G .

Converse. Let H be a normal subgroup of G .

Then $xHx^{-1} \subseteq H \forall x \in G$...(1)

Also $x \in G \Rightarrow x^{-1} \in G$. Therefore we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 x^{-1} H (x^{-1})^{-1} &\subseteq H \quad \forall x \in G \Rightarrow x^{-1} H x \subseteq H \quad \forall x \in G \\
 &\Rightarrow x (x^{-1} H x) x^{-1} \subseteq x H x^{-1} \quad \forall x \in G \\
 &\Rightarrow H \subseteq x H x^{-1} \text{ for all } x \in G. \quad \dots(2)
 \end{aligned}$$

From (1) and (2), we conclude that $x H x^{-1} = H$ for all $x \in G$.

Theorem 2. A subgroup H of a group G is a normal subgroup of G if and only if each left coset of H in G is a right coset of H in G . (Kanpur 1986; I.A.S. 72; Nagarjuna 79; Meerut 82, 87, 89)

Proof. Let H be a normal subgroup of G .

Then $x H x^{-1} = H \quad \forall x \in G \Rightarrow (x H x^{-1}) x = H x$ for all $x \in G$

$$\Rightarrow x H = H x \text{ for all } x \in G$$

\Rightarrow each left coset $x H$ is the right coset $H x$.

Conversely suppose that each left coset of H in G is a right coset of H in G . Let x be any element of G . Then

$$x H = H y, \text{ for some } y \in G.$$

Since $e \in H$, therefore $x e = x \in x H$.

$$\therefore x \in H y. \quad [\because H y = H x]$$

But $x \in H y \Rightarrow H x = H y$ [See theorem 3, page 154]

$$\therefore H x = x H. \quad [\because H y = x H]$$

Thus we have

$$x H = H x \quad \forall x \in G \Rightarrow x H x^{-1} = H x x^{-1} \quad \forall x \in G$$

$$\Rightarrow x H x^{-1} = H \quad \forall x \in G \Rightarrow H \text{ is a normal subgroup of } G.$$

Thus H is a normal subgroup of $G \Leftrightarrow x H = H x \quad \forall x \in G$.

Theorem 3. A subgroup H of a group G is a normal subgroup of G if and only if the product of two right cosets of H in G is again a right coset of H in G . (Andhra 1987; Meerut 80, 83, 88, 90)

Proof. Let H be a normal subgroup of a group G . Let a, b be any two elements of G . Then $H a$ and $H b$ are two right cosets of H in G . We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (H a) (H b) &= H (a H) b \\
 &= H (H a) b \quad [\because H \text{ is normal} \Rightarrow H a = a H] \\
 &= H H a b = H a b. \quad [\because H H = H]
 \end{aligned}$$

Since $a \in G, b \in G \Rightarrow a b \in G$, therefore $H a b$ is also a right coset of H in G . Thus the product of the right cosets $H a$ and $H b$ is the right coset $H a b$.

Converse. Let H be a subgroup of G such that the product of two right cosets of H in G is again a right coset of H in G . Let x be any element of G . Then $x^{-1} \in G$. Therefore $H x$ and $H x^{-1}$ are two right cosets of H in G . Consequently, by hypothesis $H x H x^{-1}$ is also a right coset of H in G . Since $e \in H$, therefore $e x e x^{-1} = e$

is an element of the right coset $HxHx^{-1}$. But H itself is a right coset of H in G and $e \in H$. Also if two right cosets have one element common they must be identical. Therefore we must have

$$\begin{aligned} HxHx^{-1} &= H \quad \forall x \in G \\ \Rightarrow h_1 x h x^{-1} &\in H \quad \forall x \in G \text{ and } \forall h_1, h \in H \\ \Rightarrow h_1^{-1} (h_1 x h x^{-1}) &\in h_1^{-1} H \quad \forall x \in G \text{ and } \forall h_1, h \in H \\ \Rightarrow x h x^{-1} &\in H \quad \forall x \in G \text{ and } \forall h \in H \\ [\because h_1^{-1} H &= H \text{ as } h_1^{-1} \in H \text{ since } h_1 \in H] \\ \Rightarrow H &\text{ is a normal subgroup of } G. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 4. *The intersection of any two normal subgroups of a group is a normal subgroup.*

(Madras 1983; Meerut 86, 87; Kanpur 88; Patna 86)

Proof. Let H and K be two normal subgroups of a group G . Since H and K are subgroups of G , therefore $H \cap K$ is also a subgroup of G . Now to prove that $H \cap K$ is a normal subgroup of G . Let x be any element of G and n be any element of $H \cap K$. We have $n \in H \cap K \Rightarrow n \in H, n \in K$. Since H is a normal subgroup of G , therefore $x \in G, n \in H \Rightarrow x n x^{-1} \in H$. Similarly $x n x^{-1} \in K$.

Now $x n x^{-1} \in H, x n x^{-1} \in K \Rightarrow x n x^{-1} \in H \cap K$.

Thus we have $x \in G, n \in H \cap K \Rightarrow x n x^{-1} \in H \cap K$.

Hence $H \cap K$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Theorem 5. *The intersection of any collection of normal subgroups is itself a normal subgroup.* (Meerut 1980; Kanpur 80)

Proof. Let G be a group and let $\{H_i : i \in T\}$ be any family of normal subgroups of G . Here T is an index set and is such that $\forall i \in T, H_i$ is a normal subgroup of G .

$$\text{Let } H = \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i = \{a \in G : a \in H_i, \forall i \in T\}$$

be the intersection of this family of normal subgroups of G . Then to prove that H is also a normal subgroup of G .

We know that the intersection of any collection of subgroups is itself a subgroup. Therefore H is a subgroup of G . Now to prove that H is a normal subgroup of G .

$$\text{Let } x \text{ be any element of } G \text{ and } h \text{ be any element of } H = \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i.$$

We have $h \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i \Rightarrow h \in H_i, \forall i \in T$. Since H_i is a normal subgroup of G , therefore $x \in G, h \in H_i \Rightarrow x h x^{-1} \in H_i$.

$$\text{Thus we have } x \in G, h \in \bigcap_{i \in T} H_i \Rightarrow x h x^{-1} \in H_i, \forall i \in T$$

$$\Rightarrow xhx^{-1} \in \cap H_i \Rightarrow \cap H_i \text{ is a normal subgroup of } G.$$

$$t \in T \quad t \in T$$

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that every subgroup of an abelian group is normal.
(Kanpur 1980; Meerut 79; Guru Nanak 75)

Solution. Let G be an abelian group and H a subgroup of G . Let x be any element of G and h any element of H . We have

$$xhx^{-1} = xx^{-1}h \quad [\because G \text{ is abelian} \Rightarrow x^{-1}h = hx^{-1}]$$

$$= eh = h \in H.$$

Thus $x \in G, h \in H \Rightarrow xhx^{-1} \in H$. Hence H is normal in G .

Note. Since every cyclic group is abelian, {therefore every subgroup of a cyclic group is normal.

Ex. 2. Let P_n be the symmetric group on n symbols. Prove that A_n is a normal subgroup of P_n . (Rajasthan 1977; Nagarjuna 79; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87; I.C.S. 88; Kanpur 86)

Solution. Let α be any element of P_n and β any element of A_n . Then β is an even permutation and α may be odd or even. We claim that $\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}$ is an even permutation.

If α is odd, then α^{-1} is also odd. Now $\alpha\beta$ is odd and consequently $\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}$ is even.

If α is even, then α^{-1} is also even. Now $\alpha\beta$ is even and consequently $\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}$ is even.

Thus $\alpha \in P_n, \beta \in A_n \Rightarrow \alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} \in A_n$. Hence A_n is a normal subgroup of P_n .

Ex. 3. If G is a group and H is a subgroup of index 2 in G , prove that H is a normal subgroup of G .

(Nagarjuna 1978; I.A.S. 74; Poona 73; Allahabad 85; Raj. 78; Meerut 82P, 83P, 84P; Madurai 88)

Solution. Let H be a subgroup of index 2 in a group G . Then the number of distinct right (left) cosets of H in G is 2. Let x be any element of G . If $x \in H$, then we have

$$xH = H = Hx.$$

If $x \notin H$, then the right coset Hx is distinct from H and the left coset xH is distinct from H . But H is of index 2; therefore the number of distinct right (left) cosets in right (left) coset decomposition of G will be 2. Therefore the cosets H, Hx, xH are such that $G = H \cup Hx = H \cup xH$. But there is no element common to H and Hx and also there is no element common to H and xH . Therefore we must have $Hx = xH$. Thus we have $Hx = xH \forall x \in G$. Hence H is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 4. H is a normal subgroup of G and K is a subgroup of G such that $H \subseteq K \subseteq G$. Show that H is also a normal subgroup of K .

Solution. H is a normal subgroup of G . Therefore H is a subgroup of G . But K is a subgroup of G and $H \subseteq K$. Therefore H is also a subgroup of K . Now to show that H is normal in K . Let x be any element of K . Then $x \in K \Rightarrow x \in G$. Since H is normal in G , therefore we have $Hx = xH$. Thus H is a subgroup of K and we have $Hx = xH \forall x \in K$. Hence H is a normal subgroup of K .

Ex. 5. If H is a subgroup of G and N is a normal subgroup of G , show that $H \cap N$ is a normal subgroup of H .

(Meerut 1979, 81; Punjab 66; Kanpur 86)

Solution. Since H and N are subgroups of G , therefore $H \cap N$ is also a subgroup of G . Also we have $H \cap N \subseteq H$. Therefore $H \cap N$ is a subgroup of H . Now to show that $H \cap N$ is a normal subgroup of H .

Let x be any element of H and a any element of $H \cap N$. Then $a \in H$ and $a \in N$. Since N is a normal subgroup of G , therefore we have $xax^{-1} \in N$. Also H is a subgroup of G . Therefore, we have $x \in H, a \in H \Rightarrow xax^{-1} \in H$.

Thus $xax^{-1} \in H \cap N$. Thus we have shown that

$$x \in H, a \in H \cap N \Rightarrow xax^{-1} \in H \cap N.$$

Consequently $H \cap N$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 6. Show that a normal subgroup is commutative with every complex.

(Meerut 1979)

Solution. Suppose N is a normal subgroup and H is any complex of a group G . Then to prove that $HN = NH$.

Let $nh \in NH$ where $n \in N, h \in H$. We can write $nh = hh^{-1}nh = h(h^{-1}nh)$. But N is a normal subgroup. Therefore $h^{-1}nh \in N$. Hence $nh \in HN$. Therefore $NH \subseteq HN$.

Again let $hn \in HN$ where $h \in H, n \in N$. We can write $hn = (hnh^{-1})h$. But $hnh^{-1} \in N$ because N is normal in G .

Therefore $hn \in NH$. Thus $HN \subseteq NH$. Hence $HN = NH$.

Ex. 7. If N is a normal subgroup of G and H is any subgroup of G , prove that NH is a subgroup of G . (G.N.D.U. 1986)

Solution. We know that a normal subgroup is commutative with every complex.

Since N is a normal subgroup of G and H is any subgroup of G , therefore we must have $NH = HN$. Now N and H are two subgroups of G such that $NH = HN$. Therefore NH is also a subgroup of G . [See Theorem 1 on page 144 of first chapter on groups].

Ex. 8. If H is a subgroup of G and N is a normal subgroup of G , show that

(i) HN is a subgroup of G .

(ii) N is a normal subgroup of HN .

(Punjab 1966)

Solution. (i) Proceed as in Ex. 7.

(ii) Since $e \in H$, therefore obviously $N \subseteq HN$. Because if $n \in N$, then we can write $n = en$ which is an element of HN .

Now HN is a subgroup of G and N is also a subgroup of G . Also $N \subseteq HN$. Therefore N is a subgroup of HN . Now to show that N is a normal subgroup of HN . Let $h_1 n_1$ be any element of HN and n be any element of N . Then $h_1 \in H$, $n_1 \in N$ and we have $(h_1 n_1) n (h_1 n_1)^{-1} = h_1 (n_1 n n_1^{-1}) h_1^{-1} \in N$ since N is normal in G and $n_1 n n_1^{-1} \in N$, $h_1 \in G$. Therefore N is a normal subgroup of HN .

Ex. 9. If N and M are normal subgroups of G , prove that NM is also a normal subgroup of G . (Nagarjuna 1978)

Solution. We know that a normal subgroup is commutative with every complex. Therefore we have $NM = MN$. Now N and M are two subgroups of G such that $NM = MN$. Therefore NM is a subgroup of G .

Now to show that NM is a normal subgroup of G . Let x be any element of G and nm be any element of NM . Then $n \in N$, $m \in M$ and we have

$$x(nm)x^{-1} = (xn x^{-1})(xm x^{-1})$$

$$\in NM$$

$$[\because N \text{ is normal} \Rightarrow xnx^{-1} \in N \text{ and } M \text{ is normal} \Rightarrow xmx^{-1} \in M].$$

Hence NM is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 10. Suppose that N and M are two normal subgroups of G and that $N \cap M = \{e\}$. Show that every element of N commutes with every element of M .

(Meerut 1971, 79, 81; Lucknow 70; I.C.S. 88)

Solution. Let n be any element of N and m any element of M . Then to prove that $nm = mn$. Consider the element $nmn^{-1}m^{-1}$.

Since N is normal, $mn^{-1}m^{-1} \in N$. Also $n \in N$. Therefore $nmn^{-1}m^{-1} \in N$.

Again M is normal $\Rightarrow nm n^{-1} \in M$. Also $m^{-1} \in M$. Therefore $nm n^{-1} m^{-1} \in M$. Thus

$$nm n^{-1} m^{-1} \in N \text{ and } nm n^{-1} m^{-1} \in M$$

$$\Rightarrow nm n^{-1} m^{-1} \in N \cap M$$

$$\Rightarrow nm n^{-1} m^{-1} = e$$

$$[\because \{e\} = N \cap M]$$

$$\Rightarrow nm = mn.$$

Ex. 11. Let G be a group, H a subgroup of G . Let, for $g \in G$, $gHg^{-1} = \{ghg^{-1} : h \in H\}$.

Prove that gHg^{-1} is a subgroup of G . (Meerut 1979)

Solution. Let gh_1g^{-1}, gh_2g^{-1} be any two elements of gHg^{-1} . Then $h_1, h_2 \in H$. Also we have

$$\begin{aligned}(gh_1g^{-1})(gh_2g^{-1})^{-1} &= gh_1g^{-1}(g^{-1})^{-1}h_2^{-1}g^{-1} = gh_1g^{-1}gh_2^{-1}g^{-1} \\ &= gh_1h_2^{-1}g^{-1} \in gHg^{-1} \text{ since } h_1h_2^{-1} \in H.\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore gHg^{-1}$ is a subgroup of G .

Ex. 12. Suppose H is the only subgroup of finite order m in the group G . Prove that H is a normal subgroup of G .

(Meerut 1987; Madurai 88)

Solution. H is a subgroup of G and $o(H) = m$. If x is any element of G then as in Ex. 11, xHx^{-1} is also a subgroup of G . We shall show that $o(xHx^{-1}) = m$. Let $H = \{h_1, h_2, \dots, h_m\}$.

Then $xHx^{-1} = \{xh_1x^{-1}, xh_2x^{-1}, \dots, xh_mx^{-1}\}$.

The number of distinct elements in xHx^{-1} is m because

$$xh_ix^{-1} = xh_jx^{-1} \Rightarrow h_i = h_j.$$

$\therefore o(xHx^{-1}) = o(H) = m$.

But H is the only subgroup of G of order m . Therefore we must have $xHx^{-1} = H \forall x \in G$. Hence H is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 13. If H is a subgroup of G , let $N(H) = \{g \in G : gHg^{-1} = H\}$.

Show that

- (i) $N(H)$ is a subgroup of G .
- (ii) H is a normal subgroup of $N(H)$.
- (iii) If H is a normal subgroup of the subgroup K in G , then $K \subseteq N(H)$ i.e., $N(H)$ is the largest subgroup of G in which H is normal.

(iv) H is normal in G if and only if $N(H) = G$.

(Poona 1973)

Solution. Let $a, b \in N(H)$.

Then by def. of $N(H)$ we have $aHa^{-1} = H$ and $bHb^{-1} = H$.

Now $bHb^{-1} = H$

$$\Rightarrow b^{-1}(bHb^{-1})b = b^{-1}Hb \Rightarrow H = b^{-1}Hb.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } (ab^{-1})H(ab^{-1})^{-1} &= ab^{-1}Hba^{-1} = a(b^{-1}Hb)a^{-1} \\ &= aHa^{-1} \quad [\because H = b^{-1}Hb] \\ &= H.\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore ab^{-1} \in N(H).$$

Thus $a, b \in N(H) \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in N(H)$.

Hence $N(H)$ is a subgroup of G .

(ii) Let h be any element of H . Since $hHh^{-1} = H$, therefore $h \in N(H)$. Thus $H \subseteq N(H)$. Therefore H is a subgroup of $N(H)$. Now to show that H is normal in $N(H)$. Let x be any element of $N(H)$. Then by definition of $N(H)$, we have $xHx^{-1} = H$. Therefore H is a normal subgroup of $N(H)$.

(iii) Let $k \in K$.

Since H is a normal subgroup of K , therefore we have $kHk^{-1} = H \Rightarrow k \in N(H)$. Thus $k \in K \Rightarrow k \in N(H)$. Therefore $K \subseteq N(H)$.

(iv) Let H be normal in G . Let $x \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} xHx^{-1} &= H & [\because H \text{ is normal in } G] \\ &\Rightarrow x \in N(H). \end{aligned}$$

Thus $x \in G \Rightarrow x \in N(H)$. Therefore $G \subseteq N(H)$. But $N(H) \subseteq G$. Therefore $G = N(H)$.

Conversely let $N(H) = G$. Then $x \in G \Rightarrow x \in N(H) \Rightarrow xHx^{-1} = H$. Thus we have $xHx^{-1} = H \forall x \in G$. Therefore H is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 14. If a cyclic subgroup N of G is normal in G , then show that every subgroup of N is normal in G .

Solution. Let a be a generator of N . Let H be any subgroup of N . We know that every subgroup of a cyclic group is cyclic. Therefore H is cyclic and a^m will be a generator of H where m is the least positive integer such that $a^m \in H$.

Now to show that H is normal in G . Suppose x is any arbitrary element of G and h is any arbitrary element of H . Then $h = (a^m)^k$ where k is some integer.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } xhx^{-1} &= x(a^m)^k x^{-1} = x(a^k)^m x^{-1} \\ &= (xa^k x^{-1})(xa^k x^{-1}) \dots \text{to } m \text{ factors} = (xa^k x^{-1})^m. \end{aligned} \quad \dots(1)$$

Now a is a generator of N . Therefore $a^k \in N$.

Also N is normal in G . Therefore, we have

$$x \in G, a^k \in N \Rightarrow xa^k x^{-1} \in N.$$

$\therefore xa^k x^{-1} = a^s$ for some integer s because a is a generator of N . Then from (1), we get $xhx^{-1} = (a^s)^m = (a^m)^s \in H$ because a^m is a generator of H .

Thus $x \in G, h \in H \Rightarrow xhx^{-1} \in H$. Hence H is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 15. Give an example to show that if H is a normal subgroup of G and K is a normal subgroup of H then K may not be a normal subgroup of G . (Allahabad 1980)

Solution. Consider the following subgroups of S_4 , the symmetric group of permutations on four symbols a, b, c, d :

$$G = \{I, (abcd), (adcb), (ab)(cd), (ac)(bd), (ad)(bc), (ac), (bd)\},$$

$$H = \{I, (ab)(cd), (ac)(bd), (ad)(bc)\},$$

$$\text{and } K = \{I, (ab)(cd)\}.$$

It can be easily seen that H is a subgroup of G and K is a subgroup of H . Further any subgroup of index two in a group is a normal subgroup of the group. Here the index of H in G i.e.,

$$[G : H] = o(G)/o(H) = 8/4 = 2.$$

Therefore H is normal in G . Also $[H : K] = o(H)/o(K) = 4/2 = 2$. Therefore K is also normal in H . But here K is not a normal subgroup of G as can be easily seen. Take the element $(abcd) \in G$ and the element $(ab)(cd) \in K$. We have

$$(abcd)(ab)(cd)(abcd)^{-1} = (abcd)(ab)(cd)(dcba) = (ad)(bc) \notin K.$$

Therefore K is not a normal subgroup of G .

Exercises

1. Show that a subgroup H of a group G is normal if and only if the set G/H of all its left cosets is closed under (complex) multiplication. (Punjab 1970; Dibrugarh 76; Meerut 85, 91)

[Hint: Proceed as in Theorem 3 on page 189].

2. Determine the coset decompositions of the subgroup

$$H = \{I, (1\ 2)\}$$

in S_3 the permutation group of degree 3; and further show that H is not normal in S_3 . (Rajasthan 1977)

3. Show that a subgroup of index 2 is always an invariant (normal) subgroup. Hence show that alternating group A_n is an invariant subgroup of S_n the symmetric group of degree n .

(Lucknow 1970; Madurai 88)

4. If M and N are two normal subgroups of G and $M \cap N = (e)$, then prove that for any $n \in N, m \in M$

$$nm = mn.$$

5. Let G be a group and N a subgroup of G . Prove that the following statements are equivalent:

(i) $gng^{-1} \in N$ for all $g \in G, n \in N$.

(ii) $gNg^{-1} = N$ for all $g \in G$.

(iii) Every left coset of N in G is a right coset of N in G .

(iv) Product of two right cosets of N in G is again a right coset of N in G . (Meerut 1974)

6. Show that if H and N are subgroups of a group G , and N is normal in G , then $H \cap N$ is normal in H . Show by an example that $H \cap N$ need not be normal in G . (I.A.S. 1971)

7. Give an example of each of the following:

(i) A sub-group H of some group G , which is not normal in G .

(ii) A non-trivial sub-group H of a non-abelian group G , which is normal in G . (Guru Nanak 1975)

§ 2. Conjugate elements.

Definition.

(Agra 1969; Banaras 61)

If a, b be two elements of a group G , then b is said to be conjugate to a if there exists an element $x \in G$ such that

$$b = x^{-1} a x.$$

If $b = x^{-1} a x$, then b is also called the transform of a by x .

If b is conjugate to a then symbolically we shall write $b \sim a$ and this relation in G will be called the relation of conjugacy. Thus $b \sim a$ iff $b = x^{-1} a x$ for some $x \in G$.

Theorem 1. The relation of conjugacy is an equivalence relation on G . (Vikram 1976; Banaras 61; Kanpur 88)

Proof. Reflexivity. If a is any element of G , then we have

$$a = e^{-1} a e \Rightarrow a \sim a.$$

Thus $a \sim a \forall a \in G$. Therefore the relation is reflexive.

Symmetry. We have $a \sim b \Rightarrow a = x^{-1} b x$ for some $x \in G$
 $\Rightarrow x a x^{-1} = x (x^{-1} b x) x^{-1} \Rightarrow x a x^{-1} = b \Rightarrow b = (x^{-1})^{-1} a x^{-1}$ where $x^{-1} \in G$
 $\Rightarrow b \sim a$.

Therefore the relation is symmetric.

Transitivity. Let $a \sim b, b \sim c$. Then $a = x^{-1} b x, b = y^{-1} c y$ for some $x, y \in G$. From this we get

$$\begin{aligned} a &= x^{-1} (y^{-1} c y) x & [\because b = y^{-1} c y] \\ &= (y x)^{-1} c (y x) \text{ where } y x \in G. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore a \sim c$ and thus the relation is transitive. Hence the relation of conjugacy in a group G is an equivalence relation. Therefore it will partition G into disjoint equivalence classes called classes of conjugate elements. These classes will be such that

(i) any two elements of the same class are conjugate.

(ii) no two elements of different classes are conjugate.

The collection of all elements conjugate to an element $a \in G$ will be symbolically denoted by $C(a)$ or by \bar{a} . Thus

$$C(a) = \{x \in G : x \sim a\}.$$

$C(a)$ will be called the *conjugate class* of a in G . We have $(y^{-1}ay) \sim a$ for all $y \in G$. Also if $b \sim a$ then b must be equal to $y^{-1}ay$ for some $y \in G$. Therefore $C(a) = \{y^{-1}ay : y \in G\}$.

If G is a finite group, then the number of distinct elements in $C(a)$ will be denoted by c_a .

Normalizer of an element of a group.

Definition. If $a \in G$, then $N(a)$, the *normalizer* of a in G is the set of all those elements of G which commute with a . Symbolically $N(a) = \{x \in G : ax = xa\}$.

(I.A.S. 1975; Nagarjuna 78; Meerut 81, 84, 88; B.H.U. 88)

Theorem 2. The normalizer $N(a)$ of $a \in G$ is a subgroup of G . (Agra 1986; I.A.S. 72; Kanpur 86; Meerut 84, 88; Punjab 70)

Proof. We have $N(a) = \{x \in G : ax = xa\}$.

Let $x_1, x_2 \in N(a)$. Then $ax_1 = x_1a$, $ax_2 = x_2a$.

First we show that $x_2^{-1} \in N(a)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } ax_2 &= x_2a \Rightarrow x_2^{-1}(ax_2)x_2^{-1} = x_2^{-1}(x_2a)x_2^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow x_2^{-1}a = ax_2^{-1} \Rightarrow x_2^{-1} \in N(a). \end{aligned}$$

Now we shall show that $x_1x_2^{-1} \in N(a)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } a(x_1x_2^{-1}) &= (ax_1)x_2^{-1} = (x_1a)x_2^{-1} \\ &= x_1(ax_2^{-1}) = x_1(x_2^{-1}a) = (x_1x_2^{-1})a. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x_1x_2^{-1} \in N(a).$$

Thus $x_1, x_2 \in N(a) \Rightarrow x_1x_2^{-1} \in N(a)$

$\therefore N(a)$ is a subgroup of G .

Note 1. It should be noted that $N(a)$ is not necessarily a normal subgroup of G .

Note 2. Since $ex = xe \forall x \in G$, therefore $N(e) = G$.

Note 3. If G is an abelian group and $a \in G$, then

$$xa = ax \forall x \in G. \text{ Therefore } N(a) = G.$$

Theorem 3. Let a be any element of a group G . Then two elements $x, y \in G$ give rise to the same conjugate of a if and only if they belong to the same right coset of the normalizer of a in G .

Hence show that if G is a finite group, then $c_a = \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}$, i.e., the number of elements conjugate to a in G is the index of the normalizer of a in G .

(Nagarjuna 1978; I.A.S. 72; Meerut 74; Kanpur 87; B.H.U. 88)

Proof. We have

$x, y \in G$ are in the same right coset of $N(a)$ in G

- $\Leftrightarrow N(a)x = N(a)y$ [$\because x \in N(a)x, y \in N(a)y$. Note that if H is a subgroup, then $x \in Hx$.]
 $\Leftrightarrow xy^{-1} \in N(a)$ [\because if H is a subgroup, then $Ha = Hb \Leftrightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$]
 $\Leftrightarrow axy^{-1} = xy^{-1}a$ [by def. of $N(a)$]
 $\Leftrightarrow x^{-1}(axy^{-1})y = x^{-1}(xy^{-1}a)y$
 $\Leftrightarrow x^{-1}ax = y^{-1}ay$
 $\Leftrightarrow x, y$ give rise to the same conjugate of a .

Hence the first result follows.

Now consider the right coset decomposition of G with respect to the subgroup $N(a)$. We have just proved that if $x, y \in G$ are in the same right coset of $N(a)$ in G , then they give the same conjugate of a . Further if x, y are in different right cosets of $N(a)$ in G , then they give rise to different conjugates of a . The reason is that if x, y give the same conjugate of a , then they must belong to the same right coset of $N(a)$ in G . Thus there is a one-to-one correspondence between the right cosets $N(a)$ in G and the conjugates of a . So if G is a finite group, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 c_a &= \text{the number of distinct elements in } C(a) \\
 &= \text{the number of distinct right cosets of } N(a) \text{ in } G \\
 &= \text{the index of } N(a) \text{ in } G = \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Corollary. If G is a finite group, then

$$o(G) = \sum \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}$$

where this sum runs over one element a in each conjugate class.

(Punjab 1970; Meerut 84P)

Proof. We know that the relation of conjugacy is an equivalence relation on G . Therefore it partitions G into disjoint conjugate classes. The union of all distinct conjugate classes will be equal to G and two distinct conjugate classes will have no common element. Since G is a finite group, therefore the number of distinct conjugate classes of G will be finite, say equal to k . Suppose $C(a)$ denotes the conjugate class of a in G and c_a denotes the number of elements in this class. If $C(a_1), C(a_2), \dots, C(a_k)$ are the k distinct conjugate classes of G , then

$$G = C(a_1) \cup C(a_2) \cup \dots \cup C(a_k)$$

\Rightarrow the number of elements in G = the number of elements in

$C(a_1) + \text{the number of elements in } C(a_2) + \dots + \text{the number of elements in } C(a_k).$

\therefore two distinct conjugate classes have no common element]
 $\Rightarrow o(G) = \sum C(a)$, the summation being run over one element a in each conjugate class

$$\Rightarrow o(G) = \sum \frac{o(G)}{[N(a)]} \text{ by previous theorem.}$$

Note. The equation in this corollary is often called the class equation of G .

Self-conjugate elements.

Definition. An element $a \in G$ is said to be self-conjugate if a is the only member of the class $C(a)$ of elements conjugate to a i.e., if $C(a) = \{a\}$.

Thus, a , is self-conjugate if and only if $a = x^{-1}ax \forall x \in G$ or $xa = ax \forall x \in G$.

Thus a self-conjugate element is one which commutes with each element of the group. If a is a self-conjugate element, then we have $a = x^{-1}ax \forall x \in G$.

Thus the transform of a by every element of G remains equal to a . Therefore sometimes a self-conjugate element is also called an invariant element.

The centre of a group.

Definition. The set Z of all self-conjugate elements of a group G is called the centre of G . Symbolically

$$Z = \{z \in G : zx = xz \forall x \in G\}.$$

(Punjab 1968; B.H.U. 71; Meerut 90)

Theorem 4. The centre Z of a group G is a normal subgroup of G .
 (Banaras 1971; Meerut 81, 90; Agra 86)

Proof. We have $Z = \{z \in G : zx = xz \forall x \in G\}$.

First we shall prove that Z is a subgroup of G .

Let $z_1, z_2 \in Z$. Then $z_1x = xz_1$ and $z_2x = xz_2$ for all $x \in G$.

We have $z_2x = xz_2 \forall x \in G$

$$\Rightarrow z_2^{-1}(z_2x)z_2^{-1} = z_2^{-1}(xz_2)z_2^{-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow xz_2^{-1} = z_2^{-1}x \forall x \in G$$

$$\Rightarrow z_2^{-1} \in Z.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (z_1z_2^{-1})x &= z_1(z_2^{-1}x) = z_1(xz_2^{-1}) = (z_1x)z_2^{-1} = (xz_1)z_2^{-1} \\ &= x(z_1z_2^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore z_1z_2^{-1} \in Z.$$

Thus $z_1, z_2 \in Z \Rightarrow z_1z_2^{-1} \in Z$.

$\therefore Z$ is a subgroup of G .

Now we shall show that Z is a normal subgroup of G . Let $x \in G$ and $z \in Z$. Then

$$xzx^{-1} = (xz)x^{-1} = (zx)x^{-1} = z \in Z.$$

Thus $x \in G, z \in Z \Rightarrow xzx^{-1} \in Z$.

$\therefore Z$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Theorem 5. $a \in Z$ if and only if $N(a) = G$. If G is finite, $a \in Z$ if and only if $o[N(a)] = o(G)$. (Nagarjuna 1978)

Proof. Let $a \in Z$. Then by def. of Z , we have

$$ax = xa \quad \forall x \in G.$$

Also $N(a) = \{x \in G : ax = xa\}$.

Now $a \in Z \Leftrightarrow ax = xa \quad \forall x \in G$ [by def. of Z]
 $\Leftrightarrow x \in N(a) \quad \forall x \in G$ [by def. of $N(a)$]
 $\Leftrightarrow N(a) = G$. [$\because N(a) \subseteq G$ and each element of G is in $N(a)$]

If the group G is finite, then $N(a) = G \Leftrightarrow o(G) = o[N(a)]$.

Therefore if the group G is finite, then $a \in Z$ if and only if $o[N(a)] = o(G)$.

Theorem 6. Let G be a finite group and Z be the centre of G . Then the class equation of G can be written as

$$o(G) = o(Z) + \sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]},$$

where the summation runs over one element a in each conjugate class containing more than one element.

Proof. The class equation of G is

$$o(G) = \sum \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}, \text{ the summation being extended over one element } a \text{ in each conjugate class.}$$

Now $a \in Z \Leftrightarrow o[N(a)] = o(G) \Leftrightarrow o(G)/o[N(a)] = 1 \Leftrightarrow$ the conjugate class of a in G contains only one element. Thus the number of conjugate classes each having only one element is equal to $o(Z)$. If a is an element of any one of these conjugate classes, we have $o(G)/o[N(a)] = 1$. Hence the class equation of G takes the desired form

$$o(G) = o(Z) + \sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}.$$

Theorem 7. If $o(G) = p^n$ where p is a prime number, then the centre $Z \neq \{e\}$.

(Agra 1986; I.A.S. 72; Guru Nanak 90; Meerut 74; B.H.U. 87)

Proof. By the class equation of G , we have

$$o(G) = o(Z) + \sum_{a \in Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}, \quad \dots(1)$$

where the summation runs over one element a in each conjugate class containing more than one element.

Now $\forall a \in G$, $N(a)$ is a subgroup of G . Therefore by Lagrange's theorem, $o[N(a)]$ is a divisor of $o(G)$. Also $a \in Z \Rightarrow N(a) \neq G \Rightarrow o[N(a)] < o(G)$. Therefore if $a \in Z$, then $o[N(a)]$ must be of the form p^{n_a} where n_a is some integer such that $1 \leq n_a < n$. Suppose there are exactly z elements in Z i.e., let $o(Z) = z$. Then the class equation (1) gives

$$p^n = z + \sum \frac{p^n}{p^{n_a}}, \text{ where each } n_a \text{ is some integer such that } 1 \leq n_a < n.$$

$$\therefore z = p^n - \sum \frac{p^n}{p^{n_a}}, \quad \dots(2)$$

where n_a 's are some positive integers each being less than n .

Now $p \mid p^n$. Also p divides each term in the Σ of the right hand side of (2) because each $n_a < n$. Thus we see that p is a divisor of the right hand side of (2). Therefore p is a divisor of z . Now $e \in Z$. Therefore $z \neq 0$. Therefore z is a positive integer divisible by the prime p . Therefore $z > 1$. Hence Z must contain an element besides e . Therefore $Z \neq \{e\}$.

Corollary. If $o(G) = p^2$ where p is a prime number, then G is abelian.
(Agra 1986; Kumayun 77; Kanpur 80; Meerut 81; B.H.U. 87; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87)

Proof. We shall show that the centre Z of G is equal to G itself. Then obviously G will be an abelian group.

Since p is a prime number, therefore by the previous theorem $Z \neq \{e\}$. Therefore $o(Z) > 1$. But Z is a subgroup of G , therefore $o(Z)$ must be a divisor of $o(G)$ i.e., $o(Z)$ must be a divisor of p^2 . Since p is prime, therefore either $o(Z) = p$ or p^2 .

If $o(Z) = p^2$, then $Z = G$ and our proof is complete.

Now suppose that $o(Z) = p$. Then $o(Z) < o(G)$ because $p < p^2$. Therefore there must be an element which is in G but which is not in Z . Let $a \in G$ and $a \notin Z$.

Now $N(a)$ is a subgroup of G and $a \in N(a)$. Also $x \in Z \Rightarrow xa = ax$ and this implies $x \in N(a)$. Thus $Z \subseteq N(a)$. Since $a \notin Z$, therefore the number of elements in $N(a)$ is $> p$ i.e., $o[N(a)] > p$. But order of $N(a)$ must be a divisor of p^2 . Therefore

$o[N(a)]$ must be equal to p^2 . Then $N(a)=G$. Therefore $a \in Z$ and thus we get a contradiction.

Therefore it is not possible that $o(Z)=p$. Hence the only possibility is that

$$o(Z)=p^2 \Rightarrow Z=G \Rightarrow G \text{ is abelian.}$$

Ex. Is a group of order 121 abelian? (Meerut 1977)

Ans. Yes.

§ 3. Conjugate subgroups :

Definition. If A, B be two subgroups of a group G , then B is said to be conjugate to A if there exists an element $x \in G$ such that

$$B = x^{-1} A x.$$

If $B = x^{-1} A x$, then B is also called the transform of A by x .

If B is conjugate to A , then symbolically we shall write $B \sim A$.

Theorem 1. The relation of being conjugate is an equivalence relation on the set of subgroups of a group G .

Proof. Proceed as in theorem 1 of § 2, page 197.

The relation of conjugacy in the family of subgroups of a group G will partition the family into disjoint equivalence classes. The collection of all subgroups conjugate to a subgroup A of G will be symbolically denoted by $C(A)$. Obviously

$$C(A) = \{x^{-1} A x : x \in G\}.$$

Normalizer of a subgroup of a group.

Definition. If A is a subgroup of a group G , then $N(A)$, the normalizer of A in G is the set of all those elements of G which commute with A . Symbolically $N(A) = \{x \in G : xA = Ax\}$.

Theorem 2. The normalizer $N(A)$ of a subgroup A of a group G is a subgroup of G . (Kanpur 1988)

Proof. Proceed as in Theorem 2 of § 2.

Theorem 3. Suppose A is a subgroup of a group G . Then there is a one-to-one correspondence between the right cosets of $N(A)$ in G and the conjugates of A . (Punjab 1969)

Proof. Proceed as in Theorem 3 of § 2.

Self-conjugate subgroups.

Definition. A subgroup A of a group G is said to be self-conjugate if A is the only member of the class $C(A)$ of subgroups conjugate to A .

Thus, A , is self conjugate iff

$$A = x^{-1} A x \quad \forall x \in G$$

or

$$xA = Ax \quad \forall x \in G$$

or

A is a normal subgroup of G .

If A is a self-conjugate subgroup of a group G , then we have $A = x^{-1}Ax \quad \forall x \in G$. Thus the transform of A by every element of G remains equal to A . Therefore sometimes a self-conjugate subgroup is also called an invariant subgroup. It is quite obvious that a subgroup of a group G is invariant if and only if it is normal. Therefore sometimes a normal subgroup is also called an invariant subgroup.

§ 4. Quotient Groups. We are now going to introduce the very important concept of *Quotient Groups*.

Let H be any normal subgroup of a group G . If $a \in G$, then Ha is a right coset of H in G . Also H being normal in G , the left coset aH will be equal to the right coset Ha . Thus there is no distinction between right and left cosets. So we can say that Ha is a coset of H in G . Let G/H be the collection of all cosets of H in G i.e., let $G/H = \{Ha : a \in G\}$.

If $a, b \in G$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (Ha)(Hb) &= H(aH)b \\ &= H(Ha)b && [\because Ha = aH \text{ as } H \text{ is normal}] \\ &= HHab = Hab. && [\because HH = H] \end{aligned}$$

Now $ab \in G$, therefore the product of two cosets of H in G is again a coset of H in G . We shall presently see that the set G/H is a group with respect to multiplication of cosets.

Theorem. *The set of all cosets of a normal subgroup is a group with respect to multiplication of cosets as the composition.*

(Meerut 1979; Kanpur 87; Nagarjuna 80; Patna 87)

Proof. Let H be a normal subgroup of a group G . Since H is normal in G , therefore each right coset will be equal to the corresponding left coset. Thus there is no distinction between right and left cosets and we shall call them simply as cosets. Let G/H be the collection of all cosets of H in G i.e., let

$$G/H = \{Ha : a \in G\}.$$

Closure Property. Let $a, b \in G$. Then

$$(Ha)(Hb) = H(aH)b = H(Ha)b = HHab = Hab.$$

Since $ab \in G$, therefore Hab is also a coset of H in G . So $Hab \in G/H$. Thus G/H is closed with respect to coset multiplication.

Associativity. Let $a, b, c \in G$. Then $Ha, Hb, Hc \in G/H$. We have $Ha[(Hb)(Hc)] = Ha(Hbc) = Ha(bc)$

$$= H(ab)c \quad [\because a(bc) = (ab)c]$$

$$= (Hab)Hc = [(Ha)(Hb)]Hc.$$

Thus the product in G/H satisfies the associative law.

Existence of Identity. We have $H = He \in G/H$. Also if Ha is any element of G/H , then

$$H(Ha) = (He)(Ha) = Hea = Ha \text{ and similarly}$$

$$(Ha)H = (Ha)(He) = Hae = Ha.$$

Therefore the coset H is the identity element.

Existence of Inverse. Let $Ha \in G/H$. Then $Ha^{-1} \in G/H$.

We have $(Ha)(Ha^{-1}) = Haa^{-1} = He = H$

and $(Ha^{-1})(Ha) = Ha^{-1}a = He = H.$

\therefore The coset Ha^{-1} is the inverse of Ha i.e., $(Ha)^{-1} = Ha^{-1}.$

Thus each element of G/H possesses inverse.

Hence G/H is a group with respect to product of cosets.

Definition. Quotient Group.

(I.A.S. 1970; Meerut 79; Garhwal 76; Mysore 70)

If G is a group and H is a normal subgroup of G , then the set G/H of all cosets of H in G is a group with respect to multiplication of cosets. It is called the quotient group or factor group of G by H .

The identity element of the quotient group G/H is H .

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let I be the additive group of integers. Let H be a subgroup of I such that $H = \{mx : x \in I\}$ where m is a fixed positive integer. Write the elements of the quotient group I/H . Also prepare a composition table for I/H when $m=5$. (Meerut 1976)

Solution. Since I is an abelian group, therefore H is normal in I . The elements of I/H are the cosets of H in I namely

$$H+0 = H = \{\dots, -2m, -m, 0, m, 2m, \dots\}$$

$$H+1 = \{\dots, -2m+1, -m+1, 1, m+1, 2m+1, \dots\}$$

$$H+2 = \{\dots, -2m+2, -m+2, 2, m+2, 2m+2, \dots\}$$

$$\dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots$$

$$\dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots \quad \dots$$

$$H+(m-2) = \{\dots, -m-2, -2, m-2, 2m-2, 3m-2, \dots\}$$

$$H+(m-1) = \{\dots, -m-1, -1, m-1, 2m-1, 3m-1, \dots\}.$$

These are the only distinct cosets of H in I . Because if s is any integer, then by division algorithm there exist integers q and r such that

$$s = mq + r \text{ where } 0 \leq r \leq m-1.$$

$$\text{We have } H+s = H+mq+r$$

$$= H+r$$

$$\quad \quad \quad [\because mq \in H \text{ and this gives } H+mq = H].$$

Thus $H+s$ is one of the above m cosets of H in I . Thus there are m distinct elements in the set I/H .

When $m=5$, the distinct elements in I/H are

$$H, H+1, H+2, H+3, H+4.$$

If $a, b \in I$, then $(H+a)+(H+b)=H+(a+b)$.

Also $H+a=H+b \Leftrightarrow a-b \in H$. Thus $H+2=H+7$, $H+3=H+8$ and so on.

Hence the composition table for I/H is as given below :

	H	$H+1$	$H+2$	$H+3$	$H+4$
H	H	$H+1$	$H+2$	$H+3$	$H+4$
$H+1$	$H+1$	$H+2$	$H+3$	$H+4$	H
$H+2$	$H+2$	$H+3$	$H+4$	H	$H+1$
$H+3$	$H+3$	$H+4$	H	$H+1$	$H+2$
$H+4$	$H+4$	H	$H+1$	$H+2$	$H+3$

Ex. 2. Let P_3 be the symmetric group on three symbols a, b, c and A_3 be the alternating group on three symbols a, b, c . Form the composition table for the quotient group P_3/A_3 . (Rajasthan 1977)

Solution. Let $P_3 = \{f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4, f_5, f_6\}$ where f_1 = identity permutation, $f_2 = (ab)$, $f_3 = (bc)$, $f_4 = (ca)$, $f_5 = (abc)$, $f_6 = (acb)$.

We have A_3 = set of even permutations belonging to P_3 . Thus $A_3 = \{f_1, f_5, f_6\}$.

A_3 is a normal subgroup of P_3 as we have already proved.

The elements of P_3/A_3 are the cosets of A_3 in P_3 . By Lagrange's theorem A_3 will have only two distinct cosets in P_3 . One is A_3 itself and the other is $A_3 f_2$. Thus $A_3, A_3 f_2$ are the only two elements of P_3/A_3 . It should be noted that

$$A_3 f_5 = A_3 f_6 = A_3, A_3 f_2 = A_3 f_3 = A_3 f_4.$$

The composition table for P_3/A_3 is as given below :

	A_3	$A_3 f_2$
A_3	A_3	$A_3 f_2$
$A_3 f_2$	$A_3 f_2$	A_3

[Note that $(A_3 f_2)(A_3 f_2) = A_3 f_2 f_2 = A_3 f_1 = A_3$]

Ex. 3. If G is a finite group and H is a normal subgroup of G , then $o(G/H) = \frac{o(G)}{o(H)}$. (Meerut 1980, 82, 90; Kumayun 77)

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned} o(G/H) &= \text{number of distinct right cosets of } H \text{ in } G \\ &= \frac{\text{Number of elements in } G}{\text{Number of elements in } H} \quad [\text{bv Lagrange's theorem}] \\ &= \frac{o(G)}{o(H)}. \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 4. Show that every quotient group of an abelian group is abelian and the converse is not true. (Rajasthan 1974)

Solution. Let G be an abelian group and H be a subgroup of G . Then H is a normal subgroup of G . If $a, b \in G$, then Ha, Hb are any two elements of G/H . We have

$$\begin{aligned} (Ha)(Hb) &= Hab = Hba \quad [\because G \text{ is abelian } \Rightarrow ab = ba] \\ &= (Hb)(Ha). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore G/H$ is abelian.

The converse is not true. For example if P_3 be the symmetric group of degree 3 and A_3 be the alternating group of degree 3, then P_3/A_3 is an abelian group while P_3 is not an abelian group. The group P_3/A_3 is of order 2, and every group of order 2 is abelian.

Ex. 5. If N is normal in G and $a \in G$ is of order n , prove that the order, m , of Na in G/N is a divisor of n .

Solution. The identity of the quotient group G/N is N . If e is the identity of G , then $o(a) = n \Rightarrow a^n = e$.

$$\therefore Na^n = Ne = N.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{But } Na^n &= N(\underbrace{aaa \dots}_{\text{upto } n \text{ times}}) \\ &= (Na)(Na)(Na) \dots \text{upto } n \text{ times} = (Na)^n. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $(Na)^n = N$ (identity of G/N).

Since order of Na in G/N is m and $(Na)^n = N$, identity of G/N , therefore m must be a divisor of n . [Refer theorem 4, page 115]

Ex. 6. Show that every quotient group of a cyclic group is cyclic and the converse is not true. (Jodhpur 1970; Meerut 78)

Solution. Let G be a cyclic group and a be a generator of G . Let H be a subgroup of G . Since every cyclic group is abelian, therefore H is a normal subgroup of G . Let a^n be any element of

G where n is some integer. Then Ha^n is any element of G/H . As can be easily seen $Ha^n = (Ha)^n$ for every integer n . Therefore G/H is a cyclic group and Ha is a generator of it.

The converse is not true. For example P_3/A_3 is cyclic while P_3 is not cyclic.

Ex. 7. Let Z be the centre of a group G . If $a \in Z$, then prove that the cyclic subgroup $\{a\}$ of G generated by a is a normal subgroup of G .

Solution. We have

$Z = \{z \in G : zx = xz \ \forall \ x \in G\}$. Let $a \in Z$ and let $H = \{a\}$ be the cyclic subgroup of G generated by a . Let h be any element of H . Then $h = a^n$ for some integer n .

Let x be any element of G . We have

$$\begin{aligned} xhx^{-1} &= xa^n x^{-1} \\ &= (xax^{-1})^n && \text{[See Ex. 3 page 117 of first chapter on groups]} \\ &= (axx^{-1})^n && [\because a \in Z \Rightarrow ax = xa] \\ &= (ae)^n = a^n \in H. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $xhx^{-1} \in H \ \forall \ h \in H$ and $\forall \ x \in G$.

$\therefore H$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Ex. 8. Let a be any element of G . Show that the cyclic subgroup of G generated by a is a normal subgroup of the normalizer of a . (Punjab 1970)

Solution. We have the normalizer of a

$$= N(a) = \{x \in G : xa = ax\}.$$

Let H be the cyclic subgroup of G generated by a . Let h be any element of H . Then $h = a^n$ where n is some integer. We have $a^n a = a^{n+1} = a a^n$.

$$\therefore a^n = h \in N(a).$$

Now $N(a)$ and H are subgroups of G . Also $h \in H \Rightarrow h \in N(a)$.

Therefore $H \subseteq N(a)$. Hence H is a subgroup of $N(a)$.

Now to prove that H is a normal subgroup of $N(a)$. Let x be any element of $N(a)$ and $h = a^n$ be any element of H . We have

$$\begin{aligned} xhx^{-1} &= xa^n x^{-1} = (xax^{-1})^n \\ &= (axx^{-1})^n && [\because x \in N(a) \Rightarrow ax = xa] \\ &= (ae)^n = a^n \in H. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore H$ is a normal subgroup of $N(a)$.

Ex. 9. Show that two elements are conjugate if and only if they can be put in the form xy and yx respectively where x and y are suitable elements of G . (Punjab 1970)

Solution. Let a, b be two conjugate elements of a group G .

Then $a = c^{-1}bc$ for some $c \in G$.

Let $c^{-1}b = x$ and $c = y$. Then $a = xy$. Also

$$yx = c(c^{-1}b) = (cc^{-1})b = eb = b.$$

Conversely suppose that $a = xy$ and $b = yx$. We have

$$b = yx \Rightarrow y^{-1}b = y^{-1}yx \Rightarrow y^{-1}b = x.$$

Now $a = xy$

$$\Rightarrow a = y^{-1}by \Rightarrow a \text{ and } b \text{ are conjugate elements.}$$

Ex. 10. Give an example to show that in a group G the normaliser of an element is not necessarily a normal subgroup of G .

(Meerut 1985, 91; B.H.U. 88)

Solution. Consider the group S_3 , the symmetric group of permutations on three symbols a, b, c . We have $S_3 = \{I, (ab), (bc), (ca), (abc), (acb)\}$. Let $N(ab)$ denote the normaliser of the element $(ab) \in S_3$. We shall show that $N(ab)$ is not a normal subgroup of S_3 . Let us calculate the elements of $N(ab)$. Obviously $(ab) \in N(ab)$. Also $I \in N(ab)$ because $I(ab) = (ab)I$.

Now $(bc)(ab) = (abc)$ and $(ab)(bc) = (acb)$. Thus (bc) does not commute with (ab) . Therefore $(bc) \notin N(ab)$. Again

$$(ca)(ab) = (acb) \text{ and } (ab)(ca) = (abc).$$

Thus $(ca)(ab) \neq (ab)(ca)$ and therefore $(ca) \notin N(ab)$. Similarly we can verify that $(abc) \notin N(ab)$ and $(acb) \notin N(ab)$. Hence

$$N(ab) = \{I, (ab)\}.$$

Now we shall show that $N(ab)$ is not a normal subgroup of S_3 . Take the element $(bc) \in S_3$ and the element $(ab) \in N(ab)$. We have $(bc)(ab)(bc)^{-1} = (bc)(ab)(cb) = (abc)(cb) = (ac) \notin N(ab)$. Therefore $N(ab)$ is not a normal subgroup of S_3 .

Ex. 11. Let N_1 and N_2 be two normal subgroups of a group G . Prove that $G/N_1 = G/N_2$ if and only if $N_1 = N_2$.

Solution. If $N_1 = N_2$, then obviously $G/N_1 = G/N_2$.

Conversely suppose that $G/N_1 = G/N_2$. Then we are to prove that $N_1 = N_2$. We have $N_1 \in G/N_1$. But $G/N_1 = G/N_2$. Therefore $N_1 \in G/N_2$ i.e., N_1 is equal to some coset of N_2 in G . But two cosets of N_2 in G are either disjoint or identical. Since $e \in N_1$ and $e \in N_2$, therefore N_1 and N_2 are not disjoint. So we must have

$$N_1 = N_2.$$

Ex. 12. Let Z denote the centre of a group G . If G/Z is cyclic prove that G is abelian. (Meerut 1978, 81; I.C.S. 90; Guru Nanak 89, Madurai 88)

Solution It is given that G/Z is cyclic. Let Zg be a generator of the cyclic group G/Z where g is some element of G .

Let $a, b \in G$. Then to prove that $ab = ba$. Since $a \in G$, therefore $Za \in G/Z$. But G/Z is cyclic having Zg as a generator. Therefore there exists some integer m such that $Za = (Zg)^m = Zg^m$, because Z is a normal subgroup of G . Now $a \in Za$. Therefore

$$Za \Rightarrow Zg^m \Rightarrow a \in Zg^m \Rightarrow a = z_1 g^m \text{ for some } z_1 \in Z.$$

Similarly $b = z_2 g^n$ where $z_2 \in Z$ and n is some integer.

$$\text{Now } ab = (z_1 g^m)(z_2 g^n) = z_1 g^m z_2 g^n$$

$$= z_1 z_2 g^m g^n$$

$$= z_1 z_2 g^{m+n} \quad [\because z_1 \in Z \Rightarrow z_1 g^m = g^m z_1]$$

$$\text{Again } ba = z_2 g^n z_1 g^m = z_2 z_1 g^n g^m = z_2 z_1 g^{n+m}$$

$$= z_1 z_2 g^{m+n}$$

$$[\because z_1 \in Z \Rightarrow z_1 z_2 = z_2 z_1]$$

$$\therefore ab = ba.$$

Since $ab = ba \forall a, b \in G$, therefore G is abelian.

Ex. 13. If p is a prime number and G is a non-abelian group of order p^3 , show that the centre of G has exactly p elements. (Madras 1983)

Solution. Let Z denote the centre of G . Since $o(G) = p^3$ where p is a prime number, therefore $Z \neq \{e\}$ i.e., $o(Z) > 1$. But Z is a subgroup of G , therefore $o(Z)$ must be a divisor of $o(G)$ i.e., $o(Z)$ must be a divisor of p^3 . Since p is prime, therefore either $o(Z) = p$ or p^2 or p^3 .

If $o(Z) = p^3 = o(G)$, then $Z = G$ and so G is abelian which contradicts the hypothesis that G is non-abelian. So $o(Z)$ cannot be p^3 .

If $o(Z) = p^2$, then $o(G/Z) = o(G)/o(Z) = p^3/p^2 = p$ i.e., G/Z is a group of prime order p and so is cyclic. But if G/Z is cyclic, then G is abelian which again contradicts the hypothesis. So $o(Z)$ cannot be p^2 .

Hence the only possibility is that $o(Z) = p$ i.e., the centre of G has exactly p elements.

§ 5. Homomorphisms of Groups.

Definition. Homomorphism into. A mapping f from a group G into a group G' is said to be a homomorphism of G into G' if

$$f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in G.$$

Homomorphism onto. A mapping f from a group G onto a group G' is said to be a homomorphism of G onto G' if

$$f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in G.$$

Also then G' is said to be a homomorphic image of G .

(I.A.S. 1970; Kanpur 87/88; Gujrat 81; Allahabad 79; Banaras 62; Sambalpur 77; Rajasthan 77; Madras 83; Meerut 70)

It should be noted that isomorphism is a special type of homomorphism. If f is a homomorphism of G into G' and f is one-one, then f is an isomorphism of G into G' . Similarly if f is a homomorphism of G onto G' and f is one-one, then f is an isomorphism of G onto G' .

Endomorphism. A homomorphism of a group into itself is called an endomorphism. (Andhra 1975; Rajasthan 77)

Example 1. Show that the mapping f of the symmetric group P_n onto the multiplicative group $G' = \{1, -1\}$, defined by

$$f(\alpha) = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad -1$$

according as α is an even or odd permutation in P_n , is a homomorphism of P_n onto G' .

Solution. We know that the product of two permutations both even or both odd is even while the product of one even or one odd permutation is odd. We shall show that

$$f(\alpha\beta) = f(\alpha)f(\beta) \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in P_n.$$

(i) If α, β are both even, then

$$f(\alpha\beta) = 1 = 1 \cdot 1 = f(\alpha)f(\beta).$$

(ii) If α, β are both odd, then

$$f(\alpha\beta) = 1 = (-1) \cdot (-1) = f(\alpha)f(\beta).$$

(iii) If α is odd and β is even, then

$$f(\alpha\beta) = -1 = (-1)(1) = f(\alpha)f(\beta).$$

(iv) If α is even and β is odd, then

$$f(\alpha\beta) = -1 = (1)(-1) = f(\alpha)f(\beta).$$

Thus $f(\alpha\beta) = f(\alpha)f(\beta) \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in P_n.$

Also obviously f is onto G' . Therefore f is a homomorphism of P_n onto G' .

Example 2. Let G be the group of all ordered pairs (a, b) of real numbers with the binary operation denoted additively and defined by

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a + c, b + d).$$

Further let G' be the additive group of all real numbers. Then the mapping $f: G \rightarrow G'$ defined by $f(a, b) = a \forall (a, b) \in G$ is a homomorphism of G onto G' .

Solution. It can be easily proved that G is a group with respect to the given binary operation. The ordered pair $(0, 0)$ is the identity element and the ordered pair $(-a, -b)$ is the inverse of (a, b) .

Let (a, b) and (c, d) be any two elements of G .

Then by definition of f , we have

$$f(a, b) = a, f(c, d) = c.$$

$$\text{Now } f[(a, b) + (c, d)] = f(a + c, b + d) = a + c = f(a, b) + f(c, d).$$

Also obviously f is onto G' . Therefore f is a homomorphism of G onto G' .

Example 3. Let G be a group and let e be the identity element of G . Then the mapping $f: G \rightarrow G$ defined by $f(a) = e \forall a \in G$ is an endomorphism of G . (Sambalpur 1977)

Solution. Let a, b be any two elements of G . Then

$$f(a) = e, f(b) = e.$$

$$\text{Now } f(ab) = e = ee = f(a)f(b).$$

Thus f is a homomorphism of G into G . Therefore f is an endomorphism of G .

Theorem. If f is a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' , then

(i) $f(e) = e'$, where e is the identity of G and e' is the identity of G' . (Gujrat 1970; Rajasthan 76; Banaras 70; Meerut 79)

$$(ii) f(a^{-1}) = [f(a)]^{-1} \forall a \in G.$$

(Gujrat 1970; Kanpur 80; Banaras 70; Meerut 79)

(iii) If the order of $a \in G$ is finite, then the order of $f(a)$ is a divisor of the order of a .

Proof. (i) Let $a \in G$. Then $f(a) \in G'$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) e' &= f(a) & [\because e' \text{ is the identity of } G'] \\ &= f(ae) & [\because e \text{ is the identity of } G] \\ &= f(a) f(e) & [\because f \text{ is a homomorphism}] \end{aligned}$$

Now G' is a group. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) e' &= f(a) f(e) \\ \Rightarrow e' &= f(e) & [\text{by left cancellation law in } G'] \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Let a be any element of G . Then $a^{-1} \in G$.

We have $e' = f(e) = f(aa^{-1}) = f(a) f(a^{-1})$.

Therefore $f(a^{-1})$ is the inverse of $f(a)$ in the group G' . Thus

$$f(a^{-1}) = [f(a)]^{-1}.$$

(iii) Let $a \in G$ and $o(a) = m$. We have $o(a) = m \Rightarrow a^m = e$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore f(a^m) &= f(e) \\ &\Rightarrow f(aaa \dots m \text{ times}) = e' \\ &\Rightarrow f(a) f(a) \dots m \text{ times} = e' \Rightarrow [f(a)]^m = e'. \end{aligned}$$

\therefore if n is the order of $f(a)$ in G' , then n must be a divisor of m . [Refer theorem 4, page 115].

§ 6. Kernel of a Homomorphism.

Definition. If f is a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' , then the set K of all those elements of G which are mapped by f onto the identity e' of G' is called the kernel of the homomorphism f .

(Kanpur 1987; Patna 87; Meerut 86, 91)

Thus if f is a homomorphism of G into G' , then K is the kernel of f if $K = \{x \in G : f(x) = e' \text{ where } e' \text{ is the identity of } G'\}$.

Theorem 1. If f is a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' with kernel K , then K is a normal subgroup of G .

(G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1982; Madras 83; Kanpur 87; Patna 87; Marathwada 72; Meerut 81, 83, 84, 87; Rajasthan 78)

Proof. Let f be a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' . Let e, e' be the identities of G and G' respectively. Let K be the kernel of f . Then $K = \{x \in G : f(x) = e'\}$.

Since $f(e) = e'$, therefore at least $e \in K$. Thus K is not empty.

Let $a, b \in K$. Then $f(a) = e', f(b) = e'$. We have

$$f(ab^{-1}) = f(a) f(b^{-1}) = f(a) [f(b)]^{-1} = e' e'^{-1} = e' e' = e'.$$

$$\therefore ab^{-1} \in K.$$

Thus $a, b \in K \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K$.

Therefore K is a subgroup of G . Now to prove that K is normal in G . Let g be any element of G and k be any element of K . Then $f(k) = e'$. We have

$$f(gkg^{-1}) = f(g)f(k)f(g^{-1}) = f(g)e'[f(g)]^{-1} = f(g)[f(g)]^{-1} = e'.$$

$$\therefore gkg^{-1} \in K.$$

Thus $g \in G, k \in K \Rightarrow gkg^{-1} \in K$.

$\therefore K$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Theorem 2. Let f be a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' with kernel K . Let a be a given element of G such that $f(a) = a' \in G'$. Then the set of all those elements of G which have the image a' in G' is the coset Ka of K in G . (Meerut 1973)

Proof. Let e, e' be the identities of G and G' respectively. Let $a \in G$ and $f(a) = a' \in G'$. Let $f^{-1}(a') = \{x \in G : f(x) = a'\}$. Then to prove that $f^{-1}(a') = Ka$.

Let $y \in Ka$. Then $y = ka$ for some $k \in K$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } f(y) &= f(ka) = f(k)f(a) \\ &= e'f(a) & [\because k \in K \Rightarrow f(k) = e'] \\ &= f(a) = a'. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore y \in f^{-1}(a').$$

$$\text{Thus } y \in Ka \Rightarrow y \in f^{-1}(a').$$

$$\therefore Ka \subseteq f^{-1}(a'). \quad \dots(1)$$

Now let z be any element of $f^{-1}(a')$. Then $f(z) = a'$.

$$\text{We have } f(za^{-1}) = f(z)f(a^{-1}) = f(z)[f(a)]^{-1} = a'(a')^{-1} = e'.$$

$$\therefore za^{-1} \in K$$

$$\Rightarrow (za^{-1})a \in Ka \Rightarrow z \in Ka.$$

$$\text{Thus } z \in f^{-1}(a') \Rightarrow z \in Ka.$$

$$\therefore f^{-1}(a') \subseteq Ka. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we get $f^{-1}(a') = Ka$.

Theorem 3. The necessary and sufficient condition for a homomorphism f of a group G into a group G' with kernel K to be an isomorphism of G into G' is that

$$K = \{e\}. \quad (\text{Allahabad 1983; Nagarjuna 80})$$

Proof. Let f be a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' . Let e, e' be the identities of G, G' respectively. Let K be the kernel of f .

Suppose f is an isomorphism of G into G' . Then f is one-one. Let $a \in K$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) &= e' & [\text{by def. of kernel}] \\ \Rightarrow f(a) &= f(e) & [\because f(e) = e'] \\ \Rightarrow a &= e & [\because f \text{ is one-one}] \end{aligned}$$

Thus $a \in K \Rightarrow a = e$. In other words e is the only element of G which belongs to K . Therefore $K = \{e\}$.

Conversely suppose that $K=\{e\}$. Then to prove that f is an isomorphism of G into G' i.e., to prove that f is 1-1.

If $a, b \in G$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(a) &= f(b) \Rightarrow f(a)[f(b)]^{-1} = f(b)[f(b)]^{-1} \\
 &\Rightarrow f(a)f(b^{-1}) = e' \quad [\because f \text{ is a homomorphism}] \\
 &\Rightarrow f(ab^{-1}) = e' \quad [\because f \text{ is a homomorphism}] \\
 &\Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K \quad [\text{by def. of kernel}] \\
 &\Rightarrow ab^{-1} = e \quad [\because K = \{e\}] \\
 &\Rightarrow ab^{-1}b = eb \Rightarrow a = b. \\
 \therefore f &\text{ is one-one.}
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence f is an isomorphism of G into G' .

Theorem 4. Suppose G is a group and N is a normal subgroup of G . Let f be a mapping from G to G/N defined by

$$f(x) = Nx \quad \forall x \in G.$$

Then f is a homomorphism of G onto G/N and kernel $f = N$.

(I.A.S. 1974; Sambalpur 77; Jabalpur 70; Mysore 73; Poona 73; Meerut 89; Kanpur 88)

Proof. Consider the mapping

$$f: G \rightarrow G/N \text{ such that } f(x) = Nx \quad \forall x \in G.$$

Let Nx be any element of G/N . Then $x \in G$.

We have $f(x) = Nx$. Therefore the mapping f is onto G/N .

Let $a, b \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(ab) &= Nab = (Na)(Nb) \quad [\because N \text{ is normal}] \\
 &= f(a)f(b).
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$ is a homomorphism of G onto G/N .

Thus every quotient group of a group is a homomorphic image of the group. The mapping

$f: G \rightarrow G/N$ such that $f(x) = Nx \quad \forall x \in G$ is called a natural mapping of G onto G/N .

Let K be the kernel of this homomorphism f . The identity of the quotient group G/N is the coset N . So $K = \{y \in G : f(y) = N\}$.

We shall prove that $K = N$.

Let $k \in K$. Then $f(k) = N$ i.e., identity of G/N .

But by def. of f , we have $f(k) = Nk$.

Now $Nk = N \Rightarrow k \in N$.

Thus $k \in K \Rightarrow k \in N$. Therefore $K \subseteq N$.

Again let n be any element of N . Then $Nn = N$.

We have $f(n) = Nn = N$. Therefore $n \in K$.

Thus $n \in N \Rightarrow n \in K$.

$$\therefore N \subseteq K.$$

Cosequently $K=N$.

Theorem 5. Fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups.

Every homomorphic image of a group G is isomorphic to some quotient group of G . (Agra 1986; I.A.S. 74, 85; Allahabad 80;

Andhra 77; Patna 87; Kanpur 86, 88; Jabalpur 79; Madurai 88;

Madras 83; Meerut 81, 83P, 84P, 86, 87, 88, 91)

Proof. Let G' be the homomorphic image of a group G and f be the corresponding homomorphism. Then f is a homomorphism of G onto G' . Let K be the kernel of this homomorphism. Then K is a normal subgroup of G . We shall prove that

$$G/K \cong G'.$$

If $a \in G$, then $Ka \in G/K$ and $f(a) \in G'$. Consider the mapping $\phi: G/K \rightarrow G'$ such that $\phi(Ka) = f(a) \forall a \in G$.

First we shall show that the mapping ϕ is well-defined i.e., if $a, b \in G$ and $Ka = Kb$, then $\phi(Ka) = \phi(Kb)$.

$$\text{We have } Ka = Kb \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K$$

$$\Rightarrow f(ab^{-1}) = e' \quad (\text{identity of } G')$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)f(b^{-1}) = e' \Rightarrow f(a)[f(b)]^{-1} = e'$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)[f(b)]^{-1}f(b) = e'f(b)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)e' = f(b) \Rightarrow f(a) = f(b)$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(Ka) = \phi(Kb).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is well-defined.

ϕ is one-one. We have

$$\phi(Ka) = \phi(Kb) \Rightarrow f(a) = f(b)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)[f(b)]^{-1} = f(b)[f(b)]^{-1}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)f(b^{-1}) = e' \Rightarrow f(ab^{-1}) = e'$$

$$\Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K \quad [\because K \text{ is kernel}]$$

$$\Rightarrow Ka = Kb.$$

$\therefore \phi$ is one-one.

ϕ is onto G' . Let y be any element of G' . Then $y = f(a)$ for some $a \in G$ because f is onto G' . Now $Ka \in G/K$ and we have

$$\phi(Ka) = f(a) = y.$$

$\therefore \phi$ is onto G' .

Finally we have $\phi[(Ka)(Kb)] = \phi(Kab) = f(ab)$

$$= f(a)f(b) = \phi(Ka)\phi(Kb).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is an isomorphism of G/K onto G' .

Hence

$$G/K \cong G'.$$

Remark. The fundamental theorem on homomorphism of

groups tells us how to find all possible homomorphic images of a given group G . Except for isomorphism these homomorphic images must be expressible in the form G/K where K is normal in G . Conversely for any normal subgroup N of G , G/N is a homomorphic image of G . Thus we have a one-to-one correspondence between the normal subgroups of G and the homomorphic images of G . Therefore to find all homomorphic images of G we should proceed as follows :

Find all normal subgroups N of G and construct all quotient groups G/N . The set of quotient groups so constructed gives us all homomorphic images of G (upto isomorphisms).

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let f be a homomorphic mapping of a group G into a group G' . Let $f(G)$ be the homomorphic image of G in G' . Then $f(G)$ is a subgroup of G' . (Marathwada 1974; Meerut 74)

Solution. We have $f(G) = \{f(x) : x \in G\}$. Obviously $f(G) \subseteq G'$. Let a', b' be any two elements of $f(G)$. Then $f(a) = a'$, $f(b) = b'$ for some $a, b \in G$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} a' (b')^{-1} &= f(a) [f(b)]^{-1} = f(a) f(b^{-1}) \\ &= f(ab^{-1}) \in f(G) \text{ since } ab^{-1} \in G. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $a', b' \in f(G) \Rightarrow a' (b')^{-1} \in f(G)$.

$\therefore f(G)$ is a subgroup of G' .

Ex. 2. Show that every homomorphic image of an abelian group is abelian and converse is not true.

Solution. Let G be an abelian group. Let f be a homomorphic mapping of G onto a group G' . Then G' is a homomorphic image of G .

Let a', b' be any two elements of G' . Then $f(a) = a'$, $f(b) = b'$ for some $a, b \in G$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} a'b' &= f(a)f(b) = f(ab) \\ &= f(ba) & [\because G \text{ is abelian}] \\ &= f(b)f(a) = b'a'. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore G'$ is abelian.

The converse is not true. P_3 is a non-abelian group. A_3 is a normal subgroup of P_3 . The quotient group P_3/A_3 is a homomorphic image of P_3 . Now P_3/A_3 is of order 2 and is abelian.

Ex. 3. Show that a homomorphism from a simple group is either trivial or one-to-one. (Meerut 1978)

Solution. Let G be a simple group and f be a homomorphism of G into another group G' . Then $\ker f$ is a normal subgroup of G . But the only normal subgroups of the simple group G are G itself and $\{e\}$. Therefore either $\ker f = G$ or $\ker f = \{e\}$. If $\ker f = G$, the f -image of each element of G is the identity of G' and so the homomorphism f is a trivial one. If $\ker f = \{e\}$, the homomorphism f is one-to-one. Hence the result.

Ex. 4. If f is a homomorphism of G onto G' and g a homomorphism of G' onto G'' , show that $g \circ f$ is a homomorphism of G onto G'' . Also show that the kernel of f is a subgroup of that of $g \circ f$.

(Allahabad 1979; Banaras 64)

Solution. f is a mapping of G onto G' and g is a mapping of G' onto G'' . Therefore $g \circ f$ is a mapping of G onto G'' and we have

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g[f(x)] \quad \forall x \in G.$$

Let $a, b \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (g \circ f)(ab) &= g[f(ab)] \\ &= g[f(a)f(b)] \quad [\because f \text{ is a homomorphism}] \\ &= g[f(a)]g[f(b)] \quad [\because g \text{ is a homomorphism}] \\ &= [(g \circ f)(a)][(g \circ f)(b)]. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore g \circ f$ is a homomorphism of G onto G'' .

Let K be the kernel of $g \circ f$. Then

$$K = \{y \in G : (g \circ f)(y) = e'' \text{ where } e'' \text{ is the identity of } G''\}.$$

Let K' be the kernel of f . Then

$$K' = \{z \in G : f(z) = e' \text{ where } e' \text{ is the identity of } G'\}.$$

Both K and K' are normal subgroups of G . In order to show that K' is a subgroup of K it is sufficient to prove that $K' \subseteq K$.

Let $k' \in K'$. Then $f(k') = e'$.

$$\text{Also } (g \circ f)(k') = g[f(k')] = g(e') = e''.$$

$$\therefore k' \in K.$$

Thus $k' \in K' \Rightarrow k' \in K$.

$$\therefore K' \subseteq K.$$

Ex. 5. Let G be the multiplicative group of all $n \times n$ non-singular matrices with elements as real numbers and let G' be the multiplicative group of all non-zero real numbers. Show that the mapping

$$f: G \rightarrow G' \text{ such that } f(A) = |A| \quad \forall A \in G$$

is a homomorphism of G onto G' . What is the kernel of this homomorphism?

Solution. Let A, B be any two $n \times n$ non-singular matrices with elements as real numbers. We have

$$f(AB) = |AB| = |A| |B| = f(A)f(B).$$

Also if x is any non-zero real number then there exists an $n \times n$ matrix $\in G$ whose determinant is equal to x .

$\therefore f$ is a homomorphism of G onto G' .

The identity of G' is 1. Therefore the kernel of f is the subgroup of G consisting of matrices with determinant equal to 1.

Ex. 6. Show that the mapping $f: \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that $f(x+iy) = x$ is a homomorphism of the additive group of complex numbers onto the additive group of real numbers and find the kernel of f .

Solution. Let x_1+iy_1, x_2+iy_2 be any two elements of \mathbb{C} . Then

$$\begin{aligned} f[(x_1+iy_1)+(x_2+iy_2)] &= f[(x_1+x_2)+i(y_1+y_2)] \\ &= x_1+x_2 \quad [\text{by def. of } f] \\ &= f(x_1+iy_1)+f(x_2+iy_2). \end{aligned}$$

Also if x is any real number, then there exists a complex number $x+i0$ such that $f(x+i0) = x$.

$\therefore f$ is a homomorphism of \mathbb{C} onto \mathbb{R} .

The identity of \mathbb{R} is the real number zero. Therefore the kernel of f consists of all complex numbers whose real part is zero.

Ex. 7. If n be any given positive integer, show that the mapping

$$f: C_0 \rightarrow C_0 \text{ defined by } f(z) = z^n$$

is an endomorphism of the multiplicative group of non-zero complex numbers. What is the kernel of this endomorphism?

(Meerut 1985; Rajasthan 67)

Solution. Let z_1, z_2 be any two elements of C_0 . Then

$$f(z_1) = z_1^n \text{ and } f(z_2) = z_2^n.$$

$$\text{We have } f(z_1 z_2) = (z_1 z_2)^n = z_1^n z_2^n = f(z_1) f(z_2).$$

$\therefore f$ is an endomorphism of C_0 .

The identity of C_0 is 1. The kernel of f consists of the n^{th} roots of unity, i.e., kernel of $f = \{e^{2\pi r i/n}, r=0, 1, \dots, n-1\}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have, } f(e^{2\pi r i/n}) &= (e^{2\pi r i/n})^n = e^{2\pi r i} = \cos 2\pi r + i \sin 2\pi r \\ &= 1 + 0i = 1, \text{ which is the identity of } C_0. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } f(z) = 1 &\Rightarrow z^n = 1 \Rightarrow z = (1)^{1/n} \\ &\Rightarrow z \text{ is an } n^{th} \text{ root of unity.} \end{aligned}$$

\therefore the kernel of f consists of the n^{th} roots of unity.

Ex. 8. Let C_0 and R_0 be the multiplicative groups of non-zero complex numbers and of non-zero real numbers respectively. Then the mapping

$f : C_0 \rightarrow R_0$ defined by $f(z) = |z| \quad \forall z \in C_0$
 Is a homomorphism of C_0 into R_0 . What is the kernel of f ?
 (Raj. 1969; Bombay 70)

Solution. Let $z_1, z_2 \in C_0$. Then $f(z_1) = |z_1|, f(z_2) = |z_2|$.

We have $f(z_1 z_2) = |z_1 z_2| = |z_1| |z_2| = f(z_1) f(z_2)$.

$\therefore f$ is a homomorphism of C_0 into R_0 .

The identity of R_0 is 1. The kernel of f is the multiplicative subgroup of complex numbers whose modulus is 1.

Exercises

1. Let $f : G \rightarrow G'$ be a homomorphism of a group G into a group G' . Prove that $f(G)$ is a subgroup of G' and $f^{-1}(e')$ is a normal subgroup of G , where e' is the identity of G' . (Kerala 1970)

2. Prove that in a homomorphic mapping of a group G into a group G' , unit element corresponds to unit element, inverses correspond to inverses and subgroups correspond to subgroups.

3. Let R be the additive group of real numbers and U , the multiplicative group of complex numbers of absolute value unity. Prove that the mapping $x \rightarrow e^{ix}$ is a homomorphism of R onto U . Find the kernel. (Kerala 1970; Marathwada 74)

Ans. Kernel = $\{x : x \in R \text{ and } x = 2n\pi \text{ where } n \text{ is any integer}\}$.

4. Prove that any quotient group of G is a homomorphic image of G and conversely if G' is a homomorphic image of G then G' is isomorphic to a quotient group of G . (Jabalpur 1970)

5. G is a group and H is a subgroup of G . Show that the following statements are equivalent :

(i) H is a normal subgroup of G .

(ii) H is the kernel of a homomorphism of G .

(iii) Every left coset of H in G is a right coset of H in G .

(Marathwada 1972)

6. Prove that every normal subgroup of a group G gives rise to a homomorphism from G . Moreover, show that with every homomorphism from G we can associate a unique normal subgroup of G . (Meerut 1972)

7. If ϕ be a homomorphism of a group G onto the group \bar{G} with kernel K , then prove that $G/K \cong \bar{G}$.

(Kanpur 1971; Vikram 77; Meerut 79, 81)

8. If ϕ is a homomorphism of a group G onto a group \bar{G} with kernel K , then prove that the set of all inverse images of $\bar{g} \in \bar{G}$ under ϕ in G is given by Kx where x is any particular inverse image of \bar{g} in G .

(Meerut 1973; Jabalpur 86; Guru Nanak 88)

9. Let H be a subgroup of a group G and S be the set of all right cosets of H in G . Prove that there is a homomorphism θ of G into $A(S)$ and the kernel of θ is the largest normal subgroup of G which is contained in H . (Meerut 1973)

10. Write down the elements of the symmetric group P_3 and determine the classes of conjugate elements. (Bombay 1970)

11. Show that any two conjugate classes of a group are either disjoint or identical. (Delhi Hons. 1970)

12. If N is a normal subgroup of G , having the prime index p , prove that G/N is cyclic.

13. Let $(G, +)$ be an abelian group. Let S be the set of all endomorphisms of G . For any $\sigma, \eta \in S$ define

$$\sigma + \eta : G \rightarrow G \text{ by}$$

$$(\sigma + \eta)(x) = \sigma(x) + \eta(x).$$

Show that $\sigma + \eta$ is also an endomorphism of G . Further show that S becomes an abelian group with respect to this addition composition. (Meerut 1974; Andhra 75)

14. Show that it is impossible to find a homomorphism of Z onto S_n ($n > 2$). Here Z is the additive group of integers. (Poona 1973)

15. State and prove fundamental theorem of homomorphism for groups. Deduce that if a group G' is a homomorphic image of a finite group G , the order of G' divides the order of G . (Meerut 1976)

16. How many homomorphisms are there from Z_6 onto Z_8 ? Here Z_n denotes the additive group of residue classes modulo n . Ans. No. (Poona 1973)

17. If the order of a group G is a power of a prime p , show that the centre of G has at least p elements. (Madras 1983)

§ 7. Automorphisms of a group.

Definition. (Madras 1983; Meerut 78; Kanpur 86; B.H.U. 87)

An isomorphic mapping of a group G onto itself is called an automorphism of G .

Thus $f : G \xrightarrow[\text{one-one}]{\text{onto}} G$ is an automorphism of G if

$$f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in G.$$

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that the mapping

$$f : \mathbb{I} \rightarrow \mathbb{I} \text{ such that } f(x) = -x \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{I}$$

is an automorphism of the additive group of integers \mathbb{I} .

Solution. Obviously the mapping f is one-one onto.

Let x_1, x_2 be any two elements of \mathbb{I} . Then

$$f(x_1 + x_2) = -(x_1 + x_2) = (-x_1) + (-x_2) = f(x_1) + f(x_2).$$

Hence f is an automorphism of I .

Ex. 2. Show that $a \rightarrow a^{-1}$ is an automorphism of a group G iff G is abelian. [Nagarjuna 1978; Madras 78; Meerut 82, 83, 84, 88]

Solution. Let $f: G \rightarrow G$ be such that $f(x) = x^{-1} \forall x \in G$.

The function f is one-one because

$$f(x) = f(y) \Rightarrow x^{-1} = y^{-1} \Rightarrow (x^{-1})^{-1} = (y^{-1})^{-1} \Rightarrow x = y.$$

Also if $x \in G$, then $x^{-1} \in G$ and we have $f(x^{-1}) = (x^{-1})^{-1} = x$.

$\therefore f$ is onto.

Now suppose G is abelian. Let a, b be any two elements of G . Then $f(ab) = (ab)^{-1}$ [by def. of f]

$$= b^{-1} a^{-1} = a^{-1} b^{-1} \quad [\because G \text{ is abelian}]$$

$$= f(a) f(b) \quad [\text{by def. of } f]$$

$\therefore f$ is an automorphism of G .

Conversely suppose that f is an automorphism of G . Let $a, b \in G$.

$$\text{We have } f(ab) = (ab)^{-1} \quad [\text{by def. of } f]$$

$$= b^{-1} a^{-1} = f(b) f(a) \quad [\text{by def. of } f]$$

$$= f(ba). \quad [\because f \text{ is an automorphism}]$$

Since f is one-one, therefore

$$f(ab) = f(ba) \Rightarrow ab = ba \Rightarrow G \text{ is abelian.}$$

Ex. 3. Let G be a group, H a subgroup of G , f an automorphism of G . Let $f(H) = \{f(h) : h \in H\}$. Prove that $f(H)$ is a subgroup of G .

Solution. Let a, b be any two elements of $f(H)$. Then

$$a = f(h_1) \text{ and } b = f(h_2) \text{ where } h_1, h_2 \in H.$$

$$\text{Now } h_1, h_2 \in H \Rightarrow h_1 h_2^{-1} \in H \quad [\because H \text{ is a subgroup}]$$

$$\Rightarrow f(h_1 h_2^{-1}) \in f(H)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(h_1) f(h_2^{-1}) \in f(H)$$

$$[\because f \text{ is an automorphism}]$$

$$\Rightarrow f(h_1) [f(h_2)]^{-1} \in f(H) \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in f(H).$$

$\therefore f(H)$ is a subgroup of G .

Note. Some authors use the symbol hf in place of $f(h)$ to denote the image of an element.

Ex. 4. Let G be a group, f an automorphism of G , N a normal subgroup of G . Prove that $f(N)$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Solution. First show as in Ex. 3 that $f(N)$ is a subgroup of G .

Now to show that $f(N)$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Let $x \in G$ and $k \in f(N)$. Then $x = f(y)$ where $y \in G$ because f is a function of G onto G . Also $k = f(n)$ where $n \in N$.

We have

$$xkx^{-1} = f(y)f(n)[f(y)]^{-1} = f(y)f(n)f(y^{-1}) = f(yny^{-1}).$$

Since N is normal in G , therefore $yny^{-1} \in N$. Consequently $f(yny^{-1}) \in f(N)$. Thus $xkx^{-1} \in f(N)$.

$\therefore f(N)$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Group of automorphisms of a group.

Theorem. *The set of all automorphisms of a group forms a group with respect to composite of functions as the composition.*

(Meerut 1989; Gujrat 71; Kanpur 86; Madurai 88; Raj. 77)

Proof. Let $A(G)$ be the collection of all automorphisms of a group G . Then $A(G) = \{f : f \text{ is an automorphism of } G\}$.

We shall prove that $A(G)$ is a group with respect to composite of functions as composition.

Closure property. Let $f, g \in A(G)$. Then f, g are one-one mappings of G onto itself. Therefore gf is also a one-one mapping of G onto itself. If a, b be any two elements of G , we have

$$\begin{aligned}(gf)(ab) &= g[f(ab)] = g[f(a)f(b)] \\ &= g[f(a)]g[f(b)] = [(gf)(a)][(gf)(b)].\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore gf$ is also an automorphism of G . Thus $A(G)$ is closed with respect to composite composition.

Associativity. We know that composite of arbitrary mappings is associative. Therefore composite of automorphisms is also associative.

Existence of Identity. The identity function i on G is also an automorphism of G . Obviously i is one-one onto and if $a, b \in G$, then $i(ab) = ab = i(a)i(b)$. Thus $i \in A(G)$ and if $f \in A(G)$, we have $if = f = fi$.

Existence of Inverse. Let $f \in A(G)$. Since f is a one-one mapping of G onto itself, therefore f^{-1} exists and is also a one-one mapping of G onto itself. We shall show that f^{-1} is also an automorphism of G . Let $a, b \in G$. Then there exist $a', b' \in G$ such that

$$f^{-1}(a) = a' \Leftrightarrow f(a') = a$$

$$f^{-1}(b) = b' \Leftrightarrow f(b') = b.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } f^{-1}(ab) &= f^{-1}[f(a')f(b')] \\ &= f^{-1}[f(a'b')] = a'b' = f^{-1}(a)f^{-1}(b).\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f^{-1}$ is an automorphism of G and thus

$$f \in A(G) \Rightarrow f^{-1} \in A(G).$$

Therefore each element of $A(G)$ possesses inverse.

Therefore $A(G)$ is a group with respect to composite composition.

§ 8. **Inner Automorphisms.** We shall now study a special type of automorphisms known as inner automorphisms. First we shall prove a preliminary theorem.

Theorem 1. *Let a be a fixed element of a group G . Then the mapping $f_a : G \rightarrow G$ defined by $f_a(x) = a^{-1}xa \forall x \in G$ is an automorphism of G . (Gujrat 1971)*

Proof. The mapping f_a is one-one. Let x, y be any two elements of G . Then

$f_a(x) = f_a(y) \Rightarrow a^{-1}xa = a^{-1}ya \Rightarrow x = y$, by cancellation laws in G . Therefore the mapping f_a is one-one.

The mapping f_a is also onto G . If y is any element of G , then $aya^{-1} \in G$ and we have $f_a(aya^{-1}) = a^{-1}(aya^{-1})a = y$.

$\therefore f_a$ is onto G .

Finally if $x, y \in G$ then $f_a(xy) = a^{-1}(xy)a = (a^{-1}xa)(a^{-1}ya) = f_a(x)f_a(y)$. Hence f_a is an automorphism of G .

Inner Automorphism. Definition.

If G is a group, the mapping

$$f_a : G \rightarrow G \text{ defined by } f_a(x) = a^{-1}xa \forall x \in G$$

is an automorphism of G known as inner automorphism.

(Delhi 1988; Nagarjuna 78; B.H.U. 87, 88)

Also an automorphism which is not inner is called an outer automorphism.

Theorem 2. *For an abelian group the only inner automorphism is the identity mapping whereas for non-abelian groups there exist non-trivial automorphisms. (Raj. M. Sc. 1966)*

Proof. Suppose G is an abelian group and f_a is an inner automorphism of G . If $x \in G$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_a(x) &= a^{-1}xa = a^{-1}ax & [\because G \text{ is abelian}] \\ &= ex = x. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $f_a(x) = x \forall x \in G$.

$\therefore f_a$ is the identity mapping of G .

Let now G be non-abelian. Then there exist at least two elements say $a, b \in G$ such that

$$ba \neq ab \Rightarrow a^{-1}ba \neq b \Rightarrow f_a(b) \neq b.$$

Hence f_a is not the identity mapping of G . Thus for non-abelian groups there always exist non-trivial inner automorphisms.

Theorem 3. The set $I(G)$ of all inner automorphisms of a group G is a normal subgroup of the group of its automorphisms isomorphic to the quotient group G/Z of G where Z is the centre of G .

(I. A. S. 1970, 88; Delhi 70; Nagarjuna 78; Madurai 88;

B.H.U. 88; Gujrat 71; Dibrugarh 78; Meerat 74, 78, 79;

G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87)

Proof. Let $A(G)$ denote the group of all automorphisms of G . Then $I(G) \subseteq A(G)$.

Let $a, b \in G$. We shall first prove the following two results :

(i) $f_{a^{-1}} = f_a^{-1}$ i.e., the inner automorphism $f_{a^{-1}}$ is the inverse

function of the inner automorphism f_a .

(ii) $f_a f_b = f_{ba}$.

Proof of (i). If $x \in G$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f_a f_{a^{-1}})(x) &= f_a[f_{a^{-1}}(x)] = f_a[(a^{-1})^{-1} x a^{-1}] = f_a[axa^{-1}] \\ &= a^{-1}(axa^{-1})a = x. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f_a f_{a^{-1}}$ is the identity function on G .

$$\therefore f_{a^{-1}} = (f_a)^{-1}.$$

Proof of (ii). If $x \in G$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f_a f_b)(x) &= f_a[f_b(x)] = f_a(b^{-1}xb) = a^{-1}(b^{-1}xb)a = (a^{-1}b^{-1})x(ba) \\ &= (ba)^{-1}x(ba) = f_{ba}(x). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore f_a f_b = f_{ba}.$$

Now we shall prove that $I(G)$ is a subgroup of $A(G)$. Let f_a, f_b be any two elements of $I(G)$. Then

$$f_a(f_b)^{-1} = f_a f_{b^{-1}} = f_{b^{-1}a} \in I(G) \text{ since } b^{-1}a \in G.$$

Thus $f_a, f_b \in I(G) \Rightarrow f_a(f_b)^{-1} \in I(G)$.

$\therefore I(G)$ is a subgroup of $A(G)$.

Now we shall prove that $I(G)$ is a normal subgroup of $A(G)$.

Let $f \in A(G)$ and $f_a \in I(G)$. If $x \in G$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f f_a f^{-1})(x) &= (f f_a)[f^{-1}(x)] = f[f_a(f^{-1}(x))] \\ &= f[a^{-1}f^{-1}(x)a] \\ &= f(a^{-1})f[f^{-1}(x)]f(a) \quad [\because f \text{ is composition preserving}] \\ &= f(a^{-1})xf(a) \quad [\because f[f^{-1}(x)] = x] \\ &= [f(a)]^{-1}xf(a) \\ &= c^{-1}xc \text{ where } f(a) = c \in G \\ &= f_c(x). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f f_a f^{-1} = f_c \in I(G)$ since $c \in G$.

$\therefore I(G)$ is a normal subgroup of $A(G)$.

Now we shall show that $I(G)$ is isomorphic to G/Z . For this we shall show that $I(G)$ is a homomorphic image of G and Z is

the kernel of the corresponding homomorphism.

Then by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups we shall have $G/Z \cong I(G)$.

Consider the mapping $\phi: G \rightarrow I(G)$ defined by $\phi(a) = f_{a^{-1}} \forall a \in G$.

Obviously ϕ is onto $I(G)$, because $f_a \in I(G) \Rightarrow a \in G$ and this implies $a^{-1} \in G$.

Now

$$\phi(a^{-1}) = f_{(a^{-1})^{-1}} = f_a.$$

$\therefore \phi$ is onto $I(G)$.

Now to prove that $\phi(ab) = \phi(a)\phi(b) \forall a, b \in G$.

We have $\phi(ab) = f_{(ab)^{-1}} = f_{b^{-1}a^{-1}} = f_{a^{-1}}f_{b^{-1}} = \phi(a)\phi(b)$.

Now to show that Z is the kernel of ϕ .

The identity function i on G is the identity of the group $I(G)$.

Let K be the kernel of ϕ .

Then we have $z \in K \Leftrightarrow \phi(z) = i \Leftrightarrow f_{z^{-1}} = i \Leftrightarrow f_{z^{-1}}(x) = i(x)$

$$\forall x \in G \Leftrightarrow (z^{-1})^{-1} x z^{-1} = x \forall x \in G \Leftrightarrow z x z^{-1} = x \forall x \in G$$

$$\Leftrightarrow z x = x z \forall x \in G \Leftrightarrow z \in Z.$$

$$\therefore K = Z.$$

Hence the theorem.

§ 9. Group of automorphisms of a cyclic group.

(Bombay 1970; Madras 78)

Suppose $G = \{a\}$ is a cyclic group generated by a . An automorphism f of G is completely defined by a relation of the form

$$f(a) = a^m, \quad \dots(1)$$

where m is some suitable integer.

For if k is any integer, then for f to be an automorphism of G , we have

$$f(a^k) = [f(a)]^k = (a^m)^k. \quad \dots(2)$$

The relation (2) gives the f -image of each element of G and the mapping f is thus completely defined.

Now let b be any element of G . Since f is a mapping of G onto itself, therefore there must exist an element $a^k \in G$ such that $b = f(a^k) = (a^m)^k$.

$$\dots(3)$$

From (3) we conclude that for the mapping f defined in (1) to be an automorphism of G , a^m must be a generator of G .

Now if G is infinite, the only generators of G are a and a^{-1} . So in this case the only automorphisms of G are, (i) the identity mapping I for which

$$I(a) = a \Rightarrow I(a^k) = a^k \forall k \in \mathbb{I}$$

and, (ii) the mapping f defined by

$$f(a) = a^{-1}.$$

Therefore the group of automorphisms of an infinite cyclic group is of order 2. (Meerut 1979; B.H.U. 87)

On the other hand if G is of finite order n , then a^m is a generator of G if and only if m is prime to n and less than n . We shall show that for each such m , the mapping f defined in (1) is an automorphism of G .

f is one-one. Let a^{k_1} and a^{k_2} be any two elements of G where $1 \leq k_1 \leq n, 1 \leq k_2 \leq n$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } f(a^{k_1}) &= f(a^{k_2}) \Rightarrow [f(a)]^{k_1} = [f(a)]^{k_2} \Rightarrow a^{mk_1} = a^{mk_2} \\ &\Rightarrow a^{m(k_1 - k_2)} = e \Rightarrow n \mid m(k_1 - k_2). \end{aligned}$$

But m is prime to n and $0 \leq (k_1 - k_2) < n$. Therefore

$$n \mid m(k_1 - k_2) \Rightarrow k_1 - k_2 = 0 \Rightarrow k_1 = k_2 \Rightarrow a^{k_1} = a^{k_2}. \text{ Thus}$$

$$f(a^{k_1}) = f(a^{k_2}) \Rightarrow a^{k_1} = a^{k_2}.$$

Therefore the mapping f is one-one.

f is onto. Since G is finite and f is one-one, therefore f must be onto G .

Finally if a^{k_1}, a^{k_2} are any two elements of G , then

$$\begin{aligned} f(a^{k_1} a^{k_2}) &= f(a^{k_1 + k_2}) = [f(a)]^{k_1 + k_2} = a^{m(k_1 + k_2)} \\ &= a^{mk_1} a^{mk_2} = (a^m)^{k_1} (a^m)^{k_2} = [f(a)]^{k_1} [f(a)]^{k_2} \\ &= f(a^{k_1}) f(a^{k_2}). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the mapping f denoted in (1) is an automorphism for each positive integer m less than n and prime to n .

Hence the group of automorphisms of a finite cyclic group of order n is of order $\phi(n)$ where $\phi(n)$ denotes the number of integers less than n and prime to n . (Poona 1970)

In the end we shall show that the group of automorphisms of a cyclic group is abelian.

Let f_{m_1}, f_{m_2} be two automorphisms defined by

$$f_{m_1}(a) = a^{m_1}, f_{m_2}(a) = a^{m_2}.$$

$$\text{Then } (f_{m_1} \circ f_{m_2})(a) = f_{m_1}[f_{m_2}(a)] = f_{m_1}(a^{m_2})$$

$$= [f_{m_1}(a)]^{m_2} = (a^{m_1})^{m_2} = a^{m_1 m_2}$$

$$= (a^{m_2})^{m_1} = [f_{m_2}(a)]^{m_1} = f_{m_2}(a^{m_1})$$

$$= f_{m_2}[f_{m_1}(a)] = (f_{m_2} \circ f_{m_1})(a).$$

Now two automorphisms of a cyclic group are equal if the image of a generator of the group under each of them is the same.

Hence $f_{m_1} \circ f_{m_2} = f_{m_2} \circ f_{m_1}$. Therefore the group of automorphisms of a cyclic group is abelian.

Exercises

1. Let G be a finite abelian additive group and n be a positive integer relatively prime to $o(G)$. Prove that the mapping $\sigma : G \rightarrow G$ given by $\sigma(x) = nx$ is an automorphism of G .

(Meerut 1974)

2. Verify the following statement for being true or false :
If $G = \langle a \rangle$ is a cyclic group of order 10 then the mapping $\sigma : G \rightarrow G$ such that $\sigma(a^k) = a^{2k}$ for all k , is an automorphism of G .

(Meerut 1976)

Ans. False.

3. Give an example of a group in which (i) the inner automorphisms corresponding to any two elements are the same, (ii) the inner automorphisms corresponding to no two elements are the same.

(I.A.S. 1975)

Ans. (i) Every abelian group, (ii) the symmetric group P_3 .

4. Show that the group of all automorphisms of a cyclic group G of order r is isomorphic to the group of integers less than and relatively prime to r under multiplication modulo r .

(I.A.S. 1970)

§ 10. More results on group homomorphism.

Theorem 1. Let G be a group and H a normal subgroup of G . If K is a normal subgroup of G containing H i.e., $H \subseteq K$, then the quotient group K/H is a normal subgroup of the quotient group G/H . Conversely, if K/H is a normal subgroup of G/H , then K is a normal subgroup of G containing H .

Proof. It is given that H is a normal subgroup of G and $H \subseteq K$ where K itself is a normal subgroup of G . Therefore H is also a normal subgroup of K and consequently K/H is a quotient group.

If the coset Ha is an element of K/H , then a is an element of K . Now $a \in K \Rightarrow a \in G$. Therefore Ha is also an element of G/H . Thus the quotient group K/H is a subset of the quotient group G/H . Therefore K/H is a subgroup of G/H .

We shall now show that K/H is normal in G/H . Let Hg be any element of G/H and Hk be any element of K/H . Then $g \in G$ and $k \in K$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (Hg)(Hk)(Hg)^{-1} &= (Hg)(Hk)(Hg^{-1}) & [\because (Hg)^{-1} = Hg^{-1}] \\ &= Hgkg^{-1} & [\because H \text{ is normal} \Rightarrow (Ha)(Hb) = Hab] \end{aligned}$$

Since K is a normal subgroup of G , therefore $gkg^{-1} \in K$. Consequently $Hgkg^{-1} \in K/H$. Therefore K/H is a normal subgroup of G/H .

Conversely, let x be any element of G and let k be any element of K . In order to prove that K is normal in G we must show that xkx^{-1} is in K .

We have $Hx \in G/H$ and $Hk \in K/H$. Since K/H is given to be a normal subgroup of G/H , therefore

$$\begin{aligned} (Hx)(Hk)(Hx)^{-1} &\in K/H \\ \Rightarrow Hxkx^{-1} &\in K/H & [\because H \text{ is normal in } G] \\ \Rightarrow xkx^{-1} &\in K. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore K$ is normal in G . Also K/H is a quotient group implies that H is a normal subgroup of K . Therefore K is a normal subgroup of G and $H \subseteq K$.

Theorem 2. If H be a normal subgroup of a group G and K a normal subgroup of G containing H , then $G/K \cong (G/H)/(K/H)$.

(I.A.S. 1971; Meerut 85; B.H.U. 87)

Proof. Since H is a normal subgroup of G and K is a normal subgroup of G containing H , therefore by theorem 1, the quotient group K/H is a normal subgroup of the quotient group G/H . Hence $(G/H)/(K/H)$ is a quotient group.

Now consider the mapping $\phi : G/H \rightarrow G/K$ defined by

$$\phi(Hx) = Kx, \quad x \in G.$$

We shall first show that ϕ is well-defined.

Let $Hx = Hy$ where $x, y \in G$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } xy^{-1} &\in H \\ \Rightarrow xy^{-1} &\in K & [\because H \subseteq K] \\ \Rightarrow Kx &= Ky \Rightarrow \phi(Hx) = \phi(Hy). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ is well-defined.

Now we shall show that ϕ is a homomorphism of G/H onto G/K . If $x, y \in G$ then

$$\phi[(Hx)(Hy)] = \phi(Hxy) = Kxy = (Kx)(Ky) = \phi(Hx)\phi(Hy).$$

Also ϕ is obviously onto G/K because $Kx \in G/K$ implies that there exists $Hx \in G/H$ such that $\phi(Hx) = Kx$.

$\therefore \phi$ is a homomorphism of G/H onto G/K .

Let us now find the kernel of ϕ . We claim that the kernel of $\phi = K/H$ which is obviously a subset of G/H . The proof is as follows :

The identity element of the group G/K is K . If $Hx \in G/H$, then $Hx \in$ the kernel of ϕ

$$\Leftrightarrow \phi(Hx) = K \Leftrightarrow Kx = K \Leftrightarrow x \in K \Leftrightarrow Hx \in K/H.$$

Therefore the kernel of $\phi = K/H$.

Now ϕ is a homomorphism of G/H onto G/K with kernel K/H . Therefore by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups, we have $G/K \cong (G/H)/(K/H)$.

Note. This theorem is known as the Second law of isomorphism.

Theorem 3. Let G be a group and let H be any subgroup of G . If N is any normal subgroup of G , then

$$HN/N \cong H/(H \cap N).$$

(Vikram 1976; Kanpur 80; Meerut 91)

Proof. If H is a subgroup of G and N is a normal subgroup of G , then we know that $H \cap N$ is a normal subgroup of H and consequently $H/(H \cap N)$ is a quotient group. [See Ex. 5, Page 192].

Also HN is a subgroup of G and $N \subseteq HN$. Since N is normal in G , therefore N is also a normal subgroup of HN . Hence HN/N is a quotient group. Now consider the mapping

$$\phi : H \rightarrow HN/N \text{ defined by } \phi(x) = Nx, x \in H.$$

The mapping ϕ is well-defined since $H \subseteq HN$ and therefore $x \in H \Rightarrow x \in HN$. Thus $Nx \in HN/N$.

Now we shall show that ϕ is a homomorphism of H onto HN/N with kernel $H \cap N$.

ϕ is onto. Let Hx be any member of HN/N .

Then $x \in HN$. Therefore $x = hn$ for some $h \in H$ and $n \in N$.

Since N is normal in G , therefore $HN = NH$.

Thus there exist $n' \in N$, $h' \in H$ such that $hn = n'h'$.

We have $\phi(h') = Nh'$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (Nn')h' && [\because n' \in N \Rightarrow Nn' = N] \\ &= N(n'h') = N(hn) = Nx. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $Nx \in HN/N \Rightarrow \exists h' \in H$ such that $\phi(h') = Nx$.

$\therefore \phi$ is onto HN/N .

Again $\phi(xy) = Nxy = (Nx)(Ny) = \phi(x)\phi(y)$.

$\therefore \phi$ is a homomorphism of H onto HN/N .

Now to show that the kernel of $\phi = H \cap N$ which is obviously a subset of H .

The identity element of the group HN/N is N . If $h \in H$, then $h \in$ the kernel of $\phi \Rightarrow \phi(h) = N \Rightarrow Nh = N$

$$\Rightarrow h \in N$$

$$\Rightarrow h \in H \cap N.$$

Again if $h \in H \cap N$, then $h \in H$ and $h \in N$.

$$[\because h \in H]$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(h) &= Nh \\ &= N.\end{aligned}$$

$[\because h \in N]$

$\therefore h \in H \cap N \Rightarrow h \in \text{the kernel of } \phi.$

Thus if $h \in H$, then $h \in \text{the kernel of } \phi$ iff $h \in H \cap N$. Therefore the kernel of $\phi = H \cap N$.

Now by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups, we have $HN/N \cong H/(H \cap N)$.

Note. This theorem is known as the **Third law of isomorphism**.

Theorem 4. Let f be a homomorphism of a group G onto a group G' with kernel H . For each subgroup K' of G' , define K by $K = \{x \in G : f(x) \in K'\}$. Then

- (i) K is a subgroup of G containing H and $K' \cong K/H$.
- (ii) K' is normal in G' iff K is normal in G . (B.H.U. 1988)
- (iii) If K' is normal in G' , then $G/K \cong G'/K'$. (Meerut 1991)
- (iv) $K' \leftrightarrow K$ is a one-one correspondence between the set of all subgroups of G' and the set of all subgroups of G which contain H .

Proof. (i) Let a, b be any two elements of K .

Then $f(a), f(b) \in K'$.

Now K' is a subgroup of G' . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}f(a), f(b) \in K' &\Rightarrow f(a) [f(b)]^{-1} \in K' \\ &\Rightarrow f(a) f(b^{-1}) \in K' [\because f \text{ is a homomorphism}] \\ &\Rightarrow f(ab^{-1}) \in K' \\ &\Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K.\end{aligned}$$

[by def. of K]

Thus $a, b \in K \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K$.

Therefore K is a subgroup of G .

If $h \in \text{kernel } H \text{ of } f$, then $f(h) = e' \text{ (identity of } G')$

$$\in K'.$$

$\therefore h \in K$ and consequently $H \subseteq K$.

Therefore K is a subgroup of G containing H .

The kernel H of f is a normal subgroup of G . Therefore H is also a normal subgroup of K . The homomorphism f of G onto G' , when considered only on the elements of K , induces a homomorphism of K onto K' with kernel H because $H \subseteq K$. Therefore by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups, we have

$$K' \cong K/H.$$

(ii) First to show that if K' is normal in G' , then K is normal in G . Let $x \in G$ and $k \in K$. Then

$$f(xkx^{-1}) = f(x) f(k) f(x^{-1}) = f(x) f(k) [f(x)]^{-1}.$$

Since $f(x) \in G'$ and $f(k) \in K'$ and K' is normal in G' , therefore $f(x) f(k) [f(x)]^{-1} \in K'$.

Thus $f(xkx^{-1}) \in K' \Rightarrow xkx^{-1} \in K \Rightarrow K$ is normal in G .

Now to show that if K is normal in G , then K' is normal in G' . Let $y \in G'$ and $k' \in K'$. Then

$$y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in G \text{ and } k' = f(k) \text{ for some } k \in K.$$

We have $yk'y^{-1} = f(x)f(k)[f(x)]^{-1} = f(x)f(k)f(x^{-1}) = f(xkx^{-1})$.

Since K is normal in G , therefore $xkx^{-1} \in K$. Consequently $f(xkx^{-1}) \in K'$. Thus $yk'y^{-1} \in K' \forall y \in G'$ and $\forall k' \in K'$.

$\therefore K'$ is a normal subgroup of G' .

(iii) First prove as in parts (i) and (ii) that if K' is normal in G' , then K is normal in G . Now define a function

$$\phi : G \rightarrow G'/K' \text{ such that } \phi(x) = K'f(x) \forall x \in G.$$

We shall show that ϕ is a homomorphism of G onto G'/K' with kernel K .

ϕ is onto. Let $K'x' \in G'/K'$. Then $x' \in G'$. Therefore $\exists x \in G$ such that $f(x) = x'$.

Now $\phi(x) = K'f(x) = K'x'$. Therefore ϕ is onto G/K' .

Again let $a, b \in G$. Then

$$\phi(ab) = K'f(ab) = K'f(a)f(b) = [K'f(a)][K'f(b)] = \phi(a)\phi(b).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is a homomorphism of G onto G'/K' .

Now to show that the kernel of $\phi = K$. The identity element of the group G'/K' is K' . If $g \in G$, then $g \in$ the kernel of $\phi \Leftrightarrow \phi(g) = K' \Leftrightarrow K'f(g) = K' \Leftrightarrow f(g) \in K' \Leftrightarrow g \in K$.

Therefore the kernel of $\phi = K$. Hence by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups, we have $G/K \cong G'/K'$.

(iv) Let T be a subgroup of G containing H .

Let $T' = \{f(t) \in G' : t \in T\}$.

Then T' is a subgroup of G' as shown below :

Let $f(t_1), f(t_2) \in T'$. Then $t_1, t_2 \in T$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } t_1, t_2 \in T &\Rightarrow t_1 t_2^{-1} \in T && [\because T \text{ is a subgroup}] \\ &\Rightarrow f(t_1 t_2^{-1}) \in T' && [\text{by def. of } T'] \\ &\Rightarrow f(t_1) f(t_2^{-1}) \in T' && [\because f \text{ is a homomorphism}] \\ &\Rightarrow f(t_1) [f(t_2)]^{-1} \in T'. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore T'$ is a subgroup of G' .

Now let $L = \{l \in G : f(l) \in T'\}$. Then L is a subgroup of G containing H as shown in part (i). Our claim is that $L = T$.

Obviously $T \subseteq L$ since $t \in T \Rightarrow f(t) \in T' \Rightarrow t \in L$.

Now to show that $L \subseteq T$.

Let $l \in L$. Then $f(l) \in T'$

$$\Rightarrow l \in T.$$

[by def. of T']

$$\therefore L \subseteq T.$$

$$\text{Hence } L = T.$$

Thus there exists a one-one correspondence between the set of all subgroups of G' and the set of all subgroups of G which contain H .

Note. Some authors use the notation $f^{-1}(K')$ or $K'f^{-1}$ to denote $K = \{x \in G : f(x) \in K'\}$.

Ex. Let ϕ be a homomorphism of a group G onto a group \bar{G} with kernel K . Let \bar{N} be a normal subgroup of \bar{G} and let

$$N = \{x \in G : \phi(x) \in \bar{N}\}.$$

Prove that N is a normal subgroup of G and

$$G/N \cong \bar{G}/\bar{N} \cong G/K/N/K.$$

(Meerut 1991)

§ 11. Maximal subgroups.

Definition. A normal subgroup H of a group G is said to be maximal if there exists no proper normal subgroup K of G which properly contains H . (Andhra 1977)

Thus a normal subgroup H of a group G is maximal if and only if there exists no normal subgroup K of G such that

$$H \subset K \subset G$$

where the symbol \subset stands for proper inclusion.

Theorem. A normal subgroup H of G is maximal if and only if the quotient group G/H is simple. (Andhra 1977; Nagarjuna 78)

Proof. Suppose H is maximal, and G/H is not simple i.e., G/H possesses proper normal subgroups. It should be noted that a group is said to be simple if it possesses no proper normal subgroups. Let K/H be a proper normal subgroup of G/H . Then by theorem 1 of § 10, K will be a normal subgroup of G containing H . Since K/H is a proper subgroup of G/H , therefore $H \subset K \subset G$. Thus K is a normal subgroup of G and $H \subset K \subset G$. Therefore H is not maximal. This contradicts the hypothesis that H is maximal in G . Hence G/H must be simple.

Conversely, let G/H be simple and let H be not maximal. Since H is not maximal, therefore there exists a normal subgroup K of G such that $H \subset K \subset G$.

Then by theorem 1 of § 10, K/H is a normal subgroup of G/H . Since $H \subset K \subset G$, therefore K/H is a proper normal subgroup of G/H i.e., neither K/H is equal to the entire group G/H nor K/H is

equal to the identity subgroup H/H . Consequently G/H is not simple. This contradicts the hypothesis that G/H is simple. Hence H must be maximal in G .

§ 12. Composition series of a group and the Jordan-Holder theorem. (I.A.S. 1971, 74; Andhra 77; Kanpur 88)

Definition. Let G be a group. Then a finite sequence of its subgroups

$$G = H_1, H_2, H_3, \dots, H_n = \{e\} \quad \dots(1)$$

is called a composition series for G if each H_i except H_1 is a maximal normal subgroup of H_{i-1} .

The quotient groups $G/H_1, H_2/H_1, \dots, H_{n-1}/H_{n-2}$ which are necessarily simple are then called composition factor groups or composition quotient groups of the composition series (1).

Example 1.

(Andhra 1977)

Let $G = P_3 = \{I, (12), (23), (31), (123), (132)\}$ and let $H_2 = \{I, (123), (132)\}$. Then $G, H_2, \{I\}$ is a composition series for G .

Obviously H_2 is a maximal normal subgroup of G and $\{I\}$ is a maximal normal subgroup of H_2 .

Example 2. Let G be a cyclic group of order 6 generated by a i.e., let $G = \{a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6 = e\}$. Then

$G, H_2 = \{e, a^3\}, \{e\}$ and $G, N_2 = \{e, a^2, a^4\}, \{e\}$ are two different composition series for G .

Example 3. Let G be a cyclic group $\{a\}$ of order 12 generated by a . Then

$\{a\}, \{a^3\}, \{a^4\}, \{e\}$ and $\{a\}, \{a^2\}, \{a^6\}, \{e\}$ are two different composition series for G .

Theorem 1. There exists at least one composition series for every finite group G .

(I.A.S. 1974; Lucknow 70)

Proof. (i) If G is simple, then $G, \{e\}$ is a composition series for G .

(ii) Suppose G is not simple. Then there exists a proper normal subgroup H of G . If H is maximal in G and $\{e\}$ is maximal in H , then $G, H, \{e\}$ is a composition series.

Suppose H is not maximal in G but $\{e\}$ is maximal in H . Then there exists a normal subgroup K of G such that $G \supset K \supset H$. If K is maximal in G and H is maximal in K then $G, K, H, \{e\}$ is a composition series.

Now suppose that H is maximal in G but $\{e\}$ is not maximal

in H . Then there exists a normal subgroup J of H such that

$$H \supset J \supset \{e\}.$$

If $\{e\}$ is maximal in J and J is maximal in H , then $G, H, J, \{e\}$ is a composition series.

Next suppose that H is not maximal in G and $\{e\}$ is not maximal in H . Then there exists a normal subgroup L of G such that $G \supset L \supset H$. Also there exists a normal subgroup N of H such that $H \supset N \supset \{e\}$. Thus $G \supset L \supset H \supset N \supset \{e\}$. If L is maximal in G , H is maximal in L , N is maximal in H and $\{e\}$ is maximal in N , then $G, L, H, N, \{e\}$ is a composition series.

Since G is finite, there are only a finite number of subgroups and ultimately we must reach a composition series.

Theorem 2. Jordan-Holder Theorem. *Let G be a finite group with two composition series*

$$G, H_1, H_2, \dots, H_n = \{e\} \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{and} \quad G, K_1, K_2, \dots, K_m = \{e\}. \quad \dots(2)$$

Then $n=m$ and the two corresponding series of composition quotient groups, viz.,

$$G/H_1, H_1/H_2, \dots, H_{n-1}/H_n$$

$$\text{and} \quad G/K_1, K_1/K_2, \dots, K_{m-1}/K_m$$

are abstractly identical i.e., they can be put into 1-1 correspondence such that the corresponding quotient groups are isomorphic.

(I.A.S. 1975; Banaras 74; Agra 86; Nagpur 70; Kanpur 87)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by the method of induction on the order of the group G . Assuming that the theorem is true for all groups of order less than that of G , we shall prove that it is also true for G . We need not worry about starting the induction because the theorem is obviously true for any group of order one.

Now two cases arise :

Case 1. $H_1 = K_1$. In this case after removing G from (1) and (2), we get the remaining series as two composition series for H_1 . But the order of H_1 is less than that of G because H_1 is a proper normal subgroup of G . Therefore by our induction hypothesis, the theorem is true for H_1 . Since $G/H_1 = G/K_1$, therefore the theorem will remain true if we replace G in each of the series (1) and (2).

Case 2. $H_1 \neq K_1$. By the third law of isomorphism, we have

$$H_1 K_1 / H_1 \cong K_1 / H_1 \cap K_1,$$

$$\text{and} \quad H_1 K_1 / K_1 \cong H_1 / H_1 \cap K_1.$$

Also H_1K_1 is a normal subgroup of G containing H_1 . Since H_1 is maximal in G , therefore we must have $H_1K_1 = G$.

$$\therefore G/H_1 \cong K_1/D \text{ where } D = H_1 \cap K_1$$

and $G/K_1 \cong H_1/D$.

Now H_1 is maximal in G implies that G/H_1 is simple. Therefore K_1/D is simple and this implies that D is a maximal normal subgroup of K_1 . Similarly D is a maximal normal subgroup of H_1 .

$$\text{Let } D, D_1, D_2, \dots, D_t = \{e\}$$

be a composition series for D . Then

$$G, H_1, D, D_1, D_2, \dots, D_t = \{e\} \quad \dots(3)$$

$$\text{and } G, K_1, D, D_1, D_2, \dots, D_t = \{e\} \quad \dots(4)$$

are two composition series for G . Let us write the composition quotient groups of (3) and (4) in the order

$$G/H_1, H_1/D, D/D_1, D_1/D_2, \dots, D_{t-1}/D_t \quad \dots(5)$$

$$\text{and } K_1/D, G/K_1, D/D_1, D_1/D_2, \dots, D_{t-1}/D_t. \quad \dots(6)$$

The quotient groups in (5) and (6) are equal in number and the corresponding quotient groups isomorphic i.e., G/H_1 and K_1/D , H_1/D and G/K_1 , D/D_1 and D/D_1 , ..., are isomorphic.

Now (1) and (3) are two composition series for G each having H_1 in the second place. Therefore by case 1, the quotient groups defined by (1) and (3) may be put into 1-1 correspondence so that the corresponding quotient groups are isomorphic. Similarly the quotient groups defined by (2) and (4) may be put into 1-1 correspondence so that the corresponding quotient groups are isomorphic. Hence the quotient groups defined by (1) and (2) are equal in number and are isomorphic in some order because the relation of isomorphism in the set of all groups is an equivalence relation. This completes the proof of the theorem.

§ 13. Solvable groups.

Definition. A group G is said to be solvable if we can find a finite chain of subgroups

$$G = N_0 \supseteq N_1 \supseteq N_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq N_k = \{e\}$$

such that each N_i is a normal subgroup of N_{i-1} and each quotient group N_{i-1}/N_i is abelian. The above series, then is referred to as a solvable series for G . (Jabalpur 1986; Mysore 70; B.H.U. 87, 88)

Normal series of a group. Definition. A finite sequence of subgroups

$$G = G_0 \supseteq G_1 \supseteq G_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq G_k = \{e\}$$

of a group G is called a subnormal series of G if G_{i+1} is a normal subgroup of G_i $\forall i=0, 1, \dots, k-1$. The quotient groups G_i/G_{i+1} are called the factor groups of the subnormal series. Further if each G_i is a normal subgroup of G itself, then the series is said to be a normal series of G . (Kanpur 1988)

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that every abelian group is solvable.

Solution. Let G be an abelian group. Take $N_0=G$ and $N_1=(e)$. Then $G=N_0 \supset N_1=(e)$ is a solvable series for G . Obviously $N_1=(e)$ is a normal subgroup of $N_0=G$ because if a is any element of G , then $a^{-1}ea=a^{-1}a=e \in (e)$.

Further since G is abelian, the quotient group $N_0/N_1=G/(e)$ is also abelian [Note that every quotient group of an abelian group is abelian]. Hence G is a solvable group.

Ex. 2. Show that the symmetric group P_3 of degree 3 is solvable. (Madurai 1988)

Solution The symmetric group P_3 consists of the six permutations I (identity permutation), $(1\ 2)$, $(2\ 3)$, $(3\ 1)$, $(1\ 2\ 3)$ and $(1\ 3\ 2)$ on three symbols 1, 2, 3. Let $A_3=\{I, (1\ 2\ 3), (1\ 3\ 2)\}$. Then A_3 is the alternating group of permutations of degree 3. If we take

$$N_0=P_3, N_1=A_3, \text{ and } N_2=(I),$$

then

$$P_3=N_0 \supset N_1 \supset N_2=(I)$$

is a solvable series for P_3 as shown below :

We know that A_n is a normal subgroup of P_n . Therefore $A_3=N_1$ is a normal subgroup of $P_3=N_0$. Also (I) is a normal subgroup of N_1 . The quotient groups P_3/N_1 and $N_1/(I)$ are of orders 2 and 3 respectively. We know that all groups of orders 2 and 3 are abelian. Therefore the quotient groups P_3/N_1 and $N_1/(I)$ are abelian. Hence $P_3=N_0 \supset N_1 \supset N_2=(I)$ is a solvable series for P_3 and thus P_3 is solvable.

Ex. 3 Show that the symmetric group P_4 of degree 4 is solvable. (Madurai 1988)

Solution. Let A_4 be the alternating group of permutations of degree 4. Then A_4 is a normal subgroup of P_4 . Let

$$V_4=\{I, (1\ 2)(3\ 4), (1\ 3)(2\ 4), (1\ 4)(2\ 3)\}.$$

It can be easily seen that V_4 is a normal subgroup of A_4 . If we take

$$N_0=P_4, N_1=A_4, N_2=V_4 \text{ and } N_3=(I), \text{ then}$$

$$P_4=N_0 \supset N_1 \supset N_2 \supset N_3=(I)$$

is a solvable series for P_4 as shown below :

Obviously (I) is a normal subgroup of N_2 . The quotient groups P_4/N_1 , N_1/N_2 and N_2/N_3 are of orders 2, 3 and 4 respectively. We know that all groups of orders 2, 3 and 4 are abelian. Hence $P_4 = N_0 \supseteq N_1 \supseteq N_2 \supseteq N_3 = (I)$ is a solvable series for P_4 and thus P_4 is solvable.

Ex. 4. Prove that a subgroup of a solvable group is solvable.

(Jabalpur 1986; B.H.U. 88)

Solution. Suppose N is any subgroup of a solvable group G .

Let $G = G_0 \supseteq G_1 \supseteq G_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq G_n = (e)$

be a solvable series for G . We claim that

$H = H_0 \supseteq (H \cap G_1) \supseteq (H \cap G_2) \supseteq \dots \supseteq (H \cap G_n) = (e) \dots (1)$
is a solvable series for H . Since for $t = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$, G_{t+1} is normal in G_t , therefore $H_{t+1} = H \cap G_{t+1}$ is normal in $H_t = H \cap G_t$. Let us define a mapping $f: H_t \rightarrow G_t/G_{t+1}$ such that

$$f(x) = xG_{t+1}, \quad \forall x \in H_t.$$

Since $H_t \subseteq G_t$, therefore $x \in H_t \Rightarrow x \in G_t$. Consequently the coset xG_{t+1} is an element of the quotient group G_t/G_{t+1} and thus the mapping f is well-defined. Also if $x, y \in H_t$, then

$$\begin{aligned} f(xy) &= (xy)G_{t+1} && [\text{by def. of } f] \\ &= (xG_{t+1})(yG_{t+1}) && [\because x, y \in G_t \text{ and } G_{t+1} \text{ is normal in } G_t] \\ &= f(x)f(y). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the mapping f is a homomorphism of H_t into G_t/G_{t+1} . Further

$$\begin{aligned} x \in \ker f &\Leftrightarrow f(x) = G_{t+1} \quad [\text{Note that the identity of } G_t/G_{t+1} \text{ is } G_{t+1}] \\ &\Leftrightarrow xG_{t+1} = G_{t+1} \Leftrightarrow x \in G_{t+1} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x \in H \cap G_{t+1}, \text{ since } x \in H_t \subseteq H. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $\ker f = H \cap G_{t+1} = H_{t+1}$. Hence by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups we have

$$H_t/H_{t+1} \cong f(H_t).$$

But $f(H_t)$ is a subgroup of G_t/G_{t+1} which is abelian because $f(H_t)$ is also abelian. Consequently H_t/H_{t+1} is also abelian because it is isomorphic to $f(H_t)$. Hence (1) is a solvable series for H and thus H is a solvable group.

Ex. 5. If G is a group and N is a normal subgroup of G such that both N and G/N are solvable, prove that G is solvable.

[Mysore 1970]

Solution. It is given that the group G/N is solvable. The identity of this group is N . Let

$$G/N = G_0/N \supseteq G_1/N \supseteq \dots \supseteq G_{m-1}/N \supseteq G_m/N = (N) \dots (1)$$

be a solvable series for G/N . Here each G_i is a subgroup of G

containing N . Since G_{i+1}/N is normal in G_i/N , therefore each G_{i+1} is normal in G_i . Also $(G_i/N)/(G_{i+1}/N) \cong G_i/G_{i+1}$. [See theorem 2 page 229]. But each quotient group $(G_i/N)/(G_{i+1}/N)$ is abelian because (1) is a solvable series for G/N . Therefore each quotient group G_i/G_{i+1} is also abelian because it is isomorphic to an abelian group. Further $G_m/N = (N)$ implies $G_m = N$. Also it is given that N is solvable. Let

$$N = N_0 \supseteq N_1 \supseteq N_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq N_t = (e)$$

be a solvable series for N . Then

$$G = G_0 \supseteq G_1 \supseteq G_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq G_{m-1} \supseteq N \supseteq N_1 \supseteq N_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq N_t = (e)$$

is a solvable series for G . Hence G is a solvable group.

Now we shall give an important characteristic property of solvable groups. In this characteristic property we shall use the concept of commutator subgroup of a group which we shall just define.

Commutator subgroup of a group. Definition. Let G be a group and $a, b \in G$. The element $aba^{-1}b^{-1}$ is called the commutator of the ordered pair (a, b) .

Let $U = \{aba^{-1}b^{-1} : a, b \in G\}$. If G' is the subgroup of G generated by U , then G' is called the commutator subgroup of G .

(Punjab 1970; Lucknow 70; Dibrugarh 67; Delhi 70)

We recall that if G' is the subgroup of G generated by U , then G' is the smallest subgroup of G containing U . Therefore the commutator subgroup G' of a group G is the smallest subgroup of G containing the set of all commutators in G .

Note. We can also define the commutator of the ordered pair (a, b) as the element $a^{-1}b^{-1}ab$. It will not change the set U of all commutators in G and consequently the commutator subgroup G' will also not change. Note that $a, b \in G \Rightarrow a^{-1}, b^{-1} \in G$. Also $a^{-1}b^{-1}ab$ can be written as $a^{-1}b^{-1}(a^{-1})^{-1}(b^{-1})^{-1}$. Thus we can take $U = \{aba^{-1}b^{-1} : a, b \in G\}$ or we can take

$$U = \{a^{-1}b^{-1}ab : a, b \in G\}.$$

Theorem 1. Let G' be the commutator subgroup of a group G . Then G is abelian if and only if $G' = \{e\}$, e being the identity element of G .

Proof. Let G be any group and let $U = \{aba^{-1}b^{-1} : a, b \in G\}$. If G' is the commutator subgroup of G , then G' is the subgroup of G generated by U i.e., G' is the smallest subgroup of G containing U .

Suppose G is abelian. Then to prove that $G' = \{e\}$. If G is

abelian, then $\forall a, b \in G$, we have

$$aba^{-1}b^{-1} = abb^{-1}a^{-1} = aea^{-1} = aa^{-1} = e.$$

Thus in this case U consists of only one element i.e., e . Now $\{e\}$ is the smallest subgroup of G containing $\{e\}$. Consequently $G' = \{e\}$.

Conversely, suppose that $G' = \{e\}$. Then to prove that G is abelian. Let a, b be any two elements of G . Then $aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in U$. Consequently $aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in G'$. But G' contains only one element i.e., e . Therefore $aba^{-1}b^{-1} = e \Rightarrow (ab)(ba)^{-1} = e \Rightarrow (ab) = [(ba)^{-1}]^{-1} \Rightarrow ab = ba \Rightarrow G$ is abelian.

Theorem 2. Let G be a group and G' be the commutator subgroup of G . Then

(i) G' is normal in G .

(ii) G/G' is abelian.

(Meerut 1969; Osmania 72;

G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87; Lucknow 70; Delhi 70;

Punjab 70; I.C.S. 89; B.H.U. 88)

(iii) If N is any normal subgroup of G , then G/N is abelian if and only if $G' \subseteq N$.

(Punjab 1968; Delhi 70; Lucknow 70; B.H.U. 88)

(iv) If H is a subgroup of G such that $H \supseteq G'$, then H is a normal subgroup of G .

Proof. Let $U = \{aba^{-1}b^{-1} : a, b \in G\}$. If G' is the commutator subgroup of G , then G' is the smallest subgroup of G containing U .

(i) Let x be any element of G and c be any element of G' . Then $xcx^{-1} = (xcx^{-1})c^{-1}c = (xcx^{-1}c^{-1})c \in G'$.

$\therefore x, c \in G \Rightarrow xcx^{-1}c^{-1} \in G'$. Also $c \in G'$.

Hence G' is a normal subgroup of G .

(ii) Since G' is normal in G , therefore the quotient group G/G' is meaningful. Let a, b be any two elements of G . Then $G'a, G'b$ are any two elements of G/G' .

We have $aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in U$

$$\Rightarrow aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in G'$$

$$[\because U \subseteq G']$$

$$\Rightarrow (ab)(ba)^{-1} \in G' \Rightarrow G'(ab) = G'(ba)$$

$$\Rightarrow (G'a)(G'b) = (G'b)(G'a) \Rightarrow G/G' \text{ is abelian.}$$

(iii) Let N be any normal subgroup of G . Let $a, b \in G$. Then Na, Nb are any two elements of G/N .

Let G/N be abelian. Then

$$(Na)(Nb) = (Nb)(Na)$$

$$\Rightarrow Nab = Nba \Rightarrow (ab)(ba)^{-1} \in N$$

$$\Rightarrow aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in N$$

$$\Rightarrow U \subseteq N.$$

$$[\because aba^{-1}b^{-1} \text{ is any element of } U]$$

Thus N is a subgroup of G containing U . Since G' is the

smallest subgroup of G containing U , therefore G' must be contained in N i.e., we must have $G' \subseteq N$.

Conversely, let $G' \subseteq N$.

Then $U \subseteq N$ [$\because U \subseteq G'$]

$$\Rightarrow aba^{-1}b^{-1} \in N$$

$$\Rightarrow (ab)(ba)^{-1} \in N \Rightarrow Nab = Nba$$

$$\Rightarrow (Na)(Nb) = (Nb)(Na) \Rightarrow G/N \text{ is abelian.}$$

(iv) Let g be any element of G and let h be any element of H . Then

$$ghg^{-1} = (ghg^{-1})(h^{-1}h) = (ghg^{-1}h^{-1})h \in H$$

$$[\because h \in H. \text{ Also } ghg^{-1}h^{-1} \in G' \text{ and } H \supseteq G' \Rightarrow ghg^{-1}h^{-1} \in H]$$

Hence H is a normal subgroup of G .

Remark. Suppose G' is the commutator subgroup of a group G . Then G' is a group in its own right. So we may speak of its commutator subgroup $G^{(2)} = (G')'$. Thus $G^{(2)}$ is a subgroup of G' and hence the subgroup of G generated by all elements $a'b'(a')^{-1}(b')^{-1}$ where $a', b' \in G'$. Also by part (i) of the above theorem 2, $G^{(2)}$ is a normal subgroup of G' . It can also be proved that $G^{(2)}$ is a normal subgroup of G as well. Continuing in this way, we can define higher commutator subgroup $G^{(m)}$ by $G^{(m)} = (G^{(m-1)})'$. This $G^{(m)}$ is called m th commutator subgroup or m th derived subgroup of G . It can be easily shown that each $G^{(m)}$ is a normal subgroup of G . Also by part (ii) of the above theorem 2, each $G^{(m-1)}/G^{(m)}$ is an abelian group.

In terms of higher commutator subgroups of a group G , we shall now give a very important criterion for solvability of G .

A characteristic property of solvable groups.

Theorem 3. A group G is solvable if and only if $G^{(k)} = (e)$ for some integer k . (Meerut 1971; G.N.D.U. 86; B.H.U. 87)

Proof. The 'if' part. Let $G^{(k)} = (e)$ for some integer k . Then to prove that G is solvable. Let $N_0 = G$, $N_1 = G'$, $N_2 = G^{(2)}$, ..., $N_k = G^{(k)} = (e)$. Then

$$G = N_0 \supseteq N_1 \supseteq N_2 \supseteq \dots \supseteq N_k = (e). \quad \dots (1)$$

We claim that (1) is a solvable series for G . By part (i) of the preceding theorem 2, $G^{(i)} = (G^{(i-1)})'$ is a normal subgroup of $G^{(i-1)}$ for each i . Therefore N_i is a normal subgroup of N_{i-1} for each i .

$$\text{Also } \frac{N_{i-1}}{N_i} = \frac{G^{(i-1)}}{G^{(i)}} = \frac{G^{(i-1)}}{(G^{(i-1)})'}.$$

But by part (ii) of theorem 2, $\frac{G^{(i-1)}}{(G^{(i-1)})'}$ is abelian. Therefore

N_{i-1}/N_i is abelian for each i . Hence (1) is a solvable series for G and thus G is solvable.

The 'only if' part. Let G be a solvable group. Then to prove that $G^{(k)} = (e)$ for some integer k . Let

$$G = N_0 \supset N_1 \supset N_2 \supset \dots \supset N_k = (e) \quad \dots (2)$$

be a solvable series for G . Here each N_i is a normal subgroup of N_{i-1} and each N_{i-1}/N_i is an abelian group. Therefore by part (iii) of theorem 2, the commutator subgroup N_{i-1}' of N_{i-1} must be contained in N_i . Thus

$$N_1 \supset N_0' = G',$$

$$N_2 \supset N_1' \supset (G')' = G^{(2)}. \text{ [Note that } N_1 \supset G' \Rightarrow N_1' \supset (G')']$$

$$N_3 \supset N_2' \supset (G^{(2)})' = G^{(3)}.$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$N_i \supset G^{(i)},$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$N_k \supset G^{(k)}.$$

In this way, we see that $(e) = N_k \supset G^{(k)}$. Thus $G^{(k)} \subseteq (e)$. But $(e) \subseteq G^{(k)}$ always. Hence $G^{(k)} = (e)$.

Corollary. Every homomorphic image of a solvable group is solvable. (Madurai 1988)

Proof. Let G be a solvable group and let G^* be a homomorphic image of G under the homomorphism ψ . Then to prove that G^* is also solvable. It can be easily seen that $(G^*)^{(k)}$ is the image of $G^{(k)}$ under the mapping ψ i.e., $\psi(G^{(k)}) = (G^*)^{(k)}$.

Since G is solvable therefore by the preceding theorem 3, we have $G^{(k)} = (e)$ for some integer k . Then

$$(G^*)^{(k)} = \psi(G^{(k)}) = \psi(e) = (e^*),$$

where e^* is the identity of the group G^* . Note that under a homomorphism identity goes to identity. Now by theorem 3,

$$(G^*)^{(k)} = (e^*) \Rightarrow G^* \text{ is solvable.}$$

Ex. If a group $G \neq (e)$ is solvable, then show that G contains a normal abelian subgroup $H \neq (e)$.

Solution. In case the group G is abelian, we can take $H = G$ itself and the proof is complete. So let us consider the case when the group G is non-abelian. Since G is a solvable group, therefore by theorem 3, there exists a positive integer k such that $G^{(k)} = (e)$. As G is non-abelian, we cannot have $k = 1$. [See theorem 1, page 239]. If k is the least positive integer such that $G^{(k)} = (e)$, let us set $H = G^{(k-1)}$. Then H is a normal subgroup of G and

$H \neq (e)$. Also $H' = (G^{(k-1)})' = G^{(k)} = (e)$. Therefore H is abelian.
[See theorem 1, page 239]

Theorem 4. Let G denote the symmetric group P_n of degree n where $n \geq 5$. Then $G^{(k)}$ contains every 3-cycle of P_n for

$$k=1, 2, 3, \dots$$

Proof. While proving this theorem, we shall use the following result :

If N is a normal subgroup of a group G , then the commutator subgroup N' of N is also a normal subgroup of G .

We leave the proof of this result as an exercise to the reader.

Now we come to the proof of the main theorem.

We claim that if N is a normal subgroup of $G = P_n$ ($n \geq 5$) such that N contains every 3-cycle in P_n , then N' must also contain every 3-cycle. For suppose that $f = (1\ 2\ 3)$, $g = (1\ 4\ 5)$ are two 3-cycles in N . (Note that here $n \geq 5$). Then $f g f^{-1} g^{-1}$ as a commutator of elements of N must be a member of N' . But

$$f g f^{-1} g^{-1} = (1\ 2\ 3) (1\ 4\ 5) (3\ 2\ 1) (5\ 4\ 1) = (1\ 5\ 3).$$

Therefore $(1\ 5\ 3) \in N'$. But N' is a normal subgroup of G as mentioned in the beginning of this proof. Therefore if π is any element of P_n , then by the definition of a normal subgroup, $\pi (1\ 5\ 3) \pi^{-1}$ must also be in N' . Now let (i_1, i_2, i_3) be any 3-cycle in P_n where i_1, i_2 and i_3 are any three distinct integers in the range from 1 to n . Let us take $\pi \in P_n$ such that $\pi(i_1) = 1$, $\pi(i_2) = 5$, and $\pi(i_3) = 3$.

$$\text{Then } \pi (1\ 5\ 3) \pi^{-1} = (i_1, i_2, i_3).$$

[Note that $\pi^{-1}(1) = i_1$, $\pi^{-1}(5) = i_2$, $\pi^{-1}(3) = i_3$. So i_1 goes to 1 under π , then 1 goes to 5 under $(1\ 5\ 3)$ and then 5 goes to i_2 under π^{-1} . Therefore i_1 goes to i_2 under $\pi(1\ 5\ 3)\pi^{-1}$. Similarly i_2 goes to i_3 and i_3 goes to i_1 under $\pi(1\ 5\ 3)\pi^{-1}$. Further if x is any integer other than i_1, i_2 and i_3 in the range from 1 to n , then the image of x under the permutation π cannot be any of 1, 5 and 3 because π is a one-to-one mapping. Therefore x will remain unchanged under the permutation $\pi(1\ 5\ 3)\pi^{-1}$. Thus we have $\pi(1\ 5\ 3)\pi^{-1} = (i_1, i_2, i_3)$].

As mentioned above $\pi(1\ 5\ 3)\pi^{-1} \in N'$. Therefore $(i_1, i_2, i_3) \in N'$ and thus N' contains every 3-cycle in P_n .

Now $G = P_n$ is definitely normal in G and contains every 3-cycle in P_n . So taking $N = G$, we see that G' contains all 3-cycles. Since G' is normal in G , therefore $(G')' = G^{(2)}$ contains all 3-cycles.

Again since $G^{(2)}$ is normal in G , therefore $G^{(3)}$ contains all 3-cycles. Continuing in this way we obtain that $G^{(k)}$ contains all 3-cycles for arbitrary k .

Theorem 5. *The symmetric group P_n is not solvable for $n \geq 5$. (B.H.U. 1988)*

Proof. Let $G = P_n$ where $n \geq 5$. Then by theorem 4, $G^{(k)}$ contains all 3-cycles in P_n for every k . Hence $G^{(k)} \neq (e)$ for any k . Therefore by theorem 3, G is not a solvable group.

§ 14. Direct products.

External direct product. Definition. Let G_1 and G_2 be any two groups the composition in each being denoted multiplicatively. Then $G_1 \times G_2 = \{(g_1, g_2) : g_1 \in G_1, g_2 \in G_2\}$

Let us define a binary operation on $G_1 \times G_2$ denoted multiplicatively as follows :

$(g_1, g_2)(h_1, h_2) = (g_1 h_1, g_2 h_2)$ where $g_1, h_1 \in G_1$ and $g_2, h_2 \in G_2$.

For this binary operation $G_1 \times G_2$ is a group and this group is called the external direct product of G_1 by G_2 . (Andhra 1975)

Proof of the fact that $G_1 \times G_2$ is a group for the binary operation we have defined on it.

1. Closure property. We have $g_1 h_1 \in G_1$ because G_1 is a group. Similarly $g_2 h_2 \in G_2$. Thus $(g_1, g_2)(h_1, h_2) = (g_1 h_1, g_2 h_2) \in G_1 \times G_2$.

2. Associativity. If $(g_1, g_2), (h_1, h_2), (k_1, k_2) \in G_1 \times G_2$, then $[(g_1, g_2)(h_1, h_2)](k_1, k_2) = (g_1 h_1, g_2 h_2)(k_1, k_2) = ([g_1 h_1] k_1, [g_2 h_2] k_2) = (g_1 [h_1 k_1], g_2 [h_2 k_2]) = (g_1, g_2)(h_1 k_1, h_2 k_2) = (g_1, g_2)[(h_1, h_2)(k_1, k_2)]$.

3. Existence of left identity. Let e_1, e_2 be the identity elements of G_1, G_2 respectively. If $(g_1, g_2) \in G_1 \times G_2$, then $(e_1, e_2)(g_1, g_2) = (e_1 g_1, e_2 g_2) = (g_1, g_2)$. Therefore (e_1, e_2) is the left identity of $G_1 \times G_2$.

4. Existence of left inverse. Let $(g_1, g_2) \in G_1 \times G_2$. Then $(g_1^{-1}, g_2^{-1}) \in G_1 \times G_2$.

Also $(g_1^{-1}, g_2^{-1})(g_1, g_2) = (g_1^{-1} g_1, g_2^{-1} g_2) = (e_1, e_2)$.

$\therefore (g_1^{-1}, g_2^{-1})$ is the left inverse of (g_1, g_2) in $G_1 \times G_2$.

Hence $G_1 \times G_2$ is a group under the binary operation as defined above.

Theorem 1. *If G_1 and G_2 are groups, then the subsets*

$G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ and $\{e_1\} \times G_2$ of $G_1 \times G_2$

are normal subgroups of $G_1 \times G_2$ isomorphic to G_1 and G_2 respectively.

Proof. Let (g_1, e_2) and (h_1, e_2) be any two elements of $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ where $g_1, h_1 \in G_1$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } (g_1, e_2) (h_1, e_2)^{-1} \\ = (g_1, e_2) (h_1^{-1}, e_2^{-1}) = (g_1, e_2) (h_1^{-1}, e_2) \\ = (g_1 h_1^{-1}, e_2 e_2) = (g_1 h_1^{-1}, e_2). \end{aligned}$$

Now $g_1 h_1^{-1} \in G_1$ because G_1 is a group.

$$\therefore (g_1 h_1^{-1}, e_2) \in G_1 \times \{e_2\}.$$

Hence $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ is a subgroup of $G_1 \times G_2$.

Now to show that $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ is normal in $G_1 \times G_2$.

Let (x_1, x_2) be any element of $G_1 \times G_2$ and (g_1, e_2) be any element of $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } (x_1, x_2) (g_1, e_2) (x_1, x_2)^{-1} \\ = (x_1, x_2) (g_1, e_2) (x_1^{-1}, x_2^{-1}) = (x_1 g_1 x_1^{-1}, x_2 e_2 x_2^{-1}) \\ = (x_1 g_1 x_1^{-1}, e_2) \in G_1 \times \{e_2\} \text{ because } x_1 g_1 x_1^{-1} \in G_1. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore G_1 \times \{e_2\} \text{ is normal in } G_1 \times G_2.$$

Now to show that $G_1 \cong G_1 \times \{e_2\}$.

Let $\phi : G_1 \rightarrow G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ defined by

$$\phi(g_1) = (g_1, e_2) \quad \forall g_1 \in G_1.$$

Obviously ϕ is one-one onto. Also if $g_1, h_1 \in G_1$, then

$$\phi(g_1 h_1) = (g_1 h_1, e_2) = (g_1, e_2) (h_1, e_2) = \phi(g_1) \phi(h_1).$$

$$\therefore G_1 \cong G_1 \times \{e_2\}.$$

Similarly we can show that $\{e_1\} \times G_2$ is a normal subgroup of $G_1 \times G_2$ and is isomorphic to G_2 .

Theorem 2. If G_1 and G_2 are groups, then

(i) $G_1 \times \{e_2\} \cap \{e_1\} \times G_2 = \{(e_1, e_2)\}$ i.e., the identity is the only element common to $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ and $\{e_1\} \times G_2$.

(ii) Every element of $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ commutes with every element of $\{e_1\} \times G_2$.

(iii) Every element of $G_1 \times G_2$ can be uniquely expressed as the product of an element in $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ by an element in $\{e_1\} \times G_2$.

(iv) $G_1 \times G_2 \cong G_2 \times G_1$.

Proof. (i) Let $(g, h) \in G_1 \times \{e_2\} \cap \{e_1\} \times G_2$.

Then $(g, h) \in G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ and $(g, h) \in \{e_1\} \times G_2$.

Now $(g, h) \in G_1 \times \{e_2\} \Rightarrow h = e_2$
 and $(g, h) \in \{e_1\} \times G_2 \Rightarrow g = e_1.$

$$\therefore (g, h) = (e_1, e_2).$$

$$\therefore G_1 \times \{e_2\} \cap \{e_1\} \times G_2 = \{(e_1, e_2)\}.$$

(ii) Let $(g_1, e_2) \in G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ and $(e_1, g_2) \in \{e_1\} \times G_2$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } (g_1, e_2) (e_1, g_2) &= (g_1 e_1, e_2 g_2) = (g_1, g_2) \\ &= (e_1 g_1, g_2 e_2) = (e_1, g_2) (g_1, e_2). \end{aligned}$$

(iii) Let $(g_1, g_2) \in G_1 \times G_2$.

$$\text{Then } (g_1, g_2) = (g_1 e_1, e_2 g_2) = (g_1, e_2) (e_1, g_2).$$

Thus (g_1, g_2) can be expressed as a product of a member of $G_1 \times \{e_2\}$ by a member of $\{e_1\} \times G_2$.

If possible, let there be another representation

$$(g_1, g_2) = (h_1, e_2)(e_1, h_2).$$

Then $(g_1, g_2) = (h_1 e_1, e_2 h_2) = (h_1, h_2)$.

$\therefore g_1 = h_1, g_2 = h_2$ by the equality of ordered pairs.

\therefore The representation is unique.

(iv) Define a mapping $f: G_1 \times G_2 \rightarrow G_2 \times G_1$ by

$$f(g_1, g_2) = (g_2, g_1).$$

Obviously f is one-one and onto.

Also if $(g_1, g_2), (h_1, h_2) \in G_1 \times G_2$, then

$$\begin{aligned} f[(g_1, g_2)(h_1, h_2)] &= f(g_1 h_1, g_2 h_2) = (g_2 h_2, g_1 h_1) \\ &= (g_2, g_1)(h_2, h_1) = f(g_1, g_2)f(h_1, h_2). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore G_1 \times G_2 \cong G_2 \times G_1$.

Internal direct products.

Definition. Suppose H and K are subgroups of a group G . Then we say that G is an internal direct product of H and K if

- (i) every element of H commutes with every element of K .
- (ii) every element of G is uniquely expressible as a product of an element of H by an element of K . (Andhra 1975)

Theorem 1. Suppose a group G is an internal direct product of its subgroups H and K . Then

- (i) H and K have only the identity in common.
- (ii) G is isomorphic to the external direct product of H by K .

Proof. (i) Let $x \in H, x \in K$.

Since H and K are subgroups, therefore

$$x^{-1} \in H, x^{-1} \in K.$$

Since G is an internal direct product of H and K , therefore every element g in G can be uniquely expressed in the form

$$g = hk \text{ where } h \in H, k \in K.$$

Also we can write $g = (hx)(x^{-1}k)$ where $hx \in H, x^{-1}k \in K$.

Since the expression for g is unique, therefore

$$hx = h \Rightarrow hx = he \Rightarrow x = e.$$

$\therefore e$ is the only element common to both H and K .

(ii) Let g be an arbitrary element of G .

Then $g = hk$ where h is a unique element of H and k is a unique element of K .

Consider the function $\phi: G \rightarrow H \times K$ defined by

$$\phi(g) = (h, k) \quad \forall g \in G.$$

ϕ is one-one. Let $g_1 = h_1 k_1$, $g_2 = h_2 k_2$ be any two elements of G where $h_1, h_2 \in H$ and $k_1, k_2 \in K$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } \phi(g_1) &= \phi(g_2) \Rightarrow (h_1, k_1) = (h_2, k_2) \\ &\Rightarrow h_1 = h_2, k_1 = k_2 \Rightarrow h_1 k_1 = h_2 k_2 \Rightarrow g_1 = g_2.\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ is 1-1.

ϕ is onto $H \times K$. Let (h, k) be any element of $H \times K$. Then $hk \in G$ and we have $\phi(hk) = (h, k)$.

Therefore ϕ is onto $H \times K$.

ϕ preserves compositions in G and $H \times K$.

Let $g_1 = h_1 k_1$, $g_2 = h_2 k_2$ be any two elements of G . Then

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(g_1 g_2) &= \phi(h_1 k_1 h_2 k_2) \\ &= \phi(h_1 h_2 k_1 k_2) \quad [\because \text{every element of } H \text{ commutes} \\ &\quad \text{with every element of } K] \\ &= (h_1 h_2, k_1 k_2) \quad [\because h_1 h_2 \in H, k_1 k_2 \in K] \\ &= (h_1, k_1)(h_2, k_2) = \phi(h_1 k_1) \phi(h_2 k_2) = \phi(g_1) \phi(g_2).\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore G \cong H \times K$.

Note. If G is an internal direct product of its subgroups H and K , then G is isomorphic to the external direct product of H by K . On account of this isomorphism we shall identify the internal direct product with the external direct product. If G is the internal direct product of its subgroups H and K we shall write $G = H \times K$.

Theorem 2. If H, K are two subgroups of a group G such that $G = H \times K$, then H, K are normal subgroups of G , and $G/H \cong K$ and $G/K \cong H$.

Proof. Let $g \in G$. Then $g = hk$ where h is a unique element of H and k is a unique element of K . So consider the mapping $\phi : G \rightarrow H$ defined by $\phi(g) = \phi(hk) = h$. Obviously ϕ is onto H .

Let $g_1 = h_1 k_1$, $g_2 = h_2 k_2$ be any two elements of G where h_1, h_2 are unique elements of H and k_1, k_2 are unique elements of K . Then $\phi(g_1 g_2) = \phi(h_1 k_1 h_2 k_2)$

$$\begin{aligned}&= \phi(h_1 h_2 k_1 k_2) \quad [\because \text{every element of } H \text{ commutes} \\ &\quad \text{with every element of } K] \\ &= h_1 h_2 \quad [\because h_1 h_2 \in H, k_1 k_2 \in K] \\ &= \phi(h_1 k_1) \phi(h_2 k_2) = \phi(g_1) \phi(g_2).\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ is a homomorphism of G onto H . The kernel of ϕ consists of all those elements of G which are mapped by ϕ on the identity of H i.e., which are of the form $ek = k$, $k \in K$.

Thus K is the kernel of ϕ .

$\therefore K$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Also by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups, we have $G/K \cong H$.

Similarly we can show that H is a normal subgroup of G and $G/H \cong K$.

Theorem 3. *A group G is the direct product of its two subgroups H and K if and only if*

- (i) H and K are normal subgroups of G ,
 (ii) $H \cap K = \{e\}$, and (iii) $G = HK$. (Andhra 1975)

Proof. Suppose the conditions (i), (ii) and (iii) hold. Then to show that $G = H \times K$.

Let $h \in H, k \in K$. Consider the element $h^{-1} k^{-1} h k$.

Since H is normal in G , therefore $k^{-1} h k \in H$.

Also $h^{-1} \in H$. Therefore $h^{-1} k^{-1} h k \in H$.

Again K is normal in G . Therefore $h^{-1} k^{-1} h \in K$.

Also $k \in K$. Therefore $h^{-1} k^{-1} h k \in K$.

$$\therefore h^{-1} k^{-1} h k \in H \cap K.$$

But $H \cap K = \{e\}$.

$$\therefore h^{-1} k^{-1} h k = e \Rightarrow h k = k h.$$

Hence every element of H commutes with every element of K .

Let $x \in G$. Then by the condition (iii) there exists $h \in H$ and $k \in K$ such that $x = h k$.

If possible let $x = h_1 k_1$ where $h_1 \in H, k_1 \in K$.

Then $h k = h_1 k_1 \Rightarrow h_1^{-1} h = k_1 k^{-1}$.

But $h_1^{-1} h \in H$ and $k_1 k^{-1} \in K$.

$$\therefore h_1^{-1} h = k_1 k^{-1} \in H \cap K.$$

But $H \cap K = \{e\}$.

$$\therefore h_1^{-1} h = k_1 k^{-1} = e.$$

$$\therefore h_1 = h, k_1 = k.$$

Thus the expression $x = h k$ for x is unique. Hence $G = H \times K$.

Conversely let $G = H \times K$. Then to show that the conditions (i), (ii) and (iii) are satisfied.

Let a be any element of H and x be any element of G . Then there exist $h \in H, k \in K$ such that $x = h k$.

We have $x a x^{-1} = (h k) a (h k)^{-1} = h k a k^{-1} h^{-1}$

$= h a k k^{-1} h^{-1}$ [$\because k \in K$ and $a \in H \Rightarrow k$ commutes with a]

$= h a h^{-1} \in H$.

$\therefore H$ is a normal subgroup of G . Similarly K is a normal subgroup of G .

Now we establish condition (ii).

Suppose if possible $b \in H \cap K$ and $b \neq e$. Then $b = b e = e b$.

This shows that there exist at least two different ways of expressing an element $b \in G$ as product of an element of H with an element of K . But this contradicts the assumption that

$$G = H \times K.$$

Therefore $b = e$. Hence $H \cap K = \{e\}$.

Finally $HK \subseteq G$. Also $x \in G \Rightarrow x = hk$ where $h \in H, k \in K$. Thus $x \in G \Rightarrow x \in HK$. Therefore $G \subseteq HK$. Hence $G = HK$.

Thus the theorem is completely established.

§ 15. Some important theorems on finite groups.

Theorem 1. Cauchy's theorem for abelian groups. *Suppose G is a finite abelian group and $p \mid o(G)$ i.e. p is a divisor of $o(G)$ where p is a prime number. Then there is an element $a \neq e \in G$ such that $a^p = e$.* (Agra 1986; Jabalpur 86; I.A.S. 71)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on the order of G . Assuming that the theorem is true for abelian groups of order less than that of G , we shall prove that it is also true for G . To start the induction we note that the theorem is vacuously true for groups of order one.

If G has no proper subgroups, then G must be of prime order because every group of composite order possesses proper subgroups. But p is prime and $p \mid o(G)$, therefore $o(G)$ must be equal to p . Also every group of prime order is cyclic. Therefore each element $a \neq e$ of G will be a generator of G . Thus G has $p-1$ elements $a \neq e$ such that $a^p = a^{o(G)} = e$.

So now suppose that G has a proper subgroup H i.e.,

$$H \neq \{e\} \text{ and } H \neq G. \text{ If } p \mid o(H),$$

then by our induction hypothesis the theorem is true for H because H is an abelian group and $o(H) < o(G)$. Therefore \exists an element $b \in H, b \neq e$ such that $b^p = e$. But $b \in H \Rightarrow b \in G$ because $H \subseteq G$. Thus \exists an element $b \in G, b \neq e$ such that $b^p = e$.

So let us suppose that p is not a divisor of $o(H)$. Since G is abelian, therefore H is a normal subgroup of G and so G/H is a quotient group. Since G is abelian, therefore G/H is also abelian.

Also we have $o(G/H) = \frac{o(G)}{o(H)} < o(G)$ because $o(H) > 1$.

Since $p \mid o(G)$ and p is not a divisor of $o(H)$, therefore p is a divisor of $o(G)/o(H)$. Hence by our induction hypothesis the theorem is true for the group G/H .

Remembering that H is the identity element of G/H we deduce that \exists an element c in G and $Hc \neq H$ in G/H such that $(Hc)^p = H$.

Now Hc is not equal to the identity element H of the quotient group G/H and p is a prime. Therefore $(Hc)^p = H$ implies that in the quotient group G/H we have $o(Hc) = p$.

Also $(Hc)^p = H \Rightarrow Hc^p = H \Rightarrow c^p \in H$. Therefore by a corollary to Lagrange's theorem, we have

$$(c^p)^{o(H)} = e \text{ (i.e., the identity of } H).$$

$$\therefore (c^{o(H)})^p = e \text{ or } d^p = e \text{ if we put } d = c^{o(H)}.$$

This d will be the required element of G if we show that $d \neq e$. If possible, let $d = e$. Then $(Hc)^{o(H)} = Hc^{o(H)} = Hd = He = H$. But in the quotient group G/H , we have $o(Hc) = p$. Therefore $(Hc)^{o(H)} = H$ (i.e., the identity of G/H) implies that p must be a divisor of $o(H)$ which is a contradiction. So we cannot have $d = e$. Thus $d \neq e$ and $d^p = e$. Therefore we have completed the induction and this proves the required result.

Theorem 2. Cauchy's theorem. Suppose G is a finite group and $p \mid o(G)$ where p is a prime number. Then there is an element in G such that $o(a) = p$. (Meerut 1980)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on $o(G)$. Assuming that the theorem is true for groups of order less than that of G , we shall prove that it is also true for G . To start the induction we note that the theorem is vacuously true for groups of order one.

If there exists a subgroup $H \neq G$ of G such that $p \mid o(H)$, then by our induction hypothesis the theorem is true for H because $o(H) < o(G)$. Therefore there exists an element $a \in H$ such that $o(a) = p$. But $a \in H \Rightarrow a \in G$ because $H \subset G$. Therefore there exists an element $a \in G$ such that $o(a) = p$.

So let us now assume that p is not a divisor of the order of any proper subgroup of G . Let Z be the centre of G . We write the class equation for G in the form :

$$o(G) = o(Z) + \sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]} \quad \dots (1)$$

[See theorem 6, page 201]

Now $N(a)$ is a subgroup of G . If $a \notin Z$, then $N(a) \neq G$ and so p is not a divisor of $o[N(a)]$. But $p \mid o(G)$. Therefore

$$p \mid \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]} \text{ if } a \notin Z.$$

$$\therefore p \mid \sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}.$$

But $p \mid o(G)$. Therefore $p \mid \left[o(G) - \sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]} \right]$. Then

from (1), we conclude that $p \mid o(Z)$. Thus Z is a subgroup of G and the order of Z is divisible by p . But according to our assumption p is not a divisor of the order of any proper subgroup of G . Consequently $Z=G$. But then G is abelian. Therefore by Cauchy's theorem for abelian groups there exists an element in G of order p .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Example 1. Show that if p is a prime number, then any group G of order $2p$ has a normal subgroup of order p . (I.C.S. 1989)

Solution. We have $o(G) = 2p$.

Since p is prime and $p \mid o(G)$, therefore by Cauchy's theorem G has an element a of order p . Then the cyclic group

$H = \{a, a^2, \dots, a^p = e\}$ is a subgroup of G of order p .

The index of H in $G = \frac{o(G)}{o(H)} = \frac{2p}{p} = 2$.

But we know that every subgroup of G having index 2 in G is normal in G . Therefore H is normal in G .

Example 2. Prove that every abelian group of order 6 is cyclic.

Solution. Let G be an abelian group of order 6. Since the prime integers 3 and 2 are both divisors of $o(G)$, therefore by Cauchy's theorem for abelian groups there exist elements a and b in G such that $o(a) = 3$ and $o(b) = 2$. We shall show that $o(ab) = 6$ and consequently G will be a cyclic group generated by ab .

We have $b^{-1} \neq a$, since $o(b^{-1}) = o(b) = 2$ while $o(a) = 3$. Thus $ab \neq e$. Now $(ab)^2 = a^2b^2 = a^2e = a^2 \neq e$, since $o(a) = 3$. Again $(ab)^3 = a^3b^3 = eb^3 = b^3 = b^2b = eb = b \neq e$. Therefore we must have $o(ab) > 3$. But $o(ab)$ must be a divisor of $o(G)$ i.e., 6. So $o(ab)$ can neither be 4 nor it can be 5. Hence we must have $o(ab) = 6$ and consequently G is cyclic.

Definition. Suppose G is a finite group and $o(G) = p^m n$ where p is a prime number and p is not a divisor of n . Then a subgroup H of G is said to be a p -Sylow subgroup of G iff $o(H) = p^m$.

Theorem 3. Sylow's theorem. Suppose G is a group of finite order and p is a prime number. If $p^m \mid o(G)$ and p^{m+1} is not a divisor of $o(G)$, then G has a subgroup of order p^m .

(Kanpur 1986; I.A.S. 72; Vikram 76; Calicut 75; Meerut 91; B.H.U. 88)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on $o(G)$.

Assuming that the theorem is true for groups of order less than that of G , we shall show that it is also true for G . To start the induction we see that the theorem is obviously true if $o(G)=1$.

Let $o(G)=p^m n$ where p is not a divisor of n . If $m=0$, the theorem is obviously true. If $m=1$, the theorem is true by Cauchy's theorem. So let $m>1$. Then G is a group of composite order and so G must possess a subgroup H such that $H \neq G$.

If p is not a divisor of $\frac{o(G)}{o(H)}$, then $p^m \mid o(H)$ because

$$o(G)=p^m n = o(H) \cdot \frac{o(G)}{o(H)}.$$

Also p^{m+1} cannot be a divisor of $o(H)$ because then p^{m+1} will be a divisor of $o(G)$ of which $o(H)$ is a divisor. Further $o(H) < o(G)$.^{*} Therefore by our induction hypothesis, the theorem is true for H . Therefore H has a subgroup of order p^m and this will also be a subgroup of G . So let us assume that for every subgroup H of G where $H \neq G$, p is a divisor of $\frac{o(G)}{o(H)}$.

Consider the class equation,

$$o(G) = o(Z) + \sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]} \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $a \notin Z \Rightarrow N(a) \neq G$, therefore according to our assumption p is a divisor of $\sum_{a \notin Z} \frac{o(G)}{o[N(a)]}$. Also $p \mid o(G)$.

Therefore from (1), we conclude that p is a divisor of $o(Z)$. Then by Cauchy's theorem, Z has an element b of order p . Z is the centre of G . Also $N=\{b\}$ is a cyclic subgroup of Z of order p . Therefore N is a cyclic subgroup of G of order p . Since $b \in Z$, therefore N is a normal subgroup of G of order p .

[Ex. 7 on page 208 after § 4]

Now consider the quotient group $G'=G/N$.

We have $o(G') = o(G)/o(N) = p^m n / p = p^{m-1} n$.

Thus $o(G') < o(G)$. Also $p^{m-1} \mid o(G')$ but p^m is not a divisor of $o(G')$. Therefore by our induction hypothesis G' has a subgroup, say S' of order p^{m-1} . We know that the natural mapping $\phi: G \rightarrow G/N$ defined by $\phi(x) = Nx \forall x \in G$ is a homomorphism of G onto G/N with kernel N . Let $S = \{x \in G : \phi(x) \in S'\}$.

Then S is a subgroup of G and $S' \cong S/N$. [See theorem 4 of § 10]

$$\therefore o(S') = o(S/N) = \frac{o(S)}{o(N)}.$$

Therefore $o(S) = o(S') \cdot o(N) = p^{m-1}p = p^m$.

Thus S is a subgroup of G of order p^m .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If H is a p -Sylow subgroup of G and $x \in G$, then $x^{-1}Hx$ is also a p -Sylow subgroup of G . (Agra 1986)

Solution. Suppose G is a finite group and $o(G) = p^m n$ where p is a prime number and p is not a divisor of n . If H is a p -Sylow subgroup of G , then $o(H) = p^m$.

Let $x \in G$ be arbitrary. Then $x^{-1}Hx$ will be a p -Sylow subgroup of G if $x^{-1}Hx$ is a subgroup of G and if $o(x^{-1}Hx) = p^m$.

First we shall prove that $x^{-1}Hx$ is a subgroup of G . Let $x^{-1}h_1x, x^{-1}h_2x$ be any two elements of $x^{-1}Hx$. Then $h_1, h_2 \in H$. Also we have

$$(x^{-1}h_1x)(x^{-1}h_2x)^{-1} = x^{-1}h_1xx^{-1}h_2^{-1}(x^{-1})^{-1} = x^{-1}h_1eh_2^{-1}x \\ = x^{-1}h_1h_2^{-1}x$$

$\in x^{-1}Hx$ since $h_1h_2^{-1} \in H$, H being a subgroup of G .

$\therefore x^{-1}Hx$ is a subgroup of G .

Now let ψ be a mapping from H into $x^{-1}Hx$ defined as

$$\psi(h) = x^{-1}hx \quad \forall h \in H.$$

ψ is onto. Let $x^{-1}hx$ be any element of $x^{-1}Hx$. Then $h \in H$ and we have $\psi(h) = x^{-1}hx$. Therefore ψ is onto.

ψ is one-one. Let $h_1, h_2 \in H$. Then

$$\psi(h_1) = \psi(h_2) \Rightarrow x^{-1}h_1x = x^{-1}h_2x \\ \Rightarrow h_1 = h_2 \quad [\text{by cancellation laws}] \\ \Rightarrow \psi \text{ is one-one.}$$

Thus ψ is a one-to-one correspondence between the elements of H and the elements of $x^{-1}Hx$. Therefore $o(x^{-1}Hx) = o(H) = p^m$. Hence $x^{-1}Hx$ is a p -Sylow subgroup of G .

Ex. 2. If a group G has only one p -Sylow subgroup H , then H is normal in G .

Solution. Suppose a group G has only one p -Sylow subgroup H . Let x be any element of G . Then by previous exercise, $x^{-1}Hx$ is also a p -Sylow subgroup of G . But H is the only p -Sylow subgroup of G . Therefore

$$x^{-1}Hx = H \quad \forall x \in G \Rightarrow H \text{ is a normal subgroup of } G.$$

§ 1. So far we have studied group which is an algebraic structure equipped with one binary operation. In this chapter we shall study ring which is an algebraic structure equipped with two binary operations.

Ring. Definition. (I.A.S. 1971; Garhwal 76; Guru Nanak 75; Marathwada 70; Vikram 78; Sambalpur 77; Kumayun 77; Gujrat 70; Meerut 84)

Suppose R is a non-empty set equipped with two binary operations called addition and multiplication and denoted by '+' and '·' respectively i.e., for all $a, b \in R$ we have $a+b \in R$ and $a \cdot b \in R$. Then this algebraic structure $(R, +, \cdot)$ is called a ring, if the following postulates are satisfied :

1. Addition is associative, i.e.,

$$(a+b)+c=a+(b+c) \quad \forall a, b, c \in R.$$
2. Addition is commutative, i.e., $a+b=b+a \quad \forall a, b \in R$.
3. There exists an element denoted by 0 in R such that

$$0+a=a \quad \forall a \in R.$$
4. To each element a in R there exists an element $-a$ in R such that

$$(-a)+a=0.$$
5. Multiplication is associative, i.e.,

$$a.(b.c)=(a.b).c \quad \forall a, b, c \in R.$$
6. Multiplication is distributive with respect to addition, i.e., for all a, b, c , in R ,

$$a.(b+c)=a.b+a.c \quad \text{Left distributive law}$$

$$(b+c).a=b.a+c.a \quad \text{Right distributive law.}$$

Since addition is commutative in R , therefore we shall have $0 \in R$ such that $0+a=a=a+0 \quad \forall a \in R$.

Also if $a \in R$, then we shall have $(-a)+a=0=a+(-a)$.

Thus R will be an abelian group with respect to addition. The element $0 \in R$ will be the additive identity. It is called the zero element of the ring. Since in a group the identity element is unique, therefore every ring will possess a unique zero element and it

will be the identity element for addition composition. We shall always denote this element by the symbol 0.

Students should not confuse it with the number 0. It is a symbol which will represent the additive identity of the ring.

In a ring every element will possess a unique inverse for addition composition. We shall denote the additive inverse of a by the symbol $-a$.

We shall define $a-b=a+(-b)$.

The equation $a+x=b$ will have a unique solution in R and it will be $x=b-a$. Obviously $a+(b-a)=a+[b+(-a)]$

$$=a+[(-a)+b]=[a+(-a)]+b=[(-a)+a]+b=0+b=b.$$

Similarly the equation $y+a=b$ will have a unique solution in R and it will be $y=b-a$.

Both the cancellation laws will hold good for addition in R i.e., for all a, b, c in R

$$a+b=a+c \Rightarrow b=c \text{ and } b+a=c+a \Rightarrow b=c.$$

If in a ring we have $a+b=0$, then $a=-b$ and $b=-a$.

Ring with unity. *If in a ring R there exists an element denoted by 1 such that $1.a=a.a.1 \forall a \in R$, then R is called a ring with unit element. The element $1 \in R$, is called the unit element of the ring. Obviously 1 is the multiplicative identity of R . Thus if a ring possesses multiplicative identity, then it is a ring with unity.*

Commutative Ring. *If in a ring R , the multiplication composition is also commutative i.e., if we have $a.b=b.a \forall a, b \in R$, then R is called a commutative ring. (Meerut 1986; Nagarjuna 78)*

Note. In future we shall denote the multiplication composition in a ring R not by the symbol \cdot but by multiplicative notation. Thus we shall write ab in place of $a.b$.

§ 2. Elementary Properties of a Ring.

Theorem. *If R is a ring, then for all $a, b, c \in R$*

- (i) $a0=0a=0$. (Meerut 1970; Sagar 77)
- (ii) $a(-b)=-ab=(-a)b$. (Sambalpur 1977; Bombay 70)
- (iii) $(-a)(-b)=ab$. (Banaras 1968; Sagar 77)
- (iv) $a(b-c)=ab-ac$. (Meerut 1970; Vikram 78)
- (v) $(b-c)a=ba-ca$. (Banaras 1968)

Proof. (i) We have

$$\begin{aligned} a0 &= a(0+0) \\ &= a0+a0. \end{aligned}$$

$$[\because 0+0=0]$$

[by left distributive law]

$$\therefore 0+a0=a0+a0 \quad [\because a0 \in R \text{ and } 0+a0=a0]$$

Now R is a group with respect to addition, therefore applying right cancellation law for addition in R we get $0=a0$.

Similarly we have $0a=(0+0)a$

$$=0a+0a. \quad [\text{by right distributive law}]$$

$$\therefore 0+0a=0a+0a \quad [\because 0+0a=a0].$$

Applying right cancellation law for addition in R , we get $0=0a$.

$$(ii) \text{ We have } a[(-b)+b]=a0 \quad [\because -b+b=0]$$

$$\Rightarrow a(-b)+ab=0 \quad [\text{by using left distributive law and the result (i)}]$$

$$\Rightarrow a(-b)=-(ab), \text{ since in a ring } a+b=0 \Rightarrow a=-b.$$

Similarly we have $(-a+a)b=0b$

$$\Rightarrow (-a)b+ab=0 \Rightarrow (-a)b=-(ab), \text{ since in a ring } a+b=0 \Rightarrow a=-b.$$

(iii) We have $(-a)(-b)=-[(-a)b]$, since $a(-b)=-(ab)$
 $=-[-(ab)]$, since $(-a)b=-(ab)$
 $=ab$, since R is a group with respect to addition and in a group we have $-(-a)=a$.

$$(iv) \text{ We have } a(b-c)=a[b+(-c)]$$

$$=ab+a(-c) \quad [\text{left distributive law}]$$

$$=ab+[-(ac)] \quad [\because a(-c)=-(ac)]$$

$$=ab-ac.$$

(v) We have

$$(b-c)a=[b+(-c)]a$$

$$=ba+(-c)a \quad [\text{right distributive law}]$$

$$=ba+[-(ca)]=ba-ca.$$

§ 3. Integral Multiples of the elements of a ring.

Suppose R is a ring and $a \in R$. If m is a positive integer, then we define $ma=a+a+\dots$ upto m terms.

Also we define $0a=0$. Here 0 on the left hand side is the integer zero and 0 on the right hand side is the zero element (additive identity) of the ring.

If m is a positive integer, then $-m$ is a negative integer. We define $(-m)a=-(ma)=-[a+a+a+\dots \text{ upto } m \text{ terms}]$

$$=(-a)+(-a)+(-a)+\dots \text{ upto } m \text{ terms} = m(-a).$$

If m and n are any integers, we can prove that

$$ma+na=(m+n)a, \quad m(na)=(mn)a, \quad \text{and } (ma)(na)=(mn)a^2.$$

Also we can prove that for any integer m , we have

$$m(a+b)=ma+mb \quad \forall a, b \in R.$$

The students should not confuse that this is the distributive law we assumed in the postulates for a ring. It is not so. Here m is an integer and a, b are elements of R .

§ 4. Examples of Rings.

Example 1. *The set R consisting of a single element 0 with two binary operations defined by $0+0=0$ and $0.0=0$ is a ring. This ring is called the null ring or the zero ring.*

Example 2. *The set I of all integers is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication of integers as the two ring compositions. This ring is called the ring of integers.* (Garhwal 1976)

Solution. As in groups, we should first prove that I is an abelian group with respect to addition of integers.

Further we observe that

(i) The product of two integers is also an integer. Therefore I is closed with respect to multiplication of integers.

(ii) Multiplication of integers is an associative composition.

(iii) Multiplication of integers is distributive with respect to addition of integers i.e., if a, b, c are any elements of I , then

$$a(b+c)=ab+ac \text{ and } (b+c)a=ba+ca.$$

Therefore I is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication of integers. The integer 0 is the zero element of this ring. Also the multiplicative identity exists and is the integer 1 . We have $1a=a=a1 \forall a \in I$. Thus the ring of integers is a ring with unity. The integer 1 is the unit element of this ring.

The multiplication of integers is a commutative composition. Therefore it is also a commutative ring.

Example 3. *The set $2I$ of all even integers is a commutative ring without unity, the addition and multiplication of integers being the two ring compositions.*

Example 4. *The set Q of all rational numbers is a commutative ring with unity, the addition and multiplication of rational numbers being the two ring compositions.*

(Meerut 1976; Kanpur 80; Kumayun 77)

Example 5. *The set R of all real numbers is a commutative ring with unity, the addition and multiplication of real numbers being the two ring compositions.*

Example 6. *The set C of all complex numbers is a commutative ring with unity, the addition and multiplication of complex numbers being the two ring compositions.*

Note. The students should themselves write the complete

solutions of example 3, 4, 5 and 6 with the help of example 2 of the ring of integers and the corresponding questions of groups.

Example 7. *The set M of all $n \times n$ matrices with their elements as real numbers (rational numbers, complex numbers, integers) is a non-commutative ring with unity, with respect to addition and multiplication of matrices as the two ring compositions.*

Solution. We know that the sum and product of two $n \times n$ matrices with their elements as real numbers are again $n \times n$ matrices with their elements as real numbers. Therefore M is closed with respect to addition and multiplication of matrices.

Further we observe that

(i) $A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C \quad \forall A, B, C \in M$, since the addition of matrices is an associative composition.

(ii) $A + B = B + A \quad \forall A, B \in M$, since the addition of matrices is commutative.

(iii) If O is the null matrix of the type $n \times n$, then $O \in M$ and we have $O + A = A \quad \forall A \in M$.

(iv) To each matrix $A \in M$ there exists a matrix $-A \in M$ such that $(-A) + A = O$ (null matrix).

(v) $(AB)C = A(BC)$, $\forall A, B, C \in M$, since multiplication of matrices is associative.

(vi) $A(B + C) = AB + AC$,

and $(B + C)A = BA + CA \quad \forall A, B, C \in M$, since matrix multiplication is distributive with respect to matrix addition.

Hence M is a ring with respect to the two given compositions. The null matrix O of the type $n \times n$ is the zero element of this ring i.e., $O = 0$.

Since the multiplication of matrices is not in general commutative, therefore the ring is a non-commutative ring. [$n > 1$]

Finally if I be the unit matrix of the type $n \times n$, then $I \in M$ and we have $IA = A = AI \quad \forall A \in M$. Therefore the matrix I is the multiplicative identity. Thus the ring is with unity and the matrix I is the unity element of the ring i.e., $I = 1$.

Example 8. *The set $R = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ is a commutative ring with respect to $‘+_6’$ and $‘\times_6’$ as the two ring compositions.*

Solution. As we have proved in groups, we should first prove that R is an abelian group with respect to $‘+_6’$.

Now we form the composition table for R for the composition \times_6 .

\times_6	0	1	2	3	4	5
0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	2	3	4	5
2	0	2	4	0	2	4
3	0	3	0	3	0	3
4	0	4	2	0	4	2
5	0	5	4	3	2	1

From the composition table we see that R is closed with respect to the composition ' \times_6 '.

Also we know that ' \times_6 ' is an associative composition in R i.e., $a \times_6 (b \times_6 c) = (a \times_6 b) \times_6 c \quad \forall a, b, c \in R$.

Further ' \times_6 ' is distributive in R with respect to ' $+$ '. If a, b, c are any elements of R , then

$$a \times_6 (b +_6 c) = a \times_6 (b + c) \quad [\because b + c \equiv b +_6 c \pmod{6}]$$

= least non-negative remainder when $a(b + c)$ is divided by 6

= least non-negative remainder when $ab + ac$ is divided by 6

$$= (ab) +_6 (ac)$$

$$= (a \times_6 b) +_6 (a \times_6 c)$$

$$[\because a \times_6 b \equiv ab \pmod{6}]$$

$$= (a \times_6 b) +_6 (a \times_6 c)$$

$$[\because a \times_6 c \equiv ac \pmod{6}]$$

Similarly we can prove that $(b +_6 c) \times_6 a = (b \times_6 a) +_6 (c \times_6 a)$.

$\therefore R$ is a ring with respect to the given compositions. Since ' \times_6 ' is a commutative composition in R as is clear from the composition table also, therefore R is a commutative ring. Also 1 is the identity element for the composition ' \times_6 '. Therefore R is a ring with unity. The integer 0 is the zero element of this ring.

Important. We see that in this ring R neither 2 nor 3 is equal to the zero element of the ring. But $2 \times_6 3 = 0$ (zero element of the ring). Thus in a ring it is possible that the product of two non-zero elements is equal to the zero element. Also the number of elements in R is finite. Therefore this is an example of a finite ring.

§ 5. Some special types of rings. Rings with or without zero divisors.

We have proved that in any ring R , if 0 is the additive iden-

tity i.e., the zero element of the ring, then $0a=a0=0 \forall a \in R$. However there are rings in which it is possible that $ab=0$ when neither $a=0$ nor $b=0$. Such elements are called zero divisors.

Definition. A non-zero element of a ring R is called a zero divisor or a divisor of zero if there exists an element $b \neq 0 \in R$ such that either $ab=0$ or $ba=0$. (Jabalpur 1970)

Rings without zero divisors. A ring R is without zero-divisors if the product of no two non-zero elements of R is zero, i.e., if $ab=0 \Rightarrow a=0$ or $b=0$. (Meerut 1984P)

On the other hand if in a ring R there exist non-zero elements a and b such that $ab=0$, then R is said to be a ring with zero divisors.

Example 1. Suppose M is a ring of all 2×2 matrices with their elements as integers, the addition and multiplication of matrices being the two ring compositions. Then M is a ring with zero divisors.

(Madras 1977)

The null matrix $O = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is the zero element of this ring.

Now $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ are two non-zero elements of this ring i.e., $A \neq O$, $B \neq O$. We have

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = O.$$

Thus the product of two non-zero elements of the ring is equal to the zero element of the ring. Therefore M is a ring with zero divisors.

Also it is interesting to note that

$$BA = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \neq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus in a ring R it is possible that $ab=0$ but $ba \neq 0$.

Example 2. The ring $(\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}, +_6, \times_6)$ is a ring with zero divisors. We have $2 \times_6 3 = 0$, $3 \times_6 4 = 0$ i.e., the product of two non-zero elements is equal to the zero element of the ring.

Example 3. The ring of integers is a ring without zero divisors. The product of two non-zero integers cannot be equal to the zero integer.

Cancellation laws in a ring. If R is a ring then R is an abelian group with respect to addition. For addition composition the cancellation laws hold in all rings. Therefore the question of cancellation laws holding in a ring arises only for the multiplication composition.

We say that cancellation laws hold in a ring R if

$$a \neq 0, ab=ac \Rightarrow b=c$$

and $a \neq 0, ba=ca \Rightarrow b=c$ where $a, b, c \in R$. (Meerut 1975)

Theorem. A ring R is without zero divisors if and only if the cancellation laws hold in R , i.e.,

R is without zero divisors \Leftrightarrow cancellation laws hold in R .

(I.A.S. 1974; Madras 74; Garhwal 76; Kumayon 78; Karnatak 77; Meerut 75, 81; Kanpur 71)

Proof. First suppose that R has no zero divisors. Let a, b, c be any three elements of R such that $a \neq 0, ab=ac$.

We have $ab=ac \Rightarrow ab-ac=0 \Rightarrow a(h-c)=0$.

Since R is without zero divisors, therefore

$$a(b-c)=0 \text{ and } a \neq 0 \Rightarrow b-c=0 \text{ i.e., } b=c.$$

Thus the left cancellation law holds in R . Similarly we can show that the right cancellation law also holds in R .

Conversely suppose that the cancellation laws hold in R . If possible let $ab=0, a \neq 0, b \neq 0$.

Then we have $ab=a0$, since $a0=0$.

Now $a \neq 0, ab=a0 \Rightarrow b=0$ by left cancellation law.

Thus we get a contradiction. Hence R is without zero divisors.

§ 6. Integral Domains. Fields. Division Rings.

Definition. Integral Domain. (Madras 1973; Kolhapur 73; Garhwal 76; Kanpur 79; Meerut 81, 84, 86; Vikram 78; Andhra 77; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Madras 77)

A ring is called an integral domain if it (i) is commutative, (ii) has unit element, (iii) is without zero divisors.

However some authors define an integral domain as a commutative ring without zero divisors. They do not require that an integral domain should definitely possess the unit element.

The most important example of an integral domain is the ring I of integers. We have proved that I is a commutative ring with unity. Also I does not possess zero divisors. We know that if a, b are integers such that $ab=0$, then either a or b must be zero.

Also it can be seen that the algebraic structures $(C, +, \cdot)$, $(Q, +, \cdot)$, $(R, +, \cdot)$, are all integral domains. As an example of a finite integral domain we have the ring $(\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}, +_5, \times_5)$.

Inversible elements in a ring with unity. In a ring every element possesses additive inverse. Therefore the question of an

element being inversible or not arises only with respect to multiplication. If R is a ring with unity, then an element $a \in R$ is called *inversible*, if there exists $b \in R$ such that $ab=1=ba$. Also then we write $b=a^{-1}$.

Examples.

(i) 1 and -1 are the only two inversible elements of the ring of all integers.

(ii) $n \times n$ non-singular matrices with real numbers as elements are the only inversible elements of the ring of all $n \times n$ matrices with elements as real numbers.

Field. Definition. (I.A.S. 1971; Kolhapur 73;

Garhwal 76; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Andhra 77; Meerut 81, 86)

A ring R with at least two elements is called a *field* if it,

(i) is commutative, (ii) has unity, (iii) is such that each non-zero element possesses multiplicative inverse.

For example, the ring of rational numbers $(Q, +, \cdot)$ is a field since it is a commutative ring with unity and each non-zero element is inversible.

The rings of real numbers and complex numbers are also examples of fields.

As an example of a finite field we have the ring

$$(\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}, +_5, \times_5).$$

If $a, 0 \neq b$ are elements of a field F , then we shall often write

$$ab^{-1} = \frac{a}{b} = b^{-1}a. \quad \text{In a field } F, \text{ we have}$$

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = (ab^{-1}) + (cd^{-1}) = (bd)^{-1} (bd) [(ab^{-1}) + (cd^{-1})]$$

$$= (bd)^{-1} [(bd)(ab^{-1}) + (bd)(cd^{-1})] = (bd)^{-1} (ad + bc) = \frac{ad + bc}{bd}.$$

[Note that multiplication in F is commutative].

$$\text{Also } \frac{a}{b} \frac{c}{d} = (ab^{-1})(cd^{-1}) = (ac)(b^{-1}d^{-1}) = (ac)(bd)^{-1} = \frac{ac}{bd}.$$

Division ring or skew field. Definition.

(Andhra 1977; Allahabad 80; Meerut 81, 84 P)

A ring R with at least two elements is called a *division ring* or a *skew field* if it (i) has unity, (ii) is such that each non-zero element possesses multiplicative inverse.

Thus a commutative division ring is a field.

Every field is also a division ring. But a division ring is a

field if it is also commutative. We shall later on give an example of a skew field which is not commutative i.e., which is not a field.

Theorem 1. *Every field is an integral domain.*

(Delhi 1970; Garhwal 76; Jabalpur 70; Jiwaji 78; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Meerut 80, 81, 82, 87, 90)

Proof. Since a field F is a commutative ring with unity, therefore in order to show that every field is an integral domain we should show that a field has no zero divisors.

Let a, b be elements of F with $a \neq 0$ such that $ab=0$.

Since $a \neq 0$, a^{-1} exists and we have

$$\begin{aligned} ab=0 &\Rightarrow a^{-1}(ab)=a^{-1}0 \\ &\Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)b=0 \\ &\Rightarrow 1b=0 && [\because a^{-1}a=1] \\ &\Rightarrow b=0. && [\because 1b=b] \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, let $ab=0$ and $b \neq 0$.

Since $b \neq 0$, b^{-1} exists and we have

$$\begin{aligned} ab=0 &\Rightarrow (ab)b^{-1}=0b^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow a(bb^{-1})=0 \Rightarrow a1=0 \Rightarrow a=0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus in a field $ab=0 \Rightarrow a=0$ or $b=0$. Therefore a field has no zero divisors. Therefore every field is an integral domain.

But the converse is not true i.e., every integral domain is not a field. For example the ring of integers is an integral domain and it is not a field. The only invertible elements of the ring of integers are 1 and -1 .

(Nagarjuna 1979, 80; Rajasthan 77; Meerut 81, 82)

Note. For a field unity and zero are distinct elements i.e., $1 \neq 0$. Let a be any non-zero element of a field. Then a^{-1} exists and is also non-zero. For, $a^{-1}=0 \Rightarrow aa^{-1}=a0 \Rightarrow 1=0 \Rightarrow a1=a0 \Rightarrow a=0$ which is a contradiction. Now a field has no zero divisors. Therefore $1=a^{-1}a \neq 0$.

Important. A field has no zero divisors. Therefore in a field the product of two non-zero elements will again be a non-zero element. Also the unit element $1 \neq 0$ and each non-zero element possesses multiplicative inverse which is again a non-zero element. The multiplication is commutative as well as associative. Therefore the non-zero elements of a field form an abelian group with respect to multiplication.

Theorem 2. *A sfield (skew field) has no divisors of zero.*

(Allahabad 1980)

Proof. Let D be a skew-field. Then D is a ring with unit element 1 and each non-zero element of D possesses multiplicative inverse.

Let a, b be elements of D with $a \neq 0$ such that $ab=0$.

Since $a \neq 0$, a^{-1} exists and we have

$$\begin{aligned} ab=0 &\Rightarrow a^{-1}(ab)=a^{-1}0 \\ &\Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)b=0 \Rightarrow 1b=0 \Rightarrow b=0. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, let $ab=0$ with $b \neq 0$.

Since $b \neq 0$, b^{-1} exists and we have

$$\begin{aligned} ab=0 &\Rightarrow (ab)b^{-1}=0b^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow a(bb^{-1})=0 \Rightarrow a1=0 \Rightarrow a=0. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore a skew field has no zero divisors.

Theorem 3. *A finite commutative ring without zero divisors is a field.*

Or

Every finite integral domain is a field.

(Delhi 1970; Nāgarjuna 78; Gurunanak 75; Madras 78;
Rajasthan 76; Garhwal 76; Poona 73; Agra 86; Kanpur 88;
Allahabad 82; Meerut 80, 83, 84 P, 87)

Proof. Let D be a finite commutative ring without zero divisors having n elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n . In order to prove that D is a field, we must produce an element $1 \in D$ such that $1a=a \forall a \in D$. Also we should show that for every element $a \neq 0 \in D$ there exists an element $b \in D$ such that $ba=1$.

Let $a \neq 0 \in D$. Consider the n products aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n .

All these are elements of D . Also they are all distinct. For suppose that $aa_i=aa_j$ for $i \neq j$.

Then $a(a_i - a_j)=0$(1)

Since D is without zero divisors and $a \neq 0$, therefore (1) implies

$$a_i - a_j = 0 \Rightarrow a_i = a_j, \text{ contradicting } i \neq j.$$

$\therefore aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n$ are all the n distinct elements of D placed in some order. So one of these elements will be equal to a . Thus there exists an element, say, $c \in D$ such that

$$ac=a=ca. \quad [\because D \text{ is commutative}]$$

We shall show that this element c is the multiplicative identity of D . Let y be any element of D . Then from the above discussion for some $x \in D$, we shall have $ax=y=xa$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } cy &= c(ax) & [\because ax=y] \\ &= (ca)x \\ &= ax & [\because ca=a] \\ &= y & [\because ax=y] \end{aligned}$$

$$=yc$$

[$\because D$ is commutative]

Thus $cy=y=yc$, $\forall y \in D$. Therefore c is the unit element of the ring D and let us denote it by 1.

Now $1 \in D$. Therefore from the above discussion one of the n products aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n will be equal to 1. Thus there exists an element, say $b \in D$ such that

$$ab=1=ba.$$

$\therefore b$ is the multiplicative inverse of the non-zero element $a \in D$. Thus every non-zero element of D is invertible.

Hence D is a field.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If a, b, c, d are elements of a ring R , then evaluate $(a+b)(c+d)$.

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)(c+d) &= a(c+d) + b(c+d) && [\text{by right distributive law}] \\ &= ac + ad + bc + bd && [\text{by left distributive law}]\end{aligned}$$

Ex. 2. Prove that if $a, b \in R$ then $(a+b)^2 = a^2 + ab + ba + b^2$, where by x^2 we mean xx .

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)^2 &= (a+b)(a+b) \\ &= a(a+b) + b(a+b) && [\text{by right distributive law}] \\ &= (aa+ab) + (ba+bb) && [\text{by left distributive law}] \\ &= a^2 + ab + ba + b^2.\end{aligned}$$

Ex. 3. If a, b are any elements of a ring R , prove that

$$(i) \quad -(-a) = a, \quad (ii) \quad -(a+b) = -a-b,$$

$$(iii) \quad -(a-b) = -a+b.$$

Solution. (i) Since R is a group with respect to addition, therefore $-(-a) = a$. [Remember that in a group $(a^{-1})^{-1} = a$].

(ii) Since R is a group with respect to addition, therefore $-(a+b) = (-b) + (-a)$. But addition in R is commutative.

$$\therefore (-b) + (-a) = (-a) + (-b) = -a-b.$$

$$\therefore -(a+b) = -a-b.$$

$$(iii) \quad -(a-b) = -[a+(-b)] = -a+[-(-b)] = -a+b.$$

Ex. 4. If a, b, c, d are any elements of a ring R , prove that

$$(a-b)(c-d) = (ac+bd) - (ad+bc).$$

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned}(a-b)(c-d) &= (a-b)c - (a-b)d && [\because a(b-c) = ab-ac] \\ &= (ac-bc) - (ad-bd) = (ac-bc) - ad + bd \\ &= (ac+bd) - bc - ad\end{aligned}$$

[\because addition is commutative and associative]
 $= (ac + bd) - (bc + ad).$

Ex. 5. If R is a system satisfying all the conditions for a ring with unit element with the possible exception of $a + b = b + a$, prove that the axiom $a + b = b + a$ must hold in R and that R is thus a ring.

(Madurai 1988; Allahabad 82)

Solution. Since 1 is an element of R , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (a+b)(1+1) &= a(1+1) + b(1+1) \text{ [by right distributive law]} \\ &= (a1 + a1) + (b1 + b1) = (a+a) + (b+b) \quad \dots(i) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } (a+b)(1+1) &= (a+b)1 + (a+b)1 \\ &\quad \text{[by left distributive law]} \end{aligned}$$

$$= (a+b) + (a+b) \quad \dots(ii)$$

[\because 1 is the unit element]

From (i) and (ii), we get

$$\begin{aligned} (a+a) + (b+b) &= (a+b) + (a+b) \\ \Rightarrow [(a+a) + b] + b &= [(a+b) + a] + b \text{ [by associativity of addition]} \\ \Rightarrow (a+a) + b &= (a+b) + a \text{ [by right cancellation law for addition in } R \text{ since with the given postulates } R \text{ is a group with respect to addition]} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow a + (a+b) = a + (b+a) \text{ [by associativity of addition in } R]$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+b) = (b+a) \text{ [by left cancellation law for addition in } R]$$

Thus addition is commutative in R . Hence R is a ring.

Ex. 6. If R is a ring such that $a^2 = a \forall a \in R$ prove that

(i) $a + a = 0 \forall a \in R$ i.e., each element of R is its own additive inverse. (Nagpur 1970)

(ii) $a + b = 0 \Rightarrow a = b.$ (iii) R is a commutative ring.

(Madras 1974; Nagarjuna 79, 80; I.C.S. 89)

Solution. (i) $a \in R \Rightarrow a + a \in R.$

Now $(a+a)^2 = (a+a)$ [given]

$$\Rightarrow (a+a)(a+a) = a+a$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+a)a + (a+a)a = a+a \quad \text{[Left Dist. Law]}$$

$$\Rightarrow (a^2 + a^2) + (a^2 + a^2) = a+a \quad \text{[Right Dist. Law]}$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+a) + (a+a) = a+a \quad [\because a^2 = a]$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+a) + (a+a) = (a+a) + 0 \quad [\because a+0 = a]$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+a) = 0 \text{ [by left cancellation law for addition in } R]$$

(ii) We have just proved that $a + a = 0.$

$\therefore a + b = 0 \Rightarrow a + b = a + a \Rightarrow b = a$, by left cancellation law for addition in R .

(iii) We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a+b)^2 &= (a+b) \\
 \Rightarrow (a+b)(a+b) &= (a+b) \\
 \Rightarrow (a+b)a + (a+b)b &= a+b && [\text{Left Dist. Law}] \\
 \Rightarrow (a^2+ba) + (ab+b^2) &= a+b && [\text{Right Dist. Law}] \\
 \Rightarrow (a+ba) + (ab+b) &= a+b && [\because a^2=a, b^2=b] \\
 \Rightarrow (a+b) + (ba+ab) &= (a+b) + 0 && [\text{by commutativity and} \\
 &&& \text{associativity of addition}] \\
 \Rightarrow ba+ab &= 0 && [\text{by left cancellation law for addition in } R] \\
 \Rightarrow ab &= ba. && [\text{by part (ii) of this question}]
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore R$ is commutative ring.

Note. An element a of a ring R is said to be idempotent if $a^2=a$. A ring R is called a Boolean Ring if all of its elements are idempotent i.e., if $a^2=a \forall a \in R$. (Nagarjuna 1979, 80)

Ex. 7. Prove that the set M of 2×2 matrices over the field of real numbers is a ring with respect to matrix addition and multiplication. Is it a commutative ring with unity element? Find the zero element. Does this ring possess zero divisors?

(Delhi 1970; Madras 77; Mysore 77)

Solution. Let $A, B \in M$. Then $A+B \in M$ and $AB \in M$. Therefore M is closed with respect to addition and multiplication of matrices.

Both addition and multiplication of matrices are associative compositions.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore A+(B+C) &= (A+B)+C \quad \forall A, B, C \in M \\
 \text{and } A(BC) &= (AB)C \quad \forall A, B, C \in M.
 \end{aligned}$$

Addition of matrices is a commutative composition. Therefore for all $A, B \in M$, we have $A+B=B+A$.

If O be the null matrix of the type 2×2 , then $O \in M$ and $O+A=A \forall A \in M$.

Further multiplication of matrices is distributive with respect to addition.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore A(B+C) &= AB+AC \\
 \text{and } (B+C)A &= BA+CA \quad \forall A, B, C \in M.
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore M$ is a ring with respect to the given compositions.

Multiplication of matrices is not in general a commutative composition. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, then

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 8 \\ 3 & 11 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } BA = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 & 14 \\ 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus $AB \neq BA$ and so the ring is a non-commutative ring.

If I be the unit matrix of the type 2×2 i.e., if $I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, then $I \in M$. Also we have $AI = A = IA \forall A \in M$.

$\therefore I$ is the multiplicative identity.

Thus the ring possesses the unit element and we have $I=1$ (the unit element of the ring).

The null matrix $O = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is the additive identity and is therefore the zero element of the ring i.e., $O=0$ (the zero element of the ring).

The ring possesses zero divisors. For example if

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ then } AB = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus the product of two non-zero elements of the ring is equal to the zero element of the ring.

Ex. 8. Do the following sets form integral domains with respect to ordinary addition and multiplication? If so state if they are fields.

- (i) the set of numbers of the form $b\sqrt{2}$ with b rational.
- (ii) the set of even integers. (Meerut 1975)
- (iii) the set of positive integers. (Meerut 1968)

Solution. (i) Let $A = \{b\sqrt{2} : b \in \mathbb{Q}\}$.

We have $3\sqrt{2} \in A$ and $5\sqrt{2} \in A$. Then $(3\sqrt{2})(5\sqrt{2}) = 30$.

Now 30 cannot be put in the form $b\sqrt{2}$ where b is a rational number. Therefore $30 \notin A$. Thus A is not closed with respect to multiplication. Therefore the question of A becoming a ring does not arise.

(ii) Let R be the set of all even integers. Then R is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication of integers. Also the multiplication is a commutative composition. R is without zero divisors since the product of two non-zero even integers cannot be equal to zero which is the zero element of this ring. Since the integer $1 \notin R$, therefore R is a ring without unity.

R will be an integral domain if we do not require the existence of the unit element for an integral domain.

But R is not a field since the multiplicative identity does not exist.

(iii) Let N be the set of positive integers. Since the integer $0 \notin N$, therefore the additive identity does not exist. So N will not be a ring.

Ex. 9. Show that the set of numbers of the form $a+b\sqrt{2}$, with a and b as rational numbers is a field.

(Kumayon 1977; Kanpur 80; Agra 72; Meerut 73)

Solution. Let $R = \{a+b\sqrt{2} : a, b \in \mathbb{Q}\}$.

Let $a_1+b_1\sqrt{2} \in R$ and $a_2+b_2\sqrt{2} \in R$. Then

$$a_1, b_1, a_2, b_2 \in \mathbb{Q}.$$

We have $(a_1+b_1\sqrt{2})+(a_2+b_2\sqrt{2})=(a_1+a_2)+(b_1+b_2)\sqrt{2}$
 $\in R$ since $a_1+a_2, b_1+b_2 \in \mathbb{Q}$.

Also $(a_1+b_1\sqrt{2})(a_2+b_2\sqrt{2})=(a_1a_2+2b_1b_2)+(a_1b_2+a_2b_1)\sqrt{2}$
 $\in R$ since $a_1a_2+2b_1b_2, a_1b_2+a_2b_1 \in \mathbb{Q}$.

Thus R is closed with respect to addition and multiplication.

All the elements of R are real numbers and we know that addition and multiplication are both associative as well as commutative compositions in the set of real numbers.

Further we have $0+0\sqrt{2} \in R$ since $0 \in \mathbb{Q}$.

If $a+b\sqrt{2} \in R$, then

$$(0+0\sqrt{2})+(a+b\sqrt{2})=(0+a)+(0+b)\sqrt{2}=a+b\sqrt{2}.$$

$\therefore 0+0\sqrt{2}$ is the additive identity.

Again if $a+b\sqrt{2} \in R$, then $(-a)+(-b)\sqrt{2} \in R$ and we have
 $\{(-a)+(-b)\sqrt{2}\}+(a+b\sqrt{2})=0+0\sqrt{2}.$

\therefore each element of R possesses additive inverse.

Further in the set of real numbers multiplication is distributive with respect to addition.

Again $1+0\sqrt{2} \in R$ and we have

$$(1+0\sqrt{2})(a+b\sqrt{2})=a+b\sqrt{2}=(a+b\sqrt{2})(1+0\sqrt{2}).$$

$\therefore 1+0\sqrt{2}$ is the multiplicative identity.

Thus R is a commutative ring with unity. The zero element of the ring is $0+0\sqrt{2}$ and the unit element is $1+0\sqrt{2}$.

Now R will be a field if each non-zero element of R possesses multiplicative inverse.

Let $a+b\sqrt{2}$ be any non-zero element of this ring i.e., at least one of a and b is not zero.

$$\text{Then } \frac{1}{a+b\sqrt{2}} = \frac{a-b\sqrt{2}}{(a+b\sqrt{2})(a-b\sqrt{2})} = \frac{a-b\sqrt{2}}{a^2-2b^2}$$

$$= \left(\frac{a}{a^2-2b^2} \right) + \left(-\frac{b}{a^2-2b^2} \right) \sqrt{2}.$$

Now if a and b are rational numbers, then we can have $a^2=2b^2$ only if $a=0, b=0$. Since here at least one of the rational numbers a and b is not 0, therefore we cannot have $a^2=2b^2$ i.e., $a^2-2b^2=0$.

$\therefore \frac{a}{a^2-2b^2}$ and $-\frac{b}{a^2-2b^2}$ are both rational numbers and at least one of them is not zero.

$\therefore \left(\frac{a}{a^2-2b^2} \right) + \left(-\frac{b}{a^2-2b^2} \right) \sqrt{2}$ is a non-zero element of R and is the multiplicative inverse of $a+b\sqrt{2}$.

Hence the given system is a field.

Ex. 10. Prove that the set $I(\sqrt{2})$ of all real numbers of the form $a+b\sqrt{2}$, with a and b as integers is an integral domain with respect to ordinary addition and multiplication. Is it a field?

(Kanpur 1970; Agra 74; Rajasthan 77; Meerut 81; Bombay 70)

Solution. As in Ex. 9, we can easily verify that the given system is a commutative ring with unity element $1+0\sqrt{2}$. Also $0+0\sqrt{2}$ is the zero element of this ring. Now in order to prove that this ring is an integral domain, we should prove that this ring is without zero divisors.

Let $a+b\sqrt{2}$ and $c+d\sqrt{2}$ be any two elements of this ring. Then

$$(a+b\sqrt{2})(c+d\sqrt{2})=0+0\sqrt{2}$$

$\Rightarrow ac+2bd=0$ and $bc+ad=0$ and this will happen only when either

$$a=0 \text{ and } b=0$$

or

$$c=0 \text{ and } d=0.$$

$$\text{Thus } (a+b\sqrt{2})(c+d\sqrt{2})=0+0\sqrt{2}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{either } a+b\sqrt{2}=0 \text{ or } c+d\sqrt{2}=0.$$

Thus the given ring is without zero divisors. Therefore it is an integral domain. But it is not a field. Obviously $5+3\sqrt{2}$ is a non-zero element of this ring. Its inverse would have been

$$\frac{1}{5+3\sqrt{2}} = \frac{5-3\sqrt{2}}{(5+3\sqrt{2})(5-3\sqrt{2})} = \frac{5-3\sqrt{2}}{7} = \frac{5}{7} - \frac{3}{7}\sqrt{2}$$

which is not an element of this ring.

Ex. 11. A Gaussian integer is a complex number $a+ib$, where a and b are integers. Show that the set $J[I]$ of Gaussian integers

forms a ring under ordinary addition and multiplication of complex numbers. Is it an integral domain? Is it a field?

(I.A.S. 1973; Kolhapur 74; Poona 74; Madurai 78)

Solution. Let $a+ib$ and $c+id$ be any two Gaussian integers. Then
 $(a+ib)+(c+id)=(a+c)+i(b+d)$
 and $(a+ib)(c+id)=(ac-bd)+i(ad+bc)$.

These are again Gaussian integers. Therefore $J[i]$ is closed with respect to ordinary addition and multiplication of complex numbers.

Further in complex numbers both addition and multiplication are associative as well as commutative compositions. Also multiplication distributes with respect to addition. The Gaussian integer $0+i0$ is the additive identity. The additive inverse of $a+ib$ is $(-a)+i(-b)$. The Gaussian integer $1+i0$ is the multiplicative identity.

Therefore the set of Gaussian integers is a commutative ring with unity for the given composition.

Also this ring is free from zero divisors since the product of two non-zero complex numbers cannot be zero. Therefore $J[i]$ is an integral domain.

But this is not a field since the multiplicative inverse of $a+ib$ will be $\frac{a}{a^2+b^2}+i\left(-\frac{b}{a^2+b^2}\right)$ which is not always a Gaussian integer as $\frac{a}{a^2+b^2}$ and $-\frac{b}{a^2+b^2}$ are not necessarily integers.

Ex. 12. Prove that the totality R of all ordered pairs (a, b) of real numbers is a commutative ring with zero divisors under the addition and multiplication of ordered pairs defined as

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a+c, b+d)$$

$$(a, b)(c, d) = (ac, bd)$$

$$\forall (a, b), (c, d) \in R. \quad (\text{Sambalpur 1977; I.C.S. 83})$$

Solution. We see that R is closed with respect to the two compositions since $a+c, b+d, ac, bd$ are all real numbers. Now let $(a, b), (c, d), (e, f)$ be any elements of R . Then we observe:

Associativity of addition. We have

$$[(a, b) + (c, d)] + (e, f) = (a+c, b+d) + (e, f)$$

$$= ([a+c], [b+d]) + (e, f)$$

$$= (a+[c], b+[d]) + (e, f)$$

$$[\because \text{addition of real numbers is associative}]$$

$$= (a, b) + (c+e, d+f)$$

$$= (a, b) + [(c, d) + (e, f)].$$

\therefore addition in R is associative.

Commutativity of addition. We have

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a + c, b + d) = (c + a, d + b) = (c, d) + (a, b).$$

Existence of additive identity. We have $(0, 0) \in R$. Also

$$(0, 0) + (a, b) = (0 + a, 0 + b) = (a, b).$$

Existence of additive inverse. If $(a, b) \in R$, then $(-a, -b) \in R$ and we have $(-a, -b) + (a, b) = (-a + a, -b + b) = (0, 0)$.

$\therefore (-a, -b)$ is the additive inverse of (a, b) .

Associativity of Multiplication. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [(a, b) (c, d)] (e, f) &= (ac, bd) (e, f) = ([ac] e, [bd] f) \\ &= (a [ce], b [df]) \end{aligned}$$

\because multiplication of real numbers is associative]

$$= (a, b) (ce, df) = (a, b) [(c, d) (e, f)].$$

Distributive laws. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (a, b) [(c, d) + (e, f)] &= (a, b) (c + e, d + f) \\ &= (a [c + e], b [d + f]) \\ &= (ac + ae, bd + bf) = (ac, bd) + (ae, bf) \\ &= (a, b) (c, d) + (a, b) (e, f). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we can show that the other distributive law also holds good.

$\therefore R$ is a ring with respect to the given compositions.

Commutativity of multiplication. We have

$$(a, b) (c, d) = (ac, bd) = (ca, db) = (c, d) (a, b).$$

$\therefore R$ is a commutative ring.

Existence of multiplicative identity. We have $(1, 1) \in R$. If $(a, b) \in R$, then $(1, 1) (a, b) = (1a, 1b) = (a, b) = (a, b) (1, 1)$.

$\therefore (1, 1)$ is the multiplicative identity and is therefore the unit element of the ring. So R is a ring with unity also.

The zero element of this ring is the ordered pair $(0, 0)$.

Now in order to show that R is a ring with zero divisors we should show that there exist two non-zero elements of R whose product is equal to the zero element of R . Obviously neither $(3, 0)$ nor $(0, 5)$ is equal to the zero element of R . But $(3, 0) (0, 5) = (3 \times 0, 0 \times 5) = (0, 0)$ which is the zero element of R .

$\therefore R$ is a ring with zero divisors.

Ex. 13. Let C be the set of the ordered pairs (a, b) of real numbers. Define addition and multiplication in C by the equations

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a + c, b + d)$$

$$(a, b) (c, d) = (ac - bd, bc + ad)$$

Prove that C is a field.

(Meerut 1978; Marathwada 74)

Proof. We see that C is closed with respect to the two compositions since $a+c, b+d, ac-bd, bc+ad$ are all real numbers. Now let $(a, b), (c, d), (e, f)$ be any elements of C . Then we make the following observations :

Associativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [(a, b) + (c, d)] + (e, f) &= (a+c, b+d) + (e, f) \\ &= ([a+c] + e, [b+d] + f) = (a+[c+e], b+[d+f]) \\ &= (a, b) + (c+e, d+f) = (a, b) + [(c, d) + (e, f)]. \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity of addition. We have

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a+c, b+d) = (c+a, d+b) = (c, d) + (a, b).$$

Existence of additive Identity. We have $(0, 0) \in C$.

$$\text{Also } (0, 0) + (a, b) = (0+a, 0+b) = (a, b).$$

$\therefore (0, 0)$ is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. If $(a, b) \in C$, then

$$(-a, -b) \in C. \text{ We have}$$

$$(-a, -b) + (a, b) = (-a+a, -b+b) = (0, 0).$$

$\therefore (-a, -b)$ is the additive inverse of (a, b) .

Associativity of multiplication. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [(a, b)(c, d)](e, f) &= (ac-bd, bc+ad)(e, f) \\ &= ([ac-bd]e - [bc+ad]f, [bc+ad]e + [ac-bd]f) \\ &= (a[ce-df] - b[de+cf], b[ce-df] + a[de+cf]) \\ &= (a, b)(ce-df, de+cf) = (a, b)[(c, d)(e, f)]. \end{aligned}$$

Distributive laws. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (a, b)[(c, d) + (e, f)] &= (a, b)(c+e, d+f) \\ &= (a[c+e] - b[d+f], b[c+e] + a[d+f]) \\ &= ([ac-bd] + [ae-bf], [bc+ad] + [be+af]) \\ &= (ac-bd, bc+ad) + (ae-bf, be+af) = (a, b)(c, d) + (a, b)(e, f). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we can show that the other distributive law also holds good.

Therefore C is a ring with respect to the two compositions.

The ordered pair $(0, 0)$ is the zero element of the ring.

Commutativity of multiplication. We have

$$(a, b)(c, d) = (ac-bd, bc+ad) = (ca-db, da+cb) = (c, d)(a, b).$$

Existence of multiplicative identity. We have $(1, 0) \in C$. If $(a, b) \in C$, then $(a, b)(1, 0) = (a1-b0, b1+a0) = (a, b) = (1, 0)(a, b)$. Therefore $(1, 0)$ is the unity element of the ring.

Existence of multiplicative inverse of each non-zero element of C . Let (a, b) be any non-zero element of C . Then a and b are not both simultaneously zero. If (c, d) is the multiplicative inverse of (a, b) , then we should have

$$(a, b)(c, d) = (1, 0)$$

or

$$(ac - bd, bc + ad) = (1, 0).$$

By the definition of the equality of two ordered pairs, we have

$$ac - bd = 1 \text{ and } bc + ad = 0.$$

Solving these equations for c, d , we get

$$c = \frac{a}{a^2 + b^2}, \quad d = \left(-\frac{b}{a^2 + b^2} \right).$$

Now $a \neq 0$ or $b \neq 0 \Rightarrow a^2 + b^2 \neq 0$. Therefore either c or d or both are non-zero real numbers. Thus $\left(\frac{a}{a^2 + b^2}, -\frac{b}{a^2 + b^2} \right)$ is the multiplicative inverse of (a, b) . Hence C is a field.

Note. In this question C is nothing but the set of complex numbers defined as ordered pairs of real numbers. Thus we have proved that the set of complex numbers is a field with respect to addition and multiplication of complex numbers.

Ex. 14. Show that the set R of all real valued continuous functions defined in the closed interval $[0, 1]$ is a commutative ring with unity with respect to the addition and multiplication of functions defined pointwise as follows :

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$$

and

$$(fg)(x) = f(x)g(x),$$

where f, g are any two members of R .

(Andhra 1975)

Solution. If f is a real valued function in the closed interval $[0, 1]$, then we mean that $f(x)$ is a real number $\forall x \in [0, 1]$. We know that the sum and product of two real numbers are also real numbers. Also the sum and product of two continuous functions is also a continuous function. Therefore R is closed with respect to the given compositions.

Now let f, g, h be any three elements of R . Then we make the following observations.

Associativity of addition For every $x \in [0, 1]$, we have

$$[(f + g) + h](x) = [(f + g)(x)] + h(x)$$

$$= [f(x) + g(x)] + h(x) = f(x) + [g(x) + h(x)]$$

$[\because f(x), g(x), h(x)$ are real numbers and addition of real numbers is associative]

$$= f(x) + (g + h)(x) = [f + (g + h)](x).$$

$\therefore (f + g) + h = f + (g + h)$, by the equality of two mappings.

Commutativity of addition. We have

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = g(x) + f(x)$$

[\because addition of real numbers is commutative]

$$= (g+f)(x).$$

$$\therefore f+g=g+f.$$

Existence of additive identity. Let us define a function e by the rule $e(x)=0 \forall x \in [0, 1]$. Then $e \in R$. Also if $f \in R$, we have $(e+f)(x)=e(x)+f(x)=0+f(x)=f(x)$.

$$\therefore e+f=f.$$

\therefore the function e is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. Let $f \in R$. Let us define a function $-f$ by the formula $(-f)(x)=-[f(x)] \forall x \in [0, 1]$.

Then $-f \in R$ and we have

$$[-f+f](x)=(-f)(x)+f(x)=-f(x)+f(x)=0=e(x).$$

$$\therefore -f+f=e.$$

\therefore the function $-f$ is the additive inverse of f .

Associativity of multiplication. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [(fg)h](x) &= [(fg)(x)]h(x) \\ &= [f(x)g(x)]h(x)=f(x)[g(x)h(x)] \\ &= f(x)[(gh)(x)]=[f(gh)](x). \\ \therefore (fg)h &= f(gh). \end{aligned}$$

Distributive laws. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [f(g+h)](x) &= f(x)[(g+h)(x)]=f(x)[g(x)+h(x)] \\ &= f(x)g(x)+f(x)h(x)=(fg)(x)+(fh)(x) \\ &= [fg+fh](x). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore f(g+h)=fg+fh.$$

Similarly we can prove that $(g+h)f=gf+hf$.

$\therefore R$ is a ring with respect to the given compositions.

Commutativity of multiplication. We have

$$(fg)(x)=f(x)g(x)=g(x)f(x)=(gf)(x).$$

$$\therefore fg=gf.$$

$\therefore R$ is a commutative ring.

Existence of multiplicative identity. Let us define a function i by the formula $i(x)=1 \forall x \in [0, 1]$. Then $i \in R$. If $f \in R$, we have $(if)(x)=i(x)f(x)=1f(x)=f(x)$.

$$\therefore if=f=fi \quad [\text{by commutativity of multiplication}]$$

\therefore The function i is the multiplicative identity.

Thus the ring R is with unity element.

Ex. 15. Give an example of a skew field which is not a field.

[Delhi 1970; Poona 73; Meerut 79, 83(P)]

Solution. Let M be the set of all 2×2 matrices of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a+ib & c+id \\ -c+id & a-ib \end{bmatrix},$$

where a, b, c, d are arbitrary real numbers.

First we shall prove that M is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication of matrices.

$$\text{Let } A = \begin{bmatrix} a+ib & c+id \\ -c+id & a-ib \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} p+iq & r+is \\ -r+is & p-iq \end{bmatrix}$$

be any two elements of M . We have

$$A+B = \begin{bmatrix} (a+p)+i(b+q) & (c+r)+i(d+s) \\ -(c+r)+i(d+s) & (a+p)-i(b+q) \end{bmatrix}, \text{ which is}$$

obviously a matrix of the given form. So $A+B \in M$.

Also AB

$$\begin{aligned} &= \begin{bmatrix} (a+ib)(p+iq)+(c+id)(-r+is) & (a+ib)(r+is)+(c+id)(p-iq) \\ (-c+id)(p+iq)+(a-ib)(-r+is) & (-c+id)(r+is)+(a-ib)(p-iq) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} (ap-bq-cr-ds) & (ar-bs+cp+dq) \\ +i(aq+bp+cs-dr) & +i(as+br-cq+dp) \\ -(cp+dq+ar-bs) & (-cr-ds+ap-bq) \\ +i(dp-cq+as+br) & -i(cs-dr+aq+bp) \end{bmatrix}, \end{aligned}$$

which is obviously an element of M . Thus M is closed with respect to addition and multiplication of matrices. Further matrix addition is commutative as well as associative. The zero matrix

$\begin{bmatrix} 0+i0 & 0+i0 \\ -0+i0 & 0-i0 \end{bmatrix}$ is the additive identity and so it is the zero element of M .

If $A = \begin{bmatrix} a+ib & c+id \\ -c+id & a-ib \end{bmatrix} \in M$, then obviously

$-A = \begin{bmatrix} -a-ib & -c-id \\ c-id & -a+ib \end{bmatrix} \in M$. Thus each element of M possesses additive inverse.

Further matrix multiplication is associative and it is distributive with respect to addition. Hence M is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication of matrices.

Existence of multiplicative identity. The matrix

$\begin{bmatrix} 1+i0 & 0+i0 \\ -0+i0 & 1-i0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ is obviously an element of M . It is the unit matrix and so it is the multiplicative identity. Thus M is a ring with unity.

Existence of multiplicative inverse of each non-zero element of

M . Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a+ib & c+id \\ -c+id & a-ib \end{bmatrix}$ be any non-zero element of M i.e., a, b, c, d are not all equal to zero. We have $|A|$ i.e., \det

$A = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + d^2 \neq 0$. Therefore the matrix A is non-singular and is therefore invertible. We must show that $A^{-1} \in M$. Let $|A| = m$. Then m is a real number and $m > 0$. We have

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{|A|} \text{Adj } A = \frac{1}{m} \begin{bmatrix} a-ib & -c-id \\ c-id & a+ib \end{bmatrix},$$

which is obviously an element of M . Therefore each non-zero element of M possesses multiplicative inverse.

$\therefore M$ is a skew field (or a division ring).

Now we shall show that M is not a field i.e., multiplication in M is not commutative. We have $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3+4i & 5+6i \\ -5+6i & 3-4i \end{bmatrix} \in M$,

$$\text{and } B = \begin{bmatrix} 1+i0 & 1+i0 \\ -1+i0 & 1-i0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \in M.$$

$$\text{Also } AB = \begin{bmatrix} -2-2i & 8+10i \\ -8+10i & -2+2i \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } BA = \begin{bmatrix} -2+10i & 8+2i \\ -8+2i & -2-10i \end{bmatrix}.$$

We see that $AB \neq BA$. Therefore multiplication in M is not commutative and so M is not a field.

Hence M is a skew field which is not a field.

Ex. 16. Let p be a prime number. Prove that the set of integers I_p ,

$$I_p = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1\}$$

forms a field with respect to addition and multiplication modulo p .

(Mysore 1970; Andhra 77;

Madras 77; Delhi 70; Utkal 70; Aligarh 67)

Solution. As in the chapter on groups we can prove that $(I_p, +_p)$ is an abelian group. Also I_p is closed with respect to \times_p . The composition \times_p is associative as well as commutative. Also \times_p is distributive with respect to $+_p$ as can be proved as below :

Let $a, b, c \in I_p$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} a \times_p (b +_p c) &= a \times_p (b + c) & [\because b +_p c \equiv b + c \pmod{p}] \\ &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } ab + ac \text{ is divided by } p \\ &= \text{least non-negative remainder when } ab + ac \text{ is divided by } p \\ &= (ab) +_p (ac) \\ &= (a \times_p b) +_p (ac) & [\because ab \equiv a \times_p b \pmod{p}] \\ &= (a \times_p b) +_p (a \times_p c). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we can prove the other distributive law.

1 is the identity element for \times_p .

The zero element of the ring $(I_p, +_p, \times_p)$ is 0. As in groups

we can prove that each non-zero element of I_p has multiplicative inverse.

In short the non-zero elements of I_p form an abelian group with respect to ' \times_p '. Therefore $(I_p, +_p, \times_p)$ is a field.

Note. If p is not prime, then this ring will have zero divisors and so it cannot be a field.

Ex. 17. Prove that the set of residue classes modulo p is a commutative ring with respect to addition and multiplication of residue classes. Further show that the ring of residue classes modulo p is a field if and only if p is a prime.

(Kanpur 1980; Vikram 79; Karnatak 77; I.A.S. 74; Allahabad 80; Patna 86; Kumayun 77; Meerut 74)

Solution. Let I_p be the set of residue classes modulo p . Then I_p has p distinct elements. Thus $I_p = \{[0], [1], [2], \dots, [p-1]\}$.

Let $[a], [b] \in I_p$. Then we define addition and multiplication of residue classes as follows :

$$[a] + [b] = [a + b], \quad (\text{addition})$$

$$[a] [b] = [ab] \quad (\text{multiplication}).$$

Since $[a+b]$ and $[ab]$ are both residue classes modulo p , therefore I_p is closed with respect to addition and multiplication.

Now let $[a], [b], [c]$ be any elements of I_p . Then we observe :
Commutativity of addition.

$$\begin{aligned} [a] + [b] &= [a + b] && (\text{by def. of addition of residue classes}) \\ &= [b + a] && (\because \text{addition of integers is commutative}) \\ &= [b] + [a]. \end{aligned}$$

Associativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} ([a] + [b]) + [c] &= [a + b] + [c] = [(a + b) + c] = [a + (b + c)] \\ &= [a] + [b + c] = [a] + ([b] + [c]). \end{aligned}$$

Existence of additive identity. We have $[0] \in I_p$. If $[a] \in I_p$, then $[0] + [a] = [0 + a] = [a]$. Therefore $[0]$ is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. Let $[a] \in I_p$. Then $[-a] \in I_p$. We have $[-a] + [a] = [-a + a] = [0]$. Therefore $[-a]$ is the additive inverse of $[a]$.

Associativity of multiplication. We have

$$([a] [b]) [c] = [ab] [c] = [(ab) c] = [a (bc)] = [a] [bc] = [a] ([b] [c]).$$

Commutativity of multiplication. We have

$$[a] [b] = [ab] = [ba] = [b] [a].$$

Distributive Laws. We have

$$[a] ([b] + [c]) = [a] [b + c] = [a (b + c)] = [ab + ac]$$

$$= [ab] + [ac] = [a] [b] + [a] [c].$$

$$\text{Similarly } ([b] + [c]) [a] = [b] [a] + [c] [a].$$

Thus I_p is a commutative ring. Note that it is a finite ring because it has p elements. Now suppose that p is a prime number. Then to prove that I_p is a field. Let $[a], [b] \in I_p$. Then

$$[a] [b] = [0] \Rightarrow [ab] = [0]$$

$$\Rightarrow p \text{ is a divisor of } ab \text{ i.e., } p \mid ab$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid a \text{ or } p \mid b. \text{ [Note that if } a \text{ and } b \text{ are any two integers and } p \text{ is a prime number, then } p \mid ab \Rightarrow p \mid a \text{ or } p \mid b]$$

$$\Rightarrow [a] = [0] \text{ or } [b] = [0].$$

Thus I_p is without zero divisors. Therefore I_p is an integral domain. But every finite integral domain is a field. Hence I_p is a field.

Conversely suppose that I_p is a field. Then I_p is an integral domain. Therefore I_p is without zero divisors. We are to prove that p is a prime number. Suppose p is not prime, but p is composite. Let $p = mn$, where $1 < m < p$, $1 < n < p$. Then

$$[mn] = [p]$$

$$\Rightarrow [m] [n] = [0] \quad (\because [p] = [0])$$

Also $[m] \neq [0]$, since $1 < m < p$. Similarly $[n] \neq [0]$.

Thus $[m] [n] = [0]$ while neither $[m] = [0]$ nor $[n] = [0]$.

Therefore I_p possesses zero divisors and thus we get a contradiction. Hence p must be prime.

Exercises

1. Prove that the set of rational numbers (real numbers or complex numbers) is a field with respect to addition and multiplication. (Meerut 1976)

2. (i) Prove that the set of integers is an integral domain with respect to addition and multiplication. (Meerut 1975)

(ii) Define a field. Prove that every field is an integral domain, but there exist some integral domains which are not fields. (Madurai 1978)

3. Define a ring and furnish an example of (i) a non-commutative ring with unity, (ii) a commutative ring without unity.

(Kerala 1974; Delhi 70)

4. Prove that in the list of axioms for a ring R with unity the axiom demanding commutativity under addition may be omitted.

(Keral 1970)

5. Is every field also a division ring? Does the set of all integers under usual addition and multiplication form a field? Give some example of a field which is finite.

6. Prove that the set of integers R ,

$$R = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

forms a field under addition modulo 5 and multiplication modulo 5.

7. Prove that the set $\{0, 1, 2\} \pmod{3}$ is a field with respect to addition and multiplication. (Meerut 1977)

8. If two operations $*$ and \circ on the set I of integers are defined as follows :

$$a * b = a + b - 1, \quad a \circ b = a + b - ab$$

prove that the system $(I, *, \circ)$ is a commutative ring with identity.

(Banaras 1970)

9. If R is a ring with unity element 1, then $(-1)a = -a = a(-1) \neq a \in R$ and $(-1)(-1) = 1$. (Banaras 1968; Kolhapur 73)

10. If addition and multiplication modulo 10 is defined on the set of integers $R = \{0, 2, 4, 6, 8\}$, prove that the resulting system is a ring with unity. Is it an integral domain? Ans. Yes.

(I.C.S. 1988)

11. Let A be the set of all real valued functions on $(-\infty, \infty)$. Define $(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ and $(f \times g)(x) = f(g(x))$ for every x in $(-\infty, \infty)$. Is A a ring with respect to these two operations?

(Kerala 1969)

Ans. No ; the distributive laws do not hold.

12. Show that a ring R which has a unique element e with the property that $ea = a \neq a \in R$, has unity. (Meerut 1979)

13. If a ring R has a left identity as well as right identity, then the two are equal.

(Lucknow 1968)

14. Prove that the only idempotent elements of an integral domain with unity are 0 and 1.

(Nagarjuna 1978)

15. An element a of a ring R is said to be nilpotent if $a^n = 0$ for some positive integer n . Prove that $a = 0$ is the only nilpotent element of an integral domain.

16. (i) Prove that a ring R is commutative if and only if $(a+b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \neq a, b \in R$.

(Agra 1980)

(ii) If R is a commutative ring, prove by induction that $(a+b)^n = a^n + {}^nC_1 a^{n-1}b + {}^nC_2 a^{n-2}b^2 + \dots + b^n$ for every positive integer n ; here a and b are elements of R .

(Allahabad 1965)

17. Prove that every field is an integral domain but every

integral domain is not a field. Give an example of an integral domain which is also a field. (Meerut 1977, 86)

18. Prove that the set of matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ -\bar{b} & \bar{a} \end{bmatrix}$$

where a, b are complex numbers and \bar{a}, \bar{b} denote the complex conjugates of a and b , is a skew field for matrix addition and matrix multiplication.

19. Give examples to illustrate the difference between a field, a skew field and an integral domain. (Meerut 1978, 79, 82)

20. Define a ring and an integral domain. Give an example of a ring which is not an integral domain. (Marathwada 1970)

21. Give an example each of :

- (i) a non-commutative ring. (Guru Nanak 1975)
- (ii) Ring without zero divisors.
- (iii) division ring. (Lucknow 1970; Marathwada 75)
- (iv) A ring which is not an integral domain.

(Meerut 1984)

22. Explain with an example the difference between a field and a skew field. (Meerut 1976)

23. If in a ring with unity any element a has the multiplicative inverse, then a cannot be a divisor of zero. (Lucknow 1969)

24. Prove that in a field :

$$(i) \quad \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d} \Leftrightarrow ad = bc. \quad (ii) \quad \frac{a}{b} - \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad - bc}{bd}$$

$$(iii) \quad (-a)^{-1} = -(a^{-1}). \quad (iv) \quad \frac{(-a)}{(-b)} = \frac{a}{b}. \quad (\text{Allahabad 1970})$$

25. Show that $Z[\sqrt{-5}]$, the set of complex numbers $a + b\sqrt{-5}$ where a, b are integers, is an integral domain.

(Meerut 1974)

26. Prove that the ring $I/(p)$, of integers modulo p is a field if and only if p is prime. (I. A. S. 1974)

27. Define commutative rings, integral domains and field. For the following, tell which of the above these are :

- (i) The ring of integers modulo 4.
- (ii) The ring of all 2×2 matrices over rationals.
- (iii) The ring of all complex numbers.
- (iv) The ring of rational numbers of the type a/p^n , where p

is a fixed prime, a any integer and n any integer ≥ 0 .

(Meerut 1976)

Ans. (i) commutative ring ; (ii) none ; (iii) field ;
(iv) integral domain.

28. Show that the set of all 2×2 matrices over a field F forms a non-commutative ring under matrix addition and multiplication. Show also that this ring contains divisors of zero.

(I.A.S. 1971; Meerut 77)

29. Let R be a ring with unit element. Let \bar{R} denote an algebraic system consisting of the same elements as R and the two compositions of \oplus and $*$, called, respectively, addition and multiplication, defined in it by the rule :

$$a \oplus b = a + b + 1, \text{ and } a * b = ab + a + b \text{ where } a, b \in R$$

and where the addition and multiplication of the right hand side of these relations are those of R . Prove that \bar{R} is a ring. Find the zero element and the unit element of \bar{R} .

(I.A.S. 1974; Raj. 78; Madras 78)

30. Show that the set of all 2×2 non-singular matrices over rationals is not a ring under matrix addition and multiplication.

(Meerut 1973)

31. Prove the cancellation law from the other postulates for a field.

(Kolhapur 1973)

32. Enumerate the properties of a set to define an integral domain.

(I.A.S. 1971)

33. If R is any ring, express $(a+b)^3$ as a sum of products of a and b , $a, b \in R$.

(Poona 1973)

34. For what values of n , is I_n ,

(i) integral domain (ii) field ?

(Poona 1973)

35. Give an example of a field F , which satisfies $Q \subset F \subset R$, where Q and R are the fields of rational and real numbers respectively.

36. Show that a finite ring with unity and no divisors of zero is a division ring.

(Meerut 1980, 85)

§ 7. Isomorphism of Rings. A ring R is said to be isomorphic to another ring R' if there exists a one-one mapping f of R onto R' such that

$$f(a+b) = f(a) + f(b), f(ab) = f(a) f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in R.$$

Also such a mapping f is said to be an isomorphism of R onto R' .

A mapping $f: R \rightarrow R'$ is an isomorphism of R into R' if f is one-one and if $f(a+b)=f(a)+f(b)$ and $f(ab)=f(a)f(b) \forall a, b \in R$. For f to be an isomorphism of R onto R' , it must be one-one onto and it must preserve both addition and multiplication compositions in R and R' . There may be more than one isomorphisms of R onto R' if R is isomorphic to R' .

If a ring R is isomorphic to another ring R' , we shall write in symbols $R \cong R'$. Also R' is said to be an isomorphic image of R .

Note. In the above definition of isomorphism of rings, we have denoted the compositions in the two rings by the same symbols. The elements tell us that what is the composition represented by any symbol. For example, $a, b \in R$. When we write $a+b$, ab then the respective compositions are addition and multiplication of R . Again $f(a), f(b) \in R'$. When we write $f(a)+f(b)$, $f(a)f(b)$ then the respective compositions are addition and multiplication of R' .

Relation of isomorphism in the set of all rings.

As we have proved in groups, we can prove that the relation of isomorphism in the set of all rings is an equivalence relation. Therefore it will partition the set of all rings into disjoint equivalence classes such that any two rings of the same class are isomorphic to each other while rings of different classes are not isomorphic. Any two rings belonging to the same equivalence class are said to be abstractly identical.

Example. Let R be the ring of integers under ordinary addition and multiplication. Let R' be the set of all even integers. Let us define multiplication in R' to be denoted by $*$ by the relation

$$a * b = \frac{ab}{2},$$

where ab is the ordinary multiplication of two integers a and b .

(i) Prove that $(R', +, *)$ is a commutative ring where $+$ stands for ordinary addition of integers.

(ii) Prove that R is isomorphic to R' .

(iii) What acts as the unit element of R' ?

Solution. Obviously R' is an abelian group with respect to addition.

If a and b are both even integers then $\frac{ab}{2}$ is also an even integer. Therefore $a*b = \left(\frac{ab}{2}\right) \in R' \forall a, b \in R'$.

Thus R' is closed with respect to $*$.

Also if a, b, c are any elements of R' , then

$$a * (b * c) = a * \left(\frac{bc}{2}\right) = \frac{a(bc/2)}{2} = \frac{(ab/2)c}{2} = \left(\frac{ab}{2}\right) * c = (a * b) * c.$$

$\therefore *$ is associative.

$$\text{Further } (a * b) = \frac{ab}{2} = \frac{ba}{2} = (b * a).$$

$\therefore *$ is commutative.

$$\text{Again } a * (b + c) = \frac{a(b+c)}{2} = \frac{ab}{2} + \frac{ac}{2} = (a * b) + (a * c).$$

Similarly $(b + c) * a = (b * a) + (c * a)$.

$\therefore *$ is distributive with respect to $+$.

$\therefore (R', +, *)$ is a commutative ring.

(ii) We shall now show that R is isomorphic to R' . Consider the mapping f defined by

$$f: R \rightarrow R' \text{ such that } f(x) = 2x \quad \forall x \in R.$$

The mapping f is obviously one-one onto.

Also $\forall x_1, x_2 \in R$ we have

$$f(x_1 + x_2) = 2(x_1 + x_2) = 2x_1 + 2x_2 = f(x_1) + f(x_2)$$

$$\text{and } f(x_1 x_2) = 2(x_1 x_2) = \frac{(2x_1)(2x_2)}{2} = (2x_1) * (2x_2) = f(x_1) * f(x_2).$$

\therefore the mapping f is an isomorphism of R onto R' .

(iii) Here 1 is the unit element of R' . We have $f(1) = 2$. Since f is an isomorphism of R onto R' , therefore 2 must be the unit element of R' . We have for all $a \in R'$, $2 * a = \frac{2a}{2} = a = a * 2$.

\therefore 2 is the unit element of R' .

§ 8. Properties of isomorphism of rings.

Theorem. If f is an isomorphism of a ring R onto a ring R' , then

- (i) the image of the zero of R is the zero of R' . (Kanpur 1988)
- (ii) the image of the negative of an element of R is the negative of the image of that element i.e., $f(-a) = -f(a) \quad \forall a \in R$.
(Nagpur 85)
- (iii) If R is commutative ring, then R' is also a commutative ring. (Kanpur 1988)
- (iv) If R is without zero divisors, then R' is also without zero divisors.
- (v) If R is with unit element, then R' is also with unit element.

(vi) If R is a field, then R' is also a field. (Kanpur 1980)

(vii) If R is a skew field, then R' is also a skew field.

Proof. (i) Let $a \in R$. Then $f(a) \in R'$. Let $0'$ denote the zero element of R' . To prove that $f(0) = 0'$.

We have $f(a) + 0' = f(a) = f(a+0) = f(a) + f(0)$. By cancellation law for addition in R' , we get from $f(a) + 0' = f(a) + f(0)$, the result that $0' = f(0)$.

(ii) We have $f(a) + f(-a) = f[a + (-a)] = f(0) = 0'$.

$\therefore f(-a)$ is the additive inverse of $f(a)$ in R' . Thus
 $f(-a) = -f(a)$.

(iii) Let $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ be any two elements of R' . Then
 $a, b \in R$.

We have $f(a)f(b) = f(ab) = f(ba)$

$[\because R \text{ is commutative} \Rightarrow ab = ba]$

$= f(b)f(a)$.

$\therefore R'$ is also commutative.

(iv) We have $f(0) = 0'$. Also f is one-one. Therefore 0 is the only element of R whose f -image is $0'$.

Let $f(a), f(b)$ be two non-zero elements of R' . Then $f(a) \neq 0', f(b) \neq 0' \Rightarrow a \neq 0, b \neq 0$. Since R is without zero divisors, therefore
 $a \neq 0, b \neq 0 \Rightarrow ab \neq 0 \Rightarrow f(ab) \neq f(0)$

$\Rightarrow f(a)f(b) \neq 0' \Rightarrow R'$ is without zero divisors.

(v) Let 1 be the unit element of R . Then $f(1) \in R'$. If $f(a)$ is any element of R' , we have

$f(1)f(a) = f(1a) = f(a)$ and $f(a)f(1) = f(a1) = f(a)$.

$\therefore f(1)$ is the unit element of R' .

(vi) If R is a field, then R is commutative, with unity and each non-zero element of R will possess multiplicative inverse. Now as proved in (iii) and (v), R' will be commutative and will also have the unit element i.e., $f(1)$.

Let $f(a)$ be any non-zero element of R' . Then

$f(a) \neq 0' \Rightarrow a \neq 0 \Rightarrow a^{-1}$ exists.

Now $f(a^{-1}) \in R'$ and we have

$f(a^{-1})f(a) = f(a^{-1}a) = f(1)$ and $f(a)f(a^{-1}) = f(aa^{-1}) = f(1)$.

$\therefore f(a^{-1})$ is the multiplicative inverse of $f(a)$.

Hence R' is a field.

(vii) As shown in (v) R' will be with unit element i.e., $f(1)$ and as shown in (vi) each non-zero element of R' will be invertible. Therefore R' is a skew-field.

Transference of ring structure.

Theorem. *If f is a one-one mapping of a ring R onto a set R' with two compositions denoted additively and multiplicatively such that $f(a+b)=f(a)+f(b)$, $f(ab)=f(a)f(b) \forall a, b \in R$, then the set R' is a ring for the two compositions.* (Banaras 1967)

The theorem can be easily proved as we have proved the corresponding theorem on groups.

§ 9. Subrings.

Definition. *Let R be a ring. A non-empty subset S of the set R is said to be a subring of R if S is closed with respect to the operations of addition and multiplication in R and S itself is a ring for these operations.* (Indore 1970; Meerut 74)

If S is a subring of a ring R , it is obvious that S is a subgroup of the additive group of R .

If R is any ring, then $\{0\}$ and R itself are always subrings of R . These are known as improper subrings of R . Other subrings if any, of R are called proper subrings of R .

Conditions for a subring. Theorem. *The necessary and sufficient conditions for a non-empty subset S of a ring R to be a subring of R are*

$$(i) a \in S, b \in S \Rightarrow a-b \in S \quad (ii) a \in S, b \in S \Rightarrow ab \in S.$$

(Indore 1970; Madurai 78; Meerut 80, 81; Patna 87; I.C.S. 84)

Proof. The conditions are necessary. Suppose $(S, +, \cdot)$ is a subring of $(R, +, \cdot)$.

Since S is a group with respect to addition, therefore $b \in S \Rightarrow -b \in S$.

Now S is closed with respect to addition.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a \in S, b \in S &\Rightarrow a \in S, -b \in S \\ &\Rightarrow a + (-b) \in S \Rightarrow a - b \in S. \end{aligned}$$

Also S is closed with respect to multiplication.

$$\therefore a \in S, b \in S \Rightarrow ab \in S.$$

Hence the conditions are necessary.

The conditions are sufficient. Suppose S is a non-empty subset of R and the conditions (i) and (ii) are satisfied. From (i), we have

$$\begin{aligned} a \in S, a \in S &\Rightarrow a - a \in S \\ &\Rightarrow 0 \in S \text{ i.e., the zero element } \in S. \end{aligned}$$

Now since $0 \in S$, therefore from (i), we have

$0 \in S, a \in S \Rightarrow 0 - a \in S \Rightarrow -a \in S$ i.e., each element of S possesses additive inverse.

Now if a, b are any elements of S , then $-b \in S$.

From (i), we have

$$a \in S, -b \in S \Rightarrow a - (-b) \in S \Rightarrow a + b \in S.$$

$\therefore S$ is closed with respect to addition.

Now S is a subset of R . Therefore associativity and commutativity of addition must hold in S since they hold in R .

$\therefore (S, +)$ is an abelian group.

From (ii) S is closed with respect to multiplication.

Associativity of multiplication and distributivity of multiplication over addition must hold in S since they hold in R .

Hence S is a subring of R .

Cor. The necessary and sufficient conditions for a non-empty subset S of a ring R to be a subring of R are

$$(i) S + (-S) = S \quad (ii) SS \subseteq S. \quad (\text{Meerut 1970})$$

Intersection of subrings.

Theorem 1. The intersection of two subrings is a subring.

(Meerut 1984, 85, 87; Kanpur 80, Garhwal 76; Rajasthan 77)

Proof. Let S_1 and S_2 be two subrings of a ring R . Then $S_1 \cap S_2$ is not empty since at least $0 \in S_1 \cap S_2$.

Now in order to prove that $S_1 \cap S_2$ is a subring, it is sufficient to prove that

$$(i) a \in S_1 \cap S_2, b \in S_1 \cap S_2 \Rightarrow a - b \in S_1 \cap S_2$$

$$\text{and } (ii) a \in S_1 \cap S_2, b \in S_1 \cap S_2 \Rightarrow ab \in S_1 \cap S_2.$$

We have $a \in S_1 \cap S_2 \Rightarrow a \in S_1, a \in S_2$

$$b \in S_1 \cap S_2 \Rightarrow b \in S_1, b \in S_2.$$

Now S_1 and S_2 are both subrings.

$$\therefore a \in S_1, b \in S_1 \Rightarrow a - b \in S_1 \text{ and } ab \in S_1$$

$$\text{and } a \in S_2, b \in S_2 \Rightarrow a - b \in S_2 \text{ and } ab \in S_2.$$

$$\text{Now } a - b \in S_1, a - b \in S_2 \Rightarrow a - b \in S_1 \cap S_2$$

$$\text{and } ab \in S_1, ab \in S_2 \Rightarrow ab \in S_1 \cap S_2.$$

$$\text{Thus } a \in S_1 \cap S_2, b \in S_1 \cap S_2$$

$$\Rightarrow a - b \in S_1 \cap S_2 \text{ and } ab \in S_1 \cap S_2.$$

$\therefore S_1 \cap S_2$ is a subring of R .

Theorem 2. An arbitrary intersection of subrings is a subring.

Proof. Let R be a ring and let $\{S_t : t \in T\}$ be any family of subrings of R . Here T is an index set and is such that $\forall t \in T$,

S_i is a subring of R . Let $S = \bigcap_{i \in T} S_i = \{x \in R : x \in S_i, \forall i \in T\}$ be

the intersection of this family of subrings of R . Then to prove that S is also a subring of R .

Obviously $S \neq \emptyset$, since at least the zero element 0 of R is in $S_i, \forall i \in T$.

Now let a, b be any two elements of S . Then

$$a \in \bigcap_{i \in T} S_i \Rightarrow a \in S_i, \forall i \in T$$

and
$$b \in \bigcap_{i \in T} S_i \Rightarrow b \in S_i, \forall i \in T.$$

But $\forall i \in T, S_i$ is a subring of R . Therefore

$$a, b \in S_i \Rightarrow a-b, ab \in S_i, \forall i \in T.$$

Consequently $a-b, ab \in \bigcap_{i \in T} S_i$. Thus we have shown that

$$a, b \in \bigcap_{i \in T} S_i \Rightarrow a-b, ab \in \bigcap_{i \in T} S_i.$$

Therefore $\bigcap_{i \in T} S_i$ is a subring of R .

Smallest subring containing a given subset of a ring. Suppose R is a ring and M is any subset of R . Further suppose that S is a subring of R such that $M \subseteq S$ and if T is any subring of R containing M then $S \subseteq T$. Then S is called the subring of R generated by the subset M . In short if S is the smallest subring of R containing M , then S is called the subring generated by M . Also we write $S = (M)$.

Theorem. *The intersection of the family of subrings which contain a given subset M of a ring R is the smallest subring containing the subset M .*

Proof. The family of subrings which contain M is not empty since at least R is a subring of R which contains M . Further the intersection of all subrings of R which contain M is also a subring of R and M is contained in this intersection. Also this intersection will be contained in any subring of R which contains M . Therefore this intersection is the smallest subring of R containing M i.e., it is the subring of R generated by M .

Some Examples of subrings.

Example 1. *The set of integers is a subring of the ring of rational numbers.*

If $a, b \in I$, then $a-b \in I$ and $ab \in I$.

$\therefore I$ is a subring of the ring of rational numbers.

Example 2. The set of all $n \times n$ matrices over the field of rational numbers is a subring of the ring of all $n \times n$ matrices over the field of real numbers.

Example 3. Let R be the ring of all 2×2 matrices over the field of real numbers. Let M be a subset of R and let the elements of M be matrices of the type

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

i.e., matrices in which the elements of second column are all zero. Then M is a subring of R .

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & 0 \\ b_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & 0 \\ b_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, be any two elements of M .

Then $A-B = \begin{bmatrix} a_1-a_2 & 0 \\ b_1-b_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Also $AB = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & 0 \\ b_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & 0 \\ b_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1a_2 & 0 \\ b_1b_2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Now $A-B$ and AB are both members of M since the second column of $A-B$ and also of AB consists of zeros only.

$\therefore M$ is a subring of R .

Example 4. Show that the set of matrices $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & c \end{bmatrix}$ is a subring of the ring of 2×2 matrices with integral elements.

(Meerut 1979; Madras 83)

Solution. Let R be the ring of 2×2 matrices with integral elements and let M be the subset of R and let the elements of M be matrices of the type $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & c \end{bmatrix}$.

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ 0 & c_1 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ 0 & c_2 \end{bmatrix}$ be any two elements of M .

Then $A-B = \begin{bmatrix} a_1-a_2 & b_1-b_2 \\ 0 & c_1-c_2 \end{bmatrix}$ which is obviously an element of M .

Also $AB = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ 0 & c_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ 0 & c_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1a_2 & a_1b_2+b_1c_2 \\ 0 & c_1c_2 \end{bmatrix}$ which is obviously an element of M .

$\therefore M$ is a subring of R .

Example 5. Let R be the ring of integers. Let m be any fixed integer and let S be any subset of R such that

$S = \{\dots, -3m, -2m, -m, 0, m, 2m, 3m, \dots\}$. Then S is a subring of R .

Let $a = rm$ and $b = sm$ be any two elements of S . Then r and s are some integers. We have

$$a - b = rm - sm = (r - s)m \text{ and } ab = (rm)(sm) = (rsm)m.$$

Since $r - s$ is some integer and (rsm) is also some integer, therefore both $a - b$ and ab are elements of S . Hence S is a subring of R .

§ 10. Subfields.

Definition. Let F be a field. A non-empty subset K of the set F is said to be a subfield of F if K is closed with respect to the operations of addition and multiplication in F and K itself is a field for these operations.

(Kanpur 1969)

Conditions for a subfield. Theorem. The necessary and sufficient conditions for a non-empty subset K of a field F to be a subfield of F are

$$(i) \quad a \in K, b \in K \Rightarrow a - b \in K.$$

$$(ii) \quad a \in K, 0 \neq b \in K \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K.$$

(Bombay 1970)

Proof. The conditions are necessary. Suppose K is a subfield of the field F . Now K is a group with respect to addition. Therefore $b \in K \Rightarrow -b \in K$. Also K is closed with respect to addition.

$$\therefore a \in K, b \in K \Rightarrow a + (-b) \in K \Rightarrow a - b \in K.$$

Now each non-zero element of K possesses multiplicative inverse. Therefore $0 \neq b \in K \Rightarrow b^{-1} \in K$.

But K is closed with respect to multiplication.

$$\therefore a \in K, 0 \neq b \in K \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K.$$

Hence the conditions are necessary.

The conditions are sufficient. Suppose K is a non-empty subset of F and the conditions (i) and (ii) are satisfied.

As we have proved in subrings, we can prove that with the help of condition (i), $(K, +)$ is an abelian group. [Give the same proof here].

Now let a be any non-zero element of K . Then from (ii) we have $a \in K, 0 \neq a \in K \Rightarrow aa^{-1} \in K \Rightarrow 1 \in K$.

Now $1 \in K$, therefore again from (ii), we have

$$1 \in K, 0 \neq a \in K \Rightarrow 1a^{-1} \in K \Rightarrow a^{-1} \in K.$$

\therefore Each non-zero element of K possesses multiplicative inverse.

Now let $a \in K$ and $0 \neq b \in K$. Then $b^{-1} \in K$.

From (ii), we have

$$a \in K, 0 \neq b^{-1} \in K \Rightarrow a(b^{-1})^{-1} \in K \Rightarrow ab \in K.$$

Also if $b=0$, then $ab=0$ and $0 \in K$.

$$\therefore ab \in K \forall a, b \in K.$$

Associativity of multiplication and distributivity of multiplication over addition must hold in K since they hold in F .

Hence K is a subfield of F .

Example. The field of real numbers is a subfield of the field of complex numbers. The field of rational numbers is a subfield of the field of real numbers.

§ 11. Characteristic of a ring.

Definition. Let R be a ring with zero element 0 and suppose there exists a positive integer n such that $na = a + a + \dots$ upto n terms $= 0$ for every $a \in R$. The smallest such positive integer n is called the characteristic of the ring R . If there exists no such positive integer, then R is said to be of characteristic zero or infinite.

(Nagarjuna 1978; Rajasthan 76; B.H.U. 87)

If any element of a ring R is of order zero when regarded as an element of the additive group $(R, +)$, then R will be of zero characteristic.

The ring of integers is of characteristic zero. The ring of rational numbers is also of characteristic zero.

If $I_6 = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$, then the ring $(I_6, +_6, \times_6)$ i.e., the ring of integers modulo 6 has characteristic 6 since $6x = 0$ for every x in the ring. Obviously no integer smaller than 6 satisfies this property. For instance, 5 cannot be the characteristic, since $5(2) = 4$ in I_6 and $4 \neq 0$.

Theorem 1. The characteristic of a ring with unity is 0 or $n > 0$ according as the unity element 1 regarded as a member of the additive group of the ring has the order zero or n .

Proof. Let R be a ring with unity element 1. If 1 has order zero, then the characteristic of the ring is zero.

Suppose 1 is of finite order n so that

$$1 + 1 + 1 + \dots \text{ upto } n \text{ terms} = 0 \text{ i.e., } n1 = 0.$$

Let a be any element of R . Then, we have

$$\begin{aligned} na &= a + a + a + \dots \text{ upto } n \text{ terms} \\ &= 1a + 1a + 1a + \dots \text{ upto } n \text{ terms} \\ &= (1 + 1 + 1 + \dots \text{ upto } n \text{ terms}) a && [\text{by dist. law}] \\ &= (n1) a = 0a = 0. \end{aligned}$$

\therefore order of a is $\leq n$.

Hence the characteristic of the ring is n .

Theorem 2. *The characteristic of an integral domain is 0 or $n > 0$ according as the order of any non-zero element regarded as a member of the additive group of the integral domain is either 0 or n .*

(Rajasthan 1976)

Proof. Let D be an integral domain.

If a non-zero element of D is of order zero, then the characteristic of D is zero.

Let the order of the non-zero element a be finite and equal to n . Then $na=0$.

Suppose b is any other non-zero element of D .

We have $na=0$

$$\Rightarrow (na) b=0$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+a+a+\dots \text{upto } n \text{ terms}) b=0$$

$$\Rightarrow (ab+ab+ab+\dots \text{upto } n \text{ terms})=0$$

$$\Rightarrow a(b+b+b+\dots \text{upto } n \text{ terms})=0$$

$$\Rightarrow a(nb)=0.$$

But D is without zero divisors. Therefore $a \neq 0$ and $a(nb)=0 \Rightarrow nb=0$.

But the order of a is $n \Rightarrow n$ is the least positive integer such that $na=0$. Also we have $n0=0$. Thus n is the least positive integer such that $nx=0 \forall x \in D$. Hence D is of characteristic n .

Theorem 3. *Each non-zero element of an integral domain D , regarded as a member of the additive group of D , is of the same order.*

(Andhra 1975, 77)

Proof. Let D be an integral domain. Suppose a is a non-zero element of D and $o(a)$ is finite and say, equal to n .

Suppose b is any other non-zero element of D and $o(b)=m$.

We have $o(a)=n \Rightarrow na=0$

$$\Rightarrow nb=0$$

[See theorem 2]

$$\Rightarrow o(b) \leq n \Rightarrow m \leq n.$$

Similarly $o(b)=m \Rightarrow mb=0 \Rightarrow a(mb)=0$

$$\Rightarrow a(b+b+\dots \text{upto } m \text{ times})=0$$

$$\Rightarrow (ab+ab+ab+\dots \text{upto } m \text{ times})=0$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+a+a+\dots \text{upto } m \text{ times}) b=0$$

$$\Rightarrow (ma) b=0$$

$$\Rightarrow ma=0 \quad [\because b \neq 0 \text{ and } D \text{ is without zero divisors}]$$

$$\Rightarrow o(a) \leq m \Rightarrow n \leq m$$

Now $m \leq n, n \leq m \Rightarrow m=n$. Hence $o(a)=o(b)$.

Also if $o(a)$ is zero, then $o(b)$ cannot be finite. Because $o(b)=m \Rightarrow ma=0$ i.e., the order of a is finite. Hence $o(b)$ must also be zero. Hence the the orem.

Theorem 4. *The characteristic of an integral domain is either 0 or a prime number.* (I.A.S. 1971; Nagarjuna 78, 79, 80;

B.H.U. 87; Kerala 70; Madras 77; Andhra 75, 77; Kanpur 87]

Proof. Suppose D is an integral domain. Let $0 \neq a \in D$. If $o(a)$ is zero, then the characteristic of D is 0. If $o(a)$ is finite, let $o(a)=p$. Then the characteristic of D will be p . We are to prove that p must be prime.

Suppose p is not prime. Let $p=p_1p_2$ where $p_1 \neq 1, p_2 \neq 1$ and $p_1 < p$ also $p_2 < p$.

Since D is an integral domain, therefore the product of two non-zero elements of D cannot be equal to 0.

$$\therefore aa \neq 0 \text{ i.e., } a^2 \neq 0.$$

Now in an integral domain two non-zero elements are of the same order.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore o(a)=p &\Rightarrow o(a^2)=p \Rightarrow pa^2=0 \\ &\Rightarrow (p_1p_2)a^2=0 \quad [\because p=p_1p_2] \\ &\Rightarrow (a^2+a^2+a^2+\dots \text{upto } p_1p_2 \text{ terms})=0 \\ &\Rightarrow (p_1a)(p_2a)=0 \\ &\Rightarrow \text{either } p_1a=0 \text{ or } p_2a=0 \\ &[\because D \text{ is without zero divisors}] \end{aligned}$$

But $p_1 < p$ and $p_2 < p$. Also p is the least positive integer such that $pa=0$. Hence p must be prime.

Characteristic of a field. *Every field is an integral domain. Therefore the characteristic of a field F is 0 or $n > 0$ according as any non-zero element (in particular the unit element 1) of F is of order 0 or n .*

Thus in order to find the characteristic of a field F , we should find the order of the unit element 1 of F when regarded as a member of the additive group of F . If the order of 1 is zero, then F is of characteristic 0. If the order of 1 is finite, say, n then the characteristic of F is n .

The characteristic of the field of real numbers is 0.

The characteristic of the finite field $(I_7, +, \times)$ is 7 where $I_7=\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$.

§ 12. Ordered Integral Domains.

Definition. An integral domain $(D, +, \cdot)$ is said to be ordered if D contains a subset D_+ such that

(i) D_+ is closed with respect to addition and multiplication as defined on D .

(ii) $\forall a \in D$, one and only one of $a=0$, $a \in D_+$, $-a \in D_+$, holds (principle of Trichotomy). (Allahabad 1965, 70; Bombay 70)

The elements of D_+ are called the *positive* elements of D ; all other non-zero elements of D are called *negative* elements of D .

Ordered field. A field $(F, +, \cdot)$ is said to be ordered if it is ordered as an integral domain. (Kolhapur 1973)

The integral domain $(\mathbb{I}, +, \cdot)$ of all integers is ordered.

The set \mathbb{I}_+ of all positive integers is the set of the positive elements of this integral domain. We know that the sum and product of two positive integers is again a positive integer i.e., \mathbb{I}_+ is closed with respect to addition and multiplication. If $a \in \mathbb{I}$, then either a is zero or positive or negative i.e., either $a=0$ or $a \in \mathbb{I}_+$ or $-a \in \mathbb{I}_+$.

The field of rational numbers is an ordered field. The field of real numbers is also an ordered field. But the field of complex numbers is not an ordered field.

Theorem 1. Let D be an integral domain with unity element 1. If D is an ordered integral domain show that 1 is a positive element of D . (Allahabad 1970)

Proof. Let D be an ordered integral domain with unity element 1. Let D_+ denote the set of positive elements of D .

Suppose $1 \notin D_+$.

Now $1 \neq 0$. Since $1 \notin D_+$ therefore by the definition of an ordered integral domain,

$$-1 \in D_+$$

$$\Rightarrow (-1)(-1) \in D_+ \quad [\because D_+ \text{ is closed with respect to multiplication}]$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 \in D_+ \text{ which is a contradiction.}$$

Hence $1 \in D_+$ i.e., 1 is a positive element of D .

Theorem 2. The field $(\mathbb{C}, +, \cdot)$ of complex numbers is not ordered. (Banaras 1969; Meerut 76, 78; Allahabad 70)

Proof. Suppose \mathbb{C} is an ordered field and \mathbb{C}_+ is the set of positive elements of this field. The additive identity i.e., the zero element is

$$0 + i0.$$

Now

$$i \neq 0.$$

By the principle of trichotomy either $i \in C_+$ or $-i \in C_+$.

Now C_+ is closed with respect to multiplication.

$\therefore i \in C_+ \Rightarrow i \cdot i = -1 \in C_+$.

Again $i \in C_+$, $-1 \in C_+ \Rightarrow i(-1) = -i \in C_+$. Thus if $i \in C_+$, its additive inverse $-i$ also belongs to C_+ . This contradicts the principle of trichotomy i.e., the condition (ii) of the definition of an ordered integral domain.

Similarly if we assume that $-i \in C_+$, we can show that its additive inverse i also belongs to C_+ . This again contradicts the principle of trichotomy.

Hence the field of complex numbers is not an ordered field.

Theorem 3. *The field $(I_p, +_p, \times_p)$ where p is a prime and $I_p = \{0, 1, \dots, p-1\}$ is not ordered.*

Proof. Suppose I_p is an ordered field and P is the set of positive elements of this field. The zero element of this field is 0.

Now $1 \neq 0$. The additive inverse of 1 is $p-1$. According to the definition of ordered field either $1 \in P$ or its additive inverse $p-1 \in P$.

But P is closed with respect to $+_p$.

Therefore $1 \in P \Rightarrow 1+_p 1+_p 1+_p \dots$ upto $p-1$ times $\in P$
 $\Rightarrow p-1 \in P$.

This contradicts the principle of trichotomy. Similarly assuming that $p-1 \in P$ we can show that its additive inverse 1 also belongs to P . This again contradicts the principle of trichotomy. Hence the given field is not an ordered field.

Order relations is an ordered integral domain.

Definition. *Let D be an ordered integral domain and D_+ be the set of positive elements of D . Then we define 'less than' ($<$) 'greater than' ($>$) relations in D as follows :*

For all $a, b \in D$, we have

(i) $a > b$ when $a-b \in D_+$.

(ii) $a < b$ when $b-a \in D_+$.

Obviously $a > b$ iff $b < a$.

Theorem. *The order relation in an ordered integral domain is transitive i.e., $a > b, b > c \Rightarrow a > c$. (Kolhapur 73)*

Proof. Let D be an ordered integral domain and let D_+ be the set of positive elements of D .

We have $a > b \Rightarrow a-b \in D_+$

[by def. of $>$]

and

$b > c \Rightarrow b-c \in D_+$.

Now D_+ is closed with respect to addition.

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore a-b \in D_+, b-c \in D_+ &\Rightarrow (a-b)+(b-c) \in D_+ \\ &\Rightarrow a-c \in D_+ \Rightarrow a > c.\end{aligned}$$

Exercises

1. If R is a ring, show that $Z(R) = \{x \in R : xy = yx, \forall y \in R\}$ is a subring of R . Further show that $Z(R)$ is a field if R is a division ring. (Delhi 1969, 70)
2. Prove or disprove that any subring of a non-commutative ring is non-commutative. (Meerut 1976)
3. Let x, y be commutative elements of a ring R of characteristic two. Show that $(x+y)^2 = x^2 + y^2 = (x-y)^2$.
4. Let R be a non-zero ring such that for all $a \in R, a^2 = a$. Prove that R is a commutative ring of characteristic 2. (Madras 1974; Nagarjuna 1978, 79, 80)
5. Show that every finite integral domain is of finite characteristic.
6. Show that in an integral domain all non-zero elements generate additive cyclic groups of the same order which is equal to the characteristic of the integral domain. (Allahabad 1978)
7. Give without proof, an example of an integral domain which contains only five elements. Is this an ordered integral domain? Give reason. (Allahabad 1970)
8. Define the characteristic of a ring and prove that if R is a finite ring then the characteristic of R is finite and $\neq 0$. (Kerala 1970)
9. Define an ordered field and illustrate the concept with the help of an example. (Meerut 1974)
10. Show that the set of Matrices $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{bmatrix}, a, b \text{ real}$, forms a field isomorphic to the field of complex numbers. (Patna 1986)
11. Give an example of a ring with unity 1 which has a subring with unity $1' \neq 1$. (Meerut 1981)
- § 13. Imbedding of a ring into another ring.
Definition. A ring R is said to be imbedded in a ring R' if there is a subring S' of R' such that R is isomorphic to S' .
 Obviously a ring R can be imbedded in a ring R' if there exists a mapping f of R into R' such that f is one-to-one and

$$f(a+b) = f(a) + f(b), f(ab) = f(a)f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in R.$$
 For then $f(R)$ is a subring of R' and f is an isomorphism of R onto $f(R)$ making R isomorphic to $f(R)$.

Theorem. Any ring R without a unity element can be imbedded in a ring with unity. (Sagar 1966; Meerut 78, 79; Jabalpur 70)

Proof. Let R be any ring without unity. Let Z be the ring of integers. Let $R' = R \times Z = \{a, m\} : a \in R \text{ and } m \in Z\}$.

We shall show that when suitable binary operations have been defined in $R \times Z$, then it becomes a ring with a unity element containing a subring, isomorphic to R .

If (a, m) and (b, n) are two elements of $R \times Z$, then we define addition in $R \times Z$ by the equation

$$(a, m) + (b, n) = (a + b, m + n) \quad \dots(1)$$

and multiplication in $R \times Z$ by the equation

$$(a, m)(b, n) = (ab + na + mb, mn). \quad \dots(2)$$

In the right hand side of (1), $a + b$ is addition of two elements of R and $m + n$ is addition of two integers. In the right hand side of (2), ab is multiplication of two elements of R , mn is multiplication of two integers and na, mb are integral multiples of a and b which we have explained in § 3 page 256 of this chapter.

Since $a + b \in R$ and $m + n \in Z$, therefore $(a + b, m + n) \in R \times Z$. Thus $R \times Z$ is closed with respect to addition. Further $ab, na, mb \in R \Rightarrow ab + na + mb \in R$. Also $mn \in Z$. Therefore $(ab + na + mb, mn) \in R \times Z$ and $R \times Z$ is closed with respect to multiplication.

Now let $(a, m), (b, n), (c, p)$ be any elements of $R \times Z$. Then we observe :

Associativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [(a, m) + (b, n)] + (c, p) &= (a + b, m + n) + (c, p) \\ &= ([a + b] + c, [m + n] + p) = (a + [b + c], m + [n + p]) \\ &= (a, m) + (b + c, n + p) = (a, m) + [(b, n) + (c, p)]. \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (a, m) + (b, n) &= (a + b, m + n) \\ &= (b + a, n + m) \quad [\because \text{addition is commutative in } R \text{ and also in } Z] \\ &= (b, n) + (a, m). \end{aligned}$$

Existence of additive identity. We have $(0, 0) \in R \times Z$. Here the first 0 is the zero element of R and the second 0 is the zero integer. Also $(0, 0) + (a, m) = (0 + a, 0 + m) = (a, m)$.

$\therefore (0, 0)$ is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. If $(a, m) \in R \times Z$, then

$(-a, -m) \in R \times Z$ and we have

$$(-a, -m) + (a, m) = (-a + a, -m + m) = (0, 0).$$

$\therefore (-a, -m)$ is the additive inverse of (a, m) .

Associativity of multiplication. We have

$$[(a, m)(b, n)](c, p) = (ab + na + mb, mn)(c, p)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= ((ab+na+mb) c + p (ab+na+mb) + (mn) c, (mn) p) \\
 &= (abc+n(ac)+m(bc)+p(ab)+(pn)a+(pm)b+(mn)c, (mn)p).
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{Also } (a, m) [(b, n) (c, p)] = (a, m) (bc+pb+nc, np) \\
 &= (a (bc+pb+nc) + (np) a + m (bc+pb+nc), m (np)) \\
 &= (abc+a(pb)+a(nc)+(np)a+m(bc)+m(pb)+m(nc), (mn)p) \\
 &= (abc+p(ab)+n(ac)+(np)a+m(bc)+(mp)b+(mn)c, (mn)p).
 \end{aligned}$$

We see that $[(a, m) (b, n)] (c, p) = (a, m) [(b, n) (c, p)]$

Distributive laws. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(a, m) [(b, n) + (c, p)] = (a, m) (b+c, n+p) \\
 &= (a(b+c) + (n+p)a + m(b+c), m(n+p)) \\
 &= (ab+ac+na+pa+nb+mc, mn+mp) \\
 &= (ab+na+mb, mn) + (ac+pa+mc, mp) \\
 &= (a, m) (b, n) + (a, m) (c, p).
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we can show that the other distributive law also holds good.

Thus $R \times Z$ is a ring with respect to the operations defined on it.

Existence of multiplicative identity. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 &(0, 1) \in R \times Z. \text{ If } (a, m) \in R \times Z, \text{ then} \\
 &(0, 1) (a, m) = (0a+m0+1a, 1m) = (0+0+a, m) = (a, m).
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Also } (a, m) (0, 1) = (a0+1a+m0, m1) = (0+a+0, m) = (a, m).$$

$\therefore (0, 1)$ is the multiplicative identity. So $R \times Z$ is a ring with unity element $(0, 1)$.

Now consider the subset $S' = R \times \{0\}$ of $R \times Z$ which consists of all pairs of the form $(a, 0)$. We shall show that $R \times \{0\}$ is a subring of $R \times Z$. Let $(a, 0), (b, 0)$ be any two elements of $R \times \{0\}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Then } (a, 0) - (b, 0) &= (a, 0) + (-b, -0) = (a-b, 0-0) = (a-b, 0) \\
 &\in R \times \{0\}.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Also } (a, 0) (b, 0) &= (ab+0a+0b, 00) = (ab+0+0, 0) \\
 &= (ab, 0) \in R \times \{0\}.
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore R \times \{0\}$ is a subring of $R \times Z$.

Finally we shall show that R is isomorphic to $R \times \{0\}$. Let ϕ be a mapping from R to $R \times \{0\}$ defined as $\phi(a) = (a, 0) \forall a \in R$.

ϕ is one-one. We have

$$\phi(a) = \phi(b) \Rightarrow (a, 0) = (b, 0) \Rightarrow a = b \Rightarrow \phi \text{ is one-one.}$$

ϕ is onto. Let $(a, 0)$ be any element of $R \times \{0\}$. Then $a \in R$ and we have $\phi(a) = (a, 0)$. Therefore ϕ is onto.

ϕ preserves additions and multiplications.

If a, b be any two elements of R , then

$$\phi(a+b) = (a+b, 0) = (a, 0) + (b, 0) = \phi(a) + \phi(b).$$

Also $\phi(ab) = (ab, 0) = (a, 0)(b, 0) = \phi(a)\phi(b)$.

$\therefore \phi$ preserves compositions.

Hence ϕ is an isomorphism of R onto $R \times \{0\}$.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

§ 14. The field of Quotients.

Definition. A ring R can be imbedded in a ring S if S contains a subset S' such that R is isomorphic to S' .

If D is a commutative ring without zero divisors, then we shall see that it can be imbedded in a field *i.e.*, there exists a field F which contains a subset D' isomorphic to D . We shall construct a field F with the help of elements of D and this field F will contain a subset D' such that D is isomorphic to D' . This field F is called the "field of quotients" of D , or simply the "quotient field" of D .

On account of isomorphism of D onto D' , we can say that D and D' are abstractly identical. Therefore if we identify D' with D , then we can say that the quotient field F of D is a field containing D . We shall also see that F is the smallest field containing D .

Motivation for the construction of the quotient field. We are all quite familiar with the ring I of integers. Also our familiar set Q of rational numbers is nothing but the set of quotients of the elements of I . Thus $Q = \left\{ \frac{p}{q} : p \in I, 0 \neq q \in I \right\}$. If we identify the

rational numbers..., $\frac{-3}{1}, \frac{-2}{1}, \frac{-1}{1}, \frac{0}{1}, \frac{1}{1}, \frac{2}{1}, \frac{3}{1}$ with the integers ..., $-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$, then $I \subseteq Q$.

Also $(Q, +, \cdot)$ is a field. It is the smallest field containing I .

Also if $\frac{a}{b}$ and $\frac{c}{d} \in Q$, then we remember that

$$(i) \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d} \text{ iff } ad = bc, (ii) \frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad + bc}{bd}, (iii) \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ac}{bd}$$

Taking motivation from these facts, we now proceed to construct the quotient field of an arbitrary integral domain. We have the following theorem :

Theorem 1. A commutative ring with zero divisors can be imbedded in a field.

(I.A.S. 1969; Rajasthan 74; Andhra 77;
Kanpur 86, 88; Nagarjuna 78, 80; Allahabad 82;
Jabalpur 86; Meerut 89; I.C.S. 84)

Or

Every integral domain can be imbedded in a field. Or

From the elements of an integral domain D , it is possible to construct a field F which contains a subset D' isomorphic to D .

Proof. Let D be a commutative ring without zero divisors. Let D_0 be the set of all non-zero elements of D . Let $S = D \times D_0$ i.e., let S be the set of all ordered pairs (a, b) where $a, b \in D$ and $b \neq 0$. Let us define a relation \sim in S . We shall say that

$(a, b) \sim (c, d)$ if and only if $ad = bc$.

We claim that this relation is an equivalence relation in S .

Reflexivity. Since D is a commutative ring, therefore $ab = ba$ $\forall a, b \in D$. Therefore $(a, b) \sim (a, b) \because (a, b) \in S$.

Symmetry. We have $(a, b) \sim (c, d)$

$\Rightarrow ad = bc \Rightarrow da = cb$ [\because Multiplication is commutative in D]

$\Rightarrow cb = da \Rightarrow (c, d) \sim (a, b)$.

Transitivity. Let $(a, b) \sim (c, d)$ and $(c, d) \sim (e, f)$.

Then $ad = bc$ and $cf = de$.

$\therefore adf = bcf$ and $bcf = bde$.

$\therefore adf = bde$

$\Rightarrow afd = bed$ [$\because D$ is a commutative ring]

$\Rightarrow afd - bed = 0 \Rightarrow (af - be)d = 0$

$\Rightarrow af - be = 0$ [$\because d \neq 0$ and D is without zero divisors]

$\Rightarrow af = be \Rightarrow (a, b) \sim (e, f)$.

Thus \sim is an equivalence relation in S . Therefore it will partition S into disjoint equivalence classes. We shall denote the equivalence class containing (a, b) by $\frac{a}{b}$. Other notations to denote this equivalence class are (a, b) or $[a, b]$.

Then $\frac{a}{b} = \{(c, d) \in S : (c, d) \sim (a, b)\}$.

Obviously $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ iff $(a, b) \sim (c, d)$ i.e., iff $ad = bc$.

Also $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{ax}{bx} \forall x \in D_0$. The reason is that

$(a, b) \sim (ax, bx)$ since $abx = bax$.

These equivalence classes are our quotients. Let F be the set of all such quotients i.e., $F = \left\{ \frac{a}{b} : (a, b) \in S \right\}$.

We now define addition and multiplication operations in F as follows :

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad + bc}{bd} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ac}{bd}.$$

Since D is without zero divisors, therefore $b \neq 0, d \neq 0 \Rightarrow bd \neq 0$.

Therefore both $\frac{ad+bc}{bd}$ and $\frac{ac}{bd}$ are elements of F . Thus F is closed with respect to addition and multiplication. We shall now show that both addition and multiplication in F are well defined. For this we are to show that if

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{a'}{b'} \text{ and } \frac{c}{d} = \frac{c'}{d'}, \text{ then } \frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{a'}{b'} + \frac{c'}{d'} \text{ and } \frac{a}{b} \frac{c}{d} = \frac{a'}{b'} \frac{c'}{d'}.$$

$$\text{We have } \frac{a}{b} = \frac{a'}{b'} \Rightarrow ab' = ba' \text{ and } \frac{c}{d} = \frac{c'}{d'} \Rightarrow cd' = dc'.$$

Now to show that $\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{a'}{b'} + \frac{c'}{d'}$, we are to show that

$$\frac{ad+bc}{bd} = \frac{a'd'+b'c'}{b'd'} \text{ i.e., } (ad+bc) b'd' = bd (a'd'+b'c').$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (ad+bc) b'd' &= adb'd' + bcb'd' = ab'dd' + bb'cd' \\ &= ba'dd' + bb'cd' \quad [\because ab' = ba' \text{ and } cd' = dc'] \\ &= bda'd' + bdb'c' = bd (a'd' + b'c'), \text{ which was desired.} \end{aligned}$$

Again to show that $\frac{ac}{bd} = \frac{a'c'}{b'd'}$, we are to show that

$$\frac{ac}{bd} = \frac{a'c'}{b'd'} \text{ i.e., } acb'd' = bda'c'.$$

Now $acb'd' = ab'cd' = ba'dc' = bda'c'$, which was desired.

Therefore both addition and multiplication are well defined on F . We shall now show that F is a field for these two operations.

Associativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} \right) + \frac{e}{f} &= \frac{ad+bc}{bd} + \frac{e}{f} = \frac{(ad+bc)f + bde}{bdf} \\ &= \frac{adf + bcf + bde}{bdf} = \frac{adf + b(cf+de)}{bdf} = \frac{a}{b} + \frac{cf+de}{df} = \frac{a}{b} + \left(\frac{c}{d} + \frac{e}{f} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity of addition. We have

$$\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad+bc}{bd} = \frac{cb+da}{db} = \frac{c}{d} + \frac{a}{b}.$$

Existence of additive identity. We have

$$\frac{0}{a} \in F \text{ where } a \neq 0. \text{ If } \frac{c}{d} \text{ is any element of } F, \text{ then}$$

$$\frac{0}{a} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{0d+ac}{ad} = \frac{0+ac}{ad} = \frac{ac}{ad} = \frac{c}{d} \quad [\because acd = adc].$$

$\therefore \frac{0}{a}$ is the additive identity. It should be noted that

$\frac{0}{a} = \frac{0}{b} \forall a, b \in D_0$. Also $\frac{c}{d} = \frac{0}{a}$ iff $ca = d0$ i.e., $c = 0$.

Existence of additive inverse. If $\frac{a}{b} \in F$, then $\frac{-a}{b} \in F$.

Also we have, $\frac{-a}{b} + \frac{a}{b} = \frac{(-a)b + ba}{b^2} = \frac{0}{b^2} = \frac{0}{a} [\because 0a = b^2 0]$

$\therefore \frac{-a}{b}$ is the additive inverse of $\frac{a}{b}$.

Associativity of multiplication. We have

$$\left(\frac{a}{b} \frac{c}{d}\right) \frac{e}{f} = \frac{ac}{bd} \frac{e}{f} = \frac{(ac)e}{(bd)f} = \frac{a(ce)}{b(df)} = \frac{ace}{bdf} = \frac{a}{b} \left(\frac{c}{d} \frac{e}{f}\right).$$

Commutativity of multiplication. We have

$$\frac{ac}{bd} = \frac{ac}{bd} = \frac{ca}{db} = \frac{ca}{db}.$$

Existence of multiplicative identity. We have

$\frac{a}{a} \in F$ where $a \neq 0$. Also if $\frac{c}{d} \in F$, then

$$\frac{ac}{a d} = \frac{ac}{ad} = \frac{c}{d} \quad [\because (ac, ad) \sim (c, d) \text{ because } acd = adc].$$

$\therefore \frac{a}{a}$ is the multiplicative identity. It should be noted that

$$\frac{a}{a} = \frac{b}{b} \forall a, b \in D_0.$$

Existence of multiplicative inverse of non-zero elements of F .

Let $\frac{a}{b}$ be any non-zero element of F . Then $a \neq 0$.

$\therefore \frac{b}{a} \in F$. Also we have

$$\frac{ab}{ba} = \frac{ab}{ba} = \frac{ab}{ab} = \frac{a}{a} = \text{the unity element.}$$

$\therefore \frac{b}{a}$ is the multiplicative inverse of $\frac{a}{b}$.

Distributivity of multiplication over addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a}{b} \left(\frac{c}{d} + \frac{e}{f}\right) &= \frac{a}{b} \frac{cf + de}{df} = \frac{a(cf + de)}{bdf} = \frac{acf + ade}{bdf} = \frac{(acf + ade) bdf}{bdf bdf} \\ &= \frac{acfbdf + bdfade}{bdf bdf} = \frac{acfbdf}{bdf bdf} + \frac{bdfade}{bdf bdf} = \frac{acf}{bdf} + \frac{ade}{bdf} = \frac{ac}{bd} + \frac{ae}{bf} = \frac{ac}{bd} + \frac{ae}{bf}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly the other distributive law holds.

$\therefore F$ is a field under the addition and multiplication as defined above. This field F is called the field of quotients of D .

We shall now show that the field F contains a subset D' such that D is isomorphic to D' .

Let $D' = \left\{ \frac{ax}{x} \in F : a, 0 \neq x \in D \right\}$. Then $D' \subseteq F$. If $x \neq 0$, $y \neq 0$ are elements of D , then $\frac{ax}{x} = \frac{ay}{y}$ since $axy = xay$. Therefore if x is any fixed non-zero element of D , we can write

$$D' = \left\{ \frac{ax}{x} \in F : a \in D \right\}.$$

We claim that the function $\phi : D \rightarrow D'$ defined by

$$\phi(a) = \frac{ax}{x} \quad \forall a \in D \text{ is an isomorphism of } D \text{ onto } D'.$$

ϕ is one-one. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(a) = \phi(b) &\Rightarrow \frac{ax}{x} = \frac{bx}{x} \Rightarrow axx = bxx \Rightarrow ax^2 = bx^2 \Rightarrow (a-b)x^2 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow a-b=0, \text{ since } x^2 \neq 0 \\ &\Rightarrow a=b. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ is one-one.

ϕ is onto D' . If $\frac{ax}{x} \in D'$, then $a \in D$. Also we have $\phi(a) = \frac{ax}{x}$.

Thus ϕ is onto D' .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } \phi(a+b) &= \frac{(a+b)x}{x} = \frac{(a+b)x^2}{x^2} = \frac{ax^2 + bx^2}{x^2} = \frac{axx + bxx}{x^2} \\ &= \frac{ax}{x} + \frac{bx}{x} = \phi(a) + \phi(b) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{and } \phi(ab) = \frac{(ab)x}{x} = \frac{(ab)x^2}{x^2} = \frac{(ax)(bx)}{x^2} = \frac{ax}{x} \frac{bx}{x} = \phi(a)\phi(b).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is an isomorphism of D onto D' .

Hence

$$D \cong D'.$$

If we identify D' with D i.e., if in F we write a, b, c etc. in place of $\frac{ax}{x}, \frac{bx}{x}, \frac{cx}{x}$ etc., then we see that D is contained in F .

Thus F (the field of quotients of D) is a field containing D .

In the next theorem we shall show that the quotient field F of D is the smallest field containing D . In other words if D is contained in any other field K , then F will also be contained in K .

Theorem 2. If K is any field which contains an integral domain D , then K contains a subfield isomorphic to the quotient field F of D .

In other words the quotient field F of D is the smallest field containing D . (Allahabad 1980; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 90)

Proof. Let D be a commutative ring without zero divisors. Let $a \in D$ and $0 \neq b \in D$. Since K is a field containing D , therefore $a \in K$; $0 \neq b \in K \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in K$.

Let K' be the subset of K containing the elements of the form ab^{-1} where $a, b \in D$ with $b \neq 0$. Thus

$$K' = \{ab^{-1} \in K : a, 0 \neq b \in D\}.$$

We shall show that K' is a subfield of K and K' is isomorphic to the quotient field F of D . Let $ab^{-1} \in K'$, $cd^{-1} \in K'$. Then

$$0 \neq b, 0 \neq d \in D.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } ab^{-1} - cd^{-1} &= add^{-1}b^{-1} - cbb^{-1}d^{-1} = (ad - bc)d^{-1}b^{-1} \\ &= (ad - bc)(bd)^{-1} \in K', \text{ since } ad - bc \in D \text{ and } 0 \neq bd \in D. \end{aligned}$$

Further suppose that $0 \neq cd^{-1} \in K'$. Then $c \neq 0$ and we have $(ab^{-1})(cd^{-1})^{-1} = ab^{-1}dc^{-1} = ad(cb)^{-1} \in K'$, since $ad \in D$ and $0 \neq cb \in D$.

Hence K' is a subfield of K . We shall now show that the quotient field F of D is isomorphic to K' . We have

$$F = \left\{ \frac{a}{b} : a \in D, 0 \neq b \in D \right\}.$$

Consider the mapping $f: F \rightarrow K'$ defined by

$$f\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = ab^{-1} \in K'.$$

The mapping f is one-one because we have

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) &= f\left(\frac{c}{d}\right) \Rightarrow ab^{-1} = cd^{-1} \\ &\Rightarrow ab^{-1}bd = cd^{-1}bd \Rightarrow ad = cb d^{-1}d \\ &\Rightarrow ad = bc \Rightarrow (a, b) \sim (c, d) \Rightarrow \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}. \end{aligned}$$

Also f is onto K' . If ab^{-1} is any element of K' , then $\frac{a}{b} \in F$ and $f\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = ab^{-1}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Further } f\left(\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d}\right) &= f\left(\frac{ad + bc}{bd}\right) = (ad + bc)(bd)^{-1} \\ &= (ad + bc)d^{-1}b^{-1} = add^{-1}b^{-1} + bcd^{-1}b^{-1} \\ &= ab^{-1} + cd^{-1} = f\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) + f\left(\frac{c}{d}\right). \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Also } f\left(\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d}\right) = f\left(\frac{ac}{bd}\right) = (ac)(bd)^{-1} = (ac)d^{-1}b^{-1}$$

$$=(ab^{-1})(cd^{-1})=f\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)f\left(\frac{c}{d}\right)$$

Hence $F \cong K'$.

If we identify K' with F , we see that if D is contained in any field K , then F is also contained in K . Therefore F is the smallest field containing D .

Cor. *The quotient field of a finite integral domain coincides with itself.*

Suppose D is a finite integral domain. Then D is also a field. Thus D is the smallest field containing D . The quotient field F of D is also the smallest field containing D . Hence F coincides with D .

Ex. *What is the quotient field of $2\mathbb{Z}$, where \mathbb{Z} is the ring of integers?* (Poona 1973)

Theorem. *Any two isomorphic integral domains have isomorphic quotient fields.* (Banaras 1965)

Proof. Suppose D and D' are two isomorphic integral domains.

Let f be an isomorphism of D onto D' . If a, b, c etc. are the elements of D then $f(a), f(b), f(c)$ etc. will be the elements of D' . Also

$$f(a+b)=f(a)+f(b) \text{ and } f(ab)=f(a)f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in D.$$

Let F, F' be the quotient fields of D, D' respectively. Then F consists of the equivalence classes (quotients) of the form $\frac{a}{b}$ where $a, 0 \neq b \in D$ and F' consists of the equivalence classes of the form $\frac{f(a)}{f(b)}$ where $f(a), 0 \neq f(b) \in D'$.

Consider the mapping $\phi: F \rightarrow F'$ defined by

$$\phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)=\frac{f(a)}{f(b)} \quad \forall \frac{a}{b} \in F.$$

First we shall show that the mapping ϕ is well defined i.e., if

$$\frac{a}{b}=\frac{c}{d}, \text{ then } \phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)=\phi\left(\frac{c}{d}\right). \quad \text{We have } \frac{a}{b}=\frac{c}{d} \Rightarrow ad=bc$$

$$\Rightarrow f(ad)=f(bc) \Rightarrow f(a)f(d)=f(b)f(c)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{f(a)}{f(b)}=\frac{f(c)}{f(d)} \Rightarrow \phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)=\phi\left(\frac{c}{d}\right).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is well-defined.

ϕ is one-one. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) &= \phi\left(\frac{c}{d}\right) \Rightarrow \frac{f(a)}{f(b)} = \frac{f(c)}{f(d)} \\
 &\Rightarrow f(a)f(d) = f(b)f(c) \Rightarrow f(ad) = f(bc) \\
 &\Rightarrow ad = bc \quad [\because f \text{ is one-one}] \\
 &\Rightarrow \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}
 \end{aligned}$$

ϕ is one-one.

Also ϕ is onto F' . If $\frac{f(a)}{f(b)} \in F'$, then

$\frac{a}{b} \in F$ and $\phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = \frac{f(a)}{f(b)}$. Therefore ϕ is onto F' .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Further } \phi\left(\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d}\right) &= \phi\left(\frac{ad+bc}{bd}\right) = \frac{f(ad+bc)}{f(bd)} = \frac{f(ad)+f(bc)}{f(b)f(d)} \\
 &= \frac{f(a)f(d)+f(b)f(c)}{f(b)f(d)} = \frac{f(a)}{f(b)} + \frac{f(c)}{f(d)} = \phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) + \phi\left(\frac{c}{d}\right).
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Also } \phi\left(\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d}\right) &= \phi\left(\frac{ac}{bd}\right) = \frac{f(ac)}{f(bd)} = \frac{f(a)f(c)}{f(b)f(d)} \\
 &= \frac{f(a)}{f(b)} \cdot \frac{f(c)}{f(d)} = \phi\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) \phi\left(\frac{c}{d}\right).
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore \phi$ is an isomorphism of F onto F' .

$\therefore F \cong F'$.

§ 15. Ideals. Definition.

(a) Left Ideal.

(Kurushetra 1970)

A non-empty subset S of a ring R is said to be a left ideal of R if:

- (i) S is a subgroup of R with respect to addition.
- (ii) $rs \in S \forall r \in R \text{ and } \forall s \in S$.

(b) Right Ideal. A non-empty subset S of a ring R is said to be a right ideal of R if:

- (i) S is a subgroup of R under addition.
- (ii) $sr \in S \forall r \in R \text{ and } \forall s \in S$.

(c) Ideal.

(Patna 1986; Rajasthan 76; Kanpur 71; Nagpur 78, 79; Sambalpur 77; Meerut 81, 90)

A non-empty subset S of a ring R is said to be an ideal (also a two sided ideal) if and only if it is both a left ideal and a right ideal. Thus a non-empty subset S of a ring R is said to be an ideal of R if:

- (i) S is a subgroup of R under addition i.e., S is a subgroup of the additive group of R .

(ii) $rs \in S$ and $sr \in S$ for every $r \in R$ and for every $s \in S$.

If S is an ideal of a ring R , then S is also a subring of R . The obvious reason is that S is a subgroup of R under addition and from condition (ii), we have $xs \in S \forall x, s \in S$ because $x \in S \Rightarrow x \in R$. Thus S is closed with respect to multiplication. Therefore S is a subring of R . Thus every ideal of a ring R is also a subring of R . But every subring is not an ideal. An ideal requires a stronger closure property than the subring. If S is a subgroup of R under addition, then S will be a subring if S is closed with respect to multiplication i.e., the product of two elements of S is again in S . But S will be an ideal if the product of any element of S with any element of R is in S .

If R is a commutative ring, then every left ideal will also be a right ideal. Therefore in a commutative ring every left (right) ideal is an ideal.

Note 1. If we are to prove that a non-empty subset S of a ring R is an ideal of R , then it is sufficient to prove

(i) $a \in S, b \in S \Rightarrow a - b \in S$,
and (ii) $rs \in S$ and $sr \in S \forall r \in R$ and $\forall s \in S$.

Obviously (i) is a sufficient condition for S to be a subgroup of R under addition.

If R is a commutative ring, then the condition (ii) will become more simple. Then it will become

$$rs \in S \forall r \in R \text{ and } \forall s \in S.$$

Note 2. Every ring R always possesses two improper ideals: one R itself and the other consisting of 0 only. These are respectively known as the unit ideal and the null ideal.

Any other ideals of R are called proper ideals. A ring having no proper ideals is called a simple ring.

Algebra of Ideals.

Theorem 1. The intersection of any two left ideals of a ring is again a left ideal of the ring. (Meerut 1988; Kanpur 87)

Proof. Let I_1 and I_2 be two left ideals of a ring R . Then I_1, I_2 are subgroups of R under addition. Therefore $I_1 \cap I_2$ is also a subgroup of R under addition.

Now to show that $I_1 \cap I_2$ is a left ideal of R , we are only to show that $r \in R, s \in I_1 \cap I_2 \Rightarrow rs \in I_1 \cap I_2$.

We have $s \in I_1 \cap I_2 \Rightarrow s \in I_1, s \in I_2$.

But I_1 and I_2 are left ideals of R . Therefore

$$r \in R, s \in I_1 \Rightarrow rs \in I_1 \text{ and } r \in R, s \in I_2 \Rightarrow rs \in I_2.$$

Now $rs \in I_1, rs \in I_2 \Rightarrow rs \in I_1 \cap I_2$.

$\therefore I_1 \cap I_2$ is also a left ideal of R .

Note. A similar result can be proved for right ideals as well as for ideals.

Theorem 2. *An arbitrary intersection of left ideals of a ring is a left ideal of the ring.* (Banaras 1966)

Proof. Let R be a ring and let $\{S_t : t \in T\}$ be any family of left ideals of R . Here T is an index set and is such that $\forall t \in T, S_t$ is a left ideal of R . Let $S = \bigcap_{t \in T} S_t = \{x \in R : x \in S_t, \forall t \in T\}$

be the intersection of this family of left ideals of R . Then to prove that S is also a left ideal of R .

Obviously $S \neq \emptyset$, since at least 0 is in $S_t, \forall t \in T$.

Now let a, b be any two elements of S . Then

$$a, b \in S \Rightarrow a, b \in S_t, \forall t \in T$$

$$\Rightarrow a - b \in S_t, \forall t \in T$$

$$[\because \forall t \in T, S_t \text{ is a left ideal of } R]$$

$$\Rightarrow a - b \in \bigcap_{t \in T} S_t \Rightarrow a - b \in S.$$

Now let a be any element of S and r be any element of R .

$$\text{We have } a \in S \Rightarrow a \in \bigcap_{t \in T} S_t \Rightarrow a \in S_t, \forall t \in T$$

$$\Rightarrow ra \in S_t, \forall t \in T \quad [\because \forall t \in T, S_t \text{ is a left ideal of } R]$$

$$\Rightarrow ra \in \bigcap_{t \in T} S_t \Rightarrow ra \in S.$$

Thus $a, b \in S \Rightarrow a - b \in S$ and $r \in R, a \in S \Rightarrow ra \in S$.

$\therefore S$ is a left ideal of R .

Smallest left ideal containing a given subset.

Definition. Let M be a non-empty subset of a ring R . Then a left ideal I of R is called the *smallest left ideal of R containing M* , if I contains M and if I is contained in every left ideal of R containing M .

The smallest left ideal of R containing M is called the *left ideal generated by M* and will be denoted by (M) .

It can be easily seen that the intersection of the family of left ideals containing M is the left ideal generated by M .

Note. A similar definition can be given for the right ideal generated by M as well as for the ideal generated by M . For this

purpose simply replace the word 'left ideal' by 'right ideal' or by 'ideal'.

Sum of two left ideals.

Theorem 3. *The left ideal generated by the union $I_1 \cup I_2$ of two left ideals is the set $I_1 + I_2$ consisting of the elements of R obtained on adding any element of I_1 to any element of I_2 . (Kanpur 1988)*

Proof. Let $a_1 + a_2, b_1 + b_2 \in I_1 + I_2$.

Then $a_1, b_1 \in I_1$ and $a_2, b_2 \in I_2$.

Since I_1, I_2 are left ideals of R , therefore they are subgroups of the additive group of R . Therefore

$a_1, b_1 \in I_1 \Rightarrow a_1 - b_1 \in I_1$ and $a_2, b_2 \in I_2 \Rightarrow a_2 - b_2 \in I_2$.

Consequently $(a_1 + a_2) - (b_1 + b_2) = (a_1 - b_1) + (a_2 - b_2) \in I_1 + I_2$.

Therefore $I_1 + I_2$ is a subgroup of the additive group of R .

Now let $r \in R$ and $a_1 + a_2 \in I_1 + I_2$. Then $a_1 \in I_1, a_2 \in I_2$. We have $r(a_1 + a_2) = ra_1 + ra_2 \in I_1 + I_2$.

[$\because I_1$ is a left ideal implies $ra_1 \in I_1$ and similarly $ra_2 \in I_2$]

$\therefore I_1 + I_2$ is a left ideal of R .

Since $0 \in I_2$, therefore $a_1 \in I_1$ can be written as $a_1 + 0$. Thus

$a_1 \in I_1 \Rightarrow a_1 \in I_1 + I_2$.

$\therefore I_1 \subseteq I_1 + I_2$.

Similarly $I_2 \subseteq I_1 + I_2$.

$\therefore I_1 \cup I_2 \subseteq I_1 + I_2$.

Thus $I_1 + I_2$ is a left ideal containing $I_1 \cup I_2$.

Also if any left ideal contains $I_1 \cup I_2$, then it must contain $I_1 + I_2$.

$\therefore I_1 + I_2$ is the smallest left ideal containing $I_1 \cup I_2$.

$\therefore I_1 + I_2 =$ the left ideal generated by $I_1 \cup I_2 = (I_1 \cup I_2)$.

Note. A similar result can be proved for right ideals as well as for ideals.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. *The set N of all 2×2 matrices of the form*

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

for a, b , integers is a left ideal but not a right ideal in the ring R of all 2×2 matrices with elements as integers. Here N is the subset of R consisting of those elements whose second column contains only zeros.

(Rajasthan 1977)

Solution. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} c & 0 \\ d & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ be any two elements of

N . Then $A - B = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} c & 0 \\ d & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a-c & 0 \\ b-d & 0 \end{bmatrix} \in N$.

$\therefore N$ is a subgroup of R under addition.

Now let $U = \begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix}$ be any element of R and $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ be any element of N .

Then $UA = \begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} wa+xb & 0 \\ ya+zb & 0 \end{bmatrix} \in N$.

Therefore N is a left ideal of R . It is not a right ideal, since

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \in N, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \in R,$$

and the product $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ which is not an element of N .

Ex. 2. If m is a fixed integer, the set P of integers given by,
 $P = \{xm : x \text{ is an integer}\}$

is an ideal of the ring R of all integers.

Solution. Let x_1m and x_2m be any two elements of P . Then x_1 and x_2 are some integers.

We have $x_1m - x_2m = (x_1 - x_2)m \in P$ since $x_1 - x_2$ is also an integer.

$\therefore P$ is a subgroup of R under addition.

Now let r be any integer i.e., r be any element of R and xm be any element of P . Then $r(xm) = (rx)m \in P$ since rx is also an integer. Therefore P is a left ideal of R . But R is a commutative ring. Hence P is an ideal of R .

Ex. 3. The set of integers I is only a subring but not an ideal of the ring of rational numbers $(Q, +, \cdot)$.

(Meerut 1980, 81, 82, 90; Rajasthan 77)

Solution. The product of a rational number and an integer is not necessarily an integer.

For example $3 \in I$, $2/5 \in Q$ but $(2/5) \cdot 3 = 6/5 \notin I$.

$\therefore I$ is not an ideal of the ring of rational numbers.

Ex. 4. The set Q of rational numbers is only a subring but not an ideal of the ring of real numbers $(R, +, \cdot)$. (Meerut 1983 P, 90)

Solution. The product of a rational number and a real number is not necessarily a rational number. For example $\frac{1}{2} \in Q$, $\sqrt{7} \in R$ but $\frac{1}{2} \cdot \sqrt{7} = \frac{\sqrt{7}}{2} \notin Q$.

$\therefore Q$ is not an ideal of the ring of real numbers.

Ex. 5. Prove that the subset S of all matrices of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{bmatrix}$$

with a and b integers, forms a subring of the ring R of all 2×2 matrices having elements as integers. Prove further that S is neither a right ideal nor a left ideal in R .

Solution Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix}$ be any two elements of

S . Then $A - B = \begin{bmatrix} a-c & 0 \\ 0 & b-d \end{bmatrix} \in S$.

Also $AB = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ 0 & b \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c & 0 \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} ac & 0 \\ 0 & bd \end{bmatrix} \in S$.

$\therefore S$ is a subring of R .

Further $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \in S$, $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \in R$ and the product

$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \notin S$. Therefore S is not a left ideal.

Again $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \notin S$. Therefore S is not a right ideal.

Ex. 6. If U is an ideal of a ring R with unity and $1 \in U$ prove that $U = R$.
(Sambalpur 1977)

Solution. We have $U \subseteq R$ since U is an ideal of R . Let x be any element of R . Since U is an ideal of R , therefore

$$1 \in U, x \in R \Rightarrow 1x \in U \Rightarrow x \in U.$$

$$\therefore R \subseteq U.$$

$$\therefore U = R.$$

Ex. 7. If R is a ring and $a \in R$ let $T = \{x \in R : ax = 0\}$. Prove that T is a right ideal of R .

Solution. First we see that T is not empty because

$$0 \in R \text{ is such that } a0 = 0.$$

Let x_1, x_2 be any two elements of T . Then $ax_1 = 0, ax_2 = 0$.

We have $a(x_1 - x_2) = ax_1 - ax_2 = 0 - 0 = 0$.

$$\therefore x_1 - x_2 \in T.$$

$\therefore T$ is a subgroup of R under addition.

Now to show that T is a right ideal of R we are to show that $x \in T, y \in R \Rightarrow xy \in T$. But $x \in T \Rightarrow ax = 0$. If we show that $a(xy) = 0$, then xy will be an element of T .

$$\text{We have } a(xy) = (ax)y = 0y = 0.$$

$$\therefore xy \in T.$$

$\therefore T$ is a right ideal of R .

Ex. 8. Prove that the intersection of two ideals of R is an ideal of R . (Vikram 1976; Kumayon 78; Meerut 80, 81, 83, 84 P)

Solution. Let S and T be two ideals of R . Then S, T are subgroups of R under addition. Therefore $S \cap T$ is also a subgroup of R under addition.

Now to show that $S \cap T$ is an ideal of R , we are only to show that

$$r \in R, s \in S \cap T \Rightarrow rs \in S \cap T, sr \in S \cap T.$$

We have $s \in S \cap T \Rightarrow s \in S, s \in T$.

But S and T are ideals of R . Therefore

$$r \in R, s \in S \Rightarrow rs \in S, sr \in S$$

and $r \in R, s \in T \Rightarrow rs \in T, sr \in T$.

Now $rs \in S, rs \in T \Rightarrow rs \in S \cap T$

and $sr \in S, sr \in T \Rightarrow sr \in S \cap T$.

$\therefore S \cap T$ is also an ideal of R .

Ex. 9. Show that S is an ideal of $S+T$ where S is any ideal of ring R , and T any subring of R . (Meerut 1984)

Solution. Since S is an ideal of R therefore S is a subring of R . Also T is a subring of R . First we shall show that $S+T$ is a subring of R . Let $a+\alpha, b+\beta \in S+T$, where $a, b \in S$ and $\alpha, \beta \in T$.

Since S is a subring, therefore $a-b \in S$. Similarly $\alpha-\beta \in T$.

$$\therefore (a+\alpha)-(b+\beta)=(a-b)+(\alpha-\beta) \in S+T.$$

Also $(a+\alpha)(b+\beta)=ab+a\beta+\alpha b+\alpha\beta=(ab+a\beta+\alpha b)+\alpha\beta$.

Now S is a subring. Therefore $a, b \in S \Rightarrow ab \in S$.

Also S is an ideal, therefore $a, b \in S$ and $\alpha, \beta \in R \Rightarrow a\beta, \alpha b \in S$. Therefore $ab+a\beta+\alpha b \in S$.

Further T is a subring implies $\alpha\beta \in T$ if $\alpha, \beta \in T$.

$$\therefore (a+\alpha)(b+\beta)=(ab+a\beta+\alpha b)+\alpha\beta \in S+T.$$

$\therefore S+T$ is a subring of R .

Since $0 \in T$, therefore $a \in S$ can be written as

$$a=a+0 \in S+T.$$

$$\therefore S \subseteq S+T.$$

Thus $S \subseteq S+T$ and $S+T$ is a subring of R . Since S is an ideal of R , therefore S is also an ideal of $S+T$.

Ex. 10. If U is a left ideal of a ring R , let

$$\lambda(U)=\{x \in R : xu=0 \ \forall \ u \in U\}.$$

Prove that $\lambda(U)$ is a two sided ideal of R .

Solution. First we see that $\lambda(U) \neq \emptyset$ because $0 \in R$ is such that $0u=0 \forall u \in U$.

Now let x_1, x_2 be any two elements of $\lambda(U)$. Then

$$x_1u=0 \forall u \in U \text{ and } x_2u=0 \forall u \in U.$$

We have $(x_1-x_2)u=x_1u-x_2u=0-0=0$ for all $u \in U$.

$$\therefore x_1-x_2 \in \lambda(U).$$

Now let x be any element of $\lambda(U)$ and r be any element of R .

Then $xu=0 \forall u \in U$ [by def. of $\lambda(U)$]

$$\Rightarrow r(xu)=r0 \forall u \in U$$

$$\Rightarrow (rx)u=0 \text{ for all } u \in U \Rightarrow rx \in \lambda(U).$$

Further U is a left ideal of R . Therefore $ru \in U \forall u \in U$.

Since $x \in \lambda(U)$, therefore by def. of $\lambda(U)$, we have

$$x \in \lambda(U), ru \in U \Rightarrow x(ru)=0 \text{ for all } u \in U$$

$$\Rightarrow (xr)u=0 \text{ for all } u \in U$$

$$\Rightarrow xr \in \lambda(U).$$

Thus $x \in \lambda(U), r \in R \Rightarrow xr, rx \in \lambda(U)$.

Hence $\lambda(U)$ is a two sided ideal of R .

Ex. 11. For any given element a of a ring R let

$$Ra = \{xa : x \in R\}.$$

Prove that Ra is a left ideal of R . (Meerut 1985)

Solution. Let x_1a, x_2a be any two elements of Ra where $x_1, x_2 \in R$. We have $x_1a - x_2a = (x_1 - x_2)a \in Ra$, since

$$x_1, x_2 \in R \Rightarrow x_1 - x_2 \in R.$$

Thus $x_1a, x_2a \in Ra \Rightarrow x_1a - x_2a \in Ra$.

Now let xa be any element of Ra where $x \in R$ and r be any element of R . We have $r(xa) = (rx)a \in Ra$, since

$$r \in R, x \in R \Rightarrow rx \in R.$$

Thus $r \in R, xa \in Ra \Rightarrow r(xa) \in Ra$.

$\therefore Ra$ is a left ideal of R .

Ex. 12. If U is an ideal of a ring R , let

$$[R : U] = \{x \in R : rx \in U \forall r \in R\}.$$

Prove that $[R : U]$ is an ideal of R and that it contains U .

Solution. First we see that $[R : U]$ is not empty because $0 \in R$ is such that $0 \cdot 0 = 0 \in U$ for all $r \in R$.

Now let x_1, x_2 be any two elements of $[R : U]$. Then $rx_1 \in U \forall r \in R$, and $rx_2 \in U \forall r \in R$.

Since U is an ideal, therefore

$$rx_1 \in U, rx_2 \in U \Rightarrow rx_1 - rx_2 \in U$$

$$\Rightarrow r(x_1 - x_2) \in U \quad \forall r \in R$$

$$\Rightarrow x_1 - x_2 \in [R : U], \text{ by def. of } [R : U].$$

Now let x be any element of $[R : U]$ and s be any element of

R . Then $rx \in U \quad \forall r \in R$

$$\Rightarrow (rx)s \in U \quad \forall r \in R$$

$[\because U \text{ is an ideal and so } s \in R, rx \in U \Rightarrow (rx)s \in U]$

$$\Rightarrow r(xs) \in U \text{ for all } r \in R \Rightarrow xs \in [R : U].$$

$$\text{Also } rx \in U \quad \forall r \in R \Rightarrow sx \in U$$

$\because s \in R]$

$$\Rightarrow (sx)r \in U \quad \forall r \in R$$

$[\because U \text{ is an ideal and so } sx \in U, r \in R \Rightarrow (sx)r \in U]$

$$\Rightarrow sx \in [R : U].$$

Thus $x \in [R : U], s \in R \Rightarrow xs \in [R : U], sx \in [R : U]$.

Therefore $[R : U]$ is an ideal of R .

Now to show that $U \subseteq [R : U]$. We have

$$y \in U \Rightarrow yr \in U \quad \forall r \in R \quad [\because U \text{ is an ideal}]$$

$$\Rightarrow y \in [R : U].$$

$$\therefore U \subseteq [R : U].$$

Ex. 13. If U, V are ideals of a ring R let UV be the set of all those elements of R which can be written as finite sums of elements of the form uv where $u \in U$ and $v \in V$. Prove that UV is an ideal of R .
(Marathwada 1972; Meerut 70; I.C.S. 84)

Solution. U and V are ideals of a ring R . Let

$UV = \{u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \dots + u_nv_n : u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n \in U, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n \in V \text{ and } n \text{ is any positive integer}\}$.

To prove that UV is also an ideal of R .

Let $\alpha = u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \dots + u_nv_n$, $\beta = u_1'v_1' + u_2'v_2' + \dots + u_m'v_m'$ be any two elements of UV , where $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n, u_1', u_2', \dots, u_m' \in U$ and $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n, v_1', v_2', \dots, v_m' \in V$. Also m and n are any positive integers.

$$\text{We have } \alpha - \beta = u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \dots + u_nv_n - u_1'v_1' - u_2'v_2' - \dots - u_m'v_m' \\ = u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \dots + u_nv_n + (-u_1')v_1' + (-u_2')v_2' + \dots + (-u_m')v_m'.$$

This is obviously an element of UV because U is an ideal and therefore $u_1' \in U \Rightarrow (-u_1') \in U$, etc.

Again let $r \in R$ and $\alpha \in UV$. Then

$$r\alpha = r(u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \dots + u_nv_n) = (ru_1)v_1 + (ru_2)v_2 + \dots + (ru_n)v_n.$$

This is an element of UV because U is an ideal and therefore $r \in R, u_1 \in U \Rightarrow ru_1 \in U$, etc.

Also $\alpha r = (u_1 v_1 + u_2 v_2 + \dots + u_n v_n) r = u_1 (v_1 r) + u_2 (v_2 r) + \dots + u_n (v_n r)$.

This is an element of UV because V is an ideal and therefore $r \in R, v_i \in V \Rightarrow v_i r \in V$, etc.

Hence UV is an ideal of R .

Now to show that $UV \subseteq U \cap V$.

Let $\alpha = u_1 v_1 + \dots + u_n v_n$ be any element of UV where

$$u_1, \dots, u_n \in U \text{ and } v_1, \dots, v_n \in V.$$

Now $v_i \in V \Rightarrow v_i \in R$. Also U is an ideal. Therefore

$$v_i \in R, u_i \in U \Rightarrow u_i v_i \in U.$$

Similarly $u_i \in U \Rightarrow u_i \in R$. But V is an ideal. Therefore

$$u_i \in R, v_i \in V \Rightarrow u_i v_i \in V.$$

Thus $u_i v_i \in U, u_i v_i \in V \Rightarrow u_i v_i \in U \cap V$.

Similarly $u_2 v_2, \dots, u_n v_n \in U \cap V$.

Since $U \cap V$ is also an ideal of R , therefore

$$u_1 v_1, \dots, u_n v_n \in U \cap V \Rightarrow \alpha = u_1 v_1 + \dots + u_n v_n \in U \cap V.$$

Thus $\alpha \in UV \Rightarrow \alpha \in U \cap V$. Therefore $UV \subseteq U \cap V$.

Exercises

1. Distinguish between Subrings and Ideals in a ring. Show that the 2-rowed matrices of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ b & c \end{bmatrix}$$

where a, b, c are integers form a subring of the ring of all 2-rowed matrices with integral entries. Is this subring an integral domain?

Ans. No. (Kerala 1970; Meerut 73, 75, 77, 78, 79)

2. Show that the set M of all 2×2 matrices of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & a \\ 0 & b \end{bmatrix}$$

a, b integers is a left ideal but not a right ideal in the ring of all 2×2 matrices with elements as integers. (Meerut 1970)

3. Show that for a field F , the set of all matrices of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

for $a, b \in F$ is a right ideal but not a left ideal of the ring of all 2×2 matrices over the field F . (I.A.S. 1970; Delhi 70)

4. If U, V are ideals of a ring R , let

$$U + V = \{u + v : u \in U, v \in V\}.$$

Prove that $U + V$ is also an ideal of R .

(Marathwada 1972; Meerut 81, 86, 90)

5. Show that an arbitrary intersection of ideals of a ring is an ideal of the ring. (Banaras 1961)

6. If U is an ideal of a ring R , let

$$r(U) = \{x \in R : xu = 0 \text{ for all } u \in U\}.$$

Prove that $r(U)$ is an ideal of R . (Guru Nanak 1982)

7. Consider the ring R of all 3×3 matrices of the type

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ 0 & d & e \\ 0 & 0 & f \end{bmatrix},$$

a, b, c, d, e, f are real numbers. Show that the set I of all matrices of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

is a left ideal of R , which is not a right ideal. (Meerut 1974)

8. Verify the following for being true or false :

(i) The set of all positive rationals is a subring of the ring of all rational numbers.

(ii) A subring of any field is a field.

(iii) Any subring of the ring of integers, Z , is an ideal of Z .

(Meerut 1976)

Ans. (i) and (ii) are false; (iii) is true.

§ 17. More about ideals.

Theorem 1. A field has no proper ideals i.e., if F is a field then its only ideals are (0) and F itself.

(I A S. 1972; Poona 73; Meerut 80, 90; Andhra 77; Kanpur 87, Nagarjuna 80; Sambalpur 77)

Proof. Let S be any non-zero ideal of the field F and let a be any non-zero element of S . We have $a^{-1} \in F$.

Since S is an ideal, therefore

$$a \in S, a^{-1} \in F \Rightarrow aa^{-1} \in S \Rightarrow 1 \in S.$$

Now let x be any element of F . Then

$$1 \in S, x \in F \Rightarrow 1x \in S \Rightarrow x \in S.$$

Thus each element of F belongs to S . Therefore $F \subseteq S$. But $S \subseteq F$. Therefore $S = F$.

Thus the only ideals of F are (0) and F itself.

Theorem 2. If R is a commutative ring and $a \in R$, then

$$Ra = \{ra : r \in R\} \text{ is an ideal of } R.$$

(Kanpur 1980; Madras 77)

Proof. In order to prove that Ra is an ideal of R , we should prove that Ra is a subgroup of R under addition and that if $u \in Ra$ and $x \in R$ then xu and ux are also in Ra . But R is a commutative ring, therefore $xu = ux$. Thus we only need to check that xu is in Ra .

Now, let $u, v \in Ra$. Then $u = r_1a$, $v = r_2a$ for some $r_1, r_2 \in R$.

We have $u - v = r_1a - r_2a = (r_1 - r_2)a \in Ra$ since $r_1 - r_2 \in R$.

Thus $u, v \in Ra \Rightarrow u - v \in Ra$. Hence Ra is a subgroup of R under addition.

Now let $x \in R$.

Then $xu = x(r_1a) = (xr_1)a \in Ra$ since $xr_1 \in R$.

$\therefore Ra$ is an ideal of R .

Theorem 3. *A commutative ring with unity is a field if it has no proper ideals.*

(I.A.S. 1973; Guru Nanak 82; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Meerut 82, 88, 89; Madurai 88; Kanpur 71; Vikram 76; Andhra 77; Rajasthan 77)

Proof. Let R be a commutative ring with unity having no proper ideals i.e., the only ideals of R are (0) and R itself. In order to show that R is a field, we should show that each non-zero element of R possesses multiplicative inverse.

Let a be any non-zero element of R .

The set $Ra = \{ra : r \in R\}$ is an ideal of R . [See theorem 2]

Since $1 \in R$, therefore $1a = a \in Ra$. Thus $0 \neq a \in Ra$. Therefore the ideal $Ra \neq (0)$. Since R has no proper ideals, therefore the only possibility is that $Ra = R$. Thus every element of R is a multiple of a by some element of R . In particular, $1 \in R$ so it can be realised as a multiple of a . Thus there exists an element $b \in R$ such that $ba = 1$. Therefore $a^{-1} = b$. Hence each non-zero element of R possesses multiplicative inverse.

$\therefore R$ is a field.

Ex. *Prove that a commutative ring R with identity is a field if and only if it has no proper ideals.* (Madras 1978)

Theorem 4. *Let R be a ring with unit element, R not necessarily commutative, such that the only right ideals of R are (0) and R . Prove that R is a division ring.* (Kanpur 1971; Meerut 73)

Proof. Let R be a ring with unity element having no proper right ideals i.e., the only right ideals of R are (0) and R itself. In order to show that R is a division ring, we should show that each non-zero element of R possesses multiplicative inverse.

Let a be any non zero element of R . Then $aR = \{ar : r \in R\}$ is a right ideal of R . Since $1 \in R$, therefore $a1 = a \in aR$. Thus $0 \neq a \in aR$. Therefore the right ideal $aR \neq (0)$. Since R has no proper right ideals therefore the only possibility is that $aR = R$.

Now $1 \in R \Rightarrow 1 \in aR$ [$\because aR = R$]

$$\Rightarrow 1 = ab \text{ for some } b \in R$$

$\Rightarrow b$ is the right multiplicative inverse of a .

Thus each non-zero element of R possesses right multiplicative inverse.

Note that $1 = ab \Rightarrow b \neq 0$ because if $b = 0$, then

$$ab = a0 = 0 \neq 1.$$

Now it remains to show that b is also the left multiplicative inverse of a .

$$\text{We have } (ba)b = b(ab) = b1 = b.$$

Since b is also a non-zero element of R , therefore b also possesses right multiplicative inverse. Let $b^{-1} \in R$ be such that $bb^{-1} = 1$.

$$\text{We have } (ba)b = b \Rightarrow (ba)bb^{-1} = bb^{-1} \Rightarrow (ba)1 = 1 \Rightarrow ba = 1.$$

Thus b is also the left inverse of a and so b is the inverse of a .

Hence each non-zero element of R is invertible.

$\therefore R$ is a division ring.

Theorem 5. Let R be a ring with unity element such that the only left ideals of R are (0) and R . Show that R is a division ring.

(Sagar 1967; Kurukshetra 70)

Proof. Proceed exactly as in the theorem 4. Here note that $Ra = \{ra : r \in R\}$ is a left ideal of R .

§ 17. Ideal generated by a given subset of a ring. If M is any subset of a ring R , we can find ideals containing M . For example, the ring R itself is an ideal containing any subset of R .

Smallest ideal containing a subset. Let M be any arbitrary subset of a ring R . Then an ideal S of R is called the *smallest ideal of R containing M* if

$$M \subseteq S,$$

and if S is contained in every ideal of R containing M .

Definition. Let R be a ring and let M be an arbitrary subset of R . The smallest ideal of R containing M is said to be the *ideal generated by M* and is denoted by (M) .

In particular, if M consists of a single element, say a , of the ring R we write (a) in place of M . An ideal such as (a) generated

by a single element of the ring is called a *principal ideal*.

Principal ideal. Definition. An ideal S of a ring R is said to be a *principal ideal* if there exists an element $a \in S$ such that any ideal T of R containing a also contains S i.e., $S = (a)$.

(Lucknow 1970)

Thus an ideal generated by a single element of itself is called a principal ideal.

If a ring R has a unity element 1 , then the ideal generated by 1 is the whole ring i.e., $(1) = R$, since every element $r \in R$ may be written as $r1$. For this reason ring itself is called the *unit ideal*. The ideal generated by the zero element of R i.e., (0) consists of the zero element alone and is called the *null ideal*. Every ring R has at least one principal ideal, namely, (0) . Every ring with unity has at least two principal ideals, (0) and (1) .

Theorem 1. If a is an element in a commutative ring R with unity, then the set $S = \{ra : r \in R\}$ is a principal ideal of R generated by the element a i.e., $S = (a)$.

Proof. First we should prove that $a \in S$. Since R is a ring with unit element 1 , therefore $1a = a \in S$.

Now we should prove that S is an ideal of R . So first we should prove that S is a subgroup of R under addition. Let u, v be any two elements of S . Then $u = r_1a, v = r_2a$ for some $r_1, r_2 \in R$.

We have $u - v = r_1a - r_2a = (r_1 - r_2)a \in S$ since $r_1 - r_2 \in R$.

$\therefore S$ is a subgroup of R under addition.

Now we should prove that $x \in R, u \in S \Rightarrow xu \in S$ and $ux \in S$. But R is a commutative ring, therefore $xu = ux$ and thus it is sufficient to show that $xu \in S$.

We have $xu = x(r_1a) = (xr_1)a \in S$ since $xr_1 \in R$.

$\therefore S$ is an ideal of R and $a \in S$.

Now in order to prove that S is an ideal generated by the element a , we should prove that if T is an ideal of R and $a \in T$, then $S \subseteq T$.

Let ra be any element of S . Then $r \in R$. If T is an ideal of R containing a , then $a \in T, r \in R \Rightarrow ra \in T$. Thus $S \subseteq T$.

Hence S is a principal ideal of R generated by the element a .

Example. Suppose we are to find the principal ideal generated by 5 in the ring of integers. The ring I of integers is a commutative ring with unity. Therefore $(5) = \{5r : r \in I\}$.

Thus the principal ideal generated by 5 is given by

$$(5) = \{\dots, -10, -5, 0, 5, 10, \dots\}.$$

Obviously $(-5) = (5)$.

Theorem 2. Let S be an ideal of a commutative ring R . Let a be an element of S such that

$$x \in S \Rightarrow x = ya \text{ for some } y \in R.$$

Then S is a principal ideal of R generated by a .

Proof. As given in the statement of the theorem, S is an ideal of R containing the element a . Let T be any ideal of R containing a . Then S will be principal ideal of R generated by a if $S \subseteq T$.

Let x be any element of S . Then $x = ya$ for some $y \in R$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } y \in R, a \in T &\Rightarrow ya \in T & [\because T \text{ is an ideal}] \\ &\Rightarrow x \in T. & [\because x = ya] \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Thus } x \in S \Rightarrow x \in T.$$

$$\therefore S \subseteq T.$$

Hence S is a principal ideal of R generated by a .

Note. The above theorem will be very helpful in proving that an ideal S of a commutative ring R is a principal ideal. If we are able to find an element a in S such that

$$x \in S \Rightarrow x = ay \text{ for some } y \in R,$$

then S will be a principal ideal of R generated by a .

§ 18. Principal Ideal Ring. Definition.

(Meerut 1981, 84P, 88; Rajasthan 78; Guru Nanak 82; Andhra 77; Madras 83; B.H.U. 87)

A commutative ring R without zero divisors and with unity element is a principal ideal ring if every ideal S in R is a principal ideal i.e., if every ideal S in R is of the form $S = (a)$ for some $a \in S$.

Theorem 1. The ring of integers is a principal ideal ring.

(Banaras 1971; Lucknow 70; Rajasthan 77; Andhra 77; Meerut 84P, 88, 89, 91; Nagarjuna 78; Madras 83)

Proof. Let $(I, +, \cdot)$ be the ring of integers. Obviously I is a commutative ring with unity and without zero divisors. Therefore I will be a principal ideal ring if every ideal in I is a principal ideal.

Let S be any ideal of the ring of integers. If S is the null ideal, then $S = (0)$ so that S is a principal ideal.

So let us suppose that $S \neq (0)$.

Now S contains at least one non-zero integer, say a . Since S is a subgroup of R under addition, therefore $a \in S \Rightarrow -a \in S$. This shows that S contains at least one positive integer because if $0 \neq a$, then one of a and $-a$ must be positive.

Let S_+ be the set of all positive integers in S . Since S_+ is not empty, therefore by the well ordering principle S_+ must possess a least positive integer. Let s be this least element. We will now show that S is the principal ideal generated by s i.e., $S=(s)$.

Suppose now that n is any integer in S . Then by division algorithm, there exist integers q and r such that $n=qs+r$ with $0 \leq r < s$.

Now $s \in S, q \in \mathbb{I} \Rightarrow qs \in S$ [$\because S$ is an ideal]
and $n \in S, qs \in S \Rightarrow n - qs \in S$ [$\because S$ is a subgroup
of the additive group of \mathbb{I}]
 $\Rightarrow r \in S$. [$\because n - qs = r$]

But $0 \leq r < s$ and s is the least positive integer such that $s \in S$. Hence r must be 0.

$$\therefore n = qs.$$

Thus $n \in S \Rightarrow n = qs$ for some $q \in \mathbb{I}$.

Hence S is a principal ideal of \mathbb{I} generated by s .

Since S was an arbitrary ideal in the ring of integers, therefore the ring of integers is a principal ideal ring.

Theorem 2. Every field is a principal ideal ring.

Proof. A field has no proper ideals. The only ideals of a field are (i) the null ideal which is a principal ideal generated by 0 and (ii) the field itself which is also a principal ideal generated by 1. Thus a field is always a principal ideal ring.

§ 19. Divisibility in an Integral Domain. Definition. Suppose $0 \neq a$ is an element of a commutative ring R . Then a is said to divide $b \in R$, if there exists an element $c \in R$ such that $b = ac$.

We shall use the symbol $a | b$ to represent the fact that a divides b . Also if a divides b then sometimes we say that a is a factor of b or b is divisible by a or a is a divisor of b . From the definition of divisibility it follows that every non-zero element of R is a divisor of its zero element. Obviously we can write $0 = a \cdot 0$. Therefore if $0 \neq a \in R$, then $a | 0$.

Example 1. In the ring \mathbb{I} of integers, we have $3 | 6$ since we have $6 = 3 \times 2$ and $2 \in \mathbb{I}$.

However in the ring of integers 3 is not a divisor of 7.

Example 2 In the ring \mathbb{Q} of rational numbers, we have $3 | 7$ since we have $7 = 3 \times (7/3)$ and $7/3 \in \mathbb{Q}$.

Theorem 1. If R is a commutative ring, then

(i) $a \mid b$ and $b \mid c \Rightarrow a \mid c$ i.e., the relation of divisibility in R is a transitive relation. (Allahabad 1967)

(ii) $a \mid b$ and $a \mid c \Rightarrow a \mid (b+c)$.

(iii) $a \mid b \Rightarrow a \mid bx$ for all $x \in R$.

Proof. (i) $a \mid b \Rightarrow b=ap$ for some $p \in R$
and $b \mid c \Rightarrow c=bq$ for some $q \in R$.

Now $c=bq$ and $b=ap \Rightarrow c=(ap)q \Rightarrow c=a(pq)$
 $\Rightarrow a \mid c$ since $pq \in R$.

(ii) $a \mid b \Rightarrow b=ap$ for some $p \in R$
and $a \mid c \Rightarrow c=aq$ for some $q \in R$.

Now $b=ap$ and $c=aq \Rightarrow b+c=ap+aq \Rightarrow b+c=a(p+q)$
 $\Rightarrow a \mid (b+c)$ since $(p+q) \in R$.

(iii) $a \mid b \Rightarrow b=ap$ for some $p \in R$.

Now $b=ap \Rightarrow bx=(ap)x \forall x \in R$
 $\Rightarrow bx=a(px) \Rightarrow a \mid bx$ since $px \in R$.

Units. (Raj. 77). Let R be a commutative ring with unity element 1. An element $a \in R$ is a unit in R if there exists an element $b \in R$ such that $ab=1$. In other words units of R are those elements of R which possess multiplicative inverse.

The students should not confuse a unit with the unit element or the unity element of the ring. There may be more than one units in a ring but the unity element is always unique. Of course the unity element is also one of the units.

In the ring of integers I , the only units are 1 and -1 . These are the only invertible elements of the ring of integers.

Every non-zero element of a field possesses multiplicative inverse. Therefore every non-zero element of a field is a unit.

It is obvious that if a is a unit in a ring R , then a^{-1} is also a unit in R . Also the product of two units is again a unit. Because if a, b are two units in R , then $(ab)^{-1}=b^{-1}a^{-1}$ which is an element of R . Of course the set of all units in R forms a group under multiplication. (Madras 1975)

Example. Find all the units of the integral domain of Gaussian integers. (Madurai 1988)

Solution. Let $D=\{a+ib : a, b \in I \text{ the set of integers}\}$ be the ring of Gaussian integers. The element $1+0i$ is the unity element of this ring. Let $x+iy$ be a unit and $x'+iy'$ be its inverse.

Then $(x+iy)(x'+iy')=1+0i$
or $(xx'-yy')+i(xy'+yx')=1+0i$.

Equating real and imaginary parts, we get

$$xx' - yy' = 1 \quad \dots(1)$$

and

$$xy' + yx' = 0. \quad \dots(2)$$

Squaring and adding (1) and (2), we get

$$x^2x'^2 + y^2y'^2 + x^2y'^2 + y^2x'^2 = 1$$

or

$$(x^2 + y^2)(x'^2 + y'^2) = 1.$$

Now the product of two positive integers can be equal to 1 if and only if each of them is 1.

$$\therefore x^2 + y^2 = 1.$$

This gives

$$x^2 = 0, y^2 = 1$$

or

$$x^2 = 1, y^2 = 0.$$

Thus

$$x = 0, y = \pm 1$$

or

$$x = \pm 1, y = 0.$$

\therefore The only units of the integral domain of Gaussian integers are $0 \pm i, (\pm 1) + 0i$ i.e., $1, -1, i, -i$.

Associates. Definition. (Raj. 1977). Let R be a commutative ring with unity element 1. Then an element a of R is said to be an associate of $b \in R$ if $a = ub$ for some unit u in R .

In symbols, we express it by writing $a \sim b$ which is read as 'a is an associate of b' or 'a and b are associates'.

From this definition we observe that in a commutative ring with unity all the associates of an element can be obtained by multiplying the element by different units in that ring.

Illustrations.

1. The only units of the integral domain of integers are 1 and -1 . Therefore if a is any non-zero integer, then it has exactly two associates namely $1a$ and $(-1)a$ i.e., a and $-a$. Thus the two associates of 5 are 5 and -5 .

2. In any commutative ring with unity the associate of 0 is only zero.

3. The only units of the domain of Gaussian integers are $1, -1, i, -i$. Therefore if $a + ib$ is any non-zero element of this domain, then it has exactly four associates namely,

$$1(a + ib), -1(a + ib), i(a + ib), -i(a + ib)$$

$$\text{i.e., } a + ib, -a - ib, -b + ia, b - ia.$$

Theorem 2. Let R be a commutative ring with unity element 1. The relation in R defined by 'a is an associate of b' is an equivalence relation.

Proof.

Reflexivity. Let a be any element of R . Then $a=1a$. Therefore $a \sim a$ because 1 is a unit in R . Thus \sim is reflexive.

Symmetry. We have $a \sim b \Rightarrow a=ub$ for some unit u in $R \Rightarrow u^{-1}a=u^{-1}ub \Rightarrow u^{-1}a=1b \Rightarrow u^{-1}a=b \Rightarrow b=u^{-1}a \Rightarrow b \sim a$ because u^{-1} is also a unit in R . Therefore \sim is symmetric.

Transitivity. Let $a \sim b, b \sim c$. Then $a=ub$ and $b=vc$ for some units $u, v \in R$. This gives $a=u(vc)=(uv)c$. But the product of two units in R is again a unit in R . Therefore uv is a unit in R and so $a=(uv)c \Rightarrow a \sim c$. Therefore \sim is transitive.

Hence \sim is an equivalence relation in R .

Theorem 3. Let D be an integral domain with unity element 1 . Two non-zero elements $a, b \in D$ are associates if and only if $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$.

Proof. Let two non-zero elements a, b be associates of each other in D . Then $a=bu$ where u is a unit in R .

Now $a=bu \Rightarrow b \mid a$.

Again $a=bu \Rightarrow au^{-1}=buu^{-1} \Rightarrow au^{-1}=b \Rightarrow b=au^{-1} \Rightarrow a \mid b$.

Thus a and b are associates $\Rightarrow a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$.

Conversely, let $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$. Then to prove that a and b are associates.

We have $a \mid b \Rightarrow \exists c \in D$ such that $b=ac$.

Similarly $b \mid a \Rightarrow \exists d \in D$ such that $a=bd$.

$$\therefore b=ac=(bd)c=b(dc).$$

$$\therefore b1=b(dc)$$

$$[\because b1=b]$$

$$\text{or } b(1-dc)=0$$

$$\text{or } (1-dc)=0 \quad [\because b \neq 0 \text{ and } D \text{ is without zero divisors}]$$

$$\text{or } 1=dc.$$

\therefore Both c and d are units in D .

Thus $a=bd$ where d is a unit in D . Hence a and b are associates.

Note. In a field any two non-zero elements are associates.

Proper and Improper Divisors. Definition. Let D be an integral domain with unity element 1 . Let a be any non-zero element of D . Then the units of D and associates of a are always divisors of a . These are called improper or trivial divisors of a . Any other divisors of a are called proper or non-trivial divisors of a .

In the integral domain of integers $\pm 1, \pm 6$ are trivial divisors of 6 . But $\pm 2, \pm 3$ are proper divisors of 6 .

Prime Elements. Definition. (Raj. 77). Let D be an integral domain with unity element 1. A non-zero non-unit element $a \in D$, having only trivial divisors, is called a prime or irreducible element of D . An element $0 \neq b \in D$ having proper divisors is called a reducible or composite element of D . From this definition it is obvious that if p is a prime element of D and if $p = xy$, where $x, y \in D$, then one of x or y must be a unit in D .

Also $0 \neq b \in D$ is a composite element of D if and only if we can find two elements $x, y \in D$ such that $b = xy$ and none of x and y is a unit in D .

Greatest Common Divisor. Definition. Let R be a commutative ring. If $a, b \in R$ then $0 \neq d \in R$ is said to be a greatest common divisor of a and b if

(i) $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$.

(ii) Whenever $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$ then $c \mid d$. (Madras 1983)

We shall use the notation $d = (a, b)$ to denote that d is a greatest common divisor of a and b .

Now suppose $a, b \in D$ where D is an integral domain with unity element 1. Let a, b possess a greatest common divisor.

If d_1, d_2 are two greatest common divisors of a and b , we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_1 \mid d_2 \text{ and } d_2 \mid d_1 \\ \Rightarrow d_1 \text{ and } d_2 \text{ are associates.} \end{aligned}$$

Thus in an integral domain with unity in case a greatest common divisor of a and b exists, it is unique apart from the distinction between associates.

Relatively Prime Elements. Definition. (Raj. 1967). Let D be an integral domain with unity element 1. Two elements $a, b \in D$ are said to be relatively prime if their greatest common divisor is a unit of D .

But any associate of a greatest common divisor is a greatest common divisor. Also the unity element 1 is an associate of any unit. Therefore if a, b are relatively prime we may assume that a greatest common divisor of a and b is 1 i.e., $(a, b) = 1$.

§ 20. Polynomial Rings. While studying algebra in high school classes we are introduced to polynomials. We know that expressions of the type $3x^3 - 4x + 5$, $x + 7$, $9x^3 - \frac{2}{3}x^3 + 4x + 5$ etc. are called polynomials in the indeterminate x . In place of x we

can use other letters like y, z etc. to denote these polynomials. Now we shall define polynomials over an arbitrary ring.

Definition. Let R be an arbitrary ring and let x , called an indeterminate, be any symbol not an element of R . By a polynomial in x over R is meant an expression of the form

$$f(x) = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots, \text{ where}$$

a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots are elements of R and only a finite number of them are not equal to 0, the zero element of R . (Agra 1970; Meerut 73)

Here x is an indeterminate. We could have used any other letter, say, y in place of x . Also a_0x^0, a_1x, a_2x^2 , etc. are called terms of the polynomial and a_0, a_1, a_2 , etc. are called coefficients of these terms. All these coefficients are elements of R . The number of terms in the polynomial $f(x)$ will be infinite but except a finite number of terms, the coefficients of all the remaining terms will be equal to 0, the zero element of the ring. The symbol '+' connecting various terms in $f(x)$ has no connection with the addition of the ring R . This symbol has been used here only to connect different terms. Also x is not an element of R . The powers of x are nothing to do with the powers of an element of R . The different powers of x only tell us the ordered place of different coefficients. There is no harm if we represent this polynomial $f(x)$ by the infinite ordered set (a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots) where a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots are elements of R and only a finite number of them are not equal to zero. Since from high school classes we represent a polynomial with an indeterminate x , therefore we have preferred this way to represent polynomials.

Set of all polynomials over a ring. Let R be an arbitrary ring and x an indeterminate. The set of all polynomials $f(x)$,

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots$$

where the a 's are elements of the ring R and only a finite number of them are not equal to zero, is called $R[x]$.

We shall make a ring out of $R[x]$. Then $R[x]$ will be called the ring of all polynomials over the ring R . For this we shall define equality, addition, and multiplication of two elements of $R[x]$.

Definition. Suppose R is an arbitrary ring and

$$f(x) = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \dots$$

and $g(x) = b_0x^0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + b_3x^3 + \dots$
are any elements of $R[x]$. Then

(a) $f(x) = g(x)$ if and only if $a_n = b_n \forall$ non-negative integer n . Thus two polynomials are equal iff their corresponding coefficients are equal.

(b) $f(x) + g(x) = c_0x^0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + c_3x^3 + \dots$ where $c_n = a_n + b_n$ for every non-negative integer n . Thus in order to add two polynomials we should add the coefficients of like powers of x .

Since $c_n \in R$ and only a finite number of c 's cannot be equal to zero, therefore $f(x) + g(x)$ is an element of $R[x]$. Thus $R[x]$ is closed with respect to addition of polynomials as defined above.

(c) $f(x)g(x) = d_0x^0 + d_1x + d_2x^2 + d_3x^3 + \dots$
where $d_n = a_0b_n + a_1b_{n-1} + a_2b_{n-2} + \dots + a_nb_0$

for every non-negative integer n . We can write $d_n = \sum_{i+j=n} a_ib_j$

where by this summation we mean the sum of all the products of the type a_ib_j with i and j non-negative integers whose sum is n .

Since $d_n \in R$ and only a finite number of d 's can be not equal to zero, therefore $f(x)g(x)$ is an element of $R[x]$. Thus $R[x]$ is closed with respect to multiplication of polynomials as defined above.

We have $d_0 = a_0b_0$, $d_1 = a_0b_1 + a_1b_0$,
 $d_2 = a_0b_2 + a_1b_1 + a_2b_0$, $d_3 = a_0b_3 + a_1b_2 + a_2b_1 + a_3b_0$ and so on.

Therefore in order to multiply two polynomials $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, we should first write

$$f(x)g(x) = (a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \dots)(b_0x^0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots)$$

Now we should multiply different powers of the indeterminate x and using the relation $x^i x^j = x^{i+j}$ we should collect coefficients of different powers of x .

Zero Polynomial. The polynomial

$$f(x) = \sum a_n x^n = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \dots$$

in which all the coefficients a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots are equal to 0 is called the zero polynomial over the ring R .

Degree of a Polynomial.

(Meerut 1978)

$$\text{Let } f(x) = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \dots + a_nx^n + \dots$$

be a polynomial over an arbitrary ring R . We say that n is the degree of the polynomial $f(x)$ if and only if $a_n \neq 0$ and $a_m = 0$ for all

$m > n$. We shall write $\deg f(x)$ to denote the degree of $f(x)$. Thus the degree of $f(x)$ is the largest non-negative integer i for which the i th coefficient of $f(x)$ is not 0. If in the polynomial $f(x)$, a_0 (i.e., the coefficient of x^0) is not 0 and all the other coefficients are 0, then according to our definition, the degree of $f(x)$ will be zero. Also according to our definition, if there is no non-zero coefficient in $f(x)$, then its degree will remain undefined. Thus we do not define the degree of the zero polynomial. Also it is obvious that every non-zero polynomial will possess a unique degree.

Note. If $f(x) = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n + \dots$ is a polynomial of degree n i.e., if $a_n \neq 0$ and $a_m = 0$ for all $m > n$, then it is convenient to write

$$f(x) = \sum_{i=0}^n a_i x^i = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n. \text{ It will}$$

remain understood that all the terms in $f(x)$ which follow the term a_nx^n , have zero coefficients. Also we shall call a_nx^n as the leading term and a_n as the leading coefficient of the polynomial. The term a_0x^0 is called the constant term and a_0 is called the zeroth coefficient of $f(x)$. For example $f(x) = 2x^0 + 3x - 4x^2 + 5x^3 - 8x^4$ is a polynomial of degree 4 over the ring of integers. Here -8 is the leading coefficient and 2 is the zeroth coefficient. The coefficients of all terms which contain powers of x greater than 4 will be regarded as zero. Similarly $g(x) = 3x^0$ is a polynomial of degree zero over the ring of integers. In this polynomial the coefficients of x, x^2, x^3, \dots are all equal to zero. The zero polynomial over an arbitrary ring R will be represented by $0x^0$.

Set of constant polynomials over a ring. Let R be an arbitrary ring and $R[x]$ the set of all polynomials over R . Let R' denote the set of all polynomials over R whose coefficients are all zero except for the constant term, which may be either zero or non-zero. That is

$$R' = \{ax^0 : a \in R\}.$$

Then R' will be called as the set of constant polynomials in $R[x]$.

Thus all the polynomials of degree 0 as well as the zero polynomial will be called as constant polynomials.

Example 1. Add and multiply the following polynomials over the ring of integers :

$$f(x) = 2x^0 + 5x + 3x^2 - 4x^3, \quad g(x) = 3x^0 + 4x - x^3 + 5x^4.$$

Solution. By our definition of the sum of two polynomials, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x)+g(x) &= (2+3)x^0 + (5+4)x + (3+0)x^2 \\ &\quad + (-4-1)x^3 + (0+5)x^4 \\ &= 5x^0 + 9x + 3x^2 - 5x^3 + 5x^4. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } f(x)g(x) &= (2x^0 + 5x + 3x^2 - 4x^3)(3x^0 + 4x - x^3 + 5x^4) \\ &= 6x^0 + (8+15)x + (20+9)x^2 + (-2+12-12)x^3 \\ &\quad + (10-5-16)x^4 + (25-3)x^5 + (15+4)x^6 - 20x^7 \\ &= 6x^0 + 23x + 29x^2 - 2x^3 - 11x^4 + 22x^5 + 19x^6 - 20x^7. \end{aligned}$$

Example 2. Add and multiply the following polynomials over the ring $(\mathbb{I}_6, +_6, \times_6)$:

$$f(x) = 2x^0 + 5x + 3x^2, \quad g(x) = 1x^0 + 4x + 2x^3.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution. } f(x)+g(x) &= (2+_61)x^0 + (5+_64)x \\ &\quad + (3+_60)x^2 + (0+_62)x^3 \\ &= 3x^0 + 3x + 3x^2 + 2x^3. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } f(x)g(x) &= (2x^0 + 5x + 3x^2)(1x^0 + 4x + 2x^3) \\ &= (2 \times_6 1)x^0 + [(2 \times_6 4) +_6 (5 \times_6 1)]x + [(5 \times_6 4) +_6 (3 \times_6 1)]x^2 \\ &\quad + [(2 \times_6 2) +_6 (3 \times_6 4)]x^3 + (5 \times_6 2)x^4 + (3 \times_6 2)x^5 \\ &= 2x^0 + (2+_65)x + (2+_63)x^2 + (4+_60)x^3 + 4x^4 + 0x^5 \\ &= 2x^0 + 1x + 5x^2 + 4x^3 + 4x^4. \end{aligned}$$

Note. Here degree of $f(x)=2$, degree of $g(x)=3$ and degree of $f(x)g(x)=4$. The point to note is that degree of $f(x)g(x)$ may be less than the sum of the degrees of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$.

(G.N D.U. 1986)

§ 21. Degree of the sum and the product of two polynomials.

Theorem. Let $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be two non-zero polynomials over an arbitrary ring R . Then

- (i) $\deg [f(x)+g(x)] \leq \max [\deg f(x), \deg g(x)]$,
if $f(x)+g(x) \neq 0$.
- (ii) $\deg [f(x)g(x)] \leq \deg f(x) + \deg g(x)$ if $f(x)g(x) \neq 0$.
(Meerut 76, 78)

Proof. Let $f(x) = a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n$, $a_n \neq 0$ and $g(x) = b_0x^0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_mx^m$, $b_m \neq 0$ be two elements of $R[x]$.

Here $\deg f(x) = n$ and $\deg g(x) = m$.

From our definition of the sum of two polynomials, it is obvious that if $f(x)+g(x) \neq 0$, then

$$\deg [f(x)+g(x)] = \begin{cases} \max(n, m) & \text{if } n \neq m \\ n & \text{if } n = m \text{ and } a_n + b_m \neq 0 \\ < n & \text{if } n = m \text{ and } a_n + b_m = 0. \end{cases}$$

Again $f(x)g(x) = (a_0b_0)x^0 + (a_0b_1 + a_1b_0)x + \dots + a_nb_mx^{n+m}$.

Suppose $f(x)g(x) \neq 0$. Then $f(x)g(x)$ has a unique degree.

If $a_nb_m \neq 0$, then $\deg [f(x)g(x)] = n+m = \deg f(x) + \deg g(x)$.
 Also if $a_nb_m = 0$, then $\deg [f(x)g(x)] < n+m$.

Cor. 1. Important. Suppose D is an integral domain and $f(x), g(x)$ are two non-zero elements of $D[x]$. Then

$$\deg [f(x)g(x)] = \deg f(x) + \deg g(x).$$

Proof. Since $a_n \neq 0, b_m \neq 0$, therefore $a_nb_m \neq 0$ because in an integral domain the product of two non-zero elements cannot be zero. Hence $\deg [f(x)g(x)] = m+n$.

Cor. 2. If F is a field and $f(x), g(x)$ are two non-zero elements of $F[x]$, then $\deg [f(x)g(x)] = \deg f(x) + \deg g(x)$.

(Meerut 1973; Kanpur 80)

Proof. Since a field is also free from zero divisors, therefore $a_nb_m \neq 0$ when $a_n \neq 0$ and $b_m \neq 0$. Hence the result.

§ 22. Ring of Polynomials.

Theorem. The set $R[x]$ of all polynomials over an arbitrary ring R is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication of polynomials.

(Meerut 1973, 80; Sagar 77)

Proof. Let $f(x), g(x) \in R[x]$. Then $f(x)+g(x)$ and $f(x)g(x)$ are also polynomials over R . Therefore $R[x]$ is closed with respect to addition and multiplication of polynomials.

Now let

$f(x) = \sum a_i x^i = a_0 x^0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots, g(x) = b_0 x^0 + b_1 x + b_2 x^2 + \dots,$
 $h(x) = c_0 x^0 + c_1 x + c_2 x^2 + \dots$ be any arbitrary elements of $R[x]$.

Commutativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) + g(x) &= (a_0 + b_0) x^0 + (a_1 + b_1) x + (a_2 + b_2) x^2 + \dots \\ &= (b_0 + a_0) x^0 + (b_1 + a_1) x + (b_2 + a_2) x^2 + \dots = g(x) + f(x). \end{aligned}$$

Associativity of addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [f(x) + g(x)] + h(x) &= \sum (a_i + b_i) x^i + \sum c_i x^i = \sum [(a_i + b_i) + c_i] x^i \\ &= \sum [a_i + (b_i + c_i)] x^i = \sum a_i x^i + \sum (b_i + c_i) x^i = f(x) + [g(x) + h(x)]. \end{aligned}$$

Existence of additive identity. Let $0(x)$ be the zero polynomial over R i.e., $0(x) = 0x^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } f(x) + 0(x) &= (a_0 + 0) x^0 + (a_1 + 0) x + (a_2 + 0) x^2 + \dots \\ &= a_0 x^0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots = f(x). \end{aligned}$$

\therefore the zero polynomial $0(x)$ is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. Let $-f(x)$ be the polynomial over R defined as $-f(x) = (-a_0) x^0 + (-a_1) x + (-a_2) x^2 + \dots$

Then $-f(x) + f(x) = (-a_0 + a_0) x^0 + (-a_1 + a_1) x + (-a_2 + a_2) x^2 + \dots = 0x^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots = 0(x) = \text{the additive identity.}$

\therefore each member of $R[x]$ possesses additive inverse.

Associativity of Multiplication. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x)g(x) &= (a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots)(b_0x^0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots) \\ &= d_0x^0 + d_1x + d_2x^2 + \dots + d_lx^l + \dots, \text{ where } d_l = \sum_{i+j=l} a_ib_j. \end{aligned}$$

Now $[f(x)g(x)]h(x)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (d_0x^0 + d_1x + d_2x^2 + \dots)(c_0x^0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \dots) \\ &= e_0x^0 + e_1x + e_2x^2 + \dots + e_nx^n + \dots, \\ &\quad \text{where } e_n = \text{the coeff. of } x^n \text{ in } [f(x)g(x)]h(x) \\ &= \sum_{l+k=n} d_l c_k = \sum_{l+k=n} \left[\left(\sum_{i+j=l} a_ib_j \right) c_k \right] = \sum_{i+j+k=n} a_ib_jc_k. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we can show that the coeff. of x^n in

$$f(x)[g(x)h(x)] = \sum_{i+j+k=n} a_ib_jc_k.$$

Thus $[f(x)g(x)]h(x) = f(x)[g(x)h(x)]$ since corresponding coefficients in these two polynomials are equal.

Distributivity of multiplication with respect to addition. We have $f(x)[g(x)+h(x)]$

$$= (a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots)[(b_0+c_0)x^0 + (b_1+c_1)x + (b_2+c_2)x^2 + \dots].$$

If n is any non-negative integer, then the coefficient of x^n in $f(x)[g(x)+h(x)]$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \sum_{i+j=n} a_i(b_j+c_j) = \sum_{i+j=n} (a_ib_j + a_ic_j) = \sum_{i+j=n} a_ib_j + \sum_{i+j=n} a_ic_j \\ &= \text{Coeff. of } x^n \text{ in } f(x)g(x) + \text{coeff. of } x^n \text{ in } f(x)h(x) \\ &= \text{Coeff. of } x^n \text{ in } [f(x)g(x) + f(x)h(x)]. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore f(x)[g(x)+h(x)] = f(x)g(x) + f(x)h(x).$$

Similarly we can prove the right distributive law.

Hence $R[x]$ is a ring. This is called the ring of all polynomials over R . The zero element of this ring is the zero polynomial

$$0x^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots$$

§ 23. R as a subset of $R[x]$ or Imbedding of R into $R[x]$.

Theorem. If R is an arbitrary ring and R' is the set of constant polynomials in $R[x]$, then R' is isomorphic to R . (I.A.S. 1974)

Proof. We have $R' = \{ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots \text{ such that } a \in R\}$.

Let $\phi : R \rightarrow R'$ such that

$$\phi(a) = ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots \quad \forall a \in R.$$

ϕ is one-one since

$$\phi(a) = \phi(b) \Rightarrow ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots = bx^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots \Rightarrow a = b.$$

Also ϕ is obviously onto R' .

$$\text{Again } \phi(a+b) = (a+b)x^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots$$

$$= [ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots] + [bx^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots] = \phi(a) + \phi(b).$$

$$\text{Also } \phi(ab) = abx^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots$$

$$= (ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots)(bx^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots) = \phi(a)\phi(b).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is an isomorphism of R onto R' . Hence $R \cong R'$.

Since R is isomorphic to R' , therefore in $R[x]$ we can identify R' by R i.e., all the constant polynomials in $R[x]$ can be replaced by the corresponding elements of R . This replacement will not affect the addition and multiplication of polynomials.

Hence in future we shall write 0 in place of the zero polynomial. If $ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots$ is any constant polynomial in $R[x]$, then we shall simply write a in place of this polynomial.

Also in place of $a_0x^0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots$ we shall write $a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots$. If we are to multiply $f(x)$ by a constant polynomial $ax^0 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots$, then we shall write $af(x)$ in place of $(ax^0 + 0x + \dots)f(x)$.

§ 24. Polynomials over an integral domain.

Theorem. *If D is an integral domain, then the polynomial ring $D[x]$ is also an integral domain.*

(I.A.S. 1974; Rajasthan 74; Allahabad 80; Kanpur 88; Marathwada 72; Meerut 84, 88, 89)

Proof. Let D be a commutative ring without zero divisors and with unity element 1. As proved in § 22, $D[x]$ is also a ring. To prove that $D[x]$ is an integral domain, we should prove that (i) $D[x]$ is commutative, (ii) is without zero divisors and (iii) possesses the unity element.

$D[x]$ is commutative. Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots$ and $g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots$ be any two elements of $D[x]$.

If n is any non-negative integer, then the coefficient of x^n in $f(x)g(x)$ is $\sum_{i+j=n} a_ib_j = \sum_{i+j=n} b_ja_i$, since D is commutative

$$= \text{Coefficient of } x^n \text{ in } g(x)f(x).$$

$\therefore f(x)g(x) = g(x)f(x)$. Hence $D[x]$ is a commutative ring.

If 1 is the unity element of D , then the constant polynomial $1 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots$ is the unity element of $D[x]$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots][1 + 0x + 0x^2 + 0x^3 + \dots] \\ = (a_0 \cdot 1) + (a_1 \cdot 1)x + (a_2 \cdot 1)x^2 + \dots = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

\therefore the polynomial $1 + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots$ or simply 1 is the unity element of $D[x]$.

$D[x]$ is without zero divisors. Let

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_mx^m, a_m \neq 0$$

$$g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_nx^n, b_n \neq 0$$

be two non-zero elements of $D[x]$.

Then $f(x)g(x)$ cannot be a zero polynomial i.e., the zero element of $D[x]$. The reason is that at least one coefficient of $f(x)g(x)$ namely a_mb_n of x^{m+n} is $\neq 0$ because a_m, b_n are non-zero elements of D and D is without zero divisors.

Hence $D[x]$ is an integral domain.

Theorem 2. *If R is an integral domain with unity element, then any unit in $R[x]$ must already be a unit in R .*

Proof. If R is an integral domain with unity element 1, then $R[x]$ is also an integral domain with unity element. Further the constant polynomial 1 is the unity element of $R[x]$. Let $f(x)$ be a unit in $R[x]$, i.e., let $f(x)$ be an invertible element of $R[x]$. Let $g(x)$ be the inverse of $f(x)$ in $R[x]$. Then

$$f(x)g(x) = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \deg[f(x)g(x)] = 0 \quad [\because \text{degree of the constant polynomial } 1 \text{ is } 0]$$

$$\Rightarrow \deg f(x) + \deg g(x) = 0 \Rightarrow \deg f(x) = 0, \deg g(x) = 0.$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{both } f(x) \text{ and } g(x) \text{ are constant polynomials in } R[x].$$

Let $f(x) = a \in R$ and $g(x) = b \in R$. Then $ab = 1 \Rightarrow a$ is a unit in R . Thus any unit in $R[x]$ must already be a unit in R .

Note. If $a \in R$ is a unit in R , then $a \in R[x]$ is also a unit in $R[x]$. If b is the inverse of a in R , then the constant polynomial b is the inverse of a in $R[x]$.

§ 25. Polynomials over a field.

Theorem 1. *If F is a field, then the set $F[x]$ of all polynomials over F is an integral domain.*

(Kanpur 1986; Bombay 70; Allahabad 66; Meerut 69)

Proof. Every field is an integral domain. So give the same proof as we have given in § 22 and then in § 24.

We shall call the set $F[x]$ as the polynomial domain over the field F .

Theorem 2. *The polynomial domain $F[x]$ over a field F is not a field.* (Allahabad 1985)

Proof. In order to show that $F[x]$ is not a field, we should show that there exists a non-zero element of $F[x]$ which has no multiplicative inverse. Let $f(x)$ be any element of $F[x]$ such that $\deg f(x)$ is greater than zero. The inverse of $f(x)$ cannot be the zero polynomial because the product of $f(x)$ and the zero poly-

mial will be equal to the zero polynomial and not equal to the unity element of $F[x]$ which is the polynomial $1+0x+0x^2+\dots$. Suppose now $g(x)$ is any non-zero polynomial. Then F being a field, we have

$$\deg [f(x)g(x)] = \deg f(x) + \deg g(x) > 0 \text{ because } \deg f(x) > 0 \text{ and } \deg g(x) \geq 0.$$

The degree of the unity element of $F[x]$ is 0. Hence $f(x)g(x)$ cannot be equal to the unity element of $F[x]$. Thus $f(x)$ does not possess multiplicative inverse.

$\therefore F[x]$ is not a field.

Important. The only inversible elements of $F[x]$ are constant polynomials excluding the zero polynomial. No member of $F[x]$ whose degree is greater than 0 is inversible.

§ 26. Ring of polynomials in n variables over an integral domain.

Definition. Let R be an integral domain. Then the ring of polynomials in the n -variables x_1, \dots, x_n over R is denoted by $R[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ and is defined as follows :

Let $R_1 = R[x_1]$, the polynomial ring in x_1 over R ,
 $R_2 = R_1[x_2]$, the polynomial ring in x_2 over R_1 ,
 $R_3 = R_2[x_3]$, the polynomial ring in x_3 over R_2 ,

... ..

$R_n = R_{n-1}[x_n]$, the polynomial ring in x_n over R_{n-1} .

Then R_n is called the ring of polynomials in x_1, \dots, x_n over R and we write $R_n = R[x_1, \dots, x_n]$.

Theorem 1. If R is an integral domain, then so is $R[x_1, \dots, x_n]$.

Proof. If R is an integral domain then $R_1 = R[x_1]$ is also an integral domain. Now R_1 is an integral domain implies that $R_2 = R_1[x_2] = R[x_1, x_2]$ is also an integral domain. Continuing this process a finite number of times we see that $R[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ is an integral domain.

Theorem 2. If F is a field, then $F[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ is an integral domain.

Proof. If F is a field, then $F_1 = F[x_1]$ is an integral domain.

Now F_1 is an integral domain implies that $F_2 = F_1[x_2] = F[x_1, x_2]$ is also an integral domain. Continuing this process a finite number of times we see that $F[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ is an integral domain.

Note. If F is a field, then $F[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ is an integral domain.

Now we can construct the field of quotients of the integral domain $F[x_1, \dots, x_n]$. This field is called *the field of rational functions in x_1, \dots, x_n over F* and is denoted by $F(x_1, \dots, x_n)$.

§ 27. Divisibility of Polynomials over a field.

Suppose F is a field. Then $F[x]$ is an integral domain. If $a(x) \neq 0$ and $f(x)$ are elements of $F[x]$, then $a(x)$ is a *divisor* (or *factor*) of $f(x)$ if and only if there is a polynomial $b(x)$ in $F[x]$ such that $f(x) = a(x)b(x)$. Symbolically we write $a(x) \mid f(x)$.

A unit is an element of $F[x]$ which has multiplicative inverse. All the polynomials of zero degree belonging to $F[x]$ are units of $F[x]$. Thus the non-zero elements of F are the only units of $F[x]$.

If $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are polynomials in $F[x]$, then we call $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ *associates* if $f(x) = c g(x)$ for some $0 \neq c \in F$. It can be easily proved that two non-zero polynomials $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ in $F[x]$ are associates if and only if $f(x) \mid g(x)$ and $g(x) \mid f(x)$.

If $f(x)$ is any non-zero polynomial in $F[x]$, then $f(x)$ is always divisible by its associates and by all units of $F[x]$. These divisors of $f(x)$ are called its *improper divisors*. All other divisors of $f(x)$, if there are any, are called its *proper divisors*.

Definition of an irreducible polynomial over a field. Let F be a field and $f(x)$ be a non-zero and non-unit polynomial in $F[x]$ i.e., $f(x)$ be a polynomial of positive degree. Then $f(x)$ is said to be *irreducible over F* (or *prime*) if it has no proper divisors in $F[x]$; $f(x)$ is *reducible over F* if it has a proper divisor in $F[x]$.

(Meerut 1983P)

Thus a positive degree polynomial $f(x)$ in $F[x]$ is irreducible over F if whenever $f(x) = a(x)b(x)$ with $a(x), b(x) \in F[x]$ then one of $a(x)$ or $b(x)$ is a unit in $F[x]$ i.e., has degree 0. Also $f(x)$ is reducible over F if and only if we can find two polynomials $a(x)$ and $b(x)$ in $F[x]$ such that $f(x) = a(x)b(x)$ and none of $a(x)$ and $b(x)$ is a unit in $F[x]$ i.e., has degree 0.

Irreducibility depends on the field. The polynomial $x^2 - 2$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers while it is reducible over the field of real numbers, since $x^2 - 2 = (x + \sqrt{2})(x - \sqrt{2})$.

The polynomial $x^2 + 1$ is irreducible over the field of real numbers while it is reducible over the field of complex numbers since $x^2 + 1 = (x + i)(x - i)$.

Monic polynomials. Definition.

Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n$, with $a_n \neq 0$, be a polynomial in

$F[x]$ over an arbitrary field F . If the leading coefficient a_n of $f(x)$ is equal to 1, the unity element of F then the polynomial $f(x)$ will be called monic.

The polynomial $2x-3x^3$ over the field of real numbers is not monic since its leading coefficient is -3 . But the polynomial x^3-3x+4 over the field of real numbers is monic since its leading coefficient is 1.

Greatest common divisor of two polynomials over a field.

Definition. Suppose F is any field. Let $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be two elements of $F[x]$. A greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is a non-zero polynomial $d(x)$ such that

(i) $d(x) \mid f(x)$ and $d(x) \mid g(x)$

(ii) If $c(x)$ is a polynomial such that $c(x) \mid f(x)$ and $c(x) \mid g(x)$ then $c(x) \mid d(x)$.

Relatively prime polynomials. Two polynomials $f(x)$ and $g(x) \in F[x]$ are said to be relatively prime if their greatest common divisor is 1, the unity element of F .

§ 28. Division Algorithm for polynomials over a field.

Theorem. Let $f(x), g(x) \neq 0$ be any two polynomials of the polynomial domain $F[x]$, over the field F . Then there exist uniquely two polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ in $F[x]$ such that

$$f(x) = q(x)g(x) + r(x)$$

where either $r(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$.

(Allahabad 1985; Jabalpur 86; Meerut 87; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87)

Proof. Suppose

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_mx^m, \quad a_m \neq 0$$

$$\text{and } g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_nx^n, \quad b_n \neq 0.$$

If degree m of $f(x)$ is smaller than the degree n of $g(x)$ or if $f(x) = 0$, then we are nothing to prove. Because we can always write $f(x) = 0 \cdot g(x) + f(x)$. So in this case $q(x) = 0$, $r(x) = f(x)$ and we have either $f(x) = 0$ or $\deg f(x) < \deg g(x)$.

Now let us assume that $m \geq n$. In this case we shall prove the theorem by induction on m i.e., degree of $f(x)$.

If $m = 0$, then $m \geq n \Rightarrow n = 0$. Therefore $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are both non-zero constant polynomials, $f(x) = a_0$, $a_0 \neq 0$, and $g(x) = b_0$, $b_0 \neq 0$. We have in this case

$$f(x) = a_0 = (a_0b_0^{-1})b_0 + 0 = (a_0b_0^{-1})g(x) + 0.$$

Thus the theorem is true when $m = 0$ or when the degree of $f(x)$ is less than 1.

We shall now assume that the theorem is true when $f(x)$ is a polynomial of degree less than m and then we shall show that it is also true if $f(x)$ is of degree m and then the proof will be complete by induction.

$$\text{Let } f_1(x) = f(x) - (a_m b_n^{-1}) x^{m-n} g(x) \quad \dots (1)$$

Obviously $\deg f_1(x) < m$. Therefore by our assumed hypothesis, there exist polynomials $s(x)$ and $r(x)$ such that

$$f_1(x) = s(x) g(x) + r(x),$$

where $r(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$.

Now putting the value of $f_1(x)$ in (1), we get

$$s(x) g(x) + r(x) = f(x) - (a_m b_n^{-1}) x^{m-n} g(x)$$

$$\text{or } f(x) = [(a_m b_n^{-1}) x^{m-n} + s(x)] g(x) + r(x).$$

If we write $q(x)$ in place of $(a_m b_n^{-1}) x^{m-n} + s(x)$, we get

$$f(x) = q(x) g(x) + r(x)$$

where $s(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$.

This proves the existence of polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$. Now to show that $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ are unique. Let us assume that

$$f(x) = q_1(x) g(x) + r_1(x) = q_2(x) g(x) + r_2(x).$$

$$\text{Then } q_1(x) g(x) + r_1(x) = q_2(x) g(x) + r_2(x)$$

$$\text{or } [q_1(x) - q_2(x)] g(x) = r_2(x) - r_1(x). \quad \dots (2)$$

If $[q_1(x) - q_2(x)] \neq 0$, then $[q_1(x) - q_2(x)] g(x)$ cannot be equal to the zero polynomial because $g(x) \neq 0$ and $F[x]$ is without zero divisors. Also then the degree of $[q_1(x) - q_2(x)] g(x)$ is at least n , the degree of $g(x)$. But $r_2(x) - r_1(x)$ is either equal to the zero polynomial or else its degree is less than n because the degrees of $r_2(x)$ and $r_1(x)$ are both less than n . Hence the equality (2) among two polynomials holds only if

$$q_1(x) - q_2(x) = 0 \text{ and } r_2(x) - r_1(x) = 0$$

i.e., only if $q_1(x) = q_2(x)$ and $r_1(x) = r_2(x)$.

\therefore the polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ are unique.

Definition. In the division algorithm, the polynomial $q(x)$ is called the quotient on dividing $f(x)$ by $g(x)$ and the polynomial $r(x)$ is called the remainder.

Theorem. A polynomial domain $F[x]$ over a field F is a principal ideal ring.

(Vikram 1976; Lucknow 70; Madras 78;

I.C.S. 87; Kanpur 71; Kumayun 77; Meerut 79, 81)

Proof. Obviously $F[x]$ is a commutative ring with unity and without zero divisors. Therefore $F[x]$ is a principal ideal ring if every ideal in $F[x]$ is a principal ideal.

Let S be an arbitrary ideal of $F[x]$. If S is the null ideal, then $S=(0)$ i.e., the ideal of $F[x]$ generated by 0. Therefore S is a principal ideal. So let us suppose that S is not a null ideal. Then there exist non-zero polynomials $f(x)$ in S . Let $g(x)$ be a polynomial of lowest degree m belonging to S . We shall show that S is the principal ideal generated by $g(x)$.

Let $f(x)$ be any arbitrary member of S . By division algorithm there exist two polynomials $q(x) \in F[x]$, $r(x) \in F[x]$, such that $f(x)=q(x)g(x)+r(x)$, where $r(x)=0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$.

Since S is an ideal, therefore

$$q(x) \in F[x], g(x) \in S \Rightarrow q(x)g(x) \in S.$$

Also $f(x) \in S$, $q(x)g(x) \in S \Rightarrow f(x)-q(x)g(x) \in S$.

But $f(x)-q(x)g(x)=r(x)$. Therefore $r(x) \in S$.

Now either $r(x)=0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$. But we have assumed that $g(x)$ is a polynomial of lowest degree belonging to S . Hence $\deg r(x)$ cannot be less than $\deg g(x)$. Therefore we must have $r(x)=0$. Then $f(x)=q(x)g(x)$. Thus $g(x) \in S$ is such that $f(x) \in S \Rightarrow f(x)=q(x)g(x)$ for some $q(x) \in F[x]$. Therefore S is a principal ideal of $F[x]$ generated by $g(x)$. Hence $F[x]$ is a principal ideal ring.

Important. A polynomial ring over an arbitrary field is a principal ideal ring. But a polynomial ring over an arbitrary ring is not a principal ideal ring as is obvious from the following example.

Example. Show that the polynomial ring $\mathbb{I}[x]$ over the ring of integers is not a principal ideal ring.

(Meerut 1976; Andhra 75; Madurai 88)

Solution. To prove this statement we shall show that the ideal $(2, x)$ of the ring $\mathbb{I}[x]$ generated by two elements 2 and x of $\mathbb{I}[x]$ is not a principal ideal. Let $(2, x)$ be a principal ideal in $\mathbb{I}[x]$. Then there will exist a non-zero element $g(x) \in \mathbb{I}[x]$ such that $(2, x)=(g(x))$.

Since $2 \in (g(x))$ and $x \in (g(x))$ therefore there will exist elements $\phi(x)$ and $\psi(x)$ belonging to $\mathbb{I}[x]$ such that

$$2 = \phi(x)g(x), \quad \dots(1)$$

$$x = \psi(x)g(x). \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1), we get $2x = [\phi(x)g(x)]x$ and from (2), we get

$$2x = 2\psi(x)g(x).$$

$\therefore 2\psi(x)g(x) = x\phi(x)g(x)$ [$\because \mathbb{I}[x]$ is a commutative ring].

$\therefore 2\psi(x) = x\phi(x)$ since $g(x) \neq 0$, and $\mathbb{I}[x]$ is without zero divisors.

Now $2\phi(x)=x\phi(x)$ implies that the coefficients of $\phi(x)$ must all be even integers. Therefore $\phi(x)=2h(x)$ where $h(x)$ is some polynomial in $I[x]$. Putting this value of $\phi(x)$ in (1) we get

$$2=2h(x)g(x)$$

or
$$1=h(x)g(x).$$

Now $1=h(x)g(x) \Rightarrow 1 \in (g(x))$. Therefore each element of $I[x]$ will belong to $(g(x))$. Thus we have $I[x]=(g(x))=(2, x)$. Therefore each element of $I[x]$ will belong to $(2, x)$. We shall show that $1 \notin (2, x)$ and this contradiction will mean that $(2, x)$ is not a principal ideal in $I[x]$.

Now $1 \in (2, x) \Rightarrow$ we can write

$$1=2p(x)+xq(x)$$

where $p(x)$ and $q(x)$ are some elements in $I[x]$.

Let $p(x)=a_0+a_1x+a_2x^2+\dots$ and $q(x)=b_0+b_1x+b_2x^2+\dots$

Then $1=2(a_0+a_1x+a_2x^2+\dots)+x(b_0+b_1x+b_2x^2+\dots)$

or
$$1=2a_0+(2a_1+b_0)x+(2a_2+b_1)x^2+\dots$$

This equality implies $1=2a_0$ where $a_0 \in I$.

But for no integer a_0 we can have $1=2a_0$. Hence $1 \notin (2, x)$.

$\therefore (2, x)$ is not a principal ideal in $I[x]$.

§ 29. Euclidean Algorithm for polynomials over a field.

Theorem. Let F be a field and $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be any two polynomials in $F[x]$, not both of which are zero. Then $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have a greatest common divisor $d(x)$ which can be expressed in the form

$$d(x)=m(x)f(x)+n(x)g(x)$$

for polynomials $m(x)$ and $n(x)$ in $F[x]$.

(Meerut 1976)

Proof. Consider the set

$$S=\{s(x)f(x)+t(x)g(x) : s(x), t(x) \in F[x]\}. \quad \dots(1)$$

We claim that S is an ideal of $F[x]$. The proof is as follows :

Let $s_1(x)f(x)+t_1(x)g(x)$ and $s_2(x)f(x)+t_2(x)g(x)$ be any two elements of S .

$$\text{Then } [s_1(x)f(x)+t_1(x)g(x)] - [s_2(x)f(x)+t_2(x)g(x)]$$

$$=[s_1(x)-s_2(x)]f(x)+[t_1(x)-t_2(x)]g(x) \in S$$

since $s_1(x)-s_2(x)$ and $t_1(x)-t_2(x)$ are both members of $F[x]$.

Also if $\alpha(x)$ be any member of $F[x]$, then

$$\alpha(x)[s_1(x)f(x)+t_1(x)g(x)]$$

$$=[\alpha(x)s_1(x)]f(x)+[\alpha(x)t_1(x)]g(x) \in S.$$

Therefore S is an ideal of $F[x]$. Now every ideal in $F[x]$ is a

principal ideal. Therefore there exists an element $d(x)$ in S such that every element in S is a multiple of $d(x)$.

Since $d(x) \in S$, therefore from (1) we see that there exist elements $m(x), n(x) \in F[x]$ such that

$$d(x) = m(x)f(x) + n(x)g(x).$$

Now $F[x]$ is a ring with unity element 1.

\therefore Putting $s(x)=1, t(x)=0$ in (1), we see that $f(x) \in S$. Also putting $s(x)=0, t(x)=1$ in (1), we see that $g(x) \in S$.

Now $f(x), g(x)$ are elements of S . Therefore they are both multiples of $d(x)$. Hence $d(x) \mid f(x)$ and $d(x) \mid g(x)$.

Now suppose $c(x) \mid f(x)$ and $c(x) \mid g(x)$.

Then $c(x) \mid [m(x)f(x)]$ and $c(x) \mid [n(x)g(x)]$. Therefore $c(x)$ is also a divisor of $m(x)f(x) + n(x)g(x)$ i.e., $c(x)$ is a divisor of $d(x)$.

Thus $d(x)$ is a greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$.

Note. If $d(x)$ is a greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ then any associate of $d(x)$ i.e., $kd(x)$ where $0 \neq k \in F$ will also be a greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$. In particular if $0 \neq b$ is the leading coefficient of the polynomial $d(x)$, then the monic polynomial $b^{-1}d(x)$ will also be a greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$. Often while defining greatest common divisor of two polynomials over a field we include one more condition in our definition that the greatest common divisor should be a monic polynomial. The advantage of this extra condition is that now we shall get a unique greatest common divisor as shown below :

Suppose $d_1(x)$ and $d_2(x)$ are two monic polynomials and each is a greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$. Then $d_1(x) \mid d_2(x)$ and $d_2(x) \mid d_1(x)$. Therefore $d_1(x)$ and $d_2(x)$ are associates and we have $d_1(x) = ud_2(x)$ for some $0 \neq u \in F$. Since $d_1(x)$ and $d_2(x)$ are both monic, therefore $u=1$.

§ 30. Unique Factorization Domain. Definition. An integral domain, R , with unity element 1 is a unique factorization domain if

(a) any non-zero element in R is either a unit or can be written as the product of a finite number of irreducible (prime) elements of R ;

(b) the decomposition in part (a) is unique upto the order and associates of the irreducible elements.

(Punjab 1968; Madurai 78; Banaras 64; Meerut 70)

Thus if R is a unique factorization domain and if $a \neq 0$ is a non-unit in R , then a can be expressed as a product of a finite number of prime elements of R . Also if

$$a = p_1 p_2 p_3 \dots p_n = p_1' p_2' p_3' \dots p_m'$$

where the p_i and p_j' are prime elements of R , then $m=n$ and each p_i , $1 \leq i \leq n$ is an associate of some p_j' , $1 \leq j \leq m$ and conversely each p_k' is an associate of some p_i .

§ 31. The unique Factorization Theorem for polynomials over a Field. We shall now prove that every polynomial over a field can be factored uniquely into irreducible factors. Before stating the main factorization theorem, we shall give two preliminary theorems that are needed for its proof.

Theorem 1. Let $f(x)$, $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ be polynomials in $F[x]$ for a field F . If $f(x) \mid g(x)h(x)$ and the greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is 1, then $f(x) \mid h(x)$.

Proof. If the greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is 1, then by theorem of § 29 there exist polynomials $m(x)$ and $n(x) \in F[x]$ such that $1 = m(x)f(x) + n(x)g(x)$. Multiplying both members of this equation by $h(x)$, we get

$$h(x) = m(x)f(x)h(x) + n(x)g(x)h(x). \quad \dots(1)$$

But $f(x) \mid g(x)h(x)$, so there exists a polynomial $q(x) \in F[x]$ such that $g(x)h(x) = q(x)f(x)$.

Substituting this value of $g(x)h(x)$ in (1), we get

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= m(x)f(x)h(x) + n(x)q(x)f(x) \\ &= f(x)[m(x)h(x) + n(x)q(x)], \end{aligned}$$

which shows that $f(x)$ is a divisor of $h(x)$.

Hence the theorem.

Theorem 2. If $f(x)$ is an irreducible polynomial in $F[x]$ for a field F and $f(x) \mid g(x)h(x)$ where $g(x), h(x) \in F[x]$ then $f(x)$ divides at least one of $g(x)$ or $h(x)$. (Allahabad 1967)

Proof. Suppose that $f(x)$ does not divide $g(x)$. Since $f(x)$ is prime therefore $f(x)$ does not divide $g(x)$ implies that $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are relatively prime. Therefore the greatest common divisor of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is 1. Hence by theorem 1, we get that $f(x) \mid h(x)$.

Corollary. If $f(x)$ is an irreducible polynomial in $F[x]$ for a field F , and if $f(x)$ divides the product $g_1(x)g_2(x)\dots g_n(x)$ of polynomials in $F[x]$, then $f(x)$ divides $g_i(x)$ for some i , $1 \leq i \leq n$.

This result follows immediately by repeated application of theorem 2.

The Unique Factorization Theorem for polynomials over a field. Let $f(x)$ be a non-zero polynomial in $F[x]$, where F is a field. Then either $f(x)$ is a unit in $F[x]$ or $f(x) = ap_1(x)p_2(x)\dots p_m(x)$, where each $p_i(x)$, $1 \leq i \leq m$, is an irreducible monic polynomial in $F[x]$ and $a \in F$ is the leading coefficient of $f(x)$. Further the factors $p_1(x), p_2(x), \dots, p_m(x)$ are unique except for the order in which they appear. (Meerut 1989, 91)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem in two parts. First we shall prove that $f(x)$ can be factored as required, and then we shall show that the factors are unique.

Let $f(x)$ be a non-zero element of $F[x]$. Then either $f(x)$ is a unit in $F[x]$ i.e., $\deg f(x)$ is 0 or $\deg f(x) > 0$. If $\deg f(x) > 0$, and the leading coefficient of $f(x)$ is a we are to prove that $f(x)$ can be expressed as a product of a and a finite number of irreducible monic polynomials in $F[x]$. The proof will be by induction on the degree of $f(x)$.

Suppose $f(x)$ is of degree one. Let $f(x) = b + ax$ for $a, b \in F$ and $a \neq 0$. We can write $f(x) = a(a^{-1}b + x)$. Therefore the theorem holds in the case where $f(x)$ has degree one since $a^{-1}b + x$ is irreducible and monic.

Now assume, as the induction hypothesis, that every polynomial of degree less than n can be factored as stated in the theorem. Consider an arbitrary polynomial $f(x)$ of degree n having a as its leading coefficient. We can write $f(x) = af_1(x)$, where $f_1(x) = a^{-1}f(x)$ and $f_1(x)$ is monic. If $f(x)$ is irreducible, then $f_1(x)$ is also irreducible and the theorem holds. If $f(x)$ is reducible, then it can be factored as $f(x) = g(x)h(x)$ where neither $g(x)$ nor $h(x)$ is a unit in $F[x]$. Now the degree of $f(x)$ is equal to the sum of the degrees of $g(x)$ and $h(x)$. Also $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ are not units in $F[x]$, so each of them must be of degree one or larger. Hence both $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ have degrees less than n . Therefore by our induction hypothesis we can write

$$g(x) = c\alpha_1(x)\alpha_2(x)\dots\alpha_s(x), \quad h(x) = d\beta_1(x)\beta_2(x)\dots\beta_t(x)$$

where each $\alpha_i(x)$ and each $\beta_j(x)$ is monic and irreducible and where c and d are leading coefficients of $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ respectively. Thus

$$f(x) = cd\alpha_1(x)\alpha_2(x)\alpha_3(x)\dots\alpha_s(x)\beta_1(x)\beta_2(x)\dots\beta_t(x).$$

Since the leading coefficient of $f(x)$ is a , therefore we must have $a = cd$ because each $\alpha(x)$ and each $\beta(x)$ is monic. Therefore

$$f(x) = a\alpha_1(x)\alpha_2(x)\dots\alpha_r(x)\beta_1(x)\beta_2(x)\dots\beta_t(x).$$

The factorization of $f(x)$ satisfies the requirements of the theorem. Hence the theorem holds for all polynomials of degree n , and by the principle of induction, for all polynomials of arbitrary degree.

In order to prove that the factors are unique, let us suppose that $f(x) = ap_1(x)p_2(x)\dots p_m(x) = aq_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_n(x)$ where each $p(x)$ and each $q(x)$ is irreducible and monic. Then we shall prove that $n=m$ and each $p(x)$ is equal to some $q(x)$ and each $q(x)$ is equal to some $p(x)$. From these two decompositions of $f(x)$, we have

$$p_1(x)p_2(x)\dots p_m(x) = q_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_n(x).$$

Now $p_1(x) \mid p_1(x)p_2(x)\dots p_m(x)$. Therefore

$$p_1(x) \mid q_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_n(x).$$

By Cor. to theorem 2 of this article $p_1(x)$ must divide at least one of $q_1(x), q_2(x), \dots, q_n(x)$. Since $F[x]$ is a commutative ring, therefore without loss of generality we may suppose that $p_1(x)$ divides $q_1(x)$. But $p_1(x)$ and $q_1(x)$ are both irreducible polynomials in $F[x]$ and $p_1(x) \mid q_1(x)$. Therefore $p_1(x)$ and $q_1(x)$ must be associates and we have $q_1(x) = up_1(x)$ where u is a unit in $F[x]$ i.e., u is a non-zero element of F . Since $q_1(x)$ and $p_1(x)$ are monic therefore u must be equal to 1 and we have $p_1(x) = q_1(x)$. Thus we have

$$p_1(x)p_2(x)\dots p_m(x) = p_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_n(x).$$

Cancelling $0 \neq p_1(x)$ from both sides, we get

$$p_2(x)p_3(x)\dots p_m(x) = q_2(x)q_3(x)\dots q_n(x). \quad \dots(1)$$

Now we can repeat the above argument on the relation (1) with $p_2(x)$. If $n > m$, then after m steps the left hand side becomes 1 while the right hand side reduces to a product of a certain number of $q(x)$ (the excess of n over m). But the $q(x)$ are irreducible polynomials so they are not units of $F[x]$ i.e., they are not polynomials of zero degree.

So their product will be a polynomial of degree ≥ 1 . So it cannot be equal to 1. Therefore n cannot be greater than m . Then $n \leq m$. Similarly interchanging the roles of $p(x)$ and $q(x)$, we get $m \leq n$. Hence $m=n$.

Also in the above process we have shown that every $p(x)$ is equal to some $q(x)$ and conversely every $q(x)$ is equal to some $p(x)$. Hence the theorem has been completely established.

Thus we can say that the ring of polynomials over a field is a unique factorization domain.

§ 32. Value of a polynomial at $x=c$.

Definition. Let $f(x)=a_0+a_1x+a_2x^2+\dots+a_nx^n$ be a polynomial in $F[x]$ for an arbitrary field F and let c be an element of F . Then $f(c)=a_0+a_1c+a_2c^2+\dots+a_nc^n$, where the indicated addition and multiplication are the operations in F , is called the value of $f(x)$ at $x=c$. Obviously $f(c)$ is an element of F .

Zeros of a polynomial. Definition. If $f(x)$ is a polynomial in $F[x]$ for an arbitrary field F , and $f(c)=0$ for an element $c \in F$, then c is called a zero of $f(x)$.

Polynomial equations and their roots. Definition. Let $f(x)$ be a polynomial of degree n over a field F . We say that $f(x)=0$ is an equation over the field F and n is the degree of the equation.

If c is a zero of the polynomial $f(x)$, then c is a root of the equation $f(x)=0$. A root of an equation is also called a solution of the equation.

Remainder Theorem. If $f(x) \in F[x]$ and $a \in F$, for any field F , then $f(a)$ is the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x-a)$.

(Allahabad 1983)

Proof. By division algorithm there exist polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ such that $f(x)=q(x)(x-a)+r(x)$, where either $r(x)=0$ or $\deg r(x)$ is less than the degree of $x-a$. But the degree of $(x-a)$ is 1. Therefore $r(x)$ has degree 0 or no degree. Hence $r(x)$ is a constant polynomial i.e., $r(x)$ is simply an element, say, r in F . Thus $f(x)=q(x)(x-a)+r$. Putting $x=a$ in this relation, we get $f(a)=q(a)(a-a)+r \Rightarrow f(a)=r$.

Cor. Factor Theorem. If $f(x) \in F[x]$ and $a \in F$, for a field F , then $x-a$ divides $f(x)$ if and only if $f(a)=0$.

(Meerut 1984 P, 88, 89, 91; Allahabad 85)

Proof. By remainder theorem, $f(a)$ is the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $(x-a)$. Therefore if $f(a)=0$, then $(x-a)$ divides $f(x)$.

Conversely, if $f(x)$ is divisible by $(x-a)$ we get

$$f(x)=(x-a)q(x).$$

Putting $x=a$, we get $f(a)=(a-a)q(a)=0 \cdot q(a)=0$.

Example. Show that the polynomial x^2+x+4 is irreducible over F , the field of integers modulo 11.

(Meerut 1982, 83P, 84P, 88)

Solution. The field F is $(\{0, 1, \dots, 10\}, +_{11}, \times_{11})$.

Let $f(x)=x^2+x+4$.

If $a \in F$, then by a^n we shall mean $a \times_{11} a \times_{11} a \times_{11} a \dots$ upto n times.

Now $f(0) = 0^2 +_{11} 0 +_{11} 4 = 4$, $f(1) = 1^2 +_{11} 1 +_{11} 4 = 6$,
 $f(2) = 2^2 +_{11} 2 +_{11} 4 = 10$, $f(3) = 3^2 +_{11} 3 +_{11} 4 = 5$, $f(4) = 2$,
 $f(5) = 1$, $f(6) = 6^2 +_{11} 6 +_{11} 4 = 2$, $f(7) = 5$, $f(8) = 10$, $f(9) = 6$,
 $f(10) = 4$.

Since $f(a) \neq 0 \forall a \in F$, therefore by factor theorem $x-a$ does not divide $f(x) \forall a \in F$. Therefore $f(x)$ has no proper divisors in $F[x]$. Hence $f(x)$ is irreducible over F .

§ 33. Prime fields. Definition. A field is said to be prime if it has no subfield other than itself.

(Andhra 1977; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Delhi 70; Meerut 80, 81)

The field of rational numbers is a prime field while the field of real numbers is not a prime field. The field I_p is prime for each prime integer p .
 (Andhra 1977)

Theorem 1. Show that every prime field of characteristic 0 is isomorphic to the field of rational numbers.

(Nagarjuna 1980; Kurukshetra 70; Meerut 81; Andhra 77)

Proof. Let F be a prime field of characteristic 0. For the sake of convenience let us denote the unity element (multiplicative identity) of F by e . Since F is of characteristic 0, therefore for any integer n , we have $ne = 0$ (zero element of F) if and only if $n = 0$.

Here ne is an integral multiple of the element e of F . [For the def. of integral multiple see § 3 page 256 of this chapter on rings]. We have $ne \in F$. Consider a subset F' of F defined as

$$F' = \{me/ne : m, n \in \text{the set of integers } I \text{ with } n \neq 0\}.$$

Since $n \neq 0 \Rightarrow ne \neq 0$, therefore ne is an inversible element of F . So $me/ne = (me)(ne)^{-1}$ is definitely an element of F . We claim that F' is a subfield of F .

Let $\frac{m_1e}{n_1e}, \frac{m_2e}{n_2e}$ be any two elements of F' . Here $m_1, n_1, m_2,$

$n_2 \in I$ with $n_1 \neq 0$ and $n_2 \neq 0$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{m_1e}{n_1e} - \frac{m_2e}{n_2e} &= \frac{(m_1e)(n_2e) - (n_1e)m_2e}{(n_1e)(n_2e)} = \frac{(m_1n_2)e^2 - (n_1m_2)e^2}{(n_1n_2)e^2} \\ &= \frac{(m_1n_2)e - (n_1m_2)e}{(n_1n_2)e} [\because e^2 = e] \\ &= \frac{(m_1n_2 - n_1m_2)e}{(n_1n_2)e} \in F' \text{ since } 0 \neq n_1n_2 \in I. \end{aligned}$$

Again let $\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e}$ be any element of F' and $\frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}$ be any non-zero element of F' . Then $m_1, n_1 \in I$ with $n_1 \neq 0$. Also $m_2, n_2 \in I$ with $m_2 \neq 0, n_2 \neq 0$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e} \left(\frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e} \right)^{-1} &= \frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e} \frac{n_2 e}{m_2 e} = \frac{(m_1 e)(n_2 e)}{(n_1 e)(m_2 e)} = \frac{(m_1 n_2) e^2}{(n_1 m_2) e^2} \\ &= \frac{(m_1 n_2) e}{(n_1 m_2) e} \in F' \text{ since } 0 \neq n_1 m_2 \in I. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore F' is a subfield of F . But F can have no proper subfield because F is a prime field. Therefore we must have $F' = F$.

Thus $F = \{me/ne : m, n \in I \text{ with } n \neq 0\}$. If Q is the field of rational numbers, then $Q = \{m/n : m, n \in I \text{ with } n \neq 0\}$.

Let f be a mapping from F into Q defined as

$$f(me/ne) = m/n \quad \forall m, n \in I \text{ with } n \neq 0.$$

f is well-defined. We have $\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e} = \frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}$

$$\Rightarrow (m_1 e)(n_2 e) = (n_1 e)(m_2 e) \Rightarrow (m_1 n_2) e^2 = (n_1 m_2) e^2$$

$$\Rightarrow (m_1 n_2) e = (n_1 m_2) e$$

$$\Rightarrow (m_1 n_2 - n_1 m_2) e = 0 \Rightarrow m_1 n_2 - n_1 m_2 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{m_1}{n_1} = \frac{m_2}{n_2} \Rightarrow f\left(\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e}\right) = f\left(\frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}\right).$$

\therefore the mapping f is well-defined.

f is one-one. We have $f\left(\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e}\right) = f\left(\frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}\right)$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{m_1}{n_1} = \frac{m_2}{n_2} \Rightarrow m_1 n_2 = n_1 m_2 \Rightarrow (m_1 n_2) e = (n_1 m_2) e \Rightarrow (m_1 n_2) e^2 = (n_1 m_2) e^2$$

$$\Rightarrow (m_1 e)(n_2 e) = (n_1 e)(m_2 e) \Rightarrow \frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e} = \frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e} \Rightarrow f \text{ is one-one.}$$

f is onto. Let m/n be any element of Q . Then $me/ne \in F$ and is such that $f(me/ne) = m/n$. Therefore f is onto.

f preserves compositions. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e} + \frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}\right) &= f\left[\frac{(m_1 e)(n_2 e) + (n_1 e)(m_2 e)}{(n_1 e)(n_2 e)}\right] = f\left[\frac{(m_1 n_2 + n_1 m_2) e}{(n_1 n_2) e}\right] \\ &= \frac{m_1 n_2 + n_1 m_2}{n_1 n_2} = \frac{m_1}{n_1} + \frac{m_2}{n_2} = f\left(\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e}\right) + f\left(\frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}\right). \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } f\left(\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e} \frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}\right) &= f\left[\frac{(m_1 m_2) e^2}{(n_1 n_2) e^2}\right] = f\left[\frac{(m_1 m_2) e}{(n_1 n_2) e}\right] \\ &= \frac{m_1 m_2}{n_1 n_2} = \frac{m_1}{n_1} \frac{m_2}{n_2} = f\left(\frac{m_1 e}{n_1 e}\right) f\left(\frac{m_2 e}{n_2 e}\right). \end{aligned}$$

Hence $F \cong \mathbb{Q}$.

Theorem 2. Every field of characteristic 0 contains a subfield isomorphic to the field of rational numbers. (Nagarjuna 1979)

Proof. Let F be any field of characteristic 0 and let e be the unity element of F . Since F is of characteristic 0, therefore for any integer n , we have $ne=0$ if and only if $n=0$.

Consider the subset F' of F defined as

$$F' = \{me/ne : m \in \mathbb{I}, 0 \neq n \in \mathbb{I}\}.$$

Now prove that F' is a subfield of F and $F' \cong \mathbb{Q}$ where \mathbb{Q} is the field of rational numbers. Give the same proof as in theorem 1.

Theorem 3. Every prime field of finite characteristic p is isomorphic to the field \mathbb{I}_p of the residue classes of the set of integers modulo p . (Kurukshetra 1970; Andhra 77; Nagarjuna 80)

Proof. Let F be a prime field of finite characteristic p . Then p must be a prime number. The unit element e of F will be of order p regarded as an element of the additive group of F . The identity element of the additive group of F is the zero element of F . Therefore if n is any integer, then

$$ne=0 \text{ if and only if } p \text{ is a divisor of } n.$$

Consider a subset F' of F defined as

$$F' = \{ne : n \in \mathbb{I} \text{ where } \mathbb{I} \text{ is the set of integers}\}.$$

F' is a cyclic subgroup of the additive group of F .

Since F' is generated by e whose order is p , therefore F' contains p distinct elements. We claim that F' is a subfield of F . For this we shall prove that F' is an integral domain and we know that every finite integral domain is a field.

Let me, ne be any two elements of F' . Then

$$me - ne = (m - n)e \in F' \text{ since } m - n \in \mathbb{I}.$$

Also $(me)(ne) = (mn)e^2 = (mn)e \in F'$ since $mn \in \mathbb{I}$.

Thus F' is a subring of F . Since F is without zero divisors, therefore F' is also without zero divisors. Therefore F' is a commutative ring without zero divisors. Therefore F' is an integral domain and so F' is a subfield of F . But F can have no proper subfield because F is a prime field. Therefore we must have

$$F = F' = \{ne : n \in \mathbb{I}\}.$$

Now we shall prove that $F \cong \mathbb{I}_p$.

Let f be a mapping from F into \mathbb{I}_p defined as

$$f(ne) = \text{the residue class } [n], \forall n \in \mathbb{I}.$$

f is well defined. We have $ne = me$

$$\Rightarrow (n - m)e = 0 \Rightarrow p \text{ is divisor of } n - m \Rightarrow n \equiv m \pmod{p}$$

$\Rightarrow [n]=[m] \Rightarrow f(ne)=f(me) \Rightarrow f$ is well-defined.

f is one-one. We have $f(ne)=f(me)$

$\Rightarrow [n]=[m] \Rightarrow n-m$ is divisible by $p \Rightarrow (n-m)e=0$

$\Rightarrow ne=me \Rightarrow f$ is one-one.

f is onto. Let $[n]$ be any element of I_p . Then $ne \in F$ and is such that $f(ne)=[n]$. Therefore f is onto.

f preserves compositions. We have

$$f(me+ne)=f((m+n)e)=[m+n]=[m]+[n]=f(me)+f(ne).$$

$$\text{Also } f((me)(ne))=f((mn)e)=[mn]=[m][n]=f(me)f(ne).$$

$$\text{Hence } F \cong I_p.$$

Theorem 4. Let R be an integral domain with unity of finite characteristic p . Then R contains a subset isomorphic to the field I_p of the residue classes of the set of integers modulo p .

(Banaras 1974; Nagarjuna 79)

Proof. Proceed as in theorem 3. If e is the unity element of R , then prove that $R'=\{ne : n \in I\}$ is isomorphic to I_p .

Theorem 5. Let R be an integral domain with unity of characteristic 0. Then R contains a subset isomorphic to the integral domain of integers.

(Banaras 1975)

Proof. If e is the unity element of R , then prove that

$$R'=\{ne : n \in I\}$$

is isomorphic to the integral domain I of integers. Show that the mapping f from R' into I defined as $f(ne)=n \forall n \in I$ is an isomorphism of R' onto I .

§ 34. The ring of endomorphisms of an abelian group.

Endomorphism of a group. Definition. Let G be a group, the composition being denoted multiplicatively. A mapping f of G into itself is called an endomorphism of G if

$$f(ab)=f(a)f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in G.$$

Now suppose G is an abelian group, the operation in G being denoted additively. We recall that a mapping f of G into itself is an endomorphism of G , if

$$f(a+b)=f(a)+f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in G.$$

Let R denote the set of all endomorphisms of an abelian group. We shall presently show that we can impose a ring structure on the set R by suitably defining the operations of addition and multiplication on it. This ring is called the ring of endomorphisms of an abelian group.

Theorem 1. Let G be an abelian group (with the operation denoted additively) and let R be the set of all endomorphisms of G .

Suppose addition and multiplication in R are defined as follows :

If $f, g \in R$, then for each $a \in G$,

$$(f+g)(a) = f(a) + g(a), (fg)(a) = f[g(a)].$$

Then under these operations R is a ring. (Nagpur 1979; Andhra 79)

Proof. G is an additive abelian group and $R = \{f : f \text{ is an endomorphism of } G\}$. If $f, g \in R$, we have defined $f+g$ as follows :

$$(f+g)(a) = f(a) + g(a) \text{ for all } a \in G.$$

Since $f(a), g(a) \in G \Rightarrow f(a) + g(a) \in G$, therefore $f+g$ is a mapping of G into itself. We shall show that $f+g$ is also an endomorphism of G . For all $a, b \in G$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (f+g)(a+b) &= f(a+b) + g(a+b) && [\text{by def. of } f+g] \\ &= [f(a) + f(b)] + [g(a) + g(b)] && [\because f \text{ and } g \text{ are endomorphisms}] \\ &= [f(a) + g(a)] + [f(b) + g(b)] && [\because G \text{ is an abelian group}] \\ &= (f+g)(a) + (f+g)(b). && [\text{by def. of } f+g] \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $f+g$ is an endomorphism of G . Thus $f \in R, g \in R \Rightarrow f+g \in R$. Therefore R is closed with respect to addition.

Further if $f, g \in R$, we have defined the multiplication fg in R as follows :

$$(fg)(a) = f[g(a)] \quad \forall a \in G.$$

It should be noted that fg is nothing but the composite of the functions f and g . Obviously fg is a mapping of G into itself. We shall show that fg is also an endomorphism of G . For all $a, b \in G$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (fg)(a+b) &= f[g(a+b)] && [\text{by def. of } fg] \\ &= f[g(a) + g(b)] && [\because g \text{ is an endomorphism}] \\ &= f[g(a)] + f[g(b)] && [\because f \text{ is also an endomorphism}] \\ &= (fg)(a) + (fg)(b). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore fg is an endomorphism of G . Thus

$f, g \in R \Rightarrow fg \in R$. Therefore R is closed with respect to multiplication.

Now we shall show that all the other ring postulates are also satisfied by these two operations on R . We should remember that if f and g are two mappings of a set G into itself, then $f=g$ if and only if $f(a)=g(a) \quad \forall a \in G$.

Associativity of addition. For all $f, g, h \in R$ and for all $a \in G$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} [(f+g)+h](a) &= (f+g)(a) + h(a) && [\text{by def. of addition of } R] \\ &= [f(a) + g(a)] + h(a) = f(a) + [g(a) + h(a)] && [\text{by associativity in } G] \\ &= f(a) + (g+h)(a) = [f+(g+h)](a). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore by definition of equality of two functions, we have

$$(f+g)+h=f+(g+h).$$

Commutativity of addition. For all $a \in G$, we have

$$(f+g)(a)=f(a)+g(a)=g(a)+f(a)=(g+f)(a).$$

Therefore $f+g=g+f$.

Existence of additive identity. Let 0 denote the identity element of the group G . Let us define a mapping $\hat{0}$ of G into itself by the rule $\hat{0}(a)=0, \forall a \in G$. For all $a, b \in G$, we have

$$\hat{0}(a+b)=0=0+0=\hat{0}(a)+\hat{0}(b).$$

Therefore $\hat{0}$ is an endomorphism of G i.e., $\hat{0} \in R$. Now for all $f \in R$ and for all $a \in G$, we have

$$(\hat{0}+f)(a)=\hat{0}(a)+f(a)=0+f(a)=f(a).$$

Therefore $\hat{0}+f=f$. Thus $\hat{0} \in R$ is the additive identity.

Existence of the additive inverse. Let $f \in R$. Let us define a mapping $-f$ of G into itself by the rule

$$(-f)(a)=-f(a), \forall a \in G.$$

For all $a, b \in G$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (-f)(a+b) &= -f(a+b) = -[f(a)+f(b)] \\ &= [-f(a)]+[-f(b)] = (-f)(a)+(-f)(b). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $-f$ is an endomorphism of G . Now for all $a \in G$, we have

$$(-f+f)(a)=(-f)(a)+f(a)=-f(a)+f(a)=0=\hat{0}(a).$$

Therefore $-f+f=\hat{0}$. Thus $-f \in R$ is the additive inverse of $f \in R$.

Associativity of multiplication. We know that composite or product of functions is an associative operation.

Distributive laws. For all $f, g, h \in R$ and for all $a \in G$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [f(g+h)](a) &= f[(g+h)(a)] = f[g(a)+h(a)] = f[g(a)]+f[h(a)] \\ &= (fg)(a)+(fh)(a) = [fg+fh](a). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $f(g+h)=fg+fh$. Similarly we can show that

$$(g+h)f=gf+hf.$$

Thus R , has a ring structure for the addition and multiplication compositions as defined.

Note. The ring of endomorphisms of an abelian group G is a ring with unity. If 1 denotes the identity mapping of G i.e., if $1 : G \rightarrow G$ such that $1(a) = a, \forall a \in G$, then 1 is the unit element of this ring. Obviously 1 is an endomorphism of G and we have $1f = f = f1 \forall f \in R$. The ring R may not be commutative and may have zero divisors.

Theorem 2. Every ring with unity is isomorphic to a ring of endomorphisms of an abelian group. (Nagarjuna 1979)

Proof. Let R be a ring with unity element 1 . The additive group of R is an abelian group. Let S denote the ring of endomorphisms of the abelian group R .

If $a \in R$, let f_a denote the mapping of R into itself defined by the rule $f_a(x) = ax \forall x \in R$.

Obviously f_a is an endomorphism of the additive group of R . For, if $x, y \in R$, we have

$$f_a(x+y) = a(x+y) = ax + ay = f_a(x) + f_a(y).$$

Thus f_a is an endomorphism of the additive group of R . Let $T = \{f_a : a \in R\}$. Then $T \subseteq S$. We shall show that T is a subring of S . First we shall show that

$$f_{a+b} = f_a + f_b, f_{ab} = f_a f_b, f_{-a} = -f_a.$$

Now for all $x \in R$, we have

$$f_{a+b}(x) = (a+b)x = ax + bx = f_a(x) + f_b(x) = (f_a + f_b)(x).$$

Therefore $f_{a+b} = f_a + f_b$.

Also $f_{ab}(x) = (ab)x = a(bx) = a[f_b(x)] = f_a[f_b(x)] = (f_a f_b)(x)$.

Therefore $f_{ab} = f_a f_b$.

Further $f_{-a}(x) = (-a)x = -(ax) = -[f_a(x)] = (-f_a)(x)$.

Therefore $f_{-a} = -f_a$.

Now let f_a, f_b be any two elements of T . We have

$f_a - f_b = f_a + (-f_b) = f_a + f_{-b} = f_{a+(-b)} = f_{a-b}$ Since $a-b \in R$, therefore $f_{a-b} \in T$. Also $f_a f_b = f_{ab} \in T$ since $ab \in R$. Thus $f_a, f_b \in T \Rightarrow f_a - f_b \in T$ and $f_a f_b \in T$. Therefore T is a subring of S .

Now we shall show that the ring R is isomorphic to the ring

T . Let $\phi : R \rightarrow T$ such that $\phi(a) = f_a \forall a \in R$.

ϕ is one-one. If $a, b \in R$, then

$$\phi(a) = \phi(b) \Rightarrow f_a = f_b \Rightarrow f_a(x) = f_b(x) \forall x \in R$$

$$\Rightarrow ax = bx \forall x \in R$$

$$\Rightarrow a1 = b1$$

$$[\because 1 \in R]$$

$$\Rightarrow a = b.$$

Therefore ϕ is 1-1.

ϕ is onto. Let $f_a \in T$. Then $a \in R$ and we have $\phi(a) = f_a$.

Therefore ϕ is onto.

ϕ preserves compositions in R and T . Let $a, b \in R$. Then
 $\phi(a+b) = f_{a+b} = f_a + f_b = \phi(a) + \phi(b)$
 and $\phi(ab) = f_{ab} = f_a f_b = \phi(a) \phi(b)$.

Hence ϕ is an isomorphism of the ring R onto the ring T and therefore $R \cong T$.

Exercises

1. Show that if a ring R has no zero divisors, then the ring $R[x]$ has also no zero divisors. (Meerut 1976)

2. If p is a prime integer, show that it need not be a prime Gaussian integer.

3. Show that the polynomial $x^3 - 9$ is reducible over the ring of integers modulo 11.

4. Resolve $x^4 + 4$ into factors over the field

$$(\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}, +_5, \times_5).$$

(Meerut 1980)

Ans. $x^4 + 4 = (x+1)(x+2)(x+3)(x+4)$.

5. Resolve $x^2 + 1$ into factors over the field Z_5 .

(Meerut 1981, 82P, 83)

Ans. $x^2 + 1 = (x+2)(x+3)$.

6. Find the solution of the equation $3x = 2$ in the field $(Z_7, +_7, \times_7)$. (Meerut 1981)

Ans. $x = 3$ because $3 \times_7 3 = 2$.

7. Show that $f(x) = x^3 + 8x - 2$ is irreducible over Q . Is it irreducible over reals? Give reasons for your answer.

(Meerut 1980)

8. Let $f(x) = 2x^4 + 3x^3 + 2$ and $g(x) = 3x^5 + 4x^3 + 2x + 3$ be two polynomials over the field

$$Z_5 = (\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}, +_5, \times_5).$$

Determine (i) $(d/dx)f(x)$, (ii) $f(x) \cdot g(x)$. (Meerut 1983)

Sol. (i) We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx} f(x) &= 4(2)x^3 + 3(3)x^2 \\ &= (2+_5 2+_5 2+_5 2)x^3 + (3+_5 3+_5 3)x^2 \\ &= 3x^3 + 4x^2. \end{aligned}$$

(ii) We have $f(x)g(x)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (2+3x^3+2x^4)(3+2x^3+4x^3+3x^5) \\ &= (2 \times_5 3) + (2 \times_5 2)x^3 + [(2 \times_5 4) +_5 (3 \times_5 3)]x^3 + (2 \times_5 3)x^4 \\ &\quad + [(2 \times_5 3) +_5 (3 \times_5 2)]x^5 + [(3 \times_5 4) +_5 (2 \times_5 2)]x^6 \\ &\quad + (2 \times_5 4)x^7 + (3 \times_5 3)x^8 + (2 \times_5 3)x^9 \\ &= 1 + 4x^3 + 2x^3 + x^4 + 2x^5 + x^5 + 3x^7 + 4x^8 + x^9. \end{aligned}$$

9. If $f(x) = 3x^7 + 2x + 3$, $g(x) = 5x^8 + 2x + 6$ be two polynomials over the field $Z_7 = (\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}, +, \times)$, determine (i) $(d/dx)f(x)$, (ii) $f(x) \cdot g(x)$, and (iii) $f(x) + g(x)$.

(Meerut 1981)

Ans. (i) 2 . (ii) $4 + 4x + 4x^2 + x^3 + 3x^4 + 4x^7 + 6x^8 + x^{10}$.

(iii) $3x^7 + 5x^8 + 4x + 2$.

10. Let $f(x) = x^6 + 3x^5 + 4x^2 - 3x + 2$ and $g(x) = x^2 + 2x - 3$ be in $Z_7[x]$. Find

(i) Sum and product of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ in $Z_7[x]$.

(ii) Two polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ in $Z_7[x]$ such that $f(x) = q(x)g(x) + r(x)$ with degree of $r(x) < 2$. (Meerut 1980S)

Ans. (i) $f(x) + g(x) = x^6 + 3x^5 + 5x^2 + 6x + 6$;

$f(x)g(x) = 1 + 6x + 5x^2 + 5x^3 + 4x^4 + 5x^5 + 3x^6 + 5x^7 + x^8$.

Note that in Z_7 , we have $-3 = 4$, $-1 = 6$ etc.

(ii) $q(x) = x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 5$, $r(x) = 4x + 3$.

11. Define a prime field. Prove that the field of rational numbers is a prime field. Give an example of a field which is not a prime field.

(Nagarjuna 1980)

12. Prove that the field I_p is prime for each prime integer p .

13. Prove that the field of rational numbers and the field $J/(p)$ of residue classes modulo a prime p are the only prime fields apart from isomorphism.

(Nagarjuna 1980)

Rings (Continued)

§ 1. Quotient Rings or Rings of Residue Classes. Suppose R is an arbitrary ring and S is an ideal (two sided ideal) in R . Then S is a subgroup of the additive abelian group of R . We can form the cosets (right as well as left) of S in R . Since R is an abelian additive group, therefore if $a \in R$, then the right coset $S+a$ will be equal to the corresponding left coset $a+S$. Thus we shall call $S+a$ as simply a coset of S in R . We remember from our study of cosets in group theory, that if $a, b \in R$, then

$$S+a=S+b \Leftrightarrow a-b \in S.$$

The cosets of S in R are called the residue classes of S in R . We denote the set of all residue classes of S in R by the symbol R/S . Thus $R/S = \{S+a : a \in R\}$.

We shall now impose a ring structure on the set R/S by defining addition and multiplication of residue classes.

Theorem. *If S is an ideal of a ring R , then the set*

$$R/S = \{S+a : a \in R\}$$

of all residue classes of S in R forms a ring for the two compositions in R/S defined as follows :

$$(S+a) + (S+b) = S+(a+b) \quad [\text{Addition of residue classes}]$$

$$(S+a)(S+b) = S+ab \quad [\text{Multiplication of residue classes}]$$

(I.A.S. 1973; Meerut 89; Raj. 78; Vikram 76; Nagarjuna 78; Andhra 71; Kanpur 86, 88)

Proof. Since $S+(a+b)$ and $S+ab$ are also residue classes of S in R , therefore R/S is closed with respect to addition and multiplication of residue classes. First of all, we shall show that both addition and multiplication in R/S are well defined. For this we are to show that if $S+a=S+a'$ and $S+b=S+b'$, then

$$(S+a) + (S+b) = (S+a') + (S+b')$$

and

$$(S+a)(S+b) = (S+a')(S+b').$$

We have

$$S+a=S+a' \Rightarrow a' \in S+a$$

and

$$S+b=S+b' \Rightarrow b' \in S+b.$$

Therefore there exist $\alpha, \beta \in S$ such that $a' = \alpha + a, b' = \beta + b$.

Now $a' + b' = (\alpha + a) + (\beta + b) = (a + b) + (\alpha + \beta)$.

$$\therefore (a' + b') - (a + b) = \alpha + \beta \in S.$$

$$\therefore S + (a' + b') = S + (a + b)$$

$$\Rightarrow (S + a') + (S + b') = (S + a) + (S + b).$$

Thus addition in R/S is well defined.

$$\text{Again } a'b' = (\alpha + a)(\beta + b) = \alpha\beta + \alpha b + a\beta + ab$$

$$= ab + \alpha\beta + \alpha b + a\beta.$$

$\therefore a'b' - ab = \alpha\beta + \alpha b + a\beta \in S$. [Since S is an ideal therefore $\alpha, \beta \in S$ and $a, b \in R \Rightarrow \alpha b \in S, a\beta \in S, \alpha\beta \in S$ and finally $\alpha\beta + \alpha b + a\beta \in S$].

Now since $a'b' - ab \in S$, therefore $S + a'b' = S + ab$

$$\Rightarrow (S + a')(S + b') = (S + a)(S + b).$$

Hence multiplication in R/S is also well defined.

Associativity of addition in R/S . We have

$$\begin{aligned} (S + a) + [(S + b) + (S + c)] &= (S + a) + [S + (b + c)] \\ &= S + [a + (b + c)] = S + [(a + b) + c] = [S + (a + b)] + (S + c) \\ &= [(S + a) + (S + b)] + (S + c). \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity of addition in R/S . We have

$$(S + a) + (S + b) = S + (a + b) = S + (b + a) = (S + b) + (S + a).$$

Existence of additive identity. We have $S = S + 0 \in R/S$. If $S + a \in R/S$, then $(S + 0) + (S + a) = S + (0 + a) = S + a$.

$\therefore S$ is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. Let $S + a \in R/S$.

Then $S + (-a) \in R/S$. Also we have

$$[S + (-a)] + [S + a] = S + [(-a) + a] = S + 0 = S.$$

$\therefore S + (-a)$ or $S - a$ is the additive inverse of $S + a$.

Associativity of multiplication. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [(S + a)(S + b)](S + c) &= (S + ab)(S + c) = S + (ab)c \\ &= S + a(bc) = (S + a)(S + bc) = (S + a)[(S + b)(S + c)]. \end{aligned}$$

Distributivity of multiplication with respect to addition. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (S + a)[(S + b) + (S + c)] &= (S + a)[S + (b + c)] \\ &= S + a(b + c) = S + (ab + ac) = (S + ab) + (S + ac) \\ &= (S + a)(S + b) + (S + a)(S + c). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we can prove that

$$[(S + b) + (S + c)](S + a) = (S + b)(S + a) + (S + c)(S + a).$$

Hence R/S is a ring with respect to the two compositions. The residue class $S + 0$ or S is the zero element of this ring.

Note. The students should not confuse that by the multiplication $(S+a)(S+b)$ of residue classes we mean the totality of elements obtained on multiplying the elements of $S+a$ with those of $S+b$. This multiplication of residue classes is a new composition which we have defined in the set R/S .

However the addition $(S+a)+(S+b)$ of residue classes as defined by us coincides with the totality of elements obtained on adding elements of $S+a$ to the elements of $S+b$ as can be easily seen :

$$\begin{aligned}(S+a)+(S+b) &= S+(a+S)+b = S+(S+a)+b \\ &= (S+S)+(a+b) = S+(a+b).\end{aligned}$$

Ex. If R/S is a ring of residue classes of S in R . prove that

(i) If R is commutative, so also is R/S .

(ii) If R has a unity element 1 so also has R/S , namely $S+1$.

(Poona 1973; Meerut 86)

Solution. (i) Suppose R is a commutative ring. Let $S+a, S+b$ be any two elements of R/S . Then $a, b \in R$ and $ab=ba$.

We have $(S+a)(S+b)=S+ab=S+ba=(S+b)(S+a)$.

(ii) Suppose R is a ring with unit element 1. Then $S+1 \in R/S$. If $S+a$ is any element of R/S , we have

$$(S+1)(S+a)=S+(1a)=S+a$$

and

$$(S+a)(S+1)=S+(a1)=S+a.$$

$\therefore S+1$ is the unit element of R/S .

§ 2. Homomorphism of rings.

Definition. Homomorphism into. A mapping f from a ring R into a ring R' is said to be a homomorphism of R into R' if

(i) $f(a+b)=f(a)+f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in R$.

(ii) $f(ab)=f(a)f(b)$ for all $a, b \in R$.

(Delhi 1970; Allahabad 80; Kumayun 77)

Homomorphism onto. A mapping f from a ring R onto a ring R' is said to be a homomorphism of R onto R' if

(i) $f(a+b)=f(a)+f(b) \quad \forall a, b \in R$.

(ii) $f(ab)=f(a)f(b)$ for all $a, b \in R$.

Also then R' is said to be a homomorphic image of R .

Theorem 1. If f is a homomorphism of a ring R into a ring R' , then

(i) $f(0)=0'$, where 0 is the zero element of the ring R and $0'$ is the zero element of R' . (Kumayun 1977; Allahabad 80)

(ii) $f(-a)=-f(a) \quad \forall a \in R$. (Utkal 1969; Allahabad 80; Kumayun 77)

Proof. (i) Let $a \in R$. Then $f(a) \in R'$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) + 0' &= f(a) \quad [\because 0' \text{ is the additive identity of } R'] \\ &= f(a + 0) = f(a) + f(0). \end{aligned}$$

Now R' is a group with respect to addition. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) + 0' &= f(a) + f(0) \\ \Rightarrow 0' &= f(0). \quad [\text{by left cancellation law}]. \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Let a be any element of R . Then $-a \in R$.

We have $0' = f(0) = f[a + (-a)] = f(a) + f(-a)$.

$\therefore f(-a)$ is the additive inverse of $f(a)$ in the ring R' . Thus $f(-a) = -f(a)$.

Theorem 2. Let ϕ be a homomorphic mapping of a ring R into a ring R' . Let S' be the homomorphic image of R in R' . Then S' is a subring of R' . (Nagarjuna 1978; Karnatak 77)

Proof. Since S' is the image of R in R' under the mapping ϕ , therefore $\phi(R) = S' \subseteq R'$.

Let a', b' be any two elements of S' . Since $S' = \phi(R)$, therefore there exist elements $a, b \in R$ such that $\phi(a) = a'$, $\phi(b) = b'$.

We have $a' - b' = \phi(a) - \phi(b) = \phi(a - b)$.

$[\because \phi \text{ is a homomorphism}]$

Now $a - b \in R$ is such that $a' - b' = \phi(a - b)$. Therefore $a' - b' \in S'$.

Further $a'b' = \phi(a)\phi(b) = \phi(ab) \in S'$, since $ab \in R$.

Thus $a', b' \in S' \Rightarrow a' - b' \in S'$ and $a'b' \in S'$.

Therefore S' is a subring of R' .

§ 3. Kernel of a ring homomorphism.

Definition. If f is a homomorphism of a ring R into a ring R' , then the set S of all those elements of R which are mapped onto the zero element of R' is called the kernel of the homomorphism f .

Thus if f is a homomorphism of R into R' , then S is the kernel of f if $S = \{x \in R : f(x) = 0' \text{ where } 0' \text{ is the zero element of } R'\}$.

Theorem 3. If f is a homomorphism of a ring R into a ring R' with kernel S , then S is an ideal of R .

(Andhra 1977; Karnatak 77; Patna 86; Nagarjuna 80; Kanpur 86; Allahabad 80; Meerut 81, 87, 88)

Proof. Let f be a homomorphism of a ring R into a ring R' . Let $0, 0'$ be the zero elements of R, R' respectively. Let S be the kernel of f . Then $S = \{x \in R : f(x) = 0'\}$.

Since $f(0) = 0'$, therefore at least $0 \in S$. Thus S is not empty.

Let $a, b \in S$. Then $f(a) = 0', f(b) = 0'$.

We have $f(a - b) = f[a + (-b)] = f(a) + f(-b)$

$$\Rightarrow f(a) - f(b) = 0' - 0' = 0'.$$

$$\therefore a - b \in S.$$

Also if r be any element of R , then

$$f(ar) = f(a)f(r) = 0'f(r) = 0'$$

and

$$f(ra) = f(r)f(a) = f(r)0' = 0'.$$

$$\therefore ar \in S, ra \in S.$$

Thus $a, b \in S, r \in R \Rightarrow (a-b) \in S, ar \in S, ra \in S.$

$\therefore S$ is an ideal of R .

Theorem 2. The homomorphism ϕ of a ring R into a ring R' is an isomorphism of R into R' if and only if $I(\phi) = (0)$, where $I(\phi)$ denotes the kernel of ϕ . (Meerut 1987; Kanpur 87)

Proof. Let ϕ be a homomorphism of a ring R into a ring R' . Let $0, 0'$ be the zero elements of R, R' respectively. Let $S = I(\phi)$ be the kernel of ϕ . Then S is an ideal of R and

$$S = \{a \in R : \phi(a) = 0'\}.$$

Suppose ϕ is an isomorphism of R into R' . Then ϕ is one-one. Let $a \in S$. Then

$$\phi(a) = 0' \quad [\text{by def. of kernel}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a) = \phi(0) \quad [\because \phi(0) = 0']$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 0. \quad [\because \phi \text{ is one-one}]$$

Thus $a \in S \Rightarrow a = 0$. In other words 0 is the only element of R which belongs to S . Therefore $S = (0)$.

Conversely suppose that $S = (0)$. Then to prove that ϕ is an isomorphism of R into R' i.e., to prove that ϕ is one-one.

If $a, b \in R$, then $\phi(a) = \phi(b)$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a) - \phi(b) = 0' \quad [\because \phi(a), \phi(b) \text{ are in the ring } R']$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a-b) = 0' \quad [\because \phi \text{ is a homomorphism}]$$

$$\Rightarrow a-b \in S \quad [\text{by def. of kernel}]$$

$$\Rightarrow a-b = 0 \quad [\because S = (0)]$$

$$\Rightarrow a = b.$$

$\therefore \phi$ is one-one. Hence ϕ is an isomorphism of R into R' .

Theorem 3. Suppose R is a ring, S an ideal of R . Let f be a mapping from R to R/S defined by $f(a) = S + a \forall a \in R$. Then f is a homomorphism of R onto R/S .

(I.A.S. 1973; Vikram 75; Kanpur 80; Nagarjuna 78; Karnatak 77; Andhra 77; Meerut 89; Patna 87)

Proof. Consider the mapping $f: R \rightarrow R/S$ such that

$$f(a) = S + a \forall a \in R.$$

Let $S+x$ be any element of R/S . Then $x \in R$.

We have $f(x) = S+x$. Therefore the mapping f is onto R/S .

Let $a, b \in R$. Then

$$f(a+b)=S+(a+b)=(S+a)+(S+b)=f(a)+f(b).$$

$$\text{Also } f(ab)=S+ab=(S+a)(S+b)=f(a)f(b).$$

$\therefore f$ is a homomorphism of R onto R/S .

Thus every quotient ring of a ring is a homomorphic image of the ring.

Theorem 4. Fundamental theorem on homomorphism of rings.

Every homomorphic image of a ring R is isomorphic to some residue class ring (quotient ring) thereof. (Nagarjuna 1979, 80;

Madurai 88; Kanpur 86; Patna 87; Meerut 83P, 84, 87)

Proof. Let R' be the homomorphic image of a ring R and f be the corresponding homomorphism. Then f is a homomorphism of R onto R' . Let S be the kernel of this homomorphism. Then S is an ideal of R . Therefore R/S is a ring of residue classes of R relative to S . We shall prove that $R/S \cong R'$.

If $a \in R$, then $S+a \in R/S$ and $f(a) \in R'$. Consider the mapping $\phi : R/S \rightarrow R'$ such that

$$\phi(S+a)=f(a) \quad \forall a \in R.$$

First we shall show that the mapping ϕ is well defined i.e., if $a, b \in R$ and $S+a=S+b$, then $\phi(S+a)=\phi(S+b)$.

$$\text{We have} \quad S+a=S+b$$

$$\Rightarrow a-b \in S$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a-b)=0'$$

[i.e. zero element of R']

$$\Rightarrow f[a+(-b)]=0' \Rightarrow f(a)+f(-b)=0' \Rightarrow f(a)-f(b)=0'$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)=f(b) \Rightarrow \phi(S+a)=\phi(S+b).$$

$\therefore \phi$ is well-defined.

ϕ is one-one. We have $\phi(S+a)=\phi(S+b)$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)=f(b) \Rightarrow f(a)-f(b)=0'$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)+f(-b)=0' \Rightarrow f(a-b)=0'$$

$$\Rightarrow a-b \in S$$

[$\because S$ is kernel of f]

$$\Rightarrow S+a=S+b.$$

$\therefore \phi$ is one-one.

ϕ is onto R' . Let y be any element of R' . Then $y=f(a)$ for some $a \in R$ because f is onto R' . Now $S+a \in R/S$ and we have $\phi(S+a)=f(a)=y$. Therefore ϕ is onto R' .

Finally we have

$$\phi[(S+a)+(S+b)]=\phi[S+(a+b)]=f(a+b)$$

$$=f(a)+f(b)=\phi(S+a)+\phi(S+b).$$

$$\text{Also } \phi[(S+a)(S+b)]=\phi(S+ab)=f(ab)=f(a)f(b)$$

$$=[\phi(S+a)][\phi(S+b)].$$

$\therefore \phi$ is an isomorphism of R/S onto R' .

Hence

$$R/S \cong R'.$$

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that every homomorphic image of a commutative ring is commutative. (Agra 1986)

Solution. Let R be a commutative ring. Let f be a homomorphic mapping of R onto a ring R' . Then R' is a homomorphic image of R .

Let a', b' be any two elements of R' . Then $f(a)=a', f(b)=b'$ for some $a, b \in R$ because f is onto R' . We have

$$\begin{aligned} a'b' &= f(a)f(b) = f(ab) \\ &= f(ba) \quad [\because R \text{ is commutative}] \\ &= f(b)f(a) = b'a'. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore R'$ is a commutative ring.

Ex. 2. If R is a ring with unit element 1 and ϕ is a homomorphism of R onto R' prove that $\phi(1)$ is the unit element of R' .

(Allahabad 1980; Meerut 85, 91)

Solution. Since ϕ is a homomorphism of R onto R' , therefore R' is a homomorphic image of R . If 1 is the unity element of R , then $\phi(1) \in R'$. Let a' be any element of R' . Then $a' = \phi(a)$ for some $a \in R$ since ϕ is onto R' . We have

$$\phi(1)a' = \phi(1)\phi(a) = \phi(1a) = \phi(a) = a'$$

and $a'\phi(1) = \phi(a)\phi(1) = \phi(a1) = \phi(a) = a'.$

$\therefore \phi(1)$ is the unity element of R' .

Ex. 3. If R is a ring with unit element 1 and ϕ is a homomorphism of R into an integral domain R' such that kernel of ϕ i.e., $I(\phi) \neq R$, then prove that $\phi(1)$ is the unit element of R' .

Solution. ϕ is a homomorphism of a ring R into an integral domain R' . Then kernel of ϕ

$$= I(\phi) = \{x : x \in R \text{ and } \phi(x) = 0 \in R'\}.$$

Since $I(\phi) \neq R$, therefore there exists an element $a \in R$ such that

$$\phi(a) \neq 0 \in R'.$$

We have $\phi(1)\phi(a) = \phi(1a) = \phi(a).$

Now let b' be any element of R' . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(a)b' &= \phi(a)b' \\ \Rightarrow \phi(1)\phi(a)b' &= \phi(a)b' \quad [\because \phi(1)\phi(a) = \phi(a)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a)[\phi(1)b'] = \phi(a)b'$$

$[\because \phi(1), \phi(a) \in R'$ which, being an integral domain, is a commutative ring]

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a)[\phi(1)b'] - \phi(a)b' = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a) [\phi(1) b' - b'] = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(1) b' - b' = 0$$

$$[\because \phi(a) \neq 0 \text{ and } R' \text{ is without zero divisors}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(1) b' = b' = b' \phi(1). [\because R' \text{ is a commutative ring}]$$

$$\text{Thus } \phi(1) b' = b' = b' \phi(1) \quad \forall b' \in R'.$$

$$\therefore \phi(1) \text{ is the unit element of } R'.$$

Ex. 4. Prove that any homomorphism of a field is either an isomorphism or takes each element into 0. (Nagarjuna 1979)

Or

Show that a field has no proper homomorphic image.

Solution. Let ϕ be a homomorphism of a field F into a ring R . Let S be the kernel of ϕ . Then S is an ideal of the field F . We know that a field has no proper ideals. Therefore either $S = F$ or $S = (0)$.

If $S = F$, then by definition of kernel of ϕ , we have $\phi(x) = 0 \quad \forall x \in F$. Thus in this case ϕ takes each element of F into the zero element of R . In other words in this case $\phi(F)$ is the zero subring of the ring R .

If $S = (0)$, then the kernel consists of zero element alone. So in this case ϕ is an isomorphism of F into R . [See theorem 2 on page 358]. Since the isomorphic image of a field is a field, therefore in this case $\phi(F)$ is a field isomorphic to the field F .

§ 4. Maximal Ideal. An ideal $S \neq R$ in a ring R is said to be a maximal ideal of R if whenever U is an ideal of R such that $S \subseteq U \subseteq R$, then either $R = U$ or $S = U$.

(Banaras 1971; Meerut 80, 84P; Karnatak 77; Raj. 78; Guru Nanak 82)

In other words an ideal S of a ring R is said to be *maximal ideal* if there exists no ideal properly contained in R which itself properly contains S i.e., if it is impossible to find an ideal which lies between S and the full ring R . For example, in the ring of integers I , the ideal (6) is not maximal since it is properly contained in the ideal (3) , which in turn is properly contained in I . On the other hand, (5) is a maximal ideal since the only ideal properly containing (5) is I itself.

Ex. If A be the ring of all functions from the set of reals to itself under pointwise operations and I , the subset of all functions vanishing at zero, prove that I is a maximal ideal of A .

Theorem. An ideal S of the ring of integers I is maximal if and only if S is generated by some prime integer.

(Meerut 1983P, 84P, 88)

Proof. We know that every ideal of the ring of integers I is a principal ideal. Suppose S is an ideal of I generated by p so that $S=(p)$. Since p and $-p$ generate the same ideal, therefore we can take p as positive.

Now we are to prove that

(i) S is maximal if p is prime.

(ii) p is prime if S is maximal.

First we shall prove (i). Let p be a prime integer such that $(p)=S$. Let T be an ideal of I such that $S \subseteq T \subseteq I$. Since T is also a principal ideal of I , let $T=(q)$ where q is some positive integer.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } S \subseteq T &\Rightarrow (p) \subseteq T \\ &\Rightarrow p \in T \\ &\Rightarrow p \in \{xq : x \in I\} \\ &\Rightarrow p=rq \text{ for some positive integer } r. \end{aligned}$$

Since p is prime, therefore $q=1$ or $q=p$.

If $q=1$, we have $T=(q)=(1)=I$

and if $q=p$, we have $T=(q)=(p)=S$.

Thus either $T=I$ or $T=S$.

Hence (p) is a maximal ideal of I .

Now we shall prove (ii). Let $(p)=S$ be a maximal ideal. We are to show that p is prime. Let us suppose that p is a composite integer.

Let $p=mn$, $m \neq 1$, $n \neq 1$.

It is obvious that $(p) \subseteq (m) \subseteq I$.

But since (p) is a maximal ideal, therefore we have
either $(m)=(p)$ or $(m)=I$.

If $(m)=I$, then $m=1$, which is a contradiction.

If $(m)=(p)$, then m must be equal to lp for some integer l since each element of (p) is a multiple of p .

Therefore $p=mn=lpn=pln$. But $p \neq 0$, therefore $ln=1$. This gives $n=1$ which is again a contradiction.

Hence p must be a prime integer.

§ 5. Some more results on Ideals.

Theorem 1. Let S_1, S_2 be ideals of a ring R and let

$$S_1 + S_2 = \{s_1 + s_2 : s_1 \in S_1, s_2 \in S_2\}.$$

Then $S_1 + S_2$ is an ideal of R generated by $S_1 \cup S_2$.

(Meerut 1986, 90)

Proof. Let $a_1 + a_2 \in S_1 + S_2$, $b_1 + b_2 \in S_1 + S_2$. Then

$$a_1, b_1 \in S_1 \text{ and } a_2, b_2 \in S_2.$$

We have $(a_1 + a_2) - (b_1 + b_2) = (a_1 - b_1) + (a_2 - b_2)$.

Since S_1 is an ideal, therefore $a_1, b_1 \in S_1 \Rightarrow a_1 - b_1 \in S_1$.

Similarly $a_2 - b_2 \in S_2$.

$$\therefore (a_1 - b_1) + (a_2 - b_2) \in S_1 + S_2.$$

$$\therefore (a_1 + a_2) - (b_1 + b_2) \in S_1 + S_2.$$

$\therefore S_1 + S_2$ is a subgroup of the additive group of R .

Let r be any element of R . Then

$$r(a_1 + a_2) = ra_1 + ra_2$$

$$\in S_1 + S_2 \text{ since } r \in R, a_1 \in S_1 \Rightarrow ra_1 \in S_1$$

and similarly $ra_2 \in S_2$.

Similarly $(a_1 + a_2)r = a_1r + a_2r \in S_1 + S_2$ since $a_1r \in S_1, a_2r \in S_2$.

Hence $S_1 + S_2$ is an ideal of R .

Since $0 \in S_1$ and also $0 \in S_2$, therefore obviously

$$S_1 \subseteq S_1 + S_2 \text{ and } S_2 \subseteq S_1 + S_2.$$

$$\therefore S_1 \cup S_2 \subseteq S_1 + S_2.$$

Thus $S_1 + S_2$ is an ideal of R containing $S_1 \cup S_2$.

Also if S is any ideal of R containing $S_1 \cup S_2$, then S must contain $S_1 + S_2$. Thus $S_1 + S_2$ is the smallest ideal of R containing $S_1 \cup S_2$ i.e., $S_1 + S_2 = (S_1 \cup S_2)$.

Theorem 2. If an ideal U of a ring R contains a unit of R then $U = R$.

Proof. Let R be a ring with unity element 1. Let u be a unit of R . Then u is an invertible element of R i.e., u^{-1} exists. Let $u \in U$.

Since U is an ideal, therefore

$$u \in U, u^{-1} \in R \Rightarrow uu^{-1} \in U \Rightarrow 1 \in U.$$

Now let x be any element of R . Then

$$x \in R, 1 \in U \Rightarrow x1 \in U \Rightarrow x \in U.$$

$$\therefore R \subseteq U.$$

Also $U \subseteq R$ as U is an ideal of R . Hence $R = U$.

Theorem 3. Let R be a commutative ring with unity and a, b be two non-zero elements of R . Then

$$(a) = (b) \text{ iff } a \mid b \text{ and } b \mid a.$$

Proof. Here (a) = the principal ideal of R generated by a
 $= \{ax : x \in R\}$.

Similarly (b) = the principal ideal of R generated by b .

Let $(a) = (b)$.

Then $(a) \subseteq (b)$

$$\Rightarrow a \in (b)$$

$$\Rightarrow a = rb \text{ for some } r \in R$$

$\Rightarrow b \mid a$ i.e., b is a divisor of a .

Similarly $(a) = (b)$

$\Rightarrow (b) \subseteq (a) \Rightarrow b \in (a)$

$\Rightarrow b = sa$ for some $s \in R \Rightarrow a \mid b$.

Thus $(a) = (b) \Rightarrow a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$.

Conversely let $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$.

Now $a \mid b \Rightarrow b = pa$ for some $p \in R$. Let y be any element of (b) . Then $y = ub$ for some $u \in R$

$\Rightarrow u(pa) = (up)a \in (a)$ since $up \in R$

Thus $y \in (b) \Rightarrow y \in (a)$.

$\therefore (b) \subseteq (a)$.

Thus $a \mid b \Rightarrow (b) \subseteq (a)$. Similarly $b \mid a \Rightarrow (a) \subseteq (b)$.

Consequently $a \mid b, b \mid a \Rightarrow (a) = (b)$.

Corollary. Let R be an integral domain with unity and a, b be two non-zero elements of R . Then $(a) = (b)$ iff a and b are associates.

Theorem 4. An ideal S of a commutative ring R with unity is maximal if and only if the residue class ring R/S is a field.

(I.A.S. 1971, 88; Madras 83; Karnatak 77; Kanpur 87; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87; Meerut 83P, 91)

Proof. Since R is a commutative ring with unity, therefore R/S is also a commutative ring with unity. The zero element of the ring R/S is S and the unity element is the coset $S+1$ where 1 is the unity element of R .

Let the ideal S be maximal. Then to prove that R/S is a field.

Let $S+b$ be any non-zero element of R/S . Then $S+b \neq S$ i.e., $b \notin S$. To prove that $S+b$ is invertible.

If (b) is the principal ideal of R generated by b , then $S+(b)$ is also an ideal of R . Since $b \notin S$, therefore the ideal S is properly contained in $S+(b)$. But S is a maximal ideal of R . Hence we must have $S+(b) = R$.

Since $1 \in R$, therefore we must obtain 1 on adding an element of S to an element of (b) . Therefore there exists an element $a \in S$ and $\alpha \in R$ such that

$$a + \alpha b = 1 \quad [\text{Note that } (b) = \{\alpha b : \alpha \in R\}]$$

$$\therefore 1 - \alpha b = a \in S.$$

Consequently $S+1 = S+\alpha b = (S+\alpha)(S+b)$.

$$\therefore S+\alpha = (S+b)^{-1}. \text{ Thus } S+b \text{ is invertible.}$$

$$\therefore R/S \text{ is a field.}$$

Conversely, let S be an ideal of R such that R/S is a field. We shall prove that S is a maximal ideal of R .

Let S' be an ideal of R properly containing S i.e., $S \subsetneq S'$ and $S \neq S'$. Then S will be maximal if $S' = R$. The elements of R contained in S already belong to S' since $S \subseteq S'$. Therefore R will be a subset of S' if every element α of R not contained in S also belongs to S' . If $\alpha \in R$ is such that $\alpha \notin S$, then $S + \alpha \neq S$ i.e., $S + \alpha$ is a non-zero element of R/S . Also S' properly contains S . Therefore there exists an element β of S' not contained in S so that $S + \beta$ is also a non-zero element of R/S . Now the non-zero elements of R/S form a group with respect to multiplication because R/S is a field. Therefore there exists a non-zero element $S + \gamma$ of R/S such that

$$(S + \gamma)(S + \beta) = S + \alpha.$$

[We may take $S + \gamma = (S + \alpha)(S + \beta)^{-1}$.]

Now $(S + \gamma)(S + \beta) = S + \alpha$

$$\Rightarrow S + \gamma\beta = S + \alpha \Rightarrow \gamma\beta - \alpha \in S \Rightarrow \gamma\beta - \alpha \in S'. \quad [\because S \subseteq S']$$

Now S' is an ideal. Therefore $\gamma \in R, \beta \in S' \Rightarrow \gamma\beta \in S'$. Again $\gamma\beta \in S', \gamma\beta - \alpha \in S' \Rightarrow \gamma\beta - (\gamma\beta - \alpha) \in S'$ i.e., $\alpha \in S'$.

Thus $R \subseteq S'$. Also $S' \subseteq R$ as S' is an ideal of R .

$$\therefore S' = R.$$

Hence the theorem.

§ 6. Prime Ideals.

Prime Ideal. Definition. Let R be a ring and S an ideal in R . Then S is said to be a prime ideal of R if $ab \in S, a, b \in R$ implies that either a or b is in S .

(Gujrat 1971; Karnatak 77; Raj. 78; I.A.S. 75; Guru Nanak 75)

For example, in the ring of integers I , the principal ideal (7) is prime. Obviously if ab is in (7), then a or b must be a multiple of 7. On the other hand, (6) is not a prime ideal in I since, in particular, $12 = 3 \times 4$ is in (6), yet neither 3 nor 4 is an element of (6).

Theorem 1. Let R be a commutative ring and S an ideal of R . Then the ring of residue classes R/S is an integral domain if and only if S is a prime ideal. (Gujrat 1970; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87)

Proof. Let R be a commutative ring and S an ideal of R . Then $R/S = \{S + a : a \in R\}$.

Let $S + a, S + b$ be any two elements of R/S . Then $a, b \in R$.

We have $(S + a)(S + b) = S + ab$

$$= S + ba \quad [\because R \text{ is a commutative ring}]$$

$$= (S + b)(S + a).$$

$\therefore R/S$ is a commutative ring.

Now let S be a prime ideal of R . Then we are to prove that R/S is an integral domain. For this we are to show that R/S is without zero divisors. The zero element of the ring R/S is the residue class S itself. Let $S+a$, $S+b$ be any two elements of R/S .

Then $(S+a)(S+b)=S$ (the zero element of R/S)

$\Rightarrow S+ab=S \Rightarrow ab \in S$

\Rightarrow either a or b is in S , since S is a prime ideal

\Rightarrow either $S+a=S$ or $S+b=S$ [Note that $a \in S \Leftrightarrow S+a=S$]

\Rightarrow either $S+a$ or $S+b$ is the zero element of R/S .

$\therefore R/S$ is without zero divisors.

Since R/S is a commutative ring without zero divisors, therefore R/S is an integral domain.

Conversely, let R/S be an integral domain. Then we are to prove that S is a prime ideal of R . Let a, b be any two elements in R such that $ab \in S$. We have

$ab \in S \Rightarrow S+ab=S \Rightarrow (S+a)(S+b)=S$.

Since R/S is an integral domain, therefore it is without zero divisors. Therefore

$(S+a)(S+b)=S$ (the zero element of R/S)

\Rightarrow either $S+a$ or $S+b$ is zero \Rightarrow either $S+a=S$ or $S+b=S$

\Rightarrow either $a \in S$ or $b \in S \Rightarrow S$ is a prime ideal.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Note. If R is a ring with unity, then R/S is also a ring with unity. The residue class $S+1$ is the unity element of R/S . Therefore if we define an integral domain as a commutative ring with unity and without zero divisors, even then the above theorem will be true. But in that case R must be a commutative ring with unity.

Theorem. Let R be a commutative ring with unity. Then every maximal ideal of R is a prime ideal.

(I.A.S. 1970; Karnatak 77; Gujrat 71; Calicut 75)

Proof. R is a commutative ring with unit element. Let S be a maximal ideal of R . Then R/S is a field.

Now every field is an integral domain. Therefore R/S is also an integral domain. Hence by theorem 1, S is a prime ideal of R . This completes the proof of the theorem.

But it should be noted that the converse of the above theorem is not true i.e., every prime ideal is not necessarily a maximum ideal.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let R be the field of real numbers and S the set of all

those polynomials $f(x) \in R[x]$ such that $f(0)=0=f(1)$. Prove that S is an ideal of $R[x]$. Is the residue class ring $R[x]/S$ an integral domain? Give reasons for your answer. (Gujrat 1970)

Solution. Let $f(x), g(x)$ be any elements of S . Then

$$f(0)=0=f(1) \text{ and } g(0)=0=g(1).$$

Let $h(x)=f(x)-g(x)$. Then

$$h(0)=f(0)-g(0)=0-0=0 \text{ and } h(1)=f(1)-g(1)=0-0=0.$$

Thus $h(0)=0=h(1)$. Therefore $h(x) \in S$.

Thus $f(x), g(x) \in S \Rightarrow h(x)=f(x)-g(x) \in S$.

Further let $f(x)$ be any element of S and $r(x)$ be any element of $R[x]$. Then $f(0)=0=f(1)$, by definition of S .

Let $t(x)=r(x)f(x)=f(x)r(x)$ [$\because R[x]$ is a commutative ring]

$$\text{Then } t(0)=r(0)f(0)=r(0) \cdot 0=0$$

$$\text{and } t(1)=r(1)f(1)=r(1) \cdot 0=0.$$

$$\therefore t(x) \in S.$$

Thus $r(x) \in R[x], f(x) \in S \Rightarrow r(x)f(x) \in S$.

Hence S is an ideal of $R[x]$.

Now we claim that S is not a prime ideal of $R[x]$. Let $f(x)=x(x-1)$. Then $f(0)=0(0-1)=0$, and $f(1)=1(1-1)=0$.

Thus $f(x)=x(x-1)$ is an element of S .

Now let $p(x)=x, q(x)=x-1$.

We have $p(1)=1 \neq 0$. Therefore $p(x) \notin S$. Also $q(0)=0-1=-1 \neq 0$. Therefore $q(x) \notin S$. Thus $x(x-1) \in S$ while neither $x \in S$ nor $x-1 \in S$. Hence S is not a prime ideal of $R[x]$.

Since S is not a prime ideal of $R[x]$, therefore the residue class ring $R[x]/S$ is not an integral domain.

Ex. 2. Let R be the ring of all real valued continuous functions defined on the closed interval $[0, 1]$. Let

$$M = \{f(x) \in R : f(\frac{1}{3}) = 0\}.$$

Show that M is a maximal ideal of R . (Guru Nanak 1982)

Solution. First of all we observe that M is non-empty because the real valued function $e(x)$ on $[0, 1]$ defined by

$$e(x) = 0 \quad \forall x \in [0, 1]$$

belongs to M .

Now let $f(x), g(x)$ be any two elements of M . Then $f(\frac{1}{3})=0, g(\frac{1}{3})=0$, by definition of M .

$$\text{Let } h(x)=f(x)-g(x). \text{ Then } h(\frac{1}{3})=f(\frac{1}{3})-g(\frac{1}{3})=0-0=0.$$

Therefore $h(x) \in M$.

Thus $f(x), g(x) \in M \Rightarrow h(x) = f(x) - g(x) \in M$.

Further let $f(x)$ be any element of M and $r(x)$ be any element of R . Then $f(\frac{1}{2}) = 0$, by definition of M .

Let $t(x) = r(x)f(x) = f(x)r(x)$. [$\because R$ is a commutative ring].

Then $t(\frac{1}{2}) = r(\frac{1}{2})f(\frac{1}{2}) = r(\frac{1}{2}) \cdot 0 = 0$. Therefore $t(x) \in M$.

Thus $r(x) \in R, f(x) \in M \Rightarrow r(x)f(x) \in M$.

Hence M is an ideal of R .

Clearly $M \neq R$ because $t(x) \in R$ given by $t(x) = 1 \forall x \in [0, 1]$ does not belong to M .

The ring R is with unity and the element $t(x)$ is its unity element.

Let N be an ideal of R properly containing M i.e., $M \subsetneq N$ and $M \neq N$. Then M will be a maximal ideal of R if $N = R$, which will be so if the unity $t(x)$ of R belongs to N . Since M is a proper subset of N , therefore there exists $\lambda(x) \in N$ such that $\lambda(x) \notin M$. This means $\lambda(\frac{1}{2}) \neq 0$. Put $\lambda(\frac{1}{2}) = c$ where $c \neq 0$.

Let us define $\beta(x) \in R$ by $\beta(x) = c \forall x \in [0, 1]$. Now consider $\mu(x) \in R$ given by $\mu(x) = \lambda(x) - \beta(x)$.

We have $\mu(\frac{1}{2}) = \lambda(\frac{1}{2}) - \beta(\frac{1}{2}) = c - c = 0$.

Therefore $\mu(x) \in M$ and so $\mu(x)$ also belongs to N because N is a super-set of M . Now N is an ideal of R and $\lambda(x), \mu(x)$ are in N . Therefore $\lambda(x) - \mu(x) = \beta(x)$ is also an element of N .

Now define $\gamma(x) \in R$ by $\gamma(x) = 1/c \forall x \in [0, 1]$. Since N is an ideal of R , therefore $\gamma(x) \in R$ and $\beta(x) \in N \Rightarrow \gamma(x)\beta(x) \in N$. We shall show that $\gamma(x)\beta(x) = t(x)$.

For every $x \in [0, 1]$, we have

$$\gamma(x)\beta(x) = (1/c)c = 1.$$

Therefore $\gamma(x)\beta(x) = t(x)$, by the definition of $t(x)$.

Thus the unity element $t(x)$ of R belongs to N and consequently $N = R$.

Hence M is a maximal ideal of R .

Ex. 3. If R is a finite commutative ring (i.e., has only a finite number of elements) with unit element prove that every prime ideal of R is a maximal ideal of R .

Solution. Let R be a finite commutative ring with unit element. Let S be a prime ideal of R . Then to prove that S is a maximal ideal of R .

Since S is a prime ideal of R , therefore the residue class ring R/S is an integral domain. Now

$$R/S = \{S + a : a \in R\}.$$

Since R is a finite ring, therefore R/S is a finite integral domain. But every finite integral domain is a field. Therefore R/S is a field. Since R is a commutative ring with unity and R/S is a field, therefore S is a maximal ideal of R .

Ex. 4. Give an example of a ring in which some prime ideal is not a maximal ideal. (I.A.S. 1970; Calicut 75)

Solution. Let $I[x]$ be the ring of polynomials over the ring of integers I . Let S be the principal ideal of $I[x]$ generated by x i.e., let $S=(x)$. We shall show that (x) is prime but not maximal. We have $S=(x)=\{x f(x) : f(x) \in I[x]\}$.

First we shall prove that S is prime.

Let $a(x), b(x) \in I[x]$ be such that $a(x) b(x) \in S$. Then there exists a polynomial $c(x) \in I[x]$ such that

$$xc(x) = a(x) b(x). \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{Let } a(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots, \quad b(x) = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots$$

$$c(x) = c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \dots. \text{ Then (1) becomes}$$

$$x(c_0 + c_1x + \dots) = (a_0 + a_1x + \dots)(b_0 + b_1x + \dots).$$

Equating the constant term on both sides, we get

$$a_0b_0 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_0 = 0 \text{ or } b_0 = 0 \quad [\because I \text{ is without zero divisors}]$$

$$\text{Now } a_0 = 0 \Rightarrow a(x) = a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots$$

$$\Rightarrow a(x) = x(a_1 + a_2x + \dots) \Rightarrow a(x) \in (x).$$

$$\text{Similarly } b_0 = 0 \Rightarrow b(x) = b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots$$

$$\Rightarrow b(x) = x(b_1 + b_2x + \dots) \Rightarrow b(x) \in (x).$$

$$\text{Thus } a(x) b(x) \in (x) \Rightarrow \text{either } a(x) \in (x) \text{ or } b(x) \in (x).$$

Hence (x) is a prime ideal.

Now we shall show that (x) is not a maximal ideal of $I[x]$. For this we must show an ideal N of $I[x]$ such that (x) is properly contained in N , while N itself is properly contained in $I[x]$. The ideal $N=(x, 2)$ serves this purpose.

Obviously $(x) \subseteq (x, 2)$. In order to show that (x) is properly contained in $(x, 2)$ we must show an element of $(x, 2)$ which is not in (x) . Clearly $2 \in (x, 2)$. We shall show that $2 \notin (x)$. Let $2 \in (x)$. Then we can write,

$$2 = xf(x) \text{ for some } f(x) \in I[x].$$

$$\text{Let } f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots$$

$$\text{Then } 2 = xf(x) \Rightarrow 2 = x(a_0 + a_1x + \dots)$$

$$\Rightarrow 2 = a_0x + a_1x^2 + \dots$$

$$\Rightarrow 2 = 0 + a_0x + a_1x^2 + \dots$$

$$\Rightarrow 2 = 0 \quad [\text{by equality of two polynomials}]$$

But $2 \neq 0$ in the ring of integers. Hence $2 \notin (x)$. Thus (x) is properly contained in $(x, 2)$.

Now obviously $(x, 2) \subseteq I[x]$. In order to show that $(x, 2)$ is properly contained in $I[x]$ we must show an element of $I[x]$ which is not in $(x, 2)$. Clearly $1 \in I[x]$. We shall show that $1 \notin (x, 2)$. Let $1 \in (x, 2)$. Then we have a relation of the form

$$1 = xf(x) + 2g(x), \quad \text{where } f(x), g(x) \in I[x].$$

$$\text{Let } f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots, g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + \dots$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } 1 &= x(a_0 + a_1x + \dots) + 2(b_0 + b_1x + \dots) \\ &\Rightarrow 1 = 2b_0 \quad [\text{Equating constant term on both sides}] \end{aligned}$$

But there is no integer b_0 such that $1 = 2b_0$.

Hence $1 \notin (x, 2)$. Thus $(x, 2)$ is properly contained in $I[x]$. Therefore (x) is not a maximal ideal of $I[x]$.

Exercises

1. If U is an ideal of a ring R , then prove that R/U is a ring and is a homomorphic image of R . (I.A.S. 1973; Meerut 89)
2. Let a be a given fixed real number and R be the ring of real numbers. Let ϕ be the mapping which associates with every polynomial $p(x)$ —with real coefficients—the real number $p(a)$. Show that ϕ is a homomorphism from the ring $R[x]$ onto the ring R . (I.A.S. 1975)
3. Let R be the ring of all the real-valued continuous functions on the closed interval $[0, 1]$ of the real line, the compositions being the usual pointwise addition and multiplication of functions. Let M be a subset of R defined by :

$$M = \{f \in R \mid f(\frac{1}{2}) = 0\}.$$

Prove that M is a maximal ideal of R .

(I.A.S. 1969, 73; Guru Nanak 90)

4. (a) Show that the set R of all elements of the form $m + in$, $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, form a ring for addition and multiplication of complex numbers. Here \mathbb{Z} is the ring of integers.
(b) Is the map $\theta : R \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$, $\theta(m + in) = m$, a ring homomorphism?
(c) Give an example of a proper ideal in R . (Poona 1973)
5. Let I be an ideal in a ring R . If R is an integral domain, is R/I also an integral domain? Justify. (Poona 1973)

§ 7. Euclidean Rings or Euclidean Domains.

Definition. Let R be an integral domain i.e., let R be a commutative ring without zero divisors. Then R is said to be a Euclidean ring if to every non-zero element $a \in R$ we can assign a non-negative integer $d(a)$ such that :

(I) For all $a, b \in R$, both non-zero, $d(ab) \geq d(a)$.

(II) For any $a, b \in R$ and $b \neq 0$, there exist $q, r \in R$ such that $a = qb + r$ where either $r = 0$ or $d(r) < d(b)$.

(I.A.S. 1973; Guru Nanak 82; Kanpur 80; Madras 83; Raj. 78; B.H.U. 87; Jabalpur 86; Andhra 75; Meerut 81, 82, 83, 84, 88, 90, 91)

The second part of the above definition is known as division algorithm. Also we do not assign a value to $d(0)$. Thus $d(a)$ will remain undefined when $a=0$. Also $d(a)$ will be called d -value of a and $d(a)$ must be some non-negative integer for every non-zero element $a \in R$.

Example 1. The ring of integers is a Euclidean ring.

[Banaras 1971; Meerut 81, 83, 84P, 87, 88, 90, 91]

Solution. Let $(I, +, \cdot)$ be the ring of integers where

$$I = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}.$$

Let the d function on the non-zero elements of I be defined as

$$d(a) = |a| \quad \forall 0 \neq a \in I.$$

Now if $0 \neq a \in I$, then $|a|$ is a non-negative integer. Thus we have assigned a non-negative integer to every non-zero element $a \in I$.

$$[d(-5) = |-5| = 5, d(-1) = |-1| = 1, d(4) = |4| = 4 \text{ etc.}]$$

Further if $a, b \in I$ and are both non zero, then

$$\begin{aligned} |ab| &= |a| |b| \\ \Rightarrow |ab| &\geq |a| \quad [\because |b| \geq 1 \text{ if } 0 \neq b \in I] \\ \Rightarrow d(ab) &\geq d(a). \end{aligned}$$

Finally we know that if $a \in I$ and $0 \neq b \in I$, then there exist two integers q and r such that

$$a = qb + r \text{ where } 0 \leq r < |b|$$

i.e., where either $r=0$ or $1 \leq r < |b|$

i.e., where either $r=0$ or $d(r) < d(b)$.

It should be noted that $d(b) = |b|$ and if r is a positive integer then $r = |r| = d(r)$.

Therefore the ring of integers is a Euclidean ring.

Example 2. The ring of polynomials over a field is a Euclidean ring. [Kanpur 1980; Madras 83; Meerut 83P, 86; Guru Nanak 90]

Solution. Let $F[x]$ be the ring of polynomials over a field F . Let the d function on the non-zero polynomials in $F[x]$ be defined as

$$d[f(x)] = \deg f(x), \quad \forall 0 \neq f(x) \in F[x].$$

Now if $0 \neq f(x) \in F[x]$, then $\deg f(x)$ is a non-negative integer

Thus we have assigned a non-negative integer to every non-zero element $f(x)$ in $F[x]$.

Further if $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ and are both non-zero polynomials, then

$$\begin{aligned}\deg [f(x) g(x)] &= \deg f(x) + \deg g(x) \\ \Rightarrow \deg [f(x) g(x)] &\geq \deg f(x) \quad [\because \deg g(x) \geq 0] \\ \Rightarrow d[f(x) g(x)] &\geq d[f(x)].\end{aligned}$$

Finally we know that if $f(x) \in F[x]$ and $0 \neq g(x) \in F[x]$, then there exist two polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ in $F[x]$ such that

$$f(x) = q(x) g(x) + r(x)$$

where either $r(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$

i.e., where either $r(x) = 0$ or $d[r(x)] < d[g(x)]$.

Hence the ring of polynomials over a field is a Euclidean ring.

Example 3. Every field is a Euclidean ring.

Solution. Let F be any field. Let the d function on the non-zero elements of F be defined as

$$d(a) = 0 \quad \forall \quad 0 \neq a \in F.$$

Thus we have assigned the integer zero to every non-zero element in F .

If a and b are two non-zero elements in F then ab is also a non-zero element in F . We have therefore

$$d(ab) = 0 = d(a).$$

Thus we have $d(ab) \geq d(a)$.

Finally if $a \in F$ and $0 \neq b \in F$, then we can write

$$a = (ab^{-1}) b + 0$$

i.e., $a = qb + r$ where $q = ab^{-1}$ and $r = 0$.

Hence every field is a Euclidean ring.

Example 4. The ring of Gaussian integers is a Euclidean ring.

[I.A.S. 1973, 90; Gujrat 70; Mysore 70; Delhi 70; Kanpur 80; G.N.D.U. 89; Meerut 79, 80, 81, 82P; B.H.U. 88]

Solution. Let $(G, +, \cdot)$ be the ring of Gaussian integers where $G = \{x + iy : x, y \in \mathbb{I}\}$.

Let the d function on the non-zero elements of G be defined as $d(x + iy) = x^2 + y^2 \quad \forall \quad 0 + i0 \neq x + iy \in G$.

Now if $x + iy$ is a non-zero element of G , then $(x^2 + y^2)$ is a non-negative integer. Thus we have assigned a non-negative integer to every non-zero element of G .

If $x + iy$ and $m + in$ are two non-zero elements of G , then

$$d[(x + iy)(m + in)] = d[(xm - ny) + i(my + xn)]$$

$$= (xm - ny)^2 + (my + xn)^2 = x^2 m^2 + n^2 y^2 + m^2 y^2 + x^2 n^2$$

$$= (x^2 + y^2) (m^2 + n^2)$$

$$\geq x^2 + y^2.$$

$$[\because m^2 + n^2 \geq 1]$$

$$\text{Thus } d[(x+iy)(m+in)] \geq d(x+iy).$$

Now to show the existence of division algorithm in G .

Let $\alpha \in G$ and let β be a non-zero element of G . Let $\alpha = x+iy$ and $\beta = m+in$. Define a complex number λ by the equation

$$\lambda = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} = \frac{x+iy}{m+in} = \frac{(x+iy)(m-in)}{m^2+n^2} = p+iq,$$

where p, q are rational numbers.

Here λ is not necessarily a Gaussian integer.

Also division by β is possible since $\beta \neq 0$.

Let p' and q' be the nearest integers to p and q respectively. Then obviously $|p-p'| \leq \frac{1}{2}$, $|q-q'| \leq \frac{1}{2}$.

Let $\lambda' = p' + iq'$. Then λ' is a Gaussian integer.

$$\text{Now } \lambda = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} \Rightarrow \alpha = \lambda\beta$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha = \lambda'\beta + \lambda\beta - \lambda'\beta.$$

$$\text{Thus } \alpha = \lambda'\beta + (\lambda - \lambda')\beta.$$

...(1)

Since α, β, λ' are Gaussian integers, therefore from (1) it implies that $(\lambda - \lambda')\beta$ is also a Gaussian integer.

Now if p and q are integers then $p=p', q=q'$.

So $\lambda - \lambda' = (p-p') + i(q-q') = 0 + i0$. Thus $(\lambda - \lambda')\beta = 0 + i0$.

If p and q are not both integers, then $(\lambda - \lambda')\beta$ is a non-zero Gaussian integer and we have

$$d[(\lambda - \lambda')\beta] = d\{[(p-p') + i(q-q')](m+in)\}$$

$$= [(p-p')^2 + (q-q')^2] (m^2 + n^2) = [(p-p')^2 + (q-q')^2] d(\beta)$$

$$\leq \left[\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4}\right] d(\beta) \quad [\because (p-p')^2 \leq \frac{1}{4}, (q-q')^2 \leq \frac{1}{4}]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} d(\beta) < d(\beta).$$

Thus $\alpha = \lambda'\beta + (\lambda - \lambda')\beta$ where λ' and $(\lambda - \lambda')\beta$ are Gaussian integers and either $(\lambda - \lambda')\beta = 0$

$$\text{or } d[(\lambda - \lambda')\beta] < d(\beta).$$

Hence the ring of Gaussian integers is a Euclidean ring.

§ 8. Properties of Euclidean rings.

Theorem 1. Every Euclidean ring is a principal ideal ring.

(I.A.S. 1972; Guru Nanak 87; Meerut 82 P, 84, 85, 87;

Kanpur 88; B.H.U. 87, 88; Madurai 78; Sambalpur 77;

Andhra 75; Raj. 77; Gujrat 70)

Proof. Let R be a Euclidean ring. Let S be an arbitrary ideal of R . If S is the null ideal, then $S=(0)$ i.e., the ideal of R generated by 0. Therefore S is a principal ideal. So let us suppose that S is not a null ideal. Then there exist elements in S not equal to zero. Let b be a non-zero element in S such that $d(b)$ is minimum i.e., there exists no element c in S such that $d(c) < d(b)$. We shall show that $S=(b)$ i.e., S is nothing but the ideal generated by b .

Let a be any element of S . Then by definition of Euclidean ring there exist elements q and r in R such that

$$a=qb+r \text{ where either } r=0 \text{ or } d(r) < d(b).$$

Now $q \in R$, $b \in S \Rightarrow qb \in S$ because S is an ideal.

Further $a \in S$, $qb \in S \Rightarrow a-qb=r \in S$.

Thus $r \in S$ and we have either $r=0$ or $d(r) < d(b)$.

If $r \neq 0$, then $d(r) < d(b)$ which contradicts our assumption that no element in S has d -value smaller than $d(b)$. Therefore we must have $r=0$.

Then $a=qb$.

Thus every element a in S is a multiple of the generating element b . Thus $a \in S \Rightarrow a \in (b)$. Therefore $S \subseteq (b)$.

Again if xb is any element of (b) , then $x \in R$.

Now $x \in R$, $b \in S \Rightarrow xb \in S$. Therefore $(b) \subseteq S$.

Hence $S=(b)$.

Thus every ideal S in R is a principal ideal. Therefore R is a principal ideal ring.

Theorem 2. Every Euclidean ring possesses unity element.

(Jabalpur 1986; Meerut 80, 81, 86, 87; Kanpur 87; B.H.U. 88)

Proof. Let R be a Euclidean ring. Obviously R is an ideal of R . Therefore there exists an element $u_0 \in R$ such that $R=(u_0)$ i.e., there exists an element $u_0 \in R$ such that every element in R is a multiple of u_0 . Since, in particular, $u_0 \in R$ therefore there exists an element $c \in R$ such that $u_0=u_0c$. We shall show that c is the required unity element. Let now a be any element of R . Since $a \in R$, therefore there exists some $x \in R$ such that $a=u_0x$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } ac &= (u_0x) c \quad [\because a=u_0x] \\ &= (u_0c) x \quad [\because R \text{ is a commutative ring}] \\ &= u_0x \quad [\because u_0=u_0c] \\ &= a \quad [\because a=u_0x]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have $ac=ca=a \forall a \in R$.

Hence c is the unity element.

Theorem 3. Let R be a Euclidean ring and a and b be any two elements in R , not both of which are zero. Then a and b have a greatest common divisor d which can be expressed in the form

$$d=\lambda a+\mu b \text{ for some } \lambda, \mu \in R.$$

(Kanpur 1987; Guru Nanak 88; Meerut 74, 76; Madras 83)

Proof. Consider the set

$$S=\{sa+tb : s, t \in R\}.$$

We claim that S is an ideal of R . The proof is as follows :

Let $x=s_1a+t_1b$, and $y=s_2a+t_2b$ be any two elements of S .

Then $s_1, t_1, s_2, t_2 \in R$. We have

$$x-y=(s_1a+t_1b)-(s_2a+t_2b)=(s_1-s_2)a+(t_1-t_2)b \in S$$

since s_1-s_2 and t_1-t_2 are both elements of R .

Thus S is a subgroup of R with respect to addition.

Also if u be any element of R , then

$$xu=ux=u(s_1a+t_1b)=(us_1)a+(ut_1)b \in S \text{ since } us_1, ut_1 \in R.$$

Therefore S is an ideal of R . Now every ideal in R is a principal ideal. Therefore there exists an element d in S such that every element in S is a multiple of d .

Since $d \in S$, therefore from (1), we see that there exists elements $\lambda, \mu \in R$ such that $d=\lambda a+\mu b$.

Now R is a ring with unity element 1.

\therefore Putting $s=1, t=0$ in (1), we see that $a \in S$. Also putting $s=0, t=1$ in (1), we see that $b \in S$.

Now a, b are elements of S . Therefore they are both multiples of d . Hence $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$.

Now suppose $c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$.

Then $c \mid \lambda a$ and $c \mid \mu b$. Therefore c is also a divisor of $\lambda a+\mu b$ i.e., c is a divisor of d .

Thus d is a greatest common divisor of a and b .

Theorem 4. Let a, b and c be any elements of a Euclidean ring R . Let $(a, b)=1$ i.e., let the greatest common divisor of a and b be 1. If $a \mid bc$, then $a \mid c$. (Kumayun 1977; Madras 83; Kanpur 86)

Proof. If the greatest common divisor of a and b is 1, then by theorem 3 there exist elements λ and μ in R such that

$$1=\lambda a+\mu b. \quad \dots(1)$$

Multiplying both members of (1) by c , we get

$$c=\lambda ac+\mu bc. \quad \dots(2)$$

But $a \mid bc$, so there exists an element $q \in R$ such that
 $bc = qa$.

Substituting this value of bc in (2), we get

$$c = \lambda ac + \mu qa = (\lambda c + \mu q) a,$$

which shows that a is a divisor of c . Hence the theorem

Theorem 5. *If p is a prime element in the Euclidean ring R and $p \mid ab$ where $a, b \in R$ then p divides at least one of a or b .*

Proof. If p divides a , we are nothing to prove. So suppose that p does not divide a . Since p is prime and p does not divide a , therefore p and a are relatively prime i.e., the greatest common divisor of p and a is 1. Hence by theorem 4, we get that $p \mid b$.

Corollary. *If p is a prime element in the Euclidean ring R and p divides the product $a_1 a_2 \dots a_n$ of elements in R , then p divides at least one of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n .*

The result follows immediately by repeated application of theorem 5.

Theorem 6. *Let R be a Euclidean ring. Let a and b be two non-zero elements in R . Then*

(i) *if b is a unit in R , $d(ab) = d(a)$.*

(ii) *if b is not a unit in R , $d(ab) > d(a)$.*

(Meerut 1982, 83, 90, 91)

Proof. (i) By the definition of Euclidean ring, we have

$$d(ab) \geq d(a). \quad \dots(1)$$

Now suppose that b is a unit in R . Then b is invertible and b^{-1} exists. We can write

$$a = (ab) b^{-1}.$$

$$\therefore d(a) = d[(ab) b^{-1}].$$

But by the definition of Euclidean ring, we have

$$d[(ab) b^{-1}] \geq d(ab).$$

$$\therefore d(a) \geq d(ab). \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we conclude that

$$d(ab) = d(a).$$

(ii) Suppose now that b is not a unit in R . Since a and b are non-zero elements of the Euclidean ring R , therefore ab is also a non-zero element of R . Now $a \in R$ and $0 \neq ab \in R$, therefore by definition of Euclidean ring there exist elements q and r in R such that

$$a = q(ab) + r \quad \dots(3)$$

where either $r = 0$ or $d(r) < d(ab)$.

If $r=0$, then

$$a=qab$$

$$\Rightarrow a-qab=0 \Rightarrow a(1-qb)=0$$

$$\Rightarrow 1-qb=0 \quad [\because a \neq 0 \text{ and } R \text{ is free of zero divisors}]$$

$$\Rightarrow qb=1 \Rightarrow b \text{ is invertible} \Rightarrow b \text{ is a unit in } R.$$

Thus we get a contradiction. Hence r cannot be zero. Therefore we must have

$$d(r) < d(ab)$$

$$\text{i.e.,} \quad d(ab) > d(r). \quad \dots(4)$$

Also from (3), we have $r=a-qab=a(1-qb)$.

$$\therefore d(r)=d[a(1-qb)].$$

But $d[a(1-qb)] \geq d(a)$.

$$\therefore d(r) \geq d(a). \quad \dots(5)$$

From (4) and (5), we conclude that $d(ab) > d(a)$.

Theorem 7. *The necessary and sufficient condition that the non-zero element a in the Euclidean ring R is a unit is that*

$$d(a)=d(1).$$

Proof Let a be a unit in R . Then to prove that $d(a)=d(1)$.

By the definition of Euclidean ring

$$d(1a) \geq d(1)$$

$$\Rightarrow d(a) \geq d(1). \quad (1)$$

Since a is a unit in R , therefore a^{-1} exists and we have

$$1=aa^{-1}.$$

$$\Rightarrow d(1)=d(aa^{-1}).$$

But $d(aa^{-1}) \geq d(a)$.

$$\therefore d(1) \geq d(a). \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we conclude that $d(a)=d(1)$.

Conversely let $d(a)=d(1)$. Then to prove that a is a unit in R . If a is not a unit in R , then by theorem 6, we have

$$d(1a) > d(1)$$

$$\Rightarrow d(a) > d(1).$$

Thus we get a contradiction. Hence a must be a unit in R .

Theorem 8. *Let R be a Euclidean ring. Then every non-zero element in R is either a unit in R or can be written as a product of a finite number of prime elements of R .*

(I.A.S. 1971; Meerut 75)

Proof. Let a be a non-zero element of R . We are to prove that either a is a unit in R or it can be written as a product of a finite number of prime elements of R . We shall prove the result

by induction on $d(a)$ i.e., by induction on the d -value of a .

Let us first start the induction. We have $a=1a$. Therefore $d(a) \geq d(1)$. Thus 1 is an element in R which has the minimal d -value. If $d(a)=d(1)$, then a is a unit in R . [See theorem 7]. Thus the result of the theorem is true if $d(a)=d(1)$ and so we have started the induction.

Now assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true for all non-zero elements $x \in R$ such that $d(x) < d(a)$. Then we shall show that the theorem is true for a also. If a is a prime element of R , the theorem is obviously true. So suppose that a is not prime. Then we can write $a=bc$ where neither b nor c is a unit in R . Since both b and c are not units in R , therefore $d(bc) > d(b)$ and $d(bc) > d(c)$. But $d(a)=d(bc)$. Therefore we have $d(b) < d(a)$ and $d(c) < d(a)$. So by our induction hypothesis each of b and c can be written as a product of a finite number of prime elements of R . Let $b=p_1p_2 \dots p_n$, $c=q_1q_2 \dots q_m$ where the p 's and q 's are prime elements of R . Then

$$a=bc=p_1p_2 \dots p_n q_1q_2 \dots q_m.$$

Thus we have written a as a product of a finite number of prime elements of R . This completes the induction and so the theorem has been proved.

Theorem 9. Unique Factorization theorem. *Let R be a Euclidean ring and a be a non-zero non-unit element in R . Suppose that*

$$a=p_1p_2 \dots p_m=q_1q_2 \dots q_n$$

where the p 's and q 's are prime elements of R . Then $m=n$ and each p is an associate of some q and each q is an associate of some p .

Proof. We have $p_1p_2 \dots p_m=q_1q_2 \dots q_n$. Now p_1 is a divisor of $p_1p_2 \dots p_m$. Therefore p_1 is also a divisor of $q_1q_2 \dots q_n$. By Cor. to Theorem 5, p_1 must divide at least one of q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n . Since R is a commutative ring, therefore without loss of generality we may suppose that p_1 divides q_1 . But p_1 and q_1 are both prime elements in R . Therefore p_1 and q_1 must be associates and we have $q_1=up_1$ where u is a unit in R . Thus we have

$$p_1p_2 \dots p_m=up_1q_2 \dots q_n.$$

Cancelling $0 \neq p_1$ from both sides, we get

$$p_2p_3 \dots p_m=uq_2q_3 \dots q_n. \quad \dots (1)$$

Now we can repeat the above argument on the relation (1) with p_2 . If $n > m$, then after m steps the left hand side becomes 1 while the right hand side reduces to a product of some units in

R and certain number of q 's (the excess of n over m). But the q 's are prime elements of R and so they are not units in R . So the product of some units in R and certain number of q 's cannot be equal to 1. Therefore n cannot be greater than m .

Thus $n \leq m$.

Similarly interchanging the roles of p 's and q 's we get

$$m \leq n. \text{ Hence } m = n.$$

Also in the above process we have shown that every p is an associate of some q and conversely every q is an associate of some p . Hence the theorem has been completely established.

Note. Combining theorems 8 and 9, we can say that every non-zero element in a Euclidean ring R can be uniquely written (upto associates) as a product of prime elements or is a unit in R . Therefore a Euclidean ring is a Unique Factorization Domain.

(Dibrugarh 1967; Meerut 1973)

Theorem 10. An ideal S of the Euclidean ring R is maximal iff S is generated by some prime element of R .

(I.A.S. 1972; Meerut 89; Calicut 75)

Proof. We know that every ideal of a Euclidean ring R is a principal ideal. Suppose S is an ideal of R generated by p so that $S = (p)$. Now we are to prove that

(i) S is maximal if p is a prime element of R .

(ii) p is prime if S is maximal.

First we shall prove (i). Let p be a prime element of R such that $(p) = S$. Let T be an ideal of R such that $S \subseteq T \subseteq R$. Since T is also a principal ideal of R , so let $T = (q)$ where $q \in R$.

$$\text{Now } S \subseteq T \Rightarrow (p) \subseteq (q) \Rightarrow p \in (q)$$

$$\Rightarrow p = xq \text{ for some } x \in R \Rightarrow q \mid p.$$

Since p is prime, therefore either q should be a unit in R or q should be an associate of p .

If q is a unit in R , then $T = (q) = R$.

If q is an associate of p , then $T = (q) = (p) = S$.

Thus either $T = R$ or $T = S$.

Now we shall prove (ii). Let $(p) = S$ be a maximal ideal. We are to show that p is prime. Let us suppose that p is composite i.e., p is not prime.

Let $p = mn$ where neither m nor n is a unit in R .

$$\text{Now } p = mn \Rightarrow m \mid p$$

$$\Rightarrow (p) \subseteq (m).$$

But $(m) \subseteq R$. Therefore we have $(p) \subseteq (m) \subseteq R$.

But (p) is a maximal ideal, therefore we should have either $(m) = (p)$ or $(m) = R$.

If $R = (m)$, then $R \subseteq (m)$.

$$\therefore 1 \in R \Rightarrow 1 \in (m)$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 = ym \text{ for some } y \in R$$

$$\Rightarrow m \text{ is invertible} \Rightarrow m \text{ is a unit in } R.$$

Thus we get a contradiction.

If $(m) = (p)$, then $m \in (p)$. Therefore $m = lp$ for some $l \in R$.

$$\therefore p = mn = lpn = pln.$$

$$\therefore p(1 - ln) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 - ln = 0 \quad [\because p \neq 0 \text{ and } R \text{ is without zero divisors}]$$

$$\Rightarrow ln = 1 \Rightarrow n \text{ is invertible} \Rightarrow n \text{ is a unit in } R.$$

This is again a contradiction. Hence p must be a prime element of R .

§ 9. Polynomial rings over Unique Factorization Domains.

We have already defined a unique factorization domain. For the sake of convenience we repeat the definition here.

Unique Factorization Domain. Definition. *An integral domain R , with unity element 1 is a unique factorization domain if*

(a) *any non-zero element in R is either a unit or can be written as the product of a finite number of irreducible (prime) elements of R .*

(b) *the decomposition in part (a) is unique upto the order and associates of the irreducible elements.*

[Agra 1986; Jabalpur 86; Meerut 70; Calicut 75; B.H.U. 87]

In general commutative rings we have defined the greatest common divisors of elements. But the difficulty is that in an arbitrary commutative ring these might not exist. However, in unique factorization domain their existence is assured. Further we know that in an integral domain with unity in case a greatest common divisor of some elements exists, it is unique apart from the distinction between associates.

Theorem 1. *Let R be a unique factorization domain and a and b be any two elements in R , not both of which are zero. Then a and b have a greatest common divisor (a, b) in R . Moreover, if a and b are relatively prime (i.e., (a, b) is a unit in R), then $a \mid bc \Rightarrow a \mid c$.*

Proof. Suppose a and b are any two elements, not both of

which are zero, of a unique factorization domain R . If one of a and b , say, b is 0, then obviously a is the greatest common divisor of a and b . If any of a and b , say a , is a unit in R , then obviously a is the greatest common divisor of a and b . So let us suppose that neither $a=0$ nor $b=0$ and none of these is a unit in R . Then each of a and b can be uniquely expressed as the product of a finite number of irreducible elements of R . Let

$$a = p_1^{m_1} p_2^{m_2} \dots p_r^{m_r}, \quad \dots (1)$$

and

$$b = p_1^{n_1} p_2^{n_2} \dots p_r^{n_r}, \quad \dots (2)$$

where we have arranged the expressions in such a way that the same irreducible factors p_1, p_2, \dots, p_r appear in both. Note that we can definitely do so because the integer 0 can be used as power in any case, if necessary. The elements p_1, p_2, \dots, p_r are all different primes and $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_r, n_1, n_2, \dots, n_r$ are all integers ≥ 0 .

Let $g_i = \text{minimum } (m_i, n_i)$, where $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$. Then obviously

$$p_1^{g_1} p_2^{g_2} \dots p_r^{g_r}$$

is the greatest common divisor of a and b .

This proves the existence of greatest common divisor.

Now suppose that a and b are relatively prime i.e., the greatest common divisor of a and b is a unit in R . Also suppose that $a \mid bc$.

If a is a unit in R , then obviously a is a divisor of c . So let a be not a unit in R . Then a can be uniquely expressed as the product of a finite number of prime elements of R . Let

$$a = q_1 q_2 \dots q_s,$$

where q_1, q_2, \dots, q_s are prime elements of R .

We have

$$\begin{aligned} a \mid bc &\Rightarrow bc = ka \text{ for some } k \in R \\ &\Rightarrow bc = k q_1 q_2 \dots q_s. \end{aligned} \quad \dots (3)$$

Since each element of R can be uniquely expressed as the product of a finite number of prime elements of R , therefore each of the prime elements q_1, q_2, \dots, q_s must occur as a factor of either b or c . But none of q_1, q_2, \dots, q_s can be a factor of b because otherwise a and b will not remain relatively prime. Therefore each of q_1, q_2, \dots, q_s must be a factor of c . Hence

$$q_1 q_2 \dots q_s \text{ is a divisor of } c \Rightarrow a \mid c.$$

Note. In a similar manner we can prove that if a_1, \dots, a_n are any n elements of a unique factorization domain, they possess

a greatest common divisor which will be unique apart from the distinction between associates. Thus if g_1, g_2 are two greatest common divisors of these n elements, then by the definition of greatest common divisor, we have

$$\begin{aligned} g_1 &| g_2 \text{ and } g_2 | g_1 \\ \Rightarrow g_1 &\text{ and } g_2 \text{ are associates} \\ \Rightarrow g_1 &= ug_2 \text{ where } u \text{ is a unit in } R. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the greatest common divisor of some elements is unique within units of R .

Theorem 2. *If a is a prime element of a unique factorization domain R and b, c are any elements of R , then*

$$a | bc \Rightarrow a | b \text{ or } a | c.$$

Proof. If $a | b$, then obviously the theorem is proved. So let a be not a divisor of b . Since a is a prime element of R and a is not a divisor of b , therefore we claim that a and b are relatively prime. Since a is a prime element of R , therefore the only divisors of a are the associates of a or the units of R . Now an associate of a cannot be a divisor of b otherwise a itself will be a divisor of b while we have assumed that a is not a divisor of b . Thus the units of R are the only divisors of a which also divide b . Therefore the greatest common divisor of a and b is a unit of R .

Since a and b are relatively prime, therefore by theorem 1, we have

$$a | bc \Rightarrow a | c.$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Polynomial rings over unique factorization domains. Let R be a unique factorization domain. Since R is an integral domain with unity, therefore $R[x]$ is also an integral domain with unity. Also any unit, (invertible element) in $R[x]$ must already be a unit in R . Thus the only units in $R[x]$ are the units of R . A polynomial $p(x) \in R[x]$ is *irreducible* over R i.e., irreducible as an element of $R[x]$ if whenever $p(x) = a(x)b(x)$ with $a(x), b(x) \in R[x]$, then one of $a(x)$ or $b(x)$ is a unit in $R[x]$ i.e., a unit in R . For example, if I is the ring of integers, then I is a unique factorization domain. The polynomial $2x^2 + 4 \in I[x]$ is a reducible element of $I[x]$. We have $2x^2 + 4 = 2(x^2 + 2)$. Neither 2 nor $x^2 + 2$ is a unit in $I[x]$. On the other hand the polynomial $x^2 + 1 \in I[x]$ is an irreducible element of $I[x]$.

Content of a polynomial.

Definition. Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n$ be a polynomial

over a unique factorization domain R . Then the content of $f(x)$ denoted by $c(f)$, is defined as the greatest common divisor of the coefficients a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n of $f(x)$. Obviously the content of $f(x)$ is unique within units of R . Thus if c_1 and c_2 are two contents of $f(x)$, then we must have $c_1 = uc_2$ where u is some unit in R .

Primitive polynomial. Definition. Let R be a unique factorization domain. Then a polynomial $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n \in R[x]$ is said to be primitive if the greatest common divisor of its coefficients a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n is a unit in R . Thus a polynomial $f(x)$ is primitive if its content is 1 (that is a unit in R). If

$$f(x) = x^n + a_1x^{n-1} + \dots + a_{n-1}x + a_n$$

is a monic polynomial over R , then obviously $f(x)$ is primitive.

If I is the ring of integers, then $3x^3 - 5x^2 + 7$ is a primitive member of $I[x]$ while $2x^2 - 4x + 8$ is not a primitive member of $I[x]$.

Every irreducible polynomial of positive degree belonging to $R[x]$ is necessarily primitive. But an irreducible polynomial of zero degree may not be primitive. For example $3 \in I[x]$ is irreducible but it is not primitive. Further a primitive polynomial may not be irreducible. For example $x^2 + 5x + 6 \in I[x]$ is primitive and it is not irreducible. We have $x^2 + 5x + 6 = (x+2)(x+3)$.

Theorem 3. Let R be a unique factorization domain. Prove that every non-zero member $f(x)$ of $R[x]$ can be written as $f(x) = gf_1(x)$ where $g = c(f)$ and where $f_1(x)$ is primitive. Also prove that this decomposition of $f(x)$ as an element of R by a primitive polynomial in $R[x]$ is unique apart from the distinction between associates.

Proof. Let R be a unique factorization domain and let

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n \in R[x].$$

Since R is a unique factorization domain, therefore the elements $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in R$ must possess a greatest common divisor. Let $g \in R$ be the greatest common divisor of these elements. Then $g = c(f)$. Let

$$a_i = gb_i \text{ where } i = 0, 1, \dots, n.$$

$$\text{Then } f(x) = gb_0 + gb_1x + \dots + gb_nx^n = g[b_0 + b_1x + \dots + b_nx^n].$$

Since g is the greatest common divisor of a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n , therefore the elements b_0, b_1, \dots, b_n can have no common factor other than units of R . Consequently the polynomial

$$f_1(x) = b_0 + b_1x + \dots + b_nx^n$$

is a primitive member of $R[x]$. Thus we have $f(x) = gf_1(x)$, where

$g \in R$ and $f_1(x) \in R[x]$ is primitive.

Now we come to the uniqueness part of the theorem.

If possible, let

$$f(x) = h f_2(x) \text{ where } h \in R \text{ and } f_2(x) \in R[x]$$

is primitive.

$$\text{Then } g f_1(x) = h f_2(x) \quad \dots (1)$$

Since $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$ are both primitive, therefore the content of the polynomial on the left hand side of (1) is g and the content of the polynomial on the right hand side of (1) is h . But the content of a polynomial is unique upto associates. Therefore g and h are associates

$$\Rightarrow g = hu \text{ where } u \text{ is some unit in } R$$

$$\Rightarrow hu f_1(x) = h f_2(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow u f_1(x) = f_2(x)$$

[by left cancellation law in the integral domain $R[x]$, since $h \neq 0$]

$$\Rightarrow f_1(x) \text{ and } f_2(x) \text{ are associates.}$$

Hence the theorem.

Theorem 4. *If R is a unique factorization domain, then the product of two primitive polynomials in $R[x]$ is again a primitive polynomial in $R[x]$.*

[Madras 1983; Guru Nanak 82; Jabalpur 86; B.H.U. 88]

Proof. Let

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n$$

and

$$g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + \dots + b_mx^m$$

be two primitive polynomials in $R[x]$.

$$\text{Let } h(x) = f(x)g(x) = c_0 + c_1x + \dots + c_{m+n}x^{m+n}.$$

Suppose $h(x)$ is not primitive. Then all the coefficients of $h(x)$ must be divisible by some prime element p of R . Since $f(x)$ is primitive, therefore the prime element p must not divide some coefficient of $f(x)$. Let a_i be the first coefficient of $f(x)$ which p does not divide. Similarly let b_j be the first coefficient of $g(x)$ which p does not divide. In $f(x)g(x)$, the coefficient of x^{i+j} is

$$c_{i+j} = a_ib_j + (a_{i-1}b_{j+1} + a_{i-2}b_{j+2} + \dots + a_0b_{i+j}) \\ + (a_{i+1}b_{j-1} + a_{i+2}b_{j-2} + \dots + a_{i+j}b_0).$$

From this relation, we get

$$a_ib_j = c_{i+j} - (a_{i-1}b_{j+1} + a_{i-2}b_{j+2} + \dots + a_0b_{i+j}) \\ - (a_{i+1}b_{j-1} + a_{i+2}b_{j-2} + \dots + a_{i+j}b_0) \quad \dots (1)$$

Now by our choice of a_i , p is a divisor of each of the elements a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{i-1} . Therefore $p \mid (a_{i-1}b_{j+1} + a_{i-2}b_{j+2} + \dots + a_0b_{i+j})$.

Similarly, by our choice of b_j , p is a divisor of each of the elements b_0, b_1, \dots, b_{j-1} . Therefore $p \mid (a_{i+1} b_{j-1} + a_{i+2} b_{j-2} + \dots + a_{i+j} b_0)$.

Also by assumption $p \mid c_{i+j}$.

Hence from (1), we get

$$p \mid a_i b_j$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid a_i \text{ or } p \mid b_j, \text{ since } p \text{ is a prime element of } R.$$

But this is nonsense because according to our assumption p is not a divisor of a_i and also p is not a divisor of b_j .

Hence $h(x)$ must be primitive. This proves the theorem.

Theorem 5. *If R is a unique factorization domain and if $f(x), g(x)$ are in $R[x]$, then*

$$c(fg) = c(f) c(g) \text{ (upto units).}$$

Proof. The polynomial $f(x)$ in $R[x]$ can be written as $f(x) = a f_1(x)$, where $a = c(f)$ and $f_1(x)$ is primitive. Similarly the polynomial $g(x)$ can be written as $g(x) = b g_1(x)$, where $b = c(g)$ and $g_1(x)$ is primitive. Then

$$f(x) g(x) = ab f_1(x) g_1(x). \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $f_1(x)$ and $g_1(x)$ are both primitive, therefore $f_1(x) g_1(x)$ is also primitive. [Refer theorem 4].

Therefore from (1), we see that the content of $f(x) g(x)$ is either ab or some associate of ab . Thus the content of $f(x) g(x)$ is ab (upto units). Therefore

$$c(fg) = ab = c(f) c(g).$$

This proves the theorem

Field of Quotients of a unique factorization domain. If R is a unique factorization domain, then R is necessarily an integral domain. Therefore R has a field of quotients. Throughout this section we shall denote the field of quotients of R by F . We can consider $R[x]$ to be a subring of $F[x]$.

Theorem 6. *If R is an integral domain (not necessarily a unique factorization domain) and F is its field of quotients, then any element $f(x)$ in $F[x]$ can be written as*

$$f(x) = \frac{f_0(x)}{a},$$

where $f_0(x) \in R[x]$ and where $a \in R$.

Proof. Let F be the field of quotients of an integral domain R . Then

$$F = \left\{ \frac{p}{q} : p \in R, 0 \neq q \in R \right\}.$$

Let $f(x)$ be an element of $F[x]$. Let

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{b_0} + \frac{a_1}{b_1} x + \dots + \frac{a_n}{b_n} x^n, \text{ where } a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in R$$

and b_0, b_1, \dots, b_n are non-zero elements of R .

Now b_0, b_1, \dots, b_n are also non-zero elements of F . So each of them must be invertible. Further $b_0 b_1 \dots b_n$ is also a non-zero element of F and so it is also invertible. Then we can write

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{b_0 b_1 \dots b_n}{b_0 b_1 \dots b_n} \left(\frac{a_0}{b_0} + \frac{a_1}{b_1} x + \dots + \frac{a_n}{b_n} x^n \right) \\ &= \frac{(a_0 b_1 b_2 \dots b_n) + (b_0 a_1 b_2 \dots b_n) x + \dots + (b_0 b_1 \dots b_{n-1} a_n) x^n}{b_0 b_1 \dots b_n} \\ &= \frac{f_0(x)}{a} \end{aligned}$$

where obviously $f_0(x) = (a_0 b_1 b_2 \dots b_n) + (b_0 a_1 b_2 \dots b_n) x + \dots + (b_0 b_1 \dots b_{n-1} a_n) x^n$ is in $R[x]$ and $a = b_0 b_1 \dots b_n$ is in R .

Theorem 7. (Gauss' Lemma). *Let F be the field of quotients of a unique factorization domain R . If the primitive polynomial $f(x) \in R[x]$ can be factored as the product of two polynomials having coefficients in F , then it can be factored as the product of two polynomials having coefficients in R .*

Proof. Let R be a unique factorization domain and F be its field of quotients. Let $f(x) \in R[x]$ be primitive.

Let $f(x) = g(x) h(x)$ where $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ have coefficients in F . Since $g(x), h(x) \in F[x]$, therefore we can write

$$g(x) = \frac{g_0(x)}{a}, \quad h(x) = \frac{h_0(x)}{b},$$

where $a, b \in R$ and where $g_0(x), h_0(x) \in R[x]$.

Also $g_0(x) = \alpha g_1(x)$, $h_0(x) = \beta h_1(x)$, where $\alpha = c(g_0)$, $\beta = c(h_0)$ and where $g_1(x), h_1(x)$ are primitive members of $R[x]$. [See theorem 3].

$$\text{Thus } f(x) = \frac{\alpha\beta}{ab} g_1(x) h_1(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow ab f(x) = \alpha\beta g_1(x) h_1(x). \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $g_1(x)$ and $h_1(x)$ are both primitive members of $R[x]$, therefore $g_1(x) h_1(x)$ is also a primitive member of $R[x]$. Therefore from (1), we conclude that $f(x)$ and $g_1(x) h_1(x)$ are associates in $R[x]$. (See theorem 3). Thus

$f(x) = u g_1(x) h_1(x)$ where u is a unit in $R[x]$ and so a unit of R .

Now $u \in R$, $g_1(x) \in R[x] \Rightarrow ug_1(x)$ is a member of $R[x]$. Also $h_1(x)$ is a member of $R[x]$. Hence $f(x)$ can be factored as the product of two polynomials with coefficients in R .

Note. Let I be the ring of integers. Then I is a Euclidean ring and so a unique factorization domain. The field of quotients of I is the field of rational numbers. If in the above theorem we take I in place of R , then the statement of the theorem is as follows :

If the primitive polynomial $f(x) \in I[x]$ can be factored as the product of two polynomials having rational coefficients it can be factored as the product of two polynomials having integer coefficients.

For its proof simply replace R by I or say, 'let R be the ring of integers'.

Theorem 8. Let F be the field of quotients of a unique factorization domain R . If $f(x) \in R[x]$ is both primitive and irreducible as an element of $R[x]$, then it is irreducible as an element of $F[x]$. Conversely, if the primitive element $f(x)$ in $R[x]$ is irreducible as an element of $F[x]$, it is also irreducible as an element of $R[x]$.

Proof. Let $f(x)$ be a primitive member of $R[x]$. Suppose $f(x)$ is irreducible in $R[x]$ but is reducible in $F[x]$. Since F is a field and $f(x)$ is reducible in $F[x]$, therefore we must have $f(x) = g(x)h(x)$, where $g(x), h(x)$ are in $F[x]$ and are of positive degree. Now we can write

$$g(x) = \frac{g_0(x)}{a}, \quad h(x) = \frac{h_0(x)}{b},$$

where $a, b \in R$, and where $g_0(x), h_0(x) \in R[x]$.

Also $g_0(x) = \alpha g_1(x)$, $h_0(x) = \beta h_1(x)$ where $\alpha = c(g_0)$, $\beta = c(h_0)$, and where $g_1(x), h_1(x)$ are primitive members of $R[x]$. [See theorem 3]. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{\alpha\beta}{ab} g_1(x) h_1(x) \\ &= ab f(x) = \alpha\beta g_1(x) h_1(x). \end{aligned} \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $g_1(x)$ and $h_1(x)$ are both primitive members of $R[x]$, therefore $g_1(x)h_1(x)$ is also a primitive member of $R[x]$. Therefore from (1), we conclude that $f(x)$ and $g_1(x)h_1(x)$ are associates in $R[x]$. [See theorem 3]. Thus $f(x) = ug_1(x)h_1(x)$ where u is a unit in $R[x]$ and so a unit in R .

Let $ug_1(x) = g_2(x)$. Then

$$f(x) = g_2(x)h_1(x), \text{ where } g_2(x), h_1(x) \in R[x].$$

We have

$\deg g_2(x) = \deg g(x)$, and $\deg h_1(x) = \deg h(x)$.

Thus $\deg g_2(x) > 0$, $\deg h_1(x) > 0$.

Therefore neither $g_2(x)$ nor $h_1(x)$ is a unit in $R[x]$.

Thus $f(x) = g_2(x) h_1(x)$ is a proper factorization of $f(x)$ in $R[x]$. This contradicts the given statement that $f(x)$ is irreducible in $R[x]$. Hence $f(x)$ must be irreducible in $F[x]$.

Converse. Suppose $f(x)$ is a primitive member of $R[x]$ and is irreducible as an element of $F[x]$. Then to prove that $f(x)$ is also irreducible as an element of $R[x]$. Let

$$f(x) = g(x) h(x), \text{ where } g(x), h(x) \in R[x].$$

Then $f(x)$ will be irreducible in $R[x]$ if one of $g(x)$ or $h(x)$ is a unit in $R[x]$ i.e., a unit in R .

Now $g(x), h(x) \in R[x]$ can also be treated as $g(x), h(x) \in F[x]$.

Since $f(x)$ is irreducible as an element of $F[x]$, therefore one of $g(x)$ or $h(x)$ must be of degree 0. Suppose $\deg g(x) = 0$. Then $g(x)$ is a constant polynomial.

Let $g(x) = k \in R$. Then

$$f(x) = kh(x).$$

Now $f(x)$ is a primitive member of $R[x]$. Therefore $c(f)$ is a unit in R . If k is not a unit in R , then content of $kh(x)$ cannot be a unit in R and so it cannot be equal to $c(f)$. Hence k must be a unit in R . Consequently $f(x)$ is irreducible as an element of $R[x]$.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Theorem 9. Let F be the field of quotients of a unique factorization domain R . If $f_1(x), f_2(x)$ are two primitive members of $R[x]$ and are associates in $F[x]$, then they are also associates in $R[x]$.

Proof. Since $f_1(x), f_2(x)$ are associates in $F[x]$, therefore we have

$$f_1(x) = kf_2(x) \text{ where } 0 \neq k \in F$$

i.e., k is a unit in $F[x]$.

Note that the only units of $F[x]$ are the non-zero elements of F .

Now F is the field of quotients of R . Therefore

$$0 \neq k \in F \Rightarrow k = \frac{g}{h} \text{ where } g, 0 \neq h \in R.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore f_1(x) &= \frac{g}{h} f_2(x) \\ &\Rightarrow hf_1(x) = gf_2(x).\end{aligned}$$

Since $h, g \in R$ and $f_1(x), f_2(x)$ are primitive members of $R[x]$, therefore by theorem 3, $f_1(x)$ and $f_2(x)$ are associates in $R[x]$.

Theorem 10. *If R is a unique factorization domain and if $p(x)$ is a primitive polynomial in $R[x]$, then it can be factored in a unique way as the product of irreducible elements in $R[x]$. (Meerut 1970)*

Hence show that the polynomial ring $R[x]$ over a unique factorization domain R is itself a unique factorization domain.

(Jabalpur 1986; Calicut 75; Agra 86; B.H.U. 87)

Proof. Let F be the field of quotients of a unique factorization domain R . Let $p(x)$ be a primitive member of $R[x]$. We can regard $p(x)$ as a member of $F[x]$. Since F is a field, therefore $F[x]$ is a unique factorization domain. Recall that the ring of polynomials over a field is a unique factorization domain. Therefore $p(x) \in F[x]$ can be factored as

$$p(x) = p_1(x) p_2(x) \dots p_k(x), \text{ where}$$

$p_1(x), p_2(x), \dots, p_k(x)$ are irreducible polynomials in $F[x]$. Now

each $p_i(x)$, $1 \leq i \leq k$, can be written as $p_i(x) = \frac{f_i(x)}{a_i}$, where

$a_i \in R$ and $f_i(x) \in R[x]$. Further $f_i(x)$ can be written as

$$f_i(x) = c_i q_i(x),$$

where $c_i \in R$ and $q_i(x)$ is a primitive member of $R[x]$. Thus each

$$p_i(x) = \frac{c_i}{a_i} q_i(x), \text{ where } c_i, a_i \in R \text{ and } q_i(x) \text{ is a primitive member}$$

of $R[x]$. Since $p_i(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$, therefore $q_i(x)$ must also be irreducible in $F[x]$. Now $q_i(x)$ is a primitive member of $R[x]$ and $q_i(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$. Therefore, by converse part of theorem 8, $q_i(x)$ is irreducible in $R[x]$.

$$\text{Now } p(x) = p_1(x) p_2(x) \dots p_k(x)$$

$$= \frac{c_1 c_2 \dots c_k}{a_1 a_2 \dots a_k} q_1(x) q_2(x) \dots q_k(x).$$

$$\therefore a_1 a_2 \dots a_k p(x) = c_1 c_2 \dots c_k q_1(x) q_2(x) \dots q_k(x). \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $q_1(x), \dots, q_k(x)$ are all primitive members of $R[x]$, therefore

$$q_1(x) q_2(x) \dots q_k(x)$$

is also a primitive member of $R[x]$. Further $p(x)$ is primitive.

Therefore from the relation (1), we conclude with the help of theorem 3 that $p(x)$ and $q_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_k(x)$ are associates in $R[x]$. Therefore $p(x) = u q_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_k(x)$ where u is some unit in $R[x]$ and hence in R .

If $q_1(x)$ is irreducible in $R[x]$ then $uq_1(x)$ is also irreducible in $R[x]$. If we simply replace $uq_1(x)$ by $q_1(x)$, then we get

$$p(x) = q_1(x)q_2(x)\dots q_k(x).$$

Thus we have factored $p(x)$ in $R[x]$ as a product of irreducible elements.

Now to show that the above factorization of $p(x)$ is unique upto the order and associates of irreducible elements.

Let $p(x) = r_1(x)r_2(x)\dots r_m(x)$, where the $r_i(x)$ are irreducible in $R[x]$. Since $p(x)$ is primitive, therefore each $r_i(x)$ must be primitive. Consequently by theorem 8, each $r_i(x)$ must be irreducible in $F[x]$. But $F[x]$ is a unique factorization domain. Therefore $p(x) \in F[x]$ can be uniquely expressed as the product of irreducible elements of $F[x]$. Hence the $r_i(x)$ and the $q_i(x)$ regarded as the elements of $F[x]$ are equal (upto associates) in some order.

Since $r_i(x)$ and $q_i(x)$ are primitive members of $R[x]$ and are associates in $F[x]$, therefore, by theorem 9, they are also associates in $R[x]$. Thus $p(x)$ has a unique factorization as a product of irreducible elements of $R[x]$.

Now we are in a position to prove that if R is a unique factorization domain, then so is $R[x]$.

Let $f(x) \in R[x]$ be arbitrary. Then we can write $f(x)$ in a unique way as $f(x) = cg(x)$ where $c \in R$ and $g(x)$ is a primitive member of $R[x]$.

Now by the above discussion $g(x)$ can be uniquely expressed as the product of irreducible elements of $R[x]$. What about c ? Let $c = h_1(x)h_2(x)\dots h_s(x)$, where $h_1(x), \dots, h_s(x) \in R[x]$. We have

$$0 = \deg c = \deg h_1(x) + \deg h_2(x) + \dots + \deg h_s(x)$$

\Rightarrow each $h_i(x)$ must be of degree 0
 \Rightarrow each $h_i(x)$ is an element of R .

Thus the only factorizations of c as an element of $R[x]$ are those it had as an element of R . In particular if $\alpha \in R$ is irreducible, then $\alpha \in R[x]$ is also irreducible. But R is a unique factorization domain. Therefore $c \in R$ can be uniquely expressed as the product of irreducible elements of R and hence of $R[x]$.

Finally, we conclude that $f(x) = cg(x)$ can be uniquely expressed

ssed as the product of irreducible elements of $R[x]$. Hence $R[x]$ is a unique factorization domain.

Corollary 1. *If R is a unique factorization domain then so is $R[x_1, \dots, x_n]$. (B.H.U. 1988)*

Proof. If R is a unique factorization domain, then we know that $R_1 = R[x_1]$ is a unique factorization domain. Now R_1 is a unique factorization domain implies that

$$R_2 = R_1[x_2] = R[x_1, x_2]$$

is a unique factorization domain. Continuing this process a finite number of times we conclude that $R[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ is a unique factorization domain.

Corollary 2. *If F is a field, then $F[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n]$ is a unique factorization domain.*

Proof. If F is a field, then we know that $F_1 = F[x_1]$ is a unique factorization domain. Now F_1 is a unique factorization domain implies that $F_2 = F_1[x_2] = F[x_1, x_2]$ is a unique factorization domain. Continuing this process a finite number of times we conclude that $F[x_1, \dots, x_n]$ is a unique factorization domain.

Eisenstein's Criterion of Irreducibility.

Theorem 11. *Let F be the field of quotients of a unique factorization domain R . If*

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n \in R[x]$$

and p is a prime element of R such that

$$p \mid a_0, p \mid a_1, p \mid a_2, \dots, p \mid a_{n-1}$$

whereas p is not a divisor of a_n and p^2 is not a divisor of a_0 , then $f(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$. (Banaras 1987; Guru Nanak 87, 88)

Proof. Without loss of generality we may take $f(x)$ to be primitive, for taking out the greatest common factor of its coefficients does not disturb the hypothesis, since p is not a divisor of a_n . Now suppose that $f(x)$ is reducible in $F[x]$. Then $f(x)$ can be factored as the product of two polynomials of positive degree in $F[x]$. Therefore by Gauss lemma $f(x)$ can be factored as the product of two polynomials of positive degree in $R[x]$. Thus if we assume that $f(x)$ is reducible in $F[x]$, then

$$f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n = (b_0 + b_1x + \dots + b_r x^r) (c_0 + c_1x + \dots + c_s x^s) \quad \dots(1)$$

where the b 's and c 's are elements of R and where $r > 0$ and $s > 0$.

We have from (1), $a_0 = b_0c_0$.

Since p is a prime element of R , therefore

$$p \mid a_0 \Rightarrow p \mid b_0 \text{ or } p \mid c_0.$$

Since p^2 is not a divisor of a_0 , therefore p cannot divide both b_0 and c_0 . Suppose that

$$p \mid b_0 \text{ and } p \text{ is not a divisor of } c_0.$$

If p is a divisor of all the coefficients b_0, b_1, \dots, b_r , then from (1) we see that p is a divisor of all the coefficients of $f(x)$. But p is not a divisor of a_n . Therefore not all the coefficients b_0, b_1, \dots, b_r can be divisible by p . Let b_k , where $k \leq r$, be the first b which is not divisible by p . Then each of b_0, b_1, \dots, b_{k-1} is divisible by p and b_k is not divisible by p .

Also $k < n$, since $r < n$.

Now from (1), we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_k &= b_k c_0 + b_{k-1} c_1 + b_{k-2} c_2 + \dots + b_0 c_k \\ \Rightarrow b_k c_0 &= a_k - b_{k-1} c_1 - b_{k-2} c_2 - \dots - b_0 c_k. \end{aligned} \quad \dots (2)$$

Now $k < n$. Therefore $p \mid a_k$. Also $p \mid b_{k-1}, b_{k-2}, \dots, b_0$.

Therefore from (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} p &\mid b_k c_0 \\ \Rightarrow p &\mid b_k \text{ or } p \mid c_0, \text{ since } p \text{ is a prime element of } R. \end{aligned}$$

But this is nonsense because according to our initial assumptions p is neither a divisor of b_k nor a divisor of c_0 . Hence $f(x)$ must be irreducible in $F[x]$. This completes the proof of the theorem

Note. In the above theorem if we take the ring of integers \mathbb{I} in place of the unique factorization domain R , then the field of quotients of \mathbb{I} is the field of rational numbers. The statement of the theorem will be as follows :

Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1 x + \dots + a_n x^n$ be a polynomial with integer coefficients. If p is a prime number such that

$$p \mid a_0, p \mid a_1, \dots, p \mid a_{n-1}$$

whereas p is not a divisor of a_n and p^2 is not a divisor of a_0 , then $f(x)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

(Madras 1983; Meerut 74)

There will be no difference in proof.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If p is a prime number, prove that the polynomial $x^n - p$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

(Meerut 1985; Madurai 88)

Solution. Let $f(x) = x^n - p$

$$= -p + 0x + 0x^2 + \dots + 0x^{n-1} + 1x^n.$$

Then $f(x)$ is a polynomial with integer coefficients.

Now p is a prime number.

We see that p divides each of the coefficients of $f(x)$ except the coefficient 1 of the last term x^n . Also p^2 is not a divisor of the constant term $-p$. Hence by Eisenstein's criterion of irreducibility $f(x)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

Ex. 2. Show that the polynomial x^2-3 is irreducible over the field of rational numbers. (Meerut 1986)

Solution. Let $f(x) = x^2 - 3 = -3 + 0x + 1x^2$.

Now $f(x)$ is a polynomial with integer coefficients. Also 3 is a prime number such that 3 divides each of the coefficients of $f(x)$ except the coefficient 1 of the last term x^2 . Also 3^2 is not a divisor of the constant term -3 . Hence by Eisenstein's criterion of irreducibility $f(x)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

Ex. 3. Prove that the polynomial $1+x+\dots+x^{p-1}$, where p is a prime number, is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

(Banaras 1987; Madras 83, G.N.D.U. Amritsar 89)

Solution. Let $f(x) = 1+x+\dots+x^{p-1}$.

Multiplying both sides by $x-1$, we get

$$(x-1)f(x) = (x-1)(x^{p-1} + x^{p-2} + \dots + x + 1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (x-1)f(x) = x^p - 1.$$

Putting $x-1=y$ or $x=y+1$ on both sides, we get

$$yf(y+1) = (y+1)^p - 1$$

$$= y^p + {}^pC_1 y^{p-1} + {}^pC_2 y^{p-2} + \dots + {}^pC_{p-1} y + 1 - 1,$$

expanding by binomial theorem

$$= y^p + {}^pC_1 y^{p-1} + {}^pC_2 y^{p-2} + \dots + {}^pC_{p-1} y$$

$$= y[y^{p-1} + {}^pC_1 y^{p-2} + {}^pC_2 y^{p-3} + \dots + {}^pC_{p-2} y + {}^pC_{p-1}].$$

$$\therefore f(y+1) = y^{p-1} + {}^pC_1 y^{p-2} + {}^pC_2 y^{p-3} + \dots + {}^pC_{p-2} y + {}^pC_{p-1}.$$

$$\text{Now } {}^pC_r = \frac{p(p-1)(p-2)\dots(p-r+1)}{r!}, \quad 1 \leq r \leq p-1.$$

Obviously pC_r is divisible by p for each $1 \leq r \leq p-1$. Note that p is given to be a prime integer.

Now $f(y+1)$ is a polynomial with integer coefficients. Also p is a prime number such that p divides each of the coefficients of $f(y+1)$ except the coefficient of y^{p-1} which is 1. Also p^2 is not a divisor of the constant term which is equal to ${}^pC_{p-1} = p$. Therefore by Eisenstein's criterion of irreducibility $f(y+1)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers. Therefore $f(x)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers. Note that $y = x-1$.

Ex. 4. Show that the polynomial $x^4+x^3+x^2+x+1$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

Solution. The number 5 is a prime number. So proceed as in Ex. 3 by taking $p=5$.

Ex. 5. Let R be a unique factorization domain. Then show that every prime element in R generates a prime ideal.

Solution. Let p be a prime element of a unique factorization domain R . Let $S=(p)$ be the ideal of R generated by p . Then to show that S is a prime ideal.

Suppose ab is an element of S where $a, b \in R$. We have

$$ab \in S \Rightarrow ab = kp \text{ for some } k \in R$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid ab$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid a \text{ or } p \mid b \quad [\because p \text{ is a prime element of } R]$$

$$\Rightarrow a = sp \text{ or } b = tp \text{ for some } s, t \in R$$

$$\Rightarrow a \in (p) \text{ or } b \in (p)$$

$$\Rightarrow (p) \text{ is a prime ideal of } R.$$

Exercises

1. Examine whether the polynomial $x^3 + 3x^2 + x - 4$ is irreducible over (i) the field of integers modulo 5, (ii) the field of integers modulo 7. (Bombay 1970)

1. Let $p(x)$ be an irreducible polynomial over a field F . Prove that the ideal generated by $p(x)$ in $F[x]$ is a maximal ideal. (Kurukshetra 1971)

3. Show that if F is a unique factorization domain then $F[x]$ is also a unique factorization domain. (Delhi 1970; Agra 86)

4. Prove that a Euclidean ring is necessarily a principal ideal ring with unity. Give two examples of such a ring. (Banaras 1968)

5. Prove that $I[\sqrt{2}]$, the set of real numbers $a + b\sqrt{2}$ where a, b are integers is a Euclidean ring. (Kurukshetra 1970)

6. Prove that the ring of polynomials over a field F is a Euclidean domain. Hence or otherwise deduce that any non-zero polynomials $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ have g.c.d. (Meerut 1976)

Vector spaces

So far we have studied groups and rings. Now we shall study another important algebraic structure known as vector space. Before giving the definition of a vector space we shall make a distinction between internal and external compositions.

Let A be any set. If $a * b \in A \forall a, b \in A$, and $a * b$ is unique then $*$ is said to be an internal composition in the set A . Here a and b are both elements of the set A .

Let V and F be any two sets. If $a \circ \alpha \in V$ for all $a \in F$ and for all $\alpha \in V$ and $a \circ \alpha$ is unique, then \circ is said to be an external composition in V over F . Here a is an element of the set F and α is an element of the set V and the resulting element $a \circ \alpha$ is an element of the set V .

§ 1. Vector space. Definition. (Madras 1977; Banaras 70; Rohilkhand 80; Kolhapur 73; Patna 86; Meerut 76)

Let $(F, +, \cdot)$ be a field. The elements of F will be called scalars. Let V be a non-empty set whose elements will be called vectors. Then V is a vector space over the field F , if

1. There is defined an internal composition in V called addition of vectors and denoted by '+'. Also for this composition V is an abelian group.

2. There is an external composition in V over F called scalar multiplication and denoted multiplicatively i.e., $a\alpha \in V$ for all $a \in F$ and for all $\alpha \in V$. In other words V is closed with respect to scalar multiplication.

2. The two compositions i.e., scalar multiplication and addition of vectors satisfy the following postulates :

- (i) $a(\alpha + \beta) = a\alpha + a\beta \forall a \in F$ and $\forall \alpha, \beta \in V$.
- (ii) $(a + b)\alpha = a\alpha + b\alpha \forall a, b \in F$ and $\forall \alpha \in V$.
- (iii) $(ab)\alpha = a(b\alpha) \forall a, b \in F$ and $\forall \alpha \in V$.
- (iv) $1\alpha = \alpha \forall \alpha \in V$ and 1 is the unity element of the field F .

When V is a vector space over the field F , we shall say that $V(F)$ is a vector space. If the field F is understood we can simply say that V is a vector space.

In the above definition of a vector space V over the field F , we have denoted the addition of vectors by the symbol '+'. This symbol also denotes the addition composition of the field F , i.e., addition of scalars. There should be no confusion about the two compositions though we have used the same symbol to denote each of them. If $\alpha, \beta \in V$, then $\alpha + \beta$ represents addition in V i.e., addition of vectors. If $a, b \in F$ then $a + b$ represents addition of scalars i.e., addition in the field F . Similarly there should be no confusion in multiplication of scalars i.e., multiplication of the elements of F and in scalar multiplication i.e., multiplication of an element of V by an element of F . If $a, b \in F$, then ab represents multiplication of F and $ab \in F$. If $a \in F$, and $\alpha \in V$, then $a\alpha$ represents scalar multiplication and $a\alpha \in V$. Since $1 \in F$ and $\alpha \in V$, therefore 1α represents scalar multiplication. Again $a\alpha \in V$, $a\beta \in V$, therefore $a\alpha + a\beta$ represents addition of vectors and thus $a\alpha + a\beta$ is an element of V . Further $a \in F$ and $\alpha + \beta \in V$, therefore $a(\alpha + \beta)$ represents scalar multiplication and we have $a(\alpha + \beta) \in V$.

Note 1. For V to be an abelian group with respect to addition of vectors, we must have the following conditions satisfied :

- (i) $\alpha + \beta \in V$ for all $\alpha, \beta \in V$.
- (ii) $\alpha + \beta = \beta + \alpha$ for all $\alpha, \beta \in V$.
- (iii) $\alpha + (\beta + \gamma) = (\alpha + \beta) + \gamma$ for all $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in V$.
- (iv) There exists an element $0 \in V$ such that $0 + \alpha = \alpha \forall \alpha \in V$.

This element $0 \in V$ will be called the zero vector. It is the additive identity in V .

(v) To every vector $\alpha \in V$ there exists a vector $-\alpha \in V$ such that $-\alpha + \alpha = 0$. Thus each vector should possess additive inverse. The vector $-\alpha$ is called the negative of the vector α .

Note 2. Since $(V, +)$ is an abelian group therefore all the properties of an abelian group will hold in V . A few of them are as follows .

- (i) $\alpha + \beta = \alpha + \gamma \Rightarrow \beta = \gamma$ (left cancellation law)
- (ii) $\beta + \alpha = \gamma + \alpha \Rightarrow \beta = \gamma$ (right cancellation law)
- (iii) $\alpha + \beta = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha = -\beta$ and $\beta = -\alpha$.

- (iv) $-(\alpha + \beta) = -\alpha - \beta$ where by $\alpha - \beta$ we mean $\alpha + (-\beta)$.
- (v) The additive identity 0 will be unique.
- (vi) The additive inverse of each vector will be unique.
- (vii) If $\alpha + \beta = \gamma$, then $\alpha + \beta - \gamma = 0$.

Note 3. There should also be no confusion about the use of the word vector. Here by vector we do not mean the vector quantity which we have defined in vector algebra as a directed line segment. Here we shall call the elements of the set V as vectors.

Note 4. In a vector space we shall be dealing with two types of zero elements. One is the zero vector and the other is the zero element of the field F i.e., the 0 scalar. To distinguish between the two, we shall use the zero letter in bold type to represent the zero vector. However the students may use the same symbol 0 to denote the zero vector as well as the zero scalar. There will be no confusion in this use. The use of 0 will itself tell whether it stands for zero vector or for zero scalar.

Note 5. We shall use the lower case Greek letters α, β, γ etc. to denote vectors i.e., the elements of V and the lower case Latin letters a, b, c etc. to denote the scalars i.e., the elements of the field F .

Example 1. A field K can be regarded as a vector space over any subfield F of K . [Meerut 1969; Banaras 69; Kumayon 78]

Here K is the set of vectors. Addition of vectors is the addition composition in the field K . Since K is a field, therefore $(K, +)$ is an abelian group. Further the elements of the subfield F constitute the set of scalars. The composition of scalar multiplication is the multiplication composition in the field K . K is a field, therefore $a\alpha \in K \forall a \in F$ and $\forall \alpha \in K$ because both a and α are elements of K . If 1 is the unity element of K , then 1 is also the unity element of the subfield F . We make the following observations.

(i) $a(\alpha + \beta) = a\alpha + a\beta \forall a \in F$ and $\forall \alpha, \beta \in K$. This result follows from the left distributive law in K .

(ii) $(a + b)\alpha = a\alpha + b\alpha \forall a, b \in F$ and $\forall \alpha \in K$. This result is a consequence of the right distributive law in K .

(iii) $(ab)\alpha = a(b\alpha) \forall a, b \in F$ and $\forall \alpha \in K$. This result is a consequence of associativity of multiplication in K .

(iv) $1\alpha = \alpha \forall \alpha \in K$ and 1 is the unity element of the subfield F .

Since 1 is also the unity element of the field K , therefore $1\alpha = \alpha \forall \alpha \in K$. Hence $K(F)$ is a vector space.

Note 1. If F is any field, then F itself is a vector space over the field F .

Note 2. If C is the field of complex numbers and R is the field of real numbers, then C is a vector space over R because R is a subfield of C . But R is not a vector space over C . Here R is not closed with respect to scalar multiplication. For example, $2 \in R$ and $3+4i \in C$ and $(3+4i)2 \notin R$.

Example 2. The set V of all $m \times n$ matrices with their elements as real numbers is a vector space over the field F of real numbers with respect to addition of matrices as addition of vectors and multiplication of a matrix by a scalar as scalar multiplication.

As in groups, we can prove that V is an abelian group with respect to addition of matrices. The null matrix O of the type $m \times n$ is the additive identity of this abelian group.

If $a \in F$ and $\alpha \in V$ (i.e., α is a matrix of the type $m \times n$ with elements as real numbers), then $a\alpha \in V$ because $a\alpha$ is also a matrix of the type $m \times n$ with elements as real numbers. Therefore V is closed with respect to scalar multiplication. Also from our study of matrices we observe that

$$(i) \quad a(\alpha + \beta) = a\alpha + a\beta \quad \forall a \in F \text{ and } \forall \alpha, \beta \in V.$$

$$(ii) \quad (a+b)\alpha = a\alpha + b\alpha \quad \forall a, b \in F \text{ and } \forall \alpha \in V.$$

$$(iii) \quad (ab)\alpha = a(b\alpha) \quad \forall a, b \in F \text{ and } \forall \alpha \in V.$$

(iv) $1\alpha = \alpha \forall \alpha \in V$ where 1 is the unity element of the field F of real numbers.

Hence $V(F)$ is a vector space.

Note. If V is the set of all $m \times n$ matrices with their elements as rational numbers and F is the field of real numbers, then V will not be closed with respect to scalar multiplication. For $\sqrt{7} \in F$ and if $\alpha \in V$, then $\sqrt{7}\alpha \notin V$ because the elements of the matrix $\sqrt{7}\alpha$ will not be rational numbers. Therefore $V(F)$ will not be a vector space.

Example 3. The vector space of all ordered n -tuples over a field F .

Let F be a field. An ordered set $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n)$ of n elements of F is called an n -tuple over F . Let V be the totality of all ordered n -tuples over F i.e., let

$$V = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n \in F\}.$$

Now we shall give a vector space structure to V over the field F . For this we define equality of the n -tuples, addition of two n -tuples and multiplication of an n -tuple by a scalar as follows :

Equality of two n -tuples. Two elements $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ and $\beta = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$ of V are said to be equal if and only if

$$a_i = b_i \text{ for each } i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Addition composition in V . We define

$$\alpha + \beta = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \dots, a_n + b_n)$$

$$\forall \alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n), \beta = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) \in V.$$

Since $a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \dots, a_n + b_n$ are all elements of F , therefore $\alpha + \beta \in V$ and thus V is closed with respect to addition of n -tuples.

Scalar multiplication composition in V over F . We define

$$a\alpha = (aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n) \quad \forall a \in F, \alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V.$$

Since aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n are all elements of F , therefore $a\alpha \in V$ and thus V is closed with respect to scalar multiplication.

Now we shall see that V is a vector space for these two compositions.

Associativity of addition in V . We have

$$\begin{aligned} & (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + [(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) + (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)] \\ &= (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + (b_1 + c_1, b_2 + c_2, \dots, b_n + c_n) \\ &= (a_1 + [b_1 + c_1], a_2 + [b_2 + c_2], \dots, a_n + [b_n + c_n]) \\ &= ([a_1 + b_1] + c_1, [a_2 + b_2] + c_2, \dots, [a_n + b_n] + c_n) \\ &= (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \dots, a_n + b_n) + (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n) \\ &= [(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)] + (c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n). \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity of addition in V . We have

$$\begin{aligned} & (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \dots, a_n + b_n) \\ &= (b_1 + a_1, b_2 + a_2, \dots, b_n + a_n) = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) + (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n). \end{aligned}$$

Existence of additive identity in V . We have

$$\begin{aligned} & (0, 0, \dots, 0) \in V. \text{ Also if } (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V, \text{ then} \\ & (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + (0, 0, \dots, 0) = (a_1 + 0, a_2 + 0, \dots, a_n + 0) \\ &= (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore (0, 0, \dots, 0)$ is the additive identity in V .

Existence of additive inverse of each element of V . If

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V, \text{ then } (-a_1, -a_2, \dots, -a_n) \in V.$$

$$\text{Also we have } (-a_1, -a_2, \dots, -a_n) + (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$$

$$= (-a_1 + a_1, -a_2 + a_2, \dots, -a_n + a_n) = (0, 0, 0, \dots, 0).$$

$\therefore (-a_1, -a_2, \dots, -a_n)$ is the additive inverse of (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) .

Thus V is an abelian group with respect to addition. Further we observe that

1. If $a \in F$ and $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$, $\beta = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) \in V$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 a(\alpha + \beta) &= a(a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \dots, a_n + b_n) \\
 &= (a[a_1 + b_1], a[a_2 + b_2], \dots, a[a_n + b_n]) \\
 &= (aa_1 + ab_1, aa_2 + ab_2, \dots, aa_n + ab_n) \\
 &= (aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n) + (ab_1, ab_2, \dots, ab_n) \\
 &= a(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + a(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = a\alpha + a\beta.
 \end{aligned}$$
2. If $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a+b)\alpha &= ([a+b]a_1, [a+b]a_2, \dots, [a+b]a_n) \\
 &= (aa_1 + ba_1, aa_2 + ba_2, \dots, aa_n + ba_n) \\
 &= (aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n) + (ba_1, ba_2, \dots, ba_n) \\
 &= a(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + b(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = a\alpha + b\alpha.
 \end{aligned}$$
3. If $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (ab)\alpha &= ([ab]a_1, [ab]a_2, \dots, [ab]a_n) = (a[ba_1], a[ba_2], \dots, a[ba_n]) \\
 &= a(ba_1, ba_2, \dots, ba_n) = a[b(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)] = a(b\alpha).
 \end{aligned}$$
4. If 1 is the unity element of F and $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V$, then $1\alpha = (1a_1, 1a_2, \dots, 1a_n) = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = \alpha$.

Hence V is a vector space over F . The vector space of all ordered n -tuples over F will be denoted by $V_n(F)$. Sometimes we also denote it by F^n . Here the zero vector i.e., 0 is the n -tuple $(0, 0, \dots, 0)$.

Note. $V_2(F) = \{(a_1, a_2) : a_1, a_2 \in F\}$ is the vector space of all ordered pairs over F . Similarly $V_3(F) = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) : a_1, a_2, a_3 \in F\}$ is the vector space of all ordered triads over F .

Example 4. The vector space of all polynomials over a field F .

Let $F[x]$ denote the set of all polynomials in indeterminate x over a field F . Then $F[x]$ is a vector space over F with respect to addition of two polynomials as addition of vectors and the product of a polynomial by a constant polynomial (i.e., by an element of F) as scalar multiplication.

Example 5 The vector space of all real valued continuous (differentiable or integrable) functions defined in some interval $[0, 1]$.

(I.C.S. 1984)

Let V denote the set of all real valued continuous functions of x defined in the interval $[0, 1]$. Then V is a vector space over the field R of real numbers with vector addition and scalar multiplication defined as below :

$$(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) \quad \forall f, g \in V$$

and $(af)(x) = af(x) \quad \forall a \in R, f \in V.$

As in rings, we should first prove that V is an abelian group with respect to addition composition.

V is closed with respect to scalar multiplication since af is also a real valued continuous function in $[0, 1]$. Further we observe that

1. If $a \in R$ and $f, g \in V$, then

$$\begin{aligned} [a(f+g)](x) &= a[(f+g)(x)] = a[f(x)+g(x)] = af(x) + ag(x) \\ &= (af)(x) + (ag)(x) = (af+ag)(x). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore a(f+g) = af + ag.$$

2. If $a, b \in R$ and $f \in V$, then

$$\begin{aligned} [(a+b)f](x) &= (a+b)f(x) = af(x) + bf(x) = (af)(x) + (bf)(x) \\ &= (af+bf)(x). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (a+b)f = af + bf.$$

3. If $a, b \in R$ and $f \in V$, then

$$[(ab)f](x) = (ab)f(x) = a[bf(x)] = a[(bf)(x)] = [a(bf)](x).$$

$$\therefore (ab)f = a(bf).$$

4. If 1 is the unity element of R and $f \in V$, then

$$(1f)(x) = 1f(x) = f(x).$$

$$\therefore 1f = f.$$

Hence V is a vector space over R .

Exercises

1. Show that a field F may be considered as a vector space over F if scalar multiplication is identified with field multiplication.

2. Show that the complex field C is a vector space over the real field R . (Madurai 1985; Kumayun 77)

3. Let V be the set of all pairs (x, y) of real numbers, and let F be the field of real numbers. Define

$$(x, y) + (x_1, y_1) = (x + x_1, y + y_1)$$

$$c(x, y) = (cx, cy).$$

Show that with these operations V is not a vector space over the field of real numbers.

4. Let $V = R^2 = \{(a_1, a_2) : a_1, a_2 \in R\}$ and $F = R$.

Define the addition and scalar multiplication in R^2 as follows :

$$(a_1, a_2) + (b_1, b_2) = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2)$$

and
$$a(a_1, a_2) = (aa_1, aa_2).$$

Show that R^2 is a vector space over R . (Garhwal 1976)

5. Let V be the set of all pairs of real numbers and let F be the field of real numbers. Define

$$(x, y) + (x_1, y_1) = (3y + 3y_1, -x - x_1)$$

$$c(x, y) = (3cy, -cx).$$

Verify that V , with these operations, is not a vector space over the field of real numbers.

6. Let R be the field of real numbers and let P_n be the set of all polynomials (of degree at most n) over the field R . Prove that P_n is a vector space over the field R .

7. How many elements are there in the vector space of polynomials of degree at most n in which the coefficients are the elements of the field $I(p)$ over the field $I(p)$, p being a prime number?
(Meerut 1974, 75) Ans. p^{n+1} .

§ 2. General properties of vector spaces.

Theorem 1. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space and 0 be the zero vector of V . Then

(i) $a0=0 \quad \forall a \in F$.

(I.A.S. 1974; Patna 86; Kolhapur 79; Meerut 69)

(ii) $0\alpha=0 \quad \forall \alpha \in V$.

(Delhi 1970; I.A.S. 74; Patna 86)

(iii) $a(-\alpha) = -(a\alpha) \quad \forall a \in F, \forall \alpha \in V$.

(Patna 1986)

(iv) $(-a)\alpha = -(a\alpha) \quad \forall a \in F, \forall \alpha \in V$.

(I.A.S. 1984)

(v) $a(\alpha-\beta) = a\alpha - a\beta \quad \forall a \in F \text{ and } \forall \alpha, \beta \in V$.

(vi) $a\alpha=0 \Rightarrow a=0 \text{ or } \alpha=0$.

(Patna 1986; I.A.S. 74)

Proof. (i) We have $a0 = a(0+0)$

$[\because 0=0+0]$

$= a0 + a0$.

$\therefore 0 + a0 = a0 + a0$

$[\because a0 \in V \text{ and } 0 + a0 = a0]$

Now V is an abelian group with respect to addition.

Therefore by right cancellation law in V , we get $0 = a0$.

(ii) We have $0\alpha = (0+0)\alpha$

$[\because 0=0+0]$

$= 0\alpha + 0\alpha$.

$\therefore 0 + 0\alpha = 0\alpha + 0\alpha$.

$[\because 0\alpha \in V \text{ and } 0 + 0\alpha = 0\alpha]$

Now V is an abelian group with respect to addition of vectors. Therefore by right cancellation law in V , we get $0 = 0\alpha$.

(iii) We have $a[\alpha + (-\alpha)] = a\alpha + a(-\alpha)$

$\Rightarrow a0 = a\alpha + a(-\alpha)$

$\Rightarrow 0 = a\alpha + a(-\alpha)$

$[\because a0=0]$

$\Rightarrow a(-\alpha)$ is the additive inverse of $a\alpha$

$\Rightarrow a(-\alpha) = -(a\alpha)$.

(iv) We have $[a + (-a)]\alpha = a\alpha + (-a)\alpha$

$\Rightarrow 0\alpha = a\alpha + (-a)\alpha$

$\Rightarrow 0 = a\alpha + (-a)\alpha$

$\Rightarrow (-a)\alpha$ is the additive inverse of $a\alpha$

$\Rightarrow (-a)\alpha = -(a\alpha)$.

(v) We have $a(\alpha - \beta) = a[\alpha + (-\beta)] = a\alpha + a(-\beta)$

$$= a\alpha + [-(a\beta)] \\ = a\alpha - a\beta.$$

$$[\because a(-\beta) = -(a\beta)]$$

(vi) Let $a\alpha=0$ and $a \neq 0$. Then a^{-1} exists because a is a non-zero element of the field F .

$$\therefore a\alpha=0 \Rightarrow a^{-1}(a\alpha)=a^{-1}0 \Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)\alpha=0 \Rightarrow 1\alpha=0 \Rightarrow \alpha=0.$$

Again let $a\alpha=0$ and $\alpha \neq 0$. Then to prove that $a=0$. Suppose $a \neq 0$. Then a^{-1} exists.

$$\therefore a\alpha=0 \Rightarrow a^{-1}(a\alpha)=a^{-1}0 \Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)\alpha=0 \Rightarrow 1\alpha=0 \Rightarrow \alpha=0.$$

Thus we get a contradiction that α must be a zero vector. Therefore a must be equal to 0. Hence $a \neq 0$ and $a\alpha=0 \Rightarrow a=0$.

Theorem 2. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space. Then

(i) If $a, b \in F$ and α is a non-zero element of V , we have

$$a\alpha = b\alpha \Rightarrow a = b.$$

(ii) If $\alpha, \beta \in V$ and a is a non-zero element of F , we have

$$a\alpha = a\beta \Rightarrow \alpha = \beta. \quad (\text{Meerut 1974})$$

Proof. (i) We have $a\alpha = b\alpha \Rightarrow a\alpha - b\alpha = 0 \Rightarrow (a-b)\alpha = 0$.

But $\alpha \neq 0$. Therefore $(a-b)\alpha = 0 \Rightarrow a-b=0 \Rightarrow a=b$.

(ii) We have $a\alpha = a\beta \Rightarrow a\alpha - a\beta = 0 \Rightarrow a(\alpha - \beta) = 0$.

But $a \neq 0$. Therefore $a(\alpha - \beta) = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha - \beta = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha = \beta$.

§ 3. Vector Subspaces. Definition.

Let V be a vector space over the field F and $W \subseteq V$. Then W is called a subspace of V if W itself is a vector space over F with respect to the operations of vector addition and scalar multiplication in V . (Delhi 1970; Madurai 78; Banaras 70; Meerut 69)

Theorem 1. The necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty subset W of a vector space $V(F)$ to be a subspace of V is that W is closed under vector addition and scalar multiplication in V .

(Kumayun 1978)

Proof. If W itself is a vector space over F with respect to vector addition and scalar multiplication in V , then W must be closed with respect to these two compositions. Hence the condition is necessary.

The condition is sufficient. Now suppose that W is a non-empty subset of V and W is closed under vector addition and scalar multiplication in V .

Let $\alpha \in W$. If 1 is the unity element of F , then $-1 \in F$. Now W is closed under scalar multiplication. Therefore

$$-1 \in F, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow (-1)\alpha \in W \Rightarrow -(1\alpha) \in W$$

$$\Rightarrow -\alpha \in W.$$

$$[\because \alpha \in W \Rightarrow \alpha \in V \text{ and } 1\alpha = \alpha \text{ in } V]$$

Thus the additive inverse of each element of W is also in W .
Now W is closed under vector addition.

Therefore $\alpha \in W, -\alpha \in W \Rightarrow \alpha + (-\alpha) \in W$

$\Rightarrow 0 \in W$ where 0 is the zero vector of V .

Hence the zero vector of V is also the zero vector of W . Since the elements of W are also the elements of V , therefore vector addition will be commutative as well as associative in W . Hence W is an abelian group with respect to vector addition. Also it is given that W is closed under scalar multiplication. The remaining postulates of a vector space will hold in W since they hold in V of which W is a subset.

Hence W itself is a vector space for the two compositions.

$\therefore W$ is a subspace of V .

Theorem 2. *The necessary and sufficient conditions for a non-empty subset W of a vector space V (F) to be a subspace of V are*

(i) $\alpha \in W, \beta \in W \Rightarrow \alpha - \beta \in W$.

(ii) $a \in F, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha \in W$.

Proof. The conditions are necessary. If W is a subspace of V , then W is an abelian group with respect to vector addition. Therefore $\alpha \in W, \beta \in W \Rightarrow \alpha - \beta \in W$. Also W must be closed under scalar multiplication. Therefore the condition (ii) is also necessary.

The conditions are sufficient. Now suppose W is a non-empty subset of V satisfying the two given conditions. From condition (i), we have

$$\alpha \in W, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow \alpha - \alpha \in W \Rightarrow 0 \in W.$$

Thus the zero vector of V belongs to W and it will also be the zero vector of W .

Now $0 \in W, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow 0 - \alpha \in W \Rightarrow -\alpha \in W$.

Thus the additive inverse of each element of W is also in W .

Again $\alpha \in W, \beta \in W \Rightarrow \alpha \in W, -\beta \in W$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha - (-\beta) \in W \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta \in W.$$

Thus W is closed with respect to vector addition.

Since the elements of W are also the elements of V , therefore vector addition will be commutative as well as associative in W . Hence W is an abelian group under vector addition. Also from condition (ii), W is closed under scalar multiplication. The remaining postulates of a vector space will hold in W since they hold in V which is a superset of W . Hence W is a subspace of V .

Theorem 3. *The necessary and sufficient condition for a non-empty subset W of a vector space $V(F)$ to be a subspace of V is*
 $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W$.

(Meerut 1981; Garhwal 76)

Proof. The condition is necessary. If W is a subspace of V , then W must be closed under scalar multiplication and vector addition.

Therefore $a \in F, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha \in W$
 and $b \in F, \beta \in W \Rightarrow b\beta \in W$.

Now $a\alpha \in W, b\beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W$. Hence the condition is necessary.

The condition is sufficient. Now suppose W is a non-empty subset of V satisfying the given condition i.e., $a, b \in F$ and

$$\alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W.$$

Taking $a=1, b=1$, we see that if $\alpha, \beta \in W$ then

$$1\alpha + 1\beta \in W$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha + \beta \in W. [\because \alpha \in W \Rightarrow \alpha \in V \text{ and } 1\alpha = \alpha \text{ in } V]$$

Thus W is closed under vector addition.

Now taking $a=-1, b=0$, we see that if $\alpha \in W$, then

$$(-1)\alpha + 0\alpha \in W. \quad [\text{in place of } \beta \text{ we have taken } \alpha]$$

$$\Rightarrow -(1\alpha) + 0 \in W \Rightarrow -\alpha \in W.$$

Thus the additive inverse of each element of W is also in W .

Taking $a=0, b=0$, we see that if $\alpha \in W$ then

$$0\alpha + 0\alpha \in W \Rightarrow 0 + 0 \in W \Rightarrow 0 \in W.$$

Thus the zero vector of V belongs to W . It will also be the zero vector of W .

Since the elements of W are also the elements of V , therefore vector addition will be associative as well as commutative in W .

Thus W is an abelian group with respect to vector addition.

Now taking $\beta=0$, we see that if $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha \in W$, then

$$a\alpha + b0 \in W \text{ i.e., } a\alpha + 0 \in W \text{ i.e., } a\alpha \in W.$$

Thus W is closed under scalar multiplication.

The remaining postulates of a vector space will hold in W since they hold in V of which W is a subset. Hence $W(F)$ is a subspace of $V(F)$.

Theorem 4. *A non-empty subset W of a vector space $V(F)$ is a subspace of V if and only if for each pair of vectors α, β in W and each scalar a in F the vector $a\alpha + \beta$ is again in W .*

Proof. The condition is necessary. If W is a subspace of V , then W must be closed with respect to scalar multiplication and as well as with respect to vector addition. Therefore

$$a \in F, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha \in W.$$

Further $a\alpha \in W, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + \beta \in W$.

Hence the condition is necessary.

The condition is sufficient. It is given that W is a non-empty subset of V and $a \in F, \alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + \beta \in W$. We are to prove that W is a subspace of V .

(i) Since W is non-empty, therefore there is at least one vector in W , say γ . Now $1 \in F \Rightarrow -1 \in F$. Therefore taking $a = -1, \alpha = \gamma, \beta = \gamma$, we get from the given condition that

$$(-1)\gamma + \gamma = -(1\gamma) + \gamma = -\gamma + \gamma = 0 \text{ is in } W.$$

(ii) Now let $a \in F, \alpha \in W$. Since 0 is in W , therefore taking $\beta = 0$ in the given condition, we get $a\alpha + 0 = a\alpha$ is in W .

Thus W is closed with respect to scalar multiplication.

(iii) Let $\alpha \in W$. Since $-1 \in F$ and W is closed with respect to scalar multiplication, therefore $(-1)\alpha = -(1\alpha) = -\alpha$ is in W .

(iv) We have $1 \in F$. If $\alpha, \beta \in W$, then $1\alpha + \beta = \alpha + \beta$ is in W . Thus W is closed with respect to vector addition.

The remaining postulates of a vector space will hold in W , since they hold in V of which W is a subset. Hence W is a subspace of V .

Note. If we are to prove that a subset W of a vector space V is a subspace of V , then either it is sufficient to prove that

$$a, b \in F \text{ and } \alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W$$

or it is sufficient to prove that

$$a \in F, \text{ and } \alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + \beta \in W.$$

Examples

Example 1. Let $V(F)$ be any vector space. Then V itself and the subset of V consisting of zero vector only are always subspaces of V . These two are called improper subspaces. If V has any other subspace, then it is called a proper subspace. The subspace of V consisting of zero vector only is called the *zero subspace*.

Example 2. The set W of ordered triads $(a_1, a_2, 0)$ where $a_1, a_2 \in F$ is a subspace of $V_3(F)$. (Meerut 1973)

Solution. Let $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, 0)$ and $\beta = (b_1, b_2, 0)$ be any two elements of W . Then $a_1, a_2, b_1, b_2 \in F$. If a, b be any two elements of F , we have

$$\begin{aligned} a\alpha + b\beta &= a(a_1, a_2, 0) + b(b_1, b_2, 0) = (aa_1, aa_2, 0) + (bb_1, bb_2, 0) \\ &= (aa_1 + bb_1, aa_2 + bb_2, 0) \in W \text{ since } aa_1 + bb_1, aa_2 + bb_2 \in F \\ &\text{and the last co-ordinate of this triad is zero.} \end{aligned}$$

Hence W is a subspace of $V_3(F)$.

Example 3. Let V be the vector space of all polynomials in an indeterminate x over a field F . Let W be a subset of V consisting of all polynomials of degree $\leq n$. Then W is a subspace of V .

Solution. Let α and β be any two elements of W . Then α, β are polynomials over F of degree $\leq n$. If a, b are any two elements of F , then $a\alpha + b\beta$ will also be a polynomial of degree $\leq n$. Therefore $a\alpha + b\beta \in W$. Hence W is a subspace of V .

Example 4. If a_1, a_2, a_3 are fixed elements of a field F , then the set W of all ordered triads (x_1, x_2, x_3) of elements of F , such that $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_3 = 0$, is a subspace of $V_3(F)$.

Solution. Let $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$ and $\beta = (y_1, y_2, y_3)$ be any two elements of W . Then $x_1, x_2, x_3, y_1, y_2, y_3$ are elements of F and are such that

$$a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_3 = 0 \quad \dots (1)$$

$$a_1y_1 + a_2y_2 + a_3y_3 = 0. \quad \dots (2)$$

If a, b be any two elements of F , we have

$$\begin{aligned} a\alpha + b\beta &= a(x_1, x_2, x_3) + b(y_1, y_2, y_3) \\ &= (ax_1, ax_2, ax_3) + (by_1, by_2, by_3) = (ax_1 + by_1, ax_2 + by_2, ax_3 + by_3). \end{aligned}$$

Now $a_1(ax_1 + by_1) + a_2(ax_2 + by_2) + a_3(ax_3 + by_3)$

$$= a(a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_3) + b(a_1y_1 + a_2y_2 + a_3y_3)$$

$$= a \cdot 0 + b \cdot 0$$

$$= 0.$$

[by (1) and (2)]

$$\therefore a\alpha + b\beta = (ax_1 + by_1, ax_2 + by_2, ax_3 + by_3) \in W.$$

Hence W is a subspace of $V_3(F)$.

Example 5. Let \mathbb{R} be the field of real numbers. Which of the following are subspaces of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$?

(i) $\{(x, 2y, 3z) : x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}\}.$

(Meerut 1972, 81)

(ii) $\{(x, x, x) : x \in \mathbb{R}\}.$

(iii) $\{(x, y, z) : x, y, z \text{ are rational numbers}\}?$

Solution. (i) Let $W = \{(x, 2y, 3z) : x, y, z \in \mathbb{R}\}.$

Let $\alpha = (x_1, 2y_1, 3z_1)$ and $\beta = (x_2, 2y_2, 3z_2)$ be any two elements of W . Then $x_1, y_1, z_1, x_2, y_2, z_2$ are real numbers. If a, b are any two real numbers, then

$$a\alpha + b\beta = a(x_1, 2y_1, 3z_1) + b(x_2, 2y_2, 3z_2)$$

$$= (ax_1 + bx_2, 2ay_1 + 2by_2, 3az_1 + 3bz_2)$$

$$= (ax_1 + bx_2, 2[ay_1 + by_2], 3[az_1 + bz_2])$$

$\in W$ since $ax_1 + bx_2, ay_1 + by_2, az_1 + bz_2$ are real numbers.

Thus $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W$.

$\therefore W$ is a subspace of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$.

(ii) Let $W = \{(x, x, x) : x \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Let $\alpha = (x_1, x_1, x_1)$ and $\beta = (x_2, x_2, x_2)$ be any two elements of W . Then x_1, x_2 are real numbers. If a, b are any real numbers, then

$$a\alpha + b\beta = a(x_1, x_1, x_1) + b(x_2, x_2, x_2) \\ = (ax_1 + bx_2, ax_1 + bx_2, ax_1 + bx_2) \in W, \text{ since } ax_1 + bx_2 \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Thus W is a subspace of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$.

(iii) Let $W = \{(x, y, z) : x, y, z \text{ are rational numbers}\}$.

Now $\alpha = (3, 4, 5)$ is an element of W . Also $a = \sqrt{7}$ is an element of \mathbb{R} . But $a\alpha = \sqrt{7}(3, 4, 5) = (3\sqrt{7}, 4\sqrt{7}, 5\sqrt{7}) \notin W$ since $3\sqrt{7}, 4\sqrt{7}, 5\sqrt{7}$ are not rational numbers.

Therefore W is not closed under scalar multiplication. Hence W is not a subspace of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$.

§ 4. Algebra of subspaces.

Theorem 1. *The intersection of any two subspaces W_1 and W_2 of a vector space $V(F)$ is also a subspace of $V(F)$.*

(Patna 1987; Kumayun 77; Madras 77;
Madurai 78; Banaras 70; Meerut 81)

Proof. Since $0 \in W_1$ and W_2 both, therefore $W_1 \cap W_2$ is not empty.

Let $\alpha, \beta \in W_1 \cap W_2$ and $a, b \in F$.

Now $\alpha \in W_1 \cap W_2 \Rightarrow \alpha \in W_1$ and $\alpha \in W_2$
and $\beta \in W_1 \cap W_2 \Rightarrow \beta \in W_1$ and $\beta \in W_2$.

Since W_1 is a subspace, therefore

$$a, b \in F \text{ and } \alpha, \beta \in W_1 \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W_1.$$

Similarly $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in W_2 \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W_2$.

Now $a\alpha + b\beta \in W_1, a\alpha + b\beta \in W_2 \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W_1 \cap W_2$.

Thus $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in W_1 \cap W_2 \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W_1 \cap W_2$.

Hence $W_1 \cap W_2$ is a subspace of $V(F)$.

Note. The union of two subspaces of $V(F)$ may not be a subspace of $V(F)$. For example if \mathbb{R} be the field of real numbers, then $W_1 = \{(0, 0, z) : z \in \mathbb{R}\}$ and $W_2 = \{(0, y, 0) : y \in \mathbb{R}\}$ are two subspaces of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$. We have $(0, 0, 3) \in W_1$ and $(0, 5, 0) \in W_2$.

$\therefore (0, 0, 3)$ and $(0, 5, 0)$ are both elements of $W_1 \cup W_2$.

But $(0, 0, 3) + (0, 5, 0) = (0, 5, 3) \notin W_1 \cup W_2$ since neither $(0, 5, 3) \in W_1$ nor $(0, 5, 3) \in W_2$. Thus $W_1 \cup W_2$ is not closed under vector addition. Hence $W_1 \cup W_2$ is not a subspace of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$.

Theorem 2. *The union of two subspaces is a subspace if and only if one is contained in the other.* (Delhi 1969)

Proof. Suppose W_1 and W_2 are two subspaces of a vector space V .

Let $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ or $W_2 \subseteq W_1$. Then $W_1 \cup W_2 = W_2$ or W_1 . But W_1, W_2 are subspaces and therefore, $W_1 \cup W_2$ is also a subspace.

Conversely, suppose $W_1 \cup W_2$ is a subspace.

To prove that $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ or $W_2 \subseteq W_1$.

Let us assume that W_1 is not a subset of W_2 and W_2 is also not a subset of W_1 .

Now W_1 is not a subset of $W_2 \Rightarrow \exists \alpha \in W_1$ and $\alpha \notin W_2$... (1)

and W_2 is not a subset of $W_1 \Rightarrow \exists \beta \in W_2$ and $\beta \notin W_1$ (2)

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\alpha \in W_1 \cup W_2 \text{ and } \beta \in W_1 \cup W_2.$$

Since $W_1 \cup W_2$ is a subspace, therefore

$$\alpha + \beta \text{ is also in } W_1 \cup W_2.$$

But $\alpha + \beta \in W_1 \cup W_2 \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta \in W_1$ or W_2 .

Suppose $\alpha + \beta \in W_1$. Since $\alpha \in W_1$ and W_1 is a subspace, therefore $(\alpha + \beta) - \alpha = \beta$ is in W_1 .

But from (2), we have $\beta \notin W_1$. Thus we get a contradiction. Again suppose that $\alpha + \beta \in W_2$. Since $\beta \in W_2$ and W_2 is a subspace, therefore $(\alpha + \beta) - \beta = \alpha$ is in W_2 . But from (1), we have $\alpha \notin W_2$. Thus here also we get a contradiction. Hence either $W_1 \subseteq W_2$ or $W_2 \subseteq W_1$.

Theorem 3. *Arbitrary intersection of subspaces i.e., the intersection of any family of subspaces of a vector space is a subspace.*

(Banaras 1968; Kanpur 69; Meerut 68)

Proof. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space and let $\{W_i : i \in T\}$ be any family of subspaces of V . Here T is an index set and is such that $\forall i \in T, W_i$ is a subspace of V .

$$\text{Let } U = \bigcap_{i \in T} W_i = \{x \in V : x \in W_i, \forall i \in T\}$$

be the intersection of this family of subspaces of V . Then to prove that U is also a subspace of V

Obviously $U \neq \emptyset$, since at least the zero vector 0 of V is in $W_i, \forall i \in T$.

Now let $a, b \in F$ and α, β be any two elements of $\bigcap_{i \in T} W_i$.

Then $\alpha, \beta \in W_i, \forall i \in T$. Since each W_i is a subspace of V , therefore $a\alpha + b\beta \in W_i, \forall i \in T$. Thus $a\alpha + b\beta \in \bigcap_{i \in T} W_i$.

Thus $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \bigcap_{i \in T} W_i \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in \bigcap_{i \in T} W_i$.

Hence $\bigcap_{i \in T} W_i$ is a subspace of $V(F)$.

Smallest subspace containing any subset of $V(F)$. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space and S be any subset of V . If U is a subspace of V containing S and is itself contained in every subspace of V containing S , then U is called the smallest subspace of V containing S . The smallest subspace of V containing S is also called the subspace of V generated or spanned by S and we shall denote it by the symbol $\{S\}$ or by (S) . It can be easily seen that the intersection of all the subspaces of $V(F)$ containing S is the subspace of $V(F)$ generated by S . If $\{S\} = V$, then we say that V is spanned by S .

Exercises

1. Show that the set W of the elements of the vector space $V_3(\mathbb{R})$ of the form $(x+2y, y, -x+3y)$ where $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ is a subspace of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$. (Meerut 1974)
2. Let $V = \mathbb{R}^3$ and W be the set of all ordered triads (x, y, z) such that $x - 3y + 4z = 0$. Prove that W is a subspace of \mathbb{R}^3 .
3. Which of the following sets of vectors $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ in \mathbb{R}^n are subspaces of \mathbb{R}^n ($n \geq 3$) ?
 (i) all α such that $a_1 \leq 0$;
 (ii) all α such that a_3 is an integer ;
 (iii) all α such that $a_3 + 4a_4 = 0$.

Ans. (i) not a subspace ; (ii) not a subspace ; (iii) subspace.

§ 5. Linear combination of vectors. Linear span of a set.

Linear combination. Definition. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space.

If $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \in V$, then any vector

$$\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n \text{ where } a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$$

is called a linear combination of the vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$.

Linear span. Definition. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space and S be any non-empty subset of V . Then the linear span of S is the set of all linear combinations of finite sets of elements of S and is denoted by $L(S)$. Thus we have

$$L(S) = \{a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n : \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \in S\}$$

is any arbitrary finite subset of S and a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n is any arbitrary finite subset of F .

Theorem 1. *The linear span $L(S)$ of any subset S of a vector space $V(F)$ is a subspace of V generated by S i.e., $L(S) = \{S\}$.*

Proof. Let α, β be any two elements of $L(S)$.

$$\text{Then } \alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m$$

$$\text{and } \beta = b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_n\beta_n$$

where the a 's and b 's are elements of F and the α 's and β 's are elements of S .

If a, b be any two elements of F , then

$$\begin{aligned} a\alpha + b\beta &= a(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m) + b(b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_n\beta_n) \\ &= a(a_1\alpha_1) + a(a_2\alpha_2) + \dots + a(a_m\alpha_m) + b(b_1\beta_1) + b(b_2\beta_2) + \dots + b(b_n\beta_n) \\ &= (aa_1)\alpha_1 + (aa_2)\alpha_2 + \dots + (aa_m)\alpha_m + (bb_1)\beta_1 + (bb_2)\beta_2 + \dots + (bb_n)\beta_n. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $a\alpha + b\beta$ has been expressed as a linear combination of a finite set $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n$ of the elements of S . Consequently $a\alpha + b\beta \in L(S)$.

Thus $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in L(S) \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in L(S)$.

Hence $L(S)$ is a subspace of $V(F)$.

Also each element of S belongs to $L(S)$ because if $\alpha_r \in S$, then $\alpha_r = 1\alpha_r$, and this implies that $\alpha_r \in L(S)$. Thus $L(S)$ is a subspace of V and S is contained in $L(S)$.

Now if W is any subspace of V containing S , then each element of $L(S)$ must be in W because W is to be closed under vector addition and scalar multiplication. Therefore $L(S)$ will be contained in W .

Hence $L(S) = \{S\}$ i.e., $L(S)$ is the smallest subspace of V containing S .

Note. If in any case we are to prove that $L(S) = V$, then we should prove that $V \subseteq L(S)$ because $L(S) \subseteq V$ since $L(S)$ is a subspace of V . In order to prove that $V \subseteq L(S)$, we should prove that each element of V can be expressed as a linear combination of a finite number of elements of S . Then each element of V will also be an element of $L(S)$ and we shall have $V \subseteq L(S)$.

Finally $V \subseteq L(S)$ and $L(S) \subseteq V \Rightarrow L(S) = V$.

Examples

Example 1. The subset containing a single element $(1, 0, 0)$ of the vector space $V_3(F)$ generates the subspace which is the totality of elements of the form $(a, 0, 0)$.

Example 2. The subset $\{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0)\}$ of $V_3(F)$ generates

the subspace which is the totality of the elements of the form $(a, b, 0)$.

Example 1. The subset $S = \{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$ of $V_3(F)$ generates or spans the entire vector space $V_3(F)$ i.e., $L(S) = V$.

If (a, b, c) be any element of V , then

$$(a, b, c) = a(1, 0, 0) + b(0, 1, 0) + c(0, 0, 1).$$

Thus $(a, b, c) \in L(S)$. Hence $V \subseteq L(S)$. Also $L(S) \subseteq V$.

Hence $L(S) = V$.

§ 6. Linear sum of two subspaces. Definition. Let W_1 and W_2 be two subspaces of the vector space $V(F)$. Then the linear sum of the subspaces W_1 and W_2 denoted by $W_1 + W_2$ is the set of sums $x_1 + x_2$ such that $x_1 \in W_1, x_2 \in W_2$.

Thus $W_1 + W_2 = \{x_1 + x_2 : x_1 \in W_1, x_2 \in W_2\}$.

Theorem. If W_1 and W_2 are subspaces of the vector space $V(F)$, then

(i) $W_1 + W_2$ is a subspace of $V(F)$. (Patna 1987; Kanpur 70)

(ii) $W_1 + W_2 = \{W_1 \cup W_2\}$ i.e., $L(W_1 \cup W_2) = W_1 + W_2$.

(G.N.D.U. 1986)

Proof. (i) Let α, β be any two elements of $W_1 + W_2$.

Then $\alpha = x_1 + x_2$ and $\beta = y_1 + y_2$ where $x_1, y_1 \in W_1$ and $x_2, y_2 \in W_2$. If $a, b \in F$, we have

$$a\alpha + b\beta = a(x_1 + x_2) + b(y_1 + y_2) = (ax_1 + by_1) + (ax_2 + by_2).$$

Since W_1 is a subspace of V , therefore $a, b \in F$

and $x_1, y_1 \in W_1 \Rightarrow ax_1 + by_1 \in W_1$.

Similarly $ax_2 + by_2 \in W_2$.

Consequently $a\alpha + b\beta = (ax_1 + by_1) + (ax_2 + by_2) \in W_1 + W_2$.

Thus $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in W_1 + W_2 \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W_1 + W_2$.

Hence $W_1 + W_2$ is a subspace of $V(F)$.

(ii) Since W_2 contains the zero vector, therefore if $x_1 \in W_1$, then we can write $x_1 = x_1 + 0 \in W_1 + W_2$. Thus $W_1 \subseteq W_1 + W_2$. Similarly $W_2 \subseteq W_1 + W_2$. Hence $W_1 \cup W_2 \subseteq W_1 + W_2$. Therefore $W_1 + W_2$ is a subspace of $V(F)$ containing $W_1 \cup W_2$.

Now to prove that $W_1 + W_2 = \{W_1 \cup W_2\}$ we should prove that $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq L(W_1 \cup W_2)$ and $L(W_1 \cup W_2) \subseteq W_1 + W_2$.

Let $z = x_1 + x_2$ be any element of $W_1 + W_2$. Then $x_1 \in W_1$ and $x_2 \in W_2$. Therefore $x_1, x_2 \in W_1 \cup W_2$. We can write

$$z_1 + z_2 = 1x_1 + 1x_2.$$

Thus $x_1 + x_2$ is a linear combination of a finite number of elements $x_1, x_2 \in W_1 \cup W_2$.

Therefore $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \in L(W_1 \cup W_2)$.

$\therefore W_1 + W_2 \subseteq L(W_1 \cup W_2)$.

Also $L(W_1 \cup W_2)$ is the smallest subspace containing $W_1 \cup W_2$ and $W_1 + W_2$ is a subspace containing $W_1 \cup W_2$. Therefore $L(W_1 \cup W_2)$ must be contained in $W_1 + W_2$. Consequently

$$L(W_1 \cup W_2) \subseteq W_1 + W_2.$$

Hence $W_1 + W_2 = L(W_1 \cup W_2) = \{W_1 \cup W_2\}$.

Theorem. If S, T are subsets of $V(F)$, then

(i) $S \subseteq T \Rightarrow L(S) \subseteq L(T)$. (ii) $L(S \cup T) = L(S) + L(T)$.

(iii) $L(L(S)) = L(S)$.

Proof. (i) Let $\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n \in L(S)$, where $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ is a finite subset of S . Since $S \subseteq T$, therefore $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ is a finite subset of T . So $\alpha \in L(T)$.

Thus $\alpha \in L(S) \Rightarrow \alpha \in L(T)$.

$\therefore L(S) \subseteq L(T)$.

(ii) Let α be any element of $L(S \cup T)$. Then

$$\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m + b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_p\beta_p$$

where $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_p\}$ is a finite subset of $S \cup T$ such that $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\} \subseteq S$ and $\{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_p\} \subseteq T$.

Now $a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m \in L(S)$

and $b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_p\beta_p \in L(T)$.

Therefore $\alpha \in L(S) + L(T)$. Consequently $L(S \cup T) \subseteq L(S) + L(T)$.

Now let γ be any element of $L(S) + L(T)$. Then $\gamma = \beta + \delta$ where $\beta \in L(S)$ and $\delta \in L(T)$. Now β will be a linear combination of a finite number of elements of S and δ will be a linear combination of a finite number of elements of T . Therefore $\beta + \delta$ will be a linear combination of a finite number of elements of $S \cup T$. Thus $\beta + \delta \in L(S \cup T)$. Consequently $L(S) + L(T) \subseteq L(S \cup T)$.

Hence $L(S \cup T) = L(S) + L(T)$.

(iii) $L(L(S))$ is the smallest subspace of V containing $L(S)$. But $L(S)$ is a subspace of V . Therefore the smallest subspace of V containing $L(S)$ is $L(S)$ itself. Hence $L(L(S)) = L(S)$.

§ 7. Linear dependence and linear independence of vectors.

Linear dependence. Definition. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space. A finite set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ of vectors of V is said to be linearly dependent if there exist scalars $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F$ not all of them 0 (some of them may be zero) such that

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + a_3\alpha_3 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = 0.$$

(Banaras 1970; Meerut 75; Punjab 66)

Linear independence. Definition. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space. A finite set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ of vectors of V is said to be linearly independent if every relation of the form

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = 0, a_i \in F, 1 \leq i \leq n \\ \Rightarrow a_i = 0 \text{ for each } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Any infinite set of vectors of V is said to be linearly independent if its every finite subset is linearly independent, otherwise it is linearly dependent. (Banaras 1970, Punjab 69)

Examples

Example 1. Prove that if two vectors are linearly dependent, one of them is a scalar multiple of the other.

Solution Let α, β be two linearly dependent vectors of the vector space V . Then \exists scalars a, b not both zero, such that

$$a\alpha + b\beta = 0.$$

If $a \neq 0$, then we get

$$a\alpha = -b\beta \Rightarrow a^{-1}(a\alpha) = a^{-1}(-b\beta) \\ \Rightarrow (a^{-1}a)\alpha = [a^{-1}(-b)]\beta \Rightarrow 1\alpha = (-a^{-1}b)\beta \\ \Rightarrow \alpha = -\frac{b}{a}\beta \Rightarrow \alpha \text{ is a scalar multiple of } \beta.$$

If $b \neq 0$, then we get

$$b\beta = -a\alpha \Rightarrow \beta = \left(-\frac{a}{b}\right)\alpha \Rightarrow \beta \text{ is a scalar multiple of } \alpha.$$

Thus one of the vectors α and β is a scalar multiple of the other.

Example 2. In the vector space $V_n(F)$, the system of n vectors $e_1 = (1, 0, 0, \dots, 0)$, $e_2 = (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0, 0)$, ..., $e_n = (0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$ is linearly independent where 1 denotes the unity of the field F .

Solution. If $a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n$ be any scalars, then

$$a_1e_1 + a_2e_2 + \dots + a_ne_n = 0 \\ \Rightarrow a_1(1, 0, 0, \dots, 0) + a_2(0, 1, 0, \dots, 0) + \dots + a_n(0, 0, \dots, 0, 1) = 0 \\ \Rightarrow (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = (0, 0, \dots, 0) \Rightarrow a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_n = 0.$$

Therefore the given set of n vectors is linearly independent.

In particular $\{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$ is a linearly independent subset of $V_3(F)$.

Example 3. If the set $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ of vectors of $V(F)$ is linearly independent, then none of the vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ can be zero vector. (Meerut 1974)

Solution. Let α_r be equal to zero vector where $1 \leq r \leq n$. Then $0\alpha_1 + 0\alpha_2 + \dots + a\alpha_r + 0\alpha_{r+1} + \dots + 0\alpha_n = 0$ for any $a \neq 0$ in F .

Since $a \neq 0$, therefore from this relation we conclude that S is linearly dependent. Thus we get a contradiction because it is given that S is linearly independent. Hence none of the vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ can be zero vector. We also conclude that a set of vectors which contains the zero vector is necessarily linearly dependent.

Example 4. Every superset of a linearly dependent set of vectors is linearly dependent. (Agra 1986)

Solution. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a linearly dependent set of vectors. Then there exist scalars a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n not all zero such that

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = 0. \quad \dots(1)$$

Now let $S' = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$ be a superset of S . Then we have from (1)

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n + 0\beta_1 + 0\beta_2 + \dots + 0\beta_m = 0. \quad \dots(2)$$

Since in the relation (2) the scalar coefficients are not all 0, therefore S' is linearly dependent.

From this we also conclude that any subset of a linearly independent set of vectors is also linearly independent.

Example 5. A system consisting of a single non-zero vector is always linearly independent.

Solution. Let $S = \{\alpha\}$ be a subset of a vector space V and let α be not equal to zero vector. If a is any scalar, then

$$a\alpha = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a = 0$$

[Since α is not zero vector]

\therefore the set S is linearly independent.

Example 6. Show that

$$S = \{(1, 2, 4), (1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$$

is a linearly dependent subset of the vector space $V_3(\mathbb{R})$ where \mathbb{R} is the field of real numbers.

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned} & 1(1, 2, 4) + (-1)(1, 0, 0) + (-2)(0, 1, 0) + (-4)(0, 0, 1) \\ &= (1, 2, 4) + (-1, 0, 0) + (0, -2, 0) + (0, 0, -4) \\ &= (0, 0, 0) \text{ i.e., zero vector.} \end{aligned}$$

Since in this relation the scalar coefficients 1, -1, -2, -4 are not all zero, therefore the given system S is linearly dependent.

Example 7. In $V_3(\mathbb{R})$, where \mathbb{R} is the field of real numbers, examine each of the following sets of vectors for linear dependence :

(i) $\{(2, 1, 2), (8, 4, 8)\}$

(ii) $\{(1, 2, 0), (0, 3, 1), (-1, 0, 1)\}$

(iii) $\{(-1, 2, 1), (3, 0, -1), (-5, 4, 3)\}$

(iv) $\{(2, 3, 5), (4, 9, 25)\}$.

(v) $\{(1, 2, 1), (3, 1, 5), (3, -4, 7)\}$. (Meerut 1979)

Solution. (i) We have

$$4(2, 1, 2) + (-1)(8, 4, 8) = (8, 4, 8) + (-8, -4, -8) \\ = (0, 0, 0) \text{ i.e., the zero vector.}$$

Since in this relation the scalar coefficients 4, -1 are not both zero, therefore the given set is linearly dependent.

(ii) Let a, b, c be scalars i.e., real numbers such that

$$a(1, 2, 0) + b(0, 3, 1) + c(-1, 0, 1) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } (a - c, 2a + 3b, b + c) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } a + 0b - c = 0, 2a + 3b + 0c = 0, 0a + b + c = 0.$$

These equations will have a non-zero solution i.e. a solution in which a, b, c are not all zero iff the rank of the coefficient matrix is less than three i.e., the number of unknowns a, b, c . If the rank is 3, then the zero solution $a=0, b=0, c=0$ will be the only solution.

$$\text{Coefficient matrix } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$\text{We have } |A| = 1(3-0) - 2(0+1) = 1 \neq 0.$$

\therefore Rank $A=3$. Hence $a=0, b=0, c=0$ is the only solution. Therefore the given system is linearly independent.

(iii) Let a, b, c be scalars such that

$$a(-1, 2, 1) + b(3, 0, -1) + c(-5, 4, 3) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } (-a + 3b - 5c, 2a + 0b + 4c, a - b + 3c) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } -a + 3b - 5c = 0, 2a + 0b + 4c = 0, a - b + 3c = 0.$$

The coefficient matrix A of these equations is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 & -5 \\ 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$\text{We have } |A| = -1(0+4) - 2(9-5) + 1(12-0) = 0.$$

\therefore Rank A is < 3 i.e., the number of unknowns a, b, c . Therefore the given system of equations will possess a non-zero solution. For example $a=-2, b=1, c=1$, is a non-zero solution. Hence the given system of vectors is linearly dependent.

(iv) Let a, b be scalars i.e., real numbers such that

$$a(2, 3, 5) + b(4, 9, 25) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } (2a + 4b, 3a + 9b, 5a + 25b) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } 2a + 4b = 0, 3a + 9b = 0, 5a + 25b = 0.$$

The coefficient matrix A of these equations is

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 9 \\ 5 & 25 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Obviously rank $A=2$ i.e., equal to the number of unknowns a and

b . Therefore these equations have the only solution $a=0, b=0$.

Hence the given set of vectors is linearly independent.

(v) Let a, b, c be scalars i.e., real numbers such that

$$a(1, 2, 1) + b(3, 1, 5) + c(3, -4, 7) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } (a+3b+3c, 2a+b-4c, a+5b+7c) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\text{i.e., } \begin{aligned} a+3b+3c &= 0, & \dots(1) \end{aligned}$$

$$2a+b-4c = 0, \quad \dots(2)$$

$$a+5b+7c = 0. \quad \dots(3)$$

Multiplying (1) by 2, we get

$$2a+6b+6c = 0. \quad \dots(4)$$

Subtracting (4) from (2), we get

$$-5b-10c = 0,$$

$$\text{or } b+2c = 0. \quad \dots(5)$$

Again subtracting (3) from (1), we get

$$-2b-4c = 0, \text{ or } b+2c = 0. \quad \dots(6)$$

The equations (5) and (6) are the same and give $b = -2c$.

Putting $b = -2c$ in (1), we get $a = 3c$. If we take $c = 1$, we get $b = -2$ and $a = 3$. Thus $a = 3, b = -2, c = 1$ is a non-zero solution of the equations (1), (2) and (3). Hence the given set of vectors is linearly dependent.

Example 8. If F is the field of complex numbers, prove that the vectors (a_1, a_2) and (b_1, b_2) in $V_2(F)$ are linearly dependent iff

$$a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 = 0.$$

Solution. Let $x, y \in F$. Then

$$x(a_1, a_2) + y(b_1, b_2) = (0, 0)$$

$$\Rightarrow (xa_1 + yb_1, xa_2 + yb_2) = (0, 0).$$

Therefore $\begin{cases} a_1x + b_1y = 0 \\ a_2x + b_2y = 0 \end{cases}$

and

The necessary and sufficient condition for these equations to possess a non-zero solution is that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = 0 \text{ i.e., } a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 = 0.$$

Hence the given system is linearly dependent iff $a_1b_2 - a_2b_1 = 0$.

Example 9. If α_1 and α_2 are vectors of $V(F)$, and $a, b \in F$, show that the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, a\alpha_1 + b\alpha_2\}$ is linearly dependent.

Solution. We have

$$\begin{aligned} & (-a)x_1 + (-b)x_2 + 1(ax_1 + bx_2) \\ &= (-a+a)x_1 + (-b+b)x_2 = 0x_1 + 0x_2 = 0 \text{ i.e., zero vector.} \end{aligned}$$

In the above linear combination the scalar coefficient $1 \neq 0$. Therefore whatever may be the scalars $-a$ and $-b$, the given set of vectors is linearly dependent.

Example 10. Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ be vectors of $V(F)$, $a, b \in F$. Show that the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$ is linearly dependent if the set $\{\alpha_1 + a\alpha_2 + b\alpha_3, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$ is linearly dependent. (Meerut 1969)

Solution. Since the set $\{\alpha_1 + a\alpha_2 + b\alpha_3, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$ is linearly dependent, therefore there exist scalars x, y, z not all zero such that

$$\begin{aligned} & x(\alpha_1 + a\alpha_2 + b\alpha_3) + y\alpha_2 + z\alpha_3 = 0 \\ \text{i.e.,} \quad & x\alpha_1 + (xa + y)\alpha_2 + (xb + z)\alpha_3 = 0. \end{aligned} \quad \dots(1)$$

If in the relation (1), the coefficients $x, xa + y, xb + z$ are not all zero, then the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$ will also be linearly dependent.

If $x \neq 0$, then the problem is at once solved whatever y and z may be. However if $x = 0$, then at least one of y and z is not zero. Therefore at least one of $xa + y$ and $xb + z$ will not be zero since when $x = 0$ then $xa + y$ and $xb + z$ reduce to y and z respectively.

Hence in the relation (1) the scalar coefficients of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ are not all zero. Therefore the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$ is also linearly dependent.

Example 11. If α, β, γ are linearly independent vectors of $V(F)$ where F is the field of complex numbers, then so also are $\alpha + \beta, \beta + \gamma, \gamma + \alpha$. (Patna 1986)

Solution. Let a, b, c be scalars such that

$$\begin{aligned} & a(\alpha + \beta) + b(\beta + \gamma) + c(\gamma + \alpha) = 0 \\ \text{i.e.,} \quad & (a + c)\alpha + (a + b)\beta + (b + c)\gamma = 0. \end{aligned} \quad \dots(1)$$

But α, β, γ are linearly independent. Therefore (1) implies

$$a + 0b + c = 0, a + b + 0c = 0, 0a + b + c = 0.$$

The coefficient matrix A of these equations is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We have $\text{rank } A = 3$ i.e., the number of unknowns a, b, c . Therefore $a = 0, b = 0, c = 0$ is the only solution of the given equations. Hence $\alpha + \beta, \beta + \gamma, \gamma + \alpha$ are also linearly independent.

Example 12. If α, β, γ are linearly independent vectors of $V(F)$ where F is the field of complex numbers, then so also are

$$\alpha + \beta, \alpha - \beta, \alpha - 2\beta + \gamma.$$

Solution. Let a, b, c be scalars such that

$$a(\alpha + \beta) + b(\alpha - \beta) + c(\alpha - 2\beta + \gamma) = 0 \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{i.e.,} \quad (a+b+c)\alpha + (a-b-2c)\beta + c\gamma = 0. \quad \dots(2)$$

But α, β, γ are linearly independent. Therefore (2) implies

$$a+b+c=0, a-b-2c=0, c=0.$$

The only solution of these equations is $c=0, a=0, b=0$.

Thus (1) implies $a=0, b=0, c=0$. Therefore the vectors $\alpha + \beta, \alpha - \beta, \alpha - 2\beta + \gamma$ are linearly independent.

Example 13. Show that the set $\{1, x, 1+x+x^2\}$ is a linearly independent set of vectors in the vector space of all polynomials over the real number field. (Meerut 1976)

Solution. Let a, b, c be scalars (real numbers) such that

$$a(1) + bx + c(1+x+x^2) = 0.$$

$$\text{We have} \quad a(1) + bx + c(1+x+x^2) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+c) + (b+c)x + cx^2 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a+c=0, b+c=0, c=0 \Rightarrow c=0, b=0, a=0.$$

\therefore the vectors $1, x, 1+x+x^2$ are linearly independent over the field of real numbers.

Example 14. In the vector space $F[x]$ of all polynomials over the field F the infinite set $S = \{1, x, x^2, x^3, \dots\}$ is linearly independent.

Solution. Let $S' = \{x^{m_1}, x^{m_2}, \dots, x^{m_n}\}$ be any finite subset of S having n vectors. Here m_1, m_2, \dots, m_n are some non-negative integers. Let a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n be scalars such that

$$a_1x^{m_1} + a_2x^{m_2} + \dots + a_nx^{m_n} = 0$$

$$\text{(i.e., zero polynomial)} \quad \dots(1)$$

By the definition of equality of two polynomials we have from (1)

$$a_1=0, a_2=0, \dots, a_n=0.$$

Thus every finite subset of S is linearly independent.

Therefore S is linearly independent.

Example 15. Is the vector $(2, -5, 3)$ in the subspace of \mathbb{R}^3 spanned by the vectors $(1, -3, 2), (2, -4, -1), (1, -5, 7)$?

Solution. Let $\alpha = (2, -5, 3), \alpha_1 = (1, -3, 2), \alpha_2 = (2, -4, -1), \alpha_3 = (1, -5, 7)$. If α can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ then it will be in the subspace of \mathbb{R}^3 spanned by these vectors otherwise it will not be.

Let $\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + a_3\alpha_3$ where $a_1, a_2, a_3 \in \mathbb{R}$.

Then $(2, -5, 3) = a_1(1, -3, 2) + a_2(2, -4, -1) + a_3(1, -5, 7)$

$$\text{or } (2, -5, 3) = (a_1 + 2a_2 + a_3, -3a_1 - 4a_2 - 5a_3, 2a_1 - a_2 + 7a_3).$$

$$\therefore \left. \begin{aligned} a_1 + 2a_2 + a_3 &= 2 \\ -3a_1 - 4a_2 - 5a_3 &= -5 \\ 2a_1 - a_2 + 7a_3 &= 3 \end{aligned} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \dots(1) \\ \dots(2) \\ \dots(3) \end{array}$$

Multiplying the equation (1) by 3 and adding to (2), we get
 $2a_2 - 2a_3 = 1$ or $a_2 - a_3 = \frac{1}{2}$. $\dots(4)$

Again multiplying the equation (1) by 2 and subtracting from (3), we get

$$-5a_2 + 5a_3 = -1 \text{ or } a_2 - a_3 = 1/5. \dots(5)$$

The relations (4) and (5) show that the above equations are inconsistent. Hence the vector α cannot be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$. Therefore α is not in the subspace of \mathbb{R}^3 generated by the vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$.

Example 16. In the vector space \mathbb{R}^3 , let $\alpha = (1, 2, 1)$, $\beta = (3, 1, 5)$, $\gamma = (3, -4, 7)$. Show that the subspaces spanned by $S = \{\alpha, \beta\}$ and $T = \{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$ are the same. (Meerut 1977)

Solution. First we shall show that the vector γ can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors α and β . Let

$$(3, -4, 7) = a(1, 2, 1) + b(3, 1, 5).$$

Then $a + 3b = 3$, $2a + b = -4$, $a + 5b = 7$. Solving the first two equations we get $a = -3$, $b = 2$ and these satisfy the third equation also. Therefore we can write $\gamma = -3\alpha + 2\beta$.

Now $S \subseteq T \Rightarrow L(S) \subseteq L(T)$.

Further let $\delta \in L(T)$. Then δ can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors α, β and γ . In this linear combination the vector γ can be replaced by $-3\alpha + 2\beta$. Thus δ can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors α and β . Therefore $\delta \in L(S)$. Thus $\delta \in L(T) \Rightarrow \delta \in L(S)$. Therefore $L(T) \subseteq L(S)$.

Hence $L(T) = L(S)$.

Exercises

1. Show that the three vectors $(1, 1, -1)$, $(2, -3, 5)$ and $(-2, 1, 4)$ of \mathbb{R}^3 are linearly independent.
2. Show that the vectors $(1, 1, 2, 4)$, $(2, -1, -5, 2)$, $(1, -1, -4, 0)$ and $(2, 1, 1, 6)$ are linearly dependent in \mathbb{R}^4 . (Meerut 1971)
3. Show that the vectors $(1, 1, 0, 0)$, $(0, 1, -1, 0)$, $(0, 0, 0, 3)$ in \mathbb{R}^4 are linearly independent.

4. Is the vector $(3, -1, 0, -1)$ in the subspace of \mathbb{R}^4 spanned by the vectors $(2, -1, 3, 2)$, $(-1, 1, 1, -3)$ and $(1, 1, 9, -5)$?

Ans. No.

5. Show that the set $\{1, x, x(1-x)\}$ is a linearly independent set of vectors in the space of all polynomials over the real number field. (Meerut 1971)

6. Find whether the vectors $2x^3+x^2+x+1$, x^3+3x^2+x-2 and x^3+2x^2-x+3 of $\mathbb{R}[x]$, the vector space of all polynomials over the real number field, are linearly independent or not?

(Meerut 1975) Ans. Linearly independent.

7. Prove that a set of vectors which contains the zero vector is linearly dependent. (Meerut 1974)

8. Show that the system of three vectors $(1, 3, 2)$, $(1, -7, -8)$, $(2, 1, -1)$ of $V_3(\mathbb{R})$ is linearly dependent.

(Meerut 1975; Madras 77)

9. Determine whether the following set of vectors in $V_3(\mathbb{Q})$ is linearly dependent or independent, \mathbb{Q} being the field of rational numbers : $\{(-1, 2, 1), (3, 1, -2)\}$. (Meerut 1974)

Ans. Linearly independent.

10. Prove that any finite set S of vectors, not all the zero vectors, contains a linearly independent subset T which spans the same space as S .

11. Find a linearly independent subset T of the set

$$S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4\},$$

where $\alpha_1 = (1, 2, -1)$, $\alpha_2 = (-3, -6, 3)$,

$$\alpha_3 = (2, 1, 3), \alpha_4 = (8, 7, 7) \in \mathbb{R}^3$$

which spans the same space as S .

Ans. $T = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_3\}$.

§ 8. Some Theorems on Linear Dependence and Linear Independence.

Theorem 1. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space. If $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are non-zero vectors $\in V$ then either they are linearly independent or some α_k , $2 \leq k \leq n$, is a linear combination of the preceding ones, $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{k-1}$. (Banaras 1969; Kanpur 70)

Proof. If $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \dots, \alpha_n$ are linearly independent we are nothing to prove. So let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ be linearly dependent. Then there exists a relation of the form

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = 0 \quad \dots(1)$$

where, not all the scalar coefficients a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n are 0. Let k be the largest integer for which $a_k \neq 0$ i.e., $a_{k+1}=0, a_{k+2}=0, \dots, a_n=0$ and $a_k \neq 0$. There is no harm in this assumption because at the most if $a_n \neq 0$ then $k=n$.

Also $2 \leq k$. Because if $a_2=0, a_3=0, \dots, a_n=0$, then $a_1\alpha_1=0$ and $a_1 \neq 0 \Rightarrow a_1=0$. This contradicts the fact that not all the a 's are 0.

Now the relation (1) reduces to

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_k\alpha_k = 0, \text{ where } a_k \neq 0$$

or $a_k\alpha_k = -a_1\alpha_1 - a_2\alpha_2 - \dots - a_{k-1}\alpha_{k-1}$

or $a_k^{-1}(a_k\alpha_k) = a_k^{-1}(-a_1\alpha_1 - a_2\alpha_2 - \dots - a_{k-1}\alpha_{k-1})$

or $\alpha_k = (-a_k^{-1}a_1)\alpha_1 + (-a_k^{-1}a_2)\alpha_2 + \dots + (-a_k^{-1}a_{k-1})\alpha_{k-1}$.

Thus α_k is a linear combination of its preceding vectors.

Theorem 2. *The set of non-zero vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ of $V(F)$ is linearly dependent if some $\alpha_k, 2 \leq k \leq n$, is a linear combination of the preceding ones.* (Banaras 1969; Kanpur 70)

Proof. If some $\alpha_k, 2 \leq k \leq n$, is a linear combination of the preceding ones $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{k-1}$, then \exists scalars a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1} such that $\alpha_k = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_{k-1}\alpha_{k-1}$

$$\Rightarrow 1\alpha_k - a_1\alpha_1 - a_2\alpha_2 - \dots - a_{k-1}\alpha_{k-1} = 0 \quad \dots(1)$$

\Rightarrow the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k\}$ is linearly dependent because in the linear combination (1) the scalar coefficient 1 $\neq 0$.

Hence the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ of which $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k\}$ is a subset must be linearly dependent.

Theorem 3. *If in a vector space $V(F)$, a vector β is a linear combination of the set of vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \dots, \alpha_n$, then the set of vectors $\beta, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ is linearly dependent.*

Proof. Since β is a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ therefore there exist scalars a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n such that

$$\beta = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n$$

$$\Rightarrow 1\beta - a_1\alpha_1 - a_2\alpha_2 - \dots - a_n\alpha_n = 0. \quad \dots(1)$$

In the relation (1) the scalar coefficient of β is 1 which is $\neq 0$. Hence in the relation (1) not all the scalar coefficients are 0. Therefore the set of vectors $\beta, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ is linearly dependent.

Theorem 4. *The set of non-zero vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ of $V(F)$ is linearly dependent iff one of these vectors is a linear combination of the remaining $(n-1)$ vectors.* (Kolhapur 1973; Meerut 69)

Proof. This theorem can be easily proved.

§ 9. Basis of a Vector Space. Definition.

(I.A.S. 1974; Poona 73; Madras 78; Meerut 66; Kanpur 86; Patna 86; Punjab 69)

A subset S of a vector space $V(F)$ is said to be a basis of $V(F)$, if

- (i) S consists of linearly independent vectors.
- (ii) S generates $V(F)$ i.e., $L(S) = V$ i.e., each vector in V is a linear combination of a finite number of elements of S .

Example 1. A system S consisting of n vectors

$e_1 = (1, 0, 0, \dots, 0)$, $e_2 = (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0)$, ..., $e_n = (0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$ is a basis of $V_n(F)$.

Solution. First we should show that S is a linearly independent set of vectors. We have proved it in one of the previous examples.

Now we should prove that $L(S) = V_n(F)$. We have always $L(S) \subseteq V_n(F)$. So we should prove that $V_n(F) \subseteq L(S)$ i.e., each vector in $V_n(F)$ is a linear combination of elements of S .

Let $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ be any vector in $V_n(F)$. We can write
 $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = a_1(1, 0, \dots, 0) + a_2(0, 1, 0, \dots, 0) + \dots$
 $+ a_n(0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$

i.e., $\alpha = a_1 e_1 + a_2 e_2 + \dots + a_n e_n$.

Hence S is a basis of $V_n(F)$. We shall call this particular basis the standard basis of $V_n(F)$.

Note. The set $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ is a basis of $V_2(F)$. The set $\{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$ is a basis of $V_3(F)$. As a particular case a basis of $F(F)$ is the set consisting of only the unit element of F .

Example 2. Show that the infinite set

$$S = \{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n, \dots\}$$

is a basis of the vector space $F[x]$ of polynomials of the field F .

Solution. First we should prove that S is a linearly independent set of vectors. For proof refer some previous example.

Now we should show that S spans $F[x]$ i.e., each polynomial in $F[x]$ can be expressed as a linear combination of a finite number of elements of S .

Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots + a_i x^i$ be a polynomial of degree i .

Then $f(x) = (a_0) 1 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots + a_i x^i$.

Hence S is a basis of $F[x]$.

Note. The vector space $F[x]$ has no finite basis. If we take any finite set W of polynomials, we can find a polynomial of degree greater than that of each of them. Such a polynomial cannot at any cost be expressed as a linear combination of the elements of W .

§ 10. Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces. Definition. *The vector space $V(F)$ is said to be finite dimensional or finitely generated if there exists a finite subset S of V such that $V=L(S)$.*

The vector space $V_n(F)$ of n -tuples is a finite dimensional vector space.

The vector space $F[x]$ of all polynomials over a field F is not finite dimensional. There exists no finite subset S of $F[x]$ which spans $F[x]$. *A vector space which is not finitely generated may be referred to as an infinite dimensional space.* Thus the vector space $F[x]$ of all polynomials over a field F is infinite dimensional.

Existence of basis of a finite dimensional vector space.

Theorem. *There exists a basis for each finite dimensional vector space.* (Meerut 1980; Patna 87; Kanpur 86)

Proof. Let $V(F)$ be a finitely generated vector space. Let $S=\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ be a finite subset of V such that $L(S)=V$. Without loss of generality we may suppose that no member of S is 0.

If S is linearly independent, then S itself is a basis of V .

If S is linearly dependent, then there exists, a vector $\alpha_i \in S$ which can be expressed as a linear combination of the preceding vectors $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}$.

If we omit this vector α_i from S , then the remaining set S' of $m-1$ vectors

$$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}, \alpha_{i+1}, \dots, \alpha_m$$

also generates V i.e., $V=L(S')$. For if α is any element of V , then $L(S)=V$ implies that α can be written as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$. In this linear combination we can replace α_i by a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}$. Then α will be a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}, \alpha_{i+1}, \dots, \alpha_m$. Thus V will be equal to $L(S')$.

If S' is linearly independent, then S' will be a basis of V . If S' is linearly dependent, then proceeding as above we shall get a new set of $m-2$ vectors which generates V . Continuing this process we shall, after a finite number of steps, obtain a linearly independent subset of S which generates V and which is therefore basis of V .

At the most it may happen that we shall be left with a subset of S which contains only one non-zero vector and which spans V . We know that a set containing a single non-zero vector is definitely linearly independent and so it will form a basis of V .

Note. The above theorem may also be stated as below :

If a finite set S of vectors spans a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$, there exists a subset of S which forms a basis of V .

(Madras 1974)

Invariance of number of elements in the basis of a finite dimensional vector space.

Dimension Theorem for Vector Spaces. *If $V(F)$ is a finite dimensional vector space, then any two bases of V have the same number of elements.*

(Patna 1986; I.A.S. 75; Kanpur 88; Indore 70; Vikram 76; Madras 78; Meerut 80; Guru Nanak 88)

Proof. Suppose $V(F)$ is a finite dimensional vector space. Then V definitely possesses a basis. Let $S_1 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ and $S_2 = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$ be two bases of V . We shall prove that $m = n$.

Since $V = L(S_1)$ and $\beta_1 \in V$, therefore β_1 can be expressed as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$. Consequently the set $S_3 = \{\beta_1, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ which also obviously generates $V(F)$ is linearly dependent. Therefore there exists a member $\alpha_i \neq \beta_1$ of this set S_3 such that α_i is a linear combination of the preceding vectors $\beta_1, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}$. If we omit the vector α_i from S_3 then V is also generated by the remaining set

$$S_4 = \{\beta_1, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}, \alpha_{i+1}, \dots, \alpha_m\}.$$

Since $V = L(S_4)$ and $\beta_2 \in V$, therefore β_2 can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors belonging to S_4 . Consequently the set

$$S_5 = \{\beta_2, \beta_1, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{i-1}, \alpha_{i+1}, \dots, \alpha_m\}$$

is linearly dependent. Therefore there exists a member α_j of this set S_5 such that α_j is a linear combination of the preceding vectors. Obviously α_j will be different from β_1 and β_2 since $\{\beta_1, \beta_2\}$ is a linearly independent set. If we exclude the vector α_j from S_5 , then the remaining set will generate $V(F)$.

We may continue to proceed in this manner. Here each step consists in the exclusion of an α and the inclusion of a β in the set S_1 .

Obviously the set S_1 of α 's cannot be exhausted before the set S_2 of β 's, otherwise $V(F)$ will be a linear span of a proper subset of S_2 and thus S_2 will become linearly dependent. Therefore we must have

$$m \leq n.$$

Interchanging the roles of S_1 and S_2 we shall get that $n \leq m$.

Hence $m=n$.

Example. For the vector space $V_3(F)$, both the sets

$$S_1 = \{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$$

and

$$S_2 = \{(1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, 1)\}$$

are bases as can be easily seen. Both these bases contain the same number of elements i.e., 3.

Dimension of a finitely generated vector space. Definition. The number of elements in any basis of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ is called the dimension of the vector space $V(F)$ and will be denoted by $\dim V$. (I.A.S. 1974; Madras 78; Poona 73)

The vector space $V_n(F)$ is of dimension n . The vector space $V_3(F)$ is of dimension 3. If a field F is regarded as a vector space over F , then F will be of dimension 1 and the set $S = \{1\}$ consisting of unity element of F alone is a basis of F . In fact every non-zero element of F will form a basis of F .

§ 11. Some properties of finite dimensional vector spaces.

Theorem 1. (Extension Theorem). Every linearly independent subset of a finitely generated vector space $V(F)$ forms a part of a basis of V .

Or

Every linearly independent subset of a finitely generated vector space $V(F)$ is either a basis of V or can be extended to form a basis of V . (Nagpur 1970; Madras 78; Delhi Hons. 68; Kanpur 88; Banaras 67; Guru Nanak 87)

Proof. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ be a linearly independent subset of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$. If $\dim V = n$, then V has a finite basis say, $\{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$. Consider the set

$$S_1 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}.$$

Obviously $L(S_1) = V$. Since the α 's can be expressed as linear combinations of the β 's therefore the set S_1 is linearly dependent.

Therefore there is some vector of S_1 which is a linear combination of its preceding vectors. This vector cannot be any of the

α 's since the α 's are linearly independent. Therefore this vector must be some β , say, β_l . Now omit the vector β_l from S_1 and consider the set

$$S_2 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_{l-1}, \beta_{l+1}, \dots, \beta_n\}.$$

Obviously $L(S_2) = V$. If S_2 is linearly independent, then S_2 will be a basis of V and it is the required extended set which is a basis of V . If S_2 is not linearly independent, then repeating the above process a finite number of times, we shall get a linearly independent set containing $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ and spanning V . This set will be a basis of V and it will contain S . Since each basis of V contains the same number of elements, therefore exactly $n-m$ elements of the set of β 's will be adjoined to S so as to form a basis of V .

Theorem 2. *Each set of $(n+1)$ or more vectors of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ of dimension n is linearly dependent.*
(Meerut 1970)

Proof. Let $V(F)$ be a finite dimensional vector space of dimension n . Let S be a linearly independent subset of V containing $(n+1)$ or more vectors. Then S can be extended to form a basis of V . Thus we shall get a basis of V containing more than n vectors. But every basis of V will contain exactly n vectors. Hence our assumption is wrong. Therefore if S contains $(n+1)$ or more vectors, then S must be linearly dependent. From this theorem we conclude that if S contains m vectors and S is linearly independent then

$$m \leq n.$$

Theorem 3. *If $V(F)$ is a finite dimensional vector space of dimension n , then any set of n linearly independent vectors in V forms a basis of V .*
(Banaras 1969)

Proof. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a linearly independent subset of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ of dimension n . If S is not a basis of V , then it can be extended to form a basis of V . Thus we shall get a basis of V containing more than n vectors. But every basis of V must contain exactly n vectors. Therefore our assumption is wrong and S must be a basis of V .

Theorem 4. *If a set S of n vectors of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ of dimension n generates $V(F)$, then S is a basis of V .*
(Banaras 1968)

Proof. Let $V(F)$ be a finite dimensional vector space of dimension n . Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a subset of V such that $L(S) = V$.

If S is linearly independent, then S will form a basis of V . If S is not linearly independent, then there will exist a proper subset of S which will form a basis of V . Thus, we shall get a basis of V containing less than n elements. But every basis of V must contain exactly n elements. Hence S cannot be linearly dependent and so S must be a basis of V .

Note. If V is a finite dimensional vector space of dimension n , then V cannot be generated by fewer than n vectors.

Theorem 5. Dimension of a subspace.

Each subspace W of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ of dimension n is a finite dimensional space with $\dim m \leq n$.

Also $V = W$ iff $\dim V = \dim W$.

(Delhi Hons. 1970; Banaras 67; Meerut 69, 71)

Proof. Let $V(F)$ be a finite dimensional vector space of dim n . Let W be a subspace of V . Any subset of W containing $(n+1)$ or more vectors is also a subset of V and any $(n+1)$ vectors in V are linearly dependent. Therefore any linearly independent set of vectors in W can contain, at the most n vectors. Let

$$S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$$

be a linearly independent subset of W with a maximal number of elements. We claim that S is a basis of W . The proof is as follows :

- (i) By assumption S is a linearly independent subset of W .
- (ii) $L(S) = W$ as we shall just show.

Let α be any element of W . Then the $(m+1)$ vectors $\alpha, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ belonging to W are linearly dependent because we have supposed that the largest independent subset of W contains m vectors.

Now $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \alpha\}$ is a linearly dependent set. Therefore there exists a vector belonging to it which can be expressed as a linear combination of the preceding vectors. Since $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ are linearly independent, therefore this vector cannot be any of these m vectors. So it must be α itself. Thus α can be expressed as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$. Hence $L(S) = W$.

$\therefore S$ is a basis of W .

$\therefore \dim W = m$ and $m \leq n$.

Now if $V = W$, then every basis of V is also a basis of W .

Hence $\dim V = \dim W = n$.

Conversely let $\dim W = \dim V = n$. Then to prove that $W = V$.

Let S be a basis of W . Then $L(S) = W$ and S contains n vectors. Since S is also a subset of V and S contains n linearly independent vectors, therefore S will also be a basis of V . Therefore $L(S) = V$. Hence $W = V$.

Theorem 6. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ of dimension n . Then every element α of V can be uniquely expressed as

$$\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n \text{ where } a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in F. \quad (\text{Meerut 1971})$$

Proof. Since S is a basis of V , therefore $L(S) = V$. Therefore any vector $\alpha \in V$ can be expressed as $\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n$.

To show uniqueness, let us suppose that

$$\alpha = b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n.$$

Then we must show that $a_1 = b_1, a_2 = b_2, \dots, a_n = b_n$.

$$\text{We have } a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n$$

$$\Rightarrow (a_1 - b_1)\alpha_1 + (a_2 - b_2)\alpha_2 + \dots + (a_n - b_n)\alpha_n = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 - b_1 = 0, a_2 - b_2 = 0, \dots, a_n - b_n = 0 \text{ since } \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \text{ are linearly independent}$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 = b_1, a_2 = b_2, \dots, a_n = b_n.$$

Hence the theorem.

Theorem 7. If W_1, W_2 are two subspaces of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$, then

$$\dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2).$$

(Rajasthan 1977; Kanpur 87; Patna 86; Vikram 76;

I.C.S. 84, 85, 86, 88; Guru Nanak 90)

Proof. Let $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = k$ and let the set

$$S = \{\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3, \dots, \gamma_k\}$$

be a basis of $W_1 \cap W_2$. Then $S \subseteq W_1$ and $S \subseteq W_2$.

Since S is linearly independent and $S \subseteq W_1$, therefore S can be extended to form a basis of W_1 . Let

$$\{\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_k, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$$

be a basis of W_1 . Then $\dim W_1 = k + m$. Similarly let

$$\{\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_k, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t\}$$

be a basis of W_2 . Then $\dim W_2 = k + t$.

$$\therefore \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = (m+k) + (k+t) - k = k+m+t.$$

\therefore to prove the theorem we must show that

$$\dim(W_1 + W_2) = k + m + t.$$

We claim that $S_1 = \{\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_k, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t\}$ is a basis of $W_1 + W_2$.

First we show that S_1 is linearly independent. Let

$$c_1\gamma_1 + c_2\gamma_2 + \dots + c_k\gamma_k + a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m + b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_t\beta_t = 0 \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\Rightarrow b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_t\beta_t = -(c_1\gamma_1 + \dots + c_k\gamma_k + a_1\alpha_1 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m) \quad \dots (2)$$

Now $-(c_1\gamma_1 + \dots + c_k\gamma_k + a_1\alpha_1 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m) \in W_1$ since it is a linear combination of a basis of W_1 . Again

$$b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_t\beta_t \in W_2$$

since it is a linear combination of elements belonging to a basis of W_2 .

Also by virtue of the equality (2), $b_1\beta_1 + \dots + b_t\beta_t \in W_1$. Therefore $b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_t\beta_t \in W_1 \cap W_2$. Therefore it can be expressed as a linear combination of the basis S of $W_1 \cap W_2$. Thus we have a relation of the form

$$\begin{aligned} b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_t\beta_t &= d_1\gamma_1 + d_2\gamma_2 + \dots + d_k\gamma_k \\ \Rightarrow b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_t\beta_t - d_1\gamma_1 - d_2\gamma_2 - \dots - d_k\gamma_k &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

But $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_k$ are linearly independent vectors. Therefore we must have $b_1=0, b_2=0, \dots, b_t=0$.

Putting these values of b 's in (1), it reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} c_1\gamma_1 + c_2\gamma_2 + \dots + c_k\gamma_k + a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow c_1=0, c_2=0, \dots, c_k=0, a_1=0, a_2=0, \dots, a_m=0 \end{aligned}$$

since the vectors $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_k, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ are linearly independent.

Thus the relation (1) implies that

$$c_1=0, c_2=0, \dots, c_k=0, a_1=0, \dots, a_m=0, b_1=0, \dots, b_t=0.$$

Therefore the set S_1 of vectors $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_k, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t$ is linearly independent.

Now to show that $L(S_1) = W_1 + W_2$.

Since $W_1 + W_2$ is a subspace of V and each element of S_1 belongs to $W_1 + W_2$, therefore $L(S_1) \subseteq W_1 + W_2$.

Again let α be any element of $W_1 + W_2$. Then

$\alpha =$ some element of $W_1 +$ some element of W_2

$=$ a linear combination of a basis of $W_1 +$ a linear combination of a basis of W_2

$=$ a linear combination of S_1 .

$\therefore \alpha \in L(S_1)$. Hence $W_1 + W_2 \subseteq L(S_1)$.

$\therefore L(S_1) = W_1 + W_2$.

$\therefore S_1$ is a basis of $W_1 + W_2$ and consequently
 $\dim(W_1 + W_2) = k + m + t$.

Hence the theorem.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Show that the vectors $(1, 2, 1)$, $(2, 1, 0)$, $(1, -1, 2)$ form a basis of \mathbb{R}^3 . (Kapur 1980)

Solution. We know that the set $\{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$ forms a basis for \mathbb{R}^3 . Therefore $\dim \mathbb{R}^3 = 3$. If we show that the set $S = \{(1, 2, 1), (2, 1, 0), (1, -1, 2)\}$ is linearly independent, then this set will also form a basis for \mathbb{R}^3 .

[See theorem 3, page 427]

We have

$$a_1(1, 2, 1) + a_2(2, 1, 0) + a_3(1, -1, 2) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\Rightarrow (a_1 + 2a_2 + a_3, 2a_1 + a_2 - a_3, a_1 + 2a_3) = (0, 0, 0).$$

$$\therefore a_1 + 2a_2 + a_3 = 0 \quad \dots(1)$$

$$2a_1 + a_2 - a_3 = 0 \quad \dots(2)$$

$$a_1 + 2a_3 = 0. \quad \dots(3)$$

Now we shall solve these equations to get the values of a_1, a_2, a_3 . Multiplying the equation (2) by 2, we get

$$4a_1 + 2a_2 - 2a_3 = 0. \quad \dots(4)$$

Subtracting (4) from (1), we get

$$-3a_1 + 3a_3 = 0$$

$$\text{or} \quad -a_1 + a_3 = 0. \quad \dots(5)$$

Adding (3) and (5), we get $3a_3 = 0$ or $a_3 = 0$. Putting $a_3 = 0$ in (3), we get $a_1 = 0$. Now putting $a_3 = 0$ and $a_1 = 0$ in (1), we get $a_2 = 0$.

Thus solving the equations (1), (2) and (3), we get $a_1 = 0$, $a_2 = 0$, $a_3 = 0$. Therefore the set S is linearly independent. Hence it forms a basis for \mathbb{R}^3 .

Ex. 2. Determine whether or not the following vectors form a basis of \mathbb{R}^3 :

$$(1, 1, 2), (1, 2, 5), (5, 3, 4). \quad (\text{Meerut 1980})$$

Solution. We know that $\dim \mathbb{R}^3 = 3$. If the given set of vectors is linearly independent, it will form a basis of \mathbb{R}^3 otherwise not. We have

$$a_1(1, 1, 2) + a_2(1, 2, 5) + a_3(5, 3, 4) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\Rightarrow (a_1 + a_2 + 5a_3, a_1 + 2a_2 + 3a_3, 2a_1 + 5a_2 + 4a_3) = (0, 0, 0).$$

$$\therefore \begin{cases} a_1 + a_2 + 5a_3 = 0 \end{cases} \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\begin{cases} a_1 + 2a_2 + 3a_3 = 0 \end{cases} \quad \dots(2)$$

$$\begin{cases} 2a_1 + 5a_2 + 4a_3 = 0 \end{cases} \quad \dots(3)$$

Now we shall solve these equations to get the values of a_1, a_2, a_3 . Subtracting (2) from (1), we get

$$-a_2 + 2a_3 = 0. \quad \dots(4)$$

Multiplying (1) by 2, we get

$$2a_1 + 2a_2 + 10a_3 = 0. \quad \dots(5)$$

Subtracting (5) from (3), we get

$$3a_2 - 6a_3 = 0$$

or $a_2 - 2a_3 = 0. \quad \dots(6)$

We see that the equations (4) and (6) are the same and give $a_2 = 2a_3$. Putting $a_2 = 2a_3$ in (1), we get $a_1 = -7a_3$. If we put $a_3 = 1$, we get $a_2 = 2$ and $a_1 = -7$. Thus $a_1 = -7, a_2 = 2, a_3 = 1$ is a non-zero solution of the equations (1), (2) and (3). Hence the given set is linearly dependent and so it does not form a basis of \mathbb{R}^3 .

Exercises

- For the 3-dimensional vector space \mathbb{R}^3 over the field of real numbers \mathbb{R} , determine if the set $\{(2, -1, 0), (3, 5, 1), (1, 1, 2)\}$ is a basis. (Nagpur 1970)

Ans. Yes.

- (i) Show that the vectors $(2, 1, 4), (1, -1, 2), (3, 1, -2)$ form a basis for \mathbb{R}^3 .

(ii) Show that the set $\{(1, i, 0), (2i, 1, 1), (0, 1+i, 1-i)\}$ is a basis for $V_3(\mathbb{C})$. (Meerut 1981)

- Show that a system X consisting of the vectors $\alpha_1 = (1, 0, 0, 0), \alpha_2 = (0, 1, 0, 0), \alpha_3 = (0, 0, 1, 0)$ and $\alpha_4 = (0, 0, 0, 1)$ is a basis set of $\mathbb{R}^4(\mathbb{R})$. (Kolhapur 1973)

- Let V be a vector space. Let W be a subspace of V generated by the vectors $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s$. Prove that W is spanned by a linearly independent subset of $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s$. (Dibrugarh 1967)

- If W is a subspace of a finite dimensional vector space V , prove that any basis of W can be extended to form a basis of V . (Nagpur 1970)

6. If n vectors span a vector space V containing r linearly independent vectors, then show that $n \geq r$. (Indore 1970)
7. Show that a finite subset W of a vector space $V(F)$ is linearly dependent if and only if some element of W can be expressed as a linear combination of the others. (Kolhapur 1973)
8. Select a basis, if any, of $\mathbb{R}^3(\mathbb{R})$ from the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4\}$, where $\alpha_1 = (1, -3, 2)$, $\alpha_2 = (2, 4, 1)$, $\alpha_3 = (3, 1, 3)$, $\alpha_4 = (1, 1, 1)$.
Ans. $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_4\}$.
9. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space over a field F , and let v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n be a basis of V . If w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m in V are linearly independent over F , then prove that $m \leq n$. (I.A.S. 1973)
10. Show that the set $S = \{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$ of $n+1$ polynomials in x is a basis of the vector space $P_n(\mathbb{R})$, of all polynomials in x (of degree at most n) over the field of real numbers.
(I.A.S. 1977; Meerut 74)
11. Prove that the set of all $m \times n$ matrices with entries from a field F forms a finite dimensional vector space over F , under the usual operations of matrix addition and scalar multiplication. Obtain a basis for this vector space. (Madras 1974)

§ 12. Homomorphism of vector spaces or linear transformations.

Definition. Let $U(F)$ and $V(F)$ be two vector spaces. Then a mapping $f: U \rightarrow V$ is called a homomorphism or a linear transformation of U into V if :

$$(i) \quad f(\alpha + \beta) = f(\alpha) + f(\beta), \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in U$$

$$\text{and (ii) } f(a\alpha) = af(\alpha) \quad \forall a \in F, \quad \forall \alpha \in U.$$

(Delhi 1970; Poona 73; Aligarh 65)

The conditions (i) and (ii) can be combined into a single condition $f(a\alpha + b\beta) = af(\alpha) + bf(\beta) \quad \forall a, b \in F$ and $\forall \alpha, \beta \in U$.

If f is a homomorphism of U onto V , then V is called a homomorphic image of U .

Theorem 1. If f is a homomorphism of $U(F)$ into $V(F)$, then

(i) $f(0) = 0'$ where 0 and $0'$ are the zero vectors of U and V respectively.

$$(ii) \quad f(-\alpha) = -f(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in U.$$

Proof. (i) Let $\alpha \in U$. Then $f(\alpha) \in V$. Since $0'$ is the zero vector of V , therefore $f(\alpha) + 0' = f(\alpha) = f(\alpha + 0) = f(\alpha) + f(0)$.

Now V is an abelian group with respect to addition of vectors. Therefore $f(\alpha) + 0' = f(\alpha) + f(0) \Rightarrow 0' = f(0)$, by left cancellation law.

(ii) If $\alpha \in U$, then $-\alpha \in U$. Also we have

$$0' = f(0) = f[\alpha + (-\alpha)] = f(\alpha) + f(-\alpha).$$

Now $f(\alpha) + f(-\alpha) = 0' \Rightarrow f(-\alpha) = \text{additive inverse of } f(\alpha)$
 $\Rightarrow f(-\alpha) = -f(\alpha).$

Note. The students may use without any confusion the same symbol 0 to denote both the zero vectors of U and V . In the relation $f(0) = 0'$, the zero in the left hand side is the zero vector of U and its f -image i.e., the zero on the right hand side is the zero vector of V .

Kernel of a homomorphism. Definition. Let f be a homomorphism of a vector space $U(F)$ into a vector space $V(F)$. The kernel W of f is defined as

$$W = \{\alpha \in U : f(\alpha) = 0' \text{ where } 0' \text{ is the zero vector of } V\}.$$

Thus the kernel W of f is a subset of U consisting of those elements of U which are mapped under f onto the zero vector of V . Since $f(0) = 0'$, therefore at least $0 \in W$. Thus W is not empty.

Theorem 2. The kernel of a homomorphism is a subspace.

(Agra 1986)

Proof. Let $U(F)$ and $V(F)$ be two vector spaces and let f be a homomorphism of U into V .

Let $0'$ be the zero vector of V and 0 be the zero vector of U . Let W be the kernel of f i.e. $W = \{\alpha \in U : f(\alpha) = 0'\}$.

To prove that W is a subspace of U .

Let α, β be any two elements of W . Then $f(\alpha) = 0'$ and $f(\beta) = 0'$. If a, b are any two elements of F , then we have
 $f(a\alpha + b\beta) = af(\alpha) + bf(\beta)$ [$\because f$ is a homomorphism of U into V]
 $= a0' + b0' = 0' + 0' = 0'.$

$$\therefore a\alpha + b\beta \in W.$$

Thus $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow a\alpha + b\beta \in W$.

$\therefore W$ is a subspace of U .

§ 13. Isomorphism of Vector spaces.

Definition. Let $U(F)$ and $V(F)$ be two vector spaces. Then a mapping $f: U \rightarrow V$ is called an isomorphism of U onto V if

(i) f is one-one,

(ii) f is onto,

(iii) $f(a\alpha + b\beta) = af(\alpha) + bf(\beta) \quad \forall a, b \in F, \alpha, \beta \in U$.

Also then the two vector spaces U and V are said to be isomorphic and symbolically we write $U(F) \cong V(F)$.

The vector space $V(F)$ is also called the isomorphic image of the vector space $U(F)$.

If f is a homomorphism of $U(F)$ into $V(F)$, then f will become an isomorphism of U into V if f is one-one. Also in addition if f is onto V , then f will become an isomorphism of U onto V .

Isomorphism of finite dimensional vector spaces.

Theorem 1. (Isomorphism theorem for vector spaces). Two finite dimensional vector spaces over the same field are isomorphic if and only if they are of the same dimension.

(Banaras 1972; Kanpur 69; Meerut 77; I.C.S. 87)

Proof. First suppose that $U(F)$ and $V(F)$ are two finite dimensional vector spaces each of dimension n . Then to prove that $U(F) \cong V(F)$.

Let the sets of vectors $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ and $\{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$ be the bases of U and V respectively.

Any vector $\alpha \in U$ can be uniquely expressed as

$$\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n.$$

Let $f: U \rightarrow V$ be defined by

$$f(\alpha) = a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n.$$

Since in the expression for α as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ the scalars a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n are unique, therefore the mapping f is well-defined i.e., $f(\alpha)$ is a unique element of V .

f is one-one. We have

$$f(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) = f(b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n)$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n = b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_n\beta_n$$

$$\Rightarrow (a_1 - b_1)\beta_1 + \dots + (a_n - b_n)\beta_n = 0 \text{ (zero vector of } V)$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 - b_1 = 0, a_2 - b_2 = 0, \dots, a_n - b_n = 0 \text{ because}$$

$$\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n \text{ are linearly independent}$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 = b_1, a_2 = b_2, \dots, a_n = b_n$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n.$$

$\therefore f$ is one-one.

f is onto V . If $a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n$ is any element of V , then \exists an element $a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n \in U$ such that

$$f(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) = a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n.$$

$\therefore f$ is onto V .

f is a linear transformation. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f[a(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) + b(b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n)] \\ = f[(aa_1 + bb_1)\alpha_1 + (aa_2 + bb_2)\alpha_2 + \dots + (aa_n + bb_n)\alpha_n] \\ = (aa_1 + bb_1)\beta_1 + (aa_2 + bb_2)\beta_2 + \dots + (aa_n + bb_n)\beta_n \\ = a(a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n) + b(b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_n\beta_n) \\ = af(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) + bf(b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$ is a linear transformation.

Hence f is an isomorphism of U onto V . $\therefore U \cong V$.

Conversely, let $U(F)$ and $V(F)$ be two isomorphic finite dimensional vector spaces. Then to prove that $\dim U = \dim V$. Let $\dim U = n$. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis of U . If f is an isomorphism of U onto V , we shall show that $S' = \{f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_n)\}$ is a basis of V . Then V will also be of dimension n .

First we show that S' is linearly independent.

Let $a_1 f(\alpha_1) + a_2 f(\alpha_2) + \dots + a_n f(\alpha_n) = 0'$ (zero vector of V)
 $\Rightarrow f(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) = 0'$ [$\because f$ is a linear transformation]
 $\Rightarrow a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n = 0$ [$\because f$ is one-one and $f(0) = 0'$
 where 0 is zero vector of U]
 $\Rightarrow a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_n = 0$ since $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are linearly independent.
 $\therefore S'$ is linearly independent.

Now to prove that $L(S') = V$. For this we shall prove that any vector $\beta \in V$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors of the set S' . Since f is onto V , therefore $\beta \in V \Rightarrow$ there exists $\alpha \in U$ such that $f(\alpha) = \beta$.

$$\text{Let } \alpha = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } \beta = f(\alpha) &= f(c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n) \\ &= c_1 f(\alpha_1) + c_2 f(\alpha_2) + \dots + c_n f(\alpha_n). \end{aligned}$$

Thus β is a linear combination of the vectors of S' .

Hence $V = L(S')$. Therefore S' is a basis of V . Since S' contains n vectors, therefore $\dim V = n$.

Note. While proving the converse, we have proved that if f is an isomorphism of U onto V then f maps a basis of U onto a basis of V .

Theorem 2. Every n -dimensional vector space $V(F)$ is isomorphic to $V_n(F)$. (Aligarh 1965; Meerut 71; Marathwada 72)

Proof. Let $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be any basis of $V(F)$. Then every vector $\alpha \in V$ can be uniquely expressed as

$$\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n, \quad a_i \in F.$$

The ordered n -tuple $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \in V_n(F)$.

Let $f: V(F) \rightarrow V_n(F)$ be defined by $f(\alpha) = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$.

Since in the expression of α as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ the scalars a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n are unique, therefore $f(\alpha)$ is a unique element of $V_n(F)$ and thus the mapping f is well-defined.

f is one-one. Let $\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n$ and $\beta = b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n$ be any two elements of V . We have

$$f(\alpha) = f(\beta)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) = f(b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n)$$

$$\Rightarrow (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 = b_1, a_2 = b_2, \dots, a_n = b_n \Rightarrow \alpha = \beta.$$

$\therefore f$ is one-one.

f is onto $V_n(F)$. Let (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) be any element of $V_n(F)$. Then there exists an element $a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n \in V(F)$ such that $f(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$.

$\therefore f$ is onto $V_n(F)$.

f is a linear transformation. If $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in V(F)$, we have $f(a\alpha + b\beta)$

$$= f[a(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) + b(b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n)]$$

$$= f[(aa_1 + bb_1)\alpha_1 + (aa_2 + bb_2)\alpha_2 + \dots + (aa_n + bb_n)\alpha_n]$$

$$= (aa_1 + bb_1, aa_2 + bb_2, \dots, aa_n + bb_n)$$

$$= (aa_1, aa_2, \dots, aa_n) + (bb_1, bb_2, \dots, bb_n)$$

$$= a(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + b(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$$

$$= af(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) + bf(b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_n\alpha_n)$$

$$= af(\alpha) + bf(\beta).$$

$\therefore f$ is a linear transformation.

$\therefore f$ is an isomorphism of $V(F)$ onto $V_n(F)$.

Hence $V(F) \cong V_n(F)$.

Example 1. The mapping $f: V_3(F) \rightarrow V_3(F)$ defined by

$$f(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (a_1, a_2)$$

is a homomorphism of $V_3(F)$ onto $V_2(F)$. What is the kernel of this homomorphism?

Solution. Let $\alpha = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$ and $\beta = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$ be any two elements of $V_3(F)$. Also let a, b be any two elements of F . We have

$$f(a\alpha + b\beta) = f[a(a_1, a_2, a_3) + b(b_1, b_2, b_3)]$$

$$= f[(aa_1 + bb_1, aa_2 + bb_2, aa_3 + bb_3)] = (aa_1 + bb_1, aa_2 + bb_2)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= a(a_1, a_2) + b(b_1, b_2) = af(a_1, a_2, a_3) + bf(b_1, b_2, b_3) \\
 &= af(\alpha) + bf(\beta).
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f$ is a linear transformation.

To show that f is onto $V_2(F)$. Let (a_1, a_2) be any element of $V_2(F)$. Then $(a_1, a_2, 0) \in V_3(F)$ and we have $f(a_1, a_2, 0) = (a_1, a_2)$. Therefore f is onto $V_2(F)$.

Therefore f is a homomorphism of $V_3(F)$ onto $V_2(F)$. If W is the kernel of this homomorphism then $W = \{(0, 0, a) : a \in F\}$.

We have $\forall a \in F, f(0, 0, a) = (0, 0) =$ the zero vector of $V_2(F)$.

Also if $f(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (0, 0)$, then $f(a_1, a_2, a_3) = (a_1, a_2) = (0, 0)$ implies $a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0$. Therefore $(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in W$.

Hence W is the kernel of f .

Example 2. If V is a finite dimensional vector space and f is an isomorphism of V into V , prove that f must map V onto V .

Solution. Let $V(F)$ be a finite dimensional vector space of dimension n . Let f be an isomorphism of V into V i.e., f is a linear transformation and f is one-one. To prove that f is onto V .

Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis of V . We shall first prove that

$S' = \{f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_n)\}$ is also a basis of V . We claim that S' is linearly independent. The proof is as follows :

Let $a_1 f(\alpha_1) + a_2 f(\alpha_2) + \dots + a_n f(\alpha_n) = 0$ (zero vector of V)
 $\Rightarrow f(a_1 \alpha_1 + a_2 \alpha_2 + \dots + a_n \alpha_n) = 0$ [$\because f$ is a linear transformation]
 $\Rightarrow a_1 \alpha_1 + a_2 \alpha_2 + \dots + a_n \alpha_n = 0$ [$\because f$ is one-one and $f(0) = 0$]
 $\Rightarrow a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_n = 0$ since $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are linearly independent.

$\therefore S'$ is linearly independent.

Now V is of dimension n and S' is a linearly independent subset of V containing n vectors. Therefore S' must be a basis of V . Therefore each vector in V can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors belonging to S' .

Now we shall show that f is onto V . Let α be any element of V . Then there exist scalars c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n such that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \alpha &= c_1 f(\alpha_1) + c_2 f(\alpha_2) + \dots + c_n f(\alpha_n) \\
 &= f(c_1 \alpha_1 + c_2 \alpha_2 + \dots + c_n \alpha_n).
 \end{aligned}$$

Now $c_1 \alpha_1 + c_2 \alpha_2 + \dots + c_n \alpha_n \in V$ and the f -image of this element is α . Therefore f is onto V . Hence f is an isomorphism of V onto V .

Example 3. $V(F)$ and $W(F)$ are two finite dimensional vector spaces such that $\dim V = \dim W$. If f is an isomorphism of V into W prove that f must map V onto W .

Solution. Proceed as in example 2.

Example 4. If V is finite dimensional and f is a homomorphism of V onto V prove that f must be one-one and so, an isomorphism.
(G N D.U. Amritsar 1982)

Solution. Let $V(F)$ be a finite dimensional vector space of dimension n . Let f be a homomorphism of V onto V i.e., f is a linear transformation and f is onto V . To prove that f is one-one.

Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis of V . We shall first prove that $S' = \{f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_n)\}$ is also a basis of V . We claim that $L(S') = V$. The proof is as follows :

Let α be any element of V . We shall show that α can be expressed as a linear combination of $f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_n)$. Since f is onto V , therefore $\alpha \in V$ implies that there exists $\beta \in V$ such that $f(\beta) = \alpha$. Now β can be expressed as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$. Let $\beta = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } \alpha &= f(\beta) = f(a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_n\alpha_n) \\ &= a_1f(\alpha_1) + a_2f(\alpha_2) + \dots + a_nf(\alpha_n).\end{aligned}$$

Thus α has been expressed as a linear combination of $f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_n)$.

Therefore $L(S') = V$.

Since V is of dimension n and S' is a subset of V containing n vectors and $L(S') = V$, therefore S' must be a basis of V . Therefore each vector in V can be expressed as a linear combination of the vectors belonging to S' and S' is linearly independent.

Now we shall show that f is one-one. Let γ, δ be any two elements of V such that

$$\gamma = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n, \quad \delta = d_1\alpha_1 + d_2\alpha_2 + \dots + d_n\alpha_n.$$

We have $f(\gamma) = f(\delta)$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow f(c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n) &= f(d_1\alpha_1 + d_2\alpha_2 + \dots + d_n\alpha_n) \\ \Rightarrow c_1f(\alpha_1) + c_2f(\alpha_2) + \dots + c_nf(\alpha_n) &= d_1f(\alpha_1) + d_2f(\alpha_2) + \dots + d_nf(\alpha_n) \\ \Rightarrow (c_1 - d_1)f(\alpha_1) + (c_2 - d_2)f(\alpha_2) + \dots + (c_n - d_n)f(\alpha_n) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow c_1 - d_1 = 0, c_2 - d_2 = 0, \dots, c_n - d_n = 0,\end{aligned}$$

since $f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_n)$ are linearly independent
 $\Rightarrow c_1 = d_1, c_2 = d_2, \dots, c_n = d_n \Rightarrow \gamma = \delta$.

$\therefore f$ is one-one.

$\therefore f$ is an isomorphism of V onto V .

Example 5. If V is finite dimensional and f is a homomorphism of V into itself which is not onto prove that there is some $\alpha \neq 0$ in V such that $f(\alpha) = 0$. (Meerut 1969)

Solution. If f is a homomorphism of V into itself, then $f(0) = 0$. Suppose there is no non-zero vector α in V such that $f(\alpha) = 0$. Then f is one-one. Because

$$\begin{aligned} f(\beta) = f(\gamma) &\Rightarrow f(\beta) - f(\gamma) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow f(\beta - \gamma) = 0 \quad [\because f \text{ is linear transformation}] \\ &\Rightarrow \beta - \gamma = 0 \Rightarrow \beta = \gamma. \end{aligned}$$

Now V is finite dimensional and f is a linear transformation of V into itself. Since f is one-one, therefore f must be onto V . But it is given that f is not onto. Therefore our assumption is wrong. Hence there will be a non-zero vector α in V such that $f(\alpha) = 0$.

Exercises

1. Define linear transformation of a vector space $V(F)$ into a vector space $W(F)$. Show that the mapping $T: (a, b) \rightarrow (a+2, b+3)$ of $V_2(\mathbb{R})$ into itself is not a linear transformation.
2. If $f: U \rightarrow V$ is an isomorphism of the vector space U into the vector space V , then a set of vectors $\{f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_r)\}$ is linearly dependent in V if and only if the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r\}$ is linearly dependent in U .
3. If $f: U \rightarrow V$ is an isomorphism of the vector space U into the vector space V , then a set of vectors $\{f(\alpha_1), f(\alpha_2), \dots, f(\alpha_r)\}$ is linearly independent if and only if the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r\}$ is linearly independent in U .
4. Let f be a linear transformation from a vector space U into a vector space V . If S is a subspace of U , prove that $f(S)$ will be a subspace of V .
5. If f is an isomorphism of a vector space V onto a vector space W , prove that f maps a basis of V onto a basis of W .

§ 14. Quotient space. Let W be any subspace of a vector space $V(F)$. Then W is a subgroup of the abelian group of V with respect to addition of vectors. If $\alpha \in V$, then $W + \alpha$ is a right coset of W in V . Since V is an abelian group, therefore the right coset $W + \alpha$ will be equal to the left coset $\alpha + W$. Thus we can say that $W + \alpha$ is a coset of W in V . Let V/W denote the set of all cosets of W in V i.e., let $V/W = \{W + \alpha : \alpha \in V\}$.

Also we know that if $W+\alpha$ and $W+\beta$ are two cosets of W in V , then $W+\alpha=W+\beta \Leftrightarrow \alpha-\beta \in W$.

Now we shall give a vector space structure to the set V/W over the same field F . For this we shall have to define addition in V/W i.e., addition of cosets of W in V and multiplication of a coset by an element of F i.e., scalar multiplication.

Theorem. *If W is any subspace of a vector space $V(F)$, then the set V/W of all cosets $W+\alpha$ where α is any arbitrary element of V , is a vector space over F for the addition and scalar multiplication compositions defined as follows :*

$$\begin{aligned} & (W+\alpha)+(W+\beta)=W+(\alpha+\beta) \\ \text{and} \quad & a(W+\alpha)=W+a\alpha, a \in F. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{Delhi 1970})$$

Proof. Since $W+(\alpha+\beta) \in V/W$ and also $W+a\alpha \in V/W$, therefore V/W is closed with respect to addition of cosets and scalar multiplication as defined above. Now first of all we shall show that these two compositions are well defined.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let} \quad & W+\alpha=W+\alpha', \alpha, \alpha' \in V \\ \text{and} \quad & W+\beta=W+\beta', \beta, \beta' \in V. \\ \text{We have} \quad & W+\alpha=W+\alpha' \Rightarrow \alpha-\alpha' \in W \\ \text{and} \quad & W+\beta=W+\beta' \Rightarrow \beta-\beta' \in W. \end{aligned}$$

Now W is a subspace, therefore

$$\begin{aligned} & \alpha-\alpha' \in W, \beta-\beta' \in W \\ \Rightarrow & (\alpha-\alpha')+(\beta-\beta') \in W \Rightarrow (\alpha+\beta)-(\alpha'+\beta') \in W \\ \Rightarrow & W+(\alpha+\beta)=W+(\alpha'+\beta') \\ \Rightarrow & (W+\alpha)+(W+\beta)=(W+\alpha')+(W+\beta'). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore addition in V/W is well defined.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Again } a \in F, \alpha-\alpha' \in W & \Rightarrow a(\alpha-\alpha') \in W \\ \Rightarrow a\alpha-a\alpha' \in W & \Rightarrow W+a\alpha=W+a\alpha' \Rightarrow a(W+\alpha)=a(W+\alpha'). \\ \therefore \text{ scalar multiplication in } V/W & \text{ is also well defined.} \end{aligned}$$

Commutativity of addition. Let $W+\alpha, W+\beta$ be any two elements of V/W . Then

$$(W+\alpha)+(W+\beta)=W+(\alpha+\beta)=W+(\beta+\alpha)=(W+\beta)+(W+\alpha).$$

Associativity of addition. Let $W+\alpha, W+\beta, W+\gamma$ be any three elements of V/W . Then

$$\begin{aligned} & (W+\alpha)+[(W+\beta)+(W+\gamma)]=(W+\alpha)+[W+(\beta+\gamma)] \\ & =W+[\alpha+(\beta+\gamma)]=W+[(\alpha+\beta)+\gamma] \\ & =[W+(\alpha+\beta)]+(W+\gamma)=[(W+\alpha)+(W+\beta)]+(W+\gamma). \end{aligned}$$

Existence of additive identity. If 0 is the zero vector of V , then $W+0=W \in V/W$. If $W+\alpha$ is any element of V/W , then

$$(W+0)+(W+\alpha)=W+(0+\alpha)=W+\alpha.$$

$\therefore W+0=W$ is the additive identity.

Existence of additive inverse. If $W+\alpha$ is any element of V/W , then $W-\alpha \in V/W$. Also we have

$$(W+\alpha)+(W-\alpha)=W+(\alpha-\alpha)=W+0=W.$$

$\therefore W-\alpha$ is the additive inverse of $W+\alpha$.

Thus V/W is an abelian group with respect to addition composition. Further we observe that if

$a, b \in F$ and $W+\alpha, W+\beta \in V/W$, then

1. $a[(W+\alpha)+(W+\beta)] = a[W+(\alpha+\beta)] = W+a(\alpha+\beta)$
 $= (W+a\alpha)+(W+a\beta) = a(W+\alpha)+a(W+\beta).$
2. $(a+b)(W+\alpha) = W+(a+b)\alpha = W+(a\alpha+b\alpha)$
 $= (W+a\alpha)+(W+b\alpha) = a(W+\alpha)+b(W+\alpha).$
3. $(ab)(W+\alpha) = W+(ab)\alpha = W+a(b\alpha)$
 $= a(W+b\alpha) = a[b(W+\alpha)].$
4. $1(W+\alpha) = W+1\alpha = W+\alpha.$

$\therefore V/W$ is a vector space over F for these two compositions.

The vector space V/W is called the Quotient Space of V relative to W . The coset W is the zero vector of this vector space.

Dimension of a Quotient Space.

Theorem. If W be a subspace of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$, then $\dim V/W = \dim V - \dim W$.

(I.A.S. 1972, 89; Aligarh 65; Kanpur 86)

Proof. Let m be the dimension of the subspace W of the vector space $V(F)$. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ be a basis of W . Since S is a linearly independent subset of V , therefore it can be extended to form a basis of V . Let $S' = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l\}$ be a basis of V . Then $\dim V = m+l$.

$$\therefore \dim V - \dim W = (m+l) - m = l.$$

So we should prove that $\dim V/W = l$.

We claim that the set of l cosets

$$S_1 = \{W+\beta_1, W+\beta_2, \dots, W+\beta_l\}$$

is a basis of V/W .

First we show that S_1 is linearly independent. The zero vector of V/W is W .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } a_1(W+\beta_1) + a_2(W+\beta_2) + \dots + a_l(W+\beta_l) &= W \\ \Rightarrow (W+a_1\beta_1) + (W+a_2\beta_2) + \dots + (W+a_l\beta_l) &= W \\ \Rightarrow W + (a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_l\beta_l) &= W \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_l\beta_l \in W$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_l\beta_l = b_1\alpha_1 + b_2\alpha_2 + \dots + b_m\alpha_m$$

[\therefore any vector in W can be expressed as a linear combination of its basis]

$$\Rightarrow a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_l\beta_l - b_1\alpha_1 - b_2\alpha_2 - \dots - b_m\alpha_m = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_l = 0 \text{ since the vectors}$$

$\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ are linearly independent.

\therefore The set S_1 is linearly independent.

Now to show that $L(S_1) = V/W$. Let $W + \alpha$ be any element of V/W . Then $\alpha \in V$ can be expressed as

$$\alpha = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_m\alpha_m + d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_l\beta_l$$

$$= \gamma + d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_l\beta_l \text{ where}$$

$$\gamma = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_m\alpha_m \in W.$$

$$\text{So } W + \alpha = W + (\gamma + d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_l\beta_l)$$

$$= (W + \gamma) + d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_l\beta_l$$

$$= W + (d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_l\beta_l)$$

$$[\because \gamma \in W \Rightarrow W + \gamma = W]$$

$$= (W + d_1\beta_1) + (W + d_2\beta_2) + \dots + (W + d_l\beta_l)$$

$$= d_1(W + \beta_1) + d_2(W + \beta_2) + \dots + d_l(W + \beta_l).$$

Thus any element $W + \alpha$ of V/W can be expressed as a linear combination of S_1 . Therefore $V/W = L(S_1)$.

$\therefore S_1$ is a basis of V/W and consequently $\dim V/W = l$.

Hence the theorem.

§ 15. Direct sum of spaces.

Vector space as a direct sum of subspaces.

Definition. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space and let W_1, W_2, \dots, W_m be subspaces of V . Then V is said to be the direct sum of W_1, W_2, \dots, W_m if every element $\alpha \in V$ can be written in one and only one way as $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_m$ where

$$\alpha_1 \in W_1, \alpha_2 \in W_2, \dots, \alpha_m \in W_m. \quad (\text{Garhwal 1976})$$

If a vector space $V(F)$ is a direct sum of its two subspaces W_1 and W_2 then we should have not only $V = W_1 + W_2$ but also that each vector of V can be uniquely expressed as the sum of an element of W_1 and an element of W_2 . Symbolically the direct sum is represented by the notation $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$.

Example. Let $V_2(F)$ be the vector space of all ordered pairs of F . Then $W_1 = \{(a, 0) : a \in F\}$ and $W_2 = \{(0, b) : b \in F\}$ are two

subspaces of $V_2(F)$. Obviously any element $(x, y) \in V_2(F)$ can be uniquely expressed as sum of an element of W_1 and an element of W_2 . This unique expression is $(x, y) = (x, 0) + (0, y)$. Thus $V_2(F)$ is the direct sum of W_1 and W_2 . Also we observe that the only element common to both W_1 and W_2 is the zero vector $(0, 0)$.

Disjoint subspaces. Definition. Two subspaces W_1 and W_2 of the vector space $V(F)$ are said to be disjoint if their intersection is the zero subspace i.e., if $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$.

Theorem. The necessary and sufficient conditions for a vector space $V(F)$ to be a direct sum of its two subspaces W_1 and W_2 are that

$$(i) \quad V = W_1 + W_2$$

and

$$(ii) \quad W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$$

i.e., W_1 and W_2 are disjoint. (Agra 1986; Kanpur 70; Garhwal 76)

Proof. The conditions are necessary.

Let V be a direct sum of its two subspaces W_1 and W_2 . Then each element of V is expressible as sum of an element of W_1 and an element of W_2 . Therefore we have $V = W_1 + W_2$.

Let, if possible, $0 \neq \alpha \in W_1 \cap W_2$. Then $\alpha \in W_1, \alpha \in W_2$. Also $\alpha \in V$ and we can write

$$\alpha = 0 + \alpha \text{ where } 0 \in W_1, \alpha \in W_2$$

and

$$\alpha = \alpha + 0 \text{ where } \alpha \in W_1, 0 \in W_2.$$

Thus $\alpha \in V$ can be expressed in at least two different ways as sum of an element of W_1 and an element of W_2 . This contradicts the fact that V is a direct sum of W_1 and W_2 . Hence 0 is the only vector common to both W_1 and W_2 i.e., $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$. Thus the conditions are necessary.

The conditions are sufficient.

Let $V = W_1 + W_2$ and $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$. Then to show that V is direct sum of W_1 and W_2 .

$V = W_1 + W_2 \Rightarrow$ that each element of V can be expressed as sum of an element of W_1 and an element of W_2 . Now to show that this expression is unique. Let, if possible,

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2, \alpha \in V, \alpha_1 \in W_1, \alpha_2 \in W_2,$$

and

$$\alpha = \beta_1 + \beta_2, \beta_1 \in W_1, \beta_2 \in W_2.$$

Then to show that $\alpha_1 = \beta_1$ and $\alpha_2 = \beta_2$.

We have $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = \beta_1 + \beta_2 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 - \beta_1 = \beta_2 - \alpha_2$.

Since W_1 is a subspace, therefore

$$\alpha_1 \in W_1, \beta_1 \in W_1 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 - \beta_1 \in W_1.$$

Similarly $\beta_2 - \alpha_2 \in W_2$.

$$\therefore \alpha_1 - \beta_1 = \beta_2 - \alpha_2 \in W_1 \cap W_2.$$

But 0 is the only vector which belongs to $W_1 \cap W_2$. Therefore $\alpha_1 - \beta_1 = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 = \beta_1$. Also $\beta_2 - \alpha_2 = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_2 = \beta_2$.

Thus each vector $\alpha \in V$ is uniquely expressible as sum of an element of W_1 and an element of W_2 . Hence $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$.

Dimension of a direct sum. Theorem. *If a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$ is a direct sum of its two subspaces W_1 and W_2 , then*

$$\dim V = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2.$$

Proof. Let $\dim W_1 = m$ and $\dim W_2 = l$. Also let the sets of vectors $S_1 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ and $S_2 = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l\}$ be some bases of W_1 and W_2 respectively.

We have $\dim W_1 + \dim W_2 = m + l$.

In order to prove that $\dim V = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2$, we should therefore prove that $\dim V = m + l$. We claim that the set

$$S = S_1 \cup S_2 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l\}$$

is a basis of V .

First we show that the set S is linearly independent. Let

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m + b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_l\beta_l = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m = -(b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_l\beta_l).$$

$$\text{Now } a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m \in W_1$$

and $-(b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_l\beta_l) \in W_2$. Therefore

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m \in W_1 \cap W_2$$

and $-(b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_l\beta_l) \in W_1 \cap W_2$.

But V is the direct sum of W_1 and W_2 . Therefore 0 is the only vector belonging to $W_1 \cap W_2$. Then we have

$$a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m = 0, b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_l\beta_l = 0.$$

Since both the sets $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ and $\{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l\}$ are linearly independent, therefore we have

$$a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_m = 0, b_1 = 0, b_2 = 0, \dots, b_l = 0.$$

Therefore S is linearly independent.

Now we shall show that $L(S) = V$. Let α be any element of V . Then

$\alpha =$ an element of $W_1 +$ an element of W_2

$=$ a linear combination of $S_1 +$ a linear combination of S_2

$=$ a linear combination of S .

$$\therefore L(S) = V.$$

$\therefore S$ is a basis of V . Therefore $\dim V = m + l$.

Hence the theorem.

A sort of converse of this theorem is true. It has been proved in the following theorem :

Theorem. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space and let W_1, W_2 be subspaces of V such that $V = W_1 + W_2$ and

$$\dim V = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2. \text{ Then } V = W_1 \oplus W_2.$$

Proof. Let $\dim W_1 = l$ and $\dim W_2 = m$. Then $\dim V = l + m$.

Let $S_1 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_l\}$ be a basis of W_1 and $S_2 = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$ be a basis of W_2 . We shall first show that $S_1 \cup S_2$ is a basis of V .

Let $\alpha \in V$. Since $V = W_1 + W_2$, therefore we can write

$$\alpha = \gamma + \delta \text{ where } \gamma \in W_1, \delta \in W_2.$$

Now $\gamma \in W_1$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the elements of S_1 and $\delta \in W_2$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the elements of S_2 . Therefore $\alpha \in V$ can be expressed as a linear combination of the elements of $S_1 \cup S_2$. Therefore

$$V = L(S_1 \cup S_2).$$

Since $\dim V = l + m$ and $L(S_1 \cup S_2) = V$, therefore the number of distinct elements in $S_1 \cup S_2$ cannot be less than $l + m$.

Thus $S_1 \cup S_2$ has $l + m$ distinct elements and therefore $S_1 \cup S_2$ is a basis of V . Therefore the set $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_l, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$ is linearly independent.

Now we shall show that $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$.

Let $\alpha \in W_1 \cap W_2$. Then $\alpha \in W_1, \alpha \in W_2$.

Therefore $\alpha = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_l\alpha_l$ and $\alpha = b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_m\beta_m$ for some a 's and b 's $\in F$.

$$\therefore a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_l\alpha_l = b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_m\beta_m$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_l\alpha_l - b_1\beta_1 - b_2\beta_2 - \dots - b_m\beta_m = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_l = 0, b_1 = 0, b_2 = 0, \dots, b_m = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha = 0.$$

$$\therefore W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}.$$

Now $V = W_1 + W_2$ and $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\} \Rightarrow V = W_1 \oplus W_2$.

Complementary subspaces. Definition. Let $V(F)$ be a vector space and W_1, W_2 be two subspaces of V . Then the subspace W_2 is called a complement of W_1 in V if V is the direct sum of W_1 and W_2 .

Existence of complementary subspaces. Theorem. Corresponding to each subspace W_1 of a finite dimensional vector space $V(F)$, there exists a subspace W_2 such that V is the direct sum of W_1 and W_2 .
(I.A.S. 1972; Meerut 68)

Proof. Let $\dim W_1 = m$. Let the set $S_1 = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ be a basis of W_1 . Since S_1 is a linearly independent subset of V , therefore S_1 can be extended to form a basis of V . Let the set

$S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l\}$ be a basis of V . Let W_2 be the subspace of V generated by the set $S_2 = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l\}$.

We shall prove that V is the direct sum of W_1 and W_2 . For this we shall prove that $V = W_1 + W_2$ and $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$.

Let α be any element of V . Then we can express

$\alpha =$ a linear combination of S

$=$ a linear combination of $S_1 +$ a linear combination of S_2

$=$ an element of $W_1 +$ an element of W_2 .

$\therefore V = W_1 + W_2$.

Again let $\beta \in W_1 \cap W_2$. Then β can be expressed as a linear combination of S_1 and also a linear combination of S_2 . So we have

$$\beta = a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m = b_1\beta_1 + b_2\beta_2 + \dots + b_l\beta_l.$$

$$\therefore a_1\alpha_1 + a_2\alpha_2 + \dots + a_m\alpha_m - b_1\beta_1 - b_2\beta_2 - \dots - b_l\beta_l = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1 = 0, a_2 = 0, \dots, a_m = 0, b_1 = 0, b_2 = 0, \dots, b_l = 0 \text{ since}$$

$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_l$ are linearly independent.

$\therefore \beta = 0$ (zero vector).

Thus $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$. Hence V is the direct sum of W_1 and W_2 .

§ 16. Coordinates. Let $V(F)$ be a finite dimensional vector space. Let $B = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be an ordered basis for V . By an ordered basis we mean that the vectors of B have been enumerated in some well-defined way i.e., the vectors occupying the first, second, ..., n^{th} places in the set B are fixed.

Let $\alpha \in V$. Then there exists a unique n -tuple (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) of scalars such that $\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + x_2\alpha_2 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n$.

The n -tuple (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) is called the n -tuple of coordinates of α relative to the ordered basis B . The scalar x_i is called the i^{th} coordinate of α relative to the ordered basis B .

It should be noted that for the same basis set B , the coordinates of the vector α are unique only with respect to particular ordering of B . The basis set B can be ordered in several ways. The co-ordinate of α may change with change in ordering of B .

Example. Show that the set $S = \{(1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, 1)\}$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3(\mathbb{R})$ where \mathbb{R} is the field of real numbers. Hence find the coordinates of the vector (a, b, c) with respect to the above basis.

Solution. The dimension of the vector space $\mathbb{R}^3(\mathbb{R})$ is 3. If the set S is linearly independent, then S will form a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3(\mathbb{R})$ because S contains 3 vectors. Let x, y, z be scalars in \mathbb{R} such that

$$x(1, 0, 0) + y(1, 1, 0) + z(1, 1, 1) = 0 = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\Rightarrow (x+y+z, y+z, z) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$\Rightarrow x+y+z=0, y+z=0, z=0 \Rightarrow x=0, y=0, z=0$$

\Rightarrow the set S is linearly independent.

$\therefore S$ is a basis of $\mathbb{R}^3(\mathbb{R})$.

Now to find the coordinates of (a, b, c) with respect to the ordered basis S . Let p, q, r be scalars in \mathbb{R} such that

$$(a, b, c) = p(1, 0, 0) + q(1, 1, 0) + r(1, 1, 1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (a, b, c) = (p+q+r, q+r, r)$$

$$\Rightarrow p+q+r=a, q+r=b, r=c \Rightarrow r=c, q=b-c, p=a-b.$$

Hence the coordinates of the vector (a, b, c) are (p, q, r) i.e., $(a-b, b-c, c)$.

Exercises

1. Construct three subspaces W_1, W_2, W_3 of a vector space V so that $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 = W_1 \oplus W_3$ but $W_2 \neq W_3$.

Hint : Take $V = \mathbb{R}^2$, $W_1 = \{(a, 0) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$, $W_2 = \{(0, a) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$, and $W_3 = \{(a, a) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

2. Find the co-ordinates of the vector $(2, 1, -6)$ of \mathbb{R}^3 relative to the basis $\alpha_1 = (1, 1, 2)$, $\alpha_2 = (3, -1, 0)$, $\alpha_3 = (2, 0, -1)$.

Ans. $(-\frac{7}{8}, -\frac{15}{8}, \frac{17}{4})$.

Vector spaces (Continued)

§ 1. Linear Transformations. In the preceding chapter we have defined **linear transformation** or vector space **homomorphism**. For the sake of convenience we repeat the definition here again.

Linear transformation. Definition. Let U and V be two vector spaces over the same field F . A linear transformation from U into V is a function T from U into V such that

$$T(a\alpha + b\beta) = aT(\alpha) + bT(\beta)$$

for all α, β in U and for all a, b in F .

(Patna 1987)

Linear Operator. Definition. Let V be a vector space over the field F . A linear operator on V is a function T from V into V such that

$$T(a\alpha + b\beta) = aT(\alpha) + bT(\beta)$$

for all α, β in V and for all a, b in F .

Thus T is a linear operator on V if T is a linear transformation from V into V itself.

Linear functional. Definition. Let V be a vector space over the field F . A function f from V into F is said to be a linear functional on V if

$$f(a\alpha + b\beta) = af(\alpha) + bf(\beta)$$

for all $\alpha, \beta \in V$ and for all $a, b \in F$.

We know that if F is any field, then F can be regarded as a vector space over F . Therefore f is a linear functional on V if f is a linear transformation from V into F .

§ 2. Linear transformations as vectors.

Let $L(U, V)$ be the set of all linear transformations of a vector space $U(F)$ into a vector space $V(F)$. Sometimes we denote this set by $\text{Hom}(U, V)$. Now we want to impose a vector space structure on the set $L(U, V)$ over the same field F . For this purpose we shall have to suitably define addition in $L(U, V)$ and scalar multiplication in $L(U, V)$ over F .

Theorem 1. Let U and V be vector spaces over the field F . Let T_1 and T_2 be linear transformations from U into V . The function $T_1 + T_2$ defined by

$$(T_1 + T_2)(\alpha) = T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in U$$

is a linear transformation from U into V . If c is any element of F , the function (cT) defined by

$$(cT)(\alpha) = cT(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in U$$

is a linear transformation from U into V . The set $L(U, V)$ of all linear transformations from U into V , together with the addition and scalar multiplication defined above, is a vector space over the field F .

(Kanpur 1969)

Proof. Suppose T_1 and T_2 are linear transformations from U into V , and we define $T_1 + T_2$ as follows :

$$(T_1 + T_2)(\alpha) = T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in U. \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha) \in V$, therefore $T_1 + T_2$ is a function from U into V .

Let $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in U$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (T_1 + T_2)(a\alpha + b\beta) &= T_1(a\alpha + b\beta) + T_2(a\alpha + b\beta) && [\text{by (1)}] \\ &= [aT_1(\alpha) + bT_1(\beta)] + [aT_2(\alpha) + bT_2(\beta)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &[\because T_1 \text{ and } T_2 \text{ are linear transformations}] \\ &= a[T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha)] + b[T_1(\beta) + T_2(\beta)] && [\because V \text{ is a vector space}] \\ &= a(T_1 + T_2)(\alpha) + b(T_1 + T_2)(\beta) && [\text{by (1)}] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore T_1 + T_2$ is a linear transformation from U into V . Thus $T_1, T_2 \in L(U, V) \Rightarrow T_1 + T_2 \in L(U, V)$. Therefore $L(U, V)$ is closed with respect to addition defined on it.

Again let $T \in L(U, V)$ and $c \in F$. Let us define cT as follows :

$$(cT)(\alpha) = cT(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in U. \quad \dots(2)$$

Since $cT(\alpha) \in V$, therefore cT is a function from U into V .

Let $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in U$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (cT)(a\alpha + b\beta) &= cT(a\alpha + b\beta) && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= c[aT(\alpha) + bT(\beta)] && [\because T \text{ is a linear transformation}] \\ &= c[aT(\alpha)] + c[bT(\beta)] = (ca)T(\alpha) + (cb)T(\beta) \\ &= (ac)T(\alpha) + (bc)T(\beta) = a[cT(\alpha)] + b[cT(\beta)] \\ &= a[(cT)(\alpha)] + b[(cT)(\beta)]. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore cT$ is a linear transformation from U into V . Thus $T \in L(U, V)$ and $c \in F \Rightarrow cT \in L(U, V)$. Therefore $L(U, V)$ is closed with respect to scalar multiplication defined in it.

Associativity of addition in $L(U, V)$.

Let $T_1, T_2, T_3 \in L(U, V)$. If $\alpha \in U$, then

$$[T_1 + (T_2 + T_3)](\alpha) = T_1(\alpha) + (T_2 + T_3)(\alpha)$$

[by (1) i.e., by def. of addition in $L(U, V)$]

$$= T_1(\alpha) + [T_2(\alpha) + T_3(\alpha)]$$

[by (1)]

$$= [T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha)] + T_3(\alpha) \quad [\because \text{addition in } V \text{ is associative}]$$

$$= (T_1 + T_2)(\alpha) + T_3(\alpha)$$

[by (1)]

$$= [(T_1 + T_2) + T_3](\alpha)$$

[by (1)]

$$\therefore T_1 + (T_2 + T_3) = (T_1 + T_2) + T_3$$

[by def. of equality of two functions]

Commutativity of addition in $L(U, V)$. Let $T_1, T_2 \in L(U, V)$.

If α is any element of U , then

$$(T_1 + T_2)(\alpha) = T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha)$$

[by (1)]

$$= T_2(\alpha) + T_1(\alpha)$$

[\because addition in V is commutative]

$$= (T_2 + T_1)(\alpha)$$

[by (1)]

$$\therefore T_1 + T_2 = T_2 + T_1 \quad [\text{by def. of equality of two functions}]$$

Existence of additive identity in $L(U, V)$. Let $\hat{0}$ be the zero function from U into V i.e., $\hat{0}(\alpha) = 0 \in V \forall \alpha \in U$.

It can be easily seen that $\hat{0}$ is a linear transformation from U into V . Thus $\hat{0} \in L(U, V)$. If $T \in L(U, V)$ and $\alpha \in U$, we have

$$(\hat{0} + T)(\alpha) = \hat{0}(\alpha) + T(\alpha)$$

[by (1)]

$$= 0 + T(\alpha)$$

[by def. of $\hat{0}$]

$$= T(\alpha) \quad [0 \text{ being additive identity in } V]$$

$$\therefore \hat{0} + T = T \quad \forall T \in L(U, V).$$

$$\therefore \hat{0} \text{ is the additive identity in } L(U, V).$$

Existence of additive inverse of each element in $L(U, V)$.

Let $T \in L(U, V)$. Let us define $-T$ as follows :

$$(-T)(\alpha) = -T(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in U.$$

It can be easily seen that $-T$ is a linear transformation from U into V . Thus $-T \in L(U, V)$. If $\alpha \in U$, we have

$$(-T + T)(\alpha) = (-T)(\alpha) + T(\alpha) \quad [\text{by def. of addition in } L(U, V)]$$

$$= -T(\alpha) + T(\alpha)$$

[by def. of $-T$]

$$= 0 \in V$$

$$= \hat{0}(\alpha)$$

[by def. of $\hat{0}$]

$\therefore -T+T=0$ for every $T \in L(U, V)$.

Thus each element in $L(U, V)$ possesses additive inverse.

Therefore $L(U, V)$ is an abelian group with respect to addition defined in it.

Further we make the following observations :

(i) Let $c \in F$ and $T_1, T_2 \in L(U, V)$. If α is any element in U , we have

$$\begin{aligned} [c(T_1+T_2)](\alpha) &= c[(T_1+T_2)(\alpha)] \\ &\quad [\text{by (2) i.e., by def. of scalar multiplication in } L(U, V)] \\ &= c[T_1(\alpha)+T_2(\alpha)] && [\text{by (1)}] \\ &= cT_1(\alpha)+cT_2(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [\because c \in F \text{ and } T_1(\alpha), T_2(\alpha) \in V \text{ which is a vector space}] \\ &= (cT_1)(\alpha) + (cT_2)(\alpha) && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= (cT_1+cT_2)(\alpha) && [\text{by (1)}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore c(T_1+T_2) = cT_1+cT_2.$$

(ii) Let $a, b \in F$ and $T \in L(U, V)$. If $\alpha \in U$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [(a+b)T](\alpha) &= (a+b)T(\alpha) && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= aT(\alpha)+bT(\alpha) && [\because V \text{ is a vector space}] \\ &= (aT)(\alpha)+(bT)(\alpha) && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= (aT+bT)(\alpha) && [\text{by (1)}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (a+b)T = aT+bT.$$

(iii) Let $a, b \in F$ and $T \in L(U, V)$. If $\alpha \in U$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [(ab)T](\alpha) &= (ab)T(\alpha) && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= a[bT(\alpha)] && [\because V \text{ is a vector space}] \\ &= a[(bT)(\alpha)] && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= [a(bT)](\alpha) && [\text{by (2)}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (ab)T = a(bT).$$

(iv) Let $1 \in F$ and $T \in L(U, V)$. If $\alpha \in U$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (1T)(\alpha) &= 1T(\alpha) && [\text{by (2)}] \\ &= T(\alpha) && [\because V \text{ is a vector space}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 1T = T.$$

Hence $L(U, V)$ is a vector space over the field F .

Note If in place of the vector space V , we take U , then we observe that the set of all linear operators on U forms a vector space with respect to addition and scalar multiplication defined above.

Similarly if in place of the vector space V we take the field F as a vector space, then we observe that the set of all linear functionals on U forms a vector space with respect to addition and scalar multiplication defined above.

Dual space. Definition. Let V be a vector space over the field F . Then the set V' of all linear functionals on V is also a vector space over the field F . The vector space V' is called the dual space of V .

(Meerut 1971)

Sometimes V^* and \hat{V} are also used to denote the dual space of V .

Dimension of $L(U, V)$. Now we shall prove that if $U(F)$ and $V(F)$ are finite dimensional, then the vector space of all linear transformations from U into V is also finite dimensional. For this purpose we shall require an important result which we prove in the following theorem :

Theorem 2. Let U be a finite dimensional vector space over the field F and let $B = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be an ordered basis for U . By an ordered basis we mean that the vectors of B have been enumerated in some well defined way, i.e., the vectors occupying the first, second, ..., n^{th} places in the set B are fixed. Let V be a vector space over the same field F and let β_1, \dots, β_n be any n vectors in V . Then there exists a unique linear transformation T from U into V such that

$$T(\alpha_i) = \beta_i, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (\text{Sambalpur 1977; I.C.S. 86})$$

Proof. Existence of T . Let $\alpha \in U$. Since $B = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ is a basis for U , therefore there exist unique scalars x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n such that

$$\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + x_2\alpha_2 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n.$$

For this vector α , let us define

$$T(\alpha) = x_1\beta_1 + x_2\beta_2 + \dots + x_n\beta_n.$$

Obviously $T(\alpha)$ as defined above is a unique element of V . Therefore T is a well-defined rule for associating with each vector α in U a unique vector $T(\alpha)$ in V . Thus T is a function from U into V .

The unique representation of $\alpha_i \in U$ as a linear combination of the vectors belonging to the basis B is

$$\alpha_i = 0\alpha_1 + 0\alpha_2 + \dots + 1\alpha_i + 0\alpha_{i+1} + \dots + 0\alpha_n.$$

Therefore according to our definition of T , we have

$$T(\alpha_i) = 0\beta_1 + 0\beta_2 + \dots + 1\beta_i + 0\beta_{i+1} + \dots + 0\beta_n$$

$$\text{i.e.,} \quad T(\alpha_i) = \beta_i, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Now to show that T is a linear transformation.

Let $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in U$. Let

$$\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = y_1\alpha_1 + \dots + y_n\alpha_n.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Then } T(ax+by) &= T[a(x_1\alpha_1+\dots+x_n\alpha_n)+b(y_1\alpha_1+\dots+y_n\alpha_n)] \\
 &= T[(ax_1+by_1)\alpha_1+\dots+(ax_n+by_n)\alpha_n] \\
 &= (ax_1+by_1)\beta_1+\dots+(ax_n+by_n)\beta_n \quad [\text{by def. of } T] \\
 &= a(x_1\beta_1+\dots+x_n\beta_n)+b(y_1\beta_1+\dots+y_n\beta_n) \\
 &= aT(\alpha)+bT(\beta). \quad [\text{by def. of } T]
 \end{aligned}$$

\therefore T is a linear transformation from U into V . Thus there exists a linear transformation from U into V such that

$$T(\alpha_i) = \beta_i, \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Uniqueness of T . Let T' be a linear transformation from U into V such that $T'(\alpha_i) = \beta_i, i=1, 2, \dots, n$. For the vector

$$\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n \in U, \text{ we have}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 T'(\alpha) &= T'(x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n) \\
 &= x_1T'(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_nT'(\alpha_n) \quad [\because T' \text{ is a linear transformation}] \\
 &= x_1\beta_1 + \dots + x_n\beta_n \quad [\text{by def. of } T'] \\
 &= T(\alpha). \quad [\text{by def. of } T]
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $T'(\alpha) = T(\alpha) \forall \alpha \in U$. Therefore $T' = T$.

This shows the uniqueness of T .

Note. From this theorem we conclude that if T is a linear transformation from a finite-dimensional vector space $U(F)$ into a vector space $V(F)$, then T is completely defined if we mention under T the images of the elements of a basis set of U . If S and T are two linear transformations from U into V such that $S(\alpha_i) = T(\alpha_i) \forall \alpha_i$ belonging to a basis of U , then

$$S(\alpha) = T(\alpha) \forall \alpha \in U, \text{ i.e., } S = T.$$

Thus two linear transformations from U into V are equal if they agree on a basis of U .

Corollary. Let V be an n -dimensional vector space over the field F and let $B = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be an ordered basis for V . If $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ is any ordered set of n scalars, then there exists a unique linear functional f on V , such that

$$f(\alpha_i) = x_i, \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Theorem 3. Let U be an n -dimensional vector space over the field F , and let V be an m -dimensional vector space over F . Then the vector space $L(U, V)$ of linear transformations from U into V is also finite dimensional and is of dimension mn . (Meerut 1971)

Proof. Let $B = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ and $B' = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$ be ordered bases for U and V respectively. By theorem 2, there exists a unique linear transformation T_{11} from U into V such that

$$T_{11}(\alpha_1) = \beta_1, T_{11}(\alpha_2) = 0, \dots, T_{11}(\alpha_n) = 0 \text{ where } \beta_1, 0, \dots, 0 \text{ are vectors in } V.$$

In fact, for each pair of integers (p, q) with $1 \leq p \leq m$ and $1 \leq q \leq n$, there exists a unique linear transformation T_{pq} from U into V such that

$$T_{pq}(\alpha_i) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } i \neq q \\ \beta_p, & \text{if } i = q \end{cases}$$

$$T_{pq}(\alpha_i) = \delta_{iq} \beta_p, \quad \dots(1)$$

i.e., where $\delta_{iq} \in F$ is Kronecker delta i.e., $\delta_{iq} = 1$ if $i = q$ and $\delta_{iq} = 0$ if $i \neq q$.

Since p can be any of $1, 2, \dots, m$ and q any of $1, 2, \dots, n$, there are mn such T_{pq} 's. Let B_1 denote the set of these mn transformations T_{pq} 's. We shall show that B_1 is a basis for $L(U, V)$.

(i) First we shall show that $L(U, V)$ is a linear span of B_1 .

Let $T \in L(U, V)$. Since $T(\alpha_1) \in V$ and any element in V is a linear combination of $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$, therefore

$$T(\alpha_1) = a_{11}\beta_1 + a_{21}\beta_2 + \dots + a_{m1}\beta_m$$

for some $a_{11}, a_{21}, \dots, a_{m1} \in F$. In fact for each $i, 1 \leq i \leq n$,

$$T(\alpha_i) = a_{1i}\beta_1 + a_{2i}\beta_2 + \dots + a_{mi}\beta_m = \sum_{p=1}^m a_{pi}\beta_p. \quad \dots(2)$$

$$\text{Now consider } S = \sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n a_{pq} T_{pq}.$$

Obviously S is a linear combination of elements of B_1 which is a subset of $L(U, V)$. Since $L(U, V)$ is a vector space, therefore $S \in L(U, V)$ i.e., S is also a linear transformation from U into V . We shall show that $S = T$.

Let us compute $S(\alpha_i)$ where α_i is any vector in the basis B of U . We have

$$S(\alpha_i) = \left[\sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n a_{pq} T_{pq} \right] (\alpha_i) = \sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n a_{pq} T_{pq}(\alpha_i)$$

$$= \sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n a_{pq} \delta_{iq} \beta_p \quad [\text{From (1)}]$$

$$= \sum_{p=1}^m a_{pi} \beta_p \quad [\text{On summing with respect to } q. \text{ Remember that } \delta_{iq} = 1 \text{ when } q = i \text{ and } \delta_{iq} = 0 \text{ when } q \neq i]$$

$$= T(\alpha_i). \quad [\text{From (2)}]$$

Thus $S(\alpha_i) = T(\alpha_i) \forall \alpha_i \in B$. Therefore S and T agree on a

basis of U . So we must have $S=T$. Thus T is also a linear combination of the elements of B_1 . Therefore $L(U, V)$ is a linear span of B_1 .

(ii) Now we shall show that B_1 is linearly independent. Let for b_{pq} 's $\in F$,

$$\sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n b_{pq} T_{pq} = \hat{0} \text{ i.e., zero vector of } L(U, V)$$

$$\Rightarrow \left[\sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n b_{pq} T_{pq} \right] (\alpha_i) = \hat{0} (\alpha_i) \quad \forall \alpha_i \in B$$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n b_{pq} T_{pq} (\alpha_i) = 0 \in V \quad [\because \hat{0} \text{ is zero transformation}]$$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n b_{pq} \delta_{iq} \beta_p = 0 \Rightarrow \sum_{p=1}^m b_{pi} \beta_p = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow b_{1i} \beta_1 + b_{2i} \beta_2 + \dots + b_{mi} \beta_m = 0, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n$$

$$\Rightarrow b_{1i} = 0, b_{2i} = 0, \dots, b_{mi} = 0, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n$$

[$\because \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$ are linearly independent]

$$\Rightarrow b_{pq} = 0 \text{ where } 1 \leq p \leq m \text{ and } 1 \leq q \leq n$$

$$\Rightarrow B_1 \text{ is linearly independent.}$$

Therefore B_1 is a basis of $L(U, V)$.

$\therefore \dim L(U, V) = \text{the number of elements in } B_1 = mn$.

Corollary 1. The vector space $L(U, U)$ of all linear operators on an n -dimensional vector space U is of dimension n^2 .

Corollary 2. The vector space V' of all linear functionals on an n -dimensional vector space $V(F)$ is of dimension n .

Proof. Since $F(F)$ is a vector space of dimension 1, therefore the result is obvious.

Note. Suppose $U(F)$ is an n -dimensional vector space and $V(F)$ is an m -dimensional vector space. If $U \neq \{0\}$ and $V \neq \{0\}$, then $n \geq 1$ and $m \geq 1$. Therefore $L(U, V)$ does not just consist of the element $\hat{0}$, because dimension of $L(U, V)$ is $mn \geq 1$.

§ 3. Dual basis.

Theorem 1 Let V be an n -dimensional vector space over the field F , and let $B = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis for V . Then there is a uniquely determined basis $B' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$ for V' such that $f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$. Consequently the dual space of an n -dimensional space is n -dimensional.

The basis B is called the **dual basis** of B .

Proof. $B = \{\alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ is an ordered basis for V . Therefore by corollary to theorem 2 on page 454 there exists a unique linear functional f_1 on V such that

$$f_1(\alpha_1) = 1, f_1(\alpha_2) = 0, \dots, f_1(\alpha_n) = 0$$

where $\{1, 0, \dots, 0\}$ is an ordered set of n scalars.

In fact, for each $f = 1, 2, \dots, n$, there exists a unique linear functional f_i on V such that

$$f_i(\alpha_j) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

$$\text{i.e. } f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij} \quad \dots(1)$$

where $\delta_{ij} \in F$ is Kronecker delta i.e., $\delta_{ij} = 1$ if $i = j$

and $\delta_{ij} = 0$ if $i \neq j$

Let $B' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$. Then B' is a subset of V' containing n distinct elements of V' . We shall show that B' is a basis for V' .

First we shall show that B' is linearly independent.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Let } & c_1 f_1 + c_2 f_2 + \dots + c_n f_n = \hat{0} \\ \Rightarrow & (c_1 f_1 + \dots + c_n f_n)(\alpha) = \hat{0}(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in V \\ \Rightarrow & c_1 f_1(\alpha) + \dots + c_n f_n(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in V \quad [\because \hat{0}(\alpha) = 0] \\ \Rightarrow & \sum_{i=1}^n c_i f_i(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in V \\ \Rightarrow & \sum_{i=1}^n c_i f_i(\alpha_j) = 0, j = 1, 2, \dots, n \\ & \quad \quad \quad [\text{Putting } \alpha = \alpha_j \text{ where } j = 1, 2, \dots, n] \\ \Rightarrow & \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \delta_{ij} = 0, j = 1, 2, \dots, n \\ \Rightarrow & c_j = 0, j = 1, 2, \dots, n \\ \Rightarrow & f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n \text{ are linearly independent.} \end{aligned}$$

In the second place, we shall show that the linear span of B' is equal to V' .

Let f be any element of V' . The linear functional f will be completely determined if we define it on a basis for V . So let

$$f(\alpha_i) = a_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

We shall show that $f = a_1 f_1 + \dots + a_n f_n$.

Let $\alpha = x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n$ be any element in V . We have

$$f(\alpha) = f(x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= x_1 f(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_n f(\alpha_n) & [\because f \text{ is linear}] \\
 &= x_1 a_1 + \dots + x_n a_n. & \dots(2)
 \end{aligned}$$

Also $(a_1 f_1 + \dots + a_n f_n)(\alpha) = a_1 f_1(\alpha) + \dots + a_n f_n(\alpha)$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i f_i(\alpha)$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i f_i \left(\sum_{j=1}^n x_j \alpha_j \right) \quad [\because \alpha = x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n]$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \sum_{j=1}^n x_j f_i(\alpha_j) \quad [\because \text{each } f_i \text{ is a linear functional}]$$

$$= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \delta_{ij} \quad [\text{From (1)}]$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{i=1}^n a_i x_i \quad [\text{On summing with respect to } j \text{ and remembering} \\
 &\quad \text{that } \delta_{ij} = 1 \text{ when } j=i \text{ and } \delta_{ij} = 0 \text{ when } j \neq i] \\
 &= a_1 x_1 + \dots + a_n x_n = f(\alpha). \quad [\text{From (2)}]
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have $f(\alpha) = (a_1 f_1 + \dots + a_n f_n)(\alpha) \forall \alpha \in V$.

$\therefore f = a_1 f_1 + \dots + a_n f_n$ i.e., every element f in V' can be expressed as a linear combination of f_1, \dots, f_n .

$\therefore V' = \text{linear span of } B'$. Hence B' is a basis for V' .

Now $\dim V' = \text{number of distinct elements in } B' = n$.

Corollary. If V is an n -dimensional vector space over the field F , then V is isomorphic to its dual space V' .

Proof. We have $\dim V' = \dim V = n$.

$\therefore V$ is isomorphic to V' .

Theorem 2. Let V be an n -dimensional vector space over the field F . If α is a non-zero vector in V , there exists a linear functional f on V such that $f(\alpha) \neq 0$.

Proof. Since $\alpha \neq 0$, therefore $\{\alpha\}$ is a linearly independent subset of V . So it can be extended to form a basis for V . Thus there exists a basis $B = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ for V such that $\alpha_1 = \alpha$.

If $B' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$ is the dual basis of V , then

$$f_1(\alpha) = f_1(\alpha_1) = 1 \neq 0.$$

Thus there exists linear functional f_1 such that $f_1(\alpha) \neq 0$.

Corollary. Let V be an n -dimensional vector space over the field F . If $f(\alpha) = 0 \forall f \in V'$, then $\alpha = 0$.

Proof. Suppose $\alpha \neq 0$. Then there is a linear functional f on V such that $f(\alpha) \neq 0$. This contradicts the hypothesis that

$f(\alpha) = 0 \forall f \in V'$. Hence we must have $\alpha = 0$.

Theorem 3. Let V be an n -dimensional vector space over the field F . If α, β are any two different vectors in V , then there exists a linear functional f on V such that $f(\alpha) \neq f(\beta)$.

Proof. We have $\alpha \neq \beta \Rightarrow \alpha - \beta \neq 0$.

Now $\alpha - \beta$ is a non-zero vector in V . Therefore by theorem 2, there exists a linear functional f on V such that

$f(\alpha - \beta) \neq 0 \Rightarrow f(\alpha) - f(\beta) \neq 0 \Rightarrow f(\alpha) \neq f(\beta)$. Hence the result.

§ 4. Reflexivity.

Second dual space. We know that every vector space V possesses a dual space $(V)'$ consisting of all linear functionals on V .

Now V' is also a vector space. Therefore it will also possess a dual space $(V')'$ consisting of all linear functionals on V' . This dual space of V' is called the second dual space of V and for the sake of simplicity we shall denote it by V'' .

If V is finite dimensional, then $\dim V = \dim V' = \dim V''$, showing that they are isomorphic to each other.

Now our aim is to establish an isomorphism of V onto V'' .

Theorem 1. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space over the field F . If α is any vector in V , the function L_α on V' defined by

$$L_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha) \quad \forall f \in V'$$

is a linear functional on V' i.e., $L_\alpha \in V''$.

Also the mapping $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$ is an isomorphism of V onto V'' .

(Kanpur 1969)

Proof. If $\alpha \in V$ and $f \in V'$, then $f(\alpha)$ is a unique element of F . Therefore the correspondence L_α defined by

$$L_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha) \quad \forall f \in V' \quad \dots(1)$$

is a function from V' into F .

Let $a, b \in F$ and $f, g \in V'$. Then

$$L_\alpha(af + bg) = (af + bg)(\alpha) \quad [\text{From (1)}]$$

$$= (af)(\alpha) + (bg)(\alpha)$$

$$= af(\alpha) + bg(\alpha) \quad [\text{by scalar multiplication of linear functionals}]$$

$$= a[L_\alpha(f)] + b[L_\alpha(g)] \quad [\text{From (1)}]$$

Therefore L_α is a linear functional on V' and thus $L_\alpha \in V''$.

Now let ψ be the function from V into V'' defined by

$$\psi(\alpha) = L_\alpha \quad \forall \alpha \in V.$$

ψ is one-one. If $\alpha, \beta \in V$, then $\psi(\alpha) = \psi(\beta)$

$$\Rightarrow L_\alpha = L_\beta \Rightarrow L_\alpha(f) = L_\beta(f) \quad \forall f \in V'$$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = f(\beta) \quad \forall f \in V'$$

[from (1)]

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) - f(\beta) = 0 \quad \forall f \in V' \Rightarrow f(\alpha - \beta) = 0 \quad \forall f \in V'$$

$\Rightarrow \alpha - \beta = 0$ [\because by theorem 2 of § 3, if $\alpha - \beta \neq 0$, then \exists a linear functional f on V such that $f(\alpha - \beta) \neq 0$. Here we have $f(\alpha - \beta) = 0 \quad \forall f \in V$ and so $\alpha - \beta$ must be 0]

$\Rightarrow \alpha = \beta. \quad \therefore \quad \Psi$ is one.- one.

Ψ is a linear transformation. Let $a, b \in F$ and $\alpha, \beta \in V$. Then

$$\Psi(a\alpha + b\beta) = L_{a\alpha + b\beta} \quad [\text{by def. of } \Psi]$$

For every $f \in V'$, we have

$$L_{a\alpha + b\beta}(f) = f(a\alpha + b\beta) \quad [\text{From (1)}]$$

$$= af(\alpha) + bf(\beta)$$

$$= aL_\alpha(f) + bL_\beta(f) \quad [\text{From (1)}]$$

$$= (aL_\alpha)(f) + (bL_\beta)(f) = (aL_\alpha + bL_\beta)(f).$$

$$\therefore L_{a\alpha + b\beta} = aL_\alpha + bL_\beta = a\Psi(\alpha) + b\Psi(\beta).$$

$$\text{Thus } \Psi(a\alpha + b\beta) = a\Psi(\alpha) + b\Psi(\beta)$$

$\therefore \Psi$ is a linear transformation from V into V''

Now Ψ is a linear transformation from V into V'' . We have $\dim V = \dim V''$. Therefore Ψ is one-one implies that Ψ must also be onto. Hence Ψ is an isomorphism of V on to V''

Note. The correspondence $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$ as defined in the above theorem is called the **natural correspondence** between V and V'' . It is important to note that the above theorem shows not only that V and V'' are isomorphic - this much is obvious from the fact that they have the same dimension - but that the natural correspondence is an isomorphism. This property of vector spaces is called **reflexivity**. Thus in the above theorem we have proved that every finite dimensional vector space is reflexive.

In future we shall identify V'' with V through the natural isomorphism $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$. We shall say that the element L of V'' is the same as the element α of V iff $L = L_\alpha$ i.e., iff

$$L(f) = f(\alpha) \quad \forall f \in V'.$$

It will be in this sense that we shall regard $V'' = V$.

Theorem 2. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space over the field F . If L is a linear functional on the dual space V' of V , then there is a unique vector α in V such that $L(f) = f(\alpha) \quad \forall f \in V'$.

Proof. This theorem is an immediate corollary of theorem 1. We should first prove theorem 1. Then we should conclude like this :

The correspondence $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$ is a one-to-one correspondence between V and V'' . Therefore if $L \in V''$, then there exists a unique vector in V such that $L = L_\alpha$ i.e., such that $L(f) = f(\alpha) \quad \forall f \in V'$.

Theorem 3. Let V be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field F . Each basis for V' is the dual of some basis for V .

Proof. Let $B' = \{f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n\}$ be a basis for V' . Then there exists a dual basis $(B')' = \{L_1, L_2, \dots, L_n\}$ for V'' such that

$$L_i(f_j) = \delta_{ij}. \quad \dots(1)$$

By previous theorem, for each i there is a vector α_i in V such that

$$L_i = L_{\alpha_i} \text{ where } L_{\alpha_i}(f) = f(\alpha_i) \quad \forall f \in V'. \quad \dots(2)$$

The correspondence $\alpha \leftrightarrow L_\alpha$ is an isomorphism of V onto V'' . Under an isomorphism a basis is mapped onto a basis. Therefore $B = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ is a basis for V because it is the image set of a basis for V'' under the above isomorphism.

Putting $f = f_j$ in (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned} f_j(\alpha_i) &= L_{\alpha_i}(f_j) = L_i(f_j) \\ &= \delta_{ij}. \end{aligned} \quad [\text{from (1)}]$$

$\therefore B' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$ is the dual of the basis B . Hence the result.

Theorem 4. Let V be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field F . Let B be a basis for V and B' be the dual basis of B . Then show that $B'' = (B')' = B$.

Proof. Let $B = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis for V ,

$B' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$ be the dual basis of B in V' and

$B'' = (B')' = \{L_1, \dots, L_n\}$ be the dual basis of B' in V'' . Then

$$f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij},$$

and $L_i(f_j) = \delta_{ij}, i=1, \dots, n; j=1, \dots, n.$

If $\alpha \in V$, then there exists $L_\alpha \in V''$ such that

$$L_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha) \quad \forall f \in V'.$$

Taking α_i in place of α , we see that for each $j=1, \dots, n$,

$$L_{\alpha_i}(f_j) = f_j(\alpha_i) = \delta_{ij} = L_i(f_j).$$

Thus L_{α_i} and L_i agree on a basis for V' . Therefore $L_{\alpha_i} = L_i$.

If we identify V'' with V through natural isomorphism $\alpha \leftrightarrow L_\alpha$, then we consider L_α as the same element as α .

So $L_i = L_{\alpha_i} = \alpha_i$ where $i=1, 2, \dots, n$.

Thus $B'' = B$.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let V be a vector space over the field F . Let f be a non-zero linear functional on V and let N be the null space of f . Fix a vector α_0 in V which is not in N . Prove that for each α in V there

is a scalar c and a vector β in N such that $\alpha = c\alpha_0 + \beta$. Prove that c and β are unique.

Solution. Since f is a non-zero linear functional on V , therefore there exists a non-zero vector α_0 in V such that $f(\alpha_0) \neq 0$. Consequently $\alpha_0 \notin N$. Let $f(\alpha_0) = y \neq 0$.

Let α be any element of V and let $f(\alpha) = x$.

We have $f(\alpha) = x$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = (xy^{-1})y \quad [\because 0 \neq y \in F \Rightarrow y^{-1} \text{ exists}]$$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = cy \text{ where } c = xy^{-1} \in F$$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = cf(\alpha_0)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = f(c\alpha_0) \quad [\because f \text{ is a linear functional}]$$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) - f(c\alpha_0) = 0 \Rightarrow f(\alpha - c\alpha_0) = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha - c\alpha_0 \in N$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha - c\alpha_0 = \beta \text{ for some } \beta \in N \Rightarrow \alpha = c\alpha_0 + \beta.$$

If possible, let $\alpha = c'\alpha_0 + \beta'$ where $c' \in F$ and $\beta' \in N$.

$$\text{Then } c\alpha_0 + \beta = c'\alpha_0 + \beta' \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\Rightarrow (c - c')\alpha_0 + (\beta - \beta') = 0 \Rightarrow f[(c - c')\alpha_0 + (\beta - \beta')] = f(0)$$

$$\Rightarrow (c - c')f(\alpha_0) + f(\beta - \beta') = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (c - c')f(\alpha_0) = 0 \quad [\because \beta, \beta' \in N \Rightarrow \beta - \beta' \in N \Rightarrow f(\beta - \beta') = 0]$$

$$\Rightarrow (c - c') = 0 \quad [\because f(\alpha_0) \text{ is a non-zero element of } F]$$

$$\Rightarrow c = c'.$$

Putting $c = c'$ in (1), we get $c\alpha_0 + \beta = c\alpha_0 + \beta' \Rightarrow \beta = \beta'$.

Hence c and β are unique.

Ex. 2. If f and g are in V' such that $f(\alpha) = 0 \Rightarrow g(\alpha) = 0$, prove that $g = kf$ for some $k \in F$.

Solution. It is given that $f(\alpha) = 0 \Rightarrow g(\alpha) = 0$. Therefore if α belongs to the null space of f , then α also belongs to the null space of g . Thus the null space of f is a subset of the null space of g .

(i) If f is zero linear functional, then the null space of f is equal to V . Therefore in this case V is a subset of the null space of g . Hence the null space of g is equal to V . So g is also zero linear functional. Hence we have $g = kf$ $\forall k \in F$.

(ii) Let f be a non-zero linear functional on V . Then there exists a non-zero vector $\alpha_0 \in V$ such that $f(\alpha_0) = y$ where y is a non-zero element of F . Let $k = \frac{g(\alpha_0)}{f(\alpha_0)}$. If $\alpha \in V$, then we can write

$\alpha = c\alpha_0 + \beta$ where $c \in F$ and $\beta \in$ the null space of f .

We have $g(\alpha) = g(c\alpha_0 + \beta) = cg(\alpha_0) + g(\beta)$
 $= cg(\alpha_0) \quad [\because \beta \in \text{the null space of } f \Rightarrow f(\beta) = 0 \text{ and so } g(\beta) = 0]$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Also } (kf)(\alpha) &= kf(\alpha) = kf(c\alpha_0 + \beta) = k[cf(\alpha_0) + f(\beta)] \\
 &= kc f(\alpha_0) \quad [\because f(\beta) = 0] \\
 &= \frac{g(\alpha_0)}{f(\alpha_0)} cf(\alpha_0) = cg(\alpha_0).
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $g(\alpha) = (kf)(\alpha) \forall \alpha \in V$. Therefore $g = kf$.

§ 5. Annihilators.

Definition. If V is a vector space over the field F and S is a subset of V , the annihilator of S is the set S^0 of all linear functionals f on V such that $f(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in S$.

Sometimes $A(S)$ is also used to denote the annihilator of S .

Thus $S^0 = \{f \in V' : f(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in S\}$.

If $S =$ the zero subspace of V , then $S^0 = V'$.

If $S = V$, then $V^0 =$ the zero subspace of V' .

If V is finite dimensional and S contains a non-zero vector, then $S^0 \neq V'$. If $0 \neq \alpha \in S$, then there is a linear functional f on V such that $f(\alpha) \neq 0$. Thus there is $f \in V'$ such that $f \notin S^0$. Therefore $S^0 \neq V'$.

Theorem 1. If S is any subset of a vector space $V(F)$, then S^0 is a subspace of V' .

Proof. First we see that S^0 is a non-empty subset of V' because at least $\hat{0} \in S^0$. We have $\hat{0}(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in S$.

Let $f, g \in S^0$. Then $f(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in S$,
and $g(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in S$.

If $a, b \in F$, then

$$(af + bg)(\alpha) = (af)(\alpha) + (bg)(\alpha) = af(\alpha) + bg(\alpha) = a \cdot 0 + b \cdot 0 = 0.$$

$$\therefore af + bg \in S^0.$$

Thus $a, b \in F$ and $f, g \in S^0 \Rightarrow af + bg \in S^0$.

$\therefore S^0$ is a subspace of V' .

Dimension of annihilator.

Theorem 2. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space over the field F , and let W be a subspace of V . Then

$$\dim W + \dim W^0 = \dim V.$$

Proof. If W is the zero subspace of V , then $W^0 = V'$.

$$\therefore \dim W^0 = \dim V' = \dim V.$$

Also in this case $\dim W = 0$. Hence the result.

Similarly the result is obvious when $W = V$.

Let us now suppose that W is a proper subspace of V . Let $\dim V = n$, and $\dim W = m$ where $0 < m < n$.

Let $B_1 = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ be a basis for W . Since B_1 is a linearly

independent subset of V also, therefore it can be extended to form a basis for V . Let $B = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m, \alpha_{m+1}, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis for V .

Let $B' = \{f_1, \dots, f_m, f_{m+1}, \dots, f_n\}$ be the dual basis of B . Then B' is a basis for V' such that $f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$.

We claim that $S = \{f_{m+1}, \dots, f_n\}$ is a basis for W^0 .

Since $S \subset B'$, therefore S is linearly independent because B' is linearly independent. So S will be a basis for W^0 , if W^0 is equal to the subspace of V' spanned by S i.e., if $W^0 = L(S)$.

First we shall show that $W^0 \subseteq L(S)$. Let $f \in W^0$. Then $f \in V'$. So let

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i f_i. \quad \dots(1)$$

Now $f \in W^0 \Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in W$

$\Rightarrow f(\alpha_j) = 0$ for each $j = 1, \dots, m$ [$\because \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ are in W]

$$\Rightarrow \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i f_i \right) (\alpha_j) = 0 \quad \text{[from (1)]}$$

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n x_i f_i(\alpha_j) = 0 \Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \delta_{ij} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x_j = 0 \text{ for each } j = 1, \dots, m.$$

Putting $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, \dots, x_m = 0$ in (1), we get

$$f = x_{m+1} f_{m+1} + \dots + x_n f_n$$

= a linear combination of elements of S .

$\therefore f \in L(S)$.

Thus $f \in W^0 \Rightarrow f \in L(S)$. $\therefore W^0 \subseteq L(S)$.

Now we shall show that $L(S) \subseteq W^0$.

Let $g \in L(S)$. Then g is a linear combination of f_{m+1}, \dots, f_n . Let

$$g = \sum_{k=m+1}^n y_k f_k. \quad \dots(2)$$

Let $\alpha \in W$. Then α is a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$. Let

$$\alpha = \sum_{j=1}^m c_j \alpha_j. \quad \dots(3)$$

$$\text{We have } g(\alpha) = g \left(\sum_{j=1}^m c_j \alpha_j \right) \quad \text{[from (3)]}$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^m c_j g(\alpha_j) \quad [\because g \text{ is a linear functional}]$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^m c_j \left(\sum_{k=m+1}^n y_k f_k \right) (\alpha_j) \quad [\text{from (2)}]$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^m c_j \sum_{k=m+1}^n y_k f_k(\alpha_j) = \sum_{j=1}^m c_j \sum_{k=m+1}^n y_k \delta_{kj}$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^m c_j 0 \quad [\because \delta_{kj}=0 \text{ if } k \neq j \text{ which is so for each } k=m+1, \dots, n \text{ and for each } j=1, \dots, m]$$

$$= 0.$$

Thus $g(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in W$. Therefore $g \in W^0$.

Thus $g \in L(S) \Rightarrow g \in W^0$. $\therefore L(S) \subseteq W^0$.

Hence $W^0 = L(S)$ and S is a basis for W^0 .

$$\therefore \dim W^0 = n - m = \dim V - \dim W$$

$$\text{or } \dim V = \dim W + \dim W^0.$$

Corollary. If V is finite dimensional and W is a subspace of V , then W' is isomorphic to V'/W^0 . (G.N.D.U. 1986)

Proof. Let $\dim V = n$ and $\dim W = m$. W' is dual space of W . So $\dim W' = \dim W = m$.

$$\text{Now } \dim V'/W^0 = \dim V' - \dim W^0$$

$$= \dim V - (\dim V - \dim W) = \dim W = m.$$

Since $\dim W' = \dim V'/W^0$, therefore $W' \cong V'/W^0$.

Annihilator of an annihilator. Let V be a vector space over the field F . If S is any subset of V , then S^0 is a subspace of V' . By the definition of an annihilator, we have

$$(S^0)^0 = S^{00} = \{L \in V'' : L(f) = 0 \forall f \in S^0\}.$$

Obviously S^{00} is a subspace of V'' . But if V is finite dimensional, then we have identified V'' with V through the natural isomorphism $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$. Therefore we may regard S^{00} as a subspace of V . Thus $S^{00} = \{\alpha \in V : f(\alpha) = 0 \forall f \in S^0\}$.

Theorem 3. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space over the field F and W be a subspace of V . Then $W^{00} = W$.

Proof. We have

$$W^0 = \{f \in V' : f(\alpha) = 0 \forall \alpha \in W\} \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{and } W^{00} = \{\alpha \in V : f(\alpha) = 0 \forall f \in W^0\}. \quad \dots(2)$$

Let $\alpha \in W$. Then from (1), $f(\alpha) = 0 \forall f \in W^0$ and so from (2), $\alpha \in W^{00}$. Therefore $\alpha \in W \Rightarrow \alpha \in W^{00}$.

Thus $W \subseteq W^{00}$. Now W is a subspace of V and W^{00} is also a subspace of V . Since $W \subseteq W^{00}$, therefore W is a subspace of W^{00} .

Now $\dim W + \dim W^0 = \dim V$. [by theorem (2)]

Applying the same theorem for the vector space V' and its subspace W^0 , we get

$$\dim W^0 + \dim W^{00} = \dim V' = \dim V.$$

$$\therefore \dim W = \dim V - \dim W^0 = \dim V - [\dim V - \dim W^{00}] = \dim W^{00}.$$

Since W is a subspace of W^{00} and $\dim W = \dim W^{00}$, therefore $W = W^{00}$.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If S_1 and S_2 are two subsets of a vector space V such that $S_1 \subseteq S_2$, then show that $S_2^0 \subseteq S_1^0$.

Solution. Let $f \in S_2^0$. Then

$$f(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in S_2$$

$$\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in S_1 \quad [\because S_1 \subseteq S_2]$$

$$\Rightarrow f \in S_1^0.$$

$$\therefore S_2^0 \subseteq S_1^0.$$

Ex. 2. Let V be a vector space over the field F . If S is any subset of V , then show that $S^0 = [L(S)]^0$.

Solution. We know that $S \subseteq L(S)$.

$$\therefore [L(S)]^0 \subseteq S^0. \quad \dots(1)$$

Now let $f \in S^0$. Then $f(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in S$.

If β is any element of $L(S)$, then

$$\beta = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i \quad \text{where each } \alpha_i \in S.$$

We have $f(\beta) = \sum x_i f(\alpha_i) = 0$, since each $f(\alpha_i) = 0$.

Thus $f(\beta) = 0 \quad \forall \beta \in L(S)$.

Hence $f \in [L(S)]^0$.

Therefore $S^0 \subseteq [L(S)]^0$.

From (1) and (2), we conclude that $S^0 = [L(S)]^0$.

Ex. 3. Let V be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field F . If S is any subset of V , then $S^{00} = L(S)$.

Solution. We have $S^0 = [L(S)]^0$. [See Ex. 2]

$$\therefore S^{00} = [L(S)]^{00}. \quad (1)$$

But V is finite dimensional and $L(S)$ is a subspace of V . Therefore by theorem 3, $(L(S))^{00} = L(S)$.

\therefore from (1), we have $\hat{S}^{00} = L(S)$.

Ex. 4. Let V be a finite dimensional vector space over the field F . If W_1 and W_2 are subspaces of V , then $W_1^0 = W_2^0$ iff $W_1 = W_2$.

Solution. We have $W_1 = W_2 \Rightarrow W_1^0 = W_2^0$.

Conversely, let $W_1^0 = W_2^0$. Then $W_1^{00} = W_2^{00} \Rightarrow W_1 = W_2$.

Ex. 5. Let W_1 and W_2 be subspaces of a finite dimensional vector space V .

(a) Prove that $(W_1 + W_2)^0 = W_1^0 \cap W_2^0$.

(b) Prove that $(W_1 \cap W_2)^0 = W_1^0 + W_2^0$. (I.A.S. 1985)

Solution. (a) First we shall prove that

$$W_1^0 \cap W_2^0 \subseteq (W_1 + W_2)^0.$$

Let $f \in W_1^0 \cap W_2^0$. Then $f \in W_1^0, f \in W_2^0$.

Suppose α is any vector in $W_1 + W_2$. Then

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 \text{ where } \alpha_1 \in W_1, \alpha_2 \in W_2.$$

We have $f(\alpha) = f(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2) = f(\alpha_1) + f(\alpha_2)$

$$= 0 + 0 \quad [\because \alpha_1 \in W_1 \text{ and } f \in W_1^0 \Rightarrow f(\alpha_1) = 0 \\ \text{and similarly } f(\alpha_2) = 0]$$

$$= 0.$$

Thus $f(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in W_1 + W_2$.

$\therefore f \in (W_1 + W_2)^0$.

$$\therefore W_1^0 \cap W_2^0 \subseteq (W_1 + W_2)^0. \quad \dots(1)$$

Now we shall prove that $(W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_1^0 \cap W_2^0$.

We have $W_1 \subseteq W_1 + W_2$.

$$\therefore (W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_1^0. \quad \dots(2)$$

Similarly $W_2 \subseteq W_1 + W_2$.

$$\therefore (W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_2^0. \quad \dots(3)$$

From (2) and (3), we have

$$(W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_1^0 \cap W_2^0. \quad \dots(4)$$

From (1) and (4), we have $(W_1 + W_2)^0 = W_1^0 \cap W_2^0$.

(b) Let us use the result (a) for the vector space V' in place of the vector space V . Thus replacing W_1 by W_1^0 and W_2 by W_2^0 in (a) we get

$$(W_1^0 + W_2^0)^0 = W_1^{00} \cap W_2^{00}$$

$$\Rightarrow (W_1^0 + W_2^0)^0 = W_1 \cap W_2 \quad [\because W_1^{00} = W_1 \text{ etc.}]$$

$$\Rightarrow (W_1^0 + W_2^0)^{00} = (W_1 \cap W_2)^0 \Rightarrow W_1^{00} + W_2^{00} = (W_1 \cap W_2)^0.$$

The concept of module is a generalisation of that of a vector space. In a vector space the scalars are elements of a field while in a module we shall allow the scalars to be elements of an arbitrary ring.

§ 1. Module. Definition.

A non-empty set M is said to be a left module over a ring R (or, a left R -module) if M is an abelian group under an operation $+$ such that for every $r \in R$, $m \in M$ there exists a unique element $rm \in M$ subject to the conditions :

$$(1) \quad r(a+b) = ra+rb$$

$$(2) \quad (r+s)a = ra+sa$$

$$(3) \quad r(sa) = (rs)a$$

for all $a, b \in M$ and $r, s \in R$. (Meerut 1991; Kanpur 86, 88)

Unital R -module. If R is a ring with unity 1, then a left R -module is said to be unital if $1m=m$ for all $m \in M$. If the ring R is a field, then a unital left R -module is nothing but a vector space over the field R . (Meerut 1991)

We have called the algebraic structure defined above a left R -module because we have allowed multiplication by the elements of R from the left. In a similar fashion we can define a right R -module by modifying the conditions (1), (2) and (3) in the above definition in the following manner :

$$(1) \quad (a+b)r = ar+br$$

$$(2) \quad a(r+s) = ar+as$$

$$(3) \quad (ar)s = a(rs)$$

for all $a, b \in M$ and $r, s \in R$.

It should be noted that the distinction between a left R -module and a right R -module is merely that of notation. The theory of right R -modules can be developed in the same manner as the theory of left R -modules. We shall develop here the theory of left R -modules. If M is a left R -module, then we shall omit the

repeated use of the adjective *left* and we shall simply call it a *R-module*.

Some Examples of Modules

Example 1. Every abelian group G is a module over the ring of integers I . (Kanpur 1986)

Let G be an abelian group, the operation in G being denoted by $+$ and the identity element of G by 0 . For any integer n and for any element a of G we define na in the following manner :

If n is a positive integer, we define $na = a + a + \dots$ upto n terms. If $n = 0$, we define $0a = 0$ where 0 on the right hand side is the identity of G . If n is a negative integer, say $n = -m$ where m is a positive integer, we define $(-m)a = -(ma)$, where $-(ma)$ denotes the inverse of ma in G . It can be easily seen that

$$-(ma) = m(-a).$$

Now G will be a module over the ring of integers I , if we prove that

$$(1) \quad m(a+b) = ma + mb$$

$$(2) \quad (m+n)a = ma + na$$

$$(3) \quad m(na) = (mn)a$$

for all $m, n \in I$ and $a, b \in G$. We shall prove these one by one.

(1) Let us prove that $m(a+b) = ma + mb \quad \forall m \in I$, and $a, b \in G$.

If m is a positive integer, then

$$\begin{aligned} m(a+b) &= (a+b) + (a+b) + (a+b) + \dots \text{upto } m \text{ terms} \\ &= (a+a+a+\dots \text{upto } m \text{ terms}) + (b+b+\dots \text{upto } m \text{ terms}) \\ &= ma + mb. \end{aligned}$$

If $m = 0$, then $0(a+b) = 0 = 0 + 0 = 0a + 0b$.

If m is a negative integer, say $m = -p$ where p is a positive integer, then

$$\begin{aligned} m(a+b) &= (-p)(a+b) = -[p(a+b)] = -(pa+pb) \\ &= -(pa) + [-(pb)] = (-p)a + (-p)b = ma + mb. \end{aligned}$$

Thus (1) is true. The proofs of (2) and (3) have been left for the reader. Hence G is a module over the ring of integers.

Example 2. Let R be a ring and let M be a left ideal of R . For $r \in R, m \in M$ let rm be the product of these elements as elements in R . Then M is an R -module.

Since M is a left ideal of R , therefore M is an additive abelian group. Also if $r \in R$ and $m \in M$, then $rm \in M$ because M is a left ideal of R . Further

(1) $r(m_1+m_2)=rm_1+rm_2$ for all $r \in R$ and $m_1, m_2 \in M$. This result is a consequence of left distributive law in R .

(2) $(r_1+r_2)m=r_1m+r_2m$ for all $r_1, r_2 \in R$ and $m \in M$. This result is a consequence of right distributive law in R .

(3) $r(sm)=(rs)m$ for all $r, s \in R$ and $m \in M$. This follows from associativity.

Hence M is an R -module.

Example 3. Every ring R is an R -module over itself.

This result follows as a special case from example 2 if we take $M=R$.

Example 4. Let R be any ring and λ be a left-ideal of R . Let M consist of all the cosets, $a+\lambda$, where $a \in R$, of λ in R . Thus $M=\{a+\lambda : a \in R\}$. It can be shown that M is an R -module if the two requisite compositions are defined as follows :

$$(a+\lambda)+(b+\lambda)=(a+b)+\lambda \quad [\text{Addition of elements of } M]$$

$$r(a+\lambda)=ra+\lambda \quad [\text{Multiplication of an element of } M \text{ by an element of } R]$$

Since $(a+b)+\lambda$ and $ra+\lambda$ are also cosets of λ in R , therefore M is closed with respect to the two compositions. First of all we shall show that both these compositions are well defined.

$$\text{Let } a+\lambda=a'+\lambda, a, a' \in R$$

$$\text{and } b+\lambda=b'+\lambda, b, b' \in R.$$

$$\text{We have } a+\lambda=a'+\lambda \Rightarrow a-a' \in \lambda$$

$$\text{and } b+\lambda=b'+\lambda \Rightarrow b-b' \in \lambda.$$

Now λ is a left ideal, therefore $a-a' \in \lambda, b-b' \in \lambda$

$$\Rightarrow (a-a')+(b-b') \in \lambda \Rightarrow (a+b)-(a'+b') \in \lambda$$

$$\Rightarrow (a+b)+\lambda=(a'+b')+\lambda \Rightarrow (a+\lambda)+(b+\lambda)=(a'+\lambda)+(b'+\lambda).$$

Therefore addition in M is well defined.

Again λ is a left ideal. Therefore $r \in R, a-a' \in \lambda$

$$\Rightarrow r(a-a') \in \lambda \Rightarrow ra-ra' \in \lambda \Rightarrow ra+\lambda=ra'+\lambda$$

$$\Rightarrow r(a+\lambda)=r(a'+\lambda).$$

Therefore the multiplication of the elements of M by the elements of R is also well defined.

Commutativity of addition in M . We have

$$(a+\lambda)+(b+\lambda)=(a+b)+\lambda=(b+a)+\lambda=(b+\lambda)+(a+\lambda).$$

Associativity of addition in M . We have

$$\begin{aligned} (a+\lambda)+[(b+\lambda)+(c+\lambda)] &= (a+\lambda)+[(b+c)+\lambda] = [a+(b+c)]+\lambda \\ &= [(a+b)+c]+\lambda = [(a+b)+\lambda]+(c+\lambda) = [(a+\lambda)+(b+\lambda)]+(c+\lambda). \end{aligned}$$

The coset $0+\lambda$ is the additive identity in M for we have

$$(0+\lambda)+(a+\lambda)=(0+a)+\lambda=a+\lambda.$$

The coset $(-a) + \lambda$ is the additive inverse of the element $a + \lambda$ of M . We have $(-a + \lambda) + (a + \lambda) = (-a + a) + \lambda = 0 + \lambda =$ the identity element of M .

Thus M is an additive abelian group. We further observe that

- (1) $r[(a + \lambda) + (b + \lambda)] = r[(a + b) + \lambda] = r(a + b) + \lambda$
 $= (ra + rb) + \lambda = (ra + \lambda) + (rb + \lambda) = r(a + \lambda) + r(b + \lambda)$
- (2) $(r + s)(a + \lambda) = [(r + s)a] + \lambda = (ra + sa) + \lambda$
 $= (ra + \lambda) + (sa + \lambda) = r(a + \lambda) + s(a + \lambda)$
- (3) $r[s(a + \lambda)] = r(sa + \lambda) = [r(sa)] + \lambda = [(rs)a] + \lambda$
 $= (rs)(a + \lambda)$

Hence M is an R -module. M is usually written as R/λ (or, sometimes R/λ) and is called the *difference* (or *quotient*) *module* of R by λ .

Example 5. The module of all ordered n -tuples of elements of a ring R .

Let $M = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in R\}$. If we define addition in M by $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) + (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = (a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, \dots, a_n + b_n)$ and multiplication of an element (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) of M by an element r of R by $r(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = (ra_1, ra_2, \dots, ra_n)$, then it can be easily shown that M is an R -module.

§ 2. General properties of modules.

Theorem. Let M be an R -module. Then

- (i) $r0 = 0 \forall r \in R$. (ii) $0a = 0 \forall a \in M$.
- (iii) $(-r)a = -(ra) = r(-a)$ for all $r \in R, a \in M$.
- (iv) $(-r)(-a) = ra$ for all $r \in R, a \in M$.
- (v) $r(a - b) = ra - rb$ for all $r \in R, a, b \in M$.
- (vi) $(r - s)a = ra - sa$ for all $r, s \in R, a \in M$.

Proof. (i) We have

$$r0 = r(0 + 0) \quad [\because 0 = 0 + 0 \text{ in the group } M]$$

$$= r0 + r0.$$

$$\therefore 0 + r0 = r0 + r0. \quad [\because r0 \in M \text{ and } 0 + r0 = r0]$$

Now M is an abelian group with respect to addition. Therefore by right cancellation law in M , we get $0 = r0$.

The proofs of the remaining parts have been left for the reader. Proceed as in theorem 1, page 402, chapter 6 (on vector spaces).

§ 3. Submodules. Definition.

A non-empty subset S of an R -module M is said to be an R -submodule of M (or, simply a submodule of M) if (i) S is an addi-

tive subgroup of M and (if) $r \in R, a \in S \Rightarrow ra \in S$. If M is any R -module, then M itself and (0) i.e., the subset of M consisting of the identity element of M alone are always submodules of M . These two are called *improper submodules*. If M has any other submodule, then it is called a *proper submodule*.

Irreducible R -module. Definition. An R -module M is said to be *irreducible* if its only submodules are (0) and M .

Intersection of submodules.

Theorem 1. If A and B are two submodules of an R -module M , then $A \cap B$ is also a submodule of M .

Proof. Since A and B are additive subgroups of M , therefore $A \cap B$ is also an additive subgroup of M .

Now let $r \in R$ and $a \in A \cap B$. Then $a \in A$ and $a \in B$. Since A is a submodule of M , therefore $r \in R, a \in A \Rightarrow ra \in A$. Also B is a submodule of M . Therefore $r \in R, a \in B \Rightarrow ra \in B$. Thus $ra \in A \cap B$. Hence $A \cap B$ is a submodule of M .

Theorem 2. Arbitrary intersection of submodules i.e., the intersection of any family of submodules of a module is a submodule.

The proof of this theorem has been left for the reader. Proceed as in theorem 3 page 409, chapter 6 (on vector spaces).

Submodule generated by a subset of a module. Let M be an R -module and S be a non-empty subset of M . If A is a submodule of M containing S and is itself contained in every submodule of M containing S , then A is called the *submodule of M generated by S* . The submodule of M generated by S will be denoted by the symbol (S) . It should be noted that (S) is the smallest submodule of M containing S . It can be easily seen that the intersection of all the submodules of M containing S is the submodule of M generated by S .

Theorem 3. Show that the submodule of a unital R -module M generated by a subset S of M consists of all linear combinations of elements in S .

Proof. Let $L(S)$ denote the set of all linear combinations of the elements of S i.e., let $L(S) = \{r_1 a_1 + r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_n a_n : a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \text{ is any arbitrary finite subset of } S \text{ and } r_1, r_2, \dots, r_n \text{ is any arbitrary finite subset of the ring}\}$.

First we shall show that $L(S)$ is a submodule of M . Let $a = r_1 a_1 + r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_n a_n, b = s_1 b_1 + s_2 b_2 + \dots + s_m b_m$ be any two elements of $L(S)$. Here the r_i 's and the s_j 's are elements of R and the a_i 's and b_j 's are elements of S . We have $a - b = r_1 a_1 + r_2 a_2 + \dots +$

$r_n a_n + (-s_1) b_1 + (-s_2) b_2 + \dots + (-s_m) b_m$. Obviously $a - b$ is an element of $L(S)$ because it is also a linear combination of some elements of S . Thus $a, b \in L(S) \Rightarrow a - b \in L(S)$. Hence $L(S)$ is an additive subgroup of M .

Now if r is any element of R and $a = r_1 a_1 + r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_n a_n$ is any element of $L(S)$, then $ra = r(r_1 a_1 + r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_n a_n) = r(r_1 a_1) + \dots + r(r_n a_n) = (rr_1) a_1 + \dots + (rr_n) a_n$. Since $rr_1, \dots, rr_n \in R$, therefore ra is also a linear combination of some elements of S . Thus $r \in R, a \in L(S) \Rightarrow ra \in L(S)$. Therefore $L(S)$ is a submodule of M .

Also each element of S belongs to $L(S)$ because if $a_i \in S$, then $a_i = 1a_i$ where 1 is the unity element of the ring R . Note that M is a unital R -module. Now $a_i = 1a_i \Rightarrow a_i \in L(S)$. Thus $L(S)$ is a submodule of M and S is contained in $L(S)$.

Now if W is any submodule of M containing S , then each element of $L(S)$ must be in W because W is to be closed under scalar multiplication and addition. Therefore $L(S)$ will be contained in W .

Hence $L(S) = (S)$ i.e., $L(S)$ is the submodule of M generated by S .

§ 4. Linear sum of two submodules. Definition. Let A and B be two submodules of an R -module M . Then the linear sum of the submodules A and B denoted by $A+B$ is the set of sums $a+b$ such that $a \in A, b \in B$.

Thus $A+B = \{a+b : a \in A, b \in B\}$.

Theorem. If A and B are submodules of an R -module M , then $A+B$ is also a submodule of M .

Proof. Let $c = a_1 + b_1, d = a_2 + b_2$ be any two elements of $A+B$. Then $a_1, a_2 \in A$ and $b_1, b_2 \in B$. We have $c - d = (a_1 + b_1) - (a_2 + b_2) = (a_1 - a_2) + (b_1 - b_2)$. Since A is an additive subgroup of M , therefore $a_1, a_2 \in A \Rightarrow a_1 - a_2 \in A$. Similarly $b_1 - b_2 \in B$. Therefore $(a_1 - a_2) + (b_1 - b_2) \in A+B$. Thus $c, d \in A+B \Rightarrow c - d \in A+B$. Therefore $A+B$ is an additive subgroup of M .

Now let $r \in R$ and $c = a_1 + b_1 \in A+B$. We have $rc = r(a_1 + b_1) = ra_1 + rb_1$. Since A is a submodule of M , therefore $r \in R, a_1 \in A \Rightarrow ra_1 \in A$. Similarly $rb_1 \in B$. Thus $ra_1 + rb_1 \in A+B$. In this way $r \in R, c \in A+B \Rightarrow rc \in A+B$. Hence $A+B$ is a submodule of M .

§ 5. Direct sum of submodules. Module as a direct sum of submodules. Definition. Let M be an R -module and M_1, M_2, \dots, M_n

be submodules of M . Then M is said to be the direct sum of M_1, M_2, \dots, M_n if every element $a \in M$ can be written in one and only one way as $a = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n$ where $a_1 \in M_1, a_2 \in M_2, \dots, a_n \in M_n$.

If a module M is a direct sum of its submodules M_1 and M_2 , then we should have not only $M = M_1 + M_2$ but also that each element of M can be uniquely expressed as sum of an element of M_1 and an element of M_2 . Symbolically the direct sum is represented by the notation $M = M_1 \oplus M_2$.

Theorem. The necessary and sufficient conditions for a module M to be a direct sum of its two submodules M_1 and M_2 are that

- (i) $M = M_1 + M_2$
- and (ii) $M_1 \cap M_2 = \{0\}$.

The proof of this theorem has been left for the reader.

§ 6. Homomorphism of modules or linear transformations.

Definition. Let M and N be two R -modules. A mapping T from M into N is called a homomorphism (or R -homomorphism or module homomorphism) if

- (i) $T(m_1 + m_2) = T(m_1) + T(m_2) \quad \forall m_1, m_2 \in M$
- (ii) $T(rm) = rT(m) \quad \forall r \in R, m \in M$.

If T is a homomorphism of M onto N , then N is called a homomorphic image of M .

If T is a homomorphism of M into N and if the mapping T is one-to-one, then T is called an isomorphism of M into N .

Note. Sometimes the image of m under T i.e., Tm or $T(m)$ is also written as mT .

Theorem 1. If T is a homomorphism of an R -module M into an R -module N , then

- (i) $T(0) = 0$,
- (ii) $T(-m) = -T(m)$,
- (iii) $T(m_1 - m_2) = T(m_1) - T(m_2)$ for all $m, m_1, m_2 \in M$.

The proof of this theorem has been left for the reader.

Kernel of a homomorphism. **Definition.** Let T be a homomorphism of an R -module M into an R -module N . The kernel $K(T)$ of T is defined as

$K(T) = \{m \in M : T(m) = 0 \text{ where } 0 \text{ is the identity element of the additive group } N\}$.

Theorem 2. The kernel of a homomorphism is a submodule.

Proof. Let $K(T)$ be the kernel of the homomorphism T of an R -module M into an R -module N . Then $K(T) = \{m \in M :$

$T(m)=0$. To prove that $K(T)$ is a submodule of M . Since $T(0)=0$, therefore at least $0 \in K(T)$. Thus $K(T)$ is a non-empty subset of M .

Now let $m_1, m_2 \in K(T)$. Then $T(m_1)=0$ and $T(m_2)=0$. We have $T(m_1-m_2)=T(m_1)-T(m_2)=0-0=0$. Therefore $m_1-m_2 \in K(T)$. Thus $K(T)$ is an additive subgroup of M .

Again let $r \in R$ and $m \in K(T)$. Then $T(m)=0$. We have $T(rm)=r T(m)=r0=0$. Therefore $rm \in K(T)$. Hence $K(T)$ is a submodule of M .

Theorem 3. *The range of a homomorphism is a submodule.*

Proof. Let T be a homomorphism of an R -module M into an R -module N . Let $I(T)$ denote the range of T . Then $I(T)=\{T(m) : m \in M\}$. To prove that $I(T)$ is a submodule of N .

Let $T(m_1), T(m_2)$ be any two elements of $I(T)$ where $m_1, m_2 \in M$. We have $T(m_1)-T(m_2)=T(m_1-m_2) \in I(T)$ since $m_1-m_2 \in M$. Therefore $I(T)$ is an additive subgroup of N .

Again let r be any element of R and $T(m)$ be any element of $I(T)$ where $m \in M$. We have $r T(m)=T(rm) \in I(T)$ since $rm \in M$. Hence $I(T)$ is a submodule of N .

Theorem 4. *Let T be a module homomorphism. Show that T is an isomorphism if and only if $K(T)=(0)$.*

Proof. Let T be a homomorphism of an R -module M into an R -module N . First we shall prove that T is an isomorphism if kernel of T i.e., $K(T)=0$. If $m_1, m_2 \in M$, then

$$\begin{aligned} T(m_1)=T(m_2) &\Rightarrow T(m_1)-T(m_2)=0 \Rightarrow T(m_1-m_2)=0 \\ &\Rightarrow m_1-m_2 \in K(T) \Rightarrow m_1-m_2=0, \text{ since } K(T)=(0) \\ &\Rightarrow m_1=m_2 \Rightarrow T \text{ is one-to-one} \Rightarrow T \text{ is an isomorphism.} \end{aligned}$$

Conversely suppose that T is an isomorphism i.e., T is one-to-one. Then to show that $K(T)=(0)$. Let $m \in K(T)$. Then $T(m)=0=T(0)$. But T is one-to-one. Therefore $T(m)=T(0)$ gives $m=0$. Thus $m \in K(T) \Rightarrow m=0$. Hence $K(T)=(0)$.

§ 7. Quotient modules. Let A be any submodule of an R -module M . Then A is a subgroup of the additive group M . If $m \in M$, then $A+m$ is a coset of A in M . Let M/A denote the set of all cosets of A in M i.e., let $M/A=\{A+m : m \in M\}$. We know that if $A+m_1$ and $A+m_2$ are two cosets of A in M , then $A+m_1=A+m_2 \Leftrightarrow m_1-m_2 \in A$. Now we shall give a module structure to the set M/A over the same ring R . For this we shall have to define addition in M/A and multiplication of an element of M/A by an element of R i.e., scalar multiplication.

Theorem 1. If A is any submodule of an R -module M , then the set M/A of all cosets $A+m$ where m is any arbitrary element of M , is a module over R for the addition and scalar multiplication compositions defined as follows :

$$(A+m_1)+(A+m_2)=A+(m_1+m_2) \quad \forall m_1, m_2 \in M$$

$$r(A+m)=A+rm \quad \forall r \in R, m \in M.$$

The R -module M/A is called the Quotient module of M relative to the submodule A .

For proof of this theorem proceed as in theorem on page 441 in the chapter 6 on vector spaces.

Theorem 2. Suppose M is an R -module and A is a submodule of M . Let T be mapping from M into M/A defined by $T(m)=A+m$ $\forall m \in M$. Then T is an R -homomorphism of M onto M/A and kernel $T=A$.

Theorem 3. Fundamental theorem on homomorphism of modules. If T is a homomorphism of an R -module M onto an R -module N with $K(T)=A$, then N is isomorphic (as a module) to M/A .

The proofs of both these theorems have been left for the reader.

§ 8. Cyclic modules. Definition. An R -module M is said to be cyclic if there is an element $m_0 \in M$ such that every $m \in M$ is of the form, $m=rm_0$ where $r \in R$. Also m_0 is called a generator of M and we write $M=(m_0)$. (Meerut 1991)

For R , the ring of integers, a cyclic R -module is nothing more than a cyclic group.

Theorem. Let M be a unital R -module and for a fixed element $m \in M$ let $A=\{rm : r \in R\}$. Then A is a cyclic submodule of M generated by m .

The proof of this theorem has been left for the reader.

§ 9. Finitely generated Modules. Definition. An R -module M is said to be finitely generated if there exist elements $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in M$ such that every m in M is of the form $m=r_1a_1+r_2a_2+\dots+r_na_n$ where $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_n \in R$.

Now we come to the main theorem of this chapter. This theorem is known as the fundamental theorem on finitely generated unital modules over Euclidean rings.

Theorem. Let R be a Euclidean ring; then any finitely generated R module, M , is the direct sum of a finite number of cyclic modules. (Meerut 1991)

Proof. It is given that M is a finitely generated R -module where R is a Euclidean ring. We shall call those generating sets

Which have as few elements as possible *minimal generating sets* and the number of elements in such a minimal generating set the rank of M . We shall prove the theorem by induction on the rank of M .

To start the induction we see that if M is of rank 1. then M is generated by a single elements and so M is cyclic and the theorem is true. Now assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true for all R -modules of rank $k-1$. If M is a R -module of rank k . we are to show that the theorem is true for M .

If for any given minimal generating set c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k of M , any relation of the form $r_1 c_1 + r_2 c_2 + \dots + r_k c_k = 0$ ($r_i \in R$) implies that $r_1 c_1 = r_2 c_2 = \dots = r_k c_k = 0$, then obviously M is the direct sum of M_1 , by c_1 . So in this case we are left nothing to prove. Consequently, given any minimal generating set b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k of M , there must be elements r_1, r_2, \dots, r_k of R such that $r_1 b_1 + r_2 b_2 + \dots + r_k b_k = 0$ and in which not all of $r_1 b_1, r_2 b_2, \dots, r_k b_k$ are 0. Among all possible relations of this type for all minimal generating sets let s_1 be the element of R whose d -value $d(s_1)$ is minimal. Let the generating set for which it occurs be a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k . Thus

$$s_1 a_1 + s_2 a_2 + \dots + s_k a_k = 0 \quad \dots(1)$$

Now we claim that if

$$r_1 a_1 + r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_k a_k = 0 \quad \dots(2)$$

then s_1 is a divisor of r_1 . Since s_1, r_1 are elements of a Euclidean ring R , therefore there exist $m, t \in R$ such that $r_1 = ms_1 + t$ where either $t=0$ or $d(t) < d(s_1)$. Multiplying (1) by m and subtracting from (2), we get

$$(r_1 - ms_1)a_1 + (r_2 - ms_2)a_2 + \dots + (r_k - ms_k)a_k = 0$$

$$\text{or} \quad ta_1 + (r_2 - ms_2)a_2 + \dots + (r_k - ms_k)a_k = 0 \quad \dots(3)$$

If $t \neq 0$ then $d(t) < d(s_1)$ and so the relation (3) contradicts our choice of s_1 . Therefore we must have $t=0$. Then $r_1 = ms_1 + t$ gives $r_1 = ms_1$ and so s_1 is a divisor of r_1 .

Our next claim is that s_1 is a divisor of s_i , for $i=2, 3, \dots, k$. Let us show that $s_1 | s_2$. Since s_1, s_2 are elements of R , therefore there exist $m_2, t_2 \in R$ such that $s_2 = m_2 s_1 + t_2$ where either $t_2 = 0$ or $d(t_2) < d(s_1)$. Now $a_1' = a_1 + m_2 a_2, a_2 a_3, \dots, a_k$ also generate M .

We have

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 a_1' + t_2 a_2 + s_3 a_3 + \dots + s_k a_k \\ &= s_1 (a_1 + m_2 a_2) + t_2 a_2 + s_3 a_3 + \dots + s_k a_k \\ &= s_1 a_1 + (s_1 m_2 + t_2) a_2 + s_3 a_3 + \dots + s_k a_k \\ &= s_1 a_1 + s_2 a_2 + \dots + s_k a_k = 0. \end{aligned} \quad \dots(4)$$

If $t_3 \neq 0$, then $d(t_2) < d(s_1)$. Therefore the relation (4) i.e., $s_1 a_1' + t_2 a_2 + \dots + s_k a_k = 0$ contradicts our choice of s_1 . So we must have $t_3 = 0$ and this makes $s_2 = m_2 s_1$ and thus $s_1 \mid s_2$. Similarly we can show that $s_1 \mid s_i$, $i = 3, 4, \dots, k$. Let us write $s_2 = m_2 s_1$, $s_3 = m_3 s_1$, $\dots, s_k = m_k s_1$.

Consider the set $a_1^*, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_k$ where $a_1^* = a_1 + m_2 a_2 + \dots + m_k a_k$. Obviously a_1^*, a_2, \dots, a_k generate M . Let M_1 be the cyclic submodule of M generated by a_1^* and M_2 be the submodule of M generated by a_2, \dots, a_k . We claim that $M = M_1 \oplus M_2$. For this we are to show that $M = M_1 + M_2$ and $M_1 \cap M_2 = (0)$. Since M is generated by a_1^*, a_2, \dots, a_k , therefore $M = M_1 + M_2$. Now let $\beta \in M_1 \cap M_2$. Then $\beta \in M_1$, $\beta \in M_2$. Since $\beta \in M_1$, therefore $\beta = r_1 a_1^*$ for some $r_1 \in R$. Also $\beta \in M_2 \Rightarrow \beta = r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_k a_k$ for some $r_2, \dots, r_k \in R$. From these we get

$$\begin{aligned} r_1 a_1^* &= r_2 a_2 + \dots + r_k a_k \\ \Rightarrow r_1 a_1^* - r_2 a_2 - \dots - r_k a_k &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow r_1 (a_1 + m_2 a_2 + \dots + m_k a_k) - r_2 a_2 - \dots - r_k a_k &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow r_1 a_1 + (r_1 m_2 - r_2) a_2 + \dots + (r_1 m_k - r_k) a_k &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad \dots (5)$$

In the relation (5) between a_1, \dots, a_k the coefficient of a_1 is r_1 . Therefore by what we have proved above s_1 is a divisor of r_1 . Let $r_1 = p s_1$ where $p \in R$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \beta &= r_1 a_1^* = (p s_1) a_1^* = p (s_1 a_1^*) \\ &= p [s_1 (a_1 + m_2 a_2 + \dots + m_k a_k)] \\ &= p [s_1 a_1 + s_1 m_2 a_2 + \dots + s_1 m_k a_k] \\ &= p (s_1 a_1 + s_2 a_2 + \dots + s_k a_k) = p 0 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\beta \in M_1 \cap M_2 \Rightarrow \beta = 0$. Therefore $M_1 \cap M_2 = (0)$.

Hence $M = M_1 \oplus M_2$. Now M_2 is generated by a_2, \dots, a_k . Therefore rank of M_2 is at most $k-1$. So by our induction hypothesis M_2 is the direct sum of cyclic modules. Hence M is the direct sum of cyclic modules. The proof of the theorem is now complete by induction.

Corollary. Any finite abelian group is the direct product (sum) of cyclic groups.

Proof. Let G be a finite abelian group. Then G is an R -module if R is the ring of integers [See example 1 page 469]. Obviously G is finitely generated, in fact G is generated by the finite set consisting of all its elements. Also the ring of integers is a Euclidean ring. Therefore by the above theorem G is the direct sum of cyclic submodules. But a cyclic module over the ring of integers is nothing more than a cyclic group. Hence G is the direct sum of cyclic groups.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let M be an R -module. Show that if I is a right ideal of R , then the totality of elements $y \in M$ such that $by=0$, for all $b \in I$ is a submodule of M .

Solution. Let $A = \{y : y \in M \text{ and } by=0 \text{ for all } b \in I\}$. To show that A is a submodule of M . Let $y_1, y_2 \in A$. Then $by_1=0$, $by_2=0$ for all $b \in I$. For all $b \in I$, we have $b(y_1 - y_2) = by_1 - by_2 = 0 - 0 = 0$. Therefore $y_1 - y_2 \in A$. Thus A is an additive subgroup of M .

Now let $r \in R$ and $y \in A$. Then $by=0$ for all $b \in I$.

If b is any element of I , then $br \in I$ because I is a right ideal of R . Now $b(ry) = (br)y = 0$ because $br \in I$ and $by=0$ for all $b \in I$. Thus $b(ry)=0$ for all $b \in I$. Therefore $ry \in A$. Hence A is a submodule of M .

Ex. 2. Prove that any unital, irreducible R -module is cyclic.

Solution. Let M be a unital irreducible R -module. Then the only submodules of M are (0) and M itself. To prove that M is cyclic. If $M=(0)$, then obviously M is cyclic. So let us take $M \neq (0)$. Let $m_0 \in M$ and let $m_0 \neq 0$. Let $A = \{rm_0 : r \in R\}$. Then obviously A is a submodule of M . If 1 is the unity element of the ring R , then M is unital implies that $1m_0 = m_0$. From our definition of A we see that $1m_0 = m_0 \in A$. Since $m_0 \neq 0$, therefore A is a submodule of M such that $A \neq (0)$. But M is irreducible. Therefore we must have $A=M$. Thus $M = \{rm_0 : r \in R\}$. Therefore if m is an arbitrary element of M , then $m = rm_0$ for some $r \in R$. Thus M is cyclic.

Ex. 3. Let M be an R -module ; if $m \in M$ let $\lambda(m) = \{x \in R : xm=0\}$. Show that $\lambda(m)$ is a left ideal of R .

Solution. Let $x_1, x_2 \in \lambda(m)$. Then $x_1m=0$ and $x_2m=0$. We have $(x_1 - x_2)m = x_1m - x_2m = 0 - 0 = 0$. Therefore $x_1 - x_2 \in \lambda(m)$. Thus $\lambda(m)$ is an additive subgroup of R .

Now let $r \in R$ and $x \in \lambda(m)$. Then $xm=0$. We have $(rx)m = r(xm) = r0 = 0$. Therefore $rx \in \lambda(m)$. Hence $\lambda(m)$ is a left ideal of R .

Ex. 4. If λ is a left ideal of R and M is an R -module show that for $m \in M$, $\lambda m = \{xm : x \in \lambda\}$ is a submodule of M .

Solution. Let x_1m and x_2m be any two elements of λm . Then $x_1, x_2 \in \lambda$. We have $x_1m - x_2m = (x_1 - x_2)m \in \lambda(m)$ because $x_1, x_2 \in \lambda$ and λ is a left ideal implies that $x_1 - x_2 \in \lambda$. Thus λm is an additive subgroup of M .

Now let $r \in R$ and $xm \in \lambda m$. Then $x \in \lambda$. We have $r(xm) = (rx)m \in \lambda m$ because $r \in R$, $x \in \lambda$ and λ is a left-ideal implies that $rx \in \lambda$. Hence λm is a submodule of M .

Exercises

1. Suppose that R is a ring with unity and that M is a module over R but is not unital. Prove that there exists an $m \neq 0$ in M such that $rm=0$ for all $r \in R$.
 2. If M is an irreducible R -module prove that either M is cyclic or that for every $m \in M$ and $r \in R$, $rm=0$.
 3. If A and B are submodules of M prove that $(A+B)/B$ is isomorphic to $A/(A \cap B)$.
 4. Let M, N, Q be three R -modules, and let T be a homomorphism of M into N and S a homomorphism of N into Q . Define $ST: M \rightarrow Q$ by $(ST)(m) = S[T(m)]$ for any $m \in M$. Prove that ST is an R -homomorphism of M into Q and determine its kernel, $K(ST)$.
 5. Let M be an R -module and let $E(M)$ be the set of all R -homomorphisms of M into M . Make appropriate definitions of addition and multiplication of elements of $E(M)$ so that $E(M)$ becomes a ring.
-

Extension Fields and Galois Theory

A field is a commutative ring with unit element in which every non-zero element possesses a multiplicative inverse. If F is a field and $0 \neq a, b \in F$, then $a^{-1}b$ is sometimes also written as b/a . There is no ambiguity in writing $a^{-1}b$ in this form because in a field $a^{-1}b = ba^{-1}$. We say that b/a is an element of F obtained on dividing b by a . Thus a field is a commutative ring in which we can divide by any non-zero element. This chapter will be devoted to a study of the theory of finite field extensions and also we shall have some discussion on Galois theory.

§ 1. Field extensions. Definition. Suppose F is a field. Then a field K is said to be an extension of F if F is a subfield of K .

(Meerut 1981, 84, 87, 88, 89)

In the chapter on vector spaces we have shown that if F is a subfield of a field K , then K can be regarded as a vector space over F under the ordinary field operations in K . The dimension of the vector space $K(F)$ will play an important role in this chapter. Throughout this chapter K will denote an extension of F .

Degree of a field extension. Definition.

(Meerut 1981, 84P, 86, 88, 89, 90; Vikram 77)

Let K be an extension of the field F . The dimension of K as a vector space over F i.e., the dimension of the vector space $K(F)$ is called the degree of K over F . We shall always denote the degree of K over F by $[K : F]$.

Finite field extension. Definition. (B.H.U. 1987; Kanpur 71)

Let K be an extension of the field F . Then K is said to be a finite extension of F if the degree of K over F is finite. Thus K is a finite extension of F if the vector space $K(F)$ is finite dimensional.

In this chapter we shall devote particular attention to finite field extensions because of their importance in the study of the theory of equations. Before proceeding further we want to give some illustrations of field extensions.

Illustrations.

1. If F is any field then F can be regarded as a subfield of F . Therefore F can be thought of as an extension of F . The dimension of the vector space $F(F)$ is one. In fact the unit element 1 of F is a basis of this vector space. Thus the degree of F over F is one i.e., $[F : F] = 1$.

2. The field C of complex numbers is a finite extension of the field R of real numbers. Also we have $[C : R] = 2$. The set $\{1, i\}$ where $i = \sqrt{-1}$ is a basis of the vector space $C(R)$. If $a, b \in R$, then $ai + bi = 0 \Rightarrow a = 0, b = 0$.

Therefore the set $\{1, i\}$ is linearly independent over R .

Also if $a + ib \in C$, then $a + ib$ is a linear combination of 1, i over R . Thus the set $\{1, i\}$ generates $C(R)$. Therefore the set $\{1, i\}$ is a basis for the vector space $C(R)$. (Meerut 1980)

3. Let Q be the field of rational numbers. The field $Q(\sqrt{2}) = \{a + b\sqrt{2} : a, b \in Q\}$ is a finite extension of Q . We have $[Q(\sqrt{2}) : Q] = 2$. In fact the set $\{1, \sqrt{2}\}$ is a basis of $Q(\sqrt{2})$ regarded as a vector space over the field Q .

4. The field

$Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}) = \{a + b\sqrt{2} + c\sqrt{3} + d\sqrt{2}\sqrt{3} : a, b, c, d \in Q\}$ is a finite extension of Q . We have $[Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}) : Q] = 4$. As can be easily seen the set $\{1, \sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}, \sqrt{2}\sqrt{3}\}$ is a basis of $Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3})$ thought of as a vector space over the field Q .

(Meerut 1981, 82, 88, 89)

§ 2. Transitivity of finite extensions.

Theorem 1. If L is a finite extension of K and if K is a finite extension of F , then L is a finite extension of F . Moreover,

$$[L : F] = [L : K][K : F].$$

(Agra 1986; Jabalpur 86; Meerut 80, 82, 83P, 84P, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90; Kanpur 86, 88; B.H.U. 88; Madurai 88; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 86; Vikram 76)

Proof. Let K be a subfield of L and F be a subfield of K i.e., $L \supset K \supset F$. Let $[L : K] = m$ and $[K : F] = n$.

Suppose $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ is a basis of L over K and $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n$ is a basis of K over F . Then $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m \in L$ and $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n \in K$. Since $K \subseteq L$, therefore $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n \in L$. Consequently the mn elements $\alpha_i \beta_j$, where $i = 1, \dots, m, j = 1, \dots, n$ are all in L . We shall prove that the set of these mn elements forms a basis of L over F . Then we shall have $[L : F] = mn$ i.e., L will also be a finite extension of F and also we shall have $[L : F] = [L : K][K : F]$.

Thus the theorem shall be proved.

First, we shall show that the set $\{\alpha_i \beta_j\}$ generates L over F . Let

γ be any element in L . Since $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ is a basis of $L(K)$, therefore γ can be expressed as a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ over the elements in K . So we have

$$\gamma = \sum_{i=1}^m k_i \alpha_i, \quad k_i \in K. \quad \dots(1)$$

Now $k_i \in K$ and $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\}$ is a basis of $K(F)$. Therefore we have

$$k_i = \sum_{j=1}^n f_{ij} \beta_j, \quad f_{ij} \in F. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\gamma = \sum_{i=1}^m \left(\sum_{j=1}^n f_{ij} \beta_j \right) \alpha_i = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n f_{ij} (\alpha_i \beta_j), \quad f_{ij} \in F.$$

Thus γ is a linear combination of the elements $\alpha_i \beta_j$ over F . Therefore the set of mn elements $\alpha_i \beta_j$ generates the vector space $L(F)$. Now we shall show that the set $\{\alpha_i \beta_j\}$ is linearly independent over F . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n f_{ij} (\alpha_i \beta_j) &= 0, \quad f_{ij} \in F \Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^m \left(\sum_{j=1}^n f_{ij} \beta_j \right) \alpha_i = 0 \\ \Rightarrow \sum_{j=1}^n f_{ij} \beta_j &= 0 \text{ for } i=1, \dots, m, \text{ since } \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m\} \text{ is a basis of} \\ &L(K) \text{ and each } f_{ij} \beta_j \in K \\ \Rightarrow f_{ij} &= 0 \text{ for } i=1, \dots, m, j=1, \dots, n \text{ since } \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\} \text{ is a basis} \\ &\text{of } K(F) \text{ and each } f_{ij} \in F \\ \Rightarrow \text{the set } \{\alpha_i \beta_j\} &\text{ is linearly independent over } F. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the set $\{\alpha_i \beta_j\}$ is a basis of L over F . This proves the theorem.

Theorem 2. If L is a finite extension of F and if K is a subfield of L which contains F , then $[K:F] \mid [L:F]$ i.e., $[K:F]$ is a divisor of $[L:F]$.

Proof. Let L, K, F be three fields in the relation $L \supset K \supset F$. Suppose further that $[L:F]$ is finite and is equal to n . Let $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ be a basis of L over F . Then $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ generates L over F . Since $K \supset F$, therefore any linear combination of $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ over F will also be a linear combination of $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ over K . Therefore the set $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ also generates L over K though it may not be linearly independent over K . Since $L(K)$ is

generated by a finite set, therefore it is a finite dimensional vector space and so $[L : K]$ is finite. Further $K(F)$ is a subspace of $L(F)$. Since $[L : K]$ is finite therefore $[K : F]$ is finite. Recall that each subspace of a finite dimensional vector space is also finite dimensional. Now by theorem (1), we have

$$[L : F] = [L : K][K : F] \Rightarrow [K : F] \text{ is a divisor of } [L : F].$$

Note. From theorem (2) we conclude that if $[L : F]$ is a prime number, then there can be no field K properly contained between L and F . In other words if $[L : F]$ is prime and K is any subfield of L containing F , then either we have $K=L$ or we have $K=F$.

§ 3. Field adjunctions. Suppose K is an extension of a field F . Let $a \in K$. Suppose C is the collection of all subfields of K containing both F and a . C is not empty because at least K itself is in C . Now the intersection of an arbitrary collection of subfields of K is also a subfield of K . Let $F(a)$ denote the intersection of all those subfields of K which are members of C . Then $F(a)$ is a subfield of K . Obviously $F(a)$ contains both F and a because each member of C contains both F and a . Thus $F(a)$ is a member of C . Further if E is any subfield of K containing both F and a , then $F(a)$ will be contained in E . The reason is that $F(a)$ is the intersection of the members of C and E is a member of C . Thus $F(a)$ is a subfield of K containing both F and a and itself is contained in any subfield of K containing both F and a . Therefore $F(a)$ is the smallest subfield of K containing both F and a . We call $F(a)$ the subfield obtained by adjoining a to F . Here a has been adjoined to F and the process is called *field adjunction*.

Constructive description of $F(a)$. Suppose K is an extension of a field F . Let $a \in K$. Let $U = \left\{ \frac{k_0 a^n + k_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + k_n}{l_0 a^m + l_1 a^{m-1} + \dots + l_m} : \text{the } k_i \text{ and } l_j \text{ are elements in } F, l_0 a^m + l_1 a^{m-1} + \dots + l_m \text{ is not equal to the zero element of } K \text{ and } n, m \text{ are any non-negative integers} \right\}$.

Obviously U is a subfield of K . It can be easily seen that

$$(i) \quad \alpha, \beta \in U \Rightarrow \alpha - \beta \in U$$

$$(ii) \quad \alpha \in U, 0 \neq \beta \in U \Rightarrow \alpha/\beta \in U.$$

Thus U is a subfield of K . We claim that $U = F(a)$.

Obviously U contains both F and a . Therefore U is a subfield of K containing both F and a . This implies that $U \supseteq F(a)$.

Further any subfield of K which contains both F and a , by virtue of closure under addition and multiplication, must contain all the elements $k_0 a^n + k_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + k_n$ where each $k_i \in F$. Since $F(a)$ is a subfield of K containing both F and a , therefore $F(a)$ must contain all such elements. Being a subfield of K , $F(a)$ must also contain all quotients of such elements. Therefore $F(a)$ must contain U i.e., $F(a) \supseteq U$.

Now $U \supseteq F(a)$ and $F(a) \supseteq U \Rightarrow U = F(a)$.

Simple field extension. Definition. The extension K of a field F is called a simple extension of F if $K = F(a)$ for some a in K .

(Meerut 1981, 82, 83, 87; B.H.U. 87)

Let K be an extension of a field F . Let $a, b \in K$. Let $T = F(a)$. Since $F(a)$ is a subfield of K , therefore K is also an extension of $F(a)$. Let W be the subfield of K obtained by adjoining b to $F(a)$. Then $W = (F(a))(b)$. We shall write $(F(a))(b)$ as $F(a, b)$. Similarly we can describe $F(b, a)$. We have $F(a, b) = (F(a))(b)$

- = the smallest subfield of K containing both $F(a)$ and b
- = the smallest subfield of K containing F , a and b because any subfield of K which contains both F and a must contain $F(a)$.

Similarly $F(b, a) =$ the smallest subfield of K containing F , a and b .

Since the subfield of K generated by F , a and b is unique, therefore $F(a, b) = F(b, a)$.

Thus $F(a, b)$ is the subfield of K obtained by adjoining both a and b to F .

Similarly if $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in K$, then $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ will be described as the subfield of K generated by F, a_1, \dots, a_n . In other words $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ will be the smallest subfield of K containing F as well as a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n .

§ 4. Algebraic field extensions.

Let $q(x) \in F[x]$, the ring of polynomials in x over F . Let $q(x) = \alpha_0 x^m + \alpha_1 x^{m-1} + \dots + \alpha_m$.

Suppose $b \in K$ where K is any extension of F . Then by $q(b)$ we shall mean the element $\alpha_0 b^m + \alpha_1 b^{m-1} + \dots + \alpha_m$ in K . Sometimes $q(b)$ is also called the value of $q(x)$ obtained by substituting b for x . The element b is said to satisfy $q(x)$ if $q(b) = 0$. Also then we say that b is a root of $q(x)$.

Algebraic element. Definition. Let K be an extension of a field F . An element $a \in K$ is said to be algebraic over F if there is

a non-zero polynomial $p(x) \in F[x]$ for which $p(a) = 0$. (Kanpur 1980)

In other words $a \in K$ is said to be algebraic over F if there exist elements $\beta_0, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$ in F , not all 0, such that

$$\beta_0 a^n + \beta_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \beta_n = 0.$$

Transcendental element. Definition. Let K be an extension of a field F . An element $a \in K$ is said to be transcendental over F if it is not algebraic over F . (Meerut 1987)

Definition. A complex number is said to be an algebraic number if it is algebraic over the field of rational numbers.

A complex number which is not algebraic is called transcendental. The number e is transcendental.

Minimal polynomial of an algebraic element. Definition. Let K be an extension of a field F . Let $a \in K$ be algebraic over F . Suppose $p(x)$ is a polynomial over F of lowest positive degree satisfied by a . Then $p(x)$ is called a minimal polynomial for a over F . (Meerut 1987)

Let us impose the restriction on minimal polynomial for a over F that it should be monic i.e., that in it the coefficient of highest power of x should be 1. Then we can speak of as the minimal polynomial for a over F because it will be unique.

Theorem 3. Let $a \in K$ be algebraic over F . Then any two minimal monic polynomials for a over F are equal. (Kanpur 88)

Proof. Let $x^n + \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n$ and $x^n + \beta_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + \beta_n$ be two minimal monic polynomials for a over F . Then

$$a^n + \alpha_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n = 0 = a^n + \beta_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \beta_n$$

$$\Rightarrow a^n + \alpha_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n = a^n + \beta_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \beta_n$$

$$\Rightarrow (\alpha_1 - \beta_1) a^{n-1} + (\alpha_2 - \beta_2) a^{n-2} + \dots + (\alpha_n - \beta_n) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a \text{ satisfies the polynomial } q(x) = (\alpha_1 - \beta_1) x^{n-1} + \dots + (\alpha_n - \beta_n) \text{ belonging to } F[x]$$

$\Rightarrow q(x)$ must be the zero polynomial because minimal polynomial for a over F is of degree n while $q(x)$, if it is not the zero polynomial, is of degree less than n

$$\Rightarrow \alpha_1 - \beta_1 = 0, \dots, \alpha_n - \beta_n = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 = \beta_1, \dots, \alpha_n = \beta_n$$

$$\Rightarrow x^n + \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n = x^n + \beta_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + \beta_n.$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Irreducibility of minimal polynomial.

Theorem 4. Let $a \in K$ be algebraic over F and let $p(x)$ be a minimal polynomial for a over F . Then $p(x)$ is irreducible over F . (Meerut 1986, 90)

Proof. Suppose $p(x)$ is a polynomial in $F[x]$ of smallest

positive degree such that $p(a)=0$. Suppose $p(x)$ is not irreducible over F . Then $p(x)$ can be resolved into non-trivial factors. Let $p(x)=f(x)g(x)$ where $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are polynomials of positive degree in $F[x]$ and each of them is of degree less than that of $p(x)$. We have

$$p(a)=f(a)g(a) \Rightarrow 0=f(a)g(a) \quad [\because a \text{ satisfies } p(x)]$$

$$\Rightarrow f(a)=0 \text{ or } g(a)=0$$

$$\Rightarrow a \text{ satisfies } f(x) \text{ or } g(x)$$

$\Rightarrow p(x)$ is not a minimal polynomial for a over F because $\deg f(x) < \deg p(x)$ and $\deg g(x) < \deg p(x)$.

Since $p(x)$ is a minimal polynomial for a over F , therefore our assumption that $p(x)$ is not irreducible over F is wrong. Hence $p(x)$ must be irreducible over F .

Degree of an algebraic element. Definition. Let K be an extension of the field F . The element $a \in K$ is said to be algebraic of degree n over F if it satisfies a non-zero polynomial over F of degree n but no non-zero polynomial of lower degree. (Meerut 1987)

Thus $a \in K$ is algebraic of degree n over F if the minimal polynomial for a over F is of degree n .

Algebraic extension Definition. The extension K of F is called an algebraic extension of F if every element in K is algebraic over F . (B.H.U. 1987)

If there exists $a \in K$ such that a is not algebraic over F , then K is called a transcendental extension of F .

The field \mathbb{C} of complex numbers is an algebraic extension of \mathbb{R} , the field of real numbers.

The field \mathbb{R} of real numbers is not an algebraic extension of the field \mathbb{Q} of rational numbers. In fact π is an element of \mathbb{R} which is not algebraic over \mathbb{Q} . It was proved by Hermite in 1871 that there exists no non-zero polynomial with rational coefficients satisfied by π .

If F is any field, then F is an algebraic extension of F . If $a \in F$, then a satisfies non-zero polynomial $1x - a$ in $F[x]$.

Theorem 5. Let K be an extension of a field F and let $a \in K$ be algebraic of degree n over F . Then

$$F(a) = \{\beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \beta_2 a^2 + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1} : \beta_0, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1} \in F\}.$$

Also the expression for each element of $F(a)$ in the form $\beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1}$ is unique.

Proof. If $n=1$, then $a \in F$. Therefore in this case $F(a)=F$ and the result of the theorem is obviously true.

So let us take $n > 1$. Since $a \in K$ is algebraic of degree n over F , therefore the minimal polynomial for a over F is of degree n . Let $p(x) = x^n + \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n$ be the minimal polynomial for a over F . Then

$$\begin{aligned} a^n + \alpha_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow a^n &= -(\alpha_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n) \quad \dots (1) \\ \Rightarrow a^{n+1} &= -(\alpha_1 a^n + \alpha_2 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n a) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\quad \text{[on multiplying both sides by } a] \\ \Rightarrow a^{n+1} &= -[-\alpha_1 (\alpha_1 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n) + \alpha_2 a^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n a] \\ &\quad \text{[putting the value of } a^n \text{ from (1)]} \\ \Rightarrow a^{n+1} &\text{ is a linear combination of the elements } 1, a, \dots, a^{n-1} \\ &\quad \text{over } F. \end{aligned}$$

Continuing the above process we can show that a^{n+k} , for $k \geq 0$, is a linear combination over F of $1, a, \dots, a^{n-1}$.

Now let $T = \{\beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1} : \beta_0, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1} \in F\}$.

We shall show that $T = F(a)$. For this we shall first prove that T is a subfield of K .

Let $u = \beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1}$, $v = \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 a + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} a^{n-1}$ be any two elements in T . Then

$$u - v = (\beta_0 - \gamma_0) + (\beta_1 - \gamma_1) a + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} - \gamma_{n-1}) a^{n-1} \in T.$$

Now let $0 \neq u = \beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1}$ be in T .

Let $q(x) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x + \dots + \beta_{n-1} x^{n-1} \in F[x]$. Then $q(a) = u \neq 0$.

We claim that $q(x)$ is not a divisor of $p(x)$. Because if $q(x)$ is a divisor of $p(x)$, then we must have $p(x) = (a_0 x + a_1) q(x)$ where $a_0 x + a_1$ is a non-zero polynomial in $F[x]$.

Putting $x = a$ in this relation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} p(a) &= (a_0 a + a_1) q(a) \\ \Rightarrow 0 &= (a_0 a + a_1) q(a) & [\because p(a) = 0] \\ \Rightarrow a a_0 + a_1 &= 0 & [\because q(a) \neq 0] \\ \Rightarrow a &\text{ satisfies a polynomial } a_0 x + a_1 \text{ of degree 1 over } F \text{ because} \\ &\quad \text{deg } p(x) = n \text{ which is } > 1. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $q(x)$ is not a divisor of $p(x)$. Since $p(x)$ is irreducible over F , therefore $q(x)$ and $p(x)$ must be relatively prime. Consequently we can find polynomials $s(x)$ and $t(x)$ in $F[x]$ such that $p(x)s(x) + q(x)t(x) = 1$. Putting $x = a$ in this relation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} p(a)s(a) + q(a)t(a) &= 1 \\ \Rightarrow q(a)t(a) &= 1 & [\because p(a) = 0] \\ \Rightarrow ut(a) &= 1 & [\because q(a) = u] \\ \Rightarrow t(a) &\text{ is the inverse of } u. \end{aligned}$$

Now in $t(a)$ all powers of a higher than $n-1$ can be replaced by linear combinations of $1, a, \dots, a^{n-1}$ over F .

Therefore $t(a) \in T$. Thus $t(a) = u^{-1} \in T$.

Now in the product $u^{-1}v$ all powers of a higher than $n-1$ can be replaced by linear combinations of $1, a, \dots, a^{n-1}$ over F .

Therefore $0 \neq u, v \in T \Rightarrow u^{-1}v \in T$. Thus T is a subfield of K .

Now from the definition of T it is obvious that both F and a are in T . Also by virtue of closure under addition and multiplication any subfield of K which contains both F and a must contain T . Thus T is the smallest subfield of K containing both F and a . Hence

$$T = F(a).$$

Now let $u \in T$. Further let $u = \beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1}$ and also $u = \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 a + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} a^{n-1}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1} &= \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 a + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} a^{n-1} \\ \Rightarrow (\beta_0 - \gamma_0) + (\beta_1 - \gamma_1) a + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} - \gamma_{n-1}) a^{n-1} &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow a \text{ satisfies the polynomial} \end{aligned}$$

$$h(x) = (\beta_0 - \gamma_0) + (\beta_1 - \gamma_1)x + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} - \gamma_{n-1})x^{n-1}$$

belonging to $F[x]$

$\Rightarrow h(x)$ must be the zero polynomial because otherwise a will not be of degree n over F

[Note that if $h(x) \neq 0$, then $\deg h(x) < n$]

$$\Rightarrow \beta_0 - \gamma_0 = 0, \beta_1 - \gamma_1 = 0, \dots, \beta_{n-1} - \gamma_{n-1} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \beta_0 = \gamma_0, \beta_1 = \gamma_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1} = \gamma_{n-1}$$

\Rightarrow the expression for u in the form $\beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1}$ is unique.

Theorem 6. Let K be an extension of a field F and let $a \in K$ be algebraic over F . Suppose a satisfies an irreducible polynomial $p(x)$ in $F[x]$. Then $p(x)$ must be a minimal polynomial for a over F .

Proof. Let $M = \{f(x) \in F[x] : f(a) = 0\}$. We claim that M is an ideal of $F[x]$. The proof is as follows:

Let $f(x), g(x) \in M$. Then $f(a) = 0, g(a) = 0$.

Let $s(x) = f(x) - g(x)$. Then $s(a) = f(a) - g(a) = 0 - 0 = 0$.

$$\therefore s(x) \in M.$$

Also let $f(x) \in M$ and $h(x) \in F[x]$. Then $f(a) = 0$.

Let $t(x) = f(x) \cdot h(x)$. Then $t(a) = f(a) \cdot h(a) = 0 \cdot h(a) = 0$.

$$\therefore t(x) \in M.$$

Hence M is an ideal of $F[x]$. Obviously $M \neq F[x]$. Because if $f(x) = 1 \in F[x]$, then $f(a) = 1 \neq 0$.

Thus $f(x)=1$ is not in M . Therefore $M \neq F[x]$.

Now $p(x)$ is an irreducible polynomial in $F[x]$. Therefore the ideal $N = (p(x))$ of $F[x]$ generated by $p(x)$ is a maximal ideal because $F[x]$ is a Euclidean ring. We have $p(x) \in M$ because it is given that $p(a)=0$. Now if $n(x)=m(x)p(x)$ is any element of $(p(x))$, then $n(a)=m(a)p(a)=0$. This implies that $n(x)$ is in M .

Thus $N \subseteq M$. Therefore M is an ideal of $F[x]$ contained between N and $F[x]$ i.e., $N \subseteq M \subseteq F[x]$.

Since N is a maximal ideal and $M \neq F[x]$, therefore we must have $N=M \Rightarrow M=(p(x))$.

Now suppose that $p(x)$ is not a minimal polynomial for a over F . Let $q(x)$ be a polynomial in $F[x]$ of degree lower than that of $p(x)$ and satisfied by a .

Since $q(a)=0$, therefore $q(x) \in M$.

$\therefore q(x)=p(x)r(x)$ for some $r(x) \in F[x]$.

But this result is absurd because $\deg q(x) < \deg p(x)$.

Hence $p(x)$ must be a minimal polynomial for a over F .

Theorem 7. Let K be an extension of a field F . Then the element $a \in K$ is algebraic over F if and only if $F(a)$ is a finite extension of F .

(I.A.S. 1971; Kanpur 80; Meerut 81, 82, 83, 84, 90;
Guru Nanak 88; Banaras 72; Calicut 75)

Proof. Suppose $F(a)$ is a finite extension of F . Then to prove that a is algebraic over F . Let $[F(a) : F] = m$. Since $F(a)$ is a field and $a \in F(a)$, therefore the $m+1$ elements

$$1, a, a^2, \dots, a^{m-1}, a^m$$

are all in $F(a)$. Since the dimension of the vector space $F(a)$ over F is m , therefore these $m+1$ elements of $F(a)$ are linearly dependent over F . So there exist elements $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m \in F$, not all 0, such that

$$\alpha_0 1 + \alpha_1 a + \alpha_2 a^2 + \dots + \alpha_m a^m = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a \text{ satisfies a non-zero polynomial } f(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 x + \alpha_2 x^2 + \dots + \alpha_m x^m \in F[x]$$

$\Rightarrow a$ is algebraic over F .

This proves the 'if' part of the theorem.

Now we shall prove the 'only if' part of the theorem. It is given that $a \in K$ is algebraic over F and we are to prove that $F(a)$ is a finite extension of F . Let $p(x)$ be a polynomial over F of lowest positive degree satisfied by a . Let $\deg p(x) = n$. Then a is algebraic of degree n over F . Therefore

$$F(a) = \{\beta_0 + \beta_1 a + \beta_2 a^2 + \dots + \beta_{n-1} a^{n-1} : \beta_0, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1} \in F\}.$$

From this we see that $F(a)$ is a vector space over F spanned by the elements $1, a, a^2, \dots, a^{n-1}$. These elements of $F(a)$ are also linearly independent over F . Because

$$\gamma_0 1 + \gamma_1 a + \gamma_2 a^2 + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} a^{n-1} = 0, \text{ with } \gamma_i \in F$$

$$\Rightarrow a \text{ satisfies a polynomial } q(x) = \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 x + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} x^{n-1}$$

belonging to $F[x]$

$\Rightarrow q(x)$ must be the zero polynomial otherwise $p(x)$ will not be a polynomial of lowest positive degree satisfied by a

[Note that $\deg p(x) = n$ while $\deg q(x) < n$ if $q(x) \neq 0$]

$$\Rightarrow \gamma_0 = 0, \gamma_1 = 0, \gamma_2 = 0, \dots, \gamma_{n-1} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 1, a, a^2, \dots, a^{n-1} \in F(a) \text{ are linearly independent over } F.$$

Thus the n elements $1, a, a^2, \dots, a^{n-1}$ constitute a basis for $F(a)$ over F . Hence $[F(a) : F] = n$. Therefore $F(a)$ is a finite extension of F .

Remark. If $[F(a) : F] = m$, a is algebraic over F . Let the degree of a over F be n . Then we have $[F(a) : F] = n$. Therefore $m = n$. Hence if $[F(a) : F] = m$, then a is algebraic of degree m over F .

Theorem 8. Let K be an extension of a field F and let $a \in K$ be algebraic of degree n over F . Then $[F(a) : F] = n$. (B.H.U. 1988)

Proof. This theorem is nothing but the 'only if' part of the previous theorem.

Theorem 9. Every finite extension K of a field F is algebraic.

(Banaras 1970; Gujrat 76; Meerut 86, 87, 88, 89;

I.C.S. 90; Kanpur 87; Guru Nanak 89)

Proof. Suppose K is a finite extension of F . Then K will be an algebraic extension of F if every element a in K is algebraic over F . Let $[K : F] = m$. Since K is a field and $a \in K$, therefore the $m+1$ elements $1, a, a^2, \dots, a^{m-1}, a^m$ are all in K . Since the dimension of the vector space $K(F)$ is m , therefore these $m+1$ elements of K are linearly dependent over F . So there exist elements $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m \in F$, not all zero, such that

$$\alpha_0 1 + \alpha_1 a + \alpha_2 a^2 + \dots + \alpha_m a^m = 0$$

$\Rightarrow a$ satisfies a non-zero polynomial

$$p(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 x + \alpha_2 x^2 + \dots + \alpha_m x^m \in F[x] \text{ of degree at most } m$$

$\Rightarrow a$ is algebraic over F .

Hence K is an algebraic extension of F .

Remark. If $[K : F] = m$, then each element a in K is algebraic over F and the degree of a over F will be $\leq m$.

Theorem 10. Let K be an extension of a field F and let a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n be n elements in K algebraic over F .

Then $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ is a finite extension of F and consequently an algebraic extension of F . (Meerut 1976)

Proof. We have

$$F \subseteq F(a_1) \subseteq F(a_1, a_2) \subseteq \dots \subseteq F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \subseteq K.$$

Since a_k is algebraic over F , therefore it is also algebraic over $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1})$ which is a superfield of F . Note that any non-zero polynomial over F is also a non-zero polynomial over

$$F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1}).$$

Now a_k is algebraic over $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1})$

$\Rightarrow (F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1}))(a_k)$ is a finite extension of

$$F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1})$$

$\Rightarrow F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1}, a_k)$ is a finite extension of

$$F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1})$$

$\Rightarrow [F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k) : F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{k-1})]$ is finite, say λ_k .

Now $[F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : F]$

$$=[F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-1})]$$

$$[F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-1}) : F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-2})] \dots [F(a_1) : F]$$

$$=\lambda_n \lambda_{n-1} \dots \lambda_2 \lambda_1 = \text{finite since each } \lambda \text{ is finite.}$$

Hence $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ is a finite extension of F . Consequently $F(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ is an algebraic extension of F .

Theorem 11. Let K be an extension of a field F . Then the elements in K which are algebraic over F form a subfield of K . In other words if a, b in K are algebraic over F , then $a \pm b$, ab , and a/b (if $b \neq 0$) are all algebraic over F .

(Banaras 1988; Meerut 73, 76; Madurai 88)

Proof. Suppose $a, b \in K$ are algebraic over F . Since b is algebraic over F , therefore it is also algebraic over $F(a)$ which is a superfield of F . Note that any non-zero polynomial over F is also a non-zero polynomial over $F(a)$.

Now b is algebraic over $F(a) \Rightarrow (F(a))(b)$ i.e., $F(a, b)$ is a finite extension of $F(a)$. Therefore $[F(a, b) : F(a)] = \text{finite}$.

Also $[F(a) : F]$ is finite because a is algebraic over F .

Now $[F(a, b) : F] = [F(a, b) : F(a)] [F(a) : F] = \text{finite}$.

$\therefore F(a, b)$ is a finite extension of F . Consequently $F(a, b)$ is an algebraic extension of F . Now $F(a, b)$ is a field and $a, b \in F(a, b)$. Therefore $a \pm b$, ab and a/b (if $b \neq 0$) are all in $F(a, b)$. So $a \pm b$, ab , and a/b are all algebraic over F .

Hence the elements algebraic over F form a subfield of K .

Theorem 12. If a and b in K are algebraic over F of degrees m and n respectively, then $a \pm b$, ab and a/b (if $b \neq 0$) are algebraic over F of degrees at most mn . (Banaras 1969)

Proof. Since a is algebraic of degree m over F , therefore $F(a)$ is of degree m over F i.e., $[F(a) : F] = m$. Again b is algebraic of

degree n over F . Therefore b is algebraic of degree at most n over $F(a)$ which is a superfield of F . This implies that the sub-field $(F(a))(b)$ i.e., $F(a, b)$ of K is of degree at most n over $F(a)$ i.e.,

$$[F(a, b) : F(a)] \leq n.$$

Now $[F(a, b) : F] = [F(a, b) : F(a)] [F(a) : F] \leq mn$.

Since $[F(a, b) : F]$ is finite, therefore $F(a, b)$ is a finite extension of F and so it is an algebraic extension of F . Each element in $F(a, b)$ will be algebraic of degree $\leq mn$ over F . Since $F(a, b)$ is a field, therefore $a, b \in F(a, b) \Rightarrow a \pm b, ab, a/b$ (if $b \neq 0$) are all in $F(a, b)$. Hence $a \pm b, ab, a/b$, (if $b \neq 0$) are algebraic of degree at most mn over F .

Theorem 13. Transitivity of Algebraic extension. *If L is an algebraic extension of K and K is an algebraic extension of F , then L is an algebraic extension of F .*

(I A.S. 1970; Meerut 78, 84; B.H.U. 87; Madurai 88)

Proof. Let a be any arbitrary element in L . If we prove that a is algebraic over F , then L will be an algebraic extension of F .

Since $a \in L$ and L is an algebraic extension of K , therefore a satisfies some polynomial $x^n + \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \alpha_2 x^{n-2} + \dots + \alpha_n$ where $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are in K . Now K is an algebraic extension of F . Therefore $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are algebraic over F . So

$$M = F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$$

is a finite extension of F . Now a satisfies the polynomial $x^n + \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_n$ whose coefficients $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are in $M = F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n)$. Therefore a is algebraic over M . Consequently $M(a)$ is a finite extension of M .

Now $M(a)$ is a finite extension of M and M is a finite extension of F . Therefore $M(a)$ is a finite extension of F . So a is algebraic over F . This completes the proof of the theorem

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let K be an extension of a field F . Prove that the mapping $\phi : F[x] \rightarrow F(a)$ defined by $h(x) \psi = h(a)$ is a homomorphism. Here by $h(x) \psi$ we mean the image of $h(x)$ under the mapping ψ .

Solution. Let $h(x), g(x) \in F[x]$. Then $h(x) \psi = h(a)$ and $g(x) \psi = g(a)$.

Let $s(x) = h(x) + g(x)$ and $t(x) = h(x) g(x)$.

Then $s(a) = h(a) + g(a)$ and $t(a) = h(a) g(a)$.

We have $[h(x) + g(x)] \psi = s(x) \psi = s(a)$

$$= h(a) + g(a) = h(x) \psi + g(x) \psi.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Also } [h(x) g(x)] \psi &= t(x) \psi = t(a) \\ &= h(a) g(a) = [h(x) \psi] [g(x) \psi].\end{aligned}$$

Hence ψ is a homomorphism from $F[x]$ into $F(a)$.

Ex. 2. Let F be a field and let $F[x]$ be the ring of polynomials in x over F . Let $g(x)$, of degree n , be in $F[x]$, and let $V = (g(x))$ be the ideal generated by $g(x)$ in $F[x]$. Prove that $F[x]/V$ is an n -dimensional vector space over F .

Solution. We have $V = \{f(x) g(x) : f(x) \in F[x]\}$.

Also $F[x]/V = \{V + f(x) : f(x) \in F[x]\}$.

We define addition in $F[x]/V$ as follows :

Let $V + f_1(x), V + f_2(x) \in F[x]/V$. Then we define

$$\{V + f_1(x)\} + \{V + f_2(x)\} = V + f_1(x) + f_2(x).$$

Also we define scalar multiplication in $F[x]/V$ over F as follows :

Let $a \in F$ and $V + f(x) \in F[x]/V$. Then we define

$$a [V + f(x)] = V + a f(x).$$

Obviously $F[x]/V$ is an abelian group with respect to addition defined on it. The residue class V is the zero vector.

Further let $a, b \in F$ and $f_1(x), f_2(x) \in F[x]$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\text{(i)} \quad (a+b) [V + f_1(x)] &= V + (a+b) f_1(x) = V + a f_1(x) + b f_1(x) \\ &= [V + a f_1(x)] + [V + b f_1(x)] = a [V + f_1(x)] + b [V + f_1(x)].\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{(ii)} \quad a[\{V + f_1(x)\} + \{V + f_2(x)\}] &= a [V + f_1(x) + f_2(x)] \\ &= V + a\{f_1(x) + f_2(x)\} = V + a f_1(x) + a f_2(x) \\ &= [V + a f_1(x)] + [V + a f_2(x)] = a [V + f_1(x)] + a [V + f_2(x)].\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{(iii)} \quad a [b \{V + f_1(x)\}] &= a [V + b f_1(x)] = V + (ab) f_1(x) \\ &= (ab) [V + f_1(x)].\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{(iv)} \quad 1 [V + f_1(x)] = V + 1 f_1(x) = V + f_1(x).$$

Hence $F[x]/V$ is a vector space over F .

Now if $g(x)$ is of degree n , then to show that $F[x]/V$ is of dimension n over F . We claim that $V + 1, V + x, V + x^2, \dots, V + x^{n-1}$ constitute a basis of $F[x]/V$ over F .

First we shall show that these n elements of $F[x]/V$ are linearly independent over F . Note that V is the zero vector. Also we recall that $V + f(x) = V \Leftrightarrow f(x) \in V$. Now we have

$$a_0(V + 1) + a_1(V + x) + a_2(V + x^2) + \dots + a_{n-1}(V + x^{n-1}) = V,$$

$$a_i \in F$$

$$\Rightarrow (V + a_0) + (V + a_1 x) + (V + a_2 x^2) + \dots + (V + a_{n-1} x^{n-1}) = V$$

$$\Rightarrow V + a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} = V$$

$$\Rightarrow a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} \in V$$

$$\Rightarrow a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} = f(x)g(x)$$

$\Rightarrow f(x)=0$ [\because if $f(x) \neq 0$, then $\deg f(x)g(x) \geq \deg g(x) = n$
and so we cannot have $f(x)g(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1}$]

$$\Rightarrow a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a_0 = 0, a_1 = 0, \dots, a_{n-1} = 0.$$

$\therefore V+1, V+x, V+x^2, \dots, V+x^{n-1}$ are linearly independent over F .

Now we shall show that $V+1, V+x, \dots, V+x^{n-1}$ generate $F[x]/V$ over F . Let $V+f(x)$ be any element in $F[x]/V$. Then $f(x) \in F[x]$. By division algorithm there exist $q(x), r(x) \in F[x]$ such that $f(x) = q(x)g(x) + r(x)$ where either $r(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x) < \deg g(x)$.

$$\text{Now } V+f(x) = V+q(x)g(x) + r(x)$$

$$= [V+q(x)g(x)] + [V+r(x)]$$

$$= V + [V+r(x)]$$

$$[\because q(x)g(x) \in V]$$

$$= V + r(x)$$

$$[\because V \text{ is zero vector}]$$

$$= V + a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1}, \text{ where } a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-1} \in F$$

$$[\because r(x) = 0 \text{ or } \deg r(x) < n \text{ i.e., } \deg g(x)]$$

$$= a_0(V+1) + a_1(V+x) + \dots + a_{n-1}(V+x^{n-1}).$$

Hence $V+1, V+x, \dots, V+x^{n-1}$ form a basis of $F[x]/V$ over F . Therefore $\dim F[x]/V$ over $F = n$.

Ex. 3. (a) Let R be the field of real numbers and Q the field of rational numbers. In R , $\sqrt{2}$ and $\sqrt{3}$ are both algebraic over Q . Exhibit a polynomial of degree 4 over Q satisfied by $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}$.

(b) Show that $Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}) = Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

(Meerut 1980; Guru Nanak 90)

(c) What is the degree of $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}$ over Q ? Prove your answer.

Solution. (a) The element $\sqrt{2} \in R$ satisfies the polynomial $x^2 - 2$ over Q . Also $x^2 - 2$ is an irreducible polynomial over Q . Therefore the degree of $\sqrt{2}$ over Q = the degree of $x^2 - 2 = 2$. Also $[Q(\sqrt{2}) : Q] = \text{degree of } \sqrt{2} \text{ over } Q = 2$.

Similarly the element $\sqrt{3} \in R$ satisfies the polynomial $x^2 - 3$ over Q . Also $x^2 - 3$ is an irreducible polynomial over Q . Therefore degree of $\sqrt{3}$ over Q = the degree of $x^2 - 3 = 2$. Also $[Q(\sqrt{3}) : Q] = 2$.

$$\text{Let } \theta = \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3} \Rightarrow \theta^2 = 5 + 2\sqrt{6}$$

$$\Rightarrow \theta^4 = 49 + 20\sqrt{6} \Rightarrow \theta^4 = 10(5 + 2\sqrt{6}) - 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \theta^4 = 10\theta^2 - 1 \Rightarrow \theta^4 - 10\theta^2 + 1 = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \theta \text{ satisfies the polynomial } x^4 - 10x^2 + 1 \text{ over } Q.$$

(b) Since $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3} \in Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3})$, therefore
 $Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}) \subseteq Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3})$.

We shall now prove the converse. Since $Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$ is a field, therefore $(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})^3 = 11\sqrt{2} + 9\sqrt{3} \in Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

Also $-9(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}) \in Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

$\therefore \frac{1}{2} [(11\sqrt{2} + 9\sqrt{3}) + (-9)(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})] = \sqrt{2} \in Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

$\therefore \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3} - \sqrt{2} = \sqrt{3} \in Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

Thus both $\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3} \in Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

$\therefore Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}) \subseteq Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

Hence $Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}) = Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

(c) Let $L = Q(\sqrt{2})$. Then $[L : Q] = 2$.

Also $x^2 - 3$ is an irreducible polynomial over L satisfied by $\sqrt{3}$. Therefore $[L(\sqrt{3}) : L] = 2$.

Now $[L(\sqrt{3}) : Q] = [L(\sqrt{3}) : L][L : Q] = 2 \times 2 = 4$.

But $L(\sqrt{3}) = (Q(\sqrt{2}))(\sqrt{3}) = Q(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}) = Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3})$.

$\therefore [Q(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}) : Q] = 4$.

This implies that $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3}$ is of degree 4 over Q .

Ex. 4. Let a field L be a finite extension of a field K . Define the degree $[L : K]$ of L over K . Let Q denote the field of rational numbers, $K = Q(\sqrt{2})$, $L = K(\sqrt{3})$. Prove that $[L : K] = 2$ and $[K : Q] = 2$. What do you conclude about $[L : Q]$? Prove the theorem which you use for drawing your conclusion. [Gujrat 1970]

Solution. Proceed as in Ex. 3.

Ex. 5. If $a, b \in K$ are algebraic over F of degrees m and n , respectively, and if m and n are relatively prime, prove that $F(a, b)$ is of degree mn over F . [Meerut 1985]

Solution. Let $[F(a, b) : F] = k$.

We have $k = [F(a, b) : F] = [F(a, b) : F(a)][F(a) : F]$
 $= [F(a, b) : F(a)]m$, since a is algebraic of degree m over $F \Rightarrow [F(a) : F] = m$.

$\therefore m$ is a divisor of k .

Similarly n is a divisor of k .

Now $[F(a, b) : F] \leq mn$.

[See the proof of theorem 12, page 492]

$\therefore k \leq mn$.

Since $m \mid k$ and $n \mid k$ and m and n are relatively prime, therefore $mn \mid k$. So we cannot have $k < mn$. Hence $k = mn$.

Ex. 6. Every finite extension K of a field F is algebraic and may be obtained from F by the adjunction of finitely many algebraic elements.

Solution. If $[K : F] = 1$, then $K = F$ and the result is trivial. So let $[K : F] = n > 1$.

Let a be an arbitrary element in K but not in F . Since K is a field and $a \in K$, therefore the $n+1$ elements $1, a, a^2, \dots, a^{n-1}, a^n$ are all in K . Since the dimension of the vector space $K(F)$ is n , therefore these $n+1$ elements of K are linearly dependent over F . So there exist elements $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \in F$, not all 0, such that

$$\alpha_0 1 + \alpha_1 a + \alpha_2 a^2 + \dots + \alpha_n a^n = 0$$

$\Rightarrow a$ is algebraic over F .

Therefore K is an algebraic extension of F .

Now $F \subset F(a) \subseteq K$.

$$\text{Also } n = [K : F] = [K : F(a)] [F(a) : F]. \quad \dots (1)$$

If $[F(a) : F] = n$, then $[K : F(a)] = 1$. This implies that $K = F(a)$ and our result is proved.

If $[F(a) : F] \neq n$, then suppose that $[F(a) : F] = m < n$.

Since $a \notin F$, therefore $m > 1$. Also from (1), $[K : F(a)] > 1$. Take an element b in K but not in $F(a)$. Then we can show as above that b is algebraic over F . Since a and b are algebraic over F , therefore $F(a, b)$ is a finite extension of F .

Let $[F(a, b) : F] = p$ where $p > m$ because $F(a)$ is a proper subset of $F(a, b)$.

$$\text{Now } n = [K : F] = [K : F(a, b)] [F(a, b) : F] = [K : F(a, b)] p.$$

If $p = n$, then $F(a, b) = K$ and our result is proved. If $p \neq n$, then we may continue the above process a finite number of times till we get $[F(a, b, \dots, k) : F] = n$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} n &= [K : F] = [K : F(a, b, \dots, k)] [F(a, b, \dots, k) : F] \\ &= [K : F(a, b, \dots, k)] n. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore [K : F(a, b, \dots, k)] = 1$$

$\Rightarrow K = F(a, b, \dots, k)$ where a, b, \dots, k are algebraic over F . This proves the result.

Ex. 7. Let K be an extension of a field F and let $a \in K$ be algebraic over F . Then $F(a)$ is isomorphic to $F[x]/V$ where V is the ideal of $F[x]$ generated by the minimal polynomial for a over F .

(Banaras 1971, 72)

Solution. Let $p(x)$ be the minimal polynomial for a over F . Then $p(x)$ is irreducible over F i.e., $p(x)$ is a prime element of $F[x]$. Let $V = \{h(x) \in F[x] : h(a) = 0\}$.

Then V is an ideal of $F[x]$. Now $F[x]$ is a principal ideal ring and $p(x)$ is an element of lowest degree in the ideal V of $F[x]$. Therefore V is the ideal of $F[x]$ generated by $p(x)$. Since $p(x)$ is irreducible, therefore V is a maximal ideal of $F[x]$. Consequently $F[x]/V$ is a field.

Let ψ be a mapping from $F[x]$ into $F(a)$ defined as follows :

$$f(x)\psi = f(a) \text{ for any } f(x) \in F[x].$$

Obviously ψ is a homomorphic mapping from the ring $F[x]$ into the field $F(a)$. The kernel of ψ is nothing but the ideal V of $F[x]$. Therefore by the fundamental theorem on ring homomorphism, $F[x]/V$ is isomorphic to $F[x]\psi$ which is the image of $F[x]$ under ψ . Now $F[x]\psi$ is a subset of $F(a)$. Since $F[x]/V$ is a field, therefore $F[x]\psi$ is a subfield of $F(a)$. Now $x \in F[x]$ and by the definition of ψ , we have $x\psi = a$. Therefore $a \in F[x]\psi$. Also if $\alpha \in F$, then $\alpha \in F[x]$. By the definition of ψ , we have $\alpha\psi = \alpha$. Therefore $\alpha \in F[x]\psi$. Thus $F[x]\psi$ is a subfield of $F(a)$ and it contains both F and a . But $F(a)$ is the smallest subfield of K containing both F and a . Therefore we must have $F[x]\psi = F(a)$. Hence $F[x]/V$ is isomorphic to $F(a)$.

Note. If a is algebraic of degree n over F , then $p(x)$ is of degree n . Therefore the dimension of $F[x]/V$, as a vector space over F is n . By virtue of isomorphism between $F[x]/V$ and $F(a)$ we conclude that the dimension of $F(a)$, as a vector space over F is also n . Thus $[F(a) : F] = n$. In this way we get an alternative proof for theorem 8.

§ 5. Roots of Polynomials. Let F be any field and let $p(x)$ be any polynomial in $F[x]$. Our aim is now to find a field K which is an extension of F and in which $p(x)$ has a root.

Roots of a polynomial. Definition. Let F be any field and let $p(x) \in F[x]$. Then an element a lying in some extension field of F is called a root of $p(x)$ if $p(a) = 0$.

Theorem 14. Remainder Theorem.

If $p(x) \in F[x]$ and if K is an extension of F , then for any element $c \in K$, $p(x) = (x - c)q(x) + p(c)$ where $q(x) \in K[x]$ and where $\deg q(x) = \deg p(x) - 1$.

(Jabalpur 1986 ; Meerut 73)

Proof. We have $F \subseteq K$

$$\Rightarrow F[x] \subseteq K[x]$$

$$\Rightarrow p(x) \in K[x]$$

$$[\because p(x) \in F[x]]$$

Now the polynomials $p(x)$ and $x - c$ are both in $K[x]$. There-

fore by division algorithm there exist polynomials $q(x)$ and $r(x)$ in $K[x]$ such that

$$p(x) = (x-c)q(x) + r(x),$$

where either $r(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x)$ is less than the degree of $x-c$. But the degree of $x-c$ is 1. Therefore either $r(x) = 0$ or $\deg r(x) = 0$. Hence $r(x)$ is a constant polynomial in $K[x]$ i.e., $r(x)$ is simply an element, say r , in K . Thus

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= (x-c)q(x) + r \\ \Rightarrow p(c) &= (c-c)q(c) + r \text{ [Putting } x=c \text{ on both sides]} \\ \Rightarrow p(c) &= 0 \cdot q(c) + r \Rightarrow p(c) = r. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $p(x) = (x-c)q(x) + p(c)$ (1)

Now suppose $\deg p(x) = n$ and $\deg q(x) = m$. The degree of the polynomial on the right hand side of (1) is then $m+1$. By the definition of equality of two polynomials we must have

$$n = m+1 \Rightarrow m = n-1 \Rightarrow \deg q(x) = \deg p(x) - 1.$$

Corollary. Factor Theorem. *If $a \in K$ is a root of $p(x) \in F[x]$, where $F \subseteq K$, then in $K[x]$, $(x-a) \mid p(x)$. (Kanpur 1980)*

Proof. Let $p(x) \in F[x]$ and let $a \in K$ where K is an extension field of F . Then by remainder theorem in $K[x]$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= (x-a)q(x) + p(a) \\ &= (x-a)q(x) + 0 \text{ [}\because a \text{ is a root of } p(x) \Rightarrow p(a) = 0\text{]} \\ &= (x-a)q(x). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore in $K[x]$ we have $x-a$ is a divisor of $p(x)$. Thus $(x-a) \mid p(x)$ in $K[x]$.

Multiple root. Definition. *Let F be any field and let $p(x) \in F[x]$. If K is any extension of F , then $a \in K$ is said to be a root of $p(x)$ of multiplicity m if in $K[x]$, we have*

$(x-a)^m$ is a divisor of $p(x)$ whereas $(x-a)^{m+1}$ is not a divisor of $p(x)$.

A root of multiplicity 1 is called a simple root and a root of multiplicity > 1 is called a multiple root.

Now we are going to face an important problem. Suppose $p(x) \in F[x]$ and K is any extension field of F . The problem is that how many roots can $p(x)$ have in K . If a is a root of $p(x)$ in K of multiplicity m , then for this counting purpose we shall count it as m roots and not as one root.

Theorem 15. *A polynomial of degree n over a field can have at most n roots in any extension field.*

(Kanpur 1987; Banaras 72; Meerut 74; B.H.U. 87; Madurai 88)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on n , the degree of the polynomial $p(x)$.

To start the induction let $p(x)$ be a polynomial of degree one over any field F . Let $p(x) = a_0x + a_1$ where $a_0, a_1 \in F$ and $a_0 \neq 0$. Let a be a root of $p(x)$ in some extension field of F . Then $p(a) = a_0a + a_1 = 0$. This gives $a = -\frac{a_1}{a_0}$ which is a unique element of F . Thus in this case $p(x)$ has the unique root $-\frac{a_1}{a_0}$ i.e., $p(x)$ has one and exactly one root in any extension field of F . In this way the theorem is true when $p(x)$ is of degree 1.

Now assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true in any field for all polynomials of degree less than n . Let $p(x)$ be a polynomial of degree n over a field F . Let K be any extension field of F . If $p(x)$ has no roots in K , then the theorem is obviously true because then the number of roots of $p(x)$ in K is zero which is definitely at most n . So let us suppose that $p(x)$ has at least one root, say, $a \in K$. Let a be a root of multiplicity m . Then in $K[x]$, we have

$$(x-a)^m \text{ is a divisor of } p(x) \\ \Rightarrow \deg(x-a)^m \leq \deg p(x) \Rightarrow m \leq n.$$

Since in $K[x]$ we have $(x-a)^m$ is a divisor of $p(x)$, therefore let $p(x) = (x-a)^m q(x)$ where $q(x) \in K[x]$.

We have $\deg q(x) = \deg p(x) - \deg(x-a)^m = n - m$ which is definitely less than n because $1 \leq m \leq n$.

Now a is a root of $p(x)$ of multiplicity m . Therefore $(x-a)^{m+1}$ is not a divisor of $p(x) = (x-a)^m q(x)$. This implies that $(x-a)$ is not a divisor of $q(x)$. Therefore a is not a root of $q(x)$. [See corollary to theorem 14]. Now let $b \neq a$ be a root of $p(x)$ in K . Then on putting $x=b$ in $p(x) = (x-a)^m q(x)$, we get

$$0 = p(b) = (b-a)^m q(b).$$

Since K is a field and $0 \neq (b-a)^m \in K$ and $q(b) \in K$, therefore we must have

$$q(b) = 0 \Rightarrow b \text{ is a root of } q(x) \text{ in } K.$$

Thus any root of $p(x)$, in K , other than a must also be a root of $q(x)$ in K .

Now $q(x)$ is of degree $n-m$ which is less than n . Therefore by our induction hypothesis $q(x)$ has at most $n-m$ roots in K and

none of these roots is equal to a because a is not a root of $q(x)$. Thus $q(x)$ has at most $n-m$ roots other than a in K

$\Rightarrow p(x)$ has at most $n-m$ roots other than a in K

$\Rightarrow p(x)$ has at most $(n-m)+m=n$ roots in K , the root a of $p(x)$ of multiplicity m being counted m times.

The proof is now complete by induction.

Theorem 16. *If $p(x)$ is a polynomial in $F[x]$ of degree $n \geq 1$ and is irreducible over F , then there is an extension E of F , such that $[E:F]=n$, in which $p(x)$ has a root.*

(I.A.S. 1972; Banaras 87; Meerut 79, 83P; Madurai 88)

Proof. Let $F[x]$ be the ring of polynomials over F and let $V=(p(x))$ be the ideal of $F[x]$ generated by $p(x)$. Since $p(x)$ is irreducible over F , therefore V is a maximal ideal of $F[x]$. Consequently $E=F[x]/V$ is a field. We shall show that the field E satisfies the conclusions of the theorem.

First we shall show that E can be regarded as an extension of F even though E does not contain the elements of F in their original form. For this we shall show that the field F can be imbedded in the field E .

Let ψ be the mapping from F into E defined by

$$\psi(\alpha)=V+\alpha \quad \forall \alpha \in F.$$

ψ is one-one. Let $\alpha, \beta \in F$. We have

$$\psi(\alpha)=\psi(\beta) \Rightarrow V+\alpha=V+\beta \Rightarrow \alpha-\beta \in V$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha-\beta=f(x)p(x) \text{ for some } f(x) \in F[x]$$

[Note that V is the ideal generated by $p(x)$]

$$\Rightarrow f(x)=0 \text{ because if } f(x) \neq 0, \text{ then the polynomial } f(x)p(x) \text{ is of positive degree and so it cannot be equal to the constant polynomial } \alpha-\beta$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha-\beta=0 \Rightarrow \alpha=\beta.$$

$\therefore \psi$ is one-one.

Also $\psi(\alpha+\beta)=V+(\alpha+\beta)=(V+\alpha)+(V+\beta)=\psi(\alpha)+\psi(\beta)$, and $\psi(\alpha\beta)=V+\alpha\beta=(V+\alpha)(V+\beta)=\psi(\alpha)\psi(\beta)$.

Thus ψ is an isomorphism from F into E . Let F^* be the image of F into E under the mapping ψ i.e., let $F^*=\{V+\alpha : \alpha \in F\}$. Then ψ is an isomorphism of F onto F^* and F^* is a subfield of E isomorphic to F . If we identify F and F^* i.e., if we identify $\alpha \in F$ with $V+\alpha \in F^*$, then E can be regarded as an extension of F .

Now we claim that E is a finite extension of F . For this we shall prove that the n elements $V+1, V+x, V+x^2, \dots, V+x^{n-1}$ form a basis of E over F . [For proof see Ex. 2 page 494].

$$\therefore [E:F]=n.$$

Finally we shall show that $p(x)$ has a root in E .

Let $p(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n$ where $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in F$.

First let us make $p(x)$ as a polynomial over E with the help of the identification we have made between F and F^* . So let us replace a_0 by $V+a_0$, a_1 by $V+a_1$, ..., a_n by $V+a_n$. Then

$$p(x) = (V+a_0) + (V+a_1)x + \dots + (V+a_n)x^n.$$

We shall show that $V+x \in E$ satisfies $p(x)$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} p(V+x) &= (V+a_0) + (V+a_1)(V+x) + (V+a_2)(V+x)^2 \\ &\quad + \dots + (V+a_n)(V+x)^n \\ &= (V+a_0) + (V+a_1)(V+x) + (V+a_2)(V+x)^2 + \dots + (V+a_n)(V+x)^n \\ &\quad \text{[Note that } (V+x)^2 = (V+x)(V+x) = V+x^2, \text{ and so on]} \\ &= (V+a_0) + (V+a_1x) + (V+a_2x^2) + \dots + (V+a_nx^n) \end{aligned}$$

[by def. of multiplication of cosets we have

$$\begin{aligned} [V+f(x)][V+g(x)] &= V+f(x)g(x) \\ &= V+a_0+a_1x+a_2x^2+\dots+a_nx^n \end{aligned}$$

[by def. of addition of cosets we have

$$\begin{aligned} [V+f(x)] + [V+g(x)] &= V+f(x)+g(x) \\ &= V+p(x) \end{aligned}$$

$$= V, \text{ since } p(x) \in V$$

$$= \text{the zero element of the field } E.$$

[Note that the zero element of the field $F[x]/V$ is nothing but the coset V itself].

Thus $V+x$ satisfies $p(x)$. Therefore $V+x$ is a root of $p(x)$.

The proof of the theorem is now complete.

Corollary. *If $f(x) \in F[x]$, then there is a finite extension E of F in which $f(x)$ has a root. Moreover, $[E : F] \leq \deg f(x)$.*

(Meerut 1973; Banaras 70)

Proof. Let $p(x)$ be an irreducible factor of $f(x)$. Let

$$f(x) = p(x)q(x).$$

We have $\deg p(x) \leq \deg f(x)$.

Let a be the root of $p(x)$ in some extension field K of F . Then $p(a) = 0$. We have

$$f(a) = p(a)q(a) = 0 \quad q(a) = 0.$$

Thus any root of $p(x)$ in some extension field of F is also a root of $f(x)$ in that extension field.

Since $p(x)$ is irreducible over F , therefore by the above theorem there is an extension E of F with

$$[E : F] = \deg p(x) \leq \deg f(x)$$

in which $p(x)$ has a root.

Hence there is a finite extension E of F with $[E : F] \leq \deg f(x)$ in which $f(x)$ has a root.

Theorem 17. Let $f(x) \in F[x]$ be of degree $n \geq 1$. Then there is a finite extension E of F of degree at most $n!$ in which $f(x)$ has n roots (and so, a full complement of roots).

(I. A. S. 1973; Meerut 74)

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on n , the degree of $f(x)$.

To start the induction let $f(x) \in F[x]$ be of degree 1. Let $f(x) = a_0x + a_1$ where $a_0, a_1 \in F$ and $a_0 \neq 0$. Now F itself is an extension of F and $[F : F] = 1$. Also $-\frac{a_1}{a_0} \in F$ is a root of $a_0x + a_1$. Thus if $\deg f(x) = 1$, then there is a finite extension F of F of degree at most $1! = 1$ in which $f(x)$ has one root.

Now assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true in any field for all polynomials of degree less than n . Let $f(x)$ be a polynomial of degree n over a field F . By corollary to theorem 16, there is an extension E_0 of F with $[E_0 : F] \leq n$ in which $f(x)$ has a root, say, α . By factor theorem in $E_0[x]$, $f(x)$ factors as

$$f(x) = (x - \alpha) q(x)$$

where $\deg q(x) = \deg f(x) - 1 = n - 1$.

Now $q(x)$ is a polynomial over E_0 of degree $n - 1$. Since $\deg q(x)$ is less than n , therefore by our induction hypothesis there is an extension E of E_0 of degree at most $(n - 1)!$ in which $q(x)$ has $n - 1$ roots. Since any root of $f(x)$ is either α or a root of $q(x)$, therefore we obtain in E all n roots of $f(x)$.

Now E is an extension of E_0 and E_0 is an extension of F implies that E is an extension of F . We have

$$\begin{aligned} [E : F] &= [E : E_0] [E_0 : F] \\ &\leq (n - 1)! n = n! \end{aligned}$$

Thus E is a finite extension of F of degree at most $n!$ in which $f(x)$ has n roots.

The proof of the theorem is now complete by induction.

Splitting field or Decomposition field. Definition.

If $f(x) \in F[x]$, a finite extension E of F is said to be a splitting field over F for $f(x)$ if over E (that is, in $E[x]$), but not over any proper subfield of E , $f(x)$ can be factored as a product of linear (first degree) factors. (Banaras 1971; Meerut 81, 84P, 86, 90)

The field F is called the base field or the initial field.

Theorem 18. *There exists a splitting field for every $f(x) \in F[x]$.
(Delhi 1970; Aligarh 66; Banaras 71; Meerut 74, 86)*

Proof. Let $f(x) \in F[x]$ be of degree n . First we shall prove that there exists a finite extension E of F of degree at most $n!$ in which $f(x)$ has n roots. [For proof see theorem 17].

Let $f(x) = a_0 x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + a_n$, $a_0 \neq 0$.

Let $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ be the n roots in E of $f(x)$. Then by factor theorem $f(x)$ can be factored over E as

$$f(x) = a_0 (x - \alpha_1) (x - \alpha_2) \dots (x - \alpha_n).$$

In this way $f(x)$ splits up completely over E as a product of first degree factors. Thus we see that there exists a finite extension E of F which decomposes $f(x)$ as a product of linear factors. Consequently a finite extension of F of minimal degree exists which also possesses this property. This minimal extension will be a splitting field for $f(x)$ because no proper subfield of this minimal extension can split $f(x)$ as a product of linear factors.

Another way of defining the splitting field.

An extension E of a field F is said to be a splitting field of $f(x) \in F[x]$, if $f(x) \in E[x]$

is expressible as

$$f(x) = a_0 (x - \alpha_1) (x - \alpha_2) \dots (x - \alpha_n),$$

where

$$a_0 \in F, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \in E,$$

and

$$E = F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n).$$

Uniqueness of the splitting field.

Now we shall show that the splitting field of a polynomial is unique apart from isomorphism. Let E_1 and E_2 be two splitting fields of $f(x) \in F[x]$. Let

$$f(x) = a (x - \alpha_1) (x - \alpha_2) \dots (x - \alpha_n) \text{ over } E_1$$

and

$$f(x) = a (x - \beta_1) (x - \beta_2) \dots (x - \beta_n) \text{ over } E_2.$$

We shall show that the fields

$$F(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \text{ and } F(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n)$$

are isomorphic by an isomorphism leaving every element of F fixed. Before proving this main theorem we shall first prove some pre-requisite results.

Continuation of an isomorphic mapping. Definition.

Let F and F' be two isomorphic fields and let E and E' be extension fields of F and F' respectively. An isomorphism $\sigma : E \rightarrow E'$ is called a continuation of the isomorphism $\psi : F \rightarrow F'$ if $\sigma(\alpha) = \psi(\alpha)$ for all α in F .

Let ψ be an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' . For the sake of convenience we shall denote the image of any $\alpha \in F$ under ψ by α' . Thus $\alpha\psi = \alpha'$. Here by $\alpha\psi$ we mean $\psi(\alpha)$. Now that $\alpha\psi$ is another way of writing the image of α under ψ .

Theorem 19. Let ψ be an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' such that $\alpha\psi = \alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$. Show that there is an isomorphism ψ^* of $F[x]$ onto $F'[t]$ with a property that

$$\alpha\psi^* = \alpha'\psi = \alpha' \text{ for every } \alpha \in F.$$

Proof. ψ is an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' .

For any $\alpha \in F$ we write $\alpha\psi = \alpha'$. Let us define a mapping ψ^* from $F[x]$ into $F'[t]$ as follows :

For an arbitrary polynomial $f(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1x + \dots + \alpha_nx^n \in F[x]$ we define ψ^* by

$$\begin{aligned} f(x)\psi^* &= (\alpha_0 + \alpha_1x + \dots + \alpha_nx^n)\psi^* \\ &= \alpha_0'\psi + \alpha_1'\psi t + \dots + \alpha_n'\psi t^n \\ &= \alpha_0' + \alpha_1't + \dots + \alpha_n't^n = f'(t), \text{ say.} \end{aligned}$$

We shall show that the mapping ψ^* satisfies the conclusions of the theorem.

ψ^* is one-one.

Let $f(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1x + \dots + \alpha_nx^n$, $g(x) = \beta_0 + \beta_1x + \dots + \beta_mx^m$ be any two elements of $F[x]$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(x)\psi^* &= g(x)\psi^* \\ \Rightarrow (\alpha_0 + \alpha_1x + \dots + \alpha_nx^n)\psi^* &= (\beta_0 + \beta_1x + \dots + \beta_mx^m)\psi^* \\ \Rightarrow \alpha_0' + \alpha_1't + \dots + \alpha_n't^n &= \beta_0' + \beta_1't + \dots + \beta_m't^m \\ \Rightarrow n=m \text{ and } \alpha_i' = \beta_i' \text{ for each } i=0, 1, \dots, n \\ \Rightarrow n=m \text{ and } \alpha_i\psi = \beta_i\psi \text{ for each } i \\ \Rightarrow n=m \text{ and } \alpha_i = \beta_i \text{ for each } i & \quad [\because \psi \text{ is one-one}] \\ \Rightarrow f(x) = g(x) \Rightarrow \psi^* \text{ is one-one.} \end{aligned}$$

ψ^* is onto.

Let $\delta_0' + \delta_1't + \dots + \delta_n't^n$ be any element of $F'[t]$ where $\delta_0', \delta_1', \dots, \delta_n' \in F'$. Since ψ is onto F' , therefore $\exists \delta_0, \delta_1, \dots, \delta_n \in F$ such that $\delta_0\psi = \delta_0', \delta_1\psi = \delta_1', \dots, \delta_n\psi = \delta_n'$. Now

$$\delta_0 + \delta_1x + \dots + \delta_nx^n \in F[x]$$

and we have $(\delta_0 + \delta_1x + \dots + \delta_nx^n)\psi^* = \delta_0' + \delta_1't + \dots + \delta_n't^n$.

\therefore the mapping ψ^* is onto.

ψ^* preserves additions.

Let $f(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1x + \dots + \alpha_nx^n$, $g(x) = \beta_0 + \beta_1x + \dots + \beta_mx^m$ be any two elements of $F[x]$. Without loss of generality let $n \geq m$. First let us take the case when $n > m$.

We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 [f(x) + g(x)] \psi^* &= [(\alpha_0 + \beta_0) + (\alpha_1 + \beta_1)x + \dots + (\alpha_m + \beta_m)x^m \\
 &\quad + \alpha_{m+1}x^{m+1} + \dots + \alpha_n x^n] \psi^* \\
 &= (\alpha_0 + \beta_0) \psi + (\alpha_1 + \beta_1) \psi t + \dots + (\alpha_m + \beta_m) \psi t^m \\
 &\quad + \alpha_{m+1} \psi t^{m+1} + \dots + \alpha_n \psi t^n \\
 &= (\alpha_0 \psi + \beta_0 \psi) + (\alpha_1 \psi + \beta_1 \psi) t + \dots + (\alpha_m \psi + \beta_m \psi) t^m \\
 &\quad + \alpha_{m+1} \psi t^{m+1} + \dots + \alpha_n \psi t^n \\
 &= (\alpha_0' + \beta_0') + (\alpha_1' + \beta_1') t + \dots + (\alpha_m' + \beta_m') t^m \quad [\because \psi \text{ is an isomorphism}] \\
 &\quad + \alpha_{m+1}' t^{m+1} + \dots + \alpha_n' t^n \\
 &= (\alpha_0' + \alpha_1' t + \dots + \alpha_m' t^m + \alpha_{m+1}' t^{m+1} + \dots + \alpha_n' t^n) \\
 &\quad + (\beta_0' + \beta_1' t + \dots + \beta_m' t^m) \\
 &= f(x) \psi^* + g(x) \psi^*.
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly when $n=m$, we can show that

$$[f(x) + g(x)] \psi^* = f(x) \psi^* + g(x) \psi^*.$$

ψ^* preserves multiplications. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 [f(x) g(x)] \psi^* &= [(\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 x + \dots + \alpha_n x^n) (\beta_0 + \beta_1 x + \dots + \beta_m x^m)] \psi^* \\
 &= [\alpha_0 \beta_0 + (\alpha_0 \beta_1 + \alpha_1 \beta_0) x + \dots + \alpha_n \beta_m x^{n+m}] \psi^* \\
 &= (\alpha_0 \beta_0) \psi + (\alpha_0 \beta_1 + \alpha_1 \beta_0) \psi t + \dots + (\alpha_n \beta_m) \psi t^{n+m} \\
 &= \alpha_0' \beta_0' + (\alpha_0' \beta_1' + \alpha_1' \beta_0') t + \dots + (\alpha_n' \beta_m') t^{n+m} \\
 &\quad [\because \psi \text{ preserves additions and multiplications} \\
 &\quad \text{i.e., } (\alpha + \beta) \psi = \alpha \psi + \beta \psi = \alpha' + \beta' \text{ and} \\
 &\quad (\alpha \beta) \psi = (\alpha \psi) (\beta \psi) = \alpha' \beta'] \\
 &= (\alpha_0' + \alpha_1' t + \dots + \alpha_n' t^n) (\beta_0' + \beta_1' t + \dots + \beta_m' t^m) \\
 &= [f(x) \psi^*] [g(x) \psi^*].
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence ψ^* is an isomorphism of $F[x]$ onto $F'[t]$.

Further if $f(x) \in F[x]$ be simply taken as α where $\alpha \in F$, then by definition of ψ^* , we have

$$\alpha \psi^* = \alpha \psi = \alpha'.$$

Note. From the above theorem we conclude that factorizations of $f(x)$ in $F[x]$ result in like factorizations of $f(x) \psi^* = f'(t)$ in $F'[t]$ and vice versa. In particular, $f(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$ if and only if $f'(t)$ is irreducible in $F'[t]$.

Theorem 20. Let ψ be an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' defined as $\alpha \psi = \alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$. For an arbitrary polynomial $f(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 x + \dots + \alpha_n x^n \in F[x]$ let us define $f'(t) = \alpha_0' + \alpha_1' t + \dots + \alpha_n' t^n \in F'[t]$. If $f(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$ show that there is an isomorphism θ of $F[x]/(f(x))$ onto $F'[t]/(f'(t))$ with the property that for every $\alpha \in F$, $\alpha \theta = \alpha \psi = \alpha'$.

Proof. Let ψ^* be a function from $F[x]$ into $F'[t]$ defined by the formula

$$f(x) \psi^* = f'(t) \text{ for every } f(x) \in F[x].$$

Then by theorem 19 the mapping ψ^* is an isomorphism of $F[x]$ onto $F'[t]$.

Let $f(x)$ be irreducible in $F[x]$. Then $f'(t)$ will be irreducible in $F'[t]$. Let $V = (f(x))$ be the ideal of $F[x]$ generated by $f(x)$ and $V' = (f'(t))$ be the ideal of $F'[t]$ generated by $f'(t)$. Both V and V' are maximal ideals because $f(x)$ and $f'(t)$ are irreducible. Therefore $F[x]/V$ and $F'[t]/V'$ are both fields.

Let us define a mapping θ from $F[x]/V$ into $F'[t]/V'$ by the formula

$$[V+g(x)] \theta = V' + g'(t) \psi^* = V' + g'(t) \text{ for every } g(x) \in F[x].$$

The mapping θ is well-defined.

For this we are to show that if $V+g(x) = V+h(x)$, then

$$[V+g(x)] \theta = [V+h(x)] \theta \text{ where } g(x), h(x) \in F[x].$$

We have $V+g(x) = V+h(x)$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) - h(x) \in V$$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) - h(x) = k(x) f(x) \text{ for some } k(x) \in F[x]$$

$$\Rightarrow [g(x) - h(x)] \psi^* = [k(x) f(x)] \psi^*$$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) \psi^* - h(x) \psi^* = [k(x) \psi^*] [f(x) \psi^*]$$

$$[\because \psi^* \text{ is an isomorphism}]$$

$$\Rightarrow g'(t) - h'(t) = k'(t) f'(t)$$

$$\Rightarrow g'(t) - h'(t) \in V' \Rightarrow V' + g'(t) = V' + h'(t)$$

$$\Rightarrow [V+g(x)] \theta = [V+h(x)] \theta.$$

Therefore the mapping θ is well defined.

The mapping θ is one-one.

Let $g(x), h(x) \in F[x]$. Then

$$[V+g(x)] \theta = [V+h(x)] \theta$$

$$\Rightarrow V' + g'(t) = V' + h'(t) \Rightarrow g'(t) - h'(t) \in V'$$

$$\Rightarrow g'(t) - h'(t) = k'(t) f'(t) \text{ for some } k'(t) \in F'[t]$$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) \psi^* - h(x) \psi^* = [k(x) \psi^*] [f(x) \psi^*]$$

$$\Rightarrow [g(x) - h(x)] \psi^* = [k(x) f(x)] \psi^*$$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) - h(x) = k(x) f(x)$$

$$[\because \psi^* \text{ is one-one}]$$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) - h(x) \in V \Rightarrow V+g(x) = V+h(x) \Rightarrow \theta \text{ is one-one.}$$

The mapping θ is onto.

Since the mapping ψ^* is onto, therefore corresponding to any polynomial $g'(t)$ in $F'[t]$, we have a polynomial $g(x)$ in $F[x]$. Therefore $V' + g'(t) \in F'[t]/V' \Rightarrow \exists V+g(x) \in F[x]/V$ such that

$$[V+g(x)] \theta = V' + g'(t).$$

θ preserves additions and multiplications.

Let $g(x) \ h(x) \in F[x]$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \{[V+g(x)] + [V+h(x)]\} \theta &= [V+g(x)+h(x)] \theta \\ &= V' + [g(x)+h(x)] \psi^* = V' + g(x) \psi^* + h(x) \psi^* \\ &= V' + g'(t) + h'(t) = [V' + g'(t)] + [V' + h'(t)] \\ &= [V+g(x)] \theta + [V+h(x)] \theta. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } \{[V+g(x)] \{V+h(x)\}\} \theta &= [V+g(x) \ h(x)] \theta \\ &= V' + [g(x) \ h(x)] \psi^* = V' + [g(x) \psi^*] [h(x) \psi^*] \\ &= V' + g'(t) \ h'(t) = [V' + g'(t)] [V' + h'(t)] \\ &= \{[V+g(x)] \theta\} \{[V+h(x)] \theta\}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus θ is an isomorphism of $F[x]/V$ onto $F'[t]/V'$.

In theorem 16 we have shown that the field F can be imbedded in the field $F[x]/V$ by identifying the element $\alpha \in F$ with the residue class (coset) $V+\alpha$ in $F[x]/V$. Similarly we can consider F' to be contained in $F'[t]/V'$. With this identification, for any $\alpha \in F$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \theta &= (V+\alpha) \theta \quad [\because \alpha \text{ has been identified with } V+\alpha] \\ &= V' + \alpha \psi^* = V' + \alpha' \\ &= \alpha'. \quad [\because \alpha' \text{ has been identified with } V' + \alpha'] \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 21. Let ψ be an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' such that $\alpha\psi=\alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$. Let $f(x)=\alpha_0+\alpha_1x+\dots+\alpha_nx^n$ be an irreducible polynomial in $F[x]$ which is mapped onto the (also irreducible) polynomial $f'(t)=\alpha'_0+\alpha'_1t+\dots+\alpha'_nt^n$ in $F'[t]$. If v is a root of $f(x)$ in some extension field of F and w is a root of $f'(t)$ in some extension field of F' , then the field $F(v)$ is isomorphic to the field $F'(w)$ by an isomorphism σ such that

$$(1) \quad v\sigma=w$$

$$(2) \quad \alpha\sigma=\alpha\psi=\alpha' \text{ for every } \alpha \in F.$$

Note. The condition (2) may also be stated as that the isomorphism σ is a continuation of the isomorphism ψ .

Proof. ψ is an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' such that $\alpha\psi=\alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$. The irreducible polynomial $f(x)=\alpha_0+\alpha_1x+\dots+\alpha_nx^n$ in $F[x]$ is mapped onto the irreducible polynomial $f'(t)=\alpha'_0+\alpha'_1t+\dots+\alpha'_nt^n$ in $F'[t]$. We have $\deg f(x)=n=\deg f'(t)$.

Let v be a root of $f(x)$ in some extension field of F . Then v is algebraic over F . Since $f(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$, therefore $f(x)$ is a minimal polynomial for v over F . Consequently by theorem 5, we have $F(v)=\{\beta_0+\beta_1v+\dots+\beta_{n-1}v^{n-1} : \beta_0, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1} \in F\}$.

Also the expression $\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}$ for an element of $F(v)$ is unique. Similarly

$$F'(w) = \{\delta_0' + \delta_1' w + \dots + \delta_{n-1}' w^{n-1} : \delta_0', \delta_1', \dots, \delta_{n-1}' \in F'\}.$$

Also the expression $\delta_0' + \delta_1' w + \dots + \delta_{n-1}' w^{n-1}$ for an element of $F'(w)$ is unique. Let c be an arbitrary element of $F(v)$. Then c can be written as

$c = \beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}$, where $\beta_0, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1}$ are unique elements of F .

Let us define a mapping σ from $F(v)$ into $F'(w)$ by the formula

$$\begin{aligned} c\sigma &= (\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1})\sigma \\ &= \beta_0 \psi + \beta_1 \psi w + \dots + \beta_{n-1} \psi w^{n-1} \\ &= \beta_0' + \beta_1' w + \dots + \beta_{n-1}' w^{n-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Since the expression for c in the form $\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}$ is unique, therefore the mapping σ is well defined.

σ is one-one. Let $c = \beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}$, $d = \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 v + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} v^{n-1}$ be any two elements of $F(v)$. Then $c\sigma = d\sigma$

$$\begin{aligned} &\Rightarrow (\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1})\sigma = (\gamma_0 + \gamma_1 v + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} v^{n-1})\sigma \\ &\Rightarrow \beta_0' + \beta_1' w + \dots + \beta_{n-1}' w^{n-1} = \gamma_0' + \gamma_1' w + \dots + \gamma_{n-1}' w^{n-1} \\ &\Rightarrow \beta_0' = \gamma_0', \beta_1' = \gamma_1', \dots, \beta_{n-1}' = \gamma_{n-1}' \quad [\text{Since the expression for an element of } F'(w) \text{ in the form } \beta_0' + \beta_1' w + \dots + \beta_{n-1}' w^{n-1} \text{ is unique}] \\ &\Rightarrow \beta_0 \psi = \gamma_0 \psi, \beta_1 \psi = \gamma_1 \psi, \dots, \beta_{n-1} \psi = \gamma_{n-1} \psi \\ &\Rightarrow \beta_0 = \gamma_0, \beta_1 = \gamma_1, \dots, \beta_{n-1} = \gamma_{n-1} \quad [\because \psi \text{ is one-one}] \\ &\Rightarrow c = d \Rightarrow \sigma \text{ is one-one.} \end{aligned}$$

σ is onto. Let $\delta_0' + \delta_1' w + \dots + \delta_{n-1}' w^{n-1}$ be any element of $F'(w)$ where $\delta_0', \delta_1', \dots, \delta_{n-1}' \in F'$. Since ψ is onto F' , therefore $\exists \delta_0, \delta_1, \dots, \delta_{n-1} \in F$ such that $\delta_0 \psi = \delta_0', \delta_1 \psi = \delta_1', \dots, \delta_{n-1} \psi = \delta_{n-1}'$.

Now $\delta_0 + \delta_1 v + \dots + \delta_{n-1} v^{n-1} \in F(v)$ and we have

$$(\delta_0 + \delta_1 v + \dots + \delta_{n-1} v^{n-1})\sigma = \delta_0' + \delta_1' w + \dots + \delta_{n-1}' w^{n-1}.$$

$\therefore \sigma$ is onto $F'(w)$.

σ preserves additions. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (c+d)\sigma &= [(\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}) + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_1 v + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} v^{n-1})]\sigma \\ &= [(\beta_0 + \gamma_0) + (\beta_1 + \gamma_1) v + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} + \gamma_{n-1}) v^{n-1}]\sigma \\ &= (\beta_0 + \gamma_0) \psi + (\beta_1 + \gamma_1) \psi w + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} + \gamma_{n-1}) \psi w^{n-1} \\ &= (\beta_0 \psi + \gamma_0 \psi) + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} \psi + \gamma_{n-1} \psi) w^{n-1} \\ &= (\beta_0' + \gamma_0') + \dots + (\beta_{n-1}' + \gamma_{n-1}') w^{n-1} \\ &= (\beta_0' + \beta_1' w + \dots + \beta_{n-1}' w^{n-1}) + (\gamma_0' + \gamma_1' w + \dots + \gamma_{n-1}' w^{n-1}) \\ &= (\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1})\sigma + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_1 v + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} v^{n-1})\sigma \\ &= c\sigma + d\sigma. \end{aligned}$$

σ preserves multiplications.

We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (cd) \sigma &= [(\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}) (\gamma_0 + \gamma_1 v + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} v^{n-1})] \sigma \\
 &= [\beta_0 \gamma_0 + (\beta_0 \gamma_1 + \beta_1 \gamma_0) v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} \gamma_{n-1} v^{2n-2}] \sigma \\
 &= (\beta_0 \gamma_0) \psi + (\beta_0 \gamma_1 + \beta_1 \gamma_0) \psi w + \dots + (\beta_{n-1} \gamma_{n-1}) \psi w^{2n-2} \\
 &= \beta_0' \gamma_0' + (\beta_0' \gamma_1' + \beta_1' \gamma_0') w + \dots + (\beta_{n-1}' \gamma_{n-1}') w^{2n-2}
 \end{aligned}$$

[$\because \psi$ preserves additions and multiplications]

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (\beta_0' + \beta_1' w + \dots + \beta_{n-1}' w^{n-1}) (\gamma_0' + \gamma_1' w + \dots + \gamma_{n-1}' w^{n-1}) \\
 &= [(\beta_0 + \beta_1 v + \dots + \beta_{n-1} v^{n-1}) \sigma] [(\gamma_0 + \gamma_1 v + \dots + \gamma_{n-1} v^{n-1}) \sigma] \\
 &= (c\sigma) (d\sigma).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence σ is an isomorphism of $F(v)$ onto $F'(w)$.

Now $v \in F(v)$ can be uniquely written as

$$v = 0 + 1v + 0v^2 + \dots + 0v^{n-1}.$$

$$\therefore v\sigma = 0 + 1w + 0w^2 + \dots + 0w^{n-1} = w.$$

Also if $\alpha \in F$ then $\alpha \in F(v)$ can be uniquely written as

$$\alpha = \alpha + 0v + 0v^2 + \dots + 0v^{n-1}.$$

$$\therefore \alpha\sigma = \alpha' + 0w + 0w^2 + \dots + 0w^{n-1} = \alpha'.$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Corollary. If $f(x) \in F[x]$ is irreducible and if a, b are two roots of $f(x)$, then $F(a)$ is isomorphic to $F(b)$ by an isomorphism which takes a onto b and which leaves every element of F fixed.

(B.H.U. 1988)

Proof. In the above theorem replace the field F' by F i.e., take $F' = F$. Take the isomorphism ψ as the identity map of F i.e., $\psi : F \rightarrow F$ such that $\alpha\psi = \alpha \forall \alpha \in F$. Then ψ leaves every element of F fixed and ψ is an isomorphism of F onto F .

Take $v = a$ and $w = b$.

Then $F(a)$ is isomorphic to $F(b)$ by an isomorphism σ such that

$$(1) \quad a\sigma = b,$$

$$(2) \quad \alpha\sigma = \alpha\psi = \alpha \text{ for every } \alpha \in F \text{ i.e., } \sigma \text{ leaves every element of } F \text{ fixed.}$$

Now re-write the proof of the above theorem and thus complete the proof of this corollary because the corollary in itself is very important.

Theorem 22. Let ψ be an isomorphism of a field F onto a field F' defined as $\alpha\psi = \alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$. Corresponding to a polynomial $f(x) = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 x + \dots + \alpha_n x^n$ in $F[x]$,

$$\text{let } f'(t) = \alpha_0' + \alpha_1' t + \dots + \alpha_n' t^n$$

be a polynomial in $F'[t]$. Show that the splitting fields E and E' of $f(x) \in F[x]$ and $f'(t) \in F'[t]$, respectively, are isomorphic by an isomorphism ϕ with the property that $\alpha\phi = \alpha\psi = \alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$.

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on the degree of some splitting field over the initial field.

To start the induction let $[E : F] = 1$. Then $E = F$ and therefore $f(x)$ resolves into a product of linear factors over F itself. By theorem 19, $f'(t)$ must also resolve into a product of linear factors over F' itself. Therefore F' is a splitting field for $f'(t)$ i.e., $F' = E'$. Hence $\phi = \psi$ provides us with an isomorphism of E onto E' coinciding with ψ on F .

Now assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true for any field F_0 and any polynomial $g(x) \in F_0[x]$ provided the degree of some splitting field E_0 of $g(x)$ over the initial field F_0 is less than n i.e., $[E_0 : F_0] < n$.

Let $[E : F] = n > 1$, where E is a splitting field of $f(x)$ over F . If $f(x)$ resolves into a product of linear factors over F , then F will be a splitting field for $f(x)$ and so we cannot have $[E : F] > 1$ because $E = F \Rightarrow [E : F] = 1$. Therefore $f(x) \in F[x]$ must have an irreducible factor $p(x) \in F[x]$ of degree $r > 1$. Let $p'(t)$ be the corresponding irreducible factor of $f'(t)$.

Now E is a splitting field for $f(x) \in F[x]$

\Rightarrow a full complement of roots of $f(x)$ are in E

\Rightarrow a full complement of roots of $p(x)$ are in E

$[\because p(x) \text{ is a factor of } f(x)]$

$\Rightarrow \exists v \in E$ such that $p(v) = 0$

$\Rightarrow [F(v) : F] = r = \deg p(x)$ [by theorem 7].

Similarly there is a $w \in E'$ such that $p'(w) = 0$.

By theorem 21 there is an isomorphism σ of $F(v)$ onto $F'(w)$ such that $\alpha\sigma = \alpha\psi = \alpha'$ for every $\alpha \in F$.

Now $[E : F] = [E : F(v)] [F(v) : F]$

$\Rightarrow [E : F(v)] = \frac{[E : F]}{[F(v) : F]} = \frac{n}{r} < n$ $[\because r > 1]$

Now let $F_0 = F(v)$ and $F'_0 = F'(w)$. Since $F_0 \supset F$, therefore $f(x) \in F[x]$ can also be regarded as $f(x) \in F_0[x]$. We claim that E is a splitting field for $f(x) \in F_0[x]$. Obviously $f(x) \in F_0[x]$ resolves into a product of linear factors over E . No proper subfield of E containing F_0 and hence F can split $f(x)$ into linear factors because we have assumed that E is a splitting field of $f(x)$ over F . Hence E is a splitting field for $f(x) \in F_0[x]$. Similarly E' is a splitting field for $f'(t) \in F'_0[t]$.

Now σ is an isomorphism of F_0 onto F_0' . E is splitting field for $f(x) \in F_0[x]$ and E' is splitting field for $f'(t) \in F_0'[t]$.

Since $[E : F_0] = [E : F(v)] < n$, therefore by our induction hypothesis there is an isomorphism ϕ of E onto E' such that

$$\phi\sigma = \alpha\sigma \text{ for all } \alpha \in F_0.$$

Now $\alpha \in F \Rightarrow \alpha \in F_0$. Therefore for every $\alpha \in F$, we have

$$\alpha\phi = \alpha\sigma = \alpha\psi = \alpha' \quad [\because \alpha\sigma = \alpha\psi = \alpha' \quad \forall \alpha \in F]$$

The proof is now complete by induction.

Corollary. Uniqueness of the splitting field. *Any two splitting fields of the same polynomial over a given field F are isomorphic by an isomorphism leaving every element of F fixed.*

(I.A.S. 1973; Meerut 76, 77, 79; Guru Nanak 82)

Proof. In the proof of theorem 22 take $F' = F$ and take ψ as the identity mapping of F i.e., $\alpha\psi = \alpha \quad \forall \alpha \in F$. Then ψ is an isomorphism of F onto F and it leaves every element of F fixed. Let E_1 and E_2 be two splitting fields for $f(x) \in F[x]$. In the above theorem take $E_1 = E$ and $E_2 = E'$. Then E_1 and E_2 are isomorphic by an isomorphism leaving every element of F fixed.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Let F be the field of rational numbers. Determine the degree of the splitting field of the polynomial $x^3 - 2$ over F .

(Meerut 1981, 84, 87)

Solution. F is the field of rational numbers.

Let $f(x) = x^3 - 2 \in F[x]$. In the field of complex numbers the three roots of $f(x)$ are $2^{1/3}$, $\omega 2^{1/3}$, $\omega^2 2^{1/3}$, where $\omega = (-1 + i\sqrt{3})/2$ and where $2^{1/3}$ is a real cube root of 2. The polynomial $f(x)$ is irreducible over F . We have $\deg f(x) = 3$. Also $2^{1/3}$ is a root of $f(x)$. Therefore $2^{1/3}$ is algebraic over F of degree 3. Therefore $[F(2^{1/3}) : F] = 3$.

Let F be the splitting field of $f(x)$ over F . The field $F(2^{1/3})$ cannot split $f(x)$ because as a subfield of the real field it cannot contain the complex, but not real, number $\omega 2^{1/3}$. Therefore $F(2^{1/3})$ will be a proper subfield of E . So we have

$$[E : F] > [F(2^{1/3}) : F] = 3.$$

By theorem 17, $[E : F] \leq 3! = 6$.

Also $[E : F] = [E : F(2^{1/3})][F(2^{1/3}) : F]$

$\Rightarrow [F(2^{1/3}) : F]$ is a divisor of $[E : F] \Rightarrow 3$ is a divisor of $[E : F]$.

Now $[E : F] \leq 6$, $[E : F] > 3$ and 3 is a divisor of $[E : F]$.

Therefore we must have $[E : F] = 6$.

Ex. 2. Let F be the field of rational numbers and

$$f(x) = x^4 + x^2 + 1 \in F[x].$$

Show that $F(\omega)$ where $\omega = (-1 + i\sqrt{3})/2$ is a splitting field of $f(x)$. Also determine the degree of the splitting field of $f(x)$ over F .

Solution. We have

$$x^4 + x^3 + 1 = (x^3 + 1)^2 - x^2 = (x^3 + x + 1)(x^3 - x + 1).$$

In some extension of F if α is a root of $x^3 + x + 1$, then $-\alpha$ is a root of $x^3 - x + 1$ in that extension. Thus if any extension of F splits $x^3 + x + 1$, then it will also split $x^3 - x + 1$ and consequently it will split $x^4 + x^3 + 1$. Thus the splitting field of $x^4 + x^3 + 1 \in F[x]$ is the same as that of $x^3 + x + 1 \in F[x]$.

Let $f(x) = x^3 + x + 1$. In the field of complex numbers the two roots of $x^3 + x + 1$ are ω, ω^2 . Since $f(x)$ is irreducible over F and $\deg f(x) = 3$, therefore in any extension of F of degree less than 3, $f(x)$ cannot have a root. So if E is the splitting field of $f(x)$, then $[E : F] \geq 3$. By theorem 17, $[E : F] \leq 3$. So we must have $[E : F] = 3$.

The field $F(\omega)$ contains a root ω of $f(x)$. Since $\omega \in F(\omega) \Rightarrow \omega^2 \in F(\omega)$, therefore $F(\omega)$ contains both the roots ω and ω^2 of $f(x)$. Thus $F(\omega)$ splits $x^3 + x + 1$.

The polynomial $f(x)$ is irreducible over F . We have $\deg f(x) = 3$. Also ω is a root of $f(x)$. Therefore ω is algebraic over F of degree 3. So we have $[F(\omega) : F] = 3$.

Hence $F(\omega)$ is a splitting field of $f(x)$.

Ex. 3. If p is a prime number prove that the splitting field over F , the field of rational numbers, of the polynomial $x^p - 1$ is of degree $p - 1$. [I.A.S. 1972; Guru Nanak 90]

Solution. The polynomial $f(x) = x^p - 1 \in F[x]$ can be factored over F as

$$f(x) = (x - 1)(x^{p-1} + x^{p-2} + \dots + x^2 + x + 1).$$

$$\text{Let } q(x) = x^{p-1} + x^{p-2} + \dots + x^2 + x + 1 \in F[x].$$

Since 1 will belong to any extension of F , therefore the splitting field of $q(x)$ will also be the splitting field of $f(x)$.

Since p is prime, therefore $q(x)$ is irreducible over F . [See Ex. 3 page 393]. We have $\deg q(x) = p - 1$. If α is a root of $q(x)$ in some extension of F , then α is algebraic over F of degree $p - 1$. So $[F(\alpha) : F] = p - 1$.

Now $F(\alpha)$ is a minimal extension of F containing α . Therefore no extension of F of degree less than $p - 1$ can have a root of $q(x)$. So if E is the splitting field of $q(x)$, then we must have

$$[E : F] \geq p - 1.$$

We claim that: $[E : F] = p - 1$.

Let us solve $x^p - 1 = 0$ in \mathbb{C} , the field of complex numbers.

We have $x^p = 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow x &= (1 + 0i)^{1/p} = (\cos 0 + i \sin 0)^{1/p} \\ &= (\cos 2n\pi + i \sin 2n\pi)^{1/p}, \text{ where } n \text{ is any integer} \\ &= \cos \frac{2n\pi}{p} + i \sin \frac{2n\pi}{p} = e^{i2n\pi/p}. \end{aligned}$$

Putting $n=0, 1, \dots, p-1$, we get

$$1, e^{2\pi i/p}, e^{4\pi i/p}, \dots, e^{2\pi i(p-1)/p}$$

as the p roots of $x^p - 1$ in \mathbb{C} .

These p roots form a cyclic multiplicative group of prime order p .

Let $\beta = e^{2\pi i/p}$. Then the elements of this group can be written as

$$1, \beta, \beta^2, \dots, \beta^{p-1}.$$

The field $F(\beta)$ contains β . Also $1, \beta^2, \dots, \beta^{p-1} \in F(\beta)$. Thus the field $F(\beta)$ splits $x^p - 1$.

Since β is a root of $x^p - 1$ and $\beta \neq 1$, therefore β is also a root of $x^{p-1} + \dots + x^2 + x + 1$ which is irreducible over F and is of degree $p-1$.

So $[F(\beta) : F] = p - 1$.

Hence $F(\beta)$ is the splitting field of $x^p - 1$.

Ex. 4. Let F be the field of rational numbers. Determine the degree of the splitting field of the polynomial $x^5 - 1$ over F .

Solution. Since 5 is prime, therefore proceed as in Ex. 3.

Ex. 5. If E is an extension of F and if $f(x) \in F[x]$ and if ϕ is an automorphism of E leaving every element of F fixed, prove that ϕ must take a root of $f(x)$ lying in E into a root of $f(x)$ in E .

(Meerut 1979)

Solution. Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n$, where $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in F$.

E is an extension of F and ϕ is an automorphism of E leaving every element of F fixed. Thus $\phi(a) = a \forall a \in F$.

Let α be a root of $f(x)$ in E . Then $a_0 + a_1\alpha + \dots + a_n\alpha^n = 0$.

To prove that $\phi(\alpha)$ is also a root of $f(x)$ in E . Obviously $\phi(\alpha) \in E$ because ϕ is a mapping from E onto E . Let $\phi(\alpha) = \beta$. If r is any positive integer, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\alpha^r) &= \phi(\alpha \alpha \dots \alpha \text{ } r \text{ times}) \\ &= \phi(\alpha) \phi(\alpha) \dots r \text{ times} \quad [\because \phi \text{ is an automorphism}] \end{aligned}$$

$$= \beta \beta \beta \dots r \text{ times} = \beta^r.$$

Also ϕ will map 0 onto 0 because it is an automorphism. Thus $\phi(0)=0$.

$$\text{Now } a_0 + a_1\alpha + \dots + a_n\alpha^n = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a_0 + a_1\alpha + \dots + a_n\alpha^n) = \phi(0)$$

$$\Rightarrow \phi(a_0) + \phi(a_1)\phi(\alpha) + \dots + \phi(a_n)\phi(\alpha^n) = 0$$

[Since ϕ is an automorphism, therefore it preserves additions and multiplications. Also $\phi(0)=0$]

$$\Rightarrow a_0 + a_1\beta + a_2\beta^2 + \dots + a_n\beta^n = 0 \quad [\text{since } \phi(\alpha^r) = \beta^r \text{ and } a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in F. \text{ Note } \phi(a) = a \quad \forall a \in F]$$

$$\Rightarrow \beta \text{ is a root of } f(x).$$

Ex. 6. Using the result of Ex. 5, prove that if the complex number z is a root of the polynomial $p(x)$ having real coefficients then \bar{z} , the complex conjugate of z , is also a root of $p(x)$.

Solution. Let R be the field of real numbers and C be the field of complex numbers. Then C is an extension of R . We have

$$C = \{a + ib : a, b \in R\}.$$

Let $p(x) \in R[x]$ and let $z = x + iy$ be a root of $p(x)$ in C .

Then to prove that $\bar{z} = x - iy$ is also a root of $p(x)$ in C .

Let ϕ be a mapping from C into C defined as

$$\phi(x + iy) = x - iy \quad \forall x, y \in R.$$

We claim that ϕ is an automorphism of C .

ϕ is one-one.

We have $\phi(a + ib) = \phi(c + id)$ where $a, b, c, d \in R$

$$\Rightarrow a - ib = c - id \Rightarrow a = c, b = d \Rightarrow a + ib = c + id.$$

ϕ is onto. Let $a + ib$ be any element of C . Then $a - ib \in C$, and we have $\phi(a - ib) = a + ib$.

ϕ preserves additions and multiplications.

$$\text{We have } \phi[(a + ib) + (c + id)] = \phi[(a + c) + i(b + d)]$$

$$= (a + c) - i(b + d) = (a - ib) + (c - id) = \phi(a + ib) + \phi(c + id).$$

$$\text{Also } \phi[(a + ib)(c + id)] = \phi[(ac - bd) + i(ad + bc)]$$

$$= (ac - bd) - i(ad + bc) = (a - ib)(c - id) = [\phi(a + ib)][\phi(c + id)].$$

Hence ϕ is an automorphism of C .

If $a \in R$, then as an element of C it can be written as $a + i0$.

We have $\phi(a) = \phi(a + i0) = a - i0 = a$.

Thus ϕ leaves every element of R fixed.

Hence by the result of Ex. 5 if z is a root of $p(x)$ in C , then $\phi(z) = \bar{z}$ is also a root of $p(x)$ in C .

Ex. 7. Using the result of Ex. 5 prove that if m is an integer which is not a perfect square and if $\alpha + \beta\sqrt{m}$ (α, β rational) is the

root of a polynomial $p(x)$ having rational coefficients, then $\alpha - \beta\sqrt{m}$ is also a root of $p(x)$.

Solution. Let \mathbb{Q} be the field of rational numbers and let

$$K = \{x + y\sqrt{m} : x, y \in \mathbb{Q}\}.$$

It can be easily seen that $(K, +, \cdot)$ is a field. Also K is an extension of \mathbb{Q} . Let $p(x) \in \mathbb{Q}[x]$ and let $\alpha + \beta\sqrt{m}$ be a root of $p(x)$ in K . Then to prove that $\alpha - \beta\sqrt{m}$ is also a root of $p(x)$ in K .

Let ϕ be a mapping from K into K defined as

$$\phi(x + y\sqrt{m}) = x - y\sqrt{m} \quad \forall x, y \in \mathbb{Q}.$$

We claim that ϕ is an automorphism of K .

ϕ is one-one.

We have $\phi(a + b\sqrt{m}) = \phi(c + d\sqrt{m})$, $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Q}$

$$\Rightarrow a - b\sqrt{m} = c - d\sqrt{m} \Rightarrow a = c, b = d \Rightarrow a + b\sqrt{m} = c + d\sqrt{m}.$$

ϕ is onto.

Let $a + b\sqrt{m}$ be any element of K . Then $a - b\sqrt{m} \in K$. We have $\phi(a - b\sqrt{m}) = a + b\sqrt{m} \Rightarrow \phi$ is onto.

ϕ preserves additions and multiplications. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \phi[(a + b\sqrt{m}) + (c + d\sqrt{m})] &= \phi[(a + c) + (b + d)\sqrt{m}] \\ &= (a + c) - (b + d)\sqrt{m} = (a - b\sqrt{m}) + (c - d\sqrt{m}) \\ &= \phi(a + b\sqrt{m}) + \phi(c + d\sqrt{m}). \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } \phi[(a + b\sqrt{m})(c + d\sqrt{m})] &= \phi[(ac + bdm) + (ad + bc)\sqrt{m}] \\ &= (ac + bdm) - (ad + bc)\sqrt{m} = (a - b\sqrt{m})(c - d\sqrt{m}) \\ &= [\phi(a + b\sqrt{m})][\phi(c + d\sqrt{m})]. \end{aligned}$$

Hence ϕ is an automorphism of K . If $a \in \mathbb{Q}$, then as an element of K it can be written as $a + 0\sqrt{m}$. We have

$$\phi(a) = \phi(a + 0\sqrt{m}) = a - 0\sqrt{m} = a.$$

Thus ϕ leaves every element of \mathbb{Q} fixed.

Hence, by the result of Ex. 5 if $\alpha + \beta\sqrt{m}$ is a root of $p(x)$ in K , then $\phi(\alpha + \beta\sqrt{m}) = \alpha - \beta\sqrt{m}$ is also a root of $p(x)$ in K .

Ex. 8. Show that the polynomials $x^3 + 3$ and $x^3 + x + 1$ have same splitting field over \mathbb{Q} , the field of rational numbers. [Meerut 1974]

§ 6. More about roots.

Derivative of a polynomial over a field. Definition.

Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_nx^n$ be a polynomial over a field F . Then the derivative of $f(x)$ denoted by $f'(x)$, is defined as the polynomial

$$f'(x) = a_1 + 2a_2x + \dots + (n-1)a_{n-1}x^{n-2} + na_nx^{n-1} \text{ in } F[x].$$

Note. Here by 2 we mean $1+1$, by n we mean $1+1+\dots$ upto n times. The field F is arbitrary. It may be a field of finite characteristic or it may be a field of characteristic zero or infinite. If F is a field of finite characteristic p , then the derivative

of the polynomial x^p is $px^{p-1}=0$ $x^{p-1}=0$. Recall that $p=1+1+1+\dots$ upto p times $=0$ because the characteristic of the field is p . Thus we see that even the derivative of a non-constant polynomial can be zero if field F is a field of finite characteristic.

Theorem 23 Let F be a field and let $f(x) \in F[x]$ be such that $f'(x)=0$. Prove that

(i) If characteristic $F=0$, then $f(x)=a \in F$ i.e., $f(x)$ is a constant polynomial.

(ii) If characteristic $F=p \neq 0$, then $f(x)=g(x^p)$ for some polynomial $g(x) \in F[x]$ i.e., $f(x)$ is a polynomial in x^p .

(Kanpur 1970)

Proof. Let $f(x)=a_0+a_1x+a_2x^2+\dots+a_ix^i+\dots+a_nx^n$ be a polynomial over a field F .

We have $f'(x)=a_1+2a_2x+\dots+ia_ix^{i-1}+\dots+na_nx^{n-1}$.

It is given that $f'(x)=0=\text{zero polynomial}$. Therefore

$$a_1+2a_2x+\dots+ia_ix^{i-1}+\dots+na_nx^{n-1}=0+0x+\dots+0x^{n-1}.$$

By definition of equality of polynomials, we get

$$a_1=0, 2a_2=0, \dots, ia_i=0, \dots, na_n=0.$$

Case (i). Characteristic $F=0$.

We have $ia_i=0$

$$\Rightarrow a_i+a_i+\dots \text{ upto } i \text{ times } =0$$

\Rightarrow order of a_i regarded as an element of the additive group of F is $\leq i$

\Rightarrow order of a_i is finite

$\Rightarrow a_i=0$, because in a field of characteristic 0 each non-zero element is of infinite order and zero is the only element of finite order 1.

Thus $a_1=0, a_2=0, \dots, a_i=0, \dots, a_n=0$.

$\therefore f(x)=a_0 \in F \Rightarrow f(x)$ is constant.

Case (ii). Characteristic $F=p \neq 0$.

In this case each non-zero element of F is of order p and the zero element of F is of order 1.

From the theory of groups we know that if a is an element of order p , then $a^m=e \Rightarrow p$ is a divisor of m .

Here $e=0$, the identity of the additive group of F .

Now $ia_i=0$

\Rightarrow either $a_i=0$ or if $a_i \neq 0$ then p should be a divisor of i

\Rightarrow either $a_i=0$ or if $a_i \neq 0$ then $i=\lambda p$ where λ is some positive integer.

Therefore in this case the term x^i will occur in $f(x)$ only if it

is of the form $(x^p)^k$. Thus $f(x)$ will be a polynomial in x^p .

Theorem 24. For any $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ and any $\alpha \in F$

(i) $[f(x) + g(x)]' = f'(x) + g'(x)$

(ii) $[\alpha f(x)]' = \alpha f'(x)$

(iii) $[f(x)g(x)]' = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$.

Proof. (i) Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n$
and $g(x) = b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_mx^m$.

Without loss of generality, we can take $n \geq m$.

We have $f(x) + g(x) = (a_0 + b_0) + (a_1 + b_1)x + (a_2 + b_2)x^2 + \dots$
 $+ (a_m + b_m)x^m + (a_{m+1} + 0)x^{m+1} + \dots + (a_n + 0)x^n$, where
 a_{m+1}, \dots, a_n are all zero if $n = m$.

Now $[f(x) + g(x)]' = (a_1 + b_1) + 2(a_2 + b_2)x + \dots$
 $\dots + m(a_m + b_m)x^{m-1} + (m+1)a_{m+1}x^m + \dots + na_nx^{n-1}$.

Now if $a, b \in F$ and k is any integer, then $k(a+b) = ka + kb$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore [f(x) + g(x)]' &= [a_1 + 2a_2x + \dots + ma_mx^{m-1} + (m+1)a_{m+1}x^m + \dots + na_nx^{n-1}] \\ &\quad + [b_1 + 2b_2x + \dots + mb_mx^{m-1}] \\ &= f'(x) + g'(x). \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Let $f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n$.

We have $\alpha f(x) = \alpha a_0 + \alpha a_1x + \alpha a_2x^2 + \dots + \alpha a_nx^n$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore [\alpha f(x)]' &= \alpha a_1 + 2(\alpha a_2)x + \dots + n(\alpha a_n)x^{n-1} \\ &= \alpha[a_1 + 2a_2x + \dots + na_nx^{n-1}] = \alpha f'(x). \end{aligned}$$

(iii) Since the product of $f(x)$ with $g(x)$ is a linear combination over F of powers of x , therefore by virtue of results (i) and (ii) it is sufficient to prove the result (iii) for products of two powers of x . Let $f(x) = x^r, g(x) = x^s$ where r and s are positive integers.

We have $f(x)g(x) = x^r x^s = x^{r+s}$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} [f(x)g(x)]' &= (r+s)x^{r+s-1} = rx^{r+s-1} + sx^{r+s-1} \\ &= (rx^{r-1})x^s + x^r(sx^{s-1}) = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x). \end{aligned}$$

Condition for multiple roots.

Theorem 25. The polynomial $f(x) \in F[x]$ has a multiple root if and only if $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have a nontrivial (that is, of positive degree) common factor. (B.H.U. 1987; Madurai 88)

Proof. Before proving the main theorem let us first prove an important result namely :

If $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ in $F[x]$ have a non-trivial common factor in $K[x]$ where K is some extension of F , then they must have a non-trivial common factor in $F[x]$.

We shall prove this result by contradiction. Suppose $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have a non-trivial common factor in $K[x]$ but they have no

non-trivial common factor in $F[x]$. Then $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are relatively prime as elements in $F[x]$. Therefore there exist two polynomials $a(x)$ and $b(x)$ in $F[x]$ such that

$$a(x)f(x) + b(x)g(x) = 1.$$

Since $K \supseteq F$, therefore $a(x)$, $b(x)$, $f(x)$, $g(x)$ can all be taken as polynomials in $K[x]$.

Therefore $a(x)f(x) + b(x)g(x) = 1$ implies that $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are relatively prime as elements in $K[x]$. Note that if $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have a common factor of positive degree then this factor must divide 1 which is impossible. Thus we get a contradiction. Hence $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ must have a nontrivial common factor in $F[x]$.

Now we come to the proof of the main theorem. By virtue of the result we just proved we can assume without loss of generality that the roots of $f(x)$ all lie in F (otherwise extend F to K the splitting field of $f(x)$).

Now suppose that α is a multiple root of $f(x)$ of multiplicity $m > 1$. Then $(x - \alpha)^m$ is a divisor of $f(x)$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= (x - \alpha)^m q(x). \quad \text{We have} \\ f'(x) &= [(x - \alpha)^m]' q(x) + (x - \alpha)^m q'(x) \\ &= m(x - \alpha)^{m-1} q(x) + (x - \alpha)^m q'(x) \\ &\quad [\text{Note that if } m > 1, \text{ then the derivative of } \\ &\quad (x - \alpha)^m \text{ is } m(x - \alpha)^{m-1}] \\ &= (x - \alpha) r(x), \text{ since } m > 1. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $(x - \alpha)$ is a common factor of $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$. So $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have a non-trivial common factor.

Converse. Suppose that $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have a non-trivial common factor. Then to prove that $f(x)$ has a multiple root.

Suppose that $f(x)$ has no multiple root.

Let the roots of $f(x)$ be $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ where the α_i 's are all distinct. Without loss of generality we can assume $f(x)$ to be monic. Then $f(x) = (x - \alpha_1)(x - \alpha_2) \dots (x - \alpha_n)$. Therefore

$$f'(x) = \sum_{i=1}^n (x - \alpha_1) \dots \overline{(x - \alpha_i)} \dots (x - \alpha_n)$$

where the bar — denotes the term is omitted.

Our claim is that no root of $f(x)$ is a root of $f'(x)$, for

$$f'(\alpha_i) = \prod_{j \neq i} (\alpha_i - \alpha_j) \neq 0$$

since $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ are all distinct. Now if $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have a non-

trivial common factor, then they have a common root which is any root of their common factor. Therefore $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have no common root implies that they have no nontrivial common factor. Thus we have proved that if $f(x)$ has no multiple root, then $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have no non-trivial common factor.

Hence if $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have a nontrivial common factor, then $f(x)$ must have a multiple root. This proves the other side of the theorem.

Theorem 26. *If $f(x) \in F[x]$ is irreducible, then :*

- (i) *If the characteristic of F is 0, $f(x)$ has no multiple roots.*
- (ii) *If the characteristic of F is $p \neq 0$, $f(x)$ has a multiple root only if it is of the form $f(x) = g(x^p)$ for some $g(x) \in F[x]$.*

(B.H.U. 1987)

Proof. Suppose $f(x)$ has a multiple root. Then by theorem 25, $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have a non-trivial common factor in $F[x]$. Since $f(x)$ is irreducible in $F[x]$, therefore its only non-trivial factor in $F[x]$ is $f(x)$. Thus $f(x)$ is a factor of $f'(x)$. Now if $f'(x) \neq 0$, then $\deg f'(x)$ is less than that of $f(x)$ and so $f(x)$ cannot be a factor of $f'(x)$. Therefore $f(x) \mid f'(x)$ is possible only if $f'(x) = 0$. In characteristic 0 this implies that $f(x)$ is a constant, which has no roots; in characteristic $p \neq 0$, this forces $f(x) = g(x^p)$ for some $g(x) \in F[x]$.

Theorem 27. *If F is a field of characteristic $p \neq 0$, then the polynomial*

$$x^{p^n} - x \in F[x],$$

for $n \geq 1$, has distinct roots.

Proof. Let $f(x) = x^{p^n} - x$. Then $f'(x) = p^n x^{p^n-1} - 1$.

Now by $p \in F$, we mean $1+1+1+\dots$ upto p times. Since F is of characteristic p , therefore the order of 1 as an element of the additive group of F is p . Therefore $p = 1+1+\dots$ upto p times $= 0$.

Hence $p^n = 0$. Therefore $f'(x) = -1$.

Now we see that $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ have no nontrivial common factor. Therefore by theorem 25, $f(x)$ has no multiple roots.

Theorem 28. *If F is of characteristic 0 and if a, b are algebraic over F , then there exists an element $c \in F(a, b)$ such that*

$$F(a, b) = F(c).$$

Or

(Meerut 1973, 78)

If F is of characteristic 0 and if a, b are algebraic over F , then $F(a, b)$ is a simple extension of F .

(Guru Nanak 1988)

Proof. It is given that the elements a and b are algebraic over F . Let $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be the irreducible polynomials over F

satisfied by a and b respectively. Let $\deg f(x)=m$ and $\deg g(x)=n$. suppose E is an extension of F in which both $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ split completely. Since $f(x)$ is irreducible and characteristic $F=0$, therefore by theorem 26 all the roots of $f(x)$ are distinct. Similarly all the roots of $g(x)$ are distinct. Let a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m be the roots of $f(x)$ and b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n be the roots of $g(x)$. For the sake of convenience let us put $a_1=a, b_1=b$.

If $j \neq 1$, then $b_j \neq b_1=b$. Therefore if in E , we have

$$a_i + \lambda b_j = a + \lambda b, \quad i=1, \dots, m, j=2, \dots, n,$$

then $\lambda = \frac{a_i - a}{b - b_j}$ which is a unique element of E .

Thus for each pair of values of i and j provided $j \neq 1$, the equation $a_i + \lambda b_j = a + \lambda b$ has only one solution in E . By putting $i=1, \dots, m, j=2, \dots, n$, the equation $a_i + \lambda b_j = a + \lambda b$ can take only a finite number of forms. Thus there are only a finite number of elements of E such that

$$a_i + \lambda b_j = a + \lambda b, \quad \text{where } i=1, \dots, m, j=2, \dots, n.$$

Now F has an infinite number of elements since characteristic $F=0$. Each element of F is in E . Therefore we must have an element $\gamma \in F$ such that

$$a_i + \gamma b_j \neq a + \gamma b \quad \text{for all } i \text{ and for all } j \neq 1.$$

Let $c = a + \gamma b$. Since $a, b, \gamma \in F(a, b)$, therefore $c \in F(a, b)$.

We shall prove that $F(a, b) = F(c)$.

Since $c \in F(a, b)$ therefore $F(c) \subseteq F(a, b)$.

Now it remains to prove that $F(a, b) \subseteq F(c)$.

For this we shall prove that both a and b are in $F(c)$.

Now b satisfies the polynomial $g(x)$ over F . The polynomial $g(x)$ over F can also be regarded as a polynomial over $F(c)$ because $F \subseteq F(c)$. Let us put $F(c) = K$. Let $h(x) = f(c - \gamma x)$. Since $c \in K$, and $\gamma \in F \Rightarrow \gamma \in K$, therefore $h(x)$ is a polynomial in $K[x]$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} h(b) &= f(c - \gamma b) \\ &= f(a) && [\because c = a + \gamma b] \\ &= 0, \text{ since } a \text{ is a root of } f(x). \end{aligned}$$

Thus b satisfies both the polynomials $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ in $K[x]$. Therefore $x - b$ is a common factor of $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ in some extension E of K . [Note that $K = F(c) \subseteq F(a, b) \subseteq E$. Hence E is an extension of K]. We shall prove that $x - b$ is the greatest common divisor of $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ in $K[x]$. Let $b_j \neq b$ be another root of $g(x)$. Then

$$h(b_j) = f(c - \gamma b_j)$$

$\neq 0$, since by our choice of γ , $c - \gamma b_j$ for $j \neq 1$ avoids all roots a_i of $f(x)$.

[Note that $a_i + \gamma b_j \neq a + \gamma b = c$ for all i and for all $j \neq 1$].

Therefore b_j is not a root of $h(x)$. Thus any factor of $g(x)$ in $E[x]$ other than $x - b$ is not a factor of $h(x)$.

Also $g(x)$ has all its roots distinct. So $(x - b)^r$, where $r \geq 2$, is not a divisor of $g(x)$. Hence $x - b$ is the greatest common divisor of $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ in some extension E of K . Since $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ have a non-trivial common factor over some extension of K , therefore they must have a non-trivial common factor over K . [See initial remark in the proof of theorem 25]. Consequently they must have a non-trivial greatest common divisor over K which must be a divisor of $x - b$. But the degree of $x - b$ is 1. Therefore $x - b$ itself is the greatest common divisor of $g(x)$ and $h(x)$ in $K[x]$.

Hence $b \in K = F(c)$.

Now $c, \gamma, b \in F(c) \Rightarrow c - \gamma b \in F(c) \Rightarrow a \in F(c)$.

Thus both a, b are in $F(c)$. We have

$$a, b \in F(c) \Rightarrow F(a, b) \subseteq F(c).$$

Finally $F(a, b) \subseteq F(c)$, $F(c) \subseteq F(a, b) \Rightarrow F(a, b) = F(c)$.

This proves the theorem.

Theorem 29. Any finite extension of a field of characteristic 0 is a simple extension. [B.H.U. 1987; Madurai 88]

Proof. Let K be a finite extension of a field of characteristic 0. Then K is an algebraic extension of F and can be obtained by adjoining a finite number of algebraic elements of F . Let

$$K = F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n).$$

We are to prove that there is an element $c \in K$ such that $K = F(c)$.

We have $K = F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-2}, \alpha_{n-1}, \alpha_n)$

$$= F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-2}) (\alpha_{n-1}, \alpha_n)$$

$$= F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-2}) (d) \text{ where}$$

$$d \in F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-2}) (\alpha_{n-1}, \alpha_n)$$

$$= F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-1}, \alpha_n) = K.$$

[We have applied theorem 28 by taking

$$F = F(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{n-2}) \text{ and } \alpha_{n-1} = a, \alpha_n = b]$$

$$= F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_{n-2}, d).$$

By repeated application of theorem 28, in the manner shown above, we shall get after a finite number of steps

$$K = F(c) \text{ where } c \in F(c) = K.$$

Hence K is a simple extension of F .

Separable element. Definition. An element a in an extension K of F is called separable over F if it satisfies a polynomial over F having no multiple roots.

Separable extension. Definition. An extension K of a field F is called separable over F if each element of K is separable over F .

[Meerut 1981, 82, 83]

Perfect field. Definition. A field F is called perfect if all finite extensions of F are separable.

Theorem 30. Show that any field of characteristic 0 is perfect.

Proof. Let F be a field of characteristic 0. The field F will be a perfect field if every finite extension of F is separable over F . Let K be any finite extension of F . Then to prove that K is separable over F . Let $a \in K$ be arbitrary. Then K will be separable over F if a is separable over F i.e., if a satisfies a polynomial over F having no multiple roots.

Let $[K : F] = n$.

Then a satisfies a non-zero polynomial in $F[x]$ of degree at most n . [See theorem 7].

Suppose a satisfies $f(x) \in F[x]$. Then $f(a) = 0$. By the unique factorization theorem for polynomials over a field the polynomial $f(x) \in F[x]$ can be expressed as

$$f(x) = q_1(x) q_2(x) \dots q_m(x)$$

where $q_1(x), \dots, q_m(x)$ are irreducible elements in $F[x]$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} f(a) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow q_1(a) q_2(a) \dots q_m(a) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow q_i(a) &= 0 \text{ for at least one } i \text{ between } 1 \text{ and } m \\ \Rightarrow a &\text{ satisfies an irreducible polynomial } q_i(x) \text{ in } F[x]. \end{aligned}$$

Since characteristic F is 0 and $q_i(x) \in F[x]$ is irreducible, therefore $q_i(x)$ cannot have multiple roots. [See theorem 26]

Thus a satisfies a polynomial over F having no multiple roots.

Hence F is a perfect field.

§ 7. The Elements of Galois Theory.

Let $p(x)$ be a polynomial in $F[x]$ where F is any field. In this section we shall associate with $p(x)$ a group called the Galois group of $p(x)$. This Galois group will turn out to be a certain permutation group of the roots of the polynomial.

In this section we shall assume that all our fields are of characteristic 0. Then we can make free use of theorems 28 and

29. However most of the results will be true for an arbitrary field *i.e.*, they will also be true for fields having finite characteristic. Therefore we shall prefer to mention in the statement of the theorem whether the field is of characteristic 0 or an arbitrary field. If we write the words 'any field' then the result will also be true for finite characteristic fields.

Automorphism of a field. Definition.

A one-one mapping σ of a field K onto itself is called, an automorphism of K if

$$\sigma(a+b) = \sigma(a) + \sigma(b) \text{ and } \sigma(ab) = \sigma(a) \sigma(b) \text{ for all } a, b \in K.$$

Two automorphisms σ_1 and σ_2 of K are said to be equal if

$$\sigma_1(a) = \sigma_2(a) \quad \forall a \in K.$$

Thus σ_1 and σ_2 will be distinct if $\sigma_1(a) \neq \sigma_2(a)$ for some element a in K .

Note. If σ is an automorphism of a field K , then

$$(i) \quad \sigma(0) = 0, \quad (ii) \quad \sigma(-a) = -\sigma(a),$$

$$(iii) \quad \sigma(1) = 1, \quad (iv) \quad \sigma(-1) = -1,$$

$$(v) \quad \text{If } a \neq 0, \text{ then } \sigma(a^{-1}) = [\sigma(a)]^{-1}.$$

To prove these results see the corresponding results on isomorphism of rings. Automorphism is nothing but a special type of isomorphism.

Group of automorphisms of a field.

Theorem 31. Let $A(K)$ be the collection of all automorphisms of a field K . Then it can be easily seen that $A(K)$ is a group with respect to the operation known as composite of two functions.

Proof. Let $A(K)$ be the collection of all automorphisms of a field K . Then $A(K) = \{f : f \text{ is an automorphism of } K\}$.

We shall prove that $A(K)$ is a group with respect to composite of mappings as the operation.

Closure property. Let $f, g \in A(K)$. Then f, g are one-one mappings of K onto itself. Therefore gf is also a one-one mapping of K onto itself.

If a, b be any two elements of K , we have

$$\begin{aligned} (gf)(ab) &= g[f(ab)] = g[f(a)f(b)] = g[f(a)]g[f(b)] \\ &= [(gf)(a)][(gf)(b)]. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } (gf)(a+b) &= g[f(a+b)] = g[f(a)+f(b)] \\ &= g[f(a)]+g[f(b)] = (gf)(a)+(gf)(b). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore gf$ is also an automorphism of K . Thus $A(K)$ is closed with respect to composite composition.

Associativity. We know that composite of arbitrary mappings is associative. Therefore composite of automorphisms is also associative.

Existence of identity. The identity function I on K is also an automorphism of K . Obviously I is one-one onto and if $a, b \in K$, then $I(ab) = ab = I(a)I(b)$, and $I(a+b) = a+b = I(a)+I(b)$.

Thus $I \in A(K)$ and if $f \in A(K)$, we have $If = f = fI$.

Existence of inverse. Let $f \in A(K)$. Since f is a one-one mapping of K onto itself, therefore f^{-1} exists and is also a one-one mapping of K onto itself. We shall show that f^{-1} is also an automorphism of K .

Let $a, b \in K$. Then $\exists a', b' \in K$ such that

$$f^{-1}(a) = a' \Leftrightarrow f(a') = a \text{ and } f^{-1}(b) = b' \Leftrightarrow f(b') = b.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } f^{-1}(ab) &= f^{-1}[f(a')f(b')] = f^{-1}[f(a'b')] = a'b' \\ &= f^{-1}(a)f^{-1}(b). \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } f^{-1}(a+b) &= f^{-1}[f(a')+f(b')] = f^{-1}[f(a'+b')] = a'+b' \\ &= f^{-1}(a)+f^{-1}(b). \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore f^{-1}$ is an automorphism of K and thus $f \in A(K) \Rightarrow f^{-1} \in A(K)$. Therefore each element of $A(K)$ possesses inverse.

Hence $A(K)$ is a group with respect to composite composition.

Fixed field. Definition. Let G be a subgroup (or simply a subset) of the group of all automorphisms of a field K . Then the fixed field of G is the set of all elements $a \in K$ such that $\sigma(a) = a$ for all $\sigma \in G$.

The above definition of fixed field will be sensible only if we are able to show that all elements $a \in K$ such that $\sigma(a) = a$ for all $\sigma \in G$ actually form a subfield of K . We have the following theorem :

Theorem 32. Let G be a subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of a field K . Then the fixed field of G is a subfield of K .
[Meerut 1987; Banaras 70]

Proof. Let G be a subgroup (or simply a subset) of the group of all automorphisms of a field K . Let

$$H = \{a \in K : \sigma(a) = a \forall \sigma \in G\}.$$

To prove that H is a subfield of K .

Obviously H is not empty because at least 0 and 1 are in H . We have $\sigma(0) = 0$ and $\sigma(1) = 1$ for all $\sigma \in G$.

Let $a, b \in H$. Then $\sigma(a) = a, \sigma(b) = b$, for all $\sigma \in G$. For any $\sigma \in G$, we have $\sigma(a-b) = \sigma(a) - \sigma(b) = a - b$.

Thus $a, b \in H \Rightarrow a - b \in H$.

Further let $a \in H$, $0 \neq b \in H$. Then $\sigma(a) = a$, $\sigma(b) = b$ for all $\sigma \in G$. Also $0 \neq b \Rightarrow b^{-1}$ exists. For any $\sigma \in G$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma(ab^{-1}) &= \sigma(a)\sigma(b^{-1}) \\ &= [\sigma(a)] [\sigma(b)]^{-1} \quad [\text{Note that under an isomorphism} \\ &\quad \sigma(b^{-1}) = [\sigma(b)]^{-1}] \\ &= ab^{-1}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $a \in H$, $0 \neq b \in H \Rightarrow ab^{-1} \in H$. Hence H is a subfield of K .

Group of automorphisms of a field K relative to a subfield F of K .

Theorem 33. *Let F be a subfield of the field K . Let $G(K, F)$ be the set of those automorphisms of K which leave every element of F fixed. In other words the automorphism f of K is in $G(K, F)$ if and only if $f(\alpha) = \alpha$ for every $\alpha \in F$. Prove that $G(K, F)$ is a subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of K .*

[Banaras 1970; Meerut 77]

Proof. First we see that $G(K, F)$ is not empty because at least the identity automorphism I of K is in $G(K, F)$. Since I is the identity mapping of K , therefore $I(\alpha) = \alpha$ for every $\alpha \in F$.

Now let $f, g \in G(K, F)$. Then

$f(\alpha) = \alpha$ for every $\alpha \in F$ and $g(\alpha) = \alpha$ for every $\alpha \in F$.

If $\alpha \in F$ be arbitrary, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(gf^{-1})(\alpha) &= g[f^{-1}(\alpha)] \\ &= g(\alpha) \quad [\because f(\alpha) = \alpha \Rightarrow f^{-1}(\alpha) = \alpha] \\ &= \alpha.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $gf^{-1} \in G(K, F)$.

Since $g, f \in G(K, F) \Rightarrow gf^{-1} \in G(K, F)$, therefore $G(K, F)$ is a subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of K .

Definition. *Let F be a subfield of the field K . Then the group of automorphisms of K relative to F , written as $G(K, F)$, is the set of those automorphisms of K which leave every element of F fixed.*

Note 1. $G(K, F)$ is a subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of K . If $\alpha \in K$ be such that $\alpha \in F$, then $f(\alpha) = \alpha$ for all $f \in G(K, F)$. Therefore the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ must contain F .

Note 2. Let K be a field containing the field of rational numbers F_0 . Let G be the group of all automorphisms of K . Then the fixed field of G is a subfield of K . Now every subfield of K must contain F_0 because F_0 is the smallest subfield of K . Therefore the fixed field of G must contain F_0 . From this we conclude that if $\alpha \in F_0$, then $\sigma(\alpha) = \alpha$ for all $\sigma \in G$. Thus every rational number is left fixed by every automorphism of K .

Theorem 34. *If K is a field and if $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_n$ are distinct automorphisms of K then it is impossible to find elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n not all 0, in K such that*

$$a_1\sigma_1(u) + a_2\sigma_2(u) + \dots + a_n\sigma_n(u) = 0 \text{ for all } u \in K.$$

(Meerut 1974, 81, 83; Kanpur 86)

Proof. It is given that $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_n$ are distinct automorphisms of K . Suppose we can find elements a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n , not all 0, in K such that

$$a_1\sigma_1(u) + a_2\sigma_2(u) + \dots + a_n\sigma_n(u) = 0 \quad \forall u \in K. \quad \dots(1)$$

Among all relations of the type (1) we can find a relation which has as few non-zero terms as possible. After renumbering let this minimal relation be

$$a_1\sigma_1(u) + a_2\sigma_2(u) + \dots + a_m\sigma_m(u) = 0, \quad \dots(2)$$

where a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m are all different from 0. If $m=1$, then the relation (2) reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} a_1\sigma_1(u) &= 0 \quad \forall u \in K \\ \Rightarrow a_1\sigma_1(1) &= 0, \text{ since } 1 \in K \\ \Rightarrow a_1 \cdot 1 &= 0, \text{ since } \sigma_1(1) = 1 \\ \Rightarrow a_1 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

But according to our assumption $a_1 \neq 0$. Hence we must have $m > 1$.

Since the automorphisms σ_1 and σ_m are distinct, therefore there exists an element $c \in K$ such that $\sigma_1(c) \neq \sigma_m(c)$.

Now $c \in K, u \in K \Rightarrow cu \in K$. Therefore the relation (2) will hold good for cu . Thus we get

$$\begin{aligned} a_1\sigma_1(cu) + a_2\sigma_2(cu) + \dots + a_m\sigma_m(cu) &= 0 \quad \forall u \in K \\ \Rightarrow a_1\sigma_1(c)\sigma_1(u) + a_2\sigma_2(c)\sigma_2(u) + \dots + a_m\sigma_m(c)\sigma_m(u) &= 0 \\ &\quad \forall u \in K \quad \dots(3) \end{aligned}$$

[\because each σ is an automorphism of K]

Multiplying (2) by $\sigma_1(c)$ and subtracting from (3), we get

$$a_2[\sigma_2(c) - \sigma_1(c)]\sigma_2(u) + \dots + a_m[\sigma_m(c) - \sigma_1(c)]\sigma_m(u) = 0. \quad \dots(4)$$

Let $b_i = a_i[\sigma_i(c) - \sigma_1(c)]$ for $i=2, \dots, m$.

Since $a_1, \sigma_1(c), \sigma_1(c)$ are all in K , therefore each b_i is in K . Further $b_m = a_m[\sigma_m(c) - \sigma_1(c)] \neq 0$, because $a_m \neq 0$, and $\sigma_m(c) - \sigma_1(c) \neq 0$. Therefore from (4), we get

$$b_2\sigma_2(u) + \dots + b_m\sigma_m(u) = 0 \text{ for all } u \in K. \quad \dots(5)$$

The relation (5) has $m-1$ terms. Since $b_m \neq 0$, therefore from (5) we see that it is possible for us to find a relation of the type (1) having less than m non-zero terms. This contradicts the assumption that (2) is a minimal relation.

Hence our initial assumption is wrong. This proves the theorem.

Theorem 35. Suppose K is a finite extension of a field F . Then show that $G(K, F)$ is a finite group and its order, $o(G(K, F))$ satisfies the relation $o(G(K, F)) \leq [K : F]$.

(G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1988; Vikram 76; Madurai 88)

Proof. Suppose $[K : F] = n$ and let u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n be a basis of the vector space $K(F)$.

Suppose we can find $n+1$ distinct automorphisms $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_n, \sigma_{n+1}$ in $G(K, F)$. Consider the following system of homogeneous linear equations in $n+1$ unknowns x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n+1} and with coefficients in K :

$$\sigma_1(u_1) x_1 + \sigma_2(u_1) x_2 + \dots + \sigma_{n+1}(u_1) x_{n+1} = 0$$

$$\sigma_1(u_2) x_1 + \sigma_2(u_2) x_2 + \dots + \sigma_{n+1}(u_2) x_{n+1} = 0$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\sigma_1(u_i) x_1 + \sigma_2(u_i) x_2 + \dots + \sigma_{n+1}(u_i) x_{n+1} = 0$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\sigma_1(u_n) x_1 + \sigma_2(u_n) x_2 + \dots + \sigma_{n+1}(u_n) x_{n+1} = 0.$$

Since in the above system of linear homogeneous equations the number of equations is less than the number of unknowns, therefore this system must possess a non-trivial solution (not all 0) $x_1 = a_1, x_2 = a_2, \dots, x_{n+1} = a_{n+1}$ in K . Therefore we have,

$$a_1 \sigma_1(u_i) + a_2 \sigma_2(u_i) + \dots + a_{n+1} \sigma_{n+1}(u_i) = 0, \quad \dots (1)$$

for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$.

Let t be an arbitrary element of K . Since $\{u_1, \dots, u_n\}$ is a basis of K over F , therefore we can find $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \in F$ such that

$$t = \alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_n u_n.$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_1(t) &= \sigma_1(\alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_n u_n) \\ &= \sigma_1(\alpha_1) \sigma_1(u_1) + \dots + \sigma_1(\alpha_n) \sigma_1(u_n) \quad [\because \sigma_1 \text{ is an automorphism}] \\ &= \alpha_1 \sigma_1(u_1) + \dots + \alpha_n \sigma_1(u_n) \quad [\because \sigma_1 \in G(K, F) \Rightarrow \sigma_1 \text{ leaves every} \\ &\quad \text{element of } F \text{ fixed. Note that } \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \in F] \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\sigma_1(t) = \alpha_1 \sigma_1(u_1) + \dots + \alpha_n \sigma_1(u_n).$$

Similarly

$$\sigma_2(t) = \alpha_1 \sigma_2(u_1) + \dots + \alpha_n \sigma_2(u_n)$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\sigma_{n+1}(t) = \alpha_1 \sigma_{n+1}(u_1) + \dots + \alpha_n \sigma_{n+1}(u_n).$$

Multiplying both sides of these equations by a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n+1} respectively and adding, we get

$$\begin{aligned} a_1\sigma_1(t) + \dots + a_{n+1}\sigma_{n+1}(t) \\ = \alpha_1[a_1\sigma_1(u_1) + \dots + a_{n+1}\sigma_{n+1}(u_1)] + \dots + \alpha_n[a_1\sigma_1(u_n) + \dots \\ + a_{n+1}\sigma_{n+1}(u_n)] \\ = \alpha_1 0 + \dots + \alpha_n 0, \text{ by virtue of the system of equations (1)} \\ = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we see that if $\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma_{n+1}$ are distinct automorphisms of K , then it is possible to find a_1, \dots, a_{n+1} in K , not all 0, such that $a_1\sigma_1(t) + \dots + a_{n+1}\sigma_{n+1}(t) = 0 \quad \forall t \in K$.

By theorem 34 this is not possible for us. Hence there cannot be $n+1$ distinct automorphisms in $G(K, F)$.

Similarly we can prove that there cannot be $n+2, n+3, \dots$ distinct automorphisms in $G(K, F)$. Hence $o(G(K, F)) \leq n$.

Elementary symmetric functions of the elements of a field.

Definition. Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ be n elements of a field F . Then

$$y_1 = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_n = \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i$$

$$y_2 = \sum_{i < j} \alpha_i \alpha_j$$

$$y_3 = \sum_{i < j < k} \alpha_i \alpha_j \alpha_k$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$y_n = \alpha_1 \alpha_2 \alpha_3 \dots \alpha_n$$

are called elementary symmetric functions of $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$.

It can be easily seen by direct calculation that

$$(x - \alpha_1)(x - \alpha_2) \dots (x - \alpha_n)$$

$$= x^n - y_1 x^{n-1} + y_2 x^{n-2} - y_3 x^{n-3} + \dots + (-1)^n y_n.$$

Normal extension of a field. **Definition.** A finite extension K of a field F is said to be a normal extension of F if the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ is F . (Meerut 1981, 82, 83, 84P)

From the definition of normal extension it is obvious that if a is any element of K which is not in F , then we must have some automorphism σ in $G(K, F)$ such that $\sigma(a) \neq a$.

Theorem 36. Suppose K is a finite extension of a field F of characteristic 0 and H is a subgroup of $G(K, F)$. Let K_H be the fixed field of H . Then

$$(1) [K : K_H] = o(H). \quad (2) H = G(K, K_H).$$

Proof. Let $A(K)$ be the group of all automorphisms of the field K which is a finite extension of the field F . It is given that K_H is the fixed field of H which is a subgroup of $G(K, F)$. Therefore

$$K_H = \{x \in K : \sigma(x) = x \text{ for all } \sigma \in H\}.$$

Now K is a finite extension of F and K_H is a subfield of K containing F . Therefore K is a finite extension of K_H i.e., $[K : K_H]$ is finite. By theorem 35, we have $G(K, K_H)$ is a finite group and

$$o(G(K, K_H)) \leq [K : K_H]. \quad \dots(1)$$

Further $G(K, K_H)$ is a subgroup of $A(K)$ and H is also a subgroup of $A(K)$. We have

$$\sigma \in H \Rightarrow \sigma(y) = y \quad \forall y \in K_H \quad [\text{see def. of } K_H]$$

$$\Rightarrow \sigma \in G(K, K_H).$$

$$\therefore H \subseteq G(K, K_H)$$

$$\Rightarrow H \text{ is a subgroup of } G(K, K_H)$$

$$\Rightarrow o(H) \leq o(G(K, K_H)). \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we get

$$o(H) \leq o(G(K, K_H)) \leq [K : K_H] \quad \dots(3)$$

$$\Rightarrow o(H) \leq [K : K_H] \quad \dots(4)$$

Now in order to prove that $o(H) = [K : K_H]$ it remains to prove that $o(H) \geq [K : K_H]$.

Let $o(H) = h$ and $[K : K_H] = m$.

Let $H = \{\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_h\}$ where σ_1 is the identity automorphism of K . Note that H being a subgroup of $A(K)$ must contain its identity.

Since K is a finite extension of K_H which is of characteristic 0, therefore by theorem 29, K is a simple extension of K_H . Therefore there exists an element $a \in K$ such that $K = K_H(a)$. This a must therefore satisfy an irreducible polynomial over K_H of degree $m = [K : K_H]$ and no non-trivial polynomial of lower degree.

[see theorem 7].

Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_h$ be the elementary symmetric functions of the elements $\sigma_1(a), \sigma_2(a), \dots, \sigma_h(a) \in K$. Then

$$\alpha_1 = \sigma_1(a) + \sigma_2(a) + \dots + \sigma_h(a) = \sum_{i=1}^h \sigma_i(a)$$

$$\alpha_2 = \sum_{1 \leq i < j} \sigma_i(a) \sigma_j(a)$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\alpha_h = \sigma_1(a) \sigma_2(a) \dots \sigma_h(a).$$

We claim that each α_i is invariant under every $\sigma \in H$. Let σ be any element of H . Consider the h products $\sigma\sigma_1, \sigma\sigma_2, \dots, \sigma\sigma_h$.

All these are elements of H because H is a group. Also all these are distinct. Because $\sigma\sigma_1 = \sigma\sigma_j$,

$$\Rightarrow \sigma_1 = \sigma_j \text{ [by left cancellation law in } H]$$

$\therefore \sigma\sigma_1, \sigma\sigma_2, \dots, \sigma\sigma_h$ are nothing but the h elements of H placed in some order. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma(\alpha_1) &= \sigma[\sigma_1(a) + \sigma_2(a) + \dots + \sigma_h(a)] \\ &= \sigma[\sigma_1(a)] + \sigma[\sigma_2(a)] + \dots + \sigma[\sigma_h(a)] \quad [\because \sigma \text{ is an automorphism}] \\ &= (\sigma\sigma_1)(a) + (\sigma\sigma_2)(a) + \dots + (\sigma\sigma_h)(a) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^h \sigma_i(a), \text{ since } \sigma\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma\sigma_h \text{ are nothing but the } h \text{ elements of } H \end{aligned}$$

placed in some order

$$= \alpha_1.$$

$$\text{Further } \sigma(\alpha_2) = \sigma \sum_{i < j} \sigma_i(a) \sigma_j(a)$$

$$= \sum_{i < j} \sigma[\sigma_i(a) \sigma_j(a)] \quad [\because \sigma \text{ is an automorphism}]$$

$$= \sum_{i < j} \sigma[\sigma_i(a)] \sigma[\sigma_j(a)] \quad [\because \sigma \text{ is an automorphism}]$$

$$= \sum_{i < j} (\sigma\sigma_i)(a) (\sigma\sigma_j)(a) = \alpha_2.$$

Similarly we can show for $\alpha_3, \alpha_4, \dots, \alpha_h$. Since each α_i is invariant under every $\sigma \in H$, therefore by the definition of K_H each $\alpha_i \in K_H$. Consider the polynomial

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= [x - \sigma_1(a)] [x - \sigma_2(a)] \dots [x - \sigma_h(a)] \quad \dots (5) \\ &= x^h - \alpha_1 x^{h-1} + \alpha_2 x^{h-2} - \dots + (-1)^h \alpha_h. \end{aligned}$$

We see that $p(x)$ is a non-zero polynomial over K_H of degree h . Note that $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_h \in K_H$. Also from (5) we see that $\sigma_1(a) = a$ is a root of $p(x)$. Note that $\sigma_1(a) = a$ because σ_1 is identity automorphism.

Thus we see that a satisfies a non-trivial polynomial over K_H of degree h . Since a cannot satisfy a non-trivial polynomial over K_H of degree lower than m , therefore we must have

$$h \geq m$$

$$\Rightarrow o(H) \geq [K : K_H]. \quad \dots (6)$$

From (4) and (6), we get $o(H) = [K : K_H]$.

Putting $o(H) = [K : K_H]$ in (3), we get

$$o(H) \leq o(G(K, K_H)) \leq o(H)$$

$$\Rightarrow o(H) = o(G(K, K_H)).$$

Now H is a subgroup of $G(K, K_H)$.

Therefore $o(H) = o(G(K, K_H))$ implies that $H = G(K, K_H)$.

Corollary. Let K be a normal extension of a field F of characteristic 0. Then $[K : F] = o(G(K, F))$. (Meerut 1988)

Proof. Since K is normal extension of F , therefore the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ is F itself. Also K is a finite extension of F because a normal extension is necessarily a finite extension.

Now in the proof of the above theorem take $H = G(K, F)$ itself. Then $K_H =$ the fixed field of $G(K, F) = F$. Therefore we get the result $o(G(K, F)) = [K : F]$.

Note. Write the complete proof of this corollary by replacing H by $G(K, F)$ and K_H by F in the proof of the above theorem.

Now we shall prove a very important theorem which characterizes normal extensions of a field of characteristic 0. Before stating the main theorem we want to prove the following subsidiary theorem which we shall use in the proof of the main theorem.

Theorem 37. Let K be the splitting field of $f(x)$ in $F[x]$ and let $p(x)$ be an irreducible factor of $f(x)$ in $F[x]$. If the roots of $p(x)$ are $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$, then for each i there exists an automorphism σ_i in $G(K, F)$ such that $\sigma_i(\alpha_1) = \alpha_i$. (Jabalpur 1986)

Proof. It is given that K is the splitting field of $f(x) \in F[x]$ and $p(x)$ is an irreducible factor of $f(x)$ in $F[x]$. Since $p(x)$ is a factor of $f(x)$, therefore every root of $p(x)$ is also a root of $f(x)$ and so every root of $p(x)$ must be in K . Let α_1, α_i be any two roots of $p(x)$. Let $F_1 = F(\alpha_1)$ and $F_1' = F(\alpha_i)$. Since $p(x) \in F[x]$ is irreducible, therefore by corollary to theorem 21, there is an isomorphism ψ of F_1 onto F_1' such that

$$\psi(\alpha_1) = \alpha_i \text{ and } \psi(\alpha) = \alpha \quad \forall \alpha \in F.$$

Since F_1 is a superfield of F , therefore $f(x) \in F[x]$ can be considered as a polynomial over F_1 . We claim that K is a splitting field for $f(x) \in F_1[x]$ because no subfield of K , containing F_1 and hence F , can split $f(x)$. Similarly K is a splitting field for $f(x)$ considered as a polynomial over F_1' . By theorem 22, there is an isomorphism σ_i of K onto K (thus an automorphism of K) coinciding with ψ on F_1 .

Now $\alpha_1 \in F(\alpha_1) = F_1$

$$\Rightarrow \sigma_i(\alpha_1) = \psi(\alpha_1) = \alpha_i.$$

$$[\because \psi(\alpha_1) = \alpha_i]$$

Also since σ_i coincides with ψ on F_1 , therefore $\sigma_i(\alpha) = \alpha \quad \forall \alpha \in F$. Consequently $\sigma_i \in G(K, F)$.

This proves the theorem.

Theorem 38. *K is a normal extension of a field F of characteristic 0 if and only if K is the splitting field of some polynomial over F.* (G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1990; Madurai 88)

Proof. Suppose K is a normal extension of F. Then K is necessarily a finite extension of F. Also characteristic F is 0. Therefore by theorem 29 K is a simple extension of F. So there is an element a in K such that $K=F(a)$. The group $G(K, F)$ is of finite order say of order n . Let $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_n$ denote all the distinct elements of $G(K, F)$. Also let σ_1 be the identity of $G(K, F)$ i.e., σ_1 be the identity automorphism of K.

Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ be the elementary symmetric functions of the elements $\sigma_1(a), \dots, \sigma_n(a) \in K$ i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_1 &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sigma_i(a) \\ \alpha_2 &= \sum_{i < j} \sigma_i(a) \sigma_j(a) \\ &\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \\ &\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \\ \alpha_n &= \sigma_1(a) \sigma_2(a) \dots \sigma_n(a).\end{aligned}$$

It can be easily seen that each α_i is invariant under every $\sigma \in G(K, F)$.

Therefore each α_i is in the fixed field of $G(K, F)$. But K is a normal extension of F implies that F is the fixed field of $G(K, F)$. So each $\alpha_i \in F$. Consider the polynomial

$$p(x) = [x - \sigma_1(a)] [x - \sigma_2(a)] \dots [x - \sigma_n(a)] \text{ over } K. \quad \dots (1)$$

We have $p(x) = x^n - \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + (-1)^n \alpha_n$.

Since each $\alpha_i \in F$, therefore $p(x) \in F[x]$.

From (1), we see that K splits $p(x) \in F[x]$ into a product of linear factors. Also from (1) we see that $\sigma_1(a) = a$ is a root of $p(x)$ in K. Since a generates K over F, therefore a can be in no proper subfield of K which contains F. Thus K is the splitting field of $p(x)$ over F. This proves the 'only if' part of the theorem.

Now we shall prove the 'if' part of the theorem. Suppose K is the splitting field of the polynomial $f(x) \in F[x]$. Then to prove that K is a normal extension of F. Certainly K is a finite extension of F because every splitting field is a finite extension.

Let $[K : F] = n$. We shall prove the result by induction on n .

To start the induction we see that if $[K : F] = 1$, then $K = F$ and certainly F is a normal extension of F.

Now assume as our induction hypothesis that if K_1 is the splitting field over F_1 of a polynomial in $F_1[x]$ and if $[K_1 : F_1] < n$, then K_1 is a normal extension of F_1 .

Now let $[K : F] = n > 1$. K is the splitting field over F of $f(x)$ in $F[x]$. If $f(x)$ splits into linear factors over F , then $K = F$ and consequently $[K : F] = 1$. So, assume that $f(x)$ has an irreducible factor $p(x) \in F[x]$ of degree $r > 1$. Since characteristic F is 0 and $p(x)$ is irreducible, therefore $p(x)$ cannot have multiple roots. Further $p(x)$ is a factor of $f(x)$ and K is the splitting field of $f(x)$. Therefore $p(x)$ has a full complement of roots in K . Let $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r \in K$ be the r distinct roots of $p(x)$.

Since $p(x)$ is irreducible over F and $\deg p(x) = r$, therefore

$$[F(\alpha_1) : F] = r.$$

We have $[K : F] = [K : F(\alpha_1)] [F(\alpha_1) : F]$

$$\Rightarrow [K : F(\alpha_1)] = \frac{[K : F]}{[F(\alpha_1) : F]} = \frac{n}{r} < n.$$

Now K is also the splitting field of $f(x)$ considered as a polynomial over $F(\alpha_1)$.

Since $[K : F(\alpha_1)] < n$, therefore by our induction hypothesis K is a normal extension of $F(\alpha_1)$.

Let $\theta \in K$ be left fixed by every automorphism in $G(K, F)$. If we prove that θ is in F , then F will be the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ and K will be a normal extension of F .

We have

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma &\in G(K, F(\alpha_1)) \\ \Rightarrow \sigma &\text{ leaves every element of } F(\alpha_1) \text{ fixed} \\ \Rightarrow \sigma &\text{ leaves every element of } F \text{ fixed} \quad [\because F \subseteq F(\alpha_1)] \\ \Rightarrow \sigma &\in G(K, F) \\ \Rightarrow \sigma(\theta) &= \theta \quad [\because \text{by our assumption } \theta \text{ is left fixed by every automorphism in } G(K, F)]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus we have $\sigma(\theta) = \theta$ for all $\sigma \in G(K, F(\alpha_1))$.

Therefore θ belongs to the fixed field of $G(K, F(\alpha_1))$.

But K is a normal extension of $F(\alpha_1)$ means that $F(\alpha_1)$ is the fixed field of $G(K, F(\alpha_1))$. Therefore θ is in $F(\alpha_1)$. So we can write

$$\theta = \lambda_0 + \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \lambda_2 \alpha_1^2 + \dots + \lambda_{r-1} \alpha_1^{r-1} \text{ where } \lambda_0, \dots, \lambda_{r-1} \in F \quad \dots (2)$$

[See theorem 5]

Now by theorem 37, for each $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ there is an automorphism σ_i of K , $\sigma_i \in G(K, F)$, such that $\sigma_i(\alpha_1) = \alpha_i$. Since θ is left

fixed by every automorphism in $G(K, F)$, therefore $\sigma_i(\theta) = \theta$. Also $\lambda_0, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{r-1} \in F$

$$\Rightarrow \sigma_i(\lambda_0) = \lambda_0, \sigma_i(\lambda_1) = \lambda_1, \dots, \sigma_i(\lambda_{r-1}) = \lambda_{r-1}.$$

Operating σ_i on both sides of (2), we get

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_i(\theta) &= \sigma_i(\lambda_0 + \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \lambda_2 \alpha_1^2 + \dots + \lambda_{r-1} \alpha_1^{r-1}) \\ \Rightarrow \theta &= \sigma_i(\lambda_0) + \sigma_i(\lambda_1) \sigma_i(\alpha_1) + \sigma_i(\lambda_2) [\sigma_i(\alpha_1)]^2 + \dots \\ &\quad + \sigma_i(\lambda_{r-1}) [\sigma_i(\alpha_1)]^{r-1} \\ \Rightarrow \theta &= \lambda_0 + \lambda_1 \alpha_i + \lambda_2 \alpha_i^2 + \dots + \lambda_{r-1} \alpha_i^{r-1} \\ \Rightarrow \lambda_{r-1} \alpha_i^{r-1} + \lambda_{r-2} \alpha_i^{r-2} + \dots + \lambda_1 \alpha_i + (\lambda_0 - \theta) &= 0 \\ &\quad \text{for } i = 1, 2, \dots, r. \quad \dots (3) \end{aligned}$$

Since $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$ are all distinct, therefore from (3) we see that the polynomial

$$q(x) = \lambda_{r-1} x^{r-1} + \lambda_{r-2} x^{r-2} + \dots + \lambda_1 x + (\lambda_0 - \theta)$$

in $K[x]$, of degree at most $r-1$, has r distinct roots $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$. This can be possible only if all the coefficients of $q(x)$ are 0; in particular $\lambda_0 - \theta = 0$ which gives $\theta = \lambda_0$. So θ is in F .

Hence K is a normal extension of F .

The proof of the theorem is now complete by induction.

Note. The above theorem is very important. It tells us that if K is the splitting field of some polynomial $f(x) \in F[x]$ where characteristic F is 0, then K is a normal extension of F . The converse is also true.

Theorem 39. Let K be a normal extension of a field F of characteristic 0. If T is a subfield of K containing F , then T is a normal extension of F if and only if

$$\sigma(T) \subseteq T \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F).$$

Proof. Since K is a normal extension therefore K is a finite extension of F . Let T be a subfield of K containing F . Then T is also a finite extension of F which is of characteristic 0. Therefore by theorem 29, T is a simple extension of F . So there is an element a in T such that $T = F(a)$.

'Only if' part of the theorem. Suppose $\sigma(T) \subseteq T \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$. Then to prove that T is a normal extension of F .

Since K is a normal extension of F , therefore $G(K, F)$ is a finite group say of order n . Let $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_n$ be all the n elements of $G(K, F)$ and let σ_1 be the identity of $G(K, F)$. Since

$$a \in T \text{ and } \sigma(T) \subseteq T \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F),$$

therefore $\sigma_1(a), \sigma_2(a), \dots, \sigma_n(a)$ are all in T . Consider the polynomial

$$p(x) = [x - \sigma_1(a)] [x - \sigma_2(a)] \dots [x - \sigma_n(a)]$$

over T . Expanding we get

$p(x) = x^n - \alpha_1 x^{n-1} + \alpha_2 x^{n-2} - \dots + (-1)^n \alpha_n$ where $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are elementary symmetric functions of the elements

$$\sigma_1(a), \sigma_2(a), \dots, \sigma_n(a)$$

of T . It can be easily seen that $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are each invariant with respect to every $\sigma \in G(K, F)$. Therefore each α_i for $i=1, \dots, n$ must be an element of the fixed field of $G(K, F)$. Since K is a normal extension of F , therefore the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ is F . Thus each α_i is in F and so $p(x) \in F[x]$. From the form of $p(x)$ we see that T splits the polynomial $p(x) \in F[x]$ into a product of linear factors. Also $\sigma_1(a) = a$ is a root of $p(x)$ in $T = F(a)$. Since a generates T over F , therefore a can be in no proper subfield of T which contains F . Thus T is the splitting field of $p(x) \in F[x]$. Therefore by theorem 38, T is a normal extension of F .

'If' part of the theorem. Suppose T is a normal extension of F . Then to prove that $\sigma(T) \subseteq T \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$.

Since T is a normal extension of F , therefore $G(T, F)$ is a finite group say of order m . Let $\psi_1, \psi_2, \dots, \psi_m$ be all the m elements of $G(T, F)$ and let ψ_1 be the identity of $G(T, F)$. Since $a \in T = F(a)$, therefore $\psi_1(a), \psi_2(a), \dots, \psi_m(a)$ are all in T . Consider the polynomial $q(x) = [x - \psi_1(a)][x - \psi_2(a)] \dots [x - \psi_m(a)]$ over T . Expanding we get $q(x) = x^m - \beta_1 x^{m-1} + \beta_2 x^{m-2} - \dots + (-1)^m \beta_m$ where $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$ are elementary symmetric functions of the elements $\psi_1(a), \psi_2(a), \dots, \psi_m(a)$ of T . It can be easily seen that each β_i is invariant with respect to each ψ in $G(T, F)$. Since T is a normal extension of F , therefore each β_i must be in F . Consequently $q(x) \in F[x]$. From the form of $q(x)$ we see that $q(x)$ has all its roots in T . Also $\psi_1(a) = a$ is a root of $q(x)$ in T and hence in K .

Now let σ be any element of $G(K, F)$. Since σ is an automorphism of K leaving every element of F fixed and a is a root of $q(x) \in F[x]$ in K , therefore $\sigma(a)$ is also a root of $q(x)$ in K . Since all roots of $q(x)$ are in T , therefore $\sigma(a)$ must be an element of T . Now $T = F(a)$. If $[T : F] = r$, then $t \in T$ can be written as

$$t = \lambda_0 + \lambda_1 a + \dots + \lambda_{r-1} a^{r-1} \text{ where } \lambda_0, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{r-1} \in F.$$

$$\text{We have } \sigma(t) = \sigma(\lambda_0 + \lambda_1 a + \dots + \lambda_{r-1} a^{r-1})$$

$$= \sigma(\lambda_0) + \sigma(\lambda_1) \sigma(a) + \dots + \sigma(\lambda_{r-1}) [\sigma(a)]^{r-1}$$

$$= \lambda_0 + \lambda_1 \sigma(a) + \dots + \lambda_{r-1} [\sigma(a)]^{r-1}$$

[$\because \sigma$ leaves every element of F fixed]

=an element of T since $\sigma(a) \in T$
and $\lambda_0, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{r-1} \in T \supseteq F$.

Thus for every $\sigma \in G(K, F)$ and for every $t \in T$, we have $\sigma(t) \in T$. Consequently $\sigma(T) \subseteq T \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$.

Galois group of a polynomial over a field.

Definition. Let $f(x)$ be a polynomial in $F[x]$ and let K be its splitting field over F . The Galois group of $f(x)$ is the group $G(K, F)$ of all those automorphisms of K which leave every element of F fixed. (Meerut 1989)

Note. If K is an extension of a field F , then an automorphism of K which leaves every element of F fixed is also called an F -automorphism of K . If K is a normal extension of a field F of characteristic 0, then K is the splitting field of some polynomial $f(x)$ in $F[x]$. The group $G(K, F)$ of F -automorphisms of K is also called the Galois group of K over F .

Theorem 40. The Galois group of a polynomial over a field is isomorphic to a group of permutations of its roots.

Proof. Let $f(x)$ be a polynomial over the field F . Let K be the splitting field of $f(x)$ over F . Then K is a normal extension of F . Therefore the Galois group $G(K, F)$ of $f(x)$ is of finite order $[K : F] = n$, say. Let $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_n$ be the n distinct elements of $G(K, F)$. Suppose $f(x)$ has only m distinct roots in K . It is possible that $f(x)$ may have multiple roots. Let $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m\}$ be the set of m distinct roots of $f(x)$ in K . Let P be the set of all those permutations on S which change only those elements of S which are not in F i.e., which leave every element of F (if it is any) fixed. If g_1, g_2 are two elements of P , then $g_1 g_2$ will also be an element of P because $g_1 g_2$ will also leave every element of F fixed. Thus P is closed with respect to product of permutations. Therefore P is a subgroup of the group of all permutations on S . We shall prove that the group $G(K, F)$ is isomorphic to the group P .

Let $\sigma \in G(K, F)$. Let σ^* be the restriction of σ to S i.e., $\sigma^*(\alpha) = \sigma(\alpha) \forall \alpha \in S$. If α is a root of $f(x)$ in K , then $\sigma(\alpha)$ is also a root of $f(x)$ in K [see Ex. 5 Page 514]. Therefore $\alpha \in S \Rightarrow \sigma(\alpha) = \sigma^*(\alpha) \in S$. So σ^* is a function from S to S . Further σ^* is one-one since σ is one-one. Since S is a finite set, therefore σ^* is one-one implies that σ^* is also onto. Thus σ^* is a permutation on S . Since σ leaves every element of F fixed, therefore σ^* will also leave every element of F fixed. Thus $\sigma^* \in P$.

Now let ψ be a mapping from $G(K, F)$ to P defined as

$$\psi(\sigma) = \sigma^* \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F).$$

ψ is one-one. Let $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in G(K, F)$ be arbitrary. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(\sigma_1) &= \psi(\sigma_2) \\ \Rightarrow \sigma_1^* &= \sigma_2^* \\ \Rightarrow \sigma_1^*(\alpha) &= \sigma_2^*(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in S \\ \Rightarrow \sigma_1(\alpha) &= \sigma_2(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in S.\end{aligned}$$

Now $K = F(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m)$. Therefore each element of K is obtainable as the result of a finite number of operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division performed on the elements of F and on $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$. But σ_1, σ_2 are automorphisms of K . Each of them leaves every element of F fixed and each of them maps every element of S identically.

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_1(\alpha) &= \sigma_2(\alpha) \quad \forall \alpha \in S \\ \Rightarrow \sigma_1(\beta) &= \sigma_2(\beta) \quad \forall \beta \in K \\ \Rightarrow \sigma_1 &= \sigma_2 \Rightarrow \psi \text{ is one-one.}\end{aligned}$$

ψ is onto.

Let g be any element of P . Then g is a permutation on S leaving those elements of S fixed which are in F . Now suppose there exists an automorphism σ of K which leaves every element of F fixed and which maps each element of S in the same way as g maps it. Since each element of K is obtainable as the result of a finite number of operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division performed on the elements of F and on $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$, therefore the automorphism σ of K will be completely determined.

Also the restriction of σ to S will be g . Thus

$$g \in P \Rightarrow \exists \sigma \in G(K, F) \text{ such that } \psi(\sigma) = g.$$

Hence ψ is onto.

ψ preserves compositions. Let $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in G(K, F)$ be arbitrary. Then

$$\psi(\sigma_1\sigma_2) = (\sigma_1\sigma_2)^*, \text{ the restriction of } \sigma_1\sigma_2 \text{ to } S.$$

But $\forall \alpha \in S$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(\sigma_1\sigma_2)^*(\alpha) &= (\sigma_1\sigma_2)(\alpha) && [\text{by def. of } \sigma^*] \\ &= \sigma_1[\sigma_2(\alpha)] \\ &= \sigma_1[\sigma_2^*(\sigma)] && [\text{by def. of } \sigma^*] \\ &= \sigma_1^*[\sigma_2^*(\alpha)] = (\sigma_1^*\sigma_2^*)(\alpha).\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (\sigma_1\sigma_2)^* = \sigma_1^*\sigma_2^*.$$

$$\therefore \psi(\sigma_1\sigma_2) = \sigma_1^*\sigma_2^* = \psi(\sigma_1)\psi(\sigma_2).$$

Hence ψ is an isomorphic mapping from $G(K, F)$ onto P .

Therefore $G(K, F)$ is isomorphic to P .

Now we come to the fundamental theorem of Galois theory. It sets up a one-to-one correspondence between the subfields of the splitting field K of $f(x) \in F[x]$ and the subgroups of its Galois group $G(K, F)$.

Fundamental theorem of Galois theory.

Theorem 41. *Let K be a normal extension of a field F , of characteristic 0. Show that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the set of subfields of K which contain F and the set of subgroups of $G(K, F)$. Further, if T is any subfield of K which contains F , then*

(1) $[K : T] = o(G(K, T))$, and $[T : F] = \text{index of } G(K, T) \text{ in } G(K, F)$. (Meerut 1989)

(2) T is a normal extension of F if and only if $G(K, T)$ is a normal subgroup of $G(K, F)$.

(3) If T is a normal extension of F , then $G(T, F)$ is isomorphic to $G(K, F)/G(K, T)$.

(Nagarjuna 1978; Meerut 80, 81, 82, 83, 84P, 85, 86, 87, 90, 91; Madurai 88; Indore 70; Agra 86)

Proof. For any subfield T of K which contains F , let $G(K, T)$ be the group of all those automorphisms of K which leave every element of T fixed. We have

$\sigma \in G(K, T) \Rightarrow \sigma$ leaves every element of T fixed
 $\Rightarrow \sigma$ leaves every element of F fixed, since $F \subseteq T$
 $\Rightarrow \sigma \in G(K, F)$.

Thus $G(K, T) \subseteq G(K, F)$. Since both $G(K, F)$ and $G(K, T)$ are subgroups of the group of all automorphisms of K , therefore $G(K, T) \subseteq G(K, F)$

$\Rightarrow G(K, T)$ is a subgroup of $G(K, F)$.

Thus for any subfield T of K which contains F we have found a subgroup $G(K, T)$ of $G(K, F)$. Let us now define a mapping ψ from the set of subfields of K which contain F into the set of subgroups of $G(K, F)$ by the formula

$\psi(T) = G(K, T)$ for every subfield T of K which contains F .
 ψ is onto.

For any subgroup H of $G(K, F)$, let K_H denote the fixed field of H i.e., let $K_H = \{x \in K : \sigma(x) = x \forall \sigma \in H\}$.

Then K_H is a subfield of K . Also

$\sigma \in H \Rightarrow \sigma \in G(K, F) \quad [\because H \subseteq G(K, F)]$
 $\Rightarrow \sigma(\alpha) = \alpha \forall \alpha \in F$.

Thus if σ is any element of H , then $\sigma(\alpha) = \alpha \forall \alpha \in F$. Therefore $F \subseteq K_H$ and so K_H is a subfield of K containing F .

We have $\psi(K_H) = G(K, K_H)$ [by def. of ψ]
 $= H$ [by theorem 36, since K is a finite extension of F and H is a subgroup of $G(K, F)$]

$\therefore \psi$ is onto.

ψ is one-one. Since K is a normal extension of a field F of characteristic 0, therefore K is the splitting field of some polynomial $f(x) \in F[x]$. If T is any subfield of K which contains F , then K is also the splitting field of $f(x)$ regarded as a polynomial over T . Therefore by theorem 38, K is a normal extension of T . Therefore, by the definition of normal extension the fixed field of $G(K, T)$ is T . Thus $K_{G(K, T)} = T$.

Now let T_1, T_2 be any two subfields of K which contain F . Then $\psi(T_1) = \psi(T_2)$

$$\Rightarrow G(K, T_1) = G(K, T_2) \quad [\text{by def. of } \psi]$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{the fixed field of } G(K, T_1) = \text{the fixed field of } G(K, T_2)$$

$$\Rightarrow K_{G(K, T_1)} = K_{G(K, T_2)}$$

$$\Rightarrow T_1 = T_2 \quad [\because K_{G(K, T)} = T]$$

$$\Rightarrow \psi \text{ is one-one.}$$

Thus ψ gives us the desired one-to-one correspondence.

Now we shall prove the last three parts of the theorem.

(1) If T is any subfield of K containing F , then as proved above, K is a normal extension of T . Therefore by corollary to theorem 36, we have $o(G(K, T)) = [K : T]$.

Since K is a normal extension of F , therefore

$$\begin{aligned} o(G(K, F)) &= [K : F] \\ &= [K : T][T : F] \quad [\text{by theorem 1}] \\ &= o(G(K, T))[T : F]. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore [T : F] = \frac{o(G(K, F))}{o(G(K, T))} = \text{index of } G(K, T) \text{ in } G(K, F).$$

(2) Let T be a subfield of K containing F . Then T is a normal extension of F

if and only if $\sigma(T) \subseteq T \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$ [by theorem 39]
i.e., if and only if $\sigma(t) \in T \quad \forall t \in T$ and $\forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$
i.e., if and only if $\tau[\sigma(t)] = \sigma(t) \quad \forall t \in T, \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$
and $\forall \tau \in G(K, T)$

[Note that $\tau \in G(K, T) \Leftrightarrow \tau(t) = t \quad \forall t \in T$]

i.e., if and only if $\sigma^{-1}[\tau[\sigma(t)]] = \sigma^{-1}[\sigma(t)] \quad \forall t \in T,$

$\forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$ and $\forall \tau \in G(K, T)$

i.e., if and only if $(\sigma^{-1} \tau \sigma)(t) = t \quad \forall t \in T, \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$
and $\forall \tau \in G(K, T)$

i.e., if and only if $\sigma^{-1} \tau \sigma \in G(K, T) \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F)$
and $\forall \tau \in G(K, T)$

[Note that $\sigma^{-1} \tau \sigma \in G(K, T) \Leftrightarrow (\sigma^{-1} \tau \sigma)(t) = t \quad \forall t \in T$]

i.e., if and only if $G(K, T)$ is a normal subgroup of $G(K, F)$
[by def. of normal subgroup].

(3) If T is a normal extension of F , then for any $\sigma \in G(K, F)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma(T) &\subseteq T \\ \Rightarrow \sigma(t) &\in T \quad \forall t \in T. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore σ induces an automorphism σ^* of T defined as

$$\sigma^*(t) = \sigma(t) \quad \forall t \in T.$$

Since σ leaves every element of F fixed, therefore σ^* also leaves every element of F fixed. So σ^* must be in $G(T, F)$.

If $\sigma_1, \sigma_2 \in G(K, F)$, then $\forall t \in T$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\sigma_1 \sigma_2)^*(t) &= (\sigma_1 \sigma_2)(t) \\ &= \sigma_1[\sigma_2(t)] = \sigma_1[\sigma_2^*(t)] = \sigma_1^*[\sigma_2^*(t)] \\ &= (\sigma_1^* \sigma_2^*)(t). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (\sigma_1 \sigma_2)^* = \sigma_1^* \sigma_2^*.$$

From this we conclude that the mapping ϕ of $G(K, F)$ into $G(T, F)$ defined as $\phi(\sigma) = \sigma^*$ for all $\sigma \in G(K, F)$ is a homomorphism of $G(K, F)$ into $G(T, F)$. The kernel of this homomorphism consists of all elements σ in $G(K, F)$ such that $\phi(\sigma) = \sigma^*$ is the identity of the group $G(T, F)$. The identity of the group $G(T, F)$ is the identity map on T . Therefore the kernel of ϕ is the set of all $\sigma \in G(K, F)$ such that $t = \sigma^*(t) = \sigma(t)$ for all $t \in T$. But $\sigma(t) = t \quad \forall t \in T$ if and only if $\sigma \in G(K, T)$. Therefore the kernel of ϕ is exactly $G(K, T)$. Now by the fundamental theorem on homomorphism of groups the image of $G(K, F)$ in $G(T, F)$ under the mapping ϕ is isomorphic to the quotient group

$$G(K, F)/G(K, T).$$

Now the order of the group $G(K, F)/G(K, T)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{o(G(K, F))}{o(G(K, T))} \\ &= \text{the index of } G(K, T) \text{ in } G(K, F) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= [T : F], \text{ by part (1) of this theorem} \\ &= o(G(T, F)) \quad [\text{by corollary to theorem 36} \end{aligned}$$

since T is normal over F]

Thus the image of $G(K, F)$ in $G(T, F)$ is isomorphic to a group of order $o(G(T, F))$. Since the image of $G(K, F)$ in $G(T, F)$ is a subgroup of $G(T, F)$, therefore it is all of $G(T, F)$. Hence the quotient group $G(K, F)/G(K, T)$ is isomorphic to $G(T, F)$.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If K is a field and S a set of automorphisms of K , prove that the fixed field of S and that of \bar{S} , (the subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of K generated by S) are identical.

Solution. Let S be a set of automorphisms of a field K and \bar{S} be the subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of K generated by S . Let L_1 and L_2 be the fixed fields of S and \bar{S} respectively. To prove that $L_1 = L_2$.

We have $a \in L_2 \Rightarrow \sigma(a) = a \forall \sigma \in \bar{S}$
 $\Rightarrow \sigma(a) = a \forall \sigma \in S$
 $[\because S \subseteq \bar{S} \Rightarrow \text{every } \sigma \in S \text{ is also in } \bar{S}]$
 $\Rightarrow a \in L_1$.

$\therefore L_2 \subseteq L_1$.

If σ is an automorphism of K , then $\sigma(a) = a \Leftrightarrow \sigma^{-1}(a) = a$. Consequently if $\sigma(a) = a$, then $\sigma^n(a) = a$ where n is any integer. Note that $\sigma^2(a) = \sigma[\sigma(a)] = \sigma(a) = a$ and so on.

Now let $a \in L_1$ be arbitrary. Then $\sigma(a) = a \forall \sigma \in S$.

Let f be any element of \bar{S} . Since \bar{S} is a subgroup of the group of all automorphisms of K generated by S , therefore f can be expressed as a product of positive and negative integral powers of a finite number of elements of S . Let $f = \sigma_1^{p_1} \sigma_2^{p_2} \dots \sigma_m^{p_m}$ where $\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma_m \in S$ and p_1, \dots, p_m are any integers.

We have $f(a) = (\sigma_1^{p_1} \dots \sigma_m^{p_m})(a)$
 $= a [\because \sigma_i(a) = a \text{ for all } i = 1, \dots, m].$

Thus $a \in L_1 \Rightarrow f(a) = a \forall f \in \bar{S} \Rightarrow a \in L_2$.

$\therefore L_1 \subseteq L_2$. Hence $L_1 = L_2$.

Ex. 2. Let K be an extension of the field of rational numbers F . Show that any automorphism of K must leave every element of F fixed.

Solution. Let σ be any automorphism of K . If p is any integer we claim that $\sigma(p) = p$.

Case 1. p is 0. In this case $\sigma(p) = \sigma(0) = 0 = p$.

Case 2. p is a positive integer.

We have $p = 1 + 1 + 1 + \dots$ upto p times

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow \sigma(p) &= \sigma(1+1+1+\dots \text{upto } p \text{ times}) \\ &= \sigma(1) + \sigma(1) + \dots \text{upto } p \text{ times} \\ &= 1+1+\dots \text{upto } p \text{ times} \quad [\because \sigma(1)=1] \\ &= p.\end{aligned}$$

Case 3. p is a negative integer, say $p = -q$ where q is a positive integer.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } \sigma(p) &= \sigma(-q) = \sigma[(-1) + (-1) + \dots \text{upto } q \text{ times}] \\ &= \sigma(-1) + \sigma(-1) + \dots \text{upto } q \text{ times} = (-1) + (-1) + \dots \text{upto } q \text{ times} \\ &\quad [\because \sigma(-1) = -\sigma(1) = -1] \\ &= -q = p.\end{aligned}$$

Now let $\alpha \in F$ i.e., let α be any rational number. Then $\alpha = m/n$ where m and n are integers and $n \neq 0$. If σ is any automorphism of K , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma(\alpha) &= \sigma(m/n) = \sigma(mn^{-1}) = \sigma(m) \sigma(n^{-1}) = m [\sigma(n)]^{-1} \\ &= mn^{-1} = m/n = \alpha.\end{aligned}$$

Hence σ leaves every element of F fixed.

Ex. 3. Let F be the field of rational numbers and let $K = F(2^{1/3})$ where $2^{1/3}$ is the real cube root of 2. Show that the only automorphism of K is the identity automorphism. Is K a normal extension of F ?

Solution. K is an extension of the field of rational numbers F . Therefore any automorphism of K will leave every element of F fixed. We have $K = F(2^{1/3}) = \{\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 2^{1/3} + \alpha_2 (2^{1/3})^2 : \alpha_0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in F\}$.

Let σ be any automorphism of K .

Since $2^{1/3} \in K$, therefore $\sigma(2^{1/3}) \in K$. We have

$$\begin{aligned}[\sigma(2^{1/3})]^3 &= [\sigma(2^{1/3})] [\sigma(2^{1/3})] [\sigma(2^{1/3})] \\ &= \sigma(2^{1/3} \cdot 2^{1/3} \cdot 2^{1/3}) \quad [\because \sigma \text{ is an automorphism}] \\ &= \sigma[(2^{1/3})^3] = \sigma(2) = 2, \text{ since } 2 \in F.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $[\sigma(2^{1/3})]^3 = 2$

$\Rightarrow \sigma(2^{1/3})$ must also be a cube root of 2 lying in K .

But there is only one real cube root of 2 and K is a subfield of the real field. Therefore we must have $\sigma(2^{1/3}) = 2^{1/3}$.

Now let $\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 2^{1/3} + \alpha_2 (2^{1/3})^2$ be any element of K where $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2$ are rational numbers. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma[\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 2^{1/3} + \alpha_2 (2^{1/3})^2] &= \sigma(\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 2^{1/3} + \alpha_2 2^{1/3} 2^{1/3}) \\ &= \sigma(\alpha_0) + \sigma(\alpha_1) \sigma(2^{1/3}) + \sigma(\alpha_2) \sigma(2^{1/3}) \sigma(2^{1/3}) \\ &= \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 2^{1/3} + \alpha_2 2^{1/3} 2^{1/3} \quad [\because \alpha_0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \text{ are rational numbers}] \\ &= \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 2^{1/3} + \alpha_2 (2^{1/3})^2.\end{aligned}$$

Hence σ is the identity automorphism of K .

Since identity automorphism is the only automorphism of K , therefore the group $G(K, F)$ consists of only one element i.e., the identity map I of K . If $a \in K$ be arbitrary, we have $I(a) = a$. Therefore the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ is not F but is K . Since the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ is not F , therefore K is not a normal extension of F .

Ex. 4. Let K be the field of complex numbers and F be the field of real numbers. Show that K is a normal extension of F .

(Meerut 1985, G.N.D.U. Amritsar 90)

Solution. We have $K = \{a + ib : a, b \text{ are real numbers}\}$.

K is an extension of F . The elements $1, i$ of K form a basis of K over F . Therefore $[K : F] = 2$ and K is a finite extension of F . Let us compute $G(K, F)$. If σ is any automorphism of K , then

$$[\sigma(i)]^2 = \sigma(i) \sigma(i) = \sigma(i \cdot i) = \sigma(i^2) = \sigma(-1) = -\sigma(1) = -1.$$

\therefore If σ is any automorphism of K , then

$$[\sigma(i)]^2 = -1 \Rightarrow \sigma(i) = \pm \sqrt{-1} = \pm i.$$

Now let σ be any automorphism of K and let $\sigma \in G(K, F)$ i.e., σ leaves every real number fixed. If $a + ib$ is any element of K where a, b are real numbers, then

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma(a + ib) &= \sigma(a) + \sigma(i) \sigma(b) \\ &= a \pm ib \quad [\because \sigma(i) = \pm i \text{ and } a, b \in F \Rightarrow \sigma(a) = a, \sigma(b) = b]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus if $\sigma \in G(K, F)$, then we must have $\sigma(a + ib) = a \pm ib$.

Now it can be easily seen that each of these possibilities, namely each of the mappings

$$\sigma_1(a + ib) = a + ib \text{ and } \sigma_2(a + ib) = a - ib$$

defines an automorphism of K , σ_1 being the identity automorphism and σ_2 complex-conjugation.

Therefore the group $G(K, F)$ consists of two elements σ_1, σ_2 . Thus $o(G(K, F)) = 2$. Now let us find the fixed field of $G(K, F)$. The fixed field of $G(K, F)$ necessarily contains F . Let $a + ib \in$ the fixed field of $G(K, F)$. Then we must have

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma(a + ib) &= a + ib \quad \forall \sigma \in G(K, F) \\ \Rightarrow \sigma_2(a + ib) &= a + ib & [\because \sigma_2 \in G(K, F)] \\ \Rightarrow a - ib &= a + ib \Rightarrow 2ib = 0 \Rightarrow b = 0 \Rightarrow a + ib = a \Rightarrow a + ib \in F. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the elements of F are the only elements of K which belong to the fixed field of $G(K, F)$. Hence the fixed field of $G(K, F)$ is exactly F . Consequently K is a normal extension of F .

Ex. 5. Let $x^3 - 2$ be a polynomial over the field F_0 of rational numbers.

(a) Find the splitting field, K , of x^3-2 over F_0 . (Meerut 1980, 81)

(b) Prove that the Galois group of x^3-2 over F_0 is isomorphic to S_3 , the symmetric group of degree 3. (Meerut 1980, 83, 84)

(c) Find the elements of the Galois group of x^3-2 over the field of rational numbers. (Punjab 1961; Aligarh 66)

Solution. (a) F_0 is the field of rational numbers and x^3-2 is a polynomial over F_0 . The roots of the polynomial x^3-2 in the field of complex numbers are $2^{1/3}$, $2^{1/3}\omega$, $2^{1/3}\omega^2$ where $2^{1/3}$ is the real cube root of 2 and ω is an imaginary cube root of unity. We claim that $K=F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega)$, is the splitting field of x^3-2 over F_0 . We have $x^3-2=(x-2^{1/3})(x-2^{1/3}\omega)(x-2^{1/3}\omega^2)$.

Since $2^{1/3}$, $2^{1/3}\omega$, $2^{1/3}\omega^2$ are all in $F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega)$, therefore $F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega)$ splits x^3-2 as a product of linear factors.

As proved in Ex. 1, page 512, the splitting field of x^3-2 over F_0 is of degree 6. If we know that $[F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega) : F_0]=6$, then $F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega)$ will be the splitting field of x^3-2 over F_0 .

Now $[F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega) : F_0]=[F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega) : F_0(2^{1/3})][F_0(2^{1/3}) : F_0]$.

The minimal polynomial over F_0 belonging to $2^{1/3}$ is x^3-2 . It is a polynomial of degree 3. Therefore $[F_0(2^{1/3}) : F_0]=3$.

Since $\omega \notin F_0(2^{1/3})$, therefore ω cannot satisfy a polynomial of first degree over $F_0(2^{1/3})$. But ω satisfies the polynomial

$$x^2+x+1 \in F_0(2^{1/3})[x].$$

Therefore x^2+x+1 is the minimal polynomial of ω over $F_0(2^{1/3})$. So $[F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega) : F_0(2^{1/3})]=\text{degree of } x^2+x+1=2$.

$$\therefore [F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega) : F_0]=2 \times 3=6.$$

Hence $F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega)$ is the splitting field of x^3-2 over F_0 .

(b) K is the splitting field of $x^3-2 \in F_0[x]$ over F_0 . If $G(K, F_0)$ is the Galois group of x^3-2 over F_0 , then

$$o(G(K : F_0))=[K : F_0]=6.$$

The roots of x^3-2 in K are $\alpha=2^{1/3}$, $\beta=2^{1/3}\omega$, $\gamma=2^{1/3}\omega^2$.

The group $G(K, F_0)$ is isomorphic to a group of permutations on the set $\{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$.

Since $o(G(K, F_0))$ is 6, therefore the corresponding group of permutations on the set $\{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$ must also be of order 6. But S_3 is the only group of permutations on the set $\{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$ which is of order 6. Hence $G(K, F_0)$ is isomorphic to S_3 .

(c) Let $G(K, F_0)$ be the Galois group of x^3-2 over F_0 . There

are six distinct elements in the group $G(K, F_0)$ since $\sigma(G(K, F_0)) = 6$. Let $S = \{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$ be the set consisting of the roots of $x^3 - 2$ in K . Let $\alpha = 2^{1/3}$, $\beta = 2^{1/3}\omega$, $\gamma = 2^{1/3}\omega^2$. Let P be the set of those permutations on S which do not change those elements of S which are in F_0 . There is a one-to-one correspondence between the elements of the set P and the elements of the group $G(K, F_0)$. Since S has no element which is in F_0 , therefore there are six permutations on S which do not change those elements of S which are in F_0 . These are I , $(\alpha \beta \gamma)$, $(\alpha \gamma \beta)$, $(\alpha \beta)$, $(\beta \gamma)$, $(\gamma \alpha)$. Thus these are

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha & \beta & \gamma \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \beta & \gamma & \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \gamma & \alpha & \beta \end{pmatrix}, \\ \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \beta & \alpha & \gamma \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha & \gamma & \beta \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \gamma & \beta & \alpha \end{pmatrix}.$$

If $\sigma \in G(K, F_0)$, then σ leaves every element of F_0 fixed. The field K is generated by α, β, γ over F_0 . Further σ maps a root of $x^3 - 2$ onto a root of $x^3 - 2$. Therefore σ will be completely determined if we know under σ the images of any two of the three elements α, β, γ . If $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_6$ are the six elements of $G(K, F_0)$, then they will be determined by the following six sets of images:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \alpha & \beta \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & \gamma \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \beta & \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \alpha & \gamma \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ \gamma & \beta \end{pmatrix}.$$

These can also be written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \\ 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega & 2^{1/3}\omega^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega^2 & 2^{1/3} \end{pmatrix}, \\ \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega & 2^{1/3} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \\ 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & 2^{1/3}\omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega^2 & 2^{1/3}\omega \end{pmatrix}.$$

Since $K = F_0(2^{1/3}, \omega)$, therefore $\sigma \in G(K, F_0)$ will be completely determined if we know the images of $2^{1/3}$ and ω under σ . Under each of the automorphisms $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_6$ we have already given the

images of $2^{1/3}$. Now $\sigma_1(\omega) = \sigma_1\left(\frac{2^{1/3}\omega}{2^{1/3}}\right) = \frac{\sigma_1(2^{1/3}\omega)}{\sigma_1(2^{1/3})} = \frac{2^{1/3}\omega}{2^{1/3}} = \omega$,

$$\sigma_2(\omega) = \sigma_2\left(\frac{2^{1/3}\omega}{2^{1/3}}\right) = \frac{\sigma_2(2^{1/3}\omega)}{\sigma_2(2^{1/3})} = \frac{2^{1/3}\omega^2}{2^{1/3}\omega} = \omega,$$

$$\sigma_3(\omega) = \omega, \sigma_4(\omega) = \omega^2 = \sigma_5(\omega) = \sigma_6(\omega).$$

Therefore $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_6$ are given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & \omega \\ 2^{1/3} & \omega \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & \omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega & \omega \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & \omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega^2 & \omega \end{pmatrix}, \\ \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & \omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega & \omega^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & \omega \\ 2^{1/3} & \omega^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2^{1/3} & \omega \\ 2^{1/3}\omega^2 & \omega^2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

§ 8. Construction with Straight-Edge (Ruler) and Compass.

Constructible number. Definition. A real number α is said to be a constructible number if by the use of ruler and compass alone we can construct a line segment of length α . We assume that we are given some fundamental unit length. (Madurai 1988)

From our knowledge of high school geometry we know that with the help of ruler and compass alone we can draw a straight line perpendicular to a given line through a given point. Also we can draw a straight line parallel to a given line through a given point. From this we can easily show that if real numbers α, β are constructible, then the real numbers $\alpha \pm \beta$, $\alpha\beta$ and α/β (if $\beta \neq 0$) are also constructible. Thus if W is the set of all constructible real numbers, then W is a subfield of the field of real numbers. Since $1 \in W$, therefore $p \in W$, where p is any integer. [Note that if p is a positive integer, then $p = 1 + 1 + 1 + \dots$ upto p times. Further if $p = -q$ where q is a positive integer, then $p = -(1 + 1 + \dots$ upto q times)]. Now if p and $0 \neq q$ are any two integers, then $\frac{p}{q}$ is constructible and so $\frac{p}{q} \in W$. Thus each rational number is constructible and so W contains F_0 the field of rational numbers.

Note. Throughout this section the words (*construct*, *constructible*, *construction*) will always mean by ruler and compass. Further the allowable steps of construction corresponding to the ruler and compass alone, are

(a) Drawing of a straight line through two points.

[Use of ruler]

(b) Drawing of a circle with any point as centre and any line segment as radius.

[Use of compass]

(c) Determination of a point or points as the intersection of

(i) Two lines, (ii) A line and a circle, (iii) Two circles.

Theorem 42. Let F_0 be the field of rational numbers. The real number α is constructible if and only if we can find real numbers $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ such that $\lambda_1^2 \in F_0$, $\lambda_2^2 \in F_0(\lambda_1)$, $\lambda_3^2 \in F_0(\lambda_1, \lambda_2), \dots$, $\lambda_n^2 \in F_0(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_{n-1})$, and such that $\alpha \in F_0(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n)$.

Or

A real number α is constructible if and only if we can imbed α in a field obtained from the field of rational numbers by a finite number of quadratic extensions.

Proof. Suppose F is any subfield of the field of real numbers. The set of all those points (x, y) in the real Euclidean plane both

of whose coordinates x and y are in F will be called *the plane of F* . Any straight line joining two points in the plane of F has an equation of the form $ax+by+c=0$ where a, b, c are all in F . Also the equation of any circle whose centre is a point in the plane of F and whose radius is an element of F is of the form

$$x^2+y^2+ax+by+c=0$$

where a, b, c are all in F . Such straight lines and circles are called *lines and circles in F* .

If two straight lines in the plane of F intersect in the real plane, then, the coordinates of their point of intersection are again in F because the process involves only the solution of two linear equations. On the other hand if a straight line and a circle in the plane of F intersect in the real plane, then the determination of the coordinates of their points of intersection leads to the solution of a quadratic equation in one unknown with coefficients belonging to F . Thus the coordinates of these points of intersection either belong to F or to a quadratic extension of the form $F(\sqrt{\gamma})$ where γ is a positive member of F but is not the square of a member of F . [It should be noted that if γ is a positive member of F , then $F(\sqrt{\gamma})=F$ if γ is the square of a member of F and $F(\sqrt{\gamma})$ is a proper extension of F if γ is not the square of a member of F . In the former case $[F(\sqrt{\gamma}) : F]=1$ and in the later case $[F(\sqrt{\gamma}) : F]=2$.

Finally, the intersection of two circles in F can be realized as that of a line in F and a circle in F . For example if two circles in F are $x^2+y^2+a_1x+b_1y+c_1=0$ and $x^2+y^2+a_2x+b_2y+c_2=0$, their intersection is the intersection of either of these with the line $(a_1-a_2)x+(b_1-b_2)y+(c_1-c_2)=0$ which passes through their common points. Thus if two circles in the plane of F intersect in the real plane, then their point of intersection is either in the plane of F or in the plane of $F(\sqrt{\gamma})$ for some positive γ in F .

From the above discussion we conclude that lines and circles of F lead us to points either in F or in quadratic extensions of F . Suppose in place of being in F , we are now in $F(\sqrt{\gamma_1})$ for some quadratic extension of F . Then lines and circles in $F(\sqrt{\gamma_1})$ intersect in points in the plane of $F(\sqrt{\gamma_1}, \sqrt{\gamma_2})$ where γ_2 is a positive member in $F(\sqrt{\gamma_1})$. Thus a point is constructible from F if we can find real numbers $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ such that $\lambda_1^2 \in F$, $\lambda_2^2 \in F(\lambda_1)$, $\lambda_3^2 \in F(\lambda_1, \lambda_2), \dots, \lambda_n^2 \in F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{n-1})$, and such that the point is in the plane of $F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$. Also from our knowledge of high

school geometry we know that if a positive real number γ is constructible, then $\sqrt{\gamma}$ is also constructible. Therefore if $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ are real numbers such that $\lambda_1^2 \in F$, $\lambda_2^2 \in F(\lambda_1)$, $\lambda_3^2 \in F(\lambda_1, \lambda_2)$, \dots , $\lambda_n^2 \in F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{n-1})$, then a point in the plane of $F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ is constructible from F . Hence a point is constructible from F if and only if we can find a finite number of real numbers $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ such that

$$(1) [F(\lambda_1) : F] = 1 \text{ or } 2,$$

$$(2) [F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_i) : F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{i-1})] = 1 \text{ or } 2 \text{ for } i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

and such that our point lies in the plane of $F(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$.

Now we know that every number belonging to the field F_0 of rational numbers is constructible. Therefore in the above discussion if we take the field F_0 in place of the field F , then we conclude that a real number α is constructible if and only if we can imbed α in a field obtained from F_0 by a finite number of quadratic extensions of F_0 .

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Theorem 43. *If a real number α is constructible, then α lies in some finite extension K of the field of rational numbers of degree which is some power of 2.*

(Meerut 1987; Delhi 1970; Dibrugarh 67)

Proof. Let F_0 be the field of rational numbers. We know that if a real number α is constructible, then α can be imbedded in a field obtained from F_0 by a finite number of quadratic extensions. Thus if a real number α is constructible, then we can find real numbers $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ such that

$$\lambda_1^2 \in F_0, \lambda_2^2 \in F_0(\lambda_1), \lambda_3^2 \in F_0(\lambda_1, \lambda_2), \dots,$$

$$\lambda_n^2 \in F_0(\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_{n-1}), \text{ and such that } \alpha \in F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n).$$

$$\text{We have } [F_0(\lambda_1) : F_0] = 1 \text{ or } 2.$$

$$\text{Also } [F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_i) : F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{i-1})] = 1 \text{ or } 2$$

for $i=1, 2, \dots, n$.

Now $\alpha \in F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) : F_0] \\ = [F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) : F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{n-1})] [F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{n-1}) : \\ F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_{n-2})] \dots [F_0(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) : F_0(\lambda_1)] [F_0(\lambda_1) : F_0]. \end{aligned}$$

Since each term in the product is either 1 or 2, we get that

$$[F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) : F_0] = 2^r$$

where r is some non-negative integer.

Thus $\alpha \in F_0(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ which is a finite extension of F_0 and has degree a power of 2.

Theorem 44. *If the real number α satisfies an irreducible polynomial over the field of rational numbers of degree k , and if k is not a power of 2, then α is not constructible.* (Kanpur 1986)

Proof. Let F_0 be the field of rational numbers. Suppose α is a constructible real number. Then there is a finite extension K of F_0 such that $\alpha \in K$ and such that $[K : F_0] = 2^r$ where r is some non-negative integer. Since $F_0(\alpha)$ is a subfield of K containing F_0 , therefore by theorem 2, $[F_0(\alpha) : F_0]$ is a divisor of $[K : F_0] = 2^r$. Therefore $[F_0(\alpha) : F_0]$ must also be some power of 2. Thus we conclude that if α is constructible, then $[F_0(\alpha) : F_0]$ must be some power of 2. Now it is given that α satisfies some irreducible polynomial of degree k over F_0 . Therefore

$$[F_0(\alpha) : F_0] = k.$$

Since k is given to be not a power of 2, therefore α cannot be constructible. This proves the theorem.

Note. The above theorem gives us a very important criterion of non-constructibility.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. *Show that the polynomial $8x^3 - 6x - 1$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.* (Meerut 1987; Guru Nanak 90)

Solution. Let $f(x) = 8x^3 - 6x - 1$. Then

$$f(x-1) = 8(x-1)^3 - 6(x-1) - 1 = 8x^3 - 24x^2 + 18x - 3.$$

Obviously $f(x)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers if and only if $f(x-1)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

Now $f(x-1) = 8x^3 - 24x^2 + 18x - 3$ is a polynomial with integer coefficients. Also 3 is a prime number such that 3 divides each of the coefficients of $f(x-1)$ except the coefficient of x^3 which is 8. Also 3^2 is not a divisor of the constant term which is -3 . Therefore by Eisenstein's criterion of irreducibility $f(x-1)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers. Hence $f(x)$ is irreducible over the field of rational numbers.

Ex. 2. *Show that it is impossible, by straight edge and compass alone, to trisect 60° .* (Meerut 1980, 81, 82, 84, 85, 87, 88, 91;

Kanpur 80; Madurai 88)

Solution. Suppose it is possible to trisect 60° by straight-edge and compass alone. Then the length $\alpha = \cos 20^\circ$ would be constructible. We have the identity

$$\cos 3\theta = 4 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta.$$

Putting $\theta = 20^\circ$ in this identity, we get

$$\cos 60^\circ = 4 \cos^3 20^\circ - 3 \cos 20^\circ$$

$$\text{or} \quad \frac{1}{2} = 4\alpha^3 - 3\alpha \quad [\because \cos 60^\circ = \frac{1}{2}, \cos 20^\circ = \alpha]$$

$$\text{or} \quad 8\alpha^3 - 6\alpha - 1 = 0.$$

Thus the real number α is a root of the polynomial $8x^3 - 6x - 1$ over the field of rational numbers. Now $8x^3 - 6x - 1$ is an irreducible polynomial over the field of rational numbers. The degree of this polynomial is 3 which is definitely not a power of 2. Therefore by theorem 44, α is not constructible. Hence our initial assumption is wrong. Thus it is not possible to trisect 60° with straight edge and compass alone.

Ex. 3. Show that it is impossible by straight-edge and compass alone to duplicate the cube.

(Meerut 1981, 83, 87, 89, 90; Dibrugarh 67)

Solution. We are to show that it is not possible by straight edge and compass alone to construct a cube whose volume is twice that of a given cube. Without loss of generality, let us suppose that the given cube is the unit cube. Then we are to show that it is not possible to construct a length α such that

$$\alpha^3 = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad \alpha^3 - 2 = 0.$$

Now $\alpha^3 - 2$ is an irreducible polynomial over the field of rational numbers. The degree of this polynomial is 3 which is certainly not a power of 2. Therefore, by theorem 44, if the real number α is a root of this polynomial, then α is not constructible.

Ex. 4. Show that it is impossible to construct a regular septagon by straight edge and compass alone.

(Meerut 1984 P, 87; Madurai 88)

Solution. The sum of the exterior angles of a regular polygon is equal to 2π . Therefore each exterior angle of a regular septagon is equal to $2\pi/7$. If it is possible to construct a regular septagon by straight edge and compass alone, then the length $\alpha = 2 \cos 2\pi/7$ is constructible.

Let $\theta = 2\pi/7$. Then $7\theta = 2\pi$ or $4\theta = 2\pi - 3\theta$.

$$\therefore \sin 4\theta = \sin (2\pi - 3\theta) = -\sin 3\theta$$

$$\text{or} \quad 2.2 \sin \theta \cos \theta (2 \cos^2 \theta - 1) + (3 \sin \theta - 4 \sin^3 \theta) = 0$$

$$\text{or} \quad \sin \theta [8 \cos^3 \theta - 4 \cos \theta + 3 - 4 (1 - \cos^2 \theta)] = 0$$

$$\text{or} \quad 8 \cos^3 \theta + 4 \cos^2 \theta - 4 \cos \theta - 1 = 0$$

$$\left[\because \sin \theta \neq 0 \text{ if } \theta = \frac{2\pi}{7} \right]$$

$$\text{or} \quad (2 \cos \theta)^3 + (2 \cos \theta)^2 - 2 (2 \cos \theta) - 1 = 0.$$

Therefore $2 \cos (2\pi/7)$ is a root of the equation $x^3 + x^2 - 2x - 1 = 0$. Thus $\alpha = 2 \cos 2\pi/7$ satisfies the polynomial $x^3 + x^2 - 2x - 1$. But this polynomial is irreducible over the field of rational numbers. Its degree is 3 which is not a power of 2. Therefore α is not constructible. Hence it is not possible to construct a regular septagon by straight-edge and compass alone.

Ex. 5. Show that the regular pentagon is constructible.

Solution. A regular pentagon will be constructible if it is possible to construct a length $\alpha = \cos 2\pi/5$. We have

$$\cos \frac{2\pi}{5} = \cos \frac{2}{5} (180)^\circ = \cos 72^\circ = \sin 18^\circ = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}.$$

Since $\sqrt{5} = \sqrt{(1^2 + 2^2)}$ is constructible, therefore $\alpha = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{5}}{4}$ is constructible. Hence it is possible to construct the regular pentagon.

Ex. 6. Show that the regular hexagon is constructible.

Solution. A regular hexagon will be constructible if it is possible to construct a length $\alpha = \cos \frac{2\pi}{6} = \cos \frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$. Now $\frac{1}{2}$ is constructible. Therefore the regular hexagon is constructible.

Ex. 7. Show that it is not possible to construct a square whose area is equal to that of a given circle.

Solution. Without loss of generality we can assume that the radius of the given circle is unity. Then the area of the given circle is π . So we are to construct a length α such that $\alpha^2 = \pi$ or $\alpha^2 - \pi = 0$.

Since π is transcendental, therefore it cannot be the root of an equation whose coefficients belong to the field F_0 of rational numbers. Thus $F_0(\pi)$ is not algebraic over F_0 so that $F_0(\pi)$ is of infinite degree over F_0 . Thus π and so also $\sqrt{\pi}$ are not constructible.

§ 9. Solvability by Radicals. Consider the polynomial $x^2 + 3x + 4$ over the field of rational numbers F_0 . Using the quadratic formula for its roots, we see that its roots are $\frac{1}{2}[-3 \pm \sqrt{(-7)}]$. Thus the field $F = F_0(\sqrt{7}i)$ is the splitting field of $x^2 + 3x + 4$ over F_0 . Consequently we may say that there is an element $\gamma = -7$ in F_0 such that the extension field $F_0(\omega)$ where $\omega^2 = \gamma$ is such that it contains all the roots of $x^2 + 3x + 4$.

Definition. Suppose F is a field and $p(x)$ is a polynomial in $F[x]$. Then $p(x)$ is said to be solvable by radicals over F if it is possible to determine a finite sequence of fields

$$F_1 = F(\omega_1), F_2 = F_1(\omega_2) = F(\omega_1, \omega_2), \dots, F_k = F_{k-1}(\omega_k) \\ = F(\omega_1, \dots, \omega_k)$$

such that $\omega_1^{r_1} \in F$, $\omega_2^{r_2} \in F_1$, ..., $\omega_k^{r_k} \in F_{k-1}$,
such that the roots of $p(x)$ all lie in F_k .

It is obvious that

$$F \subseteq F_1 \subseteq F_2 \subseteq \dots \subseteq F_k.$$

Remark. If K is the splitting field of $p(x)$ over F , then $p(x)$ is solvable by radicals over F if it is possible to find a sequence of fields as in the above definition such that $K \subseteq F_k$.

Also it can be proved that if $p(x)$ is solvable by radicals over F , then we can find a sequence of fields

$$F \subseteq F_1 = F(\omega_1) \subseteq F_2 = F_1(\omega_2) \subseteq \dots \subseteq F_k = F_{k-1}(\omega_k)$$

where $\omega_1^{r_1} \in F$, $\omega_2^{r_2} \in F_1$, ..., $\omega_k^{r_k} \in F_{k-1}$,

F_k containing all the roots of $p(x)$ such that F_k is normal over F .

From the classical theory of algebraic equations, we know that the equations of second, third and fourth degrees over the field of rational numbers can be solved by radicals. If $p(x)$ is a given polynomial over a field F , then we want to know whether it is solvable by radicals or not. For this purpose we shall give a criterion for the solvability by radicals of a polynomial $p(x)$ over a field F in terms of the Galois group of that polynomial. But first we need a result about the Galois group of a certain type of polynomial.

Theorem 45. Suppose that the field F contains all n^{th} roots of unity (for some particular n) and suppose that a is a non-zero element of F . Let $x^n - a \in F[x]$ and let K be its splitting field over F . Then

- (1) $K = F(u)$ where u is any root of $x^n - a$.
- (2) The Galois group of $x^n - a$ over F is abelian.

Proof. (1) We know that the n^{th} roots of unity are given by $\cos(2r\pi/n) + i \sin(2r\pi/n) = e^{2\pi i r/n}$, where $r = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$.

It is given that F contains all n^{th} roots of unity. Therefore, in particular, F contains $\alpha = e^{2\pi i/n}$. Note that $\alpha^n = 1$ but $\alpha^m \neq 1$ for $0 < m < n$.

If $u \in K$ is any root of $x^n - a$, then we claim that $u, \alpha u, \alpha^2 u, \dots, \alpha^{n-1} u$ are all the roots of $x^n - a$. That they are roots is obvious. Also no two of these are equal because

$$\alpha^i u = \alpha^j u$$

$$\text{where } 0 \leq i < j < n$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Rightarrow (\alpha^i - \alpha^j) u = 0 \\
&\Rightarrow \alpha^i - \alpha^j = 0 \quad [\because u \text{ cannot be } 0] \\
&\Rightarrow \alpha^i = \alpha^j \\
&\Rightarrow \alpha^{j-i} = 1 \text{ where } 0 < j-i < n.
\end{aligned}$$

But this is impossible since $\alpha^m \neq 1$ for $0 < m < n$. Therefore no two of the roots $u, \alpha u, \dots, \alpha^{n-1}u$ are equal. Thus $u, \alpha u, \alpha^2 u, \dots, \alpha^{n-1}u$ are n distinct roots of $x^n - a$ which cannot have more than n roots. Therefore $u, \alpha u, \alpha^2 u, \dots, \alpha^{n-1}u$ are all the roots of $x^n - a$. Since $\alpha \in F$, therefore all of $u, \alpha u, \dots, \alpha^{n-1}u$ are in $F(u)$. Thus $F(u)$ splits $x^n - a$. Further $F(u)$ is the smallest field containing u and F . Therefore no proper subfield of $F(u)$ which contains F also contains u . Hence no proper subfield of $F(u)$ can split $x^n - a$. It follows that $F(u)$ is the splitting field of $x^n - a$ and thus

$$K = F(u).$$

(2) Let $G(K, F)$ be the Galois group of $f(x) = x^n - a \in F[x]$.

Let σ, τ be any two elements of $G(K, F)$. Then σ, τ are automorphisms of $K = F(u)$ leaving every element of F fixed. Since $u \in K$ is a root of $f(x)$, therefore both $\sigma(u)$ and $\tau(u)$ are roots of $f(x)$. [See Ex. 5 page 514]. Then we must have $\sigma(u) = \alpha^i u$ and $\tau(u) = \alpha^j u$ for some i and j .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Now } \sigma\tau(u) &= \sigma(\tau(u)) = \sigma(\alpha^j u) = \sigma(\alpha^j) \sigma(u) \\
&= \alpha^j \sigma(u) \quad [\because \alpha^j \in F \Rightarrow \sigma(\alpha^j) = \alpha^j] \\
&= \alpha^j \alpha^i u = \alpha^{i+j} u.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Similarly } \tau\sigma(u) = \alpha^{i+j} u.$$

Thus $\sigma\tau$ and $\tau\sigma$ agree on u and on F and consequently they agree on all of $K = F(u)$. It follows that $\sigma\tau = \tau\sigma$ and so the Galois group $G(K, F)$ is abelian.

Remark. The above theorem implies that if F has all n th roots of unity, then by adjoining one root of $x^n - a$ to F where $a \in F$, we obtain the whole splitting field of $x^n - a$ and accordingly this must be a normal extension of F .

Before going through the remaining part of this section students are advised to revise the concept of solvable groups given in § 13 of chapter 3 on Groups (continued).

Theorem 46. Let F be a field of characteristic 0 containing all n th roots of unity for every integer n . If $p(x) \in F[x]$ is solvable by radicals over F , then the Galois group over F of $p(x)$ is a solvable group. (G.N.D.U. Amritsar 1986)

Proof. Let K be the splitting field of $p(x)$ over F and let $G(K, F)$ be the Galois group of $p(x)$ over F . It is given that $p(x)$ is solvable by radicals over F . Therefore by the definition of solvability of a polynomial by radicals, there exists a sequence of fields

$$F \subseteq F_1 = F(\omega_1) \subseteq F_2 = F_1(\omega_2) \subseteq \dots \subseteq F_k = F_{k-1}(\omega_k)$$

where $\omega_1^{r_1} \in F$, $\omega_2^{r_2} \in F_1, \dots, \omega_k^{r_k} \in F_{k-1}$ and where $K \subseteq F_k$. Without any loss of generality we may regard F_k as a normal extension of F . [See our remark on page 553]. Since F_k is a normal extension of F , therefore F_k is also a normal extension of any intermediate field. Thus F_k is a normal extension of each F_i .

By our remark after theorem 45, each F_i is a normal extension of F_{i-1} . Also since F_k is a normal extension of F_{i-1} , therefore by the fundamental theorem of Galois theory it follows that $G(F_k, F_i)$ is a normal subgroup of $G(F_k, F_{i-1})$. Now consider the chain

$$G(F_k, F) \supseteq G(F_k, F_1) \supseteq G(F_k, F_2) \supseteq \dots \supseteq G(F_k, F_{k-1}) \supseteq (e). \quad \dots (1)$$

We have just mentioned that each subgroup in this chain is a normal subgroup of the preceding one. Since F_i is a normal extension of F_{i-1} , therefore by the fundamental theorem of Galois theory the Galois group $G(F_i, F_{i-1})$ of F_i over F_{i-1} is isomorphic to the quotient group $G(F_k, F_{i-1})/G(F_k, F_i)$. But by theorem 45, $G(F_i, F_{i-1})$ is an abelian group and the isomorphic image of an abelian group is also an abelian group. Therefore each quotient group $G(F_k, F_{i-1})/G(F_k, F_i)$ of the chain (1) is abelian. Hence by definition of a solvable group, the group $G(F_k, F)$ is solvable.

Now K is the splitting field of $p(x)$ over F and so K is a normal extension of F . Also $K \subseteq F_k$. Therefore by the fundamental theorem of Galois theory $G(F_k, K)$ is a normal subgroup of $G(F_k, F)$ and $G(K, F)$ is isomorphic to $G(F_k, F)/G(F_k, K)$. It follows that $G(K, F)$ is a homomorphic image of $G(F_k, F)$ which is a solvable group. But every homomorphic image of a solvable group is also a solvable group. [See corollary to theorem 3 page 242]. Therefore the group $G(K, F)$ is solvable. Since $G(K, F)$ is the Galois group of $p(x)$ over F , therefore the proof of the theorem is complete.

Note 1. The converse of the above theorem is also true :

If the Galois group of $p(x)$ over F is solvable, then $p(x)$ is solvable by radicals over F .

Note 2. Theorem 46 and its converse are true even if F does not contain roots of unity.

In the end of this section we shall give the famous theorem of Abel in connection with the solvability by radicals. First we shall explain the meaning of *the general polynomial of degree n over a field*.

Let $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ be the field of rational functions, in the n variables a_1, \dots, a_n over F . The particular polynomial $p(x) = x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + a_n$ over the field $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ is called the general polynomial of degree n over the field F . We say that it is solvable by radicals if it is solvable by radicals over the field $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$. It can be easily shown that the Galois group of the polynomial $p(x) = x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + a_n$ over $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ is P_n , the symmetric group of degree n .

Theorem 47. (Abel's theorem). *The general polynomial of degree $n \geq 5$ is not solvable by radicals.* (I.A.S. 1975; Meerut 91)

Proof. Let $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ be the field of rational functions in the n variables a_1, \dots, a_n . Then the Galois group of the polynomial $p(x) = x^n + a_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + a_n$ over $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ is P_n , where P_n is the symmetric group of degree n . By theorem 5 page 244, P_n is not a solvable group when $n \geq 5$. Therefore by theorem 46, the polynomial $p(x)$ is not solvable by radicals over $F(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ when $n \geq 5$.

§10. Finite Fields.

Finite field. Definition. *A field having only a finite number of elements is called a finite field.* If p is a prime number, then the ring I_p of integers modulo p is a field. This field has p elements and so it is an example of a finite field. We know that the characteristic of a field is either zero or a prime number. Suppose F is a finite field having n elements. Since F is a group of order n with respect to addition, therefore by a corollary to Lagrange's theorem we have $1+1+1+\dots$ upto n times $= 0$. So the characteristic of F cannot be zero. Hence the characteristic of a finite field is always a prime number.

Theorem 48. *Let F be a finite field with q elements and suppose that $F \subseteq K$ where K is also a finite field. Then K has q^n elements where $n = [K : F]$.* (Meerut 1989)

Proof. Since F is a sub-field of the field K , therefore K can be regarded as a vector space over the field F . The number of elements in the set K is finite. So the vector space $K(F)$ is definitely finite dimensional. Let the dimension of the vector space $K(F)$ be n . Then $[K : F] = n$. Let $\{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$ be a basis of the vector space $K(F)$. Then every element in K can be uniquely expressed in the form $a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n$ where a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n are all in F . Then the number of elements in K is the number of $a_1\beta_1 + a_2\beta_2 + \dots + a_n\beta_n$ as the a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n range over F . Since F has q elements, therefore each of the n coefficients a 's can have q values. So K must have q^n elements.

Theorem 49. *Let F be a finite field. Then F has p^m elements where the prime number p is the characteristic of F .*

(Meerut 1972; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Banaras 71;
I. C. S. 89; Madurai 88)

Proof. Since F is a finite field, therefore the characteristic of F is a prime number, say, p . Now F is a field of characteristic p . Therefore F contains a sub-field F_0 isomorphic to the field I_p of integers modulo p . The field I_p has p elements. Therefore the field F_0 has also p elements. Now F is a finite field and F_0 is a subfield of F . Let $[F : F_0] = m$. Then, by theorem 48, the number of elements in $F = p^m$.

Theorem 50. *If the finite field F has $q = p^m$ elements, then every $a \in F$ satisfies the relation $a^q = a$.* (Meerut 1981, 82P)

Proof. Let $a \in F$ and $a = 0$. We have $0^q = 0$. Therefore $a = 0$ satisfies the relation $a^q = a$.

Now let $a \in F$ and $a \neq 0$. The non-zero elements of the field F form a group with respect to multiplication. The identity element of this group is 1 and the order of this group is $q - 1$. Therefore by a corollary to Lagrange's theorem, we have

$$a^{q-1} = 1 \text{ for all } a \neq 0 \text{ in } F. \quad \dots (1)$$

Multiplying both sides of (1) by a , we get $a^q = a$.

Thus we have $a^q = a \quad \forall a \in F$

Corollary. *If the finite field F has $q = p^m$ elements, then the polynomial $x^q - x$ in $F[x]$ factors in $F[x]$ as*

$$x^q - x = \prod_{\lambda \in F} (x - \lambda).$$

(Meerut 1980, 82P, Banaras 71)

Proof. As proved in theorem 50, we have $a^q = a \quad \forall a \in F$. Therefore every a in F satisfies the polynomial $x^q - x \in F[x]$.

Hence by factor theorem $x-\lambda$ is a divisor of x^q-x for all $\lambda \in F$. Let a_1, a_2, \dots, a_q be the q elements of the field F . Then the product $(x-a_1)(x-a_2)\dots(x-a_q)$ is a divisor of x^q-x , being a product of relatively prime polynomials each dividing x^q-x . Now $(x-a_1)(x-a_2)\dots(x-a_q)$ is a monic polynomial of degree q and it is a divisor of the monic polynomial x^q-x of degree q . Therefore we have

$$x^q-x=(x-a_1)(x-a_2)\dots(x-a_q)=\prod_{\lambda \in F}(x-\lambda).$$

Theorem 51. *Any two finite fields having the same number of elements are isomorphic.*

(Meerut 1987; Nagarjuna 79, 80; Kanpur 88)

Proof. Let F be a finite field of characteristic p . Let the number of elements in F be equal to $q=p^n$. First we shall show that F can be regarded as the splitting field of the polynomial $x^q-x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$ where \mathbb{I}_p is the field of integers modulo p .

Since F is a field of finite characteristic p , therefore it contains a subfield F_0 isomorphic to the field \mathbb{I}_p . So, without any loss of generality, we can regard F as an extension of the field \mathbb{I}_p . Since the field F has q elements, therefore by theorem 50, we have $a^q=a \forall a \in F$. So every a in F satisfies the polynomial $x^q-x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$. Since the degree of the polynomial x^q-x is q , therefore it can have at most q roots in any extension field of \mathbb{I}_p . But we have just shown that all the q elements of the field F are the roots of x^q-x . Therefore we have $x^q-x = \prod_{\lambda \in F} (x-\lambda)$. Thus

the polynomial $x^q-x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$ splits in the field F . But this polynomial cannot split in any smaller field for that field would have to have all the roots of this polynomial and so would have to have at least q elements. Note that the roots of this polynomial are all distinct. [See theorem 27 on page 520]. Consequently F is the splitting field of $x^q-x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$.

Now suppose that F^* is any other finite field having $q=p^n$ elements. Then as shown above F^* is also the splitting field of $x^q-x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$. But any two splitting fields of $x^q-x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$ must be isomorphic. [See corollary to theorem 22 on page 512]

Hence

$$F^* \cong F.$$

Theorem 52. *For every prime number p and every positive integer m there exists a field having p^m elements.*

(Banaras 1972; Meerut 77, 80, 81; G.N.D.U. Amritsar 87; Madurai 88)

Proof. Since p is a prime number, therefore \mathbb{I}_p , the ring of integers modulo p , is a finite field of characteristic p . Consider the polynomial $x^{p^m} - x \in \mathbb{I}_p[x]$. Let K be the splitting field of this polynomial. In K let $F = \{a \in K : a^{p^m} = a\}$. Then F is a subset of K and it consists of those elements of K which are the roots of $x^{p^m} - x$. But by theorem 27 the roots of the polynomial $x^{p^m} - x$ are all distinct and so this polynomial has p^m distinct roots in the field K . Therefore the set F has p^m elements. We now claim that F is a subfield of K . Let $a, b \in F$. Then $a^{p^m} = a$ and $b^{p^m} = b$. Since the characteristic of the field K is p , therefore $(a \pm b)^{p^m} = a^{p^m} \pm b^{p^m} = a \pm b$. Thus $a, b \in F \Rightarrow a \pm b \in F$. Also $(ab)^{p^m} = a^{p^m} b^{p^m} = ab$. Therefore $a, b \in F \Rightarrow ab \in F$. Similarly we can show that if $a \in F$ and $0 \neq b \in F$, then $a/b \in F$. Consequently F is a subfield of K and so F itself is a field and it has p^m elements. Thus we have shown that for every prime number p and every positive integer m there exists a field F having p^m elements.

Theorem 53. *For every prime number p and every positive integer m there is a unique field having p^m elements.*

(Banaras 1972; Meerut 83, 87; Andhra 77)

Proof. As shown in theorem 52, for every prime number p and every positive integer m there exists a finite field having p^m elements. [Give the proof here]. Also by theorem 51, any two finite fields having the same number of elements are isomorphic. Hence for every prime number p and every positive integer m there exists a unique field having p^m elements. This field is sometimes called the *Galois field* $GF[p^m]$. (Andhra 1977)

Definition. Let ω be an n th root of unity. If s is the smallest positive integer such that $\omega^s = 1$, we shall say that s is the order of ω . If the order of ω is n we shall call ω a primitive n th root of unity.

The following theorem will completely describe the structure of the multiplicative group of the Galois field $GF[p^m]$. In the proof of this theorem we shall use one result about abelian groups which we give in the form of the following Lemma.

Lemma. *In an abelian group the product $c_1 c_2 \dots c_r$ of elements*

c_i whose orders are powers $p_i^{e_i}$ of distinct primes has order exactly

$$p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} \dots p_r^{e_r} = h.$$

The easy proof of this lemma has been left as an exercise for the reader. Show that the order divides h , but fails to divide h/p_i for any i .

Theorem 54. *The multiplicative group of non-zero elements of a finite field is cyclic.* (Madurai 1988; G.N.D.U. 86)

Proof. Let F be a finite field having q elements. The non-zero elements of F form a group of order $q-1$ with respect to multiplication. The identity element of this group is 1. Therefore we have $a^{q-1}=1$ for all $a \neq 0$ in F . Thus each non-zero element in F is a $(q-1)$ th root of unity, in the sense that it satisfies the equation $x^{q-1}=1$. Let F_0 denote the set of non-zero elements of F . If we find an element $a \in F_0$ such that the order of a as an element of the multiplicative group F_0 is $q-1$, then F_0 will turn out to be a cyclic group. [See theorem 5 on page 173 in the chapter 2 of Groups]. To achieve this aim let us write $q-1$ as product of powers of distinct primes

$$q-1 = p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} \dots p_r^{e_r} \quad (0 < p_1 < p_2 < \dots < p_r).$$

For each i , $p_i^{e_i}$ is a divisor of $q-1$. Therefore the roots of $x^P=1$, where $P=p_i^{e_i}$, are all roots of $x^{q-1}=1$, hence all lie in F . Let us put $Q=p_i^{e_i}-1$. Then of all the $P=p_i^{e_i}$ distinct roots of the equation $x^P=1$, exactly $Q=p_i^{e_i}-1$ satisfy the equation $x^Q=1$. Therefore F contains at least one root $c=c_i$ of $x^P=1$ which does not satisfy $x^Q=1$. Then $c_i \in F$ is such that $c_i^P=1$ but $c_i^Q \neq 1$.

Therefore the element c_i has order $P=p_i^{e_i}$ in the multiplicative group of non-zero elements of F . By the above Lemma the product $c_1 c_2 \dots c_r$ is an element of order $p_1^{e_1} p_2^{e_2} \dots p_r^{e_r} = q-1$. Thus $c_1 c_2 \dots c_r$ is the required element of order $q-1$ of the multiplicative group of non-zero elements of F . Hence the multiplicative group of non-zero elements of F is cyclic.

Theorem 55. *Every finite field of characteristic p has an automorphism $a \mapsto a^p$.* (Meerut 1981, 90)

Proof. Let F be a finite field of characteristic p . Let $\phi : F \rightarrow F$ such that $\phi(a) = a^p \quad \forall a \in F$.

ϕ is one-one. Let $a, b \in F$. Then

$$\phi(a) = \phi(b) \Rightarrow a^p = b^p \Rightarrow a^p - b^p = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow (a - b)^p = 0 \quad [\text{Note that in a field of characteristic } p, \text{ we have}$$

$$(a - b)^p = a^p - b^p]$$

$$\Rightarrow a - b = 0 \Rightarrow a = b \Rightarrow \phi \text{ is } 1-1.$$

ϕ is onto, Since the set F is finite, therefore ϕ is one-one
 $\Rightarrow \phi$ is also onto.

ϕ preserves addition and multiplication. Let $a, b \in F$. Then

$$\phi(a + b) = (a + b)^p$$

$$= a^p + b^p \quad [\text{Note that in a field of characteristic } p, \text{ we have } (a + b)^p = a^p + b^p]$$

$$= \phi(a) + \phi(b).$$

$$\text{Also } \phi(ab) = (ab)^p = a^p b^p = \phi(a)\phi(b)$$

Hence ϕ is an automorphism of the field F .

Corollary. In a finite field of characteristic p , every element has a p^{th} root.

Theorem 56. If F is a finite field and $\alpha \neq 0, \beta \neq 0$ are two elements of F then we can find elements a and b in F such that

$$1 + \alpha a^2 + \beta b^2 = 0$$

[Madurai 1988, Meerut 80, 82]

Proof. Case 1. Suppose the characteristic of F is 2. Then F has 2^m elements and every element x in F satisfies $x^{2^m} = x$. [See theorem 50]. Thus every elements in F is a square of some elements in F . In particular $\alpha^{-1} = c^2$ for some $c \in F$. Taking $a = c$ and $b = 0$,

We have

$$1 + \alpha a^2 + \beta b^2 = 1 + \alpha c^2 + \beta 0 = 1 + \alpha \alpha^{-1} + 0 = 1 + 1 = 0$$

Note that if the characteristic of F is 2, then $1+1=0$.

Case 2. Suppose the characteristic of F is a prime number p other than 2. Then F has p^m elements. Let $W_\alpha = \{1 + \alpha x^2 : x \in F\}$. Let us find the number of distinct elements in W_α . For this purpose we should check that how often $1 + \alpha x^2 = 1 + \alpha y^2$. We have

$$1 + \alpha x^2 = 1 + \alpha y^2$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha x^2 = \alpha y^2$$

$$\Rightarrow x^2 = y^2 \quad [\because \alpha \neq 0]$$

$$\Rightarrow x = \pm y$$

Thus for $x \neq 0$ we get from each pair x and $-x$ one element in W_α and for $x = 0$, we get $1 \in W_\alpha$. Consequently W_α has

$$1 + \frac{p^m - 1}{2} = \frac{p^m + 1}{2}$$

distinct elements. Similarly we can show that $W_\beta = \{-\beta x^2 : x \in F\}$ has $\frac{p^m + 1}{2}$ distinct elements. Thus W_α and W_β are subsets of F and each of them has more than half the elements of F . So the intersection of W_α and W_β cannot be empty. Let $d \in W_\alpha \cap W_\beta$.

Since $d \in W_\alpha$, Therefore $d = 1 + \alpha a^2$ for some $a \in F$. Further since $d \in W_\beta$, therefore $d = -\beta b^2$ for some $b \in F$. Thus there exist $a, b \in F$ such that $1 + \alpha a^2 = -\beta b^2 \Rightarrow 1 + \alpha a^2 + \beta b^2 = 0$.

Exercises

- (i) Define a field extensions and the degree of a field extension. Find the degree and a basis of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3})$ over \mathbb{Q} where \mathbb{Q} is the field of rational numbers. [Merrut 1980, 81, 82, 84P, 88, 89]
 Ans. Degree is 4 and a basis is $\{1, \sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}, \sqrt{2}\sqrt{3}\}$.
 (ii) Determine the degree and a basis of the field of complex numbers over the field of real numbers. [Meerut 1980, 82P, 83]
- Prove that every complex number is algebraic over the field of real numbers.
- Find the relation between the fields $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$ and $\mathbb{Q}(3+\sqrt{2})$ where \mathbb{Q} is the field of rational numbers. [Meerut 1977]
 Ans. $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}) = \mathbb{Q}(3+\sqrt{2})$.
- Let \mathbb{Q} denote the field of rational numbers, $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})$, $L = K(\sqrt{7})$. Prove that $[L : K] = 2$ and $[K : \mathbb{Q}] = 2$. What do you conclude about $[L : \mathbb{Q}]$?
 Ans. $[L : \mathbb{Q}] = 4$
- Define splitting field of a polynomial show that given any non-zero polynomial $f(x)$ over a field K , then any two splitting fields of $f(x)$ over K are isomorphic. [Meerut 1976, 77]
- Find the splitting field $x^4 - 1$ over the field \mathbb{Q} of rational numbers. [Meerut 1978, 81 82P, 84, 90]
 Ans. $\mathbb{Q}(i)$.

7. Write the splitting fields of each of the following polynomials over the field \mathbb{Q} of rational numbers.

(i) $x^2 - 4$, (ii) $x^2 + 4$, (iii) $x^2 - 2$, (iv) $x^3 - 1$. [Meerut 1979]

Ans. (i) \mathbb{Q} , (ii) $\mathbb{Q}(i)$, (iii) $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$, (iv) $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt[3]{1})$.

8. Let F be the field of rational numbers. Determine the degree of the splitting field of the polynomial $x^7 - 1$ over F . Ans. 6.

9. Show that the polynomials $x^2 + 3$ and $x^2 - x + 1$ have the same splitting field over F , the field of rational numbers. [Meerut 1985]

10. Define splitting field of a polynomial over a field. Determine the splitting field of $x^4 - 2$ over the field of rational numbers. What is the degree of this splitting field? [Meerut 1978, 85]

Ans. Splitting field is $\mathbb{Q}(2^{1/4}, i)$ and its degree is 8.

11. If α, β are constructible real numbers, prove that $\alpha + \beta, \alpha - \beta, \alpha\beta$ and α/β ($\beta \neq 0$) are also constructible. [Meerut 1977]

12. Prove that the set of all constructible real numbers form a sub field of the field of all real numbers. [Meerut 1976]

13. (i) All non-constructible real numbers are irrational and all irrational numbers are non-constructible. Find fault with this statement.

(ii) Give two irrational numbers, one of which is constructible and the other non-constructible (by straight edge and compass).

[Meerut 1980]

14. Which of the following angles are constructible and which not constructible? [Meerut 1977, 79]

Ans. 15° is constructible while 10° and 1° are not constructible.

15. If a field F has q elements, then F is a splitting field of $x^q - x$ over its prime sub field. [Meerut 1976, 79, 80]

Number Theory

§ 1. Introduction. The theory of numbers mainly deals with the properties of *natural numbers* 1, 2, 3, 4, ..., also called the *positive integers* and more generally with those of the *integers* ..., -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, The set of integers is denoted by \mathbb{Z} and the set of positive integers or natural numbers by \mathbb{Z}^+ or by \mathbb{N} . Thus $\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ and $\mathbb{Z}^+ \text{ or } \mathbb{N} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$. We shall first mention the basic properties of integers and their elementary consequences.

§ 2. Two basic binary operations on the set of integers. There are two basic binary operations (i) addition denoted by '+' and (ii) multiplication denoted by '.' on the set of integers \mathbb{Z} . If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $a+b$ is called the sum and $a.b$ or more simply written as ab is called the product of a and b . The basic properties of these two operations are as given below :

- A₁. Closure for addition i.e., $a+b \in \mathbb{Z} \forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- A₂. Commutativity of addition i.e., $a+b=b+a \forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- A₃. Associativity of addition i.e., $a+(b+c)=(a+b)+c$
 $\forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

- A₄. Existence of identity for addition. There exists a unique integer '0' such that

$$a+0=a=0+a \quad \forall a \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

This integer 0 is called the additive identity.

- A₅. Existence of additive inverse of each integer. If $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then there exists a unique integer $-a \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that
 $-a+a=0=a+(-a)$.

The integer $-a$ is called the negative or the additive inverse of the integer a .

- M₁. Closure for multiplication i.e., $ab \in \mathbb{Z}$ for all $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- M₂. Commutativity of multiplication i.e., $ab=ba \forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$.

M₃. Associativity of multiplication i.e.,

$$(ab)c = a(bc) \quad \forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

M₄. Existence of identity for multiplication. There exists a unique integer '1' such that

$$1a = a = a1 \quad \forall a \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

The integer 1 is called the multiplicative identity.

Difference of two integers. The difference of two integers a and b denoted by ' $a-b$ ' is defined as

$$a-b = a+(-b).$$

§ 3. Some elementary consequences of the properties of addition and multiplication on \mathbb{Z} .

1. Cancellation law for addition. If $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$, then

$$a+b = a+c \Rightarrow b=c.$$

2. Cancellation law for multiplication. If $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a \neq 0$, then $ab = ac \Rightarrow b=c$.

3. Distributive law. If $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $a(b+c) = ab+ac$.

4. $a0 = 0$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$.

5. For $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, $a=b \Rightarrow -a=-b$.

6. $-(-a) = a$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$.

7. $-0 = 0$.

8. $-(a+b) = -a-b \quad \forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$.

9. For all $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, $a(-b) = -(ab) = (-a)b$.

10. $(-a)(-b) = ab$ for all $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$.

11. For $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, $ab=0 \Leftrightarrow a=0$ or $b=0$.

As a consequence of it, for $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$,
 $ab \neq 0 \Leftrightarrow a \neq 0$ and $b \neq 0$.

§ 4. The ordering of the integers. There exists a subset \mathbb{Z}^+ of \mathbb{Z} , called the set of positive integers and also denoted by \mathbb{N} , having the following two properties :

O₁. The law of trichotomy. If $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then one and only one of the following is true :

(i) $a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, (ii) $a=0$, (iii) $-a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$.

O₂. If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, then $a+b \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ and $ab \in \mathbb{Z}^+$. From **O₁** and **O₂**, it is easy to see that $0 \notin \mathbb{Z}^+$ and $1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$. Note that if $1 \notin \mathbb{Z}^+$, then $1 \neq 0 \Rightarrow -1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, by **O₁**.

Now by **O₂**, $-1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \Rightarrow (-1)(-1) \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \Rightarrow 1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, which is a contradiction. Hence 1 must belong to \mathbb{Z}^+ .

In view of the definition of \mathbb{Z}^+ , an integer a is said to be positive if $a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ and is said to be negative if $-a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$. Obviously a is positive iff $-a$ is negative.

Thus the set of integers is partitioned into three exhaustive and mutually disjoint subsets namely, the set of positive integers \mathbb{Z}^+ , the singleton $\{0\}$ and the set of negative integers \mathbb{Z}^- .

Order relations on the set of integers. Definition. If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a-b \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, then we say that a is greater than b and write $a > b$. Alternatively we say that b is less than a and write $b < a$.

If $a < b$ or $a=b$, we write $a \leq b$,
and if $a > b$ or $a=b$, we write $a \geq b$.

Obviously, a is positive iff $a > 0$ and a is negative iff $a < 0$. Also if $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then one and only one of the following is true :

$$a \in \mathbb{Z}^+, a=0, -a \in \mathbb{Z}^+$$

i.e. $a > 0, a=0, a < 0$.

§ 5. Some important properties of the order relations on \mathbb{Z} .

1. If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, then one and only one of the following is true :
 $a > b, a=b, a < b$.

2. **Transitivity of the order relations.** If $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$, then

$$(i) \ a < b, b < c \Rightarrow a < c;$$

and (ii) $a > b, b > c \Rightarrow a > c$.

3. If $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$, then

$$(i) \ a < b \Rightarrow a+c < b+c \text{ and } a-c < b-c$$

$$(ii) \ a > b \Rightarrow a+c > b+c \text{ and } a-c > b-c.$$

4. If $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$, then

$$(i) \ a > b, c > 0 \Rightarrow ac > bc;$$

and (ii) $a > b, c < 0 \Rightarrow ac < bc$.

5. If $a \in \mathbb{Z}, a \neq 0$, then $a^2 = a \cdot a > 0$.

§ 6. Well ordering principle.

Least and greatest integers in a subset of \mathbb{Z} . Let S be a non-empty subset of \mathbb{Z} . If there exists an integer $m \in S$ such that $x \geq m$ for all $x \in S$, then m is said to be the *smallest* or the *least integer* in S . In such a case we say that S has a least member.

If there exists an integer $n \in S$ such that $x \leq n$ for all $x \in S$, then n is said to be the *greatest integer* in S .

The well-ordering principle states that every non-empty subset of the set of positive integers has a least member.

From this principle it can be easily seen that 1 is the smallest positive integer and if $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, then there exists no integer a such that $k < a < k+1$.

§ 7. Principle of mathematical induction. [First form. Let K be a subset of \mathbb{N} such that (i) $1 \in K$ and (ii) $n \in K \Rightarrow n+1 \in K$, then $K=\mathbb{N}$.

Second form. Let K be a subset of \mathbb{N} such that (i) $1 \in K$ and (ii) $k \in K$ for all k satisfying $1 \leq k < n \Rightarrow n \in K$, then $K=\mathbb{N}$.

§ 8. Absolute value or modulus of an integer. Definition.

The absolute value ' $|a|$ ' of an integer a is defined by

$$|a| = \begin{cases} a & \text{when } a \geq 0 \\ -a & \text{when } a < 0. \end{cases}$$

Thus, except when $a=0$, $|a| \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ i.e. $|a| > 0$. Also $|a|=0$ iff $a=0$.

For example,

(i) $|-5| = -(-5) = 5$, (ii) $|8| = 8$, (iii) $|0| = 0$.

It can be easily proved that $\forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, we have

(1) $|a| = |-a|$.

(2) $|a| = |b|$ iff $a = \pm b$.

(3) $|a|^2 = a^2$.

(4) $-|a| \leq a \leq |a|$.

(5) $|ab| = |a| \cdot |b|$.

(6) $|a+b| \leq |a| + |b|$.

(7) For $c \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, $-c \leq a \leq c \Leftrightarrow |a| \leq c$.

§ 9. Divisibility in the set of integers.

Divisors. Definition. Let a, b be two integers and $a \neq 0$. If there exists an integer c such that $b=ac$, then we say that a divides b or a is a divisor of b or a is a factor of b or b is a multiple of a .

When a is a divisor of b , we write, " $a|b$ ". This is read as ' a is a divisor of b '. If a is a divisor of b , then b is a multiple of a and we also write it as $b=M(a)$. Here $M(a)$ is read as 'integral multiple of a '.

If a is not a divisor of b , then we write ' $a \nmid b$ ' which is read as ' a is not a divisor of b '.

For example,

(i) $2|8$ since $8=2 \cdot 4$, where $4 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

(ii) $-4|16$ since $16=(-4) \cdot (-4)$.

(iii) $a \mid 0$, for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a \neq 0$, since $0 = a \cdot 0$.

Thus 0 is a multiple of every integer or every non-zero integer a is a divisor of 0.

(iv) $3 \nmid 4$ i.e. 3 is not a divisor of 4 because there exists no integer q such that $4 = 3q$.

Thus division is not everywhere defined in \mathbb{Z} .

Proper and improper divisors.

We have $a \cdot 1 = (-a) \cdot (-1) = a$ for every $a \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Therefore for every integer $a \neq 0$, ± 1 and $\pm a$ are always divisors of a . These are called **improper divisors** of a . If a has any divisors other than these, then they are called **proper divisors** of a . For example the only divisors of 7 are ± 1 and ± 7 and so 7 has no proper divisors. On the other hand 8 possesses proper divisors. Besides ± 1 and ± 8 , ± 2 and ± 4 are also divisors of 8 and these are proper divisors of 8.

Some elementary properties of divisors.

1. $a \mid b \Rightarrow b = 0$ or $|a| \leq |b|$.
2. $a \mid b \Leftrightarrow a \mid -b$, $-a \mid b$, $-a \mid -b$ and $|a| \mid |b|$.
3. For every $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a \neq 0$, we have $a \mid a$ because we can write $a = 1 \cdot a$ where $1 \in \mathbb{Z}$.
4. The relation of divisibility in the set of integers is **transitive** i.e.,

$$a \mid b \text{ and } b \mid c \Rightarrow a \mid c.$$

5. $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a \Rightarrow a = \pm b$. Two non-zero integers a and b are known as **associates** if we have $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$. The only associates of a are $\pm a$.
6. If $a \mid b$ then $a \mid (b+c)$ iff $a \mid c$.
7. $a \mid b$ and $a \mid c \Rightarrow a \mid (bx+cy)$ for all $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$.
8. $a \mid b$ and $a \mid c \Rightarrow a \mid bc$.
9. **Units. Definition.** If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $ab = 1$, then a or b is called a unit. The only units in \mathbb{Z} are 1 and -1 .

§ 10. The Division Algorithm. The theorem known as division algorithm is of great importance in the development of number theory.

Theorem. If a is any integer and $b \neq 0$, then there exist unique integers q, r such that

$$a = bq + r, \text{ where } 0 \leq r < |b|.$$

Proof. Consider the set $S = \{a - bx : x \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. Since $a = a - b \cdot 0$ where $0 \in \mathbb{Z}$, therefore at least $a \in S$ and thus S is not empty.

If $b < 0$ i.e., $b \leq -1$, then

$$b \cdot |a| \leq -|a| \leq a$$

$\Rightarrow a - b \cdot |a| \geq 0$ i.e., $a - b \cdot |a|$ is non-negative.

Now $a - b \cdot |a| \in S$ because $|a| \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Therefore if $b < 0$, then S contains at least one non-negative integer i.e., $a - b \cdot |a|$.

If $b > 0$ i.e., if $b \geq 1$, then

$$b(-|a|) \leq -|a| \leq a$$

$\Rightarrow a - b \cdot (-|a|) \geq 0$.

Now $a - b \cdot (-|a|) \in S$ because $-|a| \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Therefore if $b > 0$, then S contains at least one non-negative integer

$$\text{i.e., } a - b \cdot (-|a|).$$

Thus whether $b > 0$ or $b < 0$, the set S always contains non-negative integers. Therefore by the well-ordering principle the non-empty subset of S consisting of non-negative integers has a least member. Let $r = a - bq$ where $q \in \mathbb{Z}$, be the smallest non-negative integer belonging to S . Since r is non-negative, therefore $0 \leq r$. We claim that $r < |b|$.

To fulfil our claim first we show that $r - |b| \in S$ whether $b > 0$ or $b < 0$. If $b > 0$, then $r - |b| = r - b = a - bq - b = a - (q+1)b \in S$ since $(q+1) \in \mathbb{Z}$. If $b < 0$, then $r - |b| = r - (-b) = a - bq + b = a - (q-1)b \in S$ since $(q-1) \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now $b \neq 0$. Therefore $r - |b| < r$. If $r \geq |b|$, then $r - |b| \geq 0$ i.e., $r - |b|$ is non-negative. Thus if $r \geq |b|$, then $r - |b|$ is a non-negative integer belonging to S and $r - |b| < r$. This is against the choice of r as the smallest non-negative integer $\in S$. Hence we must have $r < |b|$.

Thus there exist integers q and r such that

$$r = a - bq$$

i.e., $a = bq + r$ and $0 \leq r < |b|$.

Now to show that the integers q, r are unique. Suppose we should find another pair q' and r' such that

$$a = bq' + r', \quad 0 \leq r' < |b|.$$

Then $bq' + r' = bq + r \Rightarrow b(q' - q) = r - r'$
 $\Rightarrow b \mid (r - r')$.

Without any loss of generality we can assume that $r \geq r'$. Then

$$0 \leq r < |b| \text{ and } 0 \leq r' < |b| \Rightarrow 0 \leq r - r' < |b|.$$

Therefore r is a divisor of $r - r'$ is possible only if $r - r' = 0$.
Therefore $r' = r$.

Now putting $r' = r$ in $bq' + r' = bq + r$, we get

$$bq' = bq$$

$\Rightarrow q' = q$, applying cancellation law, since $b \neq 0$.

Thus $r' = r$ and $q' = q$, and therefore q and r are unique. This completes the proof of the theorem.

Remark. If a, b are positive integers, then there exist unique integers q and r such that

$$a = bq + r, 0 \leq r < b.$$

Some illustrations of division algorithm.

(i) Suppose $a = 16, b = 5$, then we can write $16 = 5 \cdot 3 + 1$ where $0 \leq 1 < 5$ i.e., 5.

(ii) Suppose $a = 17, b = -3$, then we can write $17 = (-3) \cdot (-5) + 2$, where $0 \leq 2 < |-3|$.

(iii) Suppose $a = -24, b = 7$, then we can write $-24 = 7 \cdot (-4) + 4$ where $0 \leq 4 < 7$.

Some definitions. If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $b \neq 0$, then the relation

$$a = bq + r, \text{ where } 0 \leq r < |b|$$

establishes *uniqueness of division*.

Here a is called the *dividend*, b is called the *divisor*, q is called the *quotient* and r is called the *remainder*.

If the remainder $r = 0$, then we have $a = bq$ i.e., $b \mid a$ or $a = M(b)$ i.e., a is an integral multiple of b .

Even and odd integers. Let a be any integer and $b = 2$. Then by division algorithm, $a = 2q + r, 0 \leq r < 2$. In this case the possible values of r are 0 and 1.

If $r = 0$, then $a = 2q$ and a is called an *even integer*.

If $r = 1$, then $a = 2q + 1$ and a is called an *odd integer*.

§ 11. Greatest common divisor. Definition. (Andhra 1989)

Let a and b be two integers not both zero i.e., at least one of them is not equal to zero. Then the greatest common divisor (G.C.D.) of a and b is a positive integer d such that

(i) $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$ i.e., d is a common divisor of a and b and (ii) if, for an integer $c, c \mid a$ and $c \mid b$, then $c \mid d$ i.e., every common divisor of a and b is a divisor of d .

If d is the greatest common divisor of a and b , then symbolically we write $d = (a, b)$. Thus (a, b) will be read as G.C.D. of

a and b . The greatest common divisor is sometimes also called the *highest common factor* (H.C.F.)

For example,

(i) 1, 2, 3, 4, 6 and 12 are common divisors of 24 and 60.

(ii) Out of these each of 1, 2, 3, 4 and 6 is a divisor of 12.

Hence 12 is the greatest common divisor of 24 and 60. Symbolically, $12 = (24, 60)$.

Since we insist that the greatest common divisor be positive, therefore $(a, b) = (a, -b) = (-a, b) = (-a, -b)$. In other words $(a, b) = (|a|, |b|)$. Thus $(60, 24) = (60, -24) = 12$.

The following results about greatest common divisor of two integers are quite obvious :

1. $(a, b) = (b, a)$.
2. If $d = (a, b)$, then $d \geq 1$ and is unique.
3. $(a, a) = a$.
4. $(a, b) = a \Leftrightarrow a \mid b$.
5. $(a, 0) = |a|$.

Greatest common divisor of more than two integers.

Definition. Let $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ be a finite set of integers, not all zero. If there exists a positive integer d such that

(i) d is a common divisor of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n

and (ii) each common divisor of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n is also a divisor of d , then d is called the greatest common divisor of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n . Symbolically, we write

$$d = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n).$$

For example, $(-32, 16, 24, 20) = 4$.

Existence and uniqueness of greatest common divisor.

Theorem. Every pair of integers a and b , not both zero, has a unique greatest common divisor (a, b) which can be expressed in the form

$$(a, b) = xa + yb, \text{ for some integers } x \text{ and } y.$$

(Nagarjuna 1990)

Proof. Uniqueness of GCD. First we shall prove that if the greatest common divisor of a and b exists, then it is unique. If possible, let d_1 and d_2 be greatest common divisors of a and b . Then by definition of greatest common divisor, we have

$$d_1 \mid d_2 \text{ and } d_2 \mid d_1$$

$$\Rightarrow d_1 \text{ and } d_2 \text{ are associates}$$

$$\Rightarrow d_2 = \pm d_1.$$

Since d_1 and d_2 are both positive, we must have $d_2 = d_1$. This proves the uniqueness of greatest common divisor if it exists.

Now we shall prove the existence of greatest common divisor.

Consider the set $S = \{sa + tb : s, t \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. Since one of a or b is not zero, say $a \neq 0$, therefore by taking $s=1, t=0$, we see that $a \in S$. Therefore there are non-zero integers in S . If $m = sa + tb$ is in S , then $-m = (-s)a + (-t)b$ is also in S . Therefore S contains positive integers. Let d be the smallest positive integer belonging to S . Since $d \in S$, therefore d has the form $d = xa + yb$ where x, y are some integers. We claim that $d = (a, b)$ i.e., d is the greatest common divisor of a and b .

To justify our claim we shall first prove that if $m = sa + tb$ is any integer belonging to S , then d is a divisor of m .

By division algorithm, we have

$$m = dq + r \text{ where } 0 \leq r < d$$

$$\Rightarrow sa + tb = (xa + yb)q + r \quad [\because m = sa + tb \text{ and } d = xa + yb]$$

$$\Rightarrow r = (s - xq)a + (t - yq)b$$

$$\Rightarrow r \in S \text{ since } s - xq \text{ and } t - yq \text{ are integers.}$$

Since $0 \leq r < d$ is the smallest positive integer belonging to S , therefore we must have $r=0$. Then we get $m=dq$. Therefore d is a divisor of $m, \forall m \in S$.

Now we can write $a = 1a + 0b$ where $1, 0 \in \mathbb{Z}$. Therefore $a \in S$. Similarly we can write $b = 0a + 1b$. Therefore $b \in S$. Hence $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$.

Now suppose that

$$c \mid a \text{ and } c \mid b. \text{ Then } c \mid (xa + yb) \text{ i.e., } c \mid d.$$

Therefore d is the greatest common divisor of a and b i.e., $d = (a, b)$.

Also we have shown that

$$d = xa + yb \text{ for some } x, y \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Note 1. If $d = (a, b)$, the integers $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $d = ax + by$ are not unique.

For, if $d = ax + by$, then $d = a(x - b) + b(y + a)$
i.e., $d = ax_1 + by_1$, where $x_1 = x - b, y_1 = y + a$.

Note 2. If $d = (a, b)$, then for $c \in \mathbb{Z}$, $c = ax + by$ if and only if $d \mid c$.

For example, suppose if possible, we want to find $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $15 = 6x + 12y$.

We have $(12, 6) = 6 = d$ and $c = 15$.

Since 6 is not a divisor of 15, it is not possible to write $15 = 6x + 12y$, where $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$.

§ 12. Construction of G.C.D. by repeated use of division algorithm.

Theorem 1. If $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, $b \neq 0$ and $a = bq + r$, $0 \leq r < |b|$, then
 $(a, b) = (b, r)$.

Proof. Let $(a, b) = d_1$ and $(b, r) = d_2$.

Now $(a, b) = d_1 \Rightarrow d_1 \mid a$ and $d_1 \mid b$
 $\Rightarrow d_1 \mid (a - bq)$ where $q \in \mathbb{Z}$
 $\Rightarrow d_1 \mid r$. [$\because a - bq = r$]

Thus $d_1 \mid b$ and $d_1 \mid r$ i.e., d_1 is a common divisor of b and r .
 But $d_2 = (b, r)$ i.e., d_2 is the greatest common divisor of b and r .
 So by definition of G.C.D., we must have

$$d_1 \mid d_2. \quad \dots(1)$$

Similarly starting with $(b, r) = d_2$, we can prove that

$$d_2 \mid d_1. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_1 \mid d_2 \text{ and } d_2 \mid d_1 \\ \Rightarrow d_1 \text{ and } d_2 \text{ are associates} \\ \Rightarrow d_2 = \pm d_1. \end{aligned}$$

Since d_1 and d_2 are both positive, we must have $d_2 = d_1$. This proves the theorem.

Euclidean Algorithm. Euclidean algorithm enables us to find the actual value of the greatest common divisor d of two given integers a and b and also to find integers x and y such that

$$d = xa + yb.$$

Let a, b be two integers such that at least one of a, b is non-zero.

Case 1. If $a = 0$, then $(a, b) = |b|$.

If $b = 0$, then $(a, b) = |a|$.

Case 2. If $a \neq 0$ and $b \neq 0$, then since $(a, b) = (|a|, |b|)$, therefore without loss of generality we can assume that both a and b are positive integers. By repeated use of division algorithm, we have the following finite chain of divisions :

$$\begin{aligned} a &= bq_1 + r_1, & 0 \leq r_1 < b \\ b &= r_1q_2 + r_2, & 0 \leq r_2 < r_1 \\ r_1 &= r_2q_3 + r_3, & 0 \leq r_3 < r_2 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} r_{k-2} &= r_{k-1} q_k + r_k, & 0 \leq r_k < r_{k-1} \\ r_{k-1} &= r_k q_{k+1} + r_{k+1}, & 0 \leq r_{k+1} < r_k. \end{aligned}$$

Since $b > r_1 > r_2 > r_3 \dots$ and only finitely many integers lie between 0 and b , therefore some r must be zero i.e., the above process must terminate with a remainder of zero. If the process terminates in the $(k+1)^{th}$ step i.e., $r_{k+1}=0$, then we get

$$r_{k-1} = r_k q_{k+1} \text{ i.e., } r_k \mid r_{k-1}.$$

Therefore $r_k = (r_{k-1}, r_k)$, where r_k is the last non-zero remainder in the above process of repeated divisions.

Now by theorem 1 above, we have

$$(a, b) = (b, r_1) = (r_1, r_2) = \dots = (r_{k-1}, r_k) = r_k.$$

Hence the last non-zero remainder r_k is the G.C.D. of the given integers a and b .

Example 1. Find $(26, 118)$ and express it in the form $26x + 118y$, where x and $y \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Sol. By repeatedly applying the process of division algorithm, we get

$$118 = (26) \cdot 4 + 14, \quad \dots(1)$$

$$26 = (14) \cdot 1 + 12, \quad \dots(2)$$

$$14 = (12) \cdot 1 + 2, \quad \dots(3)$$

$$12 = (2) \cdot 6 + 0. \quad \dots(4)$$

Hence the last non-zero remainder $2 = (26, 118)$.

Now from the last but one equation, we get

$$2 = 14 - 12 \cdot 1 = 14 - 12. \quad \dots(5)$$

From equation (2), we get

$$12 = 26 - 14 \cdot 1 = 26 - 14.$$

Putting this value of 12 in (5), we get

$$2 = 14 - (26 - 14) = 2 \cdot (14) - 26. \quad \dots(6)$$

From equation (1), we get $14 = 118 - (26) \cdot 4$. Putting this value of 14 in (6), we get

$$2 = 2 [118 - (26) \cdot 4] - 26 = 2 \cdot (118) - 9 \cdot (26).$$

Hence $(26, 118) = 2$ and if $2 = 26x + 118y$, then $x = -9, y = 2$.

Example 2. By using the Euclidean algorithm, find the greatest common divisor d of the numbers 1109 and 4999 and then find integers x and y to satisfy $d = 1109x + 4999y$. (Osmania 1988)

Sol. By repeatedly applying the process of division algorithm, we get

$$4999 = (1109) \cdot 4 + 563 \quad \dots(1)$$

$$1109 = (563) \cdot 1 + 546 \quad \dots(2)$$

$$563 = (546).1 + 17, \quad \dots(3)$$

$$546 = (17).32 + 2, \quad \dots(4)$$

$$17 = (2).8 + 1, \quad \dots(5)$$

$$2 = (1).2 + 0. \quad \dots(6)$$

Hence $(1109, 4999)$ = the last non-zero remainder in the above repeated divisions = 1.

Now substituting backwards, we have

$$1 = 17 - (2).8 \quad \text{[by (5)]}$$

$$= 17 - [546 - (17).32].8, \text{ substituting for 2 from (4)}$$

$$= (17).257 - 546.8$$

$$= [563 - (546).1].257 - 546.8, \text{ substituting for 17 from (3)}$$

$$= 563.257 - 546.265$$

$$= 563.257 - [1109 - (563).1].265, \text{ substituting for 546 from (2)}$$

$$= 563.522 - 1109.265$$

$$= [4999 - (1109).4].522 - 1109.265,$$

substituting for 563 from (1)

$$= 4999.522 - 1109.2353.$$

$$\text{Hence } (1109, 4999) = 1 = 1109.(-2353) + 4999.(522)$$

$$= 1109x + 4999y, \text{ where } x = -2353, y = 522.$$

Example 3. Find the G.C.D. of 275 and 200 and express it in the form $m.275 + n.200$. (Osmania 1990, 91)

Sol. By repeatedly applying the process of division algorithm, we get

$$275 = (200).1 + 75, \quad \dots(1)$$

$$200 = (75).2 + 50, \quad \dots(2)$$

$$75 = (50).1 + 25, \quad \dots(3)$$

$$50 = (25).2 + 0. \quad \dots(4)$$

Hence $(275, 200)$ = the last non-zero remainder in the above repeated divisions = 25.

Now substituting backwards, we have

$$25 = 75 - (50).1 \quad \text{[by (3)]}$$

$$= 75 - [200 - (75).2].1, \text{ substituting for 50 from (2)}$$

$$= 75.3 - 200.1$$

$$= [275 - (200).1].3 - 200.1, \text{ substituting for 75 from (1)}$$

$$= 275.3 - 200.4$$

$$= (3).275 + (-4).200.$$

Hence $(275, 200) = 25 = (3).275 + (-4).200$ so that $m = 3$, $n = -4$.

Example 4. If $a = -427$, $b = 616$, find (a, b) and express it in the form $(a, b) = ax + by$.

Sol. Since $(a, b) = (\lvert a \rvert, \lvert b \rvert)$, therefore in order to find $(-427, 616)$, we shall find $(427, 616)$.

We construct Euclidean algorithm for 427, 616 :

$$616 = (427).1 + 189, \quad \dots(1)$$

$$427 = (189).2 + 49, \quad \dots(2)$$

$$189 = (49).3 + 42, \quad \dots(3)$$

$$49 = (42).1 + 7, \quad \dots(4)$$

$$42 = (7).6 + 0. \quad \dots(5)$$

Hence $(427, 616) =$ the last non-zero remainder in the above repeated divisions $= 7$.

Now substituting backwards, we have

$$7 = 49 - (42).1 \quad \text{[by (4)]}$$

$$= 49 - [189 - (49).3].1 \quad \text{[by (3)]}$$

$$= (49).4 - 189$$

$$= [427 - (189).2].4 - 189 \quad \text{[by (2)]}$$

$$= (427).4 - (189).9$$

$$= (427).4 - [616 - (427).1].9 \quad \text{[by (1)]}$$

$$= (427).13 + (616).(-9).$$

$$\text{Hence } (-427, 616) = 7 = (-427).(-13) + (616).(-9)$$

$$= ax + by, \text{ where } x = -13, y = -9.$$

§ 13. Relatively prime integers.

Definition. Two integers a and b are said to be relatively prime if their greatest common divisor is 1 i.e., if $(a, b) = 1$.

If $(a, b) = 1$, we also say that a and b are co-prime or prime to each other. If a and b are relatively prime, then a and b have no common factors except 1 or -1 . For example,

(i) 4, -9 are relatively prime integers since $(4, -9) = 1$.

(ii) 8, 14 are not relatively prime integers since $(8, 14) = 2$.

If a and b are relatively prime, then applying the result of the theorem proved in § 11, we immediately get the following very important result.

Theorem 1. Two integers a and b are relatively prime if and only if we can find integers x and y such that $ax + by = 1$.

Proof. First suppose that a and b are relatively prime. Then $(a, b) = 1$. Therefore by theorem of § 11, we have

$$1 = (a, b) = ax + by \text{ for some integers } x \text{ and } y.$$

Conversely suppose that

$ax+by=1$ for some $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then to prove that $(a, b)=1$.

Let $(a, b)=d$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } d=(a, b) &\Rightarrow d \mid a, d \mid b \\ &\Rightarrow d \mid (ax+by) \\ &\Rightarrow d \mid 1 \Rightarrow d=\pm 1.\end{aligned}$$

Since the greatest common divisor is to be positive, we must have $d=1$. Hence $(a, b)=1$ and so a and b are relatively prime.

Note. If $(a, b)=d$, then by the above theorem

$$\left(\frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d}\right)=1.$$

Theorem 2. If $(a, b)=1$ and $(a, c)=1$, then $(a, bc)=1$.

Proof. Since $(a, b)=1$, therefore there exist $x_1, y_1 \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}ax_1+by_1 &= 1 \\ \text{or } by_1 &= 1-ax_1.\end{aligned}\quad \dots(1)$$

Again $(a, c)=1 \Rightarrow$ there exist $x_2, y_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}ax_2+cy_2 &= 1 \\ \text{or } cy_2 &= 1-ax_2.\end{aligned}\quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned}(by_1)(cy_2) &= (1-ax_1)(1-ax_2) \\ \text{or } (bc)(y_1y_2) &= 1-a(x_1+x_2)+a^2x_1x_2 \\ \text{or } a(x_1+x_2-ax_1x_2) &+ (bc)(y_1y_2) = 1 \\ \text{or } ax_3+bcy_3 &= 1, \text{ where } x_3=x_1+x_2-ax_1x_2 \\ \text{and } y_3 &= y_1y_2 \text{ are some integers.}\end{aligned}$$

Thus there exist $x_3, y_3 \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $ax_3+bcy_3=1$. Hence by theorem 1 above, we have $(a, bc)=1$.

Note 1. The converse of the above theorem is also true i.e., $(a, bc)=1 \Rightarrow (a, b)=1$ and $(a, c)=1$. (Andhra 1990)

Note 2. By applying theorem 2 above, we can prove by induction that

$$(a, b)=1 \Rightarrow (a, b^n)=1, \text{ where } n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

Theorem 3. If $(a, b)=d$, then $(ka, kb)=|k|d$, for every non-zero integer k .

Proof. Let $(ka, kb)=d_1$.

Since $(a, b)=d$, therefore there exist $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}d &= ax+by \\ \Rightarrow kd &= (ka)x + (kb)y.\end{aligned}\quad \dots(1)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Now } d_1 &= (ka, kb) \Rightarrow d_1 \mid ka \text{ and } d_1 \mid kb \\ &\Rightarrow d_1 \mid [(ka)x + (kb)y] \\ &\Rightarrow d_1 \mid kd, \text{ using (1).} \quad \dots(2)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Again } d &= (a, b) \Rightarrow d \mid a, d \mid b \\ &\Rightarrow kd \mid ka, kd \mid kb \quad [\because k \neq 0] \\ &\Rightarrow kd \text{ is a common divisor of } ka \text{ and } kb.\end{aligned}$$

But d_1 is the greatest common divisor of ka and kb . So by definition of G.C.D., we have

$$kd \mid d_1.$$

From (2) and (3), we have $d_1 = \pm kd$.

Since d and d_1 are both positive, therefore $d_1 = k \mid d$.

Note. If $(a, b) = d$ and $a = Am, b = Bm, m > 0$, then by the above theorem $(A, B) = \frac{d}{m}$.

Theorem 4. If two integers a and b are relatively prime i.e., if $(a, b) = 1$, then $a \mid bc \Rightarrow a \mid c$. (Nagarjuna 1990)

Proof. Since a and b are relatively prime, therefore there exist integers x and y such that

$$\begin{aligned}ax + by &= 1 \\ \Rightarrow cax + cby &= c. \quad \dots(1)\end{aligned}$$

Also it is given that $a \mid bc$. Therefore there exists $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$bc = qa. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned}c &= cax + cay \quad [\because \text{from (2), } bc = qa] \\ &= a(cx + cy) = aq_1, \text{ where } cx + cy = q_1 \in \mathbb{Z}.\end{aligned}$$

Hence $a \mid c$.

§ 14. Least Common Multiple.

Definition. Let a and b be two non-zero integers. The least common multiple (L.C.M.) of a and b is the unique positive integer m such that

$$\begin{aligned}(i) \quad &a \mid m, b \mid m \\ \text{and (ii)} \quad &a \mid s, b \mid s \Rightarrow m \mid s. \quad (\text{Andhra 1989})\end{aligned}$$

If m is the L.C.M. of a and b , then symbolically we write $m = [a, b]$.

For example, $[9, -6]$ i.e. L.C.M. of 9 and $-6 = 18$, $[16, 12] = 48$.

The following results about L.C.M. of two integers are quite obvious :

1. $[a, b] = [-a, b] = [a, -b] = [-a, -b] = [|a|, |b|]$.
2. If $(a, b) = d$ and $[a, b] = m$, then $d \mid m$.
3. If $(a, b) = d$ and $[a, b] = m$, then $dm = |ab|$. (Andhra 1989)

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If $a \mid b$ and $a \mid c$, then $a \mid (bx + cy) \forall x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Sol. We have $a \mid b \Rightarrow b = as$ for some $s \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Also $a \mid c \Rightarrow c = at$ for some $t \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now $bx + cy = (as)x + (at)y = a(sx + ty)$ where $sx + ty \in \mathbb{Z}$.

$\therefore a \mid (bx + cy)$.

Ex. 2. If $a \mid b$ and $b \neq 0$, then $|b| \geq |a|$.

Sol. We have $a \mid b \Rightarrow b = ac$ for some $c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Since $b \neq 0$, therefore $c \neq 0$ and consequently $|c| \geq 1$.

Now $b = ac \Rightarrow |b| = |ac| = |a| \cdot |c|$.

Further $|c| \geq 1 \Rightarrow |a| \cdot |c| \geq |a|$
 $\Rightarrow |b| \geq |a|$.

Ex. 3. If $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$, then $a = \pm b$.

Sol. Since $a \mid b$ and $b \mid a$, therefore neither $a = 0$ nor $b = 0$.

Now $a \mid b \Rightarrow b = ac$ for some $c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Also $b \mid a \Rightarrow a = bd$ for some $d \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now $(ab) \cdot 1 = ab = (bd)(ac) = (ab)(cd)$.

Since $ab \neq 0$, therefore by cancellation law, we get $1 = cd$

\Rightarrow either $c = 1, d = 1$ or $c = -1, d = -1$

\Rightarrow either $a = b$ or $a = -b$.

[Note that $a = bd$]

Ex. 4. The relation of divisibility in the set of integers is reflexive, transitive but not symmetric.

Sol. The relation is reflexive. For every $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, we have $a = a \cdot 1$ where $1 \in \mathbb{Z}$. Therefore $a \mid a$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$. Hence the relation is reflexive.

The relation is not symmetric. We have $2 \mid 8$ but 8 is not a divisor of 2. Therefore this relation is not symmetric.

The relation is transitive. i.e., $a \mid b$ and $b \mid c \Rightarrow a \mid c$.

We have $a \mid b \Rightarrow b = ax$ for some $x \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Also $b \mid c \Rightarrow c = by$ for some $y \in \mathbb{Z}$.

From these, we get

$$\begin{aligned} c &= by = (ax)y \quad [\because b = ax] \\ &= a(xy), \text{ where } xy \in \mathbb{Z}. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore a \mid c$.

Hence the relation is transitive.

Ex. 5. If $(a, b) = d$, $a \mid c$, $b \mid c$, then prove that $ab \mid cd$.

Sol. Since $(a, b) = d$, therefore $d = xa + yb$ for some integers x and y

$$\Rightarrow cd = cxa + cyb. \quad \dots(1)$$

Also $a \mid c \Rightarrow c = a\lambda$ where λ is some integer
and $b \mid c \Rightarrow c = b\mu$, where μ is some integer.

Now putting $c = b\mu$ in the first term on the R.H.S. of (1) and $c = a\lambda$ in its second term, we get

$$cd = b\mu xa + a\lambda yb = (\mu x + \lambda y)ab, \text{ where } \mu x + \lambda y \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

$$\therefore ab \mid cd.$$

Ex. 6. If $d > 0$, $d \mid a$, $d \mid b$, $\left(\frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d}\right) = 1$, show that $(a, b) = d$.

(Andhra 1989)

Sol. Let $(a, b) = d_1$.

It is given that $d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$. Since d_1 has been assumed to be the greatest common divisor of a and b , therefore we must have $d \mid d_1$.

...(1)

Also $\left(\frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d}\right) = 1 \Rightarrow$ there exist integers x and y such that

$$1 = x \cdot \left(\frac{a}{d}\right) + y \cdot \left(\frac{b}{d}\right)$$

$$\Rightarrow d = xa + yb.$$

...(2)

Now $d_1 = (a, b) \Rightarrow d_1 \mid a$ and $d_1 \mid b$

$$\Rightarrow d_1 \mid (xa + yb)$$

$$\Rightarrow d_1 \mid d, \text{ using (2).}$$

...(3)

From (1) and (3), we have $d_1 = \pm d$.

But d_1 and d are both positive, therefore $d_1 = d$.

Hence $(a, b) = d$.

Ex. 7. If $(a, b) = 1$, show that $(a+b, a-b) = 1$ or 2 .

(Nagarjuna 1988)

Sol. Let $(a+b, a-b) = d$.

Then $d \mid a+b$ and $d \mid a-b$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid \{(a+b) + (a-b)\} \text{ and } d \mid \{(a+b) - (a-b)\}$$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid 2a \text{ and } d \mid 2b$$

$$\Rightarrow d \text{ is a common divisor of } 2a \text{ and } 2b.$$

But $(a, b) = 1 \Rightarrow (2a, 2b) = 2$

$$\Rightarrow 2 \text{ is the greatest common divisor of } 2a \text{ and } 2b.$$

Now d is a common divisor of $2a$, $2b$ and 2 is the greatest common divisor of $2a$, $2b$.

\therefore by the definition of G.C.D., we must have $d \mid 2$ which implies that $d=1$ or 2 .

Ex. 8. If $d=(a, b)$ and $d=ax+by$ prove that x, y are relatively prime.

Sol. We have $d=(a, b) \Rightarrow d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$
 $\Rightarrow a=dk_1, b=dk_2$, where $k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Now } d=ax+by &\Rightarrow d=(dk_1)x+(dk_2)y \\ &\Rightarrow d=d(k_1x+k_2y) \\ &\Rightarrow 1=k_1x+k_2y.\end{aligned}$$

Hence by theorem 1 of § 13, x and y are relatively prime.

Ex. 9. If $a \mid c, b \mid c$ and $(a, b)=1$, then prove that $ab \mid c$.
 Give an example to show that $a \mid c, b \mid c$ need not imply that $ab \mid c$.

Sol. We have $a \mid c \Rightarrow c=ak_1, k_1 \in \mathbb{Z}$
 and $b \mid c \Rightarrow c=bk_2, k_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now $(a, b)=1 \Rightarrow$ there exist $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$ax+by=1 \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore axc+byc &=c, \text{ multiplying both sides of (1) by } c \\ \Rightarrow axbk_2+byak_1 &=c \quad [\because c=ak_1 \text{ and } c=bk_2] \\ \Rightarrow ab(xk_2+yk_1) &=c \\ \Rightarrow c &=(ab)q, \text{ where } q=xk_2+yk_1 \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow ab &\mid c.\end{aligned}$$

Example to show that $a \mid c, b \mid c$ need not imply that $ab \mid c$.

We have $2 \mid 12$ and $4 \mid 12$, but $2 \times 4 = 8$ which is not a divisor of 12.

Ex. 10. Prove that $(a, bc)=1 \Rightarrow (a, b)=1$ and $(a, c)=1$.
 (Andhra 1990)

Sol. We have $(a, bc)=1 \Rightarrow$ there exist $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that
 $1=xa+y(bc)$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow 1 &=xa+(yc)b, \text{ where } x, yc \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow a &\text{ and } b \text{ are relatively prime [Refer theorem 1 of § 13]} \\ \Rightarrow (a, b) &=1.\end{aligned}$$

Again $1=xa+y(bc)$

$$\begin{aligned}\Rightarrow 1 &=xa+(yb)c, \text{ where } x, yb \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow a &\text{ and } c \text{ are relatively prime} \\ \Rightarrow (a, c) &=1.\end{aligned}$$

Hence $(a, bc)=1 \Rightarrow (a, b)=1$ and $(a, c)=1$.

Ex. 11. If $(a, b) = d$ and $(a, b) = m$, then $dm = |ab|$.

Sol. Case I. Let $a > 0, b > 0$.

We have $d = (a, b) \Rightarrow d \mid a$ and $d \mid b$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{a}{d}, \frac{b}{d} \text{ are positive integers.}$$

Now ab is a common multiple of a, b and m is the least common multiple of a, b . So we have $m \mid ab$.

$\therefore \frac{ab}{m}$ is a positive integer, say, k .

Since $m = [a, b]$, therefore $a \mid m$ and $b \mid m$ and consequently $\frac{m}{a}$ and $\frac{m}{b}$ are positive integers.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } \frac{ab}{m} = k &\Rightarrow a = \left(\frac{m}{b}\right)k \text{ and } b = \left(\frac{m}{a}\right)k \\ &\Rightarrow k \text{ is a common divisor of } a, b. \end{aligned}$$

But d is the greatest common divisor of a, b .

\therefore we must have $k \mid d$.

...(1)

Since $\frac{a}{d}$ and $\frac{b}{d}$ are positive integers, therefore we have

$$b \mid b \left(\frac{a}{d}\right) \text{ and } a \mid a \left(\frac{b}{d}\right)$$

$$\Rightarrow b \mid \left(\frac{ab}{d}\right) \text{ and } a \mid \left(\frac{ab}{d}\right)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{ab}{d} \text{ is a common multiple of } a \text{ and } b.$$

But m is the least common multiple of a and b .

\therefore we must have $m \mid \left(\frac{ab}{d}\right)$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{ab}{d} = mq, \text{ where } q \text{ is some positive integer.}$$

$$\therefore d \left(\frac{ab}{d}\right) = d(mq)$$

$$\Rightarrow ab = m(dq)$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{ab}{m} = dq$$

$$\Rightarrow k = dq, \text{ where } k = \frac{ab}{m} \text{ is a positive integer}$$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid k.$$

...(2)

Since both k and d are positive integers, therefore from (1) and (2), we conclude that

$$k=d.$$

$$\therefore \frac{ab}{m} = d \text{ and hence } ab = dm.$$

Case.2. Let $a \neq 0$ and $b \neq 0$.

$$\text{Then } |ab| = |a| \cdot |b|.$$

Since $|a| > 0$, $|b| > 0$, therefore by case 1, we have

$$|a| \cdot |b| = dm.$$

$$\therefore dm = |ab|.$$

Exercises

1. Find (a, b) if

(i) $a=2210, b=493$.

(ii) $a=1128, b=33$.

(iii) $a=-1337, b=501$.

(iv) $a=3367, b=-3219$.

2. If $a=138, b=63$, write $(a, b)=ax+by$.

3. By using the Euclidean algorithm, find the greatest common divisor d of the numbers 1819 and 3587 and then find integers x and y to satisfy $d=1819x+3587y$. (Osmania 1989)

4. (i) Find the G.C.D. of 308 and 136 and express it in the form $x(308)+y(136)$.

(ii) Find the G.C.D. of 858 and 325 and express it in the form $m.858+n.325$. (Osmania 1990)

5. Find integers x, y such that $15=21x+15y$, if possible.

6. Prove that $(a, s)=(b, s)=1$ if and only if $(ab, s)=1$.

7. If $(a, b)=1$ and $(am, b)=d$, then prove that $d|m$ and $d|(b, m)$.

8. If $(a, b)=1$, prove that $(a+mb, b)=1$ for all $m \in \mathbb{Z}$. Also prove the converse.

9. If $ax+by=1$, show that $(a, b)=(a, y)=(b, x)=(x, y)=1$.

10. If $(a, b, c)=d$, prove that $((a, b), c)=d$.

Answers

1. (i) 17. (ii) 3. (iii) 1. (iv) 37.

2. $(a, b)=3=(-5).138+11.(63)$.

3. $(1819, 3587)=17=1819.(71)+3587.(-36)$ so that $x=71$,
 $y=-36$.

4. (i) $(308, 136)=4=(-15).308+(34).136$.

(ii) $(858, 325)=13=11.858+(-29).325$.

5. $x=15, y=-20$.

§ 15. Primes and Composite integers.

Prime integers. Definition. A non-zero integer p is called a prime if it is neither 1 nor -1 and if its only divisors are 1, -1 , p , $-p$.

For example,

(i) The integers 2 and -11 are primes, while $6=2.3$ and $-36=3.(-12)$ are not primes.

(ii) The first 10 positive primes are
2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29.

Note that by definition 1 is not prime. It is obvious that $-p$ is a prime iff p is a prime.

Note 1. 2 is the only even integer which is a prime. Every other even integer has 2 as a factor and so it cannot be a prime. Therefore if p is a prime and $p \neq 2$, then p must be an odd integer.

Note 2. If p is a prime and a is any integer, then either $p \mid a$ or $(p, a)=1$.

Composite integers. Definition. If an integer a can be written as $a=bc$, where b and c are integers such that $|b| > 1$ and $|c| > 1$, then a is called a composite integer.

For example $6=2.3$ where $|2| > 1$ and $|3| > 1$. Therefore 6 is a composite integer.

Every integer $a \neq 0, \pm 1$ is either a prime or a composite.

If a is a positive integer, then a is a composite iff there exist two positive integers b and c such that

$$a=bc, \text{ where } 1 < b < a, 1 < c < a.$$

Some properties of prime integers.

Theorem 1. (Euclid's lemma).

If p is a prime and a, b are any integers, then

$$p \mid ab \Rightarrow p \mid a \text{ or } p \mid b. \quad (\text{Nagarjuna 1990})$$

Proof. If $p \mid a$, then obviously the theorem is proved. So let p be not a divisor of a . Then to prove that $p \mid b$. Since p is a prime, therefore the only divisors of p are p and 1 out of which p is not a divisor of a as assumed by us. So 1 is the only common divisor of p and a i.e., $(p, a)=1$.

Now $(p, a)=1 \Rightarrow$ there exist $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$px+ay=1$$

$$\Rightarrow bpx+aby=b. \quad \dots(1)$$

Also it is given that $p \mid ab$. Therefore there exists $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$ab = qp.$$

(2)

From (1) and (2), we have

$$b = bpx + qpy = (bx + qy)p = q_1p, \text{ where} \\ bx + qy = q_1 \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

$$\therefore p \mid b.$$

Hence $p \mid ab \Rightarrow p \mid a$ or $p \mid b$.

Corollary. If p is a prime and $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ are such that

$$0 < a < p, 0 < b < p,$$

then p cannot be a divisor of ab .

Note. If p is not a prime, then the statement $p \mid ab \Rightarrow p \mid a$ or $p \mid b$ is not true. For example $6 \mid (16 \cdot 3)$ i.e., $6 \mid 48$ but 6 is neither a divisor of 16 nor a divisor of 3.

Theorem 2. If a prime number p divides the product $a_1 a_2 \dots a_n$ of certain integers, then p must divide at least one of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n .

Proof. We have $p \mid (a_1 a_2 a_3 \dots a_n)$.

If $p \mid a_1$, then the theorem is proved. If p is not a divisor of a_1 , then p is relatively prime to a_1 . Therefore

$$p \mid a_1 (a_2 a_3 \dots a_n) \Rightarrow p \mid (a_2 a_3 \dots a_n).$$

If $p \mid a_2$, then the theorem is proved. If p is not a divisor of a_2 , then p is relatively prime to a_2 . Therefore

$$p \mid a_2 (a_3 a_4 \dots a_n) \Rightarrow p \mid (a_3 a_4 \dots a_n).$$

Repeating this process, it follows that, at least, $p \mid a_n$ if p does not divide any of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-1} .

Theorem 3. If a is a positive integer greater than 1, then a has a prime factor.

Proof. We shall prove the theorem by induction on a . Let $a=2$ which is the least positive integer > 1 . Since 2 is a prime and we can write $2=2 \cdot (1)$, therefore 2 has a prime factor 2.

Thus the theorem is true for $a=2$.

Now let $a > 2$.

Assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true for all positive integers k such that $1 < k < a$ and consider the integer a . If a itself is prime, then $a=a \cdot 1 \Rightarrow a$ has a prime factor a and hence the theorem is true for a .

If a is not a prime, then there exist integers b and c such that $a=bc$ where $1 < b < a, 1 < c < a$.

But by our induction hypothesis the theorem is true for all integers k such that $1 < k < a$.

Since $1 < b < a$, therefore b has a prime factor. If p be a prime factor of b , then $p \mid b$. But $b \mid a$ because $a=bc$. Therefore by transitivity of the relation of divisibility on \mathbb{Z} , $p \mid a$ i.e., a has a prime factor p and this completes the induction.

Hence by mathematical induction every positive integer $a > 1$ has a prime factor.

Now we shall prove the fundamental theorem of arithmetic. This theorem shows the importance of prime numbers as the fundamental numbers out of which each positive integer greater than 1 can be obtained by multiplication in a unique manner.

Theorem 4. The fundamental theorem of arithmetic or The Unique Factorisation theorem. *Every positive integer $a > 1$ can be expressed uniquely as a product of positive primes.*

(Osmania 1990, 91; Nagarjuna 89)

Proof. Existence of prime factorization. First we shall prove that a can be factored at least in one way as the product of positive primes. We shall prove this result by induction on a .

The least positive integer > 1 is 2. If $a=2$, no proof is needed, since 2 itself is prime.

Now assume as our induction hypothesis that the theorem is true for all integers k such that $1 < k < a$ and consider the integer a . If a is prime, we have finished the proof. If a is not prime, then $a=bc$ where $1 < b < a$ and $1 < c < a$. By our induction hypothesis b and c can be expressed as products of positive primes. Let $b=p_1p_2\dots p_r$ and $c=q_1q_2\dots q_s$ where p_i 's and q_j 's are positive primes. Then $a=bc=p_1p_2\dots p_rq_1q_2\dots q_s$ is a product of positive primes.

Hence by mathematical induction every positive integer a greater than 1 can be expressed as a product of positive primes in at least one way.

Uniqueness of prime factors. Now to prove that the factorization is unique. If possible let a second factorization of a as a product of positive primes be given by

$$a=p_1'p_2'\dots p_t'.$$

$$\text{Then } p_1'p_2'\dots p_t'=p_1p_2\dots p_rq_1q_2\dots q_s.$$

$$\text{Now } p_1' \mid (p_1'p_2'\dots p_t') \Rightarrow p_1' \mid (p_1p_2\dots p_rq_1q_2\dots q_s).$$

Since p_1' is prime, therefore p_1' must divide at least one of $p_1, p_2, \dots, p_r, q_1, \dots, q_s$. Since the product of integers is commutative, therefore without loss of generality we can suppose that $p_1' \mid p_1$.

Since p_1' and p_1 are both positive primes, therefore

$$p_1' \mid p_1 \Rightarrow p_1' = p_1.$$

Then we get

$$\begin{aligned} p_1 p_2' p_3' \dots p_t' &= p_1 p_2 \dots p_r q_1 q_2 \dots q_s \\ \Rightarrow p_2' p_3' \dots p_t' &= p_2 p_3 \dots p_r q_1 q_2 \dots q_s. \end{aligned}$$

[by cancellation law]

Applying the same reasoning to these equal products a finite number of times, we get $t=s+r$ and also the equality of a prime factor in each product to some factor in the other product. Thus we have a unique factorization of a except for the order of the prime factors.

Thus if $a = p_1 p_2 \dots p_m = q_1 q_2 \dots q_n$ are two prime factorizations for a , we must have $m=n$ and every $p_i = q_j$ for some j and every $q_j = p_i$ for some i .

Note 1. The theorem does not exclude the existence of equal primes and so it may be stated as

$$a = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_n^{\alpha_n}, \text{ where}$$

$1 < p_1 < p_2 < \dots < p_n$ and where p 's are positive primes and $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ are positive integers ≥ 1 .

The above representation of $a > 1$ as a product of prime factors is called 'prime factorization of a in canonical form' or 'prime power factorization of a '.

Note 2. If a is neither 0 nor ± 1 and $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then by the above theorem $|a| = p_1 p_2 \dots p_n$ where p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n are primes. Therefore $a = \pm |a| = \pm (p_1 p_2 \dots p_n)$.

Note 3. If $a = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_n^{\alpha_n}$ and $b = q_1^{\beta_1} q_2^{\beta_2} \dots q_m^{\beta_m}$ are prime factorizations of a and b in canonical form, then $a=b$ iff $m=n$, $p_i = q_i$ and $\alpha_i = \beta_i$ for $i=1, 2, \dots, n$.

Thus prime factorization of every integer $a > 1$ is unique except for the order of the prime factors.

Note 4. If d is the G.C.D. of a and b , then

$d = p_1^{m_1} p_2^{m_2} \dots p_r^{m_r}$, where p_1, p_2, \dots, p_r are the common prime factors of a and b and for each $i=1, \dots, r$, m_i is the minimum of the exponents of p_i in a and b .

If M is the L.C.M. of a and b , then

$M = p_1^{m_1} p_2^{m_2} \dots p_s^{m_s}$, where p_1, p_2, \dots, p_s are all the prime factors of both a and b and for each $i=1, \dots, s$, m_i is the maximum of the exponents of p_i in a and b .

Example. Find the G.C.D. and the L.C.M. of $a=5040$, $b=14850$ by writing each of the numbers a and b in prime factorization canonical form.

Sol. We have $a=2^4 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^1 \cdot 7^1$ and $b=2^1 \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5^2 \cdot (11)^1$.

\therefore G.C.D. of a and b i.e., $(a, b)=2^1 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^1=90$.

Also L.C.M. of a and b i.e. $[a, b]=2^4 \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7^1 \cdot (11)^1$
 $=831600$.

Theorem 5. The number of positive primes is infinite.

(Nagarjuna 1990; Osmania 90)

Proof Suppose there are only a finite number of positive primes, say n . Let $S=\{p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n\}$ be the set of all primes.

Now form the product $a=p_1 \cdot p_2 \cdot p_3 \dots p_n$ and consider the integer $a+1$. Since $a+1$ is a positive integer > 1 , therefore it must have a prime factor. But no $p_i \in S$ is a divisor of $a+1$ because when $a+1$ is divided by each p_i , we have the remainder 1.

Thus $a+1$ is a positive integer > 1 and has no prime factor because according to our assumption the set S contains all the primes. But this is a contradiction. Hence our assumption is wrong and the number of positive primes is infinite.

§ 16. The number of divisors of a positive integer.

Theorem 1. To find the number and the sum of all the distinct positive integral divisors of a given positive integer $n > 1$.

Proof. By fundamental theorem of arithmetic, let

$n=p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_r^{\alpha_r}$, where

$1 < p_1 < p_2 < \dots < p_r$ and where p 's are positive primes and $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_r$ are positive integers.

Consider the product

$$P = (1+p_1+p_1^2+\dots+p_1^{\alpha_1}) (1+p_2+p_2^2+\dots+p_2^{\alpha_2}) \dots (1+p_r+p_r^2+\dots+p_r^{\alpha_r}). \quad \dots(1)$$

The general term of this product is

$$p_1^{\beta_1} p_2^{\beta_2} \dots p_r^{\beta_r},$$

where $0 \leq \beta_1 \leq \alpha_1, 0 \leq \beta_2 \leq \alpha_2, \dots, 0 \leq \beta_r \leq \alpha_r$.

Obviously $p_1^{\beta_1} p_2^{\beta_2} \dots p_r^{\beta_r}$ is a divisor of $p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_r^{\alpha_r} = n$ and conversely every positive integral divisor of n is equal to the value of some term in the product P given by (1).

Hence the number of distinct positive integral divisors of n
 = the number of terms in the product (1)
 $= (1 + \alpha_1)(1 + \alpha_2) \dots (1 + \alpha_r)$.

Also the sum of all the distinct positive integral divisors of n
 = the sum of all the terms in the product P

$$= \left(\frac{p_1^{\alpha_1+1} - 1}{p_1 - 1} \right) \cdot \left(\frac{p_2^{\alpha_2+1} - 1}{p_2 - 1} \right) \dots \left(\frac{p_r^{\alpha_r+1} - 1}{p_r - 1} \right).$$

Notation. The number of distinct positive integral divisors of a positive integer n is denoted by $T(n)$ and their sum by $\sigma(n)$.

Example. Find the number of distinct positive integral divisors and their sum for the integer 56700.

Sol. Expressing in prime factorization canonical form, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 56700 &= 2 \times 28350 = 2^2 \times 14175 = 2^2 \times 3 \times 4725 = 2^2 \times 3^2 \times 1575 \\ &= 2^2 \times 3^3 \times 525 = 2^2 \times 3^4 \times 175 = 2^2 \times 3^4 \times 5 \times 35 \\ &= 2^2 \times 3^4 \times 5^2 \times 7^1, \end{aligned}$$

where $p_1=2, p_2=3, p_3=5, p_4=7$ and $\alpha_1=2, \alpha_2=4, \alpha_3=2, \alpha_4=1$.

$\therefore T(56700)$ = the number of distinct positive integral divisors of 56700

$$\begin{aligned} &= (\alpha_1 + 1)(\alpha_2 + 1)(\alpha_3 + 1)(\alpha_4 + 1) \\ &= (2 + 1)(4 + 1)(2 + 1)(1 + 1) = 3 \times 5 \times 3 \times 2 \\ &= 90. \end{aligned}$$

Also $\sigma(56700)$ = the sum of all the distinct positive integral divisors of 56700

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{2^{2+1}-1}{2-1} \cdot \frac{3^{4+1}-1}{3-1} \cdot \frac{5^{2+1}-1}{5-1} \cdot \frac{7^{1+1}-1}{7-1} \\ &= \frac{2^3-1}{1} \cdot \frac{3^5-1}{2} \cdot \frac{5^3-1}{4} \cdot \frac{7^2-1}{6} \\ &= 7 \times 121 \times 31 \times 8 = 210056. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 2. Assume that $n = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_r^{\alpha_r}$ is a composite, where p_i ($i=1, 2, \dots, r$) are distinct primes and exponents $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$ are positive integers. Then the number of ways in which n may be resolved into two factors is $\frac{1}{2}(\alpha_1 + 1)(\alpha_2 + 1) \dots (\alpha_r + 1)$ in case n is not a perfect square but $\frac{1}{2}[(\alpha_1 + 1) \dots (\alpha_r + 1) + 1]$ in case n is a perfect square.

Proof. Proceeding as in theorem 1, each term of the product

$$P = (1 + p_1 + p_1^2 + \dots + p_1^{\alpha_1}) (1 + p_2 + p_2^2 + \dots + p_2^{\alpha_2}) \dots (1 + p_r + p_r^2 + \dots + p_r^{\alpha_r})$$

is a divisor of n .

Case I. n is not a perfect square i.e., at least one of the exponents α_i ($i=1, 2, \dots, r$) is an odd number.

In this case corresponding to each way in which n may be resolved into two factors, we have two distinct divisors of n .

\therefore the required number of ways in which n may be resolved into two factors

$$= \frac{1}{2} \cdot (\text{number of distinct divisors of } n) \\ = \frac{1}{2} [(\alpha_1 + 1)(\alpha_2 + 1) \dots (\alpha_r + 1)].$$

Case II. n is a perfect square.

In this case one way of factorizing n as a product of two factors is $\sqrt{n} \times \sqrt{n}$ and to this way there corresponds only one divisor \sqrt{n} . After excluding this case, the number of ways of factorizing n as a product of two factors is

$$\frac{1}{2} [(\alpha_1 + 1)(\alpha_2 + 1) \dots (\alpha_r + 1) - 1].$$

But to this number of ways we have to add the one way $\sqrt{n} \times \sqrt{n}$, and hence the required number of ways of factorizing

$$= \frac{1}{2} [(\alpha_1 + 1)(\alpha_2 + 1) \dots (\alpha_r + 1) + 1].$$

§ 17. Some more theorems on prime numbers.

First we recall some notations.

1. If $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then $n! = n(n-1)(n-2) \dots 2.1$.
2. If $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $M(n)$ stands for an integral multiple of n .
3. If x is any real number, then we know that there exists a unique $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$n \leq x < n+1.$$

The integer n is called the integral part of x and is denoted by $I(x)$ or by $[x]$.

For example $I(\frac{17}{4}) = I(4\frac{1}{4}) = 4$,

$$I(\frac{1}{2}) = 0, I(\sqrt{7}) = 2, I(-\frac{7}{2}) = -4$$

because $-4 \leq -7/2 < -3$.

It should be noted that

$$(i) \quad I(x) \leq x < I(x) + 1$$

and (ii) $I(x+y) \geq I(x) + I(y)$.

Theorem 1. If p is a positive prime and $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, then

$$(a+b)^p = a^p + b^p + M(p).$$

Proof. By binomial theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(a+b)^p &= a^p + {}^pC_1 \cdot a^{p-1} \cdot b + {}^pC_2 \cdot a^{p-2} \cdot b^2 + \dots \\ &\quad + {}^pC_r \cdot a^{p-r} \cdot b^r + \dots + {}^pC_{p-1} \cdot a \cdot b^{p-1} + b^p \\ &= a^p + b^p + \sum_{r=1}^{p-1} {}^pC_r \cdot a^{p-r} \cdot b^r. \quad \dots(1)\end{aligned}$$

Now ${}^pC_r = \frac{p(p-1)(p-2)\dots(p-r+1)}{r!}$ is an integer.

Since p is prime and $r < p$, therefore no factor of $r!$ except 1 is a divisor of p . Also p cannot divide $r!$ because p is prime and so p cannot divide any factor of $r!$ and hence p cannot divide $r!$.

$\therefore r!$ is a factor of $(p-1)(p-2)\dots(p-r+1)$.

$\therefore {}^pC_r$ is a multiple of p , for $r=1, 2, \dots, p-1$.

Hence from (1), we have

$$(a+b)^p = a^p + b^p + M(p).$$

Corollary. If p is a positive prime and $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $(a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n)^p = a_1^p + a_2^p + \dots + a_n^p + M(p)$.

This result can be easily proved by induction with the help of the above theorem.

Theorem 2. If p is a prime number in the factors of $n!$, then to find the highest power of p in $n!$.

Proof. Since p is prime, therefore p will divide $n!$ if p divides at least one factor of $n!$. The multiples of p in the factors of $n!$ are $p, 2p, 3p, \dots, \{I(n/p)\}p$.

\therefore the number of multiples of p in the factors of $n!$
 $= I(n/p).$

Similarly, the number of multiples of p^2 in the factors of $n!$
 $= I(n/p^2),$

the number of multiples of p^3 in the factors of $n! = I(n/p^3), \dots$, and so on.

Hence the highest power of p contained in $n!$

$$= I\left(\frac{n}{p}\right) + I\left(\frac{n}{p^2}\right) + I\left(\frac{n}{p^3}\right) + \dots$$

Example. Find the highest power of 3 in $80!$.

Sol. Here 3 is a prime. The number of multiples of 3 in the factors of $80!$

$$= I(80/3) = 26,$$

the number of multiples of 3^2 in the factors of $80!$

$$= I(80/3^2) = I(80/9) = 8,$$

the number of multiples of 3^3 in the factors of $80!$

$$=I(80/3^3)=I(80/27)=2,$$

the number of multiples of 3^4 in the factors of $80!$

$$=I(80/3^4)=I(80/81)=0.$$

Thus there are no multiples of 3^r , $r \geq 4$, in the factors of $80!$.

Hence the highest power of 3 in $80! = 26 + 8 + 2 = 36$.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If $p=2^n-1$ is a prime, prove that n is a prime.

(Nagarjuna 1990)

Sol. Let n be not a prime. Then there exist positive integers r and s such that

$$n=rs \text{ where } 1 < r < n, 1 < s < n.$$

$$\therefore p=2^n-1=2^{rs}-1=(2^r)^s-1$$

$$=a^s-1, \text{ where } a=2^r$$

$$=(a-1)(a^{s-1}+a^{s-2}+\dots+a+1). \quad \dots(1)$$

Now $a-1 > 1$ because $a=2^r > 2$. Also $a-1=2^r-1 < p$ because $p=(2^r)^s-1$. Thus $a-1$ is a positive integer such that $1 < a-1 < p$ and from (1), $a-1$ is a divisor of p .

Hence p is not a prime. But this is a contradiction.

Hence n must be a prime.

Note. The converse of the above statement is not true. For example if we take $n=11$, then n is prime. But $2^{11}-1=2047=23 \times 89$ and thus $2^{11}-1$ is not prime. Hence n is prime does not necessarily imply that 2^n-1 is prime.

Mersenne Numbers.

(Andhra 1989)

The numbers of the form $M_n=2^n-1$, where n is a prime, are known as Mersenne numbers. All the Mersenne numbers are not prime. For example $M_{11}=2^{11}-1=2047$ is composite because 23 is a divisor of 2047.

Ex. 2. Prove that the product of r consecutive natural numbers is divisible by $r!$.

(Nagarjuna 1990; Osmania 88)

Sol. Let $x \in \mathbb{N}$ and $x, x+1, x+2, \dots, x+r-1$ be r consecutive natural numbers.

P = product of these r consecutive natural numbers

$$=x(x+1)(x+2)\dots(x+r-1)$$

$$=\frac{(x+r-1)!}{(x-1)!}.$$

We have to prove that P is divisible by $r!$ i.e., we have to prove that $\frac{(x+r-1)!}{(x-1)!r!}$ is an integer.

For this we have to show that the highest power of every prime factor p contained in the product $(x-1)!r!$ is not greater than the highest power of p in $(x+r-1)!$.

Now we know that if a, b are any real numbers, then

$$I(a+b) \geq I(a) + I(b), \text{ where } I(a)$$

stands for the integral part of a .

$$\therefore I\left(\frac{x+r-1}{p}\right) \geq I\left(\frac{x-1}{p}\right) + I\left(\frac{r}{p}\right),$$

$$I\left(\frac{x+r-1}{p^2}\right) \geq I\left(\frac{x-1}{p^2}\right) + I\left(\frac{r}{p^2}\right),$$

$$I\left(\frac{x+r-1}{p^3}\right) \geq I\left(\frac{x-1}{p^3}\right) + I\left(\frac{r}{p^3}\right),$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \end{array}$$

Adding the above inequalities, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & I\left(\frac{x+r-1}{p}\right) + I\left(\frac{x+r-1}{p^2}\right) + I\left(\frac{x+r-1}{p^3}\right) + \dots \\ & \geq \left[I\left(\frac{x-1}{p}\right) + I\left(\frac{x-1}{p^2}\right) + \dots \right] + \left[I\left(\frac{r}{p}\right) + I\left(\frac{r}{p^2}\right) + \dots \right]. \end{aligned}$$

\therefore the highest power of p in $(x+r-1)!$ \geq the highest power of p in the product $(x-1)!r!$. [See theorem 2 of § 17]

Hence $(x-1)!r!$ is a divisor of $(x+r-1)!$ and consequently $r!$ is a divisor of $x(x+1)(x+2)\dots(x+r-1)$.

Note. From the above result we can immediately deduce that the product of any r consecutive integers is divisible by $r!$.

Ex. 3. If $n > 2$, show that $n^5 - 5n^3 + 4n$ is divisible by 120.

(Osmania 1990)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Sol.} \quad & \text{We have } n^5 - 5n^3 + 4n = n(n^4 - 5n^2 + 4) \\ & = n(n^2 - 1)(n^2 - 4) = n(n-1)(n+1)(n-2)(n+2) \\ & = (n-2)(n-1)n(n+1)(n+2). \end{aligned}$$

Thus if $n > 2$, then $n^5 - 5n^3 + 4n$ has been expressed as a product of five consecutive natural numbers and so it is divisible by 5! i.e., 120.

Ex. 4. If n is any natural number, prove that

$$n(n+1)(n+5) \text{ is a multiple of 6 i.e., } n(n+1)(n+5) = M(6).$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Sol. We have } n(n+1)(n+5) &= n(n+1)[(n+2)+3] \\ &= n(n+1)(n+2)+3n(n+1).\end{aligned}$$

Now $n(n+1)(n+2)$ is a product of three consecutive natural numbers and so it is divisible by $3! \text{ i.e., } 6$.

$$\therefore n(n+1)(n+2) = M(6). \quad \dots(1)$$

Again $n(n+1)$ is a product of two consecutive natural numbers and so it is divisible by $2! \text{ i.e., } 2$. Consequently $3 \cdot n(n+1)$ is divisible by 6 .

$$\therefore 3n(n+1) = M(6). \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned}n(n+1)(n+2)+3n(n+1) &= M(6) \\ \Rightarrow n(n+1)(n+5) &= M(6).\end{aligned}$$

Ex. 5. If n is odd, show that $n(n^2-1) = M(24)$.

Sol. We shall prove the result by mathematical induction.

Any odd natural number is of the form $2m-1$ where m is any natural number. Let $P(m)$ stand for the statement that $(2m-1)[(2m-1)^2-1]$ is a multiple of 24 where m is any natural number.

To start the induction we have to show that $P(m)$ is true for $m=1$.

For $m=1$, $(2m-1)[(2m-1)^2-1] = (2-1)(1^2-1) = 0$ which is a multiple of 24 because we can write $0 = 24 \cdot 0$.

Thus $P(m)$ is true for $m=1$.

Now suppose that $P(m)$ is true for some natural number m i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned}(2m-1)[(2m-1)^2-1] &= M(24) \\ \Rightarrow (2m-1)(4m^2-4m) &= 24k, \text{ where } k \text{ is some integer} \\ \Rightarrow 8m^3-12m^2+4m &= 24k. \quad \dots(1)\end{aligned}$$

Then to complete the induction we have to show that $P(m+1)$ is also true i.e.,

$(2m+1)[(2m+1)^2-1]$ is also a multiple of 24.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{We have } (2m+1)[(2m+1)^2-1] &= (2m+1)(4m^2+4m) = 8m^3+12m^2+4m \\ &= (24k+12m^2-4m)+12m^2+4m \\ &\quad [\because \text{from (1), } 8m^3=24k+12m^2-4m] \\ &= 24m^2+24k = 24(m^2+k) \text{ which is a multiple of 24.}\end{aligned}$$

Thus $P(m)$ is true $\Rightarrow P(m+1)$ is true. This completes the induction.

Hence by mathematical induction $P(m)$ is true for all $m \in \mathbb{N}$ i.e., $n(n^2-1)$ is divisible by 24 for all odd natural numbers.

Ex. 6. Prove that $n(n+1)(2n+1)$ is a multiple of 6 for every natural number n i.e.,

$$n(n+1)(2n+1) = M(6).$$

Sol. We have $n(n+1)(2n+1) = n(n+1)\{(n+2)+(n-1)\}$
 $= n(n+1)(n+2) - (n-1)n(n+1).$

Since $n(n+1)(n+2)$ is a product of three consecutive integers, therefore it is divisible by $3!$ i.e., 6.

$$\therefore n(n+1)(n+2) = M(6). \quad \dots(1)$$

Again $(n-1)n(n+1)$ is also a product of three consecutive integers.

$$\therefore (n-1)n(n+1) = M(6) \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} n(n+1)(n+2) - (n-1)n(n+1) &= M(6) \\ \Rightarrow n(n+1)(2n+1) &= M(6). \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 7. If $(a, b) = 1$ then show that $(a^2, b^2) = 1$.

Sol. Let $(a^2, b^2) = d$.

If $d = 1$, then $(a^2, b^2) = 1$ and the proof is complete.

If $d > 1$, then d has a prime factor, say, p .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } p \mid d \text{ and } d = (a^2, b^2) &\Rightarrow p \mid d \text{ and } d \mid a^2, d \mid b^2 \\ &\Rightarrow p \mid a^2 \text{ and } p \mid b^2 \\ &\Rightarrow p \mid a \text{ and } p \mid b, \text{ since } p \text{ is prime} \\ &\Rightarrow p \mid (a, b) \\ &\Rightarrow p \mid 1 \text{ which is impossible.} \end{aligned}$$

Hence we cannot have $d > 1$.

\therefore we must have $d = 1$ i.e., $(a^2, b^2) = 1$.

Ex. 8. If $(a, b) = 1$ then show that

$$(a+b, a^2-ab+b^2) = 1 \text{ or } 3.$$

(Nagarjuna 1988)

Sol. Let $(a+b, a^2-ab+b^2) = d$.

Then $d \mid (a+b)$, $d \mid (a^2-ab+b^2)$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid (a+b)^2, d \mid (a^2-ab+b^2)$$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid \{(a+b)^2 - (a^2-ab+b^2)\}$$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid 3ab.$$

$$\text{Now } d \mid (a+b), d \mid 3ab \Rightarrow d \mid 3a(a+b), d \mid 3ab$$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid \{(3a^2+3ab) - 3ab\}$$

$$\Rightarrow d \mid 3a^2.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Similarly } d \mid (a+b), d \mid 3ab &\Rightarrow d \mid 3b(a+b), d \mid 3ab \\ &\Rightarrow d \mid \{(3ab+3b^2)-3ab\} \\ &\Rightarrow d \mid 3b^2.\end{aligned}$$

Thus d is a common divisor of $3a^2$ and $3b^2$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{But } (a, b)=1 &\Rightarrow (a^2, b^2)=1 \\ &\Rightarrow (3a^2, 3b^2)=3.\end{aligned}$$

Now d is a common divisor of $3a^2$, $3b^2$ and the greatest common divisor of $3a^2$, $3b^2$ is 3 implies that $d \mid 3$. Hence $d=1$ or 3.

Exercises

- Write each of the following numbers in canonical form
(i) 4950, (ii) 29645, (iii) 28812.
- By writing each of the following sets of numbers in the canonical form, find their G.C.D. and L.C.M.
(i) 2520, 4950, (ii) 3367, 3219, (iii) 1274, 3087, 1085.
Find the highest power of 5 in 80 !.
- Find the number of divisors of 3675. (Andhra 1990)
- Find the number of divisors and the sum of the divisors for the following numbers :
(i) 2000, (ii) 14553, (iii) 21600, (iv) 8064.
- In how many ways can the number 7056 be resolved into two factors ?
- If n is a positive integer and no positive prime $p \leq \sqrt{n}$ is a divisor of n , then prove that n is a prime.
- Prove that $n^3 - n$ is divisible by 6.

Answers

- (i) $2^1 \times 3^2 \times 5^2 \times 11^1$, (ii) $5^1 \times 7^2 \times 11^2$ (iii) $2^2 \times 3^1 \times 7^4$.
- (i) 90, 138600 (ii) $37, 7 \times 13 \times 37 \times 87$.
(iii) $7, 2 \times 3^2 \times 5 \times 7^3 \times 13 \times 31$.
19. 4. 18.
- (i) 20, 4836 (ii) 24, 27360
(iii) 72, 78120 (iv) 48, 26520.
- 23.

§ 18. Congruence of Integers.

Relation of "congruence modulo m " in the set of integers.

Definition. Let m be any fixed positive integer i.e., $m > 0$. Then an integer a is said to be congruent to another integer b modulo m if $m \mid (a-b)$, i.e., if m is a divisor of $a-b$.

Symbolically we write

$$a \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

It will be read as " a is congruent to b modulo m ".

Thus $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ iff $a - b = km$ for some integer k i.e., iff $a - b$ is a multiple of m .

If m is not a divisor of $a - b$, then we say that ' a is not congruent to b modulo m ' and we write $a \not\equiv b \pmod{m}$.

For example,

$$89 \equiv 25 \pmod{4} \text{ since } 89 - 25 = 64 \text{ and } 4 \mid 64$$

$$25 \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \text{ since } 25 - 1 = 24 \text{ and } 4 \mid 24$$

$$153 \equiv -7 \pmod{8} \text{ since } 153 - (-7) = 160 \text{ and } 8 \mid 160$$

$$13 \equiv 3 \pmod{5} \text{ since } 13 - 3 = 10 \text{ and } 5 \mid 10.$$

But $24 \not\equiv 3 \pmod{5}$ since $24 - 3 = 21$ and 5 is not a divisor of 21.

Also note that $m \mid a \Leftrightarrow a \equiv 0 \pmod{m}$.

Some properties of congruences.

Theorem 1. *The relation "congruence modulo m " is an equivalence relation in the set of integers.*

Proof. Let Z be the set of integers. If m is any fixed positive integer, then we say that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if $m \mid (a - b)$. We shall show that this defines an equivalence relation on the set Z .

Reflexivity. Let a be any integer. Then $a - a = 0$ and $m \mid 0$. Thus $a \equiv a \pmod{m} \forall a \in Z$. Therefore the relation is reflexive.

Symmetry. Let $a, b \in Z$ be such that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} m \mid (a - b) &\Rightarrow a - b = km \text{ for some } k \in Z \\ \Rightarrow b - a &= (-k)m \text{ where } -k \in Z \\ \Rightarrow m \mid (b - a) &\Rightarrow b \equiv a \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow b \equiv a \pmod{m}$ and therefore the relation is symmetric.

Transitivity. Let $a, b, c \in Z$ be such that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, $b \equiv c \pmod{m}$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} m \mid (a - b) \text{ and } m \mid (b - c) \\ \Rightarrow m \mid \{(a - b) + (b - c)\} &\Rightarrow m \mid (a - c) \\ \Rightarrow a \equiv c \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $b \equiv c \pmod{m} \Rightarrow a \equiv c \pmod{m}$. Therefore the relation is transitive.

Hence congruence modulo m is an equivalence relation on Z .

Theorem 2. If a and b are two integers, then $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if and only if a and b have the same remainder when divided by m .

Proof. Suppose a and b have the remainders r_1 and r_2 respectively when divided by m . Then for some integers q_1 and q_2 , we have

$$a = q_1 m + r_1, 0 \leq r_1 < m$$

and

$$b = q_2 m + r_2, 0 \leq r_2 < m.$$

Now suppose that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. Then to prove that $r_1 = r_2$.

We have $a - b = m(q_1 - q_2) + r_1 - r_2$.

$$\therefore r_1 - r_2 = (a - b) + m(q_2 - q_1).$$

Now $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow m \mid (a - b)$. Also $m \mid m(q_2 - q_1)$.

$$\therefore m \mid \{(a - b) + m(q_2 - q_1)\} \Rightarrow m \mid (r_1 - r_2)$$

$$\Rightarrow r_1 - r_2 = 0 \quad [\because 0 \leq r_1 - r_2 < m]$$

$$\Rightarrow r_1 = r_2.$$

Conversely suppose that $r_1 = r_2$. Then to prove that $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } a - b &= m(q_1 - q_2) + r_1 - r_2 \\ &= m(q_1 - q_2), \text{ if } r_1 = r_2. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore m \mid (a - b) \Rightarrow a \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

Theorem 3. If a is any integer, then $a \equiv r \pmod{m}$ where r is the remainder obtained on dividing a by m .

Proof. Suppose r is the remainder obtained on dividing a by m . Then for some integer q , we have

$$a = mq + r$$

$$\Rightarrow a - r = mq$$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid (a - r) \Rightarrow a \equiv r \pmod{m}.$$

Theorem 4. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then, for all $x \in \mathbb{Z}$, $a + x \equiv b + x \pmod{m}$ and $ax \equiv bx \pmod{m}$.

Proof. We have $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow m \mid (a - b)$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid \{(a + x) - (b + x)\} \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\Rightarrow a + x \equiv b + x \pmod{m} \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Similarly, $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow m \mid (a - b)$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid x(a - b) \text{ for all } x \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid (ax - bx) \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\Rightarrow ax \equiv bx \pmod{m} \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Theorem 5. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and $c \equiv d \pmod{m}$, then $a + c \equiv b + d \pmod{m}$, $a - c \equiv b - d \pmod{m}$, $ac \equiv bd \pmod{m}$.

Proof. We have $a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow m \mid (a - b)$

and

$$c \equiv d \pmod{m} \Rightarrow m \mid (c - d).$$

Now $m \mid (a-b)$ and $m \mid (c-d)$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid \{(a-b) + (c-d)\} \Rightarrow m \mid \{(a+c) - (b+d)\} \\ \Rightarrow a+c \equiv b+d \pmod{m}.$$

Similarly $m \mid (a-b)$ and $m \mid (c-d)$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid \{(a-b) - (c-d)\} \Rightarrow m \mid \{(a-c) - (b-d)\} \\ \Rightarrow a-c \equiv b-d \pmod{m}.$$

Finally $m \mid (a-b)$ and $m \mid (c-d)$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid \{c(a-b) + b(c-d)\} \Rightarrow m \mid (ac-bd) \\ \Rightarrow ac \equiv bd \pmod{m}.$$

Theorem 6. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ and m_1 is a positive divisor of m , then $a \equiv b \pmod{m_1}$.

Proof. If m_1 is a positive divisor of m , then $m = m_1 q_1$ for some $q_1 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$.

$$\text{Now } a \equiv b \pmod{m} \Rightarrow m \mid (a-b) \\ \Rightarrow a-b = q_2 m \text{ for some } q_2 \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow a-b = q_2 (m_1 q_1) = m_1 (q_1 q_2) \text{ where } q_1 q_2 \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow m_1 \mid (a-b) \Rightarrow a \equiv b \pmod{m_1}.$$

Theorem 7. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m_1}$, $a \equiv b \pmod{m_2}$ and $m = [m_1, m_2]$ i.e., m is the L.C.M. of m_1 and m_2 , then $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Proof. We have $a \equiv b \pmod{m_1} \Rightarrow a-b = q_1 m_1$ for some $q_1 \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a \equiv b \pmod{m_2} \Rightarrow a-b = q_2 m_2$ for some $q_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$.

$\therefore a-b$ is a multiple of both m_1 and m_2 .

Thus $a-b$ is a common multiple of m_1 and m_2 and hence a multiple of $m = [m_1, m_2]$.

$$\therefore a \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

Note. The theorems 6 and 7 help us to change the modulus of a congruence.

Theorem 8. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then

$$mn + a \equiv b \pmod{m} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Conversely if $mn + a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ for some $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Proof. Suppose $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$. Then $m \mid (a-b)$. But $m \mid (mn)$ $\forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Therefore

$$m \mid \{(mn) + (a-b)\} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow m \mid \{(mn+a) - b\} \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{Z} \\ \Rightarrow mn + a \equiv b \pmod{m} \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Conversely suppose that $mn + a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ for some integer

$$\{(mn+a) - b\}. \\ (mn).$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore m &| [(mn+a)-b]-mn \\ \Rightarrow m &| (a-b) \Rightarrow a \equiv b \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 9. Let d be the G.C.D. of c and m i.e., $(c, m)=d$ and let $m=m_1d$. Then prove that $ca \equiv cb \pmod{m} \Rightarrow a \equiv b \pmod{m_1}$. Also prove the converse i.e., prove that if $a \equiv b \pmod{m_1}$, then $ca \equiv cb \pmod{m}$.

Proof. We have $(c, m)=d$ and $m=m_1d$. Let $c=c_1d$. Since d is the greatest common divisor of c and m , therefore the greatest common divisor of c_1 and m_1 must be 1 i.e., $(c_1, m_1)=1$. Note that c_1 and m_1 are the integers obtained on dividing c and m respectively by their G.C.D. d .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } ca &\equiv cb \pmod{m} \\ \Rightarrow m &| (ca-cb) \Rightarrow m | c(a-b) \\ \Rightarrow m_1d &| c_1d(a-b) & [\because m=m_1d \text{ and } c=c_1d] \\ \Rightarrow m_1 &| c_1(a-b) & [\because d \neq 0] \\ \Rightarrow m_1 &| (a-b) & [\because m_1 \text{ and } c_1 \text{ are relatively prime}] \\ \Rightarrow a &\equiv b \pmod{m_1}. \end{aligned}$$

Converse. We have $a \equiv b \pmod{m_1}$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow m_1 &| (a-b) \Rightarrow m_1 | c_1(a-b) \\ \Rightarrow m_1d &| c_1d(a-b) \\ \Rightarrow m &| c(a-b) \\ \Rightarrow m &| (ca-cb) \\ \Rightarrow ca &\equiv cb \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 10. If $ca \equiv cb \pmod{m}$ and $(c, m)=1$, then $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Proof. It is given that $(c, m)=1$ i.e., c and m are relatively prime.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{We have } ca &\equiv cb \pmod{m} \\ \Rightarrow m &| (ca-cb) \Rightarrow m | c(a-b) \\ \Rightarrow m &| (a-b) & [\because (c, m)=1] \\ \Rightarrow a &\equiv b \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

Note. The above theorem gives a cancellation law in congruences, but it is valid only when $(c, m)=1$. For example

$$18 \equiv 14 \pmod{4} \text{ i.e., } 2.9 \equiv 2.7 \pmod{4}$$

does not imply $9 \equiv 7 \pmod{4}$ because here 2 and 4 are not relatively prime i.e., $(2, 4) \neq 1$.

§ 19. Residue classes.

Definition. We know that if m is a fixed positive integer, then 'congruence modulo m ' is an equivalence relation on the set of

integers \mathbb{Z} . Consequently it partitions \mathbb{Z} into a collection of mutually disjoint equivalence classes. These equivalence classes are called 'residue classes modulo m '.

We shall denote the set of all residue classes of integers modulo m by $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$ or by $\mathbb{Z}/(m)$. It is also called the set of integers modulo m .

If $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then the residue class \bar{a} or $[a] \in \bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$ is given by $\bar{a} = \{x : x \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } x \equiv a \pmod{m}\} = \{a + km : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$.

The residue class \bar{a} is called the residue class generated by a or the a -residue class $(\text{mod } m)$.

Similarly if $b \in \mathbb{Z}$, then the residue class $\bar{b} \in \bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$ is given by $\bar{b} = \{y : y \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } y \equiv b \pmod{m}\} = \{b + km : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$.

We know that two equivalence classes are either disjoint or identical. Therefore if $\bar{a} \in \bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$ and $\bar{b} \in \bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$, then either $\bar{a} = \bar{b}$ or $\bar{a} \cap \bar{b} = \emptyset$.

Also $\bar{a} = \bar{b}$ if and only if $a \in \bar{b}$ i.e., iff $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ i.e., iff $m \mid (a - b)$.

With the help of the following theorem we conclude that the set $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$ of all residue classes of integers modulo m contains exactly m distinct elements $\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \bar{2}, \dots, \overline{m-1}$.

Theorem. Let m be a fixed positive integer and $S = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, m-1\}$.

Then no two integers of S are congruent modulo m to each other and every $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ is congruent modulo m to one of the integers of S .

Proof. Let $i, j \in S$ and $j > i$.

Then $0 \leq i < m$ and $0 \leq j < m$.

$\therefore 0 < j - i < m$. So m cannot be a divisor of $j - i$ i.e., $i \not\equiv j \pmod{m}$.

Hence no two integers of S are congruent modulo m to each other and consequently the m residue classes modulo m $\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \bar{2}, \dots, \overline{m-1}$ are all distinct.

To prove the second part of the theorem, let $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ i.e., let x be any integer.

By division algorithm, there exist two unique integers q, r

$$x = mq + r, \text{ where } 0 \leq r < m.$$

Then $x - r = mq$, $r \in S$.

$$\therefore m \mid (x - r) \text{ i.e., } x \equiv r \pmod{m}.$$

Hence for $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ there exists one and only one integer $r \in S$ such that $x \equiv r \pmod{m}$. Consequently the residue class \bar{x} is equal to the residue class \bar{r} .

Thus the set $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m$ of residue classes modulo m contains exactly m distinct elements $\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \bar{2}, \dots, \overline{m-1}$ and so

$$\bar{\mathbb{Z}}_m = \{\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \bar{2}, \dots, \overline{m-1}\}.$$

If $x \in$ the residue class \bar{a} , then $\bar{x} = \bar{a}$.

Therefore if $x_0 \in \bar{0}, x_1 \in \bar{1}, \dots, x_{m-1} \in \overline{m-1}$, then the set $\{\bar{x}_0, \bar{x}_1, \dots, \bar{x}_{m-1}\}$ also consists of all the m distinct residue classes modulo m .

Illustration. Let us take $m=4$. Then the residue classes modulo 4 i.e., the elements of the set $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}_4$ are

$$\bar{0} = \{\dots, -12, -8, -4, 0, 4, 8, 12, \dots\} = \{4k : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

$$\bar{1} = \{\dots, -11, -7, -3, 1, 5, 9, 13, \dots\} = \{4k+1 : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

$$\bar{2} = \{\dots, -10, -6, -2, 2, 6, 10, 14, \dots\} = \{4k+2 : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

$$\bar{3} = \{\dots, -9, -5, -1, 3, 7, 11, 15, \dots\} = \{4k+3 : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

It should be noted that $\bar{0} \cup \bar{1} \cup \bar{2} \cup \bar{3} = \mathbb{Z}$.

$$\text{We have } 4 \in \bar{0} \Rightarrow \bar{0} = \bar{4}, 9 \in \bar{1} \Rightarrow \bar{1} = \bar{9},$$

$$14 \in \bar{2} \Rightarrow \bar{2} = \bar{14} \text{ and } 15 \in \bar{3} \Rightarrow \bar{3} = \bar{15}.$$

$$\therefore \bar{\mathbb{Z}}_4 = \{\bar{0}, \bar{1}, \bar{2}, \bar{3}\} = \{\bar{4}, \bar{9}, \bar{14}, \bar{15}\}.$$

Addition and multiplication of two residue classes.

Definition. Let \bar{a}, \bar{b} be two residue classes modulo m . Then the sum of \bar{a} and \bar{b} is defined as the residue class $\overline{a+b}$ containing the integer $a+b$ and the product of \bar{a} and \bar{b} is the residue class \overline{ab} containing the integer ab .

$$\text{Thus } \bar{a} + \bar{b} = \overline{a+b} \text{ and } \bar{a} \bar{b} = \overline{ab}.$$

Some Important Definitions.

1. **Definition.** Let m be a fixed positive integer. If $x \in \mathbb{Z}$, then an integer y is said to be a residue of $x \bmod m$ if $y \equiv x \pmod{m}$. The remainder r obtained on dividing x by m is called the least non-negative residue of $x \bmod m$. The set of integers

$$\mathbb{Z}_m = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, m-1\}$$

is called the set of least positive residues modulo m .

For example, if $m=6$, then the set of integers

$$\mathbb{Z}_6 = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$$

is the set of least positive residues modulo 6. These integers are such that each $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ is congruent mod 6 to one and only one of them.

2. **Definition.** The complete set of residue classes modulo m is the collection $\overline{\mathbb{Z}}_m = \{\overline{0}, \overline{1}, \overline{2}, \dots, \overline{m-1}\}$. A set of integers

$$S = \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{m-1}\}$$

is called a complete set of residues modulo m , if $\{\bar{x}_0, \bar{x}_1, \dots, \bar{x}_{m-1}\}$ is the complete set of residue classes modulo m .

Thus a set of integers $S = \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{m-1}\}$ is a complete set of residues modulo m iff each integer in S is congruent modulo m to exactly one integer in the set $\mathbb{Z}_m = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, m-1\}$. For example, if $m=6$, then the set $S = \{6, -5, 14, -9, 10, 35\}$ is a complete set of residues modulo 6. Here $\overline{6} = \overline{0}$ because $6 \equiv 0 \pmod{6}$, $\overline{-5} = \overline{1}$ because $-5 \equiv 1 \pmod{6}$, $\overline{14} = \overline{2}$, $\overline{-9} = \overline{3}$, $\overline{10} = \overline{4}$ and $\overline{35} = \overline{5}$. Thus

$$\{\overline{6}, \overline{-5}, \overline{14}, \overline{-9}, \overline{10}, \overline{35}\} = \{\overline{0}, \overline{1}, \overline{2}, \overline{3}, \overline{4}, \overline{5}\}$$

is the complete set of residue classes modulo 6.

3. **Definition.** If m is a fixed positive integer, then the residue class \overline{r} modulo m is said to be prime to m if $(r, m) = 1$.

For example, if $m=6$, then the residue classes $\overline{1}, \overline{5}$ modulo 6 are prime to 6 because 1 and 6 are relatively prime and 5 and 6 are also relatively prime. The residue classes $\overline{0}, \overline{2}, \overline{3}$ and $\overline{4}$ modulo 6 are not relatively prime to 6 because

$$(0, 6) = 6, (2, 6) = 2, (3, 6) = 3, (4, 6) = 2.$$

Thus $\overline{1}$ and $\overline{5}$ are the only two residue classes modulo 6 which are prime to 6.

As already mentioned in definition 2 above a set of integers $\{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{m-1}\}$ is called a complete set of residues modulo m , if each $x_i, i=0, 1, \dots, m-1$, belongs to one and only one residue class modulo m .

4. Definition. A set of integers $\{r_1, r_2, \dots, r_k\}$ is called a reduced set of residues modulo m , if exactly one of them lies in each residue class modulo m relatively prime to m . (Nagarjuna 1989)

For example, if $m=6$, then the set of integers $\{1, 5\}$ is a reduced set of residues modulo 6. The set of integers $\{7, 11\}$ is also a reduced set of residues modulo 6. Here $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ or $\{6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11\}$ is a complete set of residues modulo 6.

The number of elements in each reduced set of residues modulo m is the same and is equal to the number of positive integers less than m and relatively prime to m .

§ 20. Linear Congruences.

Consider the congruence

$$ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

in which a, b, m are fixed integers with $m > 0$ and x is an unknown integer. This equation is called a linear congruence.

Solution of a linear congruence.

Definition. If there exists an integer x_0 such that $ax_0 \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then we say that x_0 is a solution of the linear congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

It can be easily seen that if x_1 is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then any other integer $x_2 \equiv x_1 \pmod{m}$ is also a solution.

For example a solution of the linear congruence $7x \equiv 5 \pmod{8}$ is the integer 3 because $7 \cdot 3 \equiv 5 \pmod{8}$.

Note that $8 \mid (21 - 5)$.

Similarly a solution of the linear congruence $3x \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ is the integer 3 or 7 or 11 etc.

Incongruent solutions. Definition Suppose x_1 and x_2 are two solutions of the congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$. If $x_1 \not\equiv x_2 \pmod{m}$, then x_1 and x_2 are called incongruent solutions of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

For example consider the congruence $6x \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$. We see that 1 and 3 are its solutions. Since $1 \not\equiv 3 \pmod{4}$, therefore 1 and 3 are incongruent solutions of $6x \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$. On the other hand 5 is also a solution of $6x \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$. But $5 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$. Therefore 5 and 1 are congruent solutions of this linear congruence.

Existence of solutions of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Theorem 1. *The congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has a solution if and only if the greatest common divisor of a and m i.e., (a, m) divides b .* (Nagarjuna 1990)

Proof. Let $d = (a, m)$.

Suppose $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has a solution $x = x_1$. Then

$$ax_1 \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid (ax_1 - b) \Rightarrow ax_1 - b = mk \text{ for some integer } k$$

$$\Rightarrow b = ax_1 - mk.$$

Now $d \mid a$ and $d \mid m$. Let $a = a_1d$ and $m = m_1d$ where a_1 and m_1 are some integers. Then

$$b = a_1dx_1 - m_1dk = d(a_1x_1 - m_1k).$$

$\therefore d \mid b$. This shows that if a solution exists, then it is necessary that $d \mid b$.

In other words we can say that if d is not a divisor of b , then $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has no solution.

Converse. Suppose $d \mid b$. Then $b = b_1d$ where b_1 is some integer. Since $d = (a, m)$, therefore there exist integers u and v such that

$$d = ua + vm$$

$$\Rightarrow db_1 = uab_1 + vmb_1 \quad [\text{multiplying by } b_1]$$

$$\Rightarrow b = a(ub_1) + (vb_1)m \quad [\because db_1 = b]$$

$$\Rightarrow a(ub_1) - b = -(vb_1)m$$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid \{a(ub_1) - b\}$$

$$\Rightarrow a(ub_1) \equiv b \pmod{m}$$

$$\Rightarrow x = ub_1 \text{ is a solution of } ax \equiv b \pmod{m}.$$

Thus we have shown that if $d \mid b$, then it is sufficient to say that $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has a solution.

Examples. (i) Consider the congruence $207x \equiv 6 \pmod{18}$. We have $(207, 18) = 9$ and 9 is not a divisor of 6. Therefore this congruence has no solution.

(ii) Consider the congruence $222x \equiv 12 \pmod{18}$. We have $(222, 18) = 6$ and $6 \mid 12$. Therefore this congruence must possess a solution.

Theorem 2. *If $(a, m) = 1$, then the congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has a solution. Further if x_0 is a solution, then the set of all solutions is precisely the residue class \bar{x}_0 modulo m i.e., the congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has a unique incongruent solution modulo m .*

(Nagarjuna 1990)

Proof. Existence of solution. Since $(a, m)=1$, therefore there exist integers u and v such that

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= ua + vm \\ \Rightarrow b &= bua + bvm \\ \Rightarrow a(bu) - b &= -(bv)m \\ \Rightarrow m \mid \{a(bu) - b\} &\Rightarrow a(bu) \equiv b \pmod{m} \\ \Rightarrow x = bu &\text{ is a solution of } ax \equiv b \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

This shows the existence of solution.

Now let x_0 be a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.
Then $ax_0 \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

If $y \in \bar{x}_0$, then $y \equiv x_0 \pmod{m}$ and hence $ay \equiv ax_0 \pmod{m}$.

Now by transitive property of the congruence relation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ay &\equiv ax_0 \pmod{m} \text{ and } ax_0 \equiv b \pmod{m} \\ \Rightarrow ay &\equiv b \pmod{m}. \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore y \in x_0$ is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Conversely, y is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow ay &\equiv b \pmod{m} \\ \Rightarrow ay &\equiv ax_0 \pmod{m} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [\because ax_0 &\equiv b \pmod{m}] \\ \Rightarrow b &\equiv ax_0 \pmod{m}] \\ [\because (a, m) &= 1] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow y &\equiv x_0 \pmod{m} \\ \Rightarrow y &\in \bar{x}_0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus if x_0 is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then y is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ iff $y \in \bar{x}_0$.

Hence if $(a, m)=1$, the linear congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has a unique solution modulo m .

Theorem 3. Let $d=(a, m)$ divide b and let $a=a_1d$, $b=b_1d$, $m=m_1d$. Then show that x_1 is a solution of the congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if and only if x_1 is a solution of $a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$.

Proof. Suppose x_1 is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Then $ax_1 \equiv b \pmod{m}$

$$\Rightarrow a_1dx_1 \equiv b_1d \pmod{m_1d}$$

$$\Rightarrow a_1x_1 \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1} \quad [\text{Applying theorem 9 of § 18.}]$$

Note that $(d, m_1d)=d$

$$\Rightarrow x_1 \text{ is a solution of } a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}.$$

Converse. Suppose that x_1 is a solution of $a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$.

Then $a_1x_1 \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$
 $\Rightarrow da_1x_1 \equiv db_1 \pmod{dm_1}$ [by theorem 9 of § 18]
 $\Rightarrow ax_1 \equiv b \pmod{m}$
 $\Rightarrow x_1$ is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Number of Incongruent solutions.

Theorem 4. If $d=(a, m)$ divides b , then the congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has exactly d incongruent solutions which can be expressed in the form $x_0 + rm_1$ for $r=0, 1, \dots, d-1$, where x_0 is an arbitrary solution and $m=dm_1$.

Proof. Let $b=b_1d$, $a=a_1d$, $m=m_1d$ where b_1, a_1, m_1 are some integers. Since d is the greatest common divisor of a and m therefore $(a_1, m_1)=1$.

Since $d \mid b$, therefore $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ possesses a solution. Let x_0 be an arbitrary solution of this congruence. Let x_1 be any other solution of this congruence. We know that $x=y$ is a solution of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ if and only if y is a solution of $a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$. Therefore x_0 and x_1 are also solutions of $a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$. But $a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$ has a unique incongruent solution modulo m_1 because $(a_1, m_1)=1$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &\equiv x_0 \pmod{m_1} \\ &\Rightarrow m_1 \mid (x_1 - x_0) \\ &\Rightarrow x_1 - x_0 = rm_1 \text{ for some integer } r \\ &\Rightarrow x_1 = x_0 + rm_1. \end{aligned}$$

Hence every solution x_1 of the congruence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ can be expressed in the form $x_1 = x_0 + rm_1$ for some integer r .

Further for every integer r , we have $x_0 + rm_1 \equiv x_0 \pmod{m_1}$. Therefore for every integer r , $x_0 + rm_1$ is a solution of $a_1x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$ and so also $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$. Hence all the solutions of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ are found among the set of integers $x_0 + rm_1$. Let us consider the following d integers in this set :

$$x_0, x_0 + m_1, x_0 + 2m_1, \dots, x_0 + (d-1)m_1.$$

Now no two of these d integers are congruent to each other modulo m . For if $0 \leq i < d$ and $0 \leq j < d$, then

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 + im_1 &\equiv x_0 + jm_1 \pmod{m} \\ &\Rightarrow m \mid \{(x_0 + im_1) - (x_0 + jm_1)\} \\ &\Rightarrow m \mid (i-j)m_1 \\ &\Rightarrow m_1d \mid (i-j)m_1 \quad [\because m = m_1d] \\ &\Rightarrow d \mid (i-j) \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow i-j=0 \quad [\because 0 \leq i-j < d]$$

$$\Rightarrow i=j$$

$$\Rightarrow x_0 + im_1 = x_0 + jm_1.$$

Hence any two of these d integers are incongruent (mod m).

Further if r is any integer, then we shall show that $x_0 + rm_1$ is congruent to one of the d integers given above.

Applying division algorithm for the integers r and d , we get

$$r = ds + q, \quad 0 \leq q < d.$$

$$\text{Then } x_0 + rm_1 = x_0 + (ds + q)m_1$$

$$= x_0 + ds m_1 + q m_1$$

$$= (x_0 + q m_1) + d s m_1.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (x_0 + rm_1) - (x_0 + q m_1) &= (x_0 + q m_1) + d s m_1 - (x_0 + q m_1) \\ &= d s m_1 = s m. \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore m \mid \{(x_0 + rm_1) - (x_0 + q m_1)\}$$

$$\Rightarrow x_0 + rm_1 \equiv x_0 + q m_1 \pmod{m}.$$

Since $0 \leq q < d$, therefore $x_0 + q m_1$ is one of the above d integers.

Hence $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$ has exactly d incongruent solutions modulo m .

Note. If we are to find the least positive incongruent solutions modulo m of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then we should first find the least positive integer, say x_0 , satisfying $a_1 x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$ where $d = (a, m)$, $m = m_1 d$, $b = b_1 d$, $a = a_1 d$. Then $x_0, x_0 + m_1, x_0 + 2m_1, \dots, x_0 + (d-1)m_1$ will give us d least positive incongruent solutions modulo m of $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$.

Theorem 5. If $(m_1, m_2) = 1$, then the congruences $x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$, $x \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}$ have a common solution. Any two solutions are congruent modulo $m_1 m_2$.

Proof. Since $(1, m_1) = 1$, therefore the congruence $x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$ has a unique solution.

The complete solution of the first congruence $x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$ is given by

$$x = b_1 + t m_1, \quad t \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Such a solution x of the first congruence also satisfies the second congruence $x \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}$ if and only if

$$b_1 + t m_1 \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}$$

$$\text{i.e., iff } t m_1 \equiv b_2 - b_1 \pmod{m_2}.$$

...(1)

Since $(m_1, m_2) = 1$, this congruence can be solved for t .

For the values of t satisfying the congruence (1), $x = b_1 + t m_1$

is a common solution of the two congruences. Hence the two congruences possess a common solution.

Now let x_1, x_2 be two common solutions of the given congruences.

$$\text{Then } x_1 \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}, x_2 \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$$

$$x_1 \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}, x_2 \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}.$$

$$\therefore x_1 - x_2 \equiv 0 \pmod{m_1} \text{ and } x_1 - x_2 \equiv 0 \pmod{m_2}$$

$$\Rightarrow m_1 \mid (x_1 - x_2) \text{ and } m_2 \mid (x_1 - x_2).$$

$$\text{Since } (m_1, m_2) = 1, \text{ therefore } m_1 m_2 \mid (x_1 - x_2).$$

$\therefore x_1 \equiv x_2 \pmod{m_1 m_2}$ and thus any two solutions are congruent modulo $m_1 m_2$.

Hence if $(m_1, m_2) = 1$, then the set of two congruences $x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}$ and $x \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}$ has a unique solution modulo $m_1 m_2$.

Note. If m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k are relatively prime in pairs, then the system of congruences $x \equiv b_1 \pmod{m_1}, x \equiv b_2 \pmod{m_2}, \dots, x \equiv b_k \pmod{m_k}$ has a unique solution modulo m where $m = m_1 m_2 \dots m_k$.

Definition. If $ab \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$, then a, b are said to be inverses modulo m .

For example, $3 \cdot 5 \equiv 1 \pmod{7} \Rightarrow 3$ and 5 are inverses modulo 7 .

Theorem 6. A number a has an inverse modulo m , if and only if, $(a, m) = 1$.

Proof. First suppose that $(a, m) = 1$. Then by theorem 2 above, the linear congruence $ax \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$ has a solution, say, x_0 .

$$\therefore ax_0 \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$$

$$\Rightarrow x_0 \text{ is an inverse modulo } m \text{ of } a.$$

Conversely, suppose that a has an inverse b modulo m . Then

$$ab \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$$

$$\Rightarrow ab - 1 = km \text{ for some } k \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\Rightarrow ab - km = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow ab + m(-k) = 1, \text{ where } b, -k \text{ are some integers.}$$

$$\therefore (a, m) = 1.$$

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. Solve the following congruences :

(i) $3x \equiv 4 \pmod{5}$

(ii) $235x \equiv 54 \pmod{7}$

(iii) $13x \equiv 9 \pmod{25}$.

Sol. (i) The given linear congruence is

$$3x \equiv 4 \pmod{5}. \quad \dots(1)$$

Since $(3, 5)=1$, therefore the congruence (1) has a unique solution modulo 5.

We have $0 \equiv 5 \pmod{5}. \quad \dots(2)$

Adding the congruences (1) and (2), we have

$$3x \equiv 9 \pmod{5}$$

or $x \equiv 3 \pmod{5} \quad [\because (3, 5)=1]$

Hence $x \equiv 3 \pmod{5}$ i.e., $x=3+5t$, where $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ is the required solution of the given congruence.

(ii) The given linear congruence is $235x \equiv 54 \pmod{7}. \quad \dots(1)$

Since $(235, 7)=1$, therefore the congruence (1) has a unique solution modulo 7.

Here the numbers 235 and 54 are both large. So dividing each of them by the modulus of congruence 7, we have

$$235 = 7 \cdot 33 + 4 = 231 + 4, \text{ where } 0 \leq 4 < 7$$

and $54 = 7 \cdot 7 + 5 = 49 + 5, \text{ where } 0 \leq 5 < 7.$

$$\therefore 231x \equiv 49 \pmod{7}. \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we get

$$235x - 231x \equiv 54 - 49 \pmod{7}$$

or $4x \equiv 5 \pmod{7}. \quad \dots(3)$

By trial we see that the least positive integer satisfying the congruence (3) is 3. Note that $4 \cdot 3 = 12$ and $12 \equiv 5 \pmod{7}$.

Thus 3 is the least positive integer satisfying the given congruence and the complete solution consists of the residue class $\bar{3} \pmod{7}$ and is given by

$$\bar{3} = \{7k + 3 : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

$$= \{\dots, -18, -11, -4, 3, 10, 17, 24, \dots\}.$$

(iii) The given linear congruence is $13x \equiv 9 \pmod{25}. \quad \dots(1)$

We have $(13, 25)=1$ and so the congruence (1) has a unique solution modulo 25. Here the modulus of congruence 25 is large. hence the G. C. D. process enables us to find the solution as follows :

Since $(13, 25)=1$, therefore we can find integers m and n such that $1 = 13m + 25n$.

By Euclidean algorithm, we have

$$25 = 13 \cdot 1 + 12$$

$$13 = 12 \cdot 1 + 1$$

$$12 = 1 \cdot 12.$$

Substituting backwards, we have

$$1 = 13 - 12 \cdot 1 = 13 - (25 - 13 \cdot 1) \cdot 1$$

$$= 13 \cdot 2 + 25 \cdot (-1).$$

$$\therefore 9 = 13 \cdot 18 + 25 \cdot (-9).$$

Now $13x \equiv 9 \pmod{25}$ is equivalent to

$$13x \equiv 13 \cdot 18 + 25 \cdot (-9) \pmod{25}. \quad \dots(2)$$

But $0 \equiv 25 \cdot (-9) \pmod{25}.$

$$\dots(3)$$

Subtracting (3) from (2), we get

$$13x \equiv 13 \cdot 18 \pmod{25}$$

showing that $x=18$ is a solution.

Obviously 18 is the least positive integer in the residue class $\overline{18} \pmod{25}$. Hence $\overline{18} = \{25k + 18 : k \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ is the required solution.

Ex. 2. Solve the set of congruences :

$$x \equiv 1 \pmod{4}, x \equiv 0 \pmod{3}, x \equiv 5 \pmod{7}.$$

(Osmania 1988)

Sol. Since $(4, 3) = (3, 7) = (7, 4) = 1$, therefore the given set of three congruences has a common solution.

For the first congruence $x \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$, the complete solution is given by

$$x = 1 + 4t_1, t_1 \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

Substituting $x = 1 + 4t_1$ in the second congruence $x \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$, we have

$$1 + 4t_1 \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$$

$$\Rightarrow 4t_1 \equiv -1 \pmod{3}.$$

Adding with $0 \equiv 9 \pmod{3}$, we have

$$4t_1 \equiv 8 \pmod{3}$$

$$\Rightarrow t_1 \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$$

$$[\because (4, 3) = 1]$$

$$\Rightarrow t_1 = 2 + 3t_2, t_2 \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

$\therefore x = 1 + 4(2 + 3t_2) = 9 + 12t_2, t_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ is the complete common solution of the first two congruences.

Now substituting $x = 9 + 12t_2$ in the third congruence $x \equiv 5 \pmod{7}$, we have

$$9 + 12t_2 \equiv 5 \pmod{7}$$

$$\Rightarrow 12t_2 \equiv -4 \pmod{7}.$$

Adding with $0 \equiv 28 \pmod{7}$, we have

$$12t_2 \equiv 24 \pmod{7}$$

$$\Rightarrow t_2 \equiv 2 \pmod{7}$$

$$[\because (12, 7) = 1]$$

$$\Rightarrow t_2 = 2 + 7t, t \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

$\therefore x=9+12(2+7t)=33+84t, t \in \mathbb{Z}$
is the complete common solution of the three congruences.

Hence $x \equiv 33 \pmod{84}$ is the common solution of the given set of three congruences.

Ex. 3. Solve the following congruences :

- (i) $3x \equiv 1 \pmod{125}$. (Osmania 1991)
- (ii) $35x \equiv 14 \pmod{21}$.
- (iii) $13x \equiv 10 \pmod{28}$.
- (iv) $16x \equiv 25 \pmod{19}$.

Sol. (i) Comparing the given congruence with $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, we have $a=3, b=1, m=125$.

We have $(a, m) = (3, 125) = 1$. Therefore the given congruence has a unique solution modulo 125.

Now the given congruence is

$$3x \equiv 1 \pmod{125}.$$

Also $0 \equiv 125 \pmod{125}$.

Adding, we have $3x \equiv 126 \pmod{125}$

$$\Rightarrow x \equiv 42 \pmod{125} \quad [\because \vee(3, 125)=1]$$

Hence the required solution of the given congruence is $x \equiv 42 \pmod{125}$ i.e., $x=42+125t, t \in \mathbb{Z}$.

(ii) Comparing the given congruence with $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, we have $a=35, b=14, m=21$.

We have $(a, m) = (35, 21) = 7$ and 7 is a divisor of $b=14$. Therefore $35x \equiv 14 \pmod{21}$ has 7 incongruent solutions $\pmod{21}$.

Now $35x \equiv 14 \pmod{21}$ is equivalent to

$$7.5x \equiv 7.2 \pmod{7.3}$$

or $5x \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$. [See theorem 3 of § 20]

But $0 \equiv 3 \pmod{3}$.

Adding, we get $5x \equiv 5 \pmod{3}$

$$\Rightarrow x \equiv 1 \pmod{3} \quad [\because (5, 3)=1]$$

By substituting in the given congruence $35x \equiv 14 \pmod{21}$ we can see that $x=1$ is a solution.

By theorem 4 of § 20, the 7 incongruent solutions are given by $x \equiv 1+3t \pmod{21}$

where $t=0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$

i.e., $x \equiv 1, 4, 7, 10, 13, 16, 19 \pmod{21}$.

(iii) The given congruence is $13x \equiv 10 \pmod{28}$.

Here $a=13, b=10, m=28$.

We have $(a, m) = (13, 28) = 1$, so that the given congruence has a unique solution modulo 28.

We have $13x \equiv 10 \pmod{28}$.

Also $0 \equiv 28 \times 8 \pmod{28}$

i.e., $0 \equiv 224 \pmod{28}$.

Adding the two congruences, we get

$$13x \equiv 234 \pmod{28}$$

or $x \equiv 18 \pmod{28}$ [$\because (13, 28) = 1$]

Hence $x \equiv 18 \pmod{28}$ i.e., $x = 18 + 28t$, $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ is the required solution.

(iv) The given congruence is $16x \equiv 25 \pmod{19}$.

Comparing with $ax \equiv b \pmod{m}$, we have

$$a = 16, b = 25, m = 19.$$

Since $(a, m) = (16, 19) = 1$, therefore the given congruence has a unique solution modulo 19.

We have $16x \equiv 25 \pmod{19}$.

Also $0 \equiv 247 \pmod{19}$.

Adding the two congruences, we have

$$16x \equiv 272 \pmod{19}$$

or $x \equiv 17 \pmod{19}$ [$\because (16, 19) = 1$]

Hence $x \equiv 17 \pmod{19}$ i.e., $x = 17 + 19t$, where $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ is the required solution of the given congruence.

Exercises

1. If $ab \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ and p is prime, prove that $a \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ or $b \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.
2. If $ab \equiv ac \pmod{p}$ and $a \not\equiv 0 \pmod{p}$, where p is prime, then $b \equiv c \pmod{p}$.
3. If $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$, then prove that $a^n \equiv b^n \pmod{m}$ for every positive integer n .
4. List all integers x in the range $1 \leq x \leq 100$ that satisfy $x \equiv 7 \pmod{17}$. What is the single congruence equivalent to the pair of congruences $x \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$, $x \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$?

(Osmania 1989)

5. Solve the following congruences :

(i) $8x \equiv 3 \pmod{27}$.

(ii) $259x \equiv 5 \pmod{11}$.

(iii) $11x \equiv 2 \pmod{317}$.

(iv) $15x \equiv 12 \pmod{21}$.

(Osmania 1990)

6. Solve the simultaneous congruences $x \equiv 2 \pmod{5}$ and $2x \equiv 1 \pmod{8}$.
7. Find the integers that give remainders 1, 2, 3 when divided by 3, 4, 5 respectively.
[Hint. Solve the simultaneous congruences $x \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$, $x \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$, $x \equiv 3 \pmod{5}$].

Answers

4. 7, 24, 41, 58, 75, 92; $x \equiv 5 \pmod{12}$.
5. (i) $x \equiv 24 \pmod{27}$ i.e., $x = 24 + 27k$, $k \in \mathbb{Z}$.
(ii) $x \equiv 10 \pmod{11}$ i.e., $x = 10 + 11k$, $k \in \mathbb{Z}$.
(iii) $x \equiv 29 \pmod{317}$ i.e., $x = 29 + 317k$, $k \in \mathbb{Z}$.
(iv) $x \equiv 5 + 4t \pmod{21}$ where $t = 0, 1, 2$.
6. No solution. 7. $60t - 2$ where $t \in \mathbb{Z}$.

§ 21. Euler's ϕ -function.

Definition. The Euler ϕ -function is the function $\phi : \mathbb{Z}^+ \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^+$ defined as follows :

- (i) $\phi(1) = 1$ and
- (ii) for $n (> 1) \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, $\phi(n)$ = the number of positive integers less than n and relatively prime to n . (Osmania 1988, 90)

Illustrations.

1. Let $n=2$. The only positive integer less than 2 and relatively prime to 2 is 1. So $\phi(2)=1$.
2. Let $n=3$. The only positive integers less than 3 and relatively prime to 3 are 1 and 2. Their number is 2 and so $\phi(3)=2$.
3. Let $n=8$. The only positive integers less than 8 and relatively prime to 8 are 1, 3, 5 and 7. Their number is 4 and so $\phi(8)=4$.
4. If p is a positive prime, then obviously $\phi(p)=p-1$ because each of the integers 1, 2, ..., $p-1$ is relatively prime to p .

Thus for each positive integer m , $\phi(m)$ = the number of integers in the set $\mathbb{Z}_m = \{0, 1, \dots, m-1\}$ that are relatively prime to m .

In other words $\phi(m)$ is equal to the number of residue classes modulo m that are prime to m . So for each positive integer m , the number of elements in the reduced set of residues modulo m is equal to $\phi(m)$. Also we know that an integer a has an inverse modulo m iff $(a, m) = 1$. Therefore the number of least positive residues modulo m that have inverses modulo m is equal to $\phi(m)$.

For example, take $m=12$.

Then $Z_{12} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 11\}$ is the complete set of residues modulo 12.

The positive integers less than 12 and relatively prime to 12 are 1, 5, 7 and 11. Their number is 4 and so $\phi(12) = 4$.

The set $S = \{1, 5, 7, 11\}$ is a reduced set of residues modulo 12 and the number of elements in this set is equal to $\phi(12)$.

Theorem 1. *If $(a, m) = 1$ and the numbers $a, 2a, 3a, \dots, (m-1)a$ are divided by m , then the remainders are $1, 2, 3, \dots, m-1$, though not necessarily in the same order.*

Proof. Let $S = \{a, 2a, 3a, \dots, (m-1)a\}$. First we shall show that no two distinct members of S can leave the same remainder when divided by m .

Suppose $k_1a, k_2a \in S$ leave the same remainder r when divided by m . Here $1 \leq k_1 \leq m-1$, $1 \leq k_2 \leq m-1$ and say $k_1 > k_2$.

Then $k_1a = q_1m + r$ and $k_2a = q_2m + r$ where $q_1, q_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $0 \leq r < m$.

$$\therefore k_1a - k_2a = q_1m - q_2m$$

$$\Rightarrow (k_1 - k_2)a = (q_1 - q_2)m$$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid (k_1 - k_2)a$$

$$\Rightarrow m \mid (k_1 - k_2). \quad [\because (a, m) = 1]$$

But this is not possible because $1 \leq k_1 \leq m-1$, $1 \leq k_2 \leq m-1$ and $k_1 > k_2 \Rightarrow 0 < k_1 - k_2 < m$ and so m cannot be a divisor of $k_1 - k_2$.

\therefore the remainders are all different.

Also since $(a, m) = 1$, m is not a divisor of any member of S and hence no remainder is 0.

Therefore, the remainders are $1, 2, \dots, m-1$ though not necessarily in the same order.

Corollary. If $(a, m) = 1$, $c \in \mathbb{Z}$ and the m numbers of the $c+a, c+2a, \dots, c+(m-1)a$ are divided by m , then the rems are $0, 1, 2, \dots, m-1$, though not necessarily in the same order

Theorem 2. *If m and n are relatively prime positive integers i.e., $(m, n) = 1$, then*

$$\phi(mn) = \phi(m) \cdot \phi(n). \quad (\text{Andhra 1989; Osmania 88})$$

Proof. In order to find the number of positive integers less than mn and relatively prime to mn , we arrange the integers

1, 2, 3, ..., mn in a rectangular array having n rows and m columns in the following manner :

1	2	...	k	...	m
$m+1$	$m+2$	...	$m+k$	...	$2m$
$2m+1$	$2m+2$	...	$2m+k$	...	$3m$
.....
.....
$(n-1)m+1$	$(n-1)m+2$	...	$(n-1)m+k$	...	nm

In the above arrangement of integers, we have to find the integers a such that $1 \leq a < mn$ and $(a, mn)=1$.

But we know that if $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, then $(a, mn)=1$ iff $(a, m)=1$ and $(a, n)=1$.

\therefore in the above arrangement of integers, we have to find the integers a such that

$$1 \leq a < mn \text{ and } (a, m)=1 \text{ as well as } (a, n)=1.$$

For, this, we first consider the m columns that begin with 1, 2, ..., k , ..., m .

If b is any integer, then we know that

$$(m, k)=1 \text{ iff } (m, bm+k)=1.$$

\therefore if the first term of a column is relatively prime to m , then every other term of that column is also relatively prime to m .

But the number of integers among 1, 2, ..., m that are relatively prime to m is $\phi(m)$. Therefore there are $\phi(m)$ columns in each of which every integer is relatively prime to m .

Now we have to find the number of integers in these $\phi(m)$ columns that are also relatively prime to n .

Out of these $\phi(m)$ columns let us consider the column that begins with k . The terms in this column are

$$k, m+k, 2m+k, \dots, (n-1)m+k$$

which are n in number. These n integers when divided by n yield remainders 0, 1, 2, ..., $n-1$, though not necessarily in this order.

If r is the remainder when $bm+k$ is divided by n , then

$$bm+k=nq+r, \text{ where } q \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } 0 \leq r < n.$$

$$\text{Now } (bm+k, n)=(nq+r, n)=(r, n).$$

$$\therefore (bm+k, n)=1 \text{ iff } (r, n)=1.$$

But the number of positive integers among the n remainders 0, 1, 2, ..., $n-1$ that are relatively prime to n is $\phi(n)$. Therefore

the number of integers in the k th column that are relatively prime to n is $\phi(n)$.

This is true for each of the $\phi(m)$ columns. Hence each of the $\phi(m)$ columns in which every term is relatively prime to m contains $\phi(n)$ integers which are also relatively prime to n .

Thus in the whole arrangement there are $\phi(m) \cdot \phi(n)$ integers that are relatively prime to m as well as to n and consequently relatively prime to mn .

$$\therefore \phi(mn) = \phi(m) \phi(n).$$

Corollary. If m_1, m_2, \dots, m_r are r positive integers which are relatively prime to each other in pairs, then

$$\phi(m_1 \cdot m_2 \cdot \dots \cdot m_r) = \phi(m_1) \cdot \phi(m_2) \cdot \dots \cdot \phi(m_r).$$

Note. The formula $\phi(mn) = \phi(m) \cdot \phi(n)$ is applicable only when $(m, n) = 1$.

For example, we have $\phi(20) = 8$ because 1, 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17, 19 are the only eight positive integers which are less than 20 and relatively prime to 20.

Now $20 = 10 \cdot 2$ and 10 and 2 are not relatively prime. We have $\phi(10) = 4$ and $\phi(2) = 1$. Thus we see that

$$\phi(20) = \phi(10 \cdot 2) \neq \phi(10) \cdot \phi(2).$$

Also we can write $20 = 4 \cdot 5$ and 4 and 5 are relatively prime. We have $\phi(4) = 2$ and $\phi(5) = 4$. Thus we see that $\phi(20) = \phi(4 \cdot 5) = \phi(4) \cdot \phi(5)$ is true.

Theorem 3. If p is a positive prime, then

$$\phi(p^n) = p^n - p^{n-1} = p^n \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right)$$

for every positive integer n .

Proof. To find $\phi(p^n)$ we have to find the number of positive integers that are less than p^n and relatively prime to p^n .

The set S of positive integers less than p^n contains $p^n - 1$ elements.

Since for every integer a ,

$$(a, p^n) = 1 \Leftrightarrow (a, p) = 1 \text{ or } (a, p^n) \neq 1 \Leftrightarrow (a, p) \neq 1,$$

therefore the positive integers in S that are not relatively prime to p^n are only those which are multiples of p .

Now the integers in S which are multiples of p are

$$p, 2p, \dots, (p-1)p, pp, (p+1)p, \dots, (p^{n-1}-1)p.$$

\therefore the number of positive integers in S that are not relatively prime to $p^n = p^{n-1} - 1$.

Hence $\phi(p^n) = (p^n - 1) - (p^{n-1} - 1) = p^n - p^{n-1}$

$$= p^n \left(1 - \frac{1}{p}\right).$$

Illustration. Since 2 is a prime, therefore by the above theorem

$$\phi(2^n) = 2^n - 2^{n-1} = 2^{n-1} (2 - 1) = 2^{n-1}.$$

As a particular case, $\phi(16) = \phi(2^4) = 2^4 - 2^3 = 2^3 (2 - 1) = 8$.

Corollary. If p is a positive prime and n is any positive integer, then

$$\phi(1) + \phi(p) + \phi(p^2) + \dots + \phi(p^{n-1}) + \phi(p^n) = p^n.$$

Proof. We have $\phi(1) = 1$,

$$\phi(p) = p^1 - p^0 = p - 1,$$

$$[\because \phi(p^n) = p^n - p^{n-1}]$$

$$\phi(p^2) = p^2 - p,$$

$$\phi(p^3) = p^3 - p^2,$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$\phi(p^{n-1}) = p^{n-1} - p^{n-2}$$

and

$$\phi(p^n) = p^n - p^{n-1}.$$

Adding the above relations, we get

$$\phi(1) + \phi(p) + \phi(p^2) + \dots + \phi(p^n) = p^n.$$

Theorem 4. If $n > 1$ and p_1, p_2, \dots, p_m are the distinct prime factors of n , then

$$\phi(n) = n \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_2}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_m}\right).$$

Proof. By fundamental theorem of arithmetic, we have

$n = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_m^{\alpha_m}$, where $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ are positive integers.

Since p_1, p_2, \dots, p_m are relatively prime to each other in pairs, therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(n) &= \phi(p_1^{\alpha_1}) \cdot \phi(p_2^{\alpha_2}) \dots \phi(p_m^{\alpha_m}) \\ &= p_1^{\alpha_1} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_1}\right) \cdot p_2^{\alpha_2} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_2}\right) \dots p_m^{\alpha_m} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_m}\right) \\ &= p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_m^{\alpha_m} \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_2}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_m}\right) \\ &= n \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_1}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_2}\right) \dots \left(1 - \frac{1}{p_m}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Example. Find the number of positive integers < 3600 that are relatively prime to 3600. (Osman'a 1990)

Sol. We have to find $\phi(3600)$.

We shall first express 3600 in canonical form.

We have $3600 = 2^4 \times 3^2 \times 5^2$.

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \phi(3600) &= \phi(2^4 \times 3^2 \times 5^2) = \phi(2^4) \cdot \phi(3^2) \cdot \phi(5^2) \\ &= 2^4 \left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \cdot 3^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \cdot 5^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \\ &= 2^4 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^2 \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{5}\right) \\ &= 3600 \cdot \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{4}{5} = 960.\end{aligned}$$

Theorem 5. If d_1, d_2, \dots, d_r be the distinct positive divisors of a positive integer n , then

$$\phi(d_1) + \phi(d_2) + \dots + \phi(d_r) = n.$$

Proof. If $n=1$, then 1 is the only positive divisor of 1 and we have

$$\phi(1) = 1.$$

Thus the result is true for $n=1$.

Now let $n > 1$. Then by fundamental theorem of arithmetic, on being expressed in canonical form, we have

$$n = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_m^{\alpha_m}.$$

Any positive divisor d of n is of the form $p_1^{\beta_1} p_2^{\beta_2} \dots p_m^{\beta_m}$ where

$$0 \leq \beta_1 \leq \alpha_1, 0 \leq \beta_2 \leq \alpha_2, \dots, 0 \leq \beta_m \leq \alpha_m.$$

Consider the product

$$\begin{aligned}P &= [1 + \phi(p_1) + \phi(p_1^2) + \dots + \phi(p_1^{\alpha_1})] [1 + \phi(p_2) + \phi(p_2^2) + \dots \\ &\quad + \phi(p_2^{\alpha_2})] \\ &\quad \dots [1 + \phi(p_m) + \phi(p_m^2) + \dots + \phi(p_m^{\alpha_m})].\end{aligned}$$

General term in the product P

$$\begin{aligned}&= \phi(p_1^{\beta_1}) \cdot \phi(p_2^{\beta_2}) \dots \phi(p_m^{\beta_m}) \\ &= \phi(p_1^{\beta_1} \cdot p_2^{\beta_2} \dots p_m^{\beta_m}) = \phi(d).\end{aligned}$$

Thus if d is any positive divisor of n , then $\phi(d)$ is equal to the value of one and only one term in the product P .

\therefore If d_1, d_2, \dots, d_r be the positive distinct divisors of n , then

$$\begin{aligned}\Sigma \phi(d) &= \phi(d_1) + \phi(d_2) + \dots + \phi(d_r) \\ &= \text{sum of all the terms in the product } P \\ &= P.\end{aligned}$$

But by corollary to theorem 3,

$$1 + \phi(p_1) + \phi(p_1^2) + \dots + \phi(p_1^{\alpha_1}) = p_1^{\alpha_1}, \text{ etc.}$$

$$\therefore \Sigma \phi(d) = P = p_1^{\alpha_1} p_2^{\alpha_2} \dots p_m^{\alpha_m} = n.$$

Theorem 6. If $n > 1$, the sum of all positive integers which are less than n and prime to n is $\frac{1}{2}n\phi(n)$.

Proof. Let x be any positive integer less than n and prime to n i.e., $1 \leq x < n$ and $(x, n) = 1$.

Then $1 \leq n - x < n$ and $(n - x, n) = 1$.

[Note that $(a, b) = 1 \Rightarrow (b - a, b) = 1$]

Let $1, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, n-1$ be the $\phi(n)$ positive integers which are less than n and prime to n and S be their sum.

We have

$$S = 1 + a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + \dots + (n - a_2) + (n - a_1) + (n - 1). \quad \dots(1)$$

Writing the terms in the sum S in the reverse order, we have

$$S = (n - 1) + (n - a_1) + (n - a_2) + \dots + a_2 + a_1 + 1. \quad \dots(2)$$

Adding (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} 2S &= [1 + (n - 1)] + [a_1 + (n - a_1)] + [a_2 + (n - a_2)] \\ &\quad + \dots \text{upto } \phi(n) \text{ terms} \\ &= n + n + n + \dots \text{upto } \phi(n) \text{ terms} \\ &= n \cdot \phi(n). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore S = \frac{1}{2}n \cdot \phi(n).$$

Theorem 7. Fermat's theorem. If p is a positive prime and a is any integer such that p is not a divisor of a so that $(a, p) = 1$, then $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$.

(Nagarjuna 1989, 90; Osmania 91)

Proof. Since $(a, p) = 1$, therefore if the numbers $a, 2a, 3a, \dots, (p-1)a$ are divided by p , the remainders are $1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1$, though not necessarily in this order.

Let r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{p-1} be the remainders obtained on dividing $a, 2a, \dots, (p-1)a$ respectively by p . Then as mentioned above r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{p-1} are precisely $1, 2, \dots, p-1$ placed in some order so that

$$\text{the product } r_1 r_2 \dots r_{p-1} = \text{the product } 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \dots (p-1). \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{Now } a \equiv r_1 \pmod{p},$$

$$2a \equiv r_2 \pmod{p},$$

$$\dots\dots\dots$$

$$\dots\dots\dots$$

$$(p-1)a \equiv r_{p-1} \pmod{p}.$$

Multiplying these congruence relations, we have

$$a \cdot 2a \cdot 3a \dots (p-1)a \equiv r_1 r_2 r_3 \dots r_{p-1} \pmod{p}$$

$$\text{or } 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \dots (p-1) a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \dots (p-1) \pmod{p}, \text{ using (1)}$$

$$\text{or } (p-1)! a^{p-1} \equiv (p-1)! \pmod{p}. \quad \dots(2)$$

Since p is prime, therefore

$$(p, 1)=1, (p, 2)=1, \dots, (p, p-1)=1,$$

and hence $(p, (p-1)!) = 1$. Therefore cancelling $(p-1)!$ from both sides of the congruence relation (2), we have

$$a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$$

or

$$p \mid (a^{p-1} - 1) \text{ or } a^{p-1} - 1 = M(p).$$

Corollary. *If p is a positive prime and a is any integer, then $a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}$ i.e., $a^p - a$ is a multiple of p .*

(O.U.A. 88)

Proof. **Case I.** Let $(a, p) \neq 1$.

Then $p \mid a$ and so $p \mid a^p$.

$\therefore p \mid (a^p - a)$ or $a^p - a$ is a multiple of p .

Hence $a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}$.

Case II. Let $(a, p) = 1$. Then by Fermat's theorem,

$$a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

$\therefore a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}$ or $a^p - a$ is a multiple of p .

This completes the proof.

As mentioned earlier, if m is a fixed positive integer, then the number of elements in every reduced set of residues modulo m is equal to $\phi(m)$.

Therefore a set of integers $\{r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{\phi(m)}\}$ is a reduced set of residues modulo m if exactly one of them lies in each residue class relatively prime to m .

Theorem 8. *If $\{r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{\phi(m)}\}$ is a reduced set of residues modulo m , and $(a, m) = 1$, then $\{ar_1, ar_2, \dots, ar_{\phi(m)}\}$ is also a reduced set of residues modulo m .*

Proof. The number of elements in the set

$$S = \{ar_1, ar_2, \dots, ar_{\phi(m)}\} \text{ is } \phi(m).$$

Since $\{r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{\phi(m)}\}$ is a reduced set of residues modulo m , therefore each r_i ($i=1, 2, \dots, \phi(m)$) is relatively prime to m i.e., $(r_i, m) = 1$ for $i=1, 2, \dots, \phi(m)$.

Now $(a, m) = 1$ and $(r_i, m) = 1 \Rightarrow (ar_i, m) = 1$ for each

$$i=1, 2, \dots, \phi(m).$$

Thus each ar_i , $i=1, 2, \dots, \phi(m)$, is relatively prime to m . Therefore the set $S = \{ar_1, ar_2, \dots, ar_{\phi(m)}\}$ will be a reduced set of residues modulo m if no two of its distinct elements are congruent modulo m .

If possible let ar_i and ar_j be two distinct elements of the set S such that

$$ar_i \equiv ar_j \pmod{m}.$$

Then $r_i \equiv r_j \pmod{m}$, because $(a, m) = 1$. But this is not possible because r_i, r_j are two distinct members of a reduced set of residues modulo m .

\therefore no two distinct elements ar_i, ar_j of the set S are congruent modulo m .

Hence the set $S = \{ar_1, ar_2, \dots, ar_{\phi(m)}\}$ is also a reduced set of residues modulo m .

Theorem 9. Euler's theorem. *If m is a positive integer and a is any integer such that $(a, m) = 1$, then $a^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$.*

(Nagarjuna 1989, Andhra 89, 90)

Proof. Let $\{r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{\phi(m)}\}$ be a reduced set of residues modulo m .

Since $(a, m) = 1$, therefore $\{ar_1, ar_2, \dots, ar_{\phi(m)}\}$ is also a reduced set of residues modulo m and consequently each ar_i is congruent modulo m to one and only one r_j .

Let $ar_1 \equiv x_1 \pmod{m}$,

$ar_2 \equiv x_2 \pmod{m}$,

$\dots \dots \dots$

$\dots \dots \dots$

$ar_{\phi(m)} \equiv x_{\phi(m)} \pmod{m}$.

Then $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{\phi(m)}$ are precisely $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_{\phi(m)}$ placed in some order so that

the product $x_1 x_2 \dots x_{\phi(m)} = \text{the product } r_1 r_2 \dots r_{\phi(m)}$(1)

Multiplying the above congruences, we have

$ar_1 \cdot ar_2 \dots ar_{\phi(m)} \equiv x_1 \cdot x_2 \dots x_{\phi(m)} \pmod{m}$

or $r_1 r_2 \dots r_{\phi(m)} a^{\phi(m)} \equiv r_1 r_2 \dots r_{\phi(m)} \pmod{m}$, using (1). ...(2)

Since each r_i ($i = 1, 2, \dots, \phi(m)$) is relatively prime to m , therefore their product $r_1 r_2 \dots r_{\phi(m)}$ is also relatively prime to m . So cancelling $r_1 r_2 \dots r_{\phi(m)}$ from both sides of the congruence relation (2), we get

$$a^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}.$$

Corollary. *Fermat's theorem as a corollary of Euler's theorem.*

If in Euler's theorem, we take $m = p$ where p is a prime, then $\phi(m) = \phi(p) = p - 1$.

\therefore the result $a^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$ takes the form $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$, which is Fermat's theorem.

Some examples to illustrate the use of Euler's and Fermat's theorems.

1. If $m=12$, then $\phi(m)=\phi(12)=4$. Since each of 1, 5, 7 and 11 is relatively prime to 12, therefore by Euler's theorem

$$1 \equiv 1^4 \equiv 5^4 \equiv 7^4 \equiv 11^4 \pmod{12}.$$

2. Suppose we are required to determine the remainder if 8^{103} is divided by 103.

Since 103 is a prime, therefore by Fermat's theorem

$$8^{103} \equiv 8 \pmod{103}.$$

Hence if we divide 8^{103} by 103, the remainder will be 8.

Theorem 10. Wilson's Theorem.

If p is a positive prime, then

$(p-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ i.e., $(p-1)! + 1$ is a multiple of p .

(Kakatiya 1989; Osmania 89; Nagarjuna 90)

Proof. Case I. If $p=2$, then $(p-1)! = 1$ and so the statement $1+1$ i.e., $2 \equiv 0 \pmod{2}$ is true.

Case II. Let $p > 2$.

Let a be a positive integer such that $1 \leq a \leq p-1$.

Since p is a prime, therefore a and p are relatively prime i.e.,
 $(a, p) = 1$.

Since $(a, p) = 1$, therefore the linear congruence $ax \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ has a unique solution modulo p i.e., there exists a unique integer say b , such that $1 \leq b \leq p-1$ and

$$ab \equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

[Note that $b \neq 0$ because 0 does not satisfy $ax \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$].

These integers a and b are inverses modulo p of each other.

Suppose that $b=a$ i.e., inverse modulo p of a is a itself.

Then $a^2 \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$

$$\Leftrightarrow p \mid (a^2 - 1) \Leftrightarrow p \mid (a-1)(a+1)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow p \mid (a-1) \text{ or } p \mid (a+1).$$

[$\because p$ is a prime]

Since $1 \leq a \leq p-1$, therefore $p \mid (a-1)$ is possible iff $a=1$ and $p \mid (a+1)$ is possible iff $a=p-1$.

Thus $b=a$ (i.e., inverse modulo p of a is a itself) iff

$$a=1 \text{ or } a=p-1.$$

\therefore if $a \neq 1$ and $a \neq p-1$, then $b \neq a$

and also b cannot be 1 or $p-1$ because inverses modulo p of 1 and $p-1$ are 1 and $p-1$ themselves.

Thus for each $a \in$ the set $S = \{2, 3, \dots, p-2\}$, there exists a unique $b \in S$ such that

$$ab \equiv 1 \pmod{p} \text{ and } b \neq a.$$

\therefore the $p-3$ elements in the set S form $\frac{1}{2}(p-3)$ pairs of distinct elements of S such that the product of each pair is congruent modulo p to 1.

Multiplying the $\frac{1}{2}(p-3)$ congruences thus obtained, we get

$$2.3.....(p-2) \equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

$$\therefore 1.2.3...(p-2)(p-1) \equiv p-1 \pmod{p}$$

$$\text{or } (p-1)! \equiv p-1 \pmod{p}$$

$$\text{or } (p-1)! + 1 \equiv p \pmod{p}$$

$$\text{or } (p-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$[\because p \equiv 0 \pmod{p}]$$

$$\text{or } p \text{ is a divisor of } (p-1)! + 1$$

$$\text{or } (p-1)! + 1 \text{ is a multiple of } p.$$

This completes the proof of Wilson's theorem.

Note. The converse of Wilson's theorem is also true i.e., if $(p-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$, then p must be a prime. (Osmania 1990)

Proof. Let a positive integer $d < p$ be a divisor of p .

Then $d \in$ the set $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1\}$.

$$\therefore d \mid (p-1)!$$

$$\text{But } (p-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p} \quad (\text{given})$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid \{(p-1)! + 1\}.$$

$$\text{Now } d \mid p \text{ and } p \mid (p-1)! + 1 \Rightarrow d \mid (p-1)! + 1.$$

$$\text{From (1) and (2), we have } d \mid 1 \text{ and hence } d=1.$$

Thus 1 is the only positive integer less than p which is a divisor of p . Therefore p must be a prime.

Theorem 11. Lagrange's theorem.

If p is a positive prime and a is a positive integer $< p-1$, then the sum of the products of the numbers $1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1$, taken a at a time, is divisible by p .

$$\text{Proof. Let } f(x) = (x+1)(x+2)(x+3)\dots(x+p-1). \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\text{Then } f(x) = x^{p-1} + S_1x^{p-2} + S_2x^{p-3} + \dots + S_{p-2}x + S_{p-1}, \quad \dots(2)$$

where S_r is the sum of the products of the numbers $1, 2, 3, \dots, p-1$ taken r at a time.

From (1), replacing x by $x+1$, we have

$$f(x+1) = (x+2)(x+3)\dots(x+p-1)(x+p).$$

$$\therefore (x+1)f(x+1) = (x+1)(x+2)(x+3)\dots(x+p-1)(x+p) \\ = (x+p)f(x). \quad \dots(3)$$

Substituting for $f(x)$ and $f(x+1)$ from (2) in (3), we have the following identity in x :

$$(x+1) [(x+1)^{p-1} + S_1 (x+1)^{p-2} + \dots + S_{p-2} (x+1) + S_{p-1}] \\ = (x+p) [x^{p-1} + S_1 x^{p-2} + \dots + S_{p-2} x + S_{p-1}]$$

$$\text{i.e., } [(x+1)^p + S_1 (x+1)^{p-1} + \dots + S_{p-2} (x+1)^2 + S_{p-1} (x+1)] \\ = (x+p) [x^p + S_1 x^{p-1} + \dots + S_{p-2} x + S_{p-1}] \quad \dots (4)$$

Equating the coefficients of $x^{p-2}, x^{p-3}, \dots, x$ on both sides of the identity (4), we get

$${}^p c_2 + S_1 \cdot {}^{p-1} c_1 + S_2 = p S_1 + S_2 \text{ i.e., } {}^p c_2 + S_1 \cdot {}^{p-1} c_1 = p S_1 \quad \dots (5)$$

$${}^p c_3 + S_1 \cdot {}^{p-1} c_2 + S_2 \cdot {}^{p-2} c_1 = p S_2 \quad \dots (6)$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$$\dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$$

$${}^p c_{p-1} + S_1 \cdot {}^{p-1} c_{p-2} + \dots + S_{p-2} \cdot {}^2 c_1 = p S_{p-2}.$$

$$\text{Now } p \mid p S_1, p \mid {}^p c_2 \Rightarrow p \mid S_1 \cdot {}^{p-1} c_1, \quad \text{using (5)}$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid S_1, \text{ since } ({}^{p-1} c_1, p) = 1.$$

$$\text{Again } p \mid p S_2, p \mid {}^p c_3, p \mid S_1 \cdot {}^{p-1} c_2 \Rightarrow p \mid S_2 \cdot {}^{p-2} c_1, \text{ using (6)}$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid S_2, \text{ because } {}^{p-2} c_1 \text{ and } p \text{ are relatively prime.}$$

Proceeding in the same way, we can show that $p \mid S_3, p \mid S_4, \dots, p \mid S_{p-2}$.

\therefore if $a = 1, 2, \dots, p-2$, then p divides S_a , where S_a denotes the sum of the products of the numbers $1, 2, \dots, p-1$ taken a at a time.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

Note. An alternative proof of Wilson's theorem.

Equating the constant terms on both sides of the identity (4) above, we have

$$1 + S_1 + S_2 + \dots + S_{p-1} = p S_{p-1}$$

$$\text{i.e., } p S_{p-1} - S_{p-1} = 1 + S_1 + S_2 + \dots + S_{p-2}$$

$$\text{i.e., } (p-1) S_{p-1} = 1 + S_1 + S_2 + \dots + S_{p-2}$$

$$\text{i.e., } (p-1) S_{p-1} - 1 = S_1 + S_2 + \dots + S_{p-2}.$$

But as shown in the proof of Lagrange's theorem, we have

$$p \mid S_1, p \mid S_2, \dots, p \mid S_{p-2} \text{ and hence } p \mid (S_1 + S_2 + \dots + S_{p-2}).$$

$$\therefore p \mid \{(p-1) S_{p-1} - 1\}$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid (p S_{p-1} - S_{p-1} - 1)$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid -(S_{p-1} + 1) \quad [\because p \mid p S_{p-1}]$$

$$\Rightarrow p \mid S_{p-1} + 1$$

$$\Rightarrow S_{p-1} + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow (p-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}, \quad [\because S_{p-1} = (p-1)!]$$

which is Wilson's theorem.

Solved Examples

Ex. 1. If p is a prime and $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, then prove that
 $(a+b)^p \equiv a^p + b^p \pmod{p}$.

Sol. Since p is a prime, therefore by Fermat's theorem,

$$a^p \equiv a \pmod{p} \quad \dots(1)$$

$$b^p \equiv b \pmod{p} \quad \dots(2)$$

and $(a+b)^p \equiv a+b \pmod{p} \quad \dots(3)$

Adding the congruences (1) and (2), we have

$$a^p + b^p \equiv a + b \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow a + b \equiv a^p + b^p \pmod{p}, \quad \dots(4)$$

by the symmetric property of the congruence relation.

Now by the transitive property of the congruence relation, we have from (3) and (4),

$$(a+b)^p \equiv a^p + b^p \pmod{p}$$

i.e., $p \mid \{(a+b)^p - (a^p + b^p)\}$

i.e., $(a+b)^p - (a^p + b^p) = M(p)$.

Ex. 2. Prove that $n^5 - n$ is divisible by 30. (O.U.A. 1988)

Sol. Since 5 is a prime, therefore by Fermat's theorem, we have

$$n^5 \equiv n \pmod{5}$$

i.e., $5 \mid (n^5 - n) \quad \dots(1)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } n^5 - n &= n(n^4 - 1) = n(n^2 - 1)(n^2 + 1) \\ &= (n-1)n(n+1)(n^2 + 1). \end{aligned}$$

Now $(n-1)n(n+1)$ is a product of three consecutive integers and so it is divisible by $3!$ i.e., 6.

Thus $6 \mid (n^5 - n) \quad \dots(2)$

Since $(5, 6) = 1$ i.e., 5 and 6 are relatively prime, therefore from (1) and (2), we have

$$(5 \cdot 6) \mid (n^5 - n)$$

$$\Rightarrow 30 \mid (n^5 - n).$$

Note that if $a \mid m$, $b \mid m$ and $(a, b) = 1$, then $ab \mid m$.

Ex. 3. Prove that the 8^{th} power of any number is of the form $17n$ or $17n \pm 1$, where n is an integer. (O.U.A. 1988)

Sol. Let x be any integer.

If 17 is a divisor of x , then $x = 17q$ where $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ and hence $x^8 = 17n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

If 17 is not a divisor of x , then since 17 is a prime, we have $(17, x) = 1$. Therefore by Fermat's theorem,

$$x^{17-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{17}$$

$$\Rightarrow x^{16} - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{17}$$

$$\Rightarrow (x^8 - 1)(x^8 + 1) \equiv 0 \pmod{17}$$

$$\Rightarrow 17 \mid (x^8 - 1)(x^8 + 1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 17 \mid (x^8 - 1) \text{ or } 17 \mid (x^8 + 1), \text{ since } 17 \text{ is a prime.}$$

Now $17 \mid (x^8 - 1) \Rightarrow x^8 - 1$ is a multiple of 17.

$$\Rightarrow x^8 - 1 = 17n, \text{ where } n \text{ is some integer}$$

$$\Rightarrow x^8 = 17n + 1.$$

Again $17 \mid (x^8 + 1) \Rightarrow x^8 + 1$ is a multiple of 17

$$\Rightarrow x^8 + 1 = 17n, \text{ where } n \text{ is some integer}$$

$$\Rightarrow x^8 = 17n - 1.$$

Thus if $x \in \mathbb{Z}$, then x^8 is of the form $17n$ or $17n \pm 1$, where n is an integer.

Ex. 4. If m, n are primes, then show that $m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1$ is a multiple of mn . (Nagarjuna 1988)

Sol. We have $m \mid m^{n-1}$.

...(1)

Since m and n are primes, therefore $(m, n) = 1$. So by Fermat's theorem

$$n^{m-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{m} \text{ i.e., } m \mid (n^{m-1} - 1). \quad \dots(2)$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$m \mid (m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1). \quad \dots(3)$$

Again $n \mid n^{m-1}$. Also by Fermat's theorem

$$m^{n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{n} \text{ i.e., } n \mid (m^{n-1} - 1).$$

$$\therefore n \mid (n^{m-1} + m^{n-1} - 1). \quad \dots(4)$$

From (3) and (4), $m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{m}$

$$\text{and } m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{n}.$$

$$\therefore m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{\text{L.C.M. of } m \text{ and } n} \\ \equiv 0 \pmod{mn}.$$

Thus $mn \mid (m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1)$. Hence $m^{n-1} + n^{m-1} - 1$ is a multiple of mn .

Ex. 5. Show that $16! + 86$ is divisible by 323.

(Osmania 1988)

Sol. We have $323 = 17 \times 19$ where both 17 and 19 are primes.

Since 17 is a prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem

$$(17-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{17}$$

$$\Rightarrow 16! + 86 - 85 \equiv 0 \pmod{17}$$

$$\Rightarrow 16! + 86 \equiv 0 \pmod{17}. \quad \dots(1)$$

$$[\because 85 \equiv 0 \pmod{17}]$$

Again 19 is a prime, so by Wilson's theorem

$$\begin{aligned}
 (19-1)! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow 18! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow [(19-1)(19-2)] \cdot 16! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow (19^2 - 3 \times 19 + 2) \cdot 16! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow (19^2 - 3 \times 19) \cdot 16! + 2(16!) + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow 2(16!) + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \quad \dots(2) \\
 [\because (19^2 - 3 \times 19) \cdot 16! &\equiv 0 \pmod{19}]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Also} \quad 17! \equiv 0 \pmod{19} \quad \dots(3)$$

Adding the congruences (2) and (3), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 2(16!) + 172 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow 16! + 86 &\equiv 0 \pmod{19} \quad \dots(4) \\
 &\text{cancelling 2 because } (2, 19) = 1.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus from (1) and (4), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 16! + 86 &\equiv 0 \pmod{17} \text{ and } 16! + 86 \equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\
 \Rightarrow 16! + 86 &\equiv 0 \pmod{\text{L.C.M. of 17 and 19}} \\
 \Rightarrow 16! + 86 &\equiv 0 \pmod{17 \times 19} \\
 \Rightarrow 16! + 86 &\equiv 0 \pmod{323}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 6. If p is a prime, then prove that $n^p \equiv n \pmod{p}$ for every integer n . (O.U.A. 1988)

Sol. This solution will provide as an independent proof of Fermat's theorem.

Case 1. Let n be a positive integer.

We shall prove by mathematical induction that $n^p \equiv n \pmod{p}$ for every +ive integer n .

First we see that the result is true for $n=1$ because

$$1^p = 1 \equiv 1 \pmod{p} \text{ because } p \mid (1-1) \text{ i.e., } p \mid 0.$$

Now suppose the result is true for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$ i.e., for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n^p \equiv n \pmod{p}$ (1)

Then we shall show that it is also true for $n+1 \in \mathbb{N}$.

By binomial theorem,

$$\begin{aligned}
 (n+1)^p &= n^p + {}^pC_1 \cdot n^{p-1} + {}^pC_2 \cdot n^{p-2} + \dots + {}^pC_{p-1} \cdot n + 1 \\
 &= n^p + 1 + \sum_{r=1}^{p-1} {}^pC_r \cdot n^{p-r}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since p is prime and $r < p$, therefore pC_r is a multiple of p , for $r=1, 2, \dots, p-1$. [For proof see theorem 1 of § 17.]

$\therefore (n+1)^p = n^p + 1 + M(p)$, where $M(p)$ stands for multiple of p

$$\text{or } (n+1)^p - n^p = 1 + M(p)$$

$$\text{or } (n+1)^p - n^p \equiv 1 \pmod{p}. \quad \dots(2)$$

Adding the congruences (1) and (2), we have

$$(n+1)^p \equiv n+1 \pmod{p},$$

showing that the result is also true for $n+1$.

Hence by mathematical induction

$$n^p \equiv n \pmod{p} \text{ for every } n \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$$

Case 2. If $n=0$, the result is obviously true because $0^p = 0 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$.

Case 3. Let n be a negative integer. Then there exists a positive integer λ such that

$$\lambda \equiv n \pmod{p}. \quad \dots(3)$$

$$\text{Now by case 1, } \lambda^p \equiv \lambda \pmod{p}. \quad \dots(4)$$

$$\therefore \lambda^p \equiv n \pmod{p}, \text{ from (4) and (3).}$$

$$\text{But } \lambda \equiv n \pmod{p} \Rightarrow \lambda^p \equiv n^p \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow n^p \equiv \lambda^p \pmod{p}. \quad \dots(5)$$

$$\text{Finally from (4) and (5), } n^p \equiv \lambda^p \pmod{p} \text{ and } \lambda^p \equiv n \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow n^p \equiv n \pmod{p}.$$

Hence if p is a prime, $n^p \equiv n \pmod{p} \forall n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Ex. 7. If p is a prime, show that $2(p-3)! + 1$ is a multiple of p . (Nagarjuna 1990)

Sol. Since p is prime, by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$(p-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow (p-1)(p-2)(p-3)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow (p^2 - 3p + 2)(p-3)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow 2(p-3)! + 1 + (p^2 - 3p)(p-3)! \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow 2(p-3)! + 1 + p(p-3)(p-3)! \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$$

$$\Rightarrow 2(p-3)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}.$$

$$[\because p(p-3)(p-3)! \equiv 0 \pmod{p}]$$

Ex. 8. If $(n, 7) = 1$, prove that $n^{12} - 1$ is divisible by 7.

Sol. Since 7 is prime and $(n, 7) = 1$, therefore by Fermat's theorem, we have

$$n^{7-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{7}$$

$$\Rightarrow n^6 \equiv 1 \pmod{7}$$

$$\Rightarrow 7 \mid (n^6 - 1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 7 \mid (n^6 - 1)(n^6 + 1)$$

$$\Rightarrow 7 \mid (n^{12} - 1).$$

Ex. 9. Show that $n^7 - n$ is divisible by 42.

Sol. Since 7 is prime, therefore by Fermat's theorem, we have

$$n^7 \equiv n \pmod{7}$$

$$\text{i.e., } 7 \mid (n^7 - n). \quad \dots(1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Also } n^7 - n &= n(n^6 - 1) = n(n^3 - 1)(n^3 + 1) \\ &= n(n-1)(n^2 + n + 1)(n+1)(n^2 - n + 1) \\ &= (n-1)n(n+1)(n^2 + n + 1)(n^2 - n + 1). \end{aligned}$$

Now $(n-1)n(n+1)$ is a product of three consecutive integers and so it is divisible by 3 ! i.e., 6.

$$\text{Thus } 6 \mid (n^7 - n). \quad \dots(2)$$

Since $(6, 7) = 1$ i.e., 6 and 7 are relatively prime, therefore from (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} (6 \cdot 7) &\mid (n^7 - n) \\ \Rightarrow 42 &\mid (n^7 - n). \end{aligned}$$

Note that if $a \mid m$, $b \mid m$ and $(a, b) = 1$, then $ab \mid m$.

Ex. 10. If p is an odd prime and $(a, p) = 1$, then prove that either $a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ or $a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv -1 \pmod{p}$.

Sol. Since p is odd, therefore $p-1$ is even and so $\frac{1}{2}(p-1)$ is a positive integer.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } a^{p-1} - 1 &= \left[a^{(p-1)/2} \right]^2 - 1^2 \\ &= \left[a^{(p-1)/2} - 1 \right] \left[a^{(p-1)/2} + 1 \right] \end{aligned} \quad \dots(1)$$

Since p is prime and $(a, p) = 1$, therefore by Fermat's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a^{p-1} &\equiv 1 \pmod{p} \\ \Rightarrow p &\mid (a^{p-1} - 1) \\ \Rightarrow p &\mid \left[a^{(p-1)/2} - 1 \right] \left[a^{(p-1)/2} + 1 \right], \text{ by (1)} \\ \Rightarrow p &\mid \left[a^{(p-1)/2} - 1 \right] \text{ or } p \mid \left[a^{(p-1)/2} + 1 \right] \\ &[\because p \text{ is prime and so } p \mid bc \Rightarrow p \mid b \text{ or } p \mid c] \\ \Rightarrow a^{(p-1)/2} &\equiv 1 \pmod{p} \text{ or } a^{(p-1)/2} \equiv -1 \pmod{p} \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 11. If p is a prime and $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, then prove that

$$a^p - b^p = a - b + M(p).$$

Sol. Since p is prime and a, b are any integers, therefore

$$\begin{aligned} & a^p \equiv a \pmod{p} & \dots(1) \\ \text{and } & b^p \equiv b \pmod{p} & \dots(2) \end{aligned}$$

From (1) and (2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & a^p - b^p \equiv a - b \pmod{p} \\ \Rightarrow & p \mid [(a^p - b^p) - (a - b)] \\ \Rightarrow & (a^p - b^p) - (a - b) = M(p) \\ \Rightarrow & a^p - b^p = a - b + M(p). \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 12. Apply Wilson's theorem to show that

(i) $18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{19}$

(ii) $18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23}$.

Then show that $18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{437}$.

Sol. Since 19 is prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & (19-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{19} \\ \Rightarrow & 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{19}. \end{aligned}$$

This proves (i).

Again 23 is prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & (23-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & 22! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & 22 \cdot 21 \cdot 20 \cdot 19 \cdot 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & (23-1)(23-2)(23-3)(23-4) \cdot 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & (-1)(-2)(-3)(-4) \cdot 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & 24 \cdot 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & (23+1) \cdot 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & 23 \cdot 18! + 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23} \\ \Rightarrow & 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23}. \end{aligned}$$

This proves (ii).

Now $18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{19}$ and $18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{23}$

$$\Rightarrow 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{\text{L.C.M. of } 19 \text{ and } 23}$$

$$\Rightarrow 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{19 \times 23}$$

$$\Rightarrow 18! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{437}.$$

Ex. 13. Apply Wilson's theorem to show that

(i) $10! - 32 \equiv 0 \pmod{11}$

(ii) $10! - 32 \equiv 0 \pmod{13}$.

Then show that $10! - 32 \equiv 0 \pmod{143}$.

(Kakatiya 1989)

Sol. Since 11 is prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$(11-1)! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{11}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow 10! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{11} \\ \Rightarrow 10! + 1 - 33 &\equiv 0 \pmod{11} \\ \Rightarrow 10! - 32 &\equiv 0 \pmod{11}. \end{aligned}$$

Again 13 is prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 12! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \Rightarrow 12 \cdot 11 \cdot 10! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow (13-1)(13-2)10! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow (-1)(-2)10! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow 2(10!) + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow 2(10!) - 65 + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow 2(10!) - 64 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow 10! - 32 &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \quad [\because (2, 13)=1] \end{aligned}$$

Now $10! - 32 \equiv 0 \pmod{11}$ and $10! - 32 \equiv 0 \pmod{13}$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow 10! - 32 &\equiv 0 \pmod{\text{L.C.M. of } 13 \text{ and } 11} \\ \Rightarrow 10! - 32 &\equiv 0 \pmod{143}. \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 14. Prove that $28! + 233 \equiv 0 \pmod{899}$. (Andhra 1989)

Sol. We have $899 = 29 \times 31$, where both 29 and 31 are prime.

Since 29 is prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (29-1)! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{29} \Rightarrow 28! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{29} \\ \Rightarrow 28! + 1 + 8 \cdot 29 &\equiv 0 \pmod{29} \Rightarrow 28! + 1 + 232 \equiv 0 \pmod{29} \\ \Rightarrow 28! + 233 &\equiv 0 \pmod{29}. \end{aligned}$$

Again 31 is prime, therefore by Wilson's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (31-1)! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \Rightarrow 30! + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow 30 \cdot 29 \cdot 28! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow (31-1)(31-2) \cdot 28! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow (-1)(-2) \cdot 28! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow 2 \cdot 28! + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow 2 \cdot 28! + 31 \cdot 15 + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow 2 \cdot 28! + 465 + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow 2 \cdot 28! + 466 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \\ \Rightarrow 28! + 233 &\equiv 0 \pmod{31} \quad [\because (2, 31)=1] \end{aligned}$$

Now $28! + 233 \equiv 0 \pmod{29}$ and $28! + 233 \equiv 0 \pmod{31}$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow 28! + 233 &\equiv 0 \pmod{\text{L.C.M. of } 29 \text{ and } 31} \\ \Rightarrow 28! + 233 &\equiv 0 \pmod{899}. \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 15. If p is a prime greater than 7, then show that $p^6 \equiv 1 \pmod{504}$. (Nagarjuna 1989)

Sol. Since p is a prime greater than 7, we have $(p, 7) = 1$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{by Fermat's theorem, } p^{7-1} &\equiv 1 \pmod{7} \\ \Rightarrow p^6 - 1 &= M(7). \end{aligned}$$

Again $p^6 - 1 = (p^2 - 1)(p^4 + p^2 + 1) = (p - 1)(p + 1)(p^4 + p^2 + 1)$.

Since p is an odd number greater than 7, therefore $(p - 1)(p + 1)$ is a product of two consecutive positive even integers one of which must be divisible by 4.

$$\therefore 8 \mid (p^6 - 1).$$

Again p is a prime greater than 7, therefore p is an odd number not divisible by 3. Hence p must be of the form $3q + 1$ or $3q - 1$. If p is of the form $3q + 1$ or $3q - 1$, an easy computation leads to show that $p^4 + p^2 + 1$ is divisible by 3. Also then one of the two numbers $p - 1$ and $p + 1$ is divisible by 3.

$$\therefore 9 \mid (p^6 - 1).$$

Thus $p^6 - 1$ is divisible by each of the numbers 7, 8 and 9. Since the G.C.D. of 7, 8 and 9 is 1, therefore $p^6 - 1$ is divisible by 7.8.9 i.e., by 504.

Hence $p^6 \equiv 1 \pmod{504}$.

Ex. 16. State Fermat's theorem in number theory. Thus prove that $n^{13} - n$ is divisible by 2, 3, 5, 7 and 13 for any integer n .
(Osmania 1988)

Sol. For statement of Fermat's theorem, refer theorem 7 of § 21.

Now from Fermat's theorem, if p is a positive prime and n is any integer, then

$$n^p \equiv n \pmod{p} \text{ i.e., } n^p - n \text{ is divisible by } p.$$

Since 13 is prime, therefore $n^{13} - n$ is divisible by 13.

Now we can write $n^{13} - n = n(n^{12} - 1)$

$$= n(n^6 - 1)(n^6 + 1) = (n^7 - n)(n^6 + 1).$$

Since 7 is prime, therefore $n^7 - n$ is divisible by 7 and consequently $n^{13} - n$ is also divisible by 7.

Also we can write

$$n^{13} - n = n(n^{12} - 1) = n[(n^4)^3 - 1^3]$$

$$= n(n^4 - 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1) = (n^5 - n)(n^8 + n^4 + 1).$$

Since 5 is prime, therefore $n^5 - n$ is divisible by 5 and hence $n^{13} - n$ is also divisible by 5.

Again we can write

$$n^{13} - n = n(n^4 - 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1)$$

$$= n(n^2 - 1)(n^2 + 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1)$$

$$= (n^3 - n)(n^2 + 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1).$$

Since 3 is prime, therefore $n^3 - n$ is divisible by 3 and hence $n^{13} - n$ is also divisible by 3.

Finally, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} n^{13} - n &= n(n^2 - 1)(n^2 + 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1) \\ &= n(n-1)(n+1)(n^2 + 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1) \\ &= (n^2 - n)(n+1)(n^2 + 1)(n^8 + n^4 + 1). \end{aligned}$$

Since 2 is prime, therefore $n^2 - n$ is divisible by 2 and hence $n^{13} - n$ is also divisible by 2.

Ex. 17. If p is a prime, prove that

$$1^{p-1} + 2^{p-1} + 3^{p-1} + \dots + (p-1)^{p-1} + 1 = M(p).$$

Sol. Since p is prime, therefore from Fermat's theorem for any integer a , we have

$$a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}.$$

Taking $a=1, 2, \dots, p-1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 1^{p-1} &\equiv 1 \pmod{p}, 2^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}, \dots, (p-1)^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p} \\ \Rightarrow 1^{p-1} + 2^{p-1} + 3^{p-1} + \dots + (p-1)^{p-1} &\equiv 1 + 1 + \dots + 1 \pmod{p} \\ &\quad (p-1) \text{ times} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Rightarrow 1^{p-1} + 2^{p-1} + 3^{p-1} + \dots + (p-1)^{p-1} &\equiv p-1 \pmod{p} \\ \Rightarrow 1^{p-1} + 2^{p-1} + 3^{p-1} + \dots + (p-1)^{p-1} + 1 - p &\equiv 0 \pmod{p} \\ \Rightarrow 1^{p-1} + 2^{p-1} + 3^{p-1} + \dots + (p-1)^{p-1} + 1 &\equiv 0 \pmod{p} \\ \Rightarrow 1^{p-1} + 2^{p-1} + 3^{p-1} + \dots + (p-1)^{p-1} + 1 &= M(p). \end{aligned}$$

Ex. 18. If a, b are prime to 1365, prove that

$$a^{12} - b^{12} = M(1365).$$

Sol. We have $1365 = 3 \times 5 \times 7 \times 13$.

Since a, b are prime to 1365, therefore a, b are prime to each of 3, 5, 7 and 13.

Since 13 is prime and $(a, 13)=1, (b, 13)=1$, therefore

$$\begin{aligned} a^{13-1} &\equiv 1 \pmod{13}, b^{13-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} &\equiv 1 \pmod{13}, b^{12} \equiv 1 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} &\equiv 0 \pmod{13} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} &= M(13). \end{aligned} \quad \dots(1)$$

Again 7 is prime and $(a, 7)=1, (b, 7)=1$, therefore

$$\begin{aligned} a^6 &\equiv 1 \pmod{7}, b^6 \equiv 1 \pmod{7} \\ \Rightarrow (a^6)^2 &\equiv 1^2 \pmod{7}, (b^6)^2 \equiv 1 \pmod{7} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} &\equiv 1 \pmod{7}, b^{12} \equiv 1 \pmod{7} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} &\equiv 0 \pmod{7} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} &= M(7). \end{aligned} \quad \dots(2)$$

Now 5 is prime and $(a, 5)=1, (b, 5)=1$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a^4 &\equiv 1 \pmod{5}, b^4 \equiv 1 \pmod{5} \\ \Rightarrow (a^4)^3 &\equiv 1^3 \pmod{5}, (b^4)^3 \equiv 1^3 \pmod{5} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} &\equiv 1 \pmod{5}, b^{12} \equiv 1 \pmod{5} \\ \Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} &\equiv 0 \pmod{5} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} = M(5). \quad \dots(3)$$

Finally 3 is prime and $(a, 3)=1, (b, 3)=1$.

$$\therefore a^2 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}, b^2 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$$

$$\Rightarrow (a^2)^6 \equiv 1^6 \pmod{3}, (b^2)^6 \equiv 1^6 \pmod{3}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{12} \equiv 1 \pmod{3}, b^{12} \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$$

$$\Rightarrow a^{12} - b^{12} = M(3). \quad \dots(4)$$

Since 3, 5, 7, 13 are primes, therefore

$$\text{L.C.M. of } 3, 5, 7, 13 = 3 \times 5 \times 7 \times 13 = 1365.$$

Hence from (1), (2), (3) and (4), we conclude that

$$a^{12} - b^{12} = M(3 \times 5 \times 7 \times 13)$$

$$\text{i.e. } a^{12} - b^{12} = M(1365).$$

Exercises

- Find the value of $\phi(126)$. (O.U.A. 1988)
- Find the value of
 - $\phi(768)$
 - $\phi(490)$. (Andhra 1990)
 - $\phi(6125)$. (Andhra 1990)
- Prove that $a^{12} - b^{12}$ is divisible by 13 if a and b are prime to 13.
- If n is a prime and $(a, n)=1, (b, n)=1$, then prove that $a^{n-1} - b^{n-1}$ is a multiple of n .
- Prove that $a^{18} - b^{18}$ is divisible by 133 if a and b are prime to 133.
- If p is an odd prime, prove that $\phi(2p) = \phi(p)$.
- Prove that the square of every integer is of the form $5n$ or $5n \pm 1$, where n is an integer.
- Prove that $n^{6k} - 1$ is divisible by 7 if $(n, 7)=1, k$ being any positive integer. (Osmania 1989)
- Show that the 9th power of any integer is of the form $19m$ or $19m \pm 1$. (Nagarjuna 1990)
- Show that the 4th power of any integer is of the form $5m$ or $5m + 1$, where m is an integer.
- Prove that $16^{99} \equiv 1 \pmod{437}$. (Andhra 1990)
- Prove that $\phi(n) = n - 1$ if and only if n is prime.
- Find the smallest integer n so that $\phi(n) = 6$.
- Prove that for every integer n the number $n^3 - n$ is divisible by 2730.
- Prove that $2^{20} \equiv 4 \pmod{7}$.
- Find the least positive number x satisfying $2^{19} \equiv x \pmod{7}$. (Andhra 1990)

Answers

- 48.
- (i) 256 (ii) 168 (iii) 4200.
- 7.
- 2.

Index

A

Abelian group 49
 Abel's theorem 556
 Abstractly identical 128
 Addition modulo m 77
 Addition of two polynomials 327
 Addition of vectors 395
 Algebraic element 485
 Algebraic extension 487
 Algebraic structure 49
 Alternating group of degree n 144
 Annihilator 463
 Associates 323
 Associative operations 34
 Associativity of mappings 31
 Automorphisms of a group 221
 Automorphism of a field 524

B

Basis of a vector space 423
 Bijection 22
 Binary operation 33
 Boolean ring 267

C

Cayley's theorem 167
 Cancellation laws in a ring 261
 Cartesian product of two sets 15
 Cauchy's theorem 250
 Cauchy's theorem for abelian groups 249
 Centre of a group 200
 Characteristic of a field 293
 Characteristic of a ring 291
 Class equation of a group 200
 Class of sets 8
 Closure property 49
 Co-domain of a function 19
 Commutative group 49
 Commutative operations 34
 Commutative ring 255
 Commutator subgroup of a group 239

Complementary subspaces 446
 Complement of a set 11
 Complexes 137
 Composite of mappings 29
 Composition preserving mapping 127
 Composition series of a group 234
 Composition table 69
 Congruence of integers 83
 Conjugate classes 198
 Conjugate elements of a group 197
 Conjugate subgroups 203
 Constant function 23
 Constant term 328
 Constructible number 547
 Content of a polynomial 382
 Continuation of isomorphic mapping 504

Co-ordinates of a vector 447
 Cosets 152
 Cyclic groups 170
 Cyclic modules 476
 Cyclic permutations 98

D

Decomposition field 503
 Degree of a field extension 481
 Degree of a polynomial 327
 Degree of an algebraic element 487
 Derivative of a polynomial 516
 Difference of two sets 11
 Dimension of a vector space 426
 Direct products of groups 244
 Direct sum of submodules 473
 Direct sum of spaces 443
 Disjoint cycles 100
 Disjoint sets 7
 Disjoint subspaces 444
 Distributive operations 34
 Divisibility in an integral domain 321
 Division algorithm for integers 82
 Division algorithm for polynomials 336
 Division ring 262

Domain of a function 19
 Dual basis 457
 Dual space 453

E

Eisenstein's criterion 391
 Elementary symmetric functions 529
 Elements of a set 4
 Empty set 6
 Endomorphism of groups 211
 Equality of two functions 20
 Equality of two permutations 94
 Equality of two polynomials 327
 Equality of two sets 5
 Equivalence classes 41
 Equivalence relations 40
 Euclidean algorithm 339
 Euclidean domains 370
 Euclidean rings 370
 Euler's ϕ -function 90
 Euler's theorem 161
 Even permutations 102
 Extension of a function 23
 External composition 395
 External direct product of groups 244

F

Factor group 205
 Factor theorem 344, 499
 Family of sets 8
 Fermat's theorem 162
 Field 262
 Field adjunction 484
 Field extension 481
 Field of rational functions 335
 Finite-dimensional vector space 424
 Finite field 556
 Finite integral domain 264
 Finitely generated modules 476
 Finitely generated vector space 424
 Finite sets 4
 Fixed field 525
 Function 19
 Fundamental theorem :
 of Galois theory 539
 on homomorphism of groups 216

on homomorphism of modules 476
 on homomorphism of rings 359

G

Galois group 537
 Gaussian integer 270
 Gauss' Lemma 386
 Generator of a cyclic group 170
 Greatest common divisor 325
 Greatest common divisor of integers 82
 Greatest common divisor of two polynomials 336
 Group 49
 Group of automorphisms of a cyclic group 226
 Group of automorphisms of a group 223
 Group of permutations 96

H

Homomorphic image of a group 211
 Homomorphism of groups 211
 Homomorphism of modules 474
 Homomorphism of rings 356
 Homomorphism of vector spaces 433

I

Ideals 306
 Identity element 35
 Identity mapping 23
 Identity permutation 95
 Image of a subset 20
 Imbedding of a ring into another ring 296
 Improper divisors 324, 335
 Improper subgroups 138
 Improper subset 7
 Index of a subgroup 157
 Index set 12
 Induced composition 137
 Infinite sets 4
 Infinite order 113
 Inner automorphisms 224
 Integral domain 261
 Integral multiples of an element of a group 112

- Integral multiples of an element of a ring 256
 Integral powers of an element of a group 111
 Internal composition 395
 Internal direct products of groups 246
 Intersection of sets 10
 Intersection of subgroups 145
 Intersection of subrings 287
 Into mappings 21
 Invariant subgroups 204
 Inverse function 24
 Inverse image 23
 Inverse relations 37
 Inversible elements 35
 Irreducible elements 325
 Irreducible module 472
 Irreducible polynomials 335
 Isomorphism of groups 126
 Isomorphism of rings 282
 Isomorphism of vector spaces 435
- J**
- Jordan-Hölder theorem 235
- K**
- Kernel of a group homomorphism 213
 Kernel of a module homomorphism 474
 Kernel of a ring homomorphism 357
 Kernel of a vector space homomorphism 434
 Kronecker delta 455
- L**
- Lagrange's theorem 159
 Leading coefficient 328
 Leading term 328
 Left cancellation law 57
 Left coset 152
 Left coset decomposition of a group 159
 Left ideal 306
- Linear functional 449
 Linear independence of vectors 414
 Linear operator 449
 Linear span 410
 Linear sum of two subspaces 412
 Linear transformation 433
- M**
- Many-one mappings 21
 Mapping 19
 Maximal ideal 361
 Maximal subgroups 233
 Members of a set 4
 Minimal polynomial 486
 Module 468
 Monic polynomial 335
 Multiple root 499
 Multiplication modulo p 77
 Multiplication of two polynomials 327
- N**
- Non-empty set 6
 Normal extension of a field 529
 Normalizer of an element of a group 198
 Normalizer of a subgroup of a group 203
 Normal series of a group 236
 Normal subgroup 188
 Null ideal 307
 Null set 6
- O**
- Odd permutations 102
 One-one mappings 21
 One-to-one correspondence 22
 Onto mappings 21
 Operators 20
 Ordered basis 44
 Ordered field 294
 Ordered integral domain 294
 Ordered pair 15
 Order of a group 50
 Order of an element of a group 113
 Order relations in an integral domain 295
 Outer automorphism 224

P

Partial order relation 46
 Partitions 43
 Perfect field 523
 Permutations 93
 Polynomial equations 344
 Polynomials 326
 Polynomials over a field 333
 Power set 8
 Prime elements of an integral domain 325

Prime fields 345
 Prime ideal 365
 Prime integers 83
 Primitive polynomials 383
 Principal ideal 319
 Principal ideal ring 320
 Principle of trichotomy 294
 Product of mappings 29
 Product of permutations 95
 Proper divisors 324, 335
 Proper ideals 307
 Proper subgroups 138
 Proper subset 7

Q

Quaternion group 74
 Quotient field 299
 Quotient group 205
 Quotient modules 476
 Quotient rings 354
 Quotient set 45
 Quotient space 442

R

Range of a function 19
 Reflexive relations 38
 Reflexivity of vector spaces 460
 Relation 36
 Relatively prime elements 325
 Relatively prime integers 82
 Relatively prime polynomials 336
 Remainder theorem 344, 498
 Residue classes of integers modulo m 84

Restriction of a function 23
 Right cancellation law 57
 Right coset 152

Right coset decomposition of a group 155

Right ideal 306
 Right module 468
 Ring 254
 Ring of endomorphisms of an abelian group 348
 Ring of Gaussian integers 271
 Ring of integers 257
 Ring of polynomials 330
 Ring of residue classes 354
 Ring without zero divisors 260
 Ring with unity 255
 Root of a polynomial 485, 498

S

Scalar multiplication 395
 Scalars 395
 Second dual space 459
 Second law of isomorphism 230
 Semi-group 49
 Separable element 523
 Separable extension 523
 Set 3
 Simple field extension 485
 Simple group 188
 Simple ring 307
 Simple root 499
 Singleton 6
 Skew field 262
 Solvable by radicals 552
 Solvable group 236
 Splitting field 503
 Standard basis 423
 Subfields 290
 Subgroup 137
 Subgroup generated by a subset of a group 184
 Submodules 471
 Subrings 286
 Subsets 6
 Superset 7
 Sylow's theorem 251
 Sylow subgroup 251
 Symmetric difference 12
 Symmetric group of degree n 98
 Symmetric relations 39

T

Tautology 2
 Third law of isomorphism 231
 Transcendental element 486
 Transcendental extension 487
 Transformations 20
 Transitive relations 40
 Transposition 99

U

Union of sets 9
 Unique factorization domain 340
 Unique factorization theorem for
 polynomials 342
 Unique factorization theorem for
 Euclidean rings 378
 Uniqueness of the splitting field 512
 Unit ideal 307

Units 322

Universal set 9

V

Vectors 395
 Vector space 395
 Vector subspace 403
 Venn diagrams 9
 Void set 6

Z

Zero divisors 260
 Zero element of a ring 254
 Zero order element of a group 113
 Zero polynomial 327
 Zero ring 257
 Zero of a polynomial 344
 Zero subspace 406
 Zero vector 396

Krishna's Most Popular Books in MATHEMATICS

Analytical Solid Geometry
 Advanced Differential Calculus
 Advanced Integral Calculus
 Calculus of Finite Difference & Numerical Analysis
 Differential Equations
 Advanced Differential Equations
 Differential Geometry
 Dynamics of a Particle
 Fluid Dynamics
 Functional Analysis
 Functions of a Complex Variable
 Complex Analysis
 Hydrodynamics
 Infinite Series & Products
 Integral Transforms (Transform Calculus)
 Linear Algebra (Finite Dimension Vector Spaces)
 Linear Difference Equations
 Integral Equations
 Linear Programming
 Mathematical analysis-I (Metric Spaces)
 Mathematical analysis-II
 Measure and Integration
 Real Analysis (General)
 Vector Calculus
 Modern Algebra (Abstract Algebra)
 Matrices
 Mathematical Methods
 (Special Functions & Boundary Value Problems)
 Special Functions (Spherical Harmonics)
 Vector Algebra
 Mathematical Statistics
 Operations Research
 Rigid Dynamics-I (Dynamics of Rigid Bodies)
 Rigid Dynamics-II (Analytical Dynamics)
 Set Theory & Related Topics
 Spherical Astronomy
 Statics
 Tensor Calculus & Riemannian Geometry
 Theory of Relativity
 Topology
 Discrete Mathematics
 Basic Mathematics for Chemists
 Number Theory
 Bio-Mathematics
 Partial Differential Equations
 Cryptography & Network Security
 Advanced Abstract Algebra
 Space Dynamics
 Spherical Astronomy and Space Dynamics
 Advanced Mathematical Methods
 Fuzzy Set Theory
 Advanced Numerical Analysis (MRT)
 Analysis-I (Real Analysis)

Vasishta & Agarwal
 J.N. Sharma
 D.C. Agarwal
 Gupta, Malik & Chauhan
 Sharma & Gupta
 R.K. Gupta, J.N. Sharma
 Mithal & Agarwal
 Vasishta & Agarwal
 Shanti Swarup
 Sharma & Vasishta
 J.N. Sharma
 A.R. Vasishta
 Shanti Swarup
 J.N. Sharma
 Vasishta & Gupta
 Sharma & Vasishta
 Gupta & Agarwal
 Shanti Swarup
 R.K. Gupta
 J.N. Sharma
 Sharma & Vasishta
 Gupta & Gupta
 Sharma & Vasishta
 Sharma & Vasishta
 A.R. Vasishta
 A.R. Vasishta
 Sharma & Vasishta
 Sharma & Vasishta
 A.R. & Vasishta
 Sharma & Goel
 R.K. Gupta
 Gupta & Malik
 P.P. Gupta
 K.P. Gupta
 Gupta, Sharma & Kumar
 Goel & Gupta
 D.C. Agarwal
 Goel & Gupta
 J.N. Sharma
 M.K. Gupta
 A.R. Vasishta
 Hari Kishan
 Singh & Agarwal
 R.K. Gupta
 Manoj Kumar
 S.K. Pundir
 J.P. Chauhan
 J.P. Chauhan
 Shiv Raj Singh
 Shiv Raj Singh
 Gupta, Malik & Chauhan
 J.P. Chauhan



THE
KRISHNA
GROUP



KRISHNA Prakashan
 Media (P) Ltd., Meerut



Krishna's Books
 Buy Online at

Write to us at : info@krishnaprakashan.com

www.krishnaprakashan.com